Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration

Revised February 2015

TABLE OF CONTENTS

GLOSSARY ____ *v*

ACRONYMS ____ *xii*

1 The Federal/State Partnership ____ *1*

1.1 Congressional Intent ____ **1**

1.2 Federal Role and Organizational Structure ____ **1**

1.3 State Role and Organizational Structure ____ **2**

1.4 Related Organizations ____ **2**

1.4.1 National Association of Pipeline Safety Representatives ____ 2

1.4.2 National Association of Regulatory Utility Commissioners ____ 3

1.5 Invitational Travel ____ **3**

2 State Participation Requirements ____ *5*

2.1 Section 60105 Certification ____ **5**

2.2 Section 60106 Agreement ____ **6**

2.3 Interstate Agent Agreement ____ **7**

2.4 Time Defined Agreement ____ **8**

2.5 Certification/Agreement Forms ____ **8**

2.6 Progress Report ____ **8**

2.6.1 Attachment #1: State Jurisdiction and Agent Status ____ 8

2.6.2 Attachment #2: Total State Field Inspection Activity ____ 9

2.6.3 Attachment #3: Facilities Subject to State Safety Jurisdiction ____ 9

2.6.4 Attachment #4: Pipeline Incidents/Accidents ____ 9

2.6.5 Attachment #5: State Compliance Actions ____ 9

2.6.6 Attachment #6: State Record Maintenance and Reporting ____ 10

2.6.7 Attachment #7: State Employees Directly Involved in the Pipeline Safety Program ____ 10

2.6.8 Attachment #8: State Compliance with Federal Requirements ____ 10

2.6.9 [RESERVED] ____ 10

2.6.10 Attachment #10: Performance and Damage Prevention Questions ____ 10

3 State Regulatory Responsibility ____ *11*

3.1 Adoption of Federal Regulations and Requirements ____ **11**

3.2 Waiver of Federal Regulations ____ **11**

3.2.1 Interstate Pipelines ____ 11

3.2.2 Intrastate Pipelines ____ 11

4 Personnel ____ *14*

4.1 Individual Qualifications ____ **14**

4.2 State Agency Base Staffing Level ____ **15**

4.2.1 Additional considerations to State Agency staffing level ____ 15

Table 4-1 - Categories and Qualifications for State Agency Inspectors ____ 17

Exhibit 4-1. Staffing Formula for Gas Program ____ 18

Exhibit 4-2. Categories and Qualifications for State Agency Inspectors ____ 19

Exhibit 4-3. Staffing Formula for Combination Program ____ 19

Exhibit 4-4. Sample Staffing Formula Determination ____ 20

4.2.2 Exhibit 4-4. Sample Staffing Formula Determination (continued) ____ 21

TABLE OF CONTENTS

4.3 Allocation of Effort 21

4.4 Training 21

4.4.1 Required Training 22
4.4.2 Course Re-Testing 23
4.4.3 Waivers from Training 23
4.4.4 Procedures for Requesting a Training Waiver 23

4.5 Continuing Education and State Inspector Mentoring Program 24

4.6 Changes in State Program Personnel 24

5 Inspection and Compliance Program *26*

5.1 Inspection 26

5.2 Compliance 33

5.2.1 Procedures for State Agencies with a Section 60105 Certification 33
5.2.2 Procedures for State Agencies with a Section 60106 Agreement or Interstate Agents 34

6 Failure Investigation and Safety-Related Conditions *35*

6.1 Investigation of Pipeline Failures 35

6.2 Basic Investigative Procedures 37

6.3 Incident Investigation Procedures 37

6.4 Safety-Related Conditions 37

7 Damage Prevention Program and One Call Notification *38*

7.1 Damage Prevention 38

7.2 One Call Notification 39

7.3 Damage Prevention and One-Call Grants 41

8 State Agency Program Performance *42*

8.1 Annual Program Evaluation 42

8.2 Compliance with Program Requirements 44

8.3 Recordkeeping 44

8.4 Attendance at NAPSR Meetings 45

8.5 State Hosted TQ Seminars 46

9 DOT Grant-in-Aid Program *47*

9.1 Scope of Grant 47

9.2 Address 47

9.3 Eligibility 47

9.4 General Obligations 48

9.5 Application 48

9.5.1 Attachment #1: Description of State Pipeline Safety Program. 48
9.5.2 Attachment #2: Pipeline Safety Program Estimated Budget. 50

9.6 Annual Funding Level 50

TABLE OF CONTENTS

9.7 Grant Allocation and Percentage of Funding 50
9.7.1 9.7.1 Grant Allocation Formula for Grant Award 51
9.7.2 State Performance Score 52

9.8 Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award) 54

9.9 Certification Regarding Lobbying and Disclosure of Lobbying Activities 55

9.10 Mid-Year Request for Reimbursement 55

9.11 Request for Advance Payment - Travel to NAPSR Meetings 55

9.12 Year-end Request for Reimbursement and Cost Summary 56

9.13 Special Initiatives 57

9.14 Withholding of Grant Funds - Suspension and/or Termination of Grants 57

9.15 Deposit of Grant Funds 57

9.16 Eligibility of Program Costs 58
9.16.1 Direct Costs 58
9.16.2 Indirect Costs 61
9.16.3 Unallowable Costs 61

9.17 Pipeline Safety Grant Program Review 62
9.17.1 Pre-Review 62
9.17.2 Grant Review 62
9.17.3 Post-Review 63
9.17.4 Adjustments and Penalties 63
9.17.5 Appeal of Findings 63

9.18 Procurement Standards 63

9.19 Procurement Procedures 63

9.20 Contracts Management 64

9.21 Real Property 64

9.22 Personal Property 64

9.23 Code of Conduct 64

9.24 Annual Federal Single Audit Requirement (2 CFR 200 Subpart F) 65

9.25 PHMSA Office of Civil Rights Review – Title VI 65

9.26 Grant-in-Aid Program Calendar of Events 66

9.27 Description of Activities 67
9.27.1 Base Grant Application (Natural Gas & Hazardous Liquid) 67
9.27.2 One Call Grant 67
9.27.3 Year End Payment Process 67
9.27.4 One Call Progress Report 67
9.27.5 One Call Allocation 67
9.27.6 Progress Report 67
9.27.7 Allocation 67
9.27.8 Payment Agreement – (Notice of Grant Award) 67
9.27.9 Mid-Year Reimbursement 68
9.27.10 Program Evaluation 68

10 Federal-State Tracking and Reporting – "FedSTAR" 69

TABLE OF CONTENTS

10.1 Purpose 69
10.2 Location and Procedures 69
10.3 Facilitating Various Program Documentation 71
10.4 Facilitating Grant Financials 72
10.5 Other FedSTAR Functions 73
10.6 PHMSA State Program Management Functions 74
Appendix Summary *75*

GLOSSARY

Act	See Chapter 601, Title 49 of the U.S. Code (2011 version)
Agency	See **State Agency**
Agreement	The State agency assumes inspection responsibility for facilities and reports probable violations to PHMSA for compliance action.
Certification	The State agency assumes safety responsibility with respect to intrastate facilities over which it has jurisdiction under State law.
Certification Regarding Lobbying	Each grantee who receives a Federal grant exceeding $100,000 must submit a certification form.
CFDA	Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance. A reference compilation of all grant programs sponsored by the Federal government. PHMSA's CFDA number is 20.700 for the Pipeline Safety Grant Program.
Chapter 601, Title 49 of the U.S. Code (2011)	Throughout this manual, Sections 60101 – 60140 refer to Chapter 601, Title 49 of the United States Code (2011). Chapter 601 is the recodification of the Natural Gas Pipeline Safety Act of 1968, as amended (49 USC app 1671 *er seq.*), and the Hazardous Liquids Pipeline Safety Act of 1979, as amended (49 USC app 2001 *er seq).*

Code of Federal Regulations, Title 49 (49 CFR)-Pipeline Safety

Part 40	Procedures for Transportation Workplace Drug Testing Programs
Part 190	Pipeline Safety Programs and Rulemaking Procedures
Part 191	Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by Pipeline: Annual Reports Incident Reports, and Safety-Related Condition Reports
Part 192	Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by Pipeline: Minimum Federal Safety Standards
Part 193	Liquefied Natural Gas Facilities: Federal Safety Standards
Part 194	Response Plans for Onshore Oil Pipelines
Part 195	Transportation of Hazardous Liquids by Pipeline
Part 198	Regulations for Grants to Aid State Pipeline Safety Programs
Part 199	Drug and Alcohol Testing

Compliance Action	An action or series of actions taken to enforce Federal pipeline regulations. These actions may take the form of a warning letter, an administratively imposed monetary sanction or order directing compliance with the regulations, an order directing corrective action under hazardous conditions, a show cause order, a criminal sanction, a court injunction, or a similar formal action.
Department of Transportation ("DOT")	Reference may include any or all of the following: U.S. Department of Transportation, Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration, Office of Pipeline Safety.
Federal State Tracking and Reporting ("FedSTAR")	This is the computer application available over the internet which is used by Pipeline Safety program offices to enter the required federal documentation and information.
Grant	Funds or aid in kind to carry out specified programs, services, or activities.
Grant Agreement	All provisions and requirements of the Pipeline Safety Grant Program, including those specified in the Grant Application, Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award), these Guidelines, and any instructions or directives issued by the PHMSA, DOT, or other Federal agency relative to the management of Federal grant programs.
Grant Application	This form is to provide PHMSA with information concerning the State agency's need for Federal financial support for its pipeline safety program.
Grantee	The department or agency of State government which is responsible for the administration of the pipeline safety grant. Also referred to as "recipient" or "State agency."
Grant Period	The grant period extends from the effective date of the Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award), January 1, to the expiration date, December 31, unless otherwise arranged. Also referred to as the "program year."
Grants.gov	Grants.gov is a central storehouse for information on federal grants.
Grant Program	Those activities and operations of the State agency which are necessary to carry out the purposes of the grant, including any portion of the program financed by the grantee. This technical usage of the phrase should not be confused with the Pipeline Safety Grant Program (sometimes shortened to "Grant Program"), which is the Federal assistance program in support of the State

agency's pipeline safety program.

Inspection, Standard An on-site evaluation of an inspection unit for compliance with all applicable Federal or State standards. This includes a thorough compliance review of the operator's plans, procedures, programs, records, physical plant, and work in progress. This would include inspections on LNG facilities. See Chapter 5 for guidance.

Inspection Person-Day All or part of a day spent by Agency staff – Supervisor(s) and/or Inspector(s)/Investigator(s) (including travel) in on-site evaluation of an operator's system to determine compliance with Federal or State pipeline safety regulations; or in on-site investigation of a pipeline incident; or in job-site training of an operator. (See section 5.1 for description of inspection types) Time counted for such activities should be reported as a maximum of one inspection person-day for each day devoted to safety issues, regardless of the number of operators visited during that day. (e.g. You may evaluate two operators in the same day and record each inspection visit as 0.5 person-day, or actual fraction of a day, for each operator provided the total does not exceed 1.0 person-day) On a limited basis, the inspector may count in-office inspection time to review operator written: plans, procedures, programs and records in order to effectively use on-site inspection time, as approved by the program manager and as noted in the annual progress report.

Inspection Unit All or part of an operator's pipeline facilities under the control of an administrative unit that provides sufficient communication and controls to ensure uniform design, construction, operation, and maintenance procedures for the facilities.

The application of the inspection unit concept will ensure inspection coverage of an operator's entire system and enhance Federal/State management of work load and program evaluation. Determination of inspections will be based on the following guidelines, but where unique situations exist, good logic and judgment must be exercised when identifying the parameters of the unit.

- ***Privately Owned Distribution System*** The inspection unit could be an operating area such as a specific city or metropolitan area, or a group of towns, and may include high pressure distribution operated and maintained by the operator. The unit selected should be that which provides the desired commonality. However, because of the greater number of pipeline facilities in some large metropolitan distribution areas, multiple units may be appropriate. In selecting the unit, consideration should be given to the size of the area covered, work location, record location, and line of supervision.

  If the distribution system contains transmission lines where transmission integrity management plans are required, those system(s) should be considered separate intrastate

	transmission inspection unit(s).
• ***Gas Transmission and Hazardous Liquid Pipeline System (including Ethanol)***	The inspection unit should include up to 500 miles of pipeline right-of-way including any compressor stations or pumping facilities within the designated limits. In some circumstances, such as densely populated areas and/or environmentally sensitive areas, and/or where judged necessary based on local conditions, a separate inspection unit can be established.
• ***Liquefied Natural Gas (LNG) Facility***	Each LNG facility should be considered a single inspection unit.
• ***Master Meter System***	Each master meter system should be considered a single inspection unit. However, more than one master meter system should be considered a single inspection unit if all facilities involved are owned, operated and maintained under common supervisory control.
• ***Municipality***	Each municipality should be considered a single inspection unit unless its system, similar to privately owned distribution systems, contains transmission lines where transmission integrity management inspections are done in which case the transmission system should be a separate inspection unit. Also operating conditions/characteristics could suggest additional inspection units be considered.
• ***Propane-Air System/Petroleum Gas System***	Propane-Air System/Petroleum Gas System- Each system should be considered a single inspection unit. However, more than one propane-air/petroleum gas system should be considered a single inspection unit if all facilities involved are owned, operated and maintained under common supervisory control.
• ***Regulated Gathering Pipeline System***	Each regulated gathering pipeline system can be considered as a single inspection unit. Circumstances may exist when an operator has more than one regulated gathering system separated into individual inspection units.

Interstate Agent	The State agency assumes inspection responsibility for interstate facilities and reports probable violations to PHMSA for compliance action.
Mid-year Request for Reimbursement	If a State desires mid-year payment, it may return one copy of a completed OMB Standard Form 270 to PHMSA requesting a mid-year payment.
Modifications to Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant	Used to amend the Federal grant amount in the Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award).

Award)

National Response Center (NRC) (1-800-424-8802)	The federal government's national communications center, which is staffed 24 hours a day by U.S. Coast Guard officers and marine science technicians. The NRC receives all reports of releases involving hazardous substances and oil that trigger the federal notification requirements under several laws. This "telephonic" report data is shared with PHMSA via an information system.
National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB)	This Federal agency was created by Congress in the Department of Transportation Act of 1966. Although NTSB's authority is limited to transportation failure investigations, its mission relating to pipeline safety is to: 1. Investigate significant failures and report the circumstances relating to each failure and its probable cause. 2. Make recommendations to the Secretary, the pipeline operators, manufacturers, associations, and interested parties in order to minimize the possibility of recurrence of similar failures. 3. Release reports deemed to be in the public interest. 4. Conduct special studies and investigations on matters regarding safety in pipeline transportation and failure prevention.
Noncompliance	A violation or probable violation of any section or any subsection of Federal or State pipeline safety regulations.
Office of Pipeline Safety (OPS)	For the purpose of this manual, OPS is the U.S. Department of Transportation, Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration's Office of Pipeline Safety.
OMB Standard Form 270-Request for Advance or Reimbursement	Submitted by a State agency for Mid-year Request for Reimbursement, Year-end Request for Reimbursement, and Request for Advance Payment - Travel to NAPSR Meetings
Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award)	The formal document that allocates a specific amount of Federal funds to a State agency for the reimbursement of not more than 80 percent of the expenses of a pipeline safety program.
Performance Criteria	Criteria used in assigning points for allocation of grant funds.
Personal Property	Property of any kind except real property. It may be tangible (having physical existence), or intangible (having no physical existence), such as patents, inventions, and copyrights, both having a useful

	life of more than 1 year and an acquisition cost of at least $5,000.
Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration (PHMSA)	Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration is the agency under the U.S. Department of Transportation responsible for pipeline safety oversight.
PHMSA Inspector Training and Qualifications Division (TQ)	The safety training organization operated by PHMSA in Oklahoma City, OK.
Pipeline Program Cost Summary	This form compares estimated budget figures with final expenses incurred for the program, and is submitted by a State agency with the Year-end Request for Reimbursement.
Probable Violation	A probable violation is a noncompliance with any section or subsection of Federal or State pipeline regulations. (i.e. during a unit inspection it was discovered that an operator failed to check and service 6 distribution valves, in reference to §192.747 Valve maintenance: Distribution systems, this is **one** probable violation of section 192.747(a) with six pieces of evidence and not six probable violations)
Program	The planned undertaking of the State agency's pipeline safety activities as stated in the application for Federal assistance.
Program Budget	A schedule of proposed expenditures that is allowable, necessary, and reasonable for proper and efficient execution of the pipeline safety program.
Program Costs	All allowable costs (as set forth in OMB Circular A -87) incurred by a State agency in accomplishing the objectives of the Pipeline Safety Grant Program during the grant period.
Program Manager	The person designated by the State agency as responsible for all activities of the pipeline safety program
Program Year	See "Grant Period."
Real Property	Land, land improvements, structures, and appurtenances thereto, Excluding movable machinery and equipment.
Recipient	See "Grantee."
Region Director (RD)	The individual responsible for all activities of the designated PHMSA region
Region Office	One of five offices delegated the authority to carry out the field activities for PHMSA

Research and Special Programs Administration (RSPA)	The Research and Special Programs Administration was an agency under the U.S. Department of Transportation and was formerly the agency that housed the Office of Pipeline Safety.
Special Initiatives	Initiatives occasionally issued by PHMSA for a limited purpose.
State Agency	The division of each State, including the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico, authorized through a certification or agreement with the Department of Transportation (DOT) to administer a pipeline safety program. Also referred to as “grantee” or “recipient.”
State Program Personnel	The PHMSA headquarters staff person (i.e. State Liaison) who provides technical assistance, support and evaluates State agency programs.
Supervisor	Individual in a State Agency supervising pipeline safety inspectors/investigators and so designated in Attachment 7 of the annual Progress Report. This does not include individuals solely supervising damage prevention/technical staff.
Year-End Request for Reimbursement	One copy of a completed OMB Standard Form 270 is completed by a State agency to submit total program costs for the previous year to PHMSA

ACRONYMS

CFDA	Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
DOT	U.S. Department of Transportation
FedSTAR	Federal State Tracking and Reporting
LNG	Liquefied Natural Gas
LPG	Liquefied Petroleum Gas
MBE	Minority Business Enterprises
MOU	Memorandum of Understanding
NAPSR	National Association of Pipeline Safety Representatives
NARUC	National Association of Regulatory Utility Commissioners
NRC	National Response Center
NTSB	National Transportation Safety Board
O & M	Operation and Maintenance
OMB	Office of Management and Budget
PHMSA	Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration
PSP	PHMSA State Programs
PY	Person-Year
RD	Region Director
SUDS	State Uploaded Document System (within FedSTAR)
TQ	PHMSA Inspector Training and Qualifications Division
USC	United States Code

1 The Federal/State Partnership

1.1 Congressional Intent

Chapter 601 provides the statutory basis for the pipeline safety program and establishes a framework for promoting pipeline safety through exclusive Federal authority for regulation of pipeline facilities and Federal delegation to the States for all or part of the responsibility for intrastate pipeline facilities under annual certification or agreement. Chapter 601 authorizes Federal grants-in-aid of not more than 80 percent of a State agency's personnel, equipment, activities and other allowable costs for its pipeline safety program. The resulting Federal/State partnership is the cornerstone for ensuring uniform implementation of the pipeline safety program nationwide. Chapter 601 can be found in Appendix A.

1.2 Federal Role and Organizational Structure

The Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration's (PHMSA) mission is to protect people and the environment from the risks inherent in transportation of hazardous materials - by pipeline and other modes of transportation. The agency's goals are:

- **Safety:** To reduce the risk of harm to people due to the transportation of hazardous materials by pipelines and other modes.
- **Environmental Stewardship:** To reduce the risk of harm to the environment due to the transportation of oil and hazardous materials by pipeline and other modes.
- **Reliability:** To help maintain and improve the reliability of systems that deliver energy products and other hazardous materials.
- **Global Connectivity:** To harmonize and standardize the requirements for pipeline and hazardous materials transportation internationally, to facilitate efficient and safe transportation through ports of entry and through the supply chain.
- **Preparedness and Response:** To reduce the consequences (harm to people, environment, and economy) after a pipeline or hazmat failure has occurred.

Under delegation from the Secretary of the Department of Transportation (DOT), PHMSA directly administers the program and develops issues and enforces minimum safety regulations for interstate and intrastate pipelines.

These regulations are written to ensure safety in (1) the design, construction, testing, operation, and maintenance of pipeline facilities and in (2) the siting, construction, operation, and maintenance of liquefied natural gas (LNG) facilities. PHMSA ensures compliance with regulations through operator inspections, enforcement actions, and accident investigations. In addition, the PHMSA Training and Qualification Program (TQ) conducts training in application of the regulations. PHMSA also administers grant-in-aid funding to States, conducts research, and collects and analyzes safety data.

PHMSA Headquarters is located in Washington D.C. Headquarters administers the grant-in-aid program to support State agencies conducting gas and hazardous liquid pipeline safety programs. In addition to collecting, compiling, and analyzing pipeline safety and operating data, PHMSA manages the risk-based pipeline inspection plan.

The PHMSA Region Offices serve as the focal point for interstate pipeline compliance activities and intrastate facilities not under state jurisdiction. The region staff provides technical assistance and support to State agency programs. Headquarters supports the work of the five PHMSA Region Offices.

1.3 State Role and Organizational Structure

A State delegates responsibility for pipeline safety to a State agency. The State agency may be a Public Utility Commission, a State Fire Marshal, a State Public Service Commission, or other office. State agencies under existing law have jurisdiction over most gas, hazardous liquid, and carbon dioxide facilities within their respective States. State agency duties normally consist of operator inspections, compliance and enforcement, safety programs, accident investigations, pipeline construction inspections, and record maintenance and reporting.

1.4 Related Organizations

1.4.1 National Association of Pipeline Safety Representatives

The National Association of Pipeline Safety Representatives (NAPSR), established in 1982, is an organization of State agency pipeline safety managers, inspectors, and technical personnel who support, encourage, develop, and enhance pipeline safety. NAPSR provides an effective mechanism for fostering the Federal/State partnership. The NAPSR bylaws set forth the purpose and objectives of the organization and the procedures for electing national and region officers. More important, the bylaws establish the steps for adopting resolutions to raise serious pipeline safety concerns of national scope for PHMSA consideration in regulatory and enforcement activities.

Each year, NAPSR holds a national Board of Directors meeting and region meetings to promote Federal/State information exchange and innovative approaches for enhancing pipeline safety. To keep abreast of program developments, State agency program manager attendance at these meetings is strongly encouraged. Failure to attend the region meeting by the program manager or a representative will result in a loss of evaluation points.

1.4.2 National Association of Regulatory Utility Commissioners

The National Association of Regulatory Utility Commissioners (NARUC) is an organization of Federal and State agencies engaged in the regulation of utilities and carriers. Its chief objective is to improve the quality and effectiveness of utility regulation in the United States. Through its Staff Subcommittee on Pipeline Safety under the Committee on Gas, NARUC provides a communication channel among State public utility agencies, State agency pipeline safety program managers, and Federal agencies. Like NAPSR, the NARUC Staff Subcommittee on Pipeline Safety holds regular meetings, issues resolutions, and establishes working groups to deal with particular safety issues.

1.5 Invitational Travel

In support of NAPSR and NARUC initiatives, PHMSA may provide invitational travel (100% funding) for the following:

1. The current NAPSR Chair and/or Vice-Chair to attend the NAPSR Board of Directors' meeting and five NAPSR region meetings excluding the meeting(s) held in their respective region. In the absence of the Chair or Vice Chair, the Secretary may attend under Invitational Travel.

2. Except for NAPSR's Grant Allocation Committee, five State program representatives (which normally represent each region and appointed by the NAPSR Chair) to attend their respective NAPSR Task Group committee meetings. An alternate representative may attend in the absence of the region or task group representative provided the NAPSR Chair consults with PHMSA Director of State Programs on the appointment and notifies the PHMSA State Programs point of contact (POC) about the selection.

3. Three State program representatives as designated by the NAPSR Chair may receive Invitational Travel to attend NARUC Staff Subcommittee on Pipeline Safety functions.

Each NAPSR/NARUC committee representative will need to notify and submit a completed PHP Travel Request Form to PHMSA State Programs POC at least one month prior to each tentative meeting. Once the POC has reviewed and concurs with the request, each committee member will be provided additional details on travel arrangements. Requests may be denied if not submitted within the time frame mentioned above or prior travel reimbursement voucher has not been submitted by the representative to PHMSA Headquarters for process.

In general, PHMSA will provide airline tickets for the committee task team member and reimburse the traveler for other expenses at the standard government per diem rates. The federal lodging and per diem rates are located at: http://www.gsa.gov/portal/category/21287 (Rental car transportation is not typically a reimbursable expense.)

To ensure invitational travel voucher requests are processed in a proper and timely manner, committee members need to submit the PHP Invitational Voucher Form as soon as they return from the meeting. The individual traveler, or group/committee designee, shall also submit a written summary of the meeting events within 30 days after the meeting to the PHMSA Director of State Programs. The written summary is not required if a PHMSA representative was in attendance at the meeting(s).

2 State Participation Requirements

State agency participation in the pipeline safety program is based on voluntary submission of a certification pursuant to Section 60105 of Chapter 601 or of an agreement pursuant to Section 60106 of Chapter 601. State agency participation may also include acting as an interstate agent on behalf of DOT.

Under a *certification*, the State agency assumes inspection and enforcement responsibility with respect to intrastate facilities over which it has jurisdiction under State law. With a certification, the State agency may adopt additional or more stringent standards for intrastate pipeline facilities provided such standards are compatible with Federal regulations.

Under an *agreement* or *interstate* agent agreement, the State agency assumes inspection responsibility for facilities and reports probable violations to PHMSA for compliance action.

Under a certification, agreement, or interstate agent agreement, the State agency may not subcontract pipeline safety-related work activities without prior approval from DOT. If the State agency does not apply for annual certification or agreement, all intrastate facilities remain the responsibility of PHMSA.

2.1 Section 60105 Certification

To qualify for Section 60105 of Chapter 601 gas or hazardous liquid certification, the State agency must meet the following requirements. Separate certification is necessary for gas and hazardous liquid programs. PHMSA's procedures to monitor, evaluate and reject a State Program's Certification are described in Appendix P.

1. The State agency must have adopted each Federal safety standard applicable to intrastate pipelines under its jurisdiction as of the date of the certification. When a Federal standard is established within 120 days before the date of certification, the State agency must be taking steps pursuant to State law to adopt the standard.

   If the State agency is not eligible to submit a certification at the beginning of a calendar year because it has not adopted or is not seeking adoption of a Federal safety standard, the State agency may continue its program (including its eligibility for Federal payments under Section 60107 of Chapter 601) by entering into a Section 60106 of Chapter 601 agreement.

2. The State agency must be enforcing each standard. The laws of the State agency must provide for the enforcement of the safety standards by injunctive and monetary sanctions that are substantially the same as those provided by Sections 60120 (Enforcement) and 60122 (Civil penalties) of Chapter 601. At a minimum, each state must have Penalty Amounts of $100,000 per day up to a maximum of $1,000,000 for a related series of violations as set out under 190.223 Maximum Penalties.

3. The State agency must have substantially the same authority as that provided DOT under Sections 60108 (Inspection and maintenance) and 60117 (Administrative) of Chapter 601. Thus each person who owns or operates pipeline facilities subject to the State agency's jurisdiction must establish and maintain records, make reports, provide information, conduct inspections, and prepare and have on file plans for inspection and maintenance.

4. The State must encourage and promote the establishment of a program designed to prevent damage by demolition, excavation, tunneling, or construction activity to the pipeline facilities to which the certification applies that subjects persons who violate the applicable requirements of that program to civil penalties and other enforcement actions, and addresses the elements in Section 60134(b).

5. The State agency must cooperate fully in a system of Federal monitoring of each State program to ensure compliance with the certification.

6. The State agency annual progress report must be accompanied by the following:

    a. A list of the types of intrastate facilities under the State agency's jurisdiction.

    b. The name and official mailing address of each pipeline operator.

    c. A summary of each investigation and a statement of all jurisdictional incidents/accidents reported to it during the preceding calendar year by an operator involving (1) personal injury requiring hospitalization, (2) fatality, or (3) property damage in the amount as specified by DOT in 49 CFR 191.3.

    d. A summary of the State agency's inspection and compliance actions taken in the preceding calendar year.

    e. A list of the records the State agency maintained pertaining to its program during the preceding calendar year.

    f. The name, title, qualifications (training), and approximate percentage of time devoted to pipeline safety of each State agency employee involved in the program.

    g. A list of reports the State agency required from each pipeline operator during the preceding calendar year.

2.2 Section 60106 Agreement

By mutual agreement between the Secretary and the State agency, a Section 60106 of Chapter 601 agreement permits the State agency to undertake safety activities concerning intrastate pipelines when the State agency does not qualify for Section 60105 of Chapter 601 certification.

A State agency conducting a pipeline safety program under a Section 60106 of Chapter 601 agreement inspects intrastate operators for compliance with safety standards. Under such an agreement, the State agency will conduct all pipeline safety program activities that the State agency is allowed to conduct

under Section 60105 of Chapter 601 certification except that, in the event of a probable violation of the pipeline safety standards, the State agency must notify PHMSA. PHMSA remains the authority having jurisdiction over all compliance actions.

To qualify for a Section 60106 of Chapter 601 agreement, the State agency must:

1. Establish an adequate program for record maintenance, reporting, and inspection of pipeline facilities in accordance with the PHMSA approved state inspection plan.
2. Prescribe procedures for the approval of plans of inspection and maintenance that are substantially the same as required under Section 60108 of Chapter 601.
3. Notify PHMSA of any probable violation of a Federal safety standard.
4. Cooperate fully in a system of Federal monitoring of the State agency's program.
5. Submit annual reports concerning the implementation of the program with information required in Section 2.1 (6) (a-g).

2.3 Interstate Agent Agreement

As demonstrated by its participation allowed within the Federal Pipeline Safety Statutes 49 U.S.C. CHAPTER 601 §60106 - State pipeline safety agreements, an interstate agent agrees to follow the practices and procedures in this manual and cooperate fully in the Federal evaluation of the State agency's pipeline safety program. The agent also must meet the training requirements for State agency inspection personnel as outlined in Chapter 4.

Agents ensure that, unless waived by the DOT Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administrator, State agency employees involved in conducting (including supervising the conduct of) inspections under an interstate agent agreement do not have financial interests in any of the pipelines they inspect. Agents must obtain PHMSA approval prior to assuming responsibilities under an interstate agent agreement. They are required to investigate reported safety-related conditions, monitor operator actions to remedy such conditions, and provide status reports to PHMSA. In addition, agents agree to assume responsibility for and carry out inspections as mutually agreed with Region Director, follow PHMSA guidelines on incident coordination and investigation; follow requirements and formats for reports; maintain inspection and accident records; and, in consultation with PHMSA, handle inquiries and release information. Copies of the interstate agent agreement and guidance document on the interstate program are located in Appendix B.

2.4 Time Defined Agreement

PHMSA may need to call upon the State agency to assist in performing a variety of duties on an ad hoc basis. This assistance may include inspection of specific operators, inspection of construction, witness to repairs or testing, or investigation of incidents/accidents.

In some cases, PHMSA's request may involve immediate deployment of State agency staff. To expedite the process, the Region Director will call the State agency's program manager to request that the State agency act on behalf of PHMSA. The call will be followed by a letter formalizing the details of the arrangement complying with applicable parts of the interstate agent agreement.

2.5 Certification/Agreement Forms

In September of each year, PHMSA makes available appropriate forms to each State agency, which is included with the annual grant program application. These forms are provided electronically on the Federal State Tracking and Reporting system (FedSTAR) (See Chapter 10). The electronic application is available over the internet to approved state personnel in the direct support of that State's Pipeline Safety program. Certification and Agreement forms will be completed online in FedSTAR, hardcopy documents printed from the FedSTAR system, signed by the appropriate State official and then mailed to PHMSA Headquarters.

2.6 Progress Report

In February of each year, the State agency must submit a completed progress report and attachments for each gas and/or hazardous liquid program for the previous calendar year. This report must be submitted to PHMSA headquarters. The attachments to the progress report will be used in assessing State agency program performance in conjunction with the results of the PHMSA annual evaluation. A brief description of the gas progress report attachments follows:

2.6.1 Attachment #1: State Jurisdiction and Agent Status

This attachment requires the State agency to indicate those pipeline operator types over which the State agency has jurisdiction under existing law. If a state program has LPG operators which are a combination of private, municipal or master meter operators, a note should be made in comments section on this attachment. (e.g. 4 LPG Private, 5 LPG Master Meter) If the State agency holds interstate agent status from PHMSA or was a temporary interstate agent during the calendar year, the form also requires agent status, the number of interstate operators and the number of interstate inspection units.

2.6.2 Attachment #2: Total State Field Inspection Activity

This attachment requires the State agency to indicate by operator type, and inspection type as outlined in section 5.1, the number of inspection person-days spent during the previous calendar year. Time counted for such activities (including damage prevention enforcement or investigation only for pipeline facilities subject to Part 192, Part 193 and Part 195 regulations) should be reported as a maximum of one inspection person-day for each day devoted to safety issues, regardless of the number of operators visited during that day. (e.g. you may evaluate two operators in the same day and record each inspection visit as 0.5 person-day, or actual fraction of a day, for each operator provided the total does not exceed 1.0 person-day). If the State agency holds interstate agent status from PHMSA or was a temporary interstate agent during the calendar year inspection person days for those activities should be included for the appropriate interstate operator type. Although Drug and Alcohol inspections are completed within a "Standard Inspection", Attachment 2 comments should note a count of the Drug and Alcohol inspections completed during the calendar year. (e.g. 60 of 80 operators D & A inspections completed). Inspection person days for Control Room Management inspections should be included in the Standard Inspections column of Attachment 2 of the annual Progress Report.

2.6.3 Attachment #3: Facilities Subject to State Safety Jurisdiction

This attachment requires the business name and address of each pipeline operator subject to State agency's jurisdiction as of December 31 of the previous year. If the State agency holds interstate agent status from PHMSA, or was a temporary interstate agent during the calendar year, the form also requires a list of interstate operators inspected, operator type, and number of inspection units for each operator. The operators and inspection units listed should only include those as defined by federal pipeline regulations and should not include extended jurisdiction by state regulation.

2.6.4 Attachment #4: Pipeline Incidents/Accidents

This attachment requires a summary or report of incidents/accidents investigated by or reported to the State agency. These are natural gas incidents as defined in 49 CFR Part 191 and hazardous liquid accidents as defined in 49 CFR Part 195.

2.6.5 Attachment #5: State Compliance Actions

This attachment provides a summary of probable violations of pipeline safety regulations, compliance actions and civil penalties initiated by the State agency during the previous calendar year. The summary should not include counts for probable violations, compliance actions and civil penalties of State damage prevention laws/regulations.

2.6.6 Attachment #6: State Record Maintenance and Reporting

This attachment requires a list of records and reports maintained and required by the State agency.

2.6.7 Attachment #7: State Employees Directly Involved in the Pipeline Safety Program

This attachment requires a list by name, title, percent of time, months in program and qualification category of each inspector or supervisor directly involved in the pipeline safety program during the prior year. It also requires the month and year each inspector or supervisor successfully completed required training classes offered by TQ. Furthermore, it requires a summary of the number of all staff (managers/supervisors, inspectors/investigators, damage prevention/technical and administrative) working on the pipeline safety program and the person-years devoted to the program during the prior year. If a person listed as a Supervisor in Attachment 7 conducts inspection duties for which inspection person days are included in Attachment 2, time spent as a Supervisor and Inspector/Investigator should be apportioned accordingly in Attachment 7. (See table 4.1 for State Inspector Qualification Categories)

2.6.8 Attachment #8: State Compliance with Federal Requirements

This attachment requires that the State agency indicate whether it is in compliance with applicable Federal pipeline safety requirements. It also requests that the State agency indicate the frequency its Legislature meets in general session. This information is used by PHMSA to determine whether applicable Federal regulations have been adopted within 24 months of the effective date or two general sessions of the State Legislature, whichever is longer.

2.6.9 [RESERVED]

2.6.10 Attachment #10: Performance and Damage Prevention Questions

This attachment asks each state program to outline any planned performance goals along with stating what accomplishments the state has made on damage prevention efforts.

3 State Regulatory Responsibility

3.1 Adoption of Federal Regulations and Requirements

A State agency participating in the pipeline safety program under a certification is required to adopt Federal pipeline safety regulations or take steps to adopt such regulations. Adoption of applicable Federal regulations may be automatic, require State rulemaking actions, or necessitate State legislative action, and should be adopted within 24 months of the effective date or two general sessions of the State Legislature, whichever is longer. In addition, a State agency may issue additional or more stringent standards concerning intrastate pipelines as long as they are compatible with Federal regulations. Any interpretation of a regulation adopted by a State agency must not conflict with any opinion/interpretation issued by PHMSA.

3.2 Waiver of Federal Regulations

3.2.1 Interstate Pipelines

Waivers of Federal regulations concerning interstate facilities may be considered only by PHMSA. Interstate agents may not consider such waivers. PHMSA will consult with the interstate agent when an interstate operator requests a waiver.

3.2.2 Intrastate Pipelines

Upon application by an operator, a State agency may consider a waiver of pipeline safety requirements subject to PHMSA concurrence. A waiver may be granted when it is not practical for an operator to comply with a regulation of general applicability. The State agency is encouraged to consult with PHMSA on the appropriateness of granting a waiver before formal action is taken. PHMSA may require additional considerations or conditions to be included in the State's approval of the waiver. The inclusion of these considerations or conditions in the State's written approval could avoid PHMSA's objection to the waiver during PHMSA's 60 day deliberative process.

If a State agency finds that a waiver request is consistent with pipeline safety and is justified, it may issue written approval under such terms and conditions as are appropriate. Written approval should include a statement of reasons for granting the waiver.

If a State agency finds that a waiver request is not consistent with pipeline safety or is not otherwise justified, it must issue written denial of the request. Written denial should include a statement of reasons.

A State agency must notify PHMSA in writing by registered or certified mail of each waiver granted by the State. Each notice must provide the following information:

1. The name, address, and telephone number of the applicant
2. The safety regulation involved
3. A description of the pipeline facilities involved
4. The justification for approving the waiver, including the reasons why the regulations are not appropriate and why the waiver is consistent with pipeline safety
5. A copy of the State agency's order or letter to the applicant
6. All correspondence concerning waivers should be addressed to:

Jeffrey D. Wiese, Associate Administrator for Pipeline Safety
U.S. Department of Transportation
Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration
1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE
Second Floor, East Building
Washington, DC 20590

PHMSA will acknowledge receipt of each notice and consider each in the order it was received. PHMSA may provide further opportunity for public comment.

If PHMSA does not object to the waiver, it will so notify the State agency. The waiver is effective upon approval by PHMSA or no action by PHMSA 60 days after the receipt of waiver from State agency. If, before a waiver is to become effective, PHMSA notifies the State agency that it objects to the waiver, the action granting the waiver will be stayed. PHMSA will then allow the State agency an opportunity to present its arguments with opportunity for a hearing. Thereafter, PHMSA will make the final determination whether the waiver may be granted and will notify the State agency of its decision.

In the event of an emergency waiver, the PHMSA written notice and hearing requirements may be omitted if the State agency finds that notice is impracticable, unnecessary, or not in the public interest. However, the State agency must immediately notify PHMSA's Director, State Programs of its decision to grant the emergency waiver and follow up with written notification to the Director with 48 hours. After granting the emergency waiver, the State agency must investigate the circumstances causing the specific emergency and require the operator to take action to prevent its reoccurrence in the

future. Each state should follow the emergency waiver methods prescribed in section 60118(c) (2) of the Pipeline Safety Act (See Appendix A).For all waivers in effect, State agencies are required to verify that the conditions of those waivers are being met. This includes having the operator amend procedures. Where appropriate, State Agencies must terminate a waiver if it is no longer valid. For all waivers that are no longer in effect (e.g. project is completed, time frame has expired, State agency termination, code change), State agencies must notify PHMSA Standards and Regulations Division that the waiver is no longer in effect.

4 Personnel

4.1 Individual Qualifications

Each State agency should be staffed with qualified personnel who are experienced in pipeline safety operations and/or have an educational background in engineering or related technical fields. Personnel with less than these minimum qualifications may be hired provided the State agency takes immediate steps (scheduling TQ classes as available) to provide training opportunities to meet the required level of competency. Staff should not be permitted to conduct independent activities until it is determined that they have demonstrated the ability and proficiency to perform their duties satisfactorily. PHMSA has defined five qualifications categories for program staff. (See Table 4-1)

Each State agency shall ensure the program manager or supervisor is knowledgeable of pipeline safety technology, enforcement applications, and administrative procedures (i.e. PHMSA Grant-in-aid process, etc.). Each program manager or supervisor shall obtain the necessary knowledge by completing the mandatory TQ courses listed below, and in Appendix C "Required Training and Qualification Courses." Program managers or supervisors will have a period of five years from the latter of January 1, 2009 or the date of their appointment to complete the required training courses. Supervisor means those individuals as defined in the Glossary. If any post test score of a required course is below 60, the individual must reenroll in the next available class for the required course and achieve a post test score of 70 or above (If the post test score is between 60 and 69 a posttest retake may be completed - see 4.4.2). Course prerequisites must also be met before attending the training class.

- **PHMSA-PL1250** ***Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course***
- **PHMSA-PL1255** ***Gas Pressure Regulation & Overpressure Protection Course***
- **PHMSA-PL1310** ***Plastic and Composite Materials Course***
- **PHMSA-PL3242** ***Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course***
- **PHMSA-PL3256** ***Failure Investigation Pipeline Failure Investigation Techniques Course***
- **PHMSA-PL3293** ***Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course***
- **PHMSA-PL3257** ***Pipeline Safety Regulation Application and Compliance Procedures Course***
- **PHMSA-PL2258** ***Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course (Hazardous Liquid Programs Only)***

- **PHMSA-PL3275 / PHMSA-PL2284** ***Current HAZWOPER Certification (Hazardous Liquid Programs Only)***

PHMSA provides an orientation session for newly appointed program managers. PHMSA may also conduct an orientation session for existing program managers upon request. Requests for orientation sessions must be provided to the PHMSA Director of State Programs. Orientation sessions will be scheduled upon the availability of resources.

Chapter 60124 requires that DOT report the qualifications and number of State agency pipeline safety staff in its bi-annual report to Congress. This information is collected on an attachment to the annual progress report.

4.2 State Agency Base Staffing Level

To meet the State agency's commitment to pipeline safety, each State agency must maintain an adequate, base-level number of pipeline safety inspectors. The staffing level is arrived at by use of the staffing formula and additional considerations as outlined below. An alternate staffing level is also available by petition to PHMSA as described in section 4.2.2. Exhibits 4-1, 4-2, and 4-3 display staffing formulas that should be used as guidelines for calculating the total number of technical person-years (PY) for a gas program, a hazardous liquids program, or a combined gas and hazardous liquids program, respectively. The exhibit tables, from which the formulas are calculated, reflect physical and tangible characteristics common to all programs (i.e., number of jurisdictional services, miles of mains and transmission facilities, and number of inspection units). A sample staffing formula determination for a combined gas and liquid program is shown in Exhibit 4-4.

4.2.1 Additional considerations to State Agency staffing level

Additional considerations particular or unique to an individual State agency program may need to be addressed to determine the appropriate number of inspectors. These considerations include:

1. Urban areas
2. Environmentally sensitive areas (e.g., water supply)
3. Liquefied natural gas (LNG) facilities
4. Age and material composition of pipelines
5. Travel (large geographic area to cover)

6. Damage prevention program (e.g., extent of State agency involvement in enforcement)
7. Level of inspection (municipal, master meter and LPG)
8. Definition/size of inspection units (see Glossary)
9. New construction activity
10. Interstate Agent Participation

The staffing level derived from the staffing formulas and the additional consideration listed above pertains only to the necessary number of pipeline safety inspectors. The staff level does not include supervisory or clerical personnel, nor does it include staff requirements for inspection of pipeline facilities that are not covered by Chapter 601. The staffing level will be evaluated by PHMSA during its annual evaluation of the State agency's program. The final determination as to the appropriateness of a State agency's staffing level rests with the Associate Administrator for Pipeline Safety.

4.2.2 Alternate State Agency staffing level

The State agency upon their initiative or notification of recalculation by PHMSA on the staffing level can petition Director of State Programs for an alternate staffing level. The petition should contain detailed information on the reason(s) for a change. The Director of State Programs reviews the document and makes a decision to grant the alternative staffing level. Written approval or denial is sent to the requesting State agency. If denied an appeal may be submitted to the PHMSA Associate Administrator of Pipeline Safety for further consideration.

Table 4-1 - Categories and Qualifications for State Agency Inspectors

Category		Qualifications
I		• Has an engineering degree from an accredited engineering school or is a registered professional engineer *and* • Has a minimum of 3 years' experience in gas or liquid pipelines or the enforcement of pipeline safety regulations at the Federal or State level *and* • Has received a completion certificate for all the applicable training at TQ or has received a waiver from PHMSA for applicable training not taken
II	A	• Has an engineering degree from an accredited engineering school *and* • Has received a completion certificate for all the applicable training at TQ or has received a waiver from PHMSA for applicable training not taken
	B	• Is a registered professional engineer *and* • Has received a completion certificate for all the applicable training at TQ or has received a waiver from PHMSA for applicable training not taken
	C	• Has a minimum of 5 years of experience in gas or liquid pipelines or the enforcement of pipeline safety regulations at the Federal or State level *and* • Has received a completion certificate for all the applicable training at TQ or has received a waiver from PHMSA for applicable training not taken
	D	• Has a minimum of 10 years of experience in gas or liquid pipelines or the enforcement of pipeline safety regulations at the Federal or State level *and* • Has received a completion certificate for at least half the applicable training at TQ or has received a waiver from PHMSA for applicable training not taken
III		• Has a college degree or • Has a minimum or 5 years of experience in gas or liquid pipelines or the enforcement of pipeline safety regulations at the Federal or State level
IV		• Has less than 5 years of experience in gas or liquid pipelines or the enforcement of pipeline safety regulations at the Federal or State level
V		• Has less than 1 year of experience in gas or liquid pipelines or the enforcement of pipeline safety regulations at the Federal or State level

Exhibit 4-1. Staffing Formula for Gas Program

The total number of technical person-years (PY) suggested for the natural gas program is derived from the following formula, which is calculated from the table below:

PY (Gas) = [(Category 1 + Category 2 + Category 3)/3] + Category 4

1	1A	Number of jurisdictional service lines	States with 675,000 or fewer jurisdictional service lines	PY = 0.5 + [(number of service lines) / 200,000]
	1B		States with more than 675,000 jurisdictional service lines	PY = 3.9 + [(number of service lines – 675,000) / 1,000,000]
2	2A	Miles of mains and transmission lines: includes number of miles of jurisdictional intrastate mains and transmission lines and regulated gathering lines; includes miles of interstate pipeline facilities if State is interstate agent	States with 10,000 or fewer miles of pipeline	PY = 0.5 + [(number of intramiles + number of intermiles) / 4,000]
	2B		States with more than 10,000 miles of pipeline	PY = 3.0 + [(number of intramiles + number of intermiles – 10,000) / 15,000]
3		Number of jurisdictional inspection units	Excludes master meter and LPG. Also may exclude transmission units of distribution operators where inspections of transmission facilities can be performed concurrently in an inspection of the operator's distribution facilities.	PY = 0.5 + [(number of inspection units) / 20]
4		Number of Jurisdictional master meter and LPG inspection units	Does not include those inspection units included in Category 3	PY = [(number of master meter and LPG inspection units) / 187] / 5

Exhibit 4-2. Categories and Qualifications for State Agency Inspectors

The total number of technical person-years (PY) suggested for the hazardous liquids program is derived from the following formula, which is calculated from the table below:

PY = [Category 2 + Category 3] / 2

Category		Description	Calculation
2	2A	States with fewer than 300 miles of jurisdictional hazardous liquid pipelines	PY = (number of intramiles + number of intermiles) / 4,000
	2B	States with 300 to 10,000 miles of jurisdictional hazardous liquid pipelines	PY = 0.5 + [(number of intramiles + number of intermiles) / 4,000]
	2C	States with more than 10,000 miles of jurisdictional hazardous liquid pipelines.	PY = 3.0 + [([number of intramiles + number of intermiles] – 10,000) / 15,000]
3	3A	Number of jurisdictional hazardous liquid inspection units for states with fewer than 300 miles of jurisdictional hazardous liquid pipelines.	PY = (number of inspection units) / 20
	3B	Number of jurisdictional hazardous liquid inspection units for states with 300 or more miles of jurisdictional hazardous liquid pipelines.	PY = 0.5 + [(number of inspection units) / 20]

Exhibit 4-3. Staffing Formula for Combination Program

The total number of technical person-years (PY) suggested for the combined gas and hazardous liquids program is derived from the following formula:
Total PY (Gas and Liquid) = PY (Gas) + PY (Liquid)

Exhibit 4-4. Sample Staffing Formula Determination

State: New Carolina (New Carolina does not act as an interstate agent)

Type of Program(s): Section 60105 Gas and Liquid Certification

Gas Program Data

No. of jurisdictional service lines: 822,805
Miles of jurisdictional main: 15,830
Miles of jurisdictional intrastate transmission and gathering lines: 10,271
Miles of jurisdictional interstate transmission and gathering lines: 0 (not an agent)
No. of inspection units (except master meter and LPG): 189
No. of master meter and LPG inspection units: 100

Calculation of Technical Person-Years for Gas Program

Category 1: Jurisdictional service lines

Category 1A: States with 675,000 or fewer service lines (N/A)

Category 1B: States with more than 675,000 service lines

PY = 3.9 + [(822,805 - 675,000) / 1,000,000] = 4.05

Category 2: Miles of mains and transmission lines

Category 2A: States with 10,000 or fewer miles of pipeline (N/A)

Category 2B: States with more than 10,000 miles of pipeline

PY = 3.0 + [([15,830 + 10,271] - 10,000) / 15,000] = 4.07

Category 3: Jurisdictional inspection units (excluding Category 4 inspection units)

PY = 0.5 + (189 / 20) = 9.95

Category 4: Jurisdictional master meter and LPG sales inspection units

PY = (100/187)/5 = 0.11

Total Projected Person-Years for Gas Program:

PY (Gas) = [(4.05 + 4.07 + 9.95) / 3] + 0.11 = 6.13

4.2.2 Exhibit 4-4. Sample Staffing Formula Determination (continued)

Liquid Program Data
Miles of jurisdictional intrastate pipelines: 3,200 Miles of jurisdictional interstate pipelines: 0 (not an agent) No. of jurisdictional inspection units: 15
Calculation of Technical Person-Years for Liquid Program
Category 2: Miles of jurisdictional hazardous liquid pipelines
Category 2B: States with 300 to 10,000 miles of jurisdictional hazardous liquid pipelines
PY = 0.5 + (3,200 / 4,000) = 1.30
Category 3B: Number of jurisdictional hazardous liquid inspection units for states with 300 or more miles of jurisdictional hazardous liquid pipelines.
PY = 0.5 + (15 / 20) = 1.25
Total Projected Person-Years for Hazardous Liquid Program:
PY (Liquid) = (1.30 + 1.25) / 2 = 1.28
Calculation of Technical Person-Years for Combined Gas and Liquid Program
Total PY = 6.13 (Gas) + 1.28 (Liquid) = 7.41, or 8 Person-Years

4.3 Allocation of Effort

Each full-time pipeline safety inspector must devote a minimum of 85 inspection person-days (see definition) to pipeline safety compliance activities each calendar year. Staff that devotes only a portion of their time to compliance activities should produce a corresponding percentage of inspection person-days. The level of inspection effort reported by the State agency will be reviewed by PHMSA during annual evaluation of the State agency's program.

4.4 Training

The Office of Inspector Training and Qualifications (TQ) provides nationwide training and technical assistance in support of the Pipeline Hazardous Materials Safety Administration, Office of Pipeline Safety (OPS), and their efforts to assure safety in the transportation of gas and hazardous liquids in the nation's pipelines. TQ develops and delivers a number of training courses

that are directly related to the enforcement of the various pipeline safety regulations. Instructors for these courses are permanent TQ employees as well as other associate staff from government and industry.

All pipeline safety training offered by TQ is performance-oriented, and instruction consists of lectures, written material, group discussion, and video and slide/tape presentations. Opportunities to apply the classroom instruction to practical situations are provided through group or individual "hands-on" lab work projects. The individual courses offered generally cover a specific area of the pipeline safety regulations. Upon completion of each instructor led training course, a Certificate of Completion is awarded.

4.4.1 Required Training

To ensure that each inspector has knowledge of minimum Federal pipeline safety regulations, each individual must attend all required courses within a period of 3 years (successfully complete within 5 years) from the start of the first available course in the pipeline safety program. Individuals whose first available course date preceded January 1, 2008 must successfully complete all required courses no later than December 31, 2013. In the event a required course was not scheduled by TQ within the 3 year requirement, an inspector must have been registered or waitlisted for the training to be considered as meeting training requirements. If any post test score of a required course is below 60, the individual must reenroll in the next available class for the required course and achieve a post test score of 70 or above (If the post test score is between 60 and 69 a posttest retake may be completed - see 4.4.2). A TQ course listing and table of required training is found in Appendix C. Course prerequisites **must** be successfully met before a student can attend the training class.

Lead inspectors on Standard Inspections must obtain the necessary qualifications as described in the Appendix C section titled "Guidelines for Determining Minimum Qualifications of State Agency Lead Inspectors to Conduct Standard Inspections"

Lead Inspectors on OQ & IMP inspections must successfully complete required TQ courses prior to conducting any inspection of that type. (See Appendix C) At least one inspector from each state program must successfully complete the TQ sponsored Root Cause/Incident Investigation course.

Damage Prevention technicians/engineers may attend TQ courses if space is available taking into consideration all inspectors or engineers will be scheduled first for all required courses. The purpose in attendance of the

course(s) is for personal safety and gain knowledge to recognize possible pipeline safety violations.

4.4.2 Course Re-Testing

An email request for a posttest retake must be sent from the program manager to the TQ Director. The retake will be proctored by TQ staff upon a return visit to the PHMSA TQ Training Center in Oklahoma City. The retake should be completed while at TQ for other training. Courses exempt from test retakes are "Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems" and "Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems". Test retakes for the remaining courses will be considered for scores between 60 and 69.

4.4.3 Waivers from Training

PHMSA will consider granting a waiver from the recommended 3-year training period or from initial attendance at individual TQ courses on a case-by-case basis. Descriptions of extension of time and permanent waivers follow.

- **Extension of Time Waiver** - A State agency may request an extension of time waiver if an inspector cannot complete a required course within the 3-year period because of serious illness, maternity leave, or uncontrollable workload demands (e.g., involvement in accident investigation). In the event that an inspector cannot complete a required course within the 3-year period because class slots are not available, the State agency must include TQ verification of the class status and the date of the State agency's registration submittal.

- **Permanent Waiver** - A State agency may request a permanent waiver if an inspector has had previous training, education, or on-the-job experience that provides an equivalent level of knowledge presented in the course. The State agency must clearly demonstrate that the inspector's training is equivalent to the required TQ training. If an inspector take a similar job in another State agency's pipeline safety program, TQ training credits will be transferred to the new State agency.

4.4.4 Procedures for Requesting a Training Waiver

1. The State agency program manager petitions the Director of State Programs requesting waiver of the requirements. This request includes justification and must specify whether it is for an extension of time or permanent waiver. An extension of time waiver should not be requested sooner than the calendar year within which the 3 year grace period ends. An extension of time waiver request

should include the proposed date to which the training requirement would be extended.

2. The Director of State Programs reviews the package, with concurrence of the Director of Training and Qualification, and makes a decision on whether to grant the waiver. Written approval or denial is sent to the requesting State agency. A copy of this response is sent to TQ. If denied an appeal may be submitted to the PHMSA Associate Administrator of Pipeline Safety for further consideration.

4.5 Continuing Education and State Inspector Mentoring Program

In addition to the required TQ pipeline safety courses, the State agency is encouraged to continue to send its safety inspectors to TQ classes, industry-sponsored seminars, and other pipeline safety courses. Such a continuing education program will provide for a well-rounded, technically up-to-date training experience.

In coordination between PHMSA and NAPSR a mentoring program for state inspectors is established to provide additional training opportunities. The program is described in Appendix H.

4.6 Changes in State Program Personnel

Any official change in the State Program Manager shall be communicated immediately to PHMSA Director of State Programs and respective PHMSA RD. Any contact information, names of personnel affected and transition plan shall be communicated, if known. This notification shall be in writing and from the head of the State Agency.

In addition, each state shall notify PHMSA TQ and PHMSA Director of State Programs as soon as practical of any changes to their pipeline inspection staff so training records and database(s) access may be updated accordingly. Training requests for inspectors should be added immediately into the TQ training database so enrollments can be made into required TQ training courses so resources are made available to accommodate the needs of all states. The PHMSA Director of State Programs will request the appropriate database administrator to remove access for any departed inspection staff member(s). State agencies can obtain a form to complete by navigating to the User Access Forms on the NAPSR private site. Once in User Access Forms click through the following links in sequence:

- NAPSR Team Site, Home Page, left side Quick Link, PHMSA User Request Access Forms link/folder.

- Fill in the appropriate information to add, delete, or update an employee.
  Email the form to UserAccessRequest@napsr.net. The email must come from the State Pipeline Safety Program Manager for internal control purposes.

5 Inspection and Compliance Program

5.1 Inspection

Inspections of pipeline operators must be made in a positive, constructive, and comprehensive manner. States may obtain technical support for addressing any inspection related issues by contacting your State Liaison, Region Director, or Director of State Programs. The effectiveness of the State agency's pipeline safety efforts depends on information obtained through inspections and evaluation of operator compliance. Each State agency must, therefore, have a current written plan for its pipeline safety program. At a minimum, the plan should include the following eight elements:

1. **Operator data** - Each State agency must maintain a list of the name and mailing address of each jurisdictional operator. The official address for each operator should be the one to which all pipeline-safety-related correspondence is sent and considered the official notice to the operator. In addition, information about the pipeline location and/or service areas should be maintained.

2. **Procedures for determining inspection priorities** - Each State agency must develop a risk-based procedure for scheduling when an inspection unit is to be evaluated. PHMSA has developed web based training "PHMSA-PL1RA Introduction to Risk Assessment Methods" to provide background material for understanding risk located at tqonline.sabanow.net/Saba/Web/Main under Web-Based Training. Appendix S contains a sample risk prioritization model that can be followed to incorporate a risk based procedure into a written plan. This procedure should provide for the establishment of an inspection priority list and consider the following data-driven criteria:

    a. The length of time since the last inspection. Beginning calendar year 2015 a state program must complete an inspection of each operator's inspection units within a five year time interval for the following inspection types:

        i. Standard (General Code Compliance)

        ii. IMP – Integrity Management

        iii. OQ - Operator Qualification

b. The history of the inspection unit (leak history, prior noncompliance, accident/incident history, and any other information available from the operator's annual reports, etc.)

c. Internal and external events affecting the inspection unit (construction, recent changes in operator personnel or operating procedures, etc.)

d. For large operators, rotation of locations inspected

e. For calendar years 2013 and 2014 priorities should consider PHMSA's expectations that Public Awareness Program Effectiveness Inspections are completed by December 31, 2013 and initial inspections of Distribution Integrity Management Programs are completed by December 31, 2014.

3. **Written procedures/guidelines for Inspectors covering each type of required inspection.** To ensure the efficient, effective and consistent completion of state conducted inspection activities the State Pipeline Safety Program must develop detailed written procedures for reviewing operator compliance with the State and Federal pipeline safety regulations.

The procedures must provide detailed guidance for inspectors conducting each type of inspection and when appropriate cover the following key inspection activities:

a. **Pre-Inspection Planning**: Those activities conducted by the inspector prior to conducting a quality in-depth inspection. Pre-Inspection Planning should include: 1) Directions for acquiring the appropriate documents, forms, equipment, and personal protection equipment needed for the type of inspection being conducted; 2) Directions for reviewing the operator's available information in state files and state/federal databases to become familiar with the operator's system and inspection issues; 3) Conduct a review of previous inspection reports including violations cited to identify past inspection issues; the review may require additional follow-up actions; and 4) Directions for providing operator notification of the inspection, coordinating expectations with the operator, and scheduling the inspection visit.

b. **Inspection Activities:** Those activities required for conducting a thorough and comprehensive inspection. Inspection Activities should include: 1) Directions for conducting an opening interview with the operators' representatives present at the inspection visit; 2) Directions for reviewing operator procedures, records, and pipeline facilities in the field; 3) Directions for completing inspection documentation; 4) Directions for conducting an exit interview with the operator's representatives; 5) Instructions for documenting the potential enforcement issues found during the inspection and discussion with the operator's representatives on the findings, and; 6) Directions on access to operator's records, pipeline facilities or requesting from the operator clarification on documentation.

c. **Post Inspection Activities**: Those activities required after an inspection is completed. Post Inspection Activities should include: 1) Verification all required data points are uploaded or entered into the proper state and federal data bases within a reasonable time; 2) Instructions for the gathering and updating new information concerning the operator; 3) Detailed instructions for completion and filing all necessary paperwork as a result of the inspection, including time limits for processing probable compliance/enforcement action; 4 Detailed instructions for the retention of inspection records and documents including date of destruction if required.

4. **Written procedures that provide for methodical, systematic, comprehensive, and consistent inspections**. To properly conduct an inspection of an operator's facilities, an inspector shall utilize an inspection form or checklist referenced to the applicable Federal and/or State regulations. Federal Inspection forms will be updated at times when PHMSA issues regulatory changes. The most recent inspection form revision can be accessed in the PHMSA Common Forms section of FedSTAR. At a minimum, an inspection plan should cover the following types of inspections:

   a. Standard (General Code Compliance) – a comprehensive and thorough review of an operator's compliance records, operations and maintenance plans, emergency procedures, public awareness plans, drug and alcohol programs and pipeline facilities. This would include, at a minimum, an evaluation of such items as corrosion control, leakage

surveys, overpressure protection and pressure regulating equipment, odorization levels and equipment, repaired and/or active leaks, emergency valves, emergency response etc. This includes:

i. Any field verification of an operator's compliance records and activities relating to LNG facilities.

ii. Individual day(s) exclusively inspecting any specific item under a Standard inspection. For example, exclusive day(s) inspecting/evaluating specific items such as regulator stations, valves, odorization, leak surveys, corrosion, etc.

iii. A comprehensive review of all components should be completed within a time period specified by the state program procedure manual.

iv. Any inspection would be considered a Standard Inspection unless otherwise noted in b. through h. below:

v. A count of the total number of Drug and Alcohol inspections completed (number of operators) should be kept and noted on Attachment 2 of the annual program progress report.

b. Construction – this includes construction activities, evaluation of design and the integrity testing of new or replacement facilities.

c. Operator Training –this would include a supervisor/inspector /investigator, damage prevention/technical staff member making a requested and announced presentation at an operators' training/safety meeting, gas/liquid association seminar/conference, damage prevention conferences or TQ seminar pertaining to the Pipeline Safety Regulations that are enforced by your state agency. Training may be conducted on location or a common site for multiple operators.

d. IMP - Integrity Management– these are inspections involving integrity management inspections on Hazardous Liquid, Gas Transmission and Gas Distribution lines. This shall include reporting results into federal database. Failure

to upload completed IMP inspection protocol forms into the database may result in the loss of annual program evaluation point(s). The integrity management database can be accessed with a username and password at:

http://primis.phmsa.dot.gov/gasimp/home.gim (gas transmission)

http://primis.phmsa.dot.gov/imdb/home.imd (hazardous liquid)

https://opsweb.phmsa.dot.gov/papei/default.asp (DIMP)

Any state program requiring assistance with usernames, passwords and other technical issues should contact PHMSA State Programs. A tutorial link is available on the front page of each site, which explains how to upload files to the database. All inspection documents and communication with operators should be submitted in a timely manner.

e. OQ - Operator Qualification – these are inspections of an operator's plans using the Federal Protocol Elements. This shall include reporting results into federal database. Failure to upload completed OQ inspection protocol forms into the database may result in the loss of annual program evaluation point(s). If the inspection is spent primarily doing OQ Protocol Element 9 activities, the time should be reported in this category, otherwise report time in the respective category. OQ inspection results (including Protocol Element 9 only) can be reviewed and uploaded at:

https://primis.phmsa.dot.gov/oqdb

Any state program requiring assistance with usernames, passwords and other technical issues should contact PHMSA State Programs. A tutorial link is available on the front page of each site, which explains how to upload files to the database. All inspection documents (including Protocol Element 9 only inspections) and communication with operators should be submitted in a timely manner.

f. Investigating Incidents/Accidents – this would include any Incident/Accident activities, including any pertinent follow-up investigative activities.

g. Damage Prevention Activities – Inspection and enforcement activities related to inspections and enforcement of Part 192.614 or Part 195.442.

h. Compliance Follow-up – inspections or evaluations to see if actions are completed as requested to an operator from a previous inspection or compliance action.

i. Control Room Management – inspections of requirements of 192.621 or 195.446. Inspection person days should be included in the Standard Inspections column of Attachment 2 of the annual Progress Report(s) until the Progress Report is revised to include a column for Control Room Management inspections.

5. **Procedures for notifying an operator when noncompliance is identified**. Upon completion of an inspection, the operator must be notified of the results of the inspection. This notification shall consist of an exit interview with appropriate staff and written notice to the office and/or authorized official identifying any noncompliance noted during the inspection. The written notice shall be to a company officer if the operator is a private corporation or to the chief executive officer of a locality (e.g. – mayor of a municipality, chairman of the board of a quasi-governmental unit such as a utility district). The operator shall be notified immediately of any hazardous or unsafe situation discovered during the inspection. The state compliance procedures must include that the operator provide a written response within a specified time period for correcting probable violations. The procedures shall include the types of enforcement proceeding available to the State. Examples of enforcement proceedings may be Warning Letters, Notice of Probable Violation, and Compliance Orders. Each enforcement proceeding will have a brief description of the process and when it will be recommended for use.

6. **Procedures for follow-up activities to ensure that proper corrective action has been taken by the operator within a specific time frame after notification of noncompliance**. Depending on the seriousness of the noncompliance and the circumstances involved, a written response from the operator documenting the corrective actions taken may be sufficient. The State agency must conduct follow-up actions when noncompliance

is discovered during an inspection. The determination of the appropriate procedure for ensuring that all noncompliance is corrected is the responsibility of the State agency. However, the State agency must maintain a complete record of each noncompliance found and have a review procedure that will ensure that proper and timely follow-up activity has been completed for each noncompliance.

7. **Recordkeeping procedures to document the results of inspection, follow-up, and compliance actions taken**. The State agency must keep records of all pipeline safety inspections and follow-up activities. Inspection records should include the inspection dates, the operator/inspection unit, the name of the inspector, the location and type of facilities inspected, the names and titles of operator staff contacted at the inspection unit, the regulation sections checked for compliance, and the resulting evaluation conclusions. Follow-up records should include all correspondence or other contact between the State agency and the operator, the results of follow-up inspections, and other information necessary to demonstrate that the noncompliance has been corrected.

8. **National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB) Recommendations.** Each inspection plan should include provisions to ensure any applicable safety recommendations developed by NTSB, and accepted by the Secretary, are followed by pipeline operators under each state jurisdiction. PHMSA expects each state program will ensure operators follow these recommendations and may be included in their annual evaluation in accordance with Part 198.13 (b) (2). Each plan should confirm that all operators are addressing the following NTSB recommendations (if applicable):

   - Did the state review operator procedures for determining if exposed cast iron pipe was examined for evidence of graphitization and if necessary remedial action was taken?

   - Did the state review operator procedures for surveillance of cast iron pipelines, including appropriate action resulting from tracking circumferential cracking failures, study of leakage history, or other unusual operating maintenance condition? (Note: See GPTC Appendix G-18 for guidance)

   - Did the state review operator emergency response procedures for leaks caused by excavation damage near buildings and determine whether the procedures adequately address the possibility of multiple leaks and

underground migration of gas into nearby buildings Refer to 4/12/01 letter from PHMSA in response to NTSB recommendation P-00-20 and P-00-21?

- Did the state review operator records of previous accidents and failures including reported third party damage and leak response to ensure appropriate operator response as required by 192.617 or 195.402(c)(5)?
- Did the state review operator procedures for determining areas of active corrosion on liquid lines in sufficient detail?
- Did the state adequately review for compliance operator procedures for abandoning pipeline facilities and analyzing pipeline accidents to determine their causes?
- Is the state aware of environmentally sensitive areas traversed by or adjacent to hazardous liquid pipelines?

Note: A complete list of components of an operating plan is contained in the Pipeline Safety Program Evaluation form used by PHMSA during the annual evaluation of the State agency's program.

5.2 Compliance

An important aspect of any State agency's compliance program involves the gathering of the necessary evidence for documenting noncompliance. Subsequent to each inspection, the findings should be documented and include an account of the situations encountered during the inspection and a copy of the inspection checklist. The documentation must identify and describe each regulation with which the operator is believed to be in noncompliance. Copies of relevant operator records, statements from operator personnel, photographs, calculations, and all other data pertaining to each issue of noncompliance should be made a part of the documentation.

5.2.1 Procedures for State Agencies with a Section 60105 Certification

When formal compliance action is not deemed appropriate, the State agency may take informal action such as notification letters or reports detailing noncompliance discovered. The notification letters should contain a statement of the agency's enforcement authority and authorized civil penalty amounts provided by state statute. In informal actions, the operator should be provided an opportunity to respond to the allegations. Because of the wide variation in State laws and administrative procedures, each State agency must summarize its formal compliance process in the State agency's written program procedures.

5.2.2 Procedures for State Agencies with a Section 60106 Agreement or Interstate Agents

A State agency operating under the authority of the agreement sections of Chapter 601 is a limited representative of PHMSA. A copy of the inspection documentation identifying a noncompliance in a format acceptable to the RD must be submitted within 60 days to the appropriate Region Office. The State agency should also advise the operator that there is a reason to believe that a noncompliance exists and that this issue has been referred to the PHMSA Region Office for further action.

If, after reviewing the available information, the RD determines that a noncompliance does exist, the RD will notify the operator in writing and proceed with appropriate compliance action. The State agency will be sent a copy of the notice letter and will be kept informed of the case progress and resolution.

5.2.2.1 PHMSA ORDERS TO OPERATORS

If PHMSA decides that a pipeline facility is hazardous, PHMSA will order the operator to take necessary action. On occasion, PHMSA will waive the requirements for notice and a hearing, and will immediately issue a corrective action order. This action is taken when PHMSA decides that failure to issue an order expeditiously would result in serious harm to life, property, and/or the environment. After the order is issued, the operator will have an opportunity for a hearing.

6 Failure Investigation and Safety-Related Conditions

6.1 Investigation of Pipeline Failures

Pursuant to Federal/State regulations, a State agency shall conduct an investigation of each significant or reportable incident/accident involving jurisdictional pipeline facilities. A primary objective of the investigation activities is to minimize the possibility of recurrence and to institute enforcement action where noncompliance with the safety standards has occurred.

PHMSA will notify the State agency when it receives a report of a failure of pipeline facilities in that State. Region Office staff will relate all details of the failure provided to DOT in accordance with the reporting requirements under 49 CFR, Parts 191, 193, or 195. The State agency and Region Office staff should maintain close contact until the investigation is completed. The State agency should communicate its plans for investigating the incident to the appropriate Regional Duty Officer (DO) and provide updates as directed by the DO. The toll free number, 877-561-7425, is provided for this contact. Upon dialing the toll free number, the caller will receive a menu of DO's or the National Pipeline Incident Coordinator for selection. Once the selection is made, the selected contact will be dialed. As an alternative, the caller may directly dial a DO or the National Pipeline Incident Coordinator at the phone numbers shown below or provide communication to the associated group email addresses:

Eastern Region DO 202-366-1891

opseastern@dot.gov

Southern Region DO 202-366-1892

ChrisTaylor@dot.gov and copy to WayneLemoi@dot.gov

Central Region DO 202-366-1893

PHMSAPHP300AccidentTeam@dot.gov

Southwest Region DO 202-366-1894

PHP400SWRAccidentTeam@dot.gov

Western Region DO 202-366-1895

PHMSAPHP500Response@dot.gov

Alaska Office DO	202-366-1866
National Pipeline Incident Coordinator	202-366-1897

Because Federal and State authority varies and because two organizational elements of the Federal government, DOT and the National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB), have authority regarding pipeline failure investigations, attention must be focused on the jurisdictional responsibilities during investigations. Generally, failures that DOT may investigate fall into one of the three following categories:

1. **PHMSA Sole Authority**: A failure that involves either an interstate facility where a State agency is not serving as an interstate agent or an intrastate facility that is not subject to the jurisdiction of a State agency. Because such failures are not jurisdictional to the State agency, this category of investigation is totally the responsibility of PHMSA and will be conducted by PHMSA staff.

2. **State Agency Sole Authority**: A failure that involves an intrastate facility under the jurisdiction of a State agency covered by Section 60105 of Chapter 601 certification. In such a case, the State agency is the authority having primary responsibility for the investigation. Any Region Office investigator assigned by PHMSA to observe and/or to assist in the State agency's investigation will endeavor to refer all requests for information from the news media and others to the State agency.

3. **Cooperative Efforts**: PHMSA is responsible for investigating a failure that involves an interstate facility where a State agency is serving as an interstate agent; or under a time defined agreement; or an intrastate facility where the State agency is covered by a Section 60106 of Chapter 601 agreement. However, the RD may delegate PHMSA authority to the State agency as needed.

NTSB also investigates pipeline failures so State agency staff should be aware of the Board's responsibilities and authorities. DOT has entered into a Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) with NTSB so that Federal investigations and information-gathering are conducted in an effective and efficient manner. The MOU establishes procedures for the notification of pipeline failures, investigation of failures, and program coordination. In those investigations where a State agency with Section 60105 of Chapter 601 certification and NTSB participate, authority is concurrent. A copy of

the complete text of the DOT-NTSB MOU is located in Appendix D. Further documentation regarding Federal/State cooperation in case of an accident appears as Appendix E.

6.2 Basic Investigative Procedures

In order to conduct an effective incident/accident investigation, State agency staff must be familiar with basic investigative procedures. An investigation requires a thorough knowledge of the design, construction, operation, and maintenance factors involved in pipeline safety. Pipeline Failure Investigation Report forms are made available at **phmsa.dot.gov.**

6.3 Incident Investigation Procedures

Each state program should keep adequate records of notifications of all incidents received. If an onsite investigation of an incident was not made, the state should obtain sufficient information by other means to determine the facts and support the decision not to go on-site. Each state program should also have a mechanism for receiving and responding to after-hours notifications as necessary.

Investigations should be thorough with conclusions and recommendations documented in an acceptable manner. In addition, the state should initiate any applicable enforcement action for violations found during incident investigation(s). Each state program should also assist region office by taking appropriate follow-up actions related to the operator incident reports to ensure accuracy and that the final report has been received by PHMSA.

6.4 Safety-Related Conditions

A pipeline operator is required to file a Safety-Related Condition Report (SRCR) with PHMSA whenever a condition exists that cannot be corrected within 5 working days after the operator determines that a condition exists but not later than 10 working days after the operator discovers the condition.

After the operator files this report, PHMSA will forward a copy of the Safety-Related Condition Report to the State agency. When this issue involves a pipeline jurisdictional to the State agency, the State agency will file all follow up documentation with the RD. The program manager should coordinate with the RD for follow up reporting requirements. Open safety-related condition reports require update reports to be submitted to the Region Office every 30 days until the safety-related condition report is closed. Status reports can be viewed by accessing PHMSA's Pipeline Data Mart (PDM).

https://pdm.phmsa.dot.gov

7 Damage Prevention Program and One Call Notification

As required by PIPES 2006, Section 60134, a State must have an effective damage prevention program or working toward the establishment of a damage prevention program **and** as required by 49 CFR Part 198, Subpart C adopt a one-call notification program that will notify a pipeline operator of excavation activity that could threaten the safety of the pipeline.

7.1 Damage Prevention

As required by Section 60105, for State certification, a State authority must encourage and promote the establishment of a program designed to prevent damage by demolition, excavation, tunneling, or construction activity to the pipeline facilities to which the certification applies that subjects persons who violate the applicable requirements of that program to civil penalties and other enforcement actions that are substantially the same as are provided under this chapter, and addresses the elements in section 60134(b). A State must demonstrate that it has made substantial progress toward establishing such a program, and that such program will meet the requirements of subsection or have an effective damage prevention program that meets the nine element requirements of subsection 60134(b) as listed below:

1. Participation by operators, excavators, and other stakeholders in the development and implementation of methods for establishing and maintaining effective communications between stakeholders from receipt of an excavation notification until successful completion of the excavation, as appropriate.

2. A process for fostering and ensuring the support and partnership of stakeholders, including excavators, operators, locators, designers, and local government in all phases of the program.

3. A process for reviewing the adequacy of a pipeline operator's internal performance measures regarding persons performing locating services and quality assurance programs.

4. Participation by operators, excavators, and other stakeholders in the development and implementation of effective employee training programs to ensure that operators, the one-call center, the enforcing agency, and the excavators have partnered to design and implement training for the employees of operators, excavators, and locators.

5. A process for fostering and ensuring active participation by all stakeholders in public education for damage prevention activities.

6. A process for resolving disputes that defines the State authority's role as a partner and facilitator to resolve issues.

7. Enforcement of State damage prevention laws and regulations for all aspects of the damage prevention process, including public education, and the use of civil penalties for violations assessable by the appropriate State authority.

8. A process for fostering and promoting the use, by all appropriate stakeholders, of improving technologies that may enhance communications, underground pipeline locating capability, and gathering and analyzing information about the accuracy and effectiveness of locating programs.

9. A process for review and analysis of the effectiveness of each program element, including a means for implementing improvements identified by such program reviews.

7.2 One Call Notification

As required by 49 CFR Part 198, Subpart C, a State must adopt a one-call notification program that will notify a pipeline operator of excavation activity that could threaten the safety of the pipeline. A State notification program must require eight minimum standards, which may be found in 49 CFR Section 198.37:

1. Each area of the State that contains underground pipeline facilities must be covered by a one-call notification program.

2. Each one-call notification system must be operated in accordance with Sec. 198.39.

3. Excavators must be required to notify the operational center of the one-call notification system that covers the area of each intended excavation activity and provide the following information:

    a. Name of the person notifying the system.

    b. Name, address and telephone number of the excavator.

    c. Specific location, starting date, and description of the intended excavation activity. However, an excavator must

be allowed to begin an excavation activity in an emergency but, in doing so, required to notify the operation center at the earliest practicable moment.

4. The State must determine whether telephonic and other communications to the operational center of a one-call notification system under paragraph (c) of this section are to be toll free or not.

5. Except with respect to interstate transmission facilities as defined in the pipeline safety laws (49.U.S.C. 60101 et seq.), operators of underground pipeline facilities must be required to participate in the one-call notification systems that cover the areas of the State in which those pipeline facilities are located.

6. Operators of underground pipeline facilities participating in the one-call notification systems must be required to respond in the manner prescribed by Sec. 192.614 (b)(4) through (b)(6) of the chapter to notices of intended excavation activity received from the operational center of a one-call notification system.

7. Persons who operate one-call notification systems or operators of underground pipeline facilities participating or required to participate in the one-call notification systems must be required to notify the public and known excavators in the manner prescribed by Sec. 192.614 (b)(1) and (b)(2) of the chapter of the availability and use of one-call notification systems to locate underground pipeline facilities. However, this paragraph does not apply to persons (including operator's master meters) whose primary activity does not include the production, transportation or marketing of gas or hazardous liquids.

8. Operators of underground pipeline facilities (other than operators of interstate transmission facilities as defined in the pipeline safety laws (49 U.S.C. 60101 et seq.), and interstate pipelines as defined in Sec. 195.2 of the chapter), excavators and persons operate one-call notification systems who violate the applicable requirements of this subpart must be subject to civil penalties and injunctive relief that are substantially the same as are provided under the pipeline safety laws (49 U.S.C. 60101 et seq.).

7.3 Damage Prevention and One-Call Grants

Grants are made available to states for efforts in both State Damage Prevention Programs (SDP) and the State One-Call Grant Programs. Damage Prevention Grants are described along with their eligibility requirements under 49 USC Chapter 601, Section 60134. Grant allocations are determined by PHMSA Administration annually.

The Statute for One-Call notification grant programs is located under 49 USC Chapter 61, which also outlines the authorized grant appropriation in Section 6107. Chapter 61 can be found in Section III of Appendix A. Annual one-call grant guidelines are recommended by the NAPSR Grant Allocation Committee and relayed to all state programs (after PHMSA approval) prior to the opening of the application for this grant.

8 State Agency Program Performance

PHMSA uses two means to assess a State agency's overall performance in the pipeline safety program - an annual program evaluation, and a review of information attached by the State agency to its annual progress report. The evaluation is used primarily to determine performance (e.g., operating practices, quality of State agency inspections, investigations, compliance actions and adequacy of recordkeeping). The progress report attachments are used primarily to determine the State agency's compliance with program requirements (e.g., extent of jurisdiction, inspector qualifications, number of inspectors, number of inspection person-days, adoption of applicable Federal regulations and attendance at Federal/State meetings). A State agency's performance is the major factor considered in allocating grant-in-aid funds each year.

PHMSA and NAPSR developed a list of performance metrics which are published on PHMSA's PRIMIS Website. These metrics can be viewed by all stakeholders in pipeline safety including the public. The intent of the performance metrics are meant to illustrate trends in a state program to provide insight into areas of continuous improvement. The performance metrics are not intended to compare performance across state programs.

8.1 Annual Program Evaluation

The PHMSA annual program evaluation is a review of the State agency's pipeline safety program. It includes an examination of State agency policies, plans, procedures, and records of the previous calendar year as well as the observation of the field inspection of a pipeline operator. Some evaluation form questions relate to NTSB recommendations for which PHMSA has committed to action in the inspections of operators. These questions include a reference to the NTSB recommendation number. Additional information on each recommendation can be viewed in Appendix R or accessed with the recommendation number through the NTSB's web site at http://www.ntsb.gov/safety/safetyrecs.html. The evaluation is usually conducted by PHMSA State Programs (PSP).

PHMSA reviews changes to the program evaluation form with the State agency program managers at Region NAPSR meetings. At the beginning of each calendar year, PHMSA will make available a copy of the final form to each State agency. PSP personnel should notify the State agency in advance of the schedule for the annual evaluation to ensure that the State agency has adequate lead-time to prepare for the evaluation.

The State agency's pipeline safety program will be evaluated for conformance with the procedures in this manual as well as any other specific policies and procedures PHMSA provides to the State agency. The evaluation will include the following:

1. **Verification of progress report attachments**. PSP personnel will review for completeness and accuracy the information provided by the State agency in the attachments to its most current progress report.

2. **Record review**. PSP personnel will review the administration of the program and associated records to support program activities. PSP staff will also evaluate the State agency's financial/budget information submitted in support of the grant-in-aid funding.

3. **Field inspection**. PSP personnel will observe the State agency's inspection of at least one intrastate inspection unit. If the State agency is also an interstate agent, the evaluator may also observe the inspection of an interstate inspection unit. In addition, the RD may target specific areas for review in the field inspection. These areas will be selected in advance in consultation with the program manager. If possible, a different inspector, operator and geographic area should be observed each year.

PSP will conclude the evaluation with a verbal performance review addressing major strengths and weaknesses of the program. Within 60 days after the on-site review, the Director of State Programs should send a letter to the State agency's chairperson (or equivalent) with a copy to the program manager detailing the program's effectiveness in meeting the terms in the State agency's certification/agreement and any policy problems (e.g., overall program performance, jurisdiction status over intrastate operators, staffing level, equipment to carry out program functions, major budgetary or travel restrictions, initiative in seeking necessary legislation or adopting required regulations). Where appropriate, the letter will include recommendations for program improvement. If required the State agency's chairperson will be requested to respond in writing within 60 days and describe actions the State agency proposes to take to address program deficiencies. The Director of State Programs, when appropriate, will include in the letter the contributions and participation in various PHMSA/NAPSR and other committees and work groups of the Program Manager and agency pipeline safety staff. ***Failure to respond in writing within the required timeframe will result in a loss of performance points in the following year's evaluation.***

PSP will also send a copy of the evaluation report and a letter to the State agency program manager addressing programmatic problems (e.g., average number of inspection person-days less than 85 for each full-time inspector, insufficient documentation of inspection forms and records, incorrect completion of progress report attachments, inadequate administrative enforcement procedures, or poor staff communication).

8.2 Compliance with Program Requirements

PSP personnel annually review each state's program performance using the State Evaluation Form. As part of the annual review, the evaluator validates information submitted on the Annual Progress Report. A State agency must respond to questions regarding its compliance with various Federal requirements. If a particular requirement is not applicable (e.g., offshore inspections), the State agency so indicates on the Progress Report and the evaluator notes it where applicable on the State Evaluation Form. If a Federal regulation has been adopted, the State agency indicates the date adopted on the Progress Report. If a Federal regulation has not been adopted, the State agency must either describe on the Progress Report the steps it is taking toward adoption or explain why it is not taking steps toward adoption.

The annual Progress Report validated during the State Evaluation also requests data on the civil penalty levels in effect in the State as of December 31 of the evaluation year, attendance at the NAPSR Region Meeting, and the frequency of the general legislative session. Information on the general legislative session is taken into account when determining if applicable Federal regulations have been adopted within 24 months of the effective date or within two general sessions of the State Legislature.

8.3 Recordkeeping

Recordkeeping is vital to the operation of a pipeline safety program. State program files shall be well organized and accessible (this includes electronic files) At a minimum, the following records should be maintained by the State agency for a period of at least three years from the annual grant closeout date, which is receipt of the Year-End (Final) Payment Request, or as long as the respective state agency requires. (See 49 CFR 18.42 – Appendix K)

1. Written program procedures (see Chapter 5)

2. Inspection reports – Including OQ, IMP, DIMP, Damage Prevention and RP 1162

3. Compliance actions
4. Incident/accident reports
5. Annual reports (gas and liquid programs)
6. Copies of past progress report records
7. Copies of past grant-in-aid funding
8. Staff training
9. Region correspondence
10. NAPSR Meeting attendance
11. Safety-Related Condition Reports
12. Information notices sent to operators

8.4 Attendance at NAPSR Meetings

PHMSA supports NAPSR and recognizes its importance in the Federal/State cooperative pipeline safety effort. The meetings provide an opportunity for the State agencies and PHMSA to discuss common objectives and problems concerning pipeline safety. Each State agency shall send the program manager to the annual Board of Directors Meeting (National Meeting) and appropriate NAPSR Region meetings or risk reduction of grant-in-aid funds. In the event the program manager is unable to attend either of the meetings, the PHMSA Director of State Programs and the appropriate State Liaison shall be notified by Email as soon as possible of the alternate representative. The PHMSA Director of State Programs will determine if a reduction in applicable performance points is appropriate.

In addition to the Region meetings, NAPSR holds an annual National Meeting. The main purpose of the National Meeting, which is attended by the NAPSR Board of Directors, members, and various PHMSA staff, is to develop resolutions and recommendations that will improve the national pipeline safety effort and enhance the working relationship between the States and PHMSA. Following the meeting, the resolutions and recommendations are forwarded to PHMSA, with appropriate personnel then being responsible for returning written responses to NAPSR.

8.5 State Hosted TQ Seminars

Each state agency must host a TQ Seminar within the last three calendar years to educate operators within the state on current regulations. For a TQ Seminar to qualify for the three year requirement, a TQ representative must be present and provide regulatory updates to the audience unless TQ is not able to provide a representative. For states with both natural gas and hazardous liquid programs it would be appropriate to hold a combined seminar. Requests for assistance from PHMSA TQ must be submitted on the TQ training server by the deadline established by PHMSA TQ office. (This is typically at least 4 months in advance of the start of the upcoming federal fiscal year)

9 DOT Grant-in-Aid Program

This chapter describes the application and submission procedures and grant management requirements a State agency must follow to receive the benefits of the natural gas and/or hazardous liquid pipeline safety grant program. It is intended to assist State agencies in applying for and administering Federal grant funds authorized by Chapter 601 Title 49 of the United States Code.

9.1 Scope of Grant

The scope of the grant is to support up to 80 percent of the cost of personnel, equipment and activities reasonably required to carry out inspection and enforcement activities of intrastate pipeline facilities under a certification or agreement with the Administrator or to act as an agent of the Administrator with respect to interstate pipeline facilities. The activities covered are those specifically for the inspection of natural gas or hazardous liquid pipeline facilities to ensure compliance and enforcement as necessary of applicable chapters of Title 49 of the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR).

9.2 Address

Unless directed otherwise by the Director of State Programs, all correspondence concerning the grant program should be addressed to:

Director of State Programs – (c/o Gwendolyn Hill)
U.S. Department of Transportation
Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration
Pipeline Safety - State Programs, PHP-50
1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE
Second Floor, E22-321
Washington, DC 20590
Telephone Number: (202) 366-4595

To avoid damage from DOT's package threat scanning process, all correspondence should be shipped through non US Postal Service shippers such as FedEx, UPS, etc.

9.3 Eligibility

To qualify for Federal grant funds under Section 60107 of Chapter 601, a State agency must participate in the pipeline safety program either under certification in accordance with Section 60105 or under an agreement in accordance with Section 60106 of Chapter 601 Title 49 of the United States Code.

9.4 General Obligations

The State agency assumes responsibility for the administration of the grant program through the application of sound management practices and for seeing that program funds have been expended and accounted for in accordance with program objectives, the *Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award)*, these *Guidelines*, 2 CFR 200 and any other applicable Federal rules and regulations.

In recognizing its own unique combination of staff, facilities and expertise, each participating State agency has the primary responsibility for employing the organization and management techniques necessary to assure proper and efficient administration of the program.

9.5 Application

The purpose of the *Grant Application* is to provide PHMSA with information concerning the State agency's need for Federal financial support for its pipeline safety program. PHMSA will make an application available to each State agency in August of each year. The deadline for filing this application is September 30. (Note: This is a non-negotiable deadline established in Chapter 601 Title 49 of the United States Code. Failure to return the application by this date may result in the loss of grant funds.) To assist PHMSA in determining the funding needs of all State programs, those State agencies that decide NOT to apply for grant funds are also requested to notify PHMSA by September 30. If PHMSA determines that an application is incomplete or insufficient to qualify, PHMSA will advise the State agency of the reason for the disapproval. The State agency must then take appropriate corrective action prior to reapplying.

The Grant Application, which is made available in FedSTAR (https://fedstar.phmsa.dot.gov/FedSTAR/default.aspx), is furnished to each State agency by PHMSA contains multiple sections. These include:

9.5.1 Attachment #1: Description of State Pipeline Safety Program.

This attachment requires a description of all ongoing and planned pipeline safety program activities for which grant reimbursement is requested. This summary must clearly indicate the types of actions to be performed and contain sufficient details to justify the proposed budget. This should include but is not limited to the applicable items from the following list:

- Program Description
  - Miles of Main

- Number of Services
- Miles of Transmission Lines
- Number of Inspection Units
- Number of Operators
- Inspection Frequency by Operator Types

- Expected number of inspection days during upcoming calendar year
  - Summary of Inspection Work Plan
  - Notations should be made of any special projects, etc.
- Notable program activities to be conducted during upcoming calendar year
  - Major construction projects
  - Major enforcement cases that are expected to take large amounts of resources
  - TQ Seminar or other operator training you intend to participate and expected attendance
  - Interstate Agent (if applicable)
- Any legislative proposed, current, or pending activities
  - This should include any damage prevention rulemakings
- Listing of Pipeline Program Staff (Supervisors and Inspectors)– this should include the following
  - Individual Names and titles (enough information should be provided to describe their job duties)
  - If less than 100% what is estimated time to be spent in program
  - Listing of vacancies
  - Listing of hiring expectations
- Listing of Damage Prevention Staff (if applicable)
  - Individual Names and titles or functions (enough information should be provided to describe their job duties)
  -
  - Estimated time spent on underground pipeline damage prevention and methodology used to determine this percentage. (i.e. Pipeline cases/Total Cases)
- List of other Administrative Staff
  - Individual Names and titles or functions (enough information should be provided to describe their job duties)
  - Estimated time spent in support of pipeline program
  - This should include any individuals/positions who will have their salary and benefits submitted as a direct cost applied to the grant reimbursement.
- Listing of projected equipment purchases (this should directly correlate with estimated program budget submitted)

- This should include automobiles and estimated cost of each
- Other intended equipment purchases (i.e. printers, computers or related items)

- Any expected contracts for outside services
  - All contracts must be preapproved and will not be reimbursed without prior approval and copies must be submitted to PHMSA State Programs
- Other relevant program information

9.5.2 Attachment #2: Pipeline Safety Program Estimated Budget.

This attachment requires an estimate of the total expenses related to the State agency's pipeline safety program. It should include all costs directly relating to pipeline safety that the State agency plans for the next calendar year regardless of the funding source. The estimate should be presented so that the costs for each item are readily identifiable as to the budget categories established on the form. All cost estimates should be as realistic as possible. Accurate estimates will reduce the amount of reallocation necessary at the end of the program year and permit PHMSA to more realistically allocate available funds to all State programs. The State agency must notify PHMSA State Programs in writing within thirty (30) days anytime during the year when there is a proposed contract (see Professional Service Costs in 9.16.1) to be executed or there is a substantial change to the scope of the pipeline safety program affecting the approved budget.

9.6 Annual Funding Level

After funds have been appropriated by Congress, PHMSA will process the applications and allocate available funds to those State agencies meeting the program qualifications. Chapter 601 Title 49 of the United States Code limits the Federal contribution to State pipeline safety programs to not more than 80 percent of total program costs. If Congressional appropriations are insufficient to fund all programs at the 80 percent level, the amount allocated to each State will be determined by PHMSA to distribute available funds equitably as prescribed in 49 CFR Part 198, Subpart B.

9.7 Grant Allocation and Percentage of Funding

PHMSA will provide to all state programs a Scoring Document (Grant Allocation Document). This document is provided annually between April and June. The pipeline safety grant **allocation** is a targeted amount of funding a state program may receive for activities during a calendar year providing their actual program expenditures meet the budget estimate submitted in their grant application. Otherwise the state program will receive the percentage of funding for actual program expenses which is listed on the annual Scoring Document (Grant Allocation Document). The percentage of program funding

is determined based on the Grant Allocation Formula (see 9.7.1) and the total amount of appropriated funding provided by PHMSA. The maximum amount of any state program funding is capped at 80 percent as noted in previous section.

Included in the Scoring Document is the Pipeline Safety Grant Allocation Formula - State Performance Criteria sheet. The performance criteria are based on selected data from completed State progress report attachments. The criteria used in assigning points for allocating grant funds are: jurisdiction, inspector qualifications, inspection person-days, adoption of civil penalty requirements, adoption of Federal regulations, one-call requirements, and attendance at NAPSR Region Meetings.

9.7.1 9.7.1 Grant Allocation Formula for Grant Award

Pipeline Safety Grants are awarded based on the following formula:

Grant Award =

State Budget Amount[1] x State Performance Score[2] x Percent Allocation[3]

$$\boldsymbol{Percent\ Allocation}(\mathbf{80\%}\ \boldsymbol{maximum}) = \frac{\boldsymbol{Total\ Available\ Funding}^{4}}{\sum \boldsymbol{All\ Programs}\ (\boldsymbol{State\ Score\ X\ State\ Budget})^{5}}$$

---

[1] State Budget Amount = Calendar Year Budget Estimate Submitted by each State with Grant Application

[2] Annual State Performance Score Outlined in Section 9.7.2

[3] Percent Allocation – This is the maximum percentage of total program costs that can be applied to each grantee. There is an 80% maximum funding limited required by Section 60107 of the Pipeline Safety Act. This formula provides for an equal distribution of available funds in the event appropriated funding is less than required for maximum funding.

[4] Total Available Funding - This is the annual funding provided by congressional appropriation. This would also include any unexpended (carryover) funds available from previous fiscal years.

[5] The combined sum of each State Performance Score multiplied by each State Budget Estimate for all Natural Gas and Hazardous Liquid programs.

9.7.2 State Performance Score

A performance score for each state program is developed annually which determines the maximum amount of funding that a program will receive in each calendar year for which a grant application was submitted. The score can be waived by the Director of State Programs as required to implement program initiatives and improve overall safety program. The formula, outlined in 49 CFR 198.13, is based on state program performance and has a maximum of 100 performance points derived as follows;

1. Fifty points[1] based on information provided in the state's annual progress report attachments which document its activities for the past year (see Appendix Q); and

2. Fifty points[2] based on the annual state program evaluation as described in Section 8.1. A state program will have one year from written notification to correct deficiencies found during an annual state program evaluation before a reduction is applied to its 50 point maximum (Refer to policy statement in Appendix L). Evaluation forms are included as Appendix I for natural gas programs and Appendix J for hazardous liquid programs.

The Administrator assigns weights to various performance factors reflecting program compliance, safety priorities, and national concerns identified by the Administrator and communicated to each State agency. At a minimum, the Administrator considers the following performance factors in allocating funds:

1. Adequacy of state operating practices;

2. Quality of state inspections, investigations. and enforcement/compliance actions;

3. Adequacy of state recordkeeping;

4. Extent of state safety regulatory jurisdiction over pipeline facilities;

---

[1] First fifty points of allocation are based on PHMSA Headquarters evaluation of information received from progress report documents of the previous calendar year of program activities. (i.e. 50% of CY2012 Allocation is based on CY2011 progress report documents of CY2011 activities)

[2] Second fifty points of allocation are based on State Program Personnel Field Evaluation conducted during previous calendar year. (i.e. This 50% of CY2012 Allocation is based on State Program Personnel Field Evaluation conducted during CY2011 of CY2010 activities)

5. Qualifications of state inspectors (consideration will be given to qualification results impacted by inspection staff growth);

6. Number of state inspection person-days;

7. State adoption of applicable federal pipeline safety standards; and,

8. Any other factor the Administrator deems necessary to measure performance.

For the first three years a pipeline safety program exists or for two years when a program reenters the state grant program, the program will be funded at a level agreed upon in advance by the state program and PHMSA. This amount is typically not over 90 percent of maximum funding. This is due to the inability to accurately judge program performance of the state in determining their evaluation score. In addition, programs will also be subject to point deductions for late submission of annual progress report document. Two points will be deducted on progress report score if document is submitted after due date, and four points if more than 30 days late.

Grants are limited to the appropriated funds available. If total state agency requests for grants exceed the funds available, the Administrator prorates each state agency's allocation. This prorated percentage will serve as the maximum funding level available to each state based on actual expenses.

Exhibit 9-1 – Grant Allocation Funding Example

PIPELINE SAFETY GRANT ALLOCATION					
STATE	REQUEST	STATE POINTS	ALLOCATION	PERCENT OF FUNDING	WITHOUT SUSPENSION OF STATE FUNDING REQUIREMENT
ALABAMA	$1,576,113	100.00%	$1,260,890	80.00%	$1,184,185
ARIZONA	$1,768,471	99.05%	$1,401,336	79.24%	$1,307,720
ARKANSAS	$724,528	85.70%	$496,736	68.56%	$472,472
CALIFORNIA_PUC	$3,311,866	80.30%	$2,127,543	64.24%	$2,127,543

Exhibit 9-2 – Grant Allocation Explanation

Request – This is the total estimated budget amount submitted by a program in their 2012 Grant Application.
State Points – This is the state performance score, as noted in 9.7.1. For CY2012, this would be based on CY2011 State Progress Report, (which is based on CY2011 information) and the CY2010 State Evaluation (completed by State Liaison in CY 2011) In the example above, Arizona's 2010 Program Evaluation received a score of 98.10, and the 2012 Progress Report Score was 50. State points = "98.1/2 + 50 = 99.05".

Allocation – This is the amount of money a state program can expect to receive if expenditures match estimated budget request. Pipeline safety legislation sets the maximum funding at 80% of actual state program costs.
Percent of Funding – This is the maximum percentage of actual program costs that a state program can expect to receive. For example, if Arizona's (see Exhibit 9-1) total actual program cost at the end 2012 are $1,000,000, the maximum funding they can expect to receive is $1,000,000 x 79.24% or $792,400. The allocated amount of $1,401,336 is only received if actual expenditures meet or exceed the original request (budget estimate) of $1,768,471. If the actual costs of a state program exceed the original estimate, PHMSA will pay the additional amount providing funding is available (from over estimates of other programs) and the state program adequately explains the budget variance.
Without Suspension of State Funding Requirement - This amount represents the estimated maximum funding a state will receive without a waiver of the State Funding Requirement noted in Section 60107 of the Federal Pipeline Safety Statute. Each State must spend at least the average amount spent during the past three years unless waived by the Secretary.

9.8 Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award)

The purpose of the *Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award)* is to notify the State agency of the allocated amount of the Federal grant for the calendar year. PHMSA will reimburse the State agency up to the amount specified in this agreement, or up to the state specific maximum percentage of actual program expenses noted in the grant allocation document, whichever is less. Exhibit 9-1 is an actual example from the 2012 natural gas grant allocation with an explanation of what a state program can expect for funding following in Exhibit 9-2.Two original copies of the *Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award)*, signed by the Associate Administrator for pipeline safety, will be distributed to the State agency by PHMSA between April and July of each year. An authorized State official must sign all copies of the agreement. One original copy should be retained by the State agency. The other original copy must be returned to PHMSA within three weeks of receipt. A State agency receiving grant funds for both gas and hazardous liquid pipeline safety programs will receive a separate Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award) for each program type.

The Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award) includes a comprehensive listing of "Award Terms and Conditions", which must be reviewed thoroughly and complied with as a condition of receiving financial assistance.

Included with the Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award) distribution from PHMSA are the following attachments:

1. *Pipeline Safety Grant Allocation Formula - State Performance Criteria*. This attachment is the performance criteria used in the allocation of grant funds.

2. *State Scores from Performance Evaluation and Progress Report Attachments, and Grant Allocation-State Points*. This attachment lists State point assignments for the gas or hazardous liquid pipeline safety program.

3. *Pipeline Safety Grant Allocation*. This attachment lists the gas or hazardous liquid requests, State points, allocations, and percentages of total program funding.

9.9 Certification Regarding Lobbying and Disclosure of Lobbying Activities

Section 319 of Public Law 101-121 prohibits recipients of Federal grants from using appropriated funds for lobbying the Executive or Legislative branches of the Federal government in connection with a specific grant. This section of Public Law also requires each grantee who receives a Federal grant exceeding $100,000 to disclose lobbying activities. **If a State program receives grant funding in excess of $100,000**, PHMSA will provide the State agency with two copies of the *Certification Regarding Lobbying and Disclosure of Lobbying Activities* forms and a copy of the *New Restrictions on Lobbying*; *Interim Final Rule*. One copy of the certification form must be completed by the State agency and returned to PHMSA within three weeks of receipt. If applicable, a State agency must also complete and submit a disclosure form.

9.10 Mid-Year Request for Reimbursement

Federal reimbursement is based on ***actual*** cash expenditures, which can be substantiated with auditable receipts, incurred by the State agency in support of its pipeline safety program between January 1 and December 31 of each year. Each June, PHMSA will make available *OMB Standard Form 270 - Request for Advance or Reimbursement* to each State agency for submission of mid-year reimbursement requests. If a State agency desires mid-year payment, it may return one copy of the completed form to PHMSA within four weeks of receipt. The form must be signed by an authorized official. Program expenses included on this form may only be for the six-month period between January 1 and June 30. If a State agency prefers to be reimbursed for expenses only at year-end, it may disregard the mid-year request form and include all program costs on the year-end request.

9.11 Request for Advance Payment - Travel to NAPSR Meetings

A State agency may request advance payment to fund travel by one State agency representative to attend the NAPSR Region meeting. Each NAPSR national board member may submit a request for advance payment to attend the national NAPSR Board meeting. The State agency must send a letter to

PHMSA requesting advance payment and identifying the purpose of the funds. The letter should include a list of the travel departure and destination points, airfare or vehicle travel costs, per diem expenses, and any other applicable costs. One completed *OMB Standard Form 270* - Request for Advance or Reimbursement must accompany the letter. The State agency must allow at least three weeks for PHMSA to process the request. The State agency must include actual expenses incurred to attend each meeting in its report of total program expenses. This prepayment must also be reported as "Federal funds previously requested" on the year-end Request for Reimbursement. Even though the modification and advance may be 100 percent of the total cost of the trip, by law PHMSA cannot contribute more than 80 percent of any program expense. Therefore, the meeting expenses will ultimately be combined with the total program expenses.

9.12 Year-end Request for Reimbursement and Cost Summary

In January of each year, PHMSA will make available in FedSTAR *OMB Standard Form 270* - Request for Advance or Reimbursement to each State agency for submission of total program costs for the previous calendar year. In completing the year-end request, the State agency should include all costs incurred in the pipeline safety program for the entire previous calendar year (January 1 - December 31) regardless of whether a mid-year request was submitted or whether the actual costs exceed the amount specified in the Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award). One copy of the completed form must be returned to PHMSA within the established time frame, which is approximately four weeks of the date of receipt. In addition to the year-end Request for Reimbursement, the State agency is required to submit a Pipeline Program Cost Summary on forms supplied by PHMSA. This summary includes a comparison of the estimated budget figures submitted with the original Grant Application and final expenses incurred for the program.

Requests for reimbursement submitted by each State agency are reviewed and approved by PHMSA before being forwarded to the DOT accounting office for payment. Variances of more than 10% or $10,000 in each cost category require a written explanation as to the reasons for the differential. When the request has been paid by the accounting office, PHMSA will electronically notify the State agency/Program manager of the amount of the payment and date paid. Payments are made electronically through an automatic clearinghouse. If the State agency has any questions or problems with receipt of payment, it should contact PHMSA immediately.

It is important to note that PHMSA presumes that the mid-year and year-end reimbursement requests are complete and accurate and include all eligible

costs for the entire grant period. All expenses filed with both the mid-year and year-end payment processes must be from auditable receipts and accounted for on a cash basis. *In addition, the year-end reimbursement is considered the grant close-out for the applicable period. Once the final request for reimbursement is received and processed, PHMSA is not obligated to make any additional payments for costs which were incurred by the State but not claimed on the request.*

9.13 Special Initiatives

Occasionally special initiatives are issued by PHMSA. Special initiatives are for a limited purpose and funding is handled separately from the basic annual grant. PHMSA will distribute documents describing the purpose of the initiative and requirements for participation.

9.14 Withholding of Grant Funds - Suspension and/or Termination of Grants

In accordance with Chapter 601 Title 49 of the United States Code, PHMSA may withhold all or part of a grant when it determines that the State agency is not satisfactorily administering a safety program under a certification/agreement, or is not satisfactorily acting as an interstate agent. Part or all of the grant payment may be withheld or the grant may be suspended and/or terminated if PHMSA determines that a State agency has failed to comply with program requirements. These actions will be taken by PHMSA only after notice to and consultation with the affected State agency. Payments made to State agencies or recoveries by PHMSA will be in accordance with the legal rights and liabilities of both parties.

PHMSA or the State agency may also terminate all or part of the *Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award)* when both parties agree that the continuation of the project would not be commensurate with the further expenditure of funds. The two parties must agree upon the termination conditions including the effective date and, in all cases of partial termination, the portion to be terminated.

9.15 Deposit of Grant Funds

Pipeline safety grant funds do not need to be separately accounted for as Federal funds. A State agency is not required to deposit these funds in a separate bank account apart from other funds administered by the State. Any bank account established for receipt of Federal funds must hold insurance coverage from the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC) and the balance exceeding the FDIC coverage must be collaterally secured.

9.16 Eligibility of Program Costs

Program costs shall clearly relate to the program budget submitted with the grant application. Program costs shall also be consistent with 2 CFR Part 200: Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards. Care shall be exercised in incurring costs to assure that all expenditures are authorized in accordance with these general standards, and meet the following criteria of eligible costs.

9.16.1 Direct Costs

Direct costs are those that can be identified specifically with the State's pipeline safety inspection and compliance program. Costs which are shared with other organization programs or other agencies cannot be assigned directly to the pipeline safety grant program, (i.e. costs calculated on a pro-rata basis) should not be assigned as a direct cost, but may qualify as part of an indirect cost plan. The following direct cost categories are typical to a pipeline safety program.

- **Compensation, including benefits, of employees for time and effort specifically devoted to the pipeline safety program (§ 200.430/§ 200.431).**

  - Cost for Supervisory personnel shall be for individuals listed on annual progress report and costs applied to program should correspond with percentage of time allocated. Any supervisory cost above that of the pipeline program manager can only be included as a direct cost if actual time and work performed is documented toward a program activity and approved by PHMSA OPS Director of State Programs otherwise it can be included as an indirect cost.

  - Cost for Inspection/Investigation personnel shall only be for individuals listed on annual progress report and costs applied to program should correspond with percentage of time allocated.

  - Cost for Damage Prevention/Technical personnel shall be only for individuals listed on annual progress report and costs applied to program should correspond with percentage of time allocated. This can include damage prevention personnel, GIS personnel and others ***directly*** related to the pipeline safety program. Cost for personnel devoting time to things other than pipeline safety such as electric, water or telephone issues should not be applied to the pipeline safety program. ***(For example, cost for damage prevention personnel investigating underground facilities other than natural gas or hazardous liquid pipelines should not be included but can be applied for under State Damage Prevention (SDP) or One-Call Grant applications. See policy memo 2009-2 – Appendix L)***

  - Cost for Administrative (clerical) personnel shall be for individuals listed on annual progress report and costs applied to program should correspond with percentage of time allocated. If applicable, costs for personnel who might solely supervise administrative personnel should be included in this category.

- In support of salaries and wages, each program must comply with requirements listed in 2 CFR 200. Where direct time of an employee is applied to the pipeline safety base grant, this must be supported by periodic certification that the employee worked solely in the program. These certifications must be prepared at least semi-annually and will be signed by the employee or supervisory official having firsthand knowledge of the work performed by the employee. When employees work on multiple activities or cost objectives, a distribution of their salaries or wages will be supported by personnel activity reports (PARs) or equivalent documentation. A PAR is a timesheet or log maintained by the employee that accounts for 100% of their time and prepared, signed and dated at least monthly. (See policy memo 2009-3 – Appendix L)

- **Cost of materials acquired, consumed or expended specifically for the purpose of the grant.**

  - Supplies (**§ 200.453/§ 200.314**) - General office supplies such as paper, file folders and other office organizing items.

  - Safety Clothing (**§ 200.453/§ 200.314**) - Any Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) for conducting field inspections. Eye protection, hard hats, ear protection, flame retardant clothing for field use, safety boots, rain gear etc. Normal clothing for time spent in office environment should not be included.

- **Equipment and other approved capital expenditures used directly in the pipeline safety program.**

  Any equipment purchased with a value of over $5000 shall be itemized and noted on grant application and in year-end reimbursement documents. All equipment purchases must be accounted for and safeguarded against loss. PHMSA reserves the right to review and accept or reject any equipment purchases not deemed necessary or reasonable. (See policy memo 2009-4 – Appendix L)

  - Motor Vehicles (**§ 200.439**) – actual cost of vehicles purchased. Tangible property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost which equals or exceeds the lesser of the capitalization level established by the governmental unit for financial statement purposes, or $5000. When replacing equipment purchased in whole or in part with Federal funds, the governmental unit may use the equipment to be replaced as a trade-in or sell the property and use the proceeds to offset the cost of the replacement property.

  - Testing/Inspection Equipment (**§ 200.439**) - Materials such as volt meters, half cells, pipe locator, pyrometers, current interrupter, Flame Ionization (FI) units, Combustible Gas Indicators (CGI's), odorometers, cameras etc.

  - Office Equipment (**§ 200.439**) - Computer equipment (laptops), fax machine, printers, desks, copiers/printers etc. for use by pipeline safety program **only.** This category would also include any computer software used for pipeline program. Note – if the programs shares equipment costs with other agency departments for things such as printers, the costs applied must

be billed based on actual usage. Any estimated proration of charges would have to be charged as an indirect cost and placed in the indirect cost category. In addition, computer network hardware or software such as servers, data storage units and system software maintenance contracts are inherently indirect costs as they benefit entire agency "networks" and may not be recovered as a direct cost unless preapproved in advance.

- **Travel expenses incurred specifically to carry out the award.**

  - Travel (**§ 200.474**) - Travel costs are for expenses for transportation, lodging, subsistence, and related items incurred by employees who are in travel status on official business of the pipeline safety program. This would include automobile general maintenance of tires, oil changes and gasoline. This can include insurance costs and costs of automobiles used through state motor pools. Eligible costs also include commercial air fare travel. Charges for any foreign travel costs are allowable only when the travel has been approved by PHMSA (see 2 CFR Part 200).

- **Pipeline Safety Program Activity Costs**

  - Training and Education (**§ 200.472**) - This would include costs for registration and training materials acquired for pipeline safety personnel. This is for employee training and development.

  - Rental Cost of Building and Equipment (**§ 200.465**) – Rental costs of office space, equipment, maintenance, insurance, janitorial, utilities, operations and repairs. Rent recovered as a direct cost must be calculated on an "actual" basis, or pro-rated based on actual square footage occupied by the Pipeline Safety Program staff.

  - Communication (2 CFR 200 Basic Considerations) - Local and long-distance telephone calls, postage, computer transmittal services, internet charges, cell phone charges, emergency phone answering services, etc.

  - Publication and Printing (**§ 200.461**) - Costs of printing, distribution, promotion, mailing and general handling. Newsletters or other articles printed and sent to pipeline stakeholders

  - Memberships, Subscriptions and professional activities (**§ 200.454**) - Costs for business, technical and professional organization memberships. Costs for subscriptions to business, professional and technical periodicals.

  - Professional Service Costs (i.e. Studies and Research) (**§ 200.459**) – Any costs for professional and consulting services. Any contract for consulting services must be approved by PHMSA in advance or charges may not be allowed to be recovered in base grant.

  - Audit Costs and related services (**§ 200.425**) – The costs of audits required by, and performed in accordance with, the Single Audit Act, as implemented by 2 CFR 200 Subpart F are allowable. Other audit costs are allowable if

included in a cost allocation plan or indirect cost proposal, or if specifically approved by PHMSA as a direct cost.

- Maintenance, operations and repairs (**§ 200.452**) – costs of utilities, insurance, security, janitorial services, etc. If agency is unable to directly assign these costs to the pipeline safety program any cost must be submitted through an indirect method.

- Other (Specify) – These costs should be detailed and described appropriately.

9.16.2 Indirect Costs

Indirect costs chargeable to the pipeline safety grant are limited to no more than 20% of direct cost of the program. Indirect costs are those: (a) incurred for a common or joint purpose benefiting more than one cost objective, and (b) not readily assignable to the cost objectives specifically benefited, without effort disproportionate to the results achieved. (See Appendix O)

Since most state agencies have several major functions which benefit from its indirect costs in varying degrees, the allocation of indirect costs may require the accumulation of such costs into separate cost groupings which are then allocated individually to benefit functions by means of a base which best measures the relative degree of benefit. The indirect costs allocated to each function are then distributed to individual awards and other activities included in that function by means of an indirect cost rate (IDR).

A grant recipient may not recover indirect costs unless an approved indirect cost plan, which establishes an indirect cost rate (IDR), is in place and submitted to the Director of State Programs. Indirect costs are normally charged to Federal awards by the use of an IDR. A separate IDR(s) is usually necessary for each department or agency of a governmental unit claiming indirect costs. All programs should refer to 2 CFR 200 for indirect cost plan requirements and it is recommended that a program consult their state grant office, if applicable. In addition, guidelines and illustrations of indirect costs proposals are provided in a brochure published by the Department of Health and Human Services entitled “Cost Principles and Procedures for Establishing Cost Allocation Plans and Indirect Cost Rates for Agreements with the Federal Government” or ASMB C-10. (See Appendix N)

9.16.3 Unallowable Costs

Any cost specifically outlined in 2 CFR 200 as being unallowable is automatically excluded from the pipeline safety grant program. PHMSA State Programs also reserves the right to exclude certain costs deemed to be inappropriately applied to pipeline safety grants. Examples would include the following:

- Certain Damage Prevention Costs (Personnel and other) – These would be all costs for damage prevention activities other than pipeline safety. (i.e. damage prevention

activities for telephone, water, electric, cable or other underground facilities shall not be included but can be applied for under State Damage Prevention (SDP) or One-Call Grant applications)

- Any promotional item such as shirts, hats, visors, water bottles, portfolios and any other item purchased to promote the pipeline safety program other than an item that may have an educational benefit from its use, are not an allowable cost.

- As described in 2 CFR 200.426, bad debts (debts which have been determined to be uncollectable), including losses (whether actual or estimated) arising from uncollectable accounts and other claims, are unallowable. Related collection costs, and related legal costs, arising from such debts after they have been determined to be uncollectable are also unallowable. See also §200.428 Collections of improper payments.

9.17 Pipeline Safety Grant Program Review

The purpose of the grant program review is to ensure costs submitted to PHMSA for reimbursement are appropriate and conform with all policies as outlined in "Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program" and 2 CFR 200 – "Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments". This is to promote efficient and effective administration of the State Pipeline Safety Grant Program and to ensure consistent and fair treatment of all grant applicants to maximize the grant funds available to this program.

At intervals not exceeding three years, PHMSA OPS Office of State Programs may conduct an on-site, in depth review of costs applied to the Pipeline Safety Program Grant. The program review can consist of up to at least the previous three calendar years. This review shall consist of an analysis of the appropriateness of costs applied to the Pipeline Safety Program and its activities as submitted in the annual progress report. One-Call grant expenditures will also be reviewed in conjunction with base grant review.

All programs should be prepared for this grant review with adequate working papers and source documentation in order to substantiate the reimbursed amounts of program expenditures.

9.17.1 Pre-Review

Advance notice will be given in order for the program manager to prepare any financial information needed for the grant review. In addition, this should allow time for the necessary state personnel to be available to answer questions that might not be known by state pipeline safety staff during the on-site review.

9.17.2 Grant Review

A review will be conducted of program costs which shall clearly relate to the program budget submitted with the grant application. Program costs shall also be consistent

with 2 CFR 200: Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards. Care shall be exercised in incurring costs to assure that all expenditures are authorized in accordance with these general standards, and meet the criteria of eligible costs. State programs should be capable of providing enough source documentation during the grant review to ensure PHMSA that amounts submitted for reimbursement are accurate, necessary and reasonable costs. This may include detailed invoice or billing reviews and enough documentation to insure items submitted for reimbursement were used by the pipeline safety program and also that the items submitted were not used for the benefit any other state agency program.

9.17.3 Post-Review

Following the review of the State Pipeline Safety Program costs, PHMSA State Programs will prepare a report with recommendations, if necessary, outlining any areas of concern on cost items believed to be unacceptable, unallowable or any cause for concern as to the reasonableness in being applied to their Pipeline Safety Grant Program. Notification of findings will be sent to the Program Manager from the PHMSA Director of State Programs.

9.17.4 Adjustments and Penalties

Should any costs submitted in the State Pipeline Safety Grant or One-Call Grant be found to be unsubstantiated, unacceptable, unallowable or unreasonable the State Pipeline Program will have those costs deducted from the current year grant reimbursement and be required to adjust their practices accordingly. The program review may consist of up to the previous three calendar years. Any costs applied to the pipeline safety grant which are explicitly unallowable according to 2 CFR 200 or by policies established by PHMSA, may be subject to a penalty of an amount equal to the adjustment made.

9.17.5 Appeal of Findings

Should the State Pipeline Program appeal any decision of PHMSA Director of State Programs to deduct costs previously submitted, it shall be made to the PHMSA Associate Administrator of Pipeline Safety. The Associate Administrator shall have the final word in any decision made on these matters.

9.18 Procurement Standards

Procurement standards must be followed by the State agency to insure that supplies, equipment, and other services are obtained efficiently and economically. State agencies shall use their own procurement procedures which reflect applicable State laws and regulations in the pipeline safety grant program, provided that procurements made with Federal grant funds conform to the applicable Federal laws and regulations.

9.19 Procurement Procedures

The State agency shall establish procurement procedures that:

- avoid the purchase of unnecessary or duplicative items
- apply analyses to determine the most economical approach
- foster economy and efficiency
- encourage intergovernmental agreements for procurement, or use of common goods and services

9.20 Contracts Management

The State agency shall maintain a contracts management system that ensures contractors comply with the terms, conditions, and specifications of their contracts or purchase orders.

9.21 Real Property

Real property acquired by a State agency under the pipeline safety program shall be used for the authorized purpose of the original grant as long as needed. Use in other projects shall be limited to those under other Federal grant programs, or programs with similar purposes. When the real property is no longer needed, the State agency shall request disposition instructions from PHMSA and complies with the Federal requirements reference 2 CFR 200 (See Appendix G).

9.22 Personal Property

The State agency will retain property acquired with pipeline safety grant funds as long as there is a need for the property to accomplish the purpose of the grant program, and accurate property records shall be maintained. Personal property shall be available for use on other projects or programs if such other use will not interfere with the work on the pipeline safety program. When the State agency no longer needs the property in any of its federally sponsored programs, the State agency shall request disposition instructions from PHMSA, for all personal property with a current per unit fair market value in excess of $5,000.

9.23 Code of Conduct

The State agency shall maintain a written code, or standards of conduct, to govern the performance of its officers, employees, or agents in the award and administration of contracts supported by Federal grant funds. No State employee, officer, or agent shall participate in the selection, award, or administration of a contract supported by Federal funds if a conflict of interest, real or implied, would be involved.

9.24 Annual Federal Single Audit Requirement (2 CFR 200 Subpart F)

Non-Federal entities that expend $750,000 or more in a year in Federal awards, must arrange for an independent audit to perform a single or program specific audit. All audits are to comply with Federal requirement stated in 2 CFR 200 Subpart F and conducted annually. (See Appendix G) Failure to comply with the single audit requirement may result in loss of federal financial assistance.

In the event there are program-specific audit findings uncovered during this process, a state program must contact (as soon as practical) the Director of State Programs and communicate a plan for resolution of these findings. PHMSA State Programs will monitor these findings and work with the affected program until resolution is completed, if applicable.

Note: State governments, in their entirety, are typically considered an "entity" therefore the Pipeline Safety Program is generally considered a part of that entity. To ensure compliance with this audit requirement, each state program must make sure the Pipeline Safety Grant (Base Grant listed under CFDA 20.700 or 20.721 for One-Call) is included in their state-wide single audit conducted annually in each respective state. Past audit information can be found on-line at the Federal Audit Clearinghouse. (http://harvester.census.gov/sac/)

9.25 PHMSA Office of Civil Rights Review – Title VI

The PHMSA Office of Civil Rights may conduct an on-site review of the State agency if compliance with Title VI requirements cannot be determined from the assurances alone. It will also conduct regular on-site or desk audit compliance reviews as required by DOT directives. An on-site review will include personal interviews with persons in the State agency's organization and in the community likely to have relevant information or views. The review will also include the collection of all statistical and documentary materials needed to determine compliance. A desk audit will include a review of all material and information concerning the State agency's performance, but will not include a visit to the State agency. A copy of the written results of the review will be provided to the State agency.

9.26 Grant-in-Aid Program Calendar of Events

Grant-in-Aid Program CALENDAR OF EVENTS			
Activity	**General Open Dates**	**General Closing Dates**	**Notification**
Base Grant Application and Certification/Agreement	August	September 30	E-mail sent to states alerting them of opening date for the Base Grant in FedSTAR
One Call Application (optional)	August to October	September to October	E-mail sent to states alerting them of opening date for the Base Grant in FedSTAR
Year End Payment Process	January	March – April	E-mail is sent to the states alerting them of the opening date for the Year End Payment Request in FedSTAR
One-Call Progress Report	March	April	E-mail is sent to states alerting them of opening date in FedSTAR
One-Call Allocation	After NAPSR Grant Allocation Committee meeting and PHMSA review	After final approval from official designated by Secretary of Transportation	Notification to states after NAPSR Grant Allocation Committee meeting and PHMSA review.
Progress Report	January	Late February - March	E-mail is sent to states alerting them of opening date in FedSTAR
Allocation	Based on Progress Report Closing Date	Late March to April	Forwarded to states via email after analysis completed by PHMSA and confirmation of total state grant appropriation
Mid-Year Reimbursement Request (optional)	June	Late July to August	E-mail is sent to states alerting them of opening date in FedSTAR
Program Evaluation	Late February - March	Late December	Conducted during annual visit from State Liaison

9.27 Description of Activities

9.27.1 Base Grant Application (Natural Gas & Hazardous Liquid)

The Base Grant is a grant to which states apply to be reimbursed up to 80% of their state pipeline safety costs. This grant requires a filing of the intension(s) under 60105 and/or 60106, along with a description of the program and its estimated budget.

9.27.2 One Call Grant

The One Call Grant is an optional grant whose purpose is to promote damage prevention to all underground facilities.

9.27.3 Year End Payment Process

The Year End Payment process is a form which reflects the actual expenses incurred by the state's pipeline safety program(s). This process includes a reimbursement form which triggers a review and payment to the state.

9.27.4 One Call Progress Report

The One Call progress is mandatory if a One Call grant was previously reported. This report is a reflection of the actual activities and costs of the active One Call grant.

9.27.5 One Call Allocation

The scoring and allocation is performed with a partnership between state and federal representation as a group called the Grant Allocation Committee (GAC).

9.27.6 Progress Report

This is a process in which a document is developed to reflect the performance of a state's safety program(s). This performance document has criteria which are used to generate a score. This score is used in the Allocation process.

9.27.7 Allocation

This process is conducted by the PHMSA Director of State Programs. The allocation is a document which displays the aggregated scores from the Progress Report & Program Evaluation, and funding information concerning the allocation of available grant funding.

9.27.8 Payment Agreement – (Notice of Grant Award)

The payment agreement (Notice of Grant Award) binds a grantee to the awarded (allocated) amount identified in the allocation document. The payment agreement (Notice of Grant Award) also contains a lobbying document, if the awarded amount exceeds $100,000. Furthermore the payment agreement (Notice of Grant Award) is signed by both state and federal authorities.

9.27.9 Mid-Year Reimbursement

The Mid Year Reimbursement is an optional request for reimbursement funding.

9.27.10 Program Evaluation

This is an onsite process which is completed by a PHMSA State Liaison. The document reflects the performance and compliance to requirements spelled out in the Certification/Agreement process. It also covers the compliance with related activities of a state's pipeline safety program.

10 Federal-State Tracking and Reporting – "FedSTAR"

10.1 Purpose

Federal-State Tracking and Reporting ("FedSTAR") is an internet accessible web application that aids the States in meeting the requirements for participating in and in the preparation of the various forms necessary for participation in the Federal Grant program. FedSTAR collects information and constructs official program documents listed in the guidelines. It also standardizes these various submissions that are required in order to participate in the State Grant Program. FedSTAR is provided by PHMSA to modernize the submission and reporting process for States participating in the State Grant Program.

10.2 Location and Procedures

FedSTAR can be found at https://fedstar.phmsa.dot.gov. In order to access the FedSTAR program, the user must be issued a user name as well as a password. Each user has a tailored profile which allows each user access to only those modules required for their job. The user is unable to access any of the features of FedSTAR without obtaining this login information. FedSTAR procedures are published and revised periodically. The current procedures are included below:

Purpose

The purpose of this procedure is to outline the administration of users in the FedSTAR application.

Effective Date

This procedure becomes effective on 11/1/2011 and will remain in effect until superseded or cancelled.

Roles and Responsibilities

FedSTAR Operations Manager (OM):

Monitor and oversee the implementation of the procedures, perform maintenance of user accounts, perform quarterly audits of user accounts.

State Pipeline Safety Program Managers (PM) (Title may vary by state):

Notify the appropriate contacts upon termination of employment of themselves or subordinates. Request access for themselves and subordinates through the proper channels.

State Program Director and Evaluators: PHP-50:

Forward any notifications of termination of employment to the FedSTAR operations manager.

PHMSA Regional Personnel: PHP-100 through 500:

Notify the appropriate contacts upon termination of employment; request access for themselves through the proper channels.

PHMSA Headquarters Personnel: PHP-1 through 80

Notify the appropriate contacts upon termination of employment; request access for themselves through the proper channels.

Process Overview:

The user base for FedSTAR includes not only State employees (inspectors, supervisors, engineers) but also Federal staff in the PHMSA Regions. At the time of this SOP, over 600 active users access FedSTAR from 60 different offices. The process of administering the vast array of users encompasses both proactive and reactive methods. Requests for user creations/modifications are received via email from approved sources. Due to the number of users and offices that make up the user base, typically users are disabled upon rejected email notifications being received by the FedSTAR OM.

Procedure:

Initial creation of a user

A user is created upon a request being received by the FedSTAR OM from a State Pipeline Safety PM, PHMSA Regional Director, State Program Director or any of the State Evaluators (PHP-50). The requestor shall indicate in the request the level of access required for the individual: either grant document access and/or standards library access.

Modification of user privileges and roles

The modification of user privileges and roles will be done in a similar manner to the initial request to create a user – the request must come from State Pipeline Safety PM, PHMSA Regional Director, State Program Director or any of the State Evaluators (PHP-50).

Disabling of a user

When the State PM, PHMSA Regional Director, State Program Director or any of the State Evaluators (PHP-50) becomes aware that one of the employees under their organization is to be no longer employed by the State or PHMSA, the FedSTAR OM shall be notified of the date of termination or employment. The FedSTAR OM shall schedule a time to disable the user that coincides with their last day of State or Federal employment, or shall disable the user immediately upon receiving the notification the user has already been terminated. Additionally if the FedSTAR OM becomes aware of a terminated employee (typically through email rejection notice), the FedSTAR OM will contact the State PM of the employee to determine employment status and then take appropriate action to disable the user.

Quarterly User Account Audit

Upon the implementation of this SOP, a quarterly audit of active user accounts shall be performed. A report will be run through a database query to examine all active accounts and the date of last access. Any account found to be 120 days from the last login will be disabled.

10.3 Facilitating Various Program Documentation

FedSTAR reduces the time spent filling out the various State Grant Program submittals -- the Base Grant, Progress Report, One Call , One Call Progress Report, and Payment Requests. Each of the programs consists of several steps that the user must work through to successfully complete each document. The first step of each interface asks the user to verify their contact information. This ensures that the FedSTAR database stays up to date which allows PHMSA to better assist each individual State. Currently, even though a signed paper submission is required in addition to the electronic submission, eventually, FedSTAR will allow the States to electronically sign and submit the document online without having to print out the actual document and mailing it in.

Base Grant - This program consists of the steps required to produce a Base Grant application document. The State describes their pipeline safety

program, provides an estimated budget and agrees to the general assurances.

Progress Report - This program provides data input screens to complete each of the required nine attachments as listed in Chapter 9.

One Call - This program consists of the steps required to produce a One Call grant application document. Damage prevention projects are classified by priority, and then subclasses within a priority. Guidance for the One Call application is provided each fall after the Grant Allocation Committee (GAC) sets the project classifications and priorities.

One Call Progress Report - This program provides PHMSA with a report on how the State spent the One Call grant funds they received.

10.4 Facilitating Grant Financials

Grant award agreements and payment requests (SF-270) are processed in FedSTAR.

One Call Allocation - This document provides the grant award information for the One Call Grant. PHMSA State Programs Division will coordinate with NAPSR's Grant Allocation Committee (GAC) to schedule a review of the submitted One Call grant applications in accordance with established criteria (One Call Grant Instructions and Priority List) that provides the most efficient timing of awards. The GAC uses the previous year's application and One Call progress report to make a determination on funding projects within applications.

Allocation – This document publishes the award information for each State by program (Natural Gas, Hazardous Liquid). The State Program Director and his staff review and score the Progress Report submitted by each State. The Program Evaluation score is combined with the Progress Report score to produce the overall score for the State. This score is then calculated as a percent of funding, which then determines the States grant funding award for that grant period.

Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award) - This is a document that must be submitted by each State which indicates they agree to the score they received through the Allocation process, and provides the State with a grant award amount. The Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award) is signed and scanned into FedSTAR by the State Pipeline Office and then PHMSA

electronically signs the agreements and returns the fully executed agreement to the State via FedSTAR.

Certification Regarding Lobbying Document - This document applies to States that receive over $100,000.00 in funding from the Federal government. These States must print out the form and sign it, signifying that they agree to use the money for legitimate purposes. The Certification Regarding Lobbying forms are automatically generated with the Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award).

Payment Requests - There are two payment request programs – the Mid-Year Payment Request and the Year End Payment Request.

> The Mid Year Payment Request is an optional program where the State can request reimbursement of their Allocated percentage of actual expenses at the 6 month mark.
>
> The Year-end Payment Request is mandatory for all states who receive funding, and is based on actual expenses for the calendar year.
>
> For both programs, a series of steps collects the information and then produces the SF-270 for signature. The form is then scanned in and uploaded to the eInvoicing system (iSupplier). Additional fields are then completed and the request is submitted electronically via iSupplier for review and approval by PHMSA. (Note: a separate username/password is required for the iSupplier system).

10.5 Other FedSTAR Functions

Telephonics - This program allows the user to look up incidents that occurred in their State according to certain parameters set by the user such as type of incident, date of entry and date of spill. The user can also set date parameters allowing them to search for incidents that occurred during a given period of time.

Library - The library contains the guidelines and other documents of interest to each State (such as workshop meeting minutes or committee reports)

Program Evaluations - The state liaisons use this feature of FedSTAR when they fill out their program evaluations for each state. Evaluations from previous years along with associated information will also be available in the SUDS section.

State Uploaded Document System or SUDS– for each state a set of ‘completed documents’ exists for each program and each year (back to

approximately 2005). These completed documents are the .pdf documents for each of the programs completed in FedSTAR.

Standards Library- Here, the FedSTAR user can find a consolidated collection of documents describing in depth the laws and practices that must be followed when working with pipelines. Standards are available from ASTM, NFPA, ASME, among others.

10.6 PHMSA State Program Management Functions

Allocation - This is a process in which PHMSA State Programs Office calculates the scores for each State. The result is the actual allocation or award for each State for the upcoming year. The Payment Agreement (Notice of Grant Award) outlines the terms and conditions and amount that PHMSA may reimburse the State.

Scoring - This is an algorithm used to calculate the State's performance score. It is used in the allocation process. A similar process is also used to generate the State's score for One Call.

Payment Processing - After the State's request payment, PHMSA administration goes through a process in which they pay the States an amount based on the Allocation percentages and amounts.

Program Scheduling (also known as 'to-do list manager") - This determines when a program will open and close. These dates specify when the program will be placed and removed from FedSTAR.

Appendix Summary

Appendix A: 49 USC Chapter 601 and 49 USC Chapter 61 (One-Call)

Appendix B: Interstate Agent Agreement Form and Guidance Policy and Sample Letter for Time Defined Agreement

Appendix C: PHMSA Training and Qualification Course Listing and Training Requirement Tables

Appendix D: DOT-NTSB Memorandum of Understanding

Appendix E: Federal/State Cooperation in Case of Accident

Appendix F: Pipeline Safety Programs, List of State Program Managers, and PHMSA Contact List

Appendix G: 2 CFR 200 – Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards

Appendix H: State Inspector Mentoring Program
Appendix I: State Natural Gas Evaluation Form

Appendix J: State Hazardous Liquid Evaluation Form

Appendix K: 49 CFR 18 – DOT Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to States and Local Governments

Appendix L: Grant Program Policy Memos

Appendix M: Grant Review Checklist

Appendix N: ASMB C-10 – Cost Principles and Procedures for Developing Cost Allocation Plans and Indirect Cost Rates with the Federal Government

Appendix O: PHMSA State Pipeline Safety Grants Guidance for Indirect Cost Recovery

Appendix P: Procedure to Monitor, Evaluate and Reject Certification

Appendix Q: Pipeline Safety Grant Progress Report Scoring

Appendix R: NTSB Recommendations Referenced in "Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program"

Appendix S: Examples of State Pipeline Safety Program Plan, Procedures and Risk Based Inspection Prioritization Model

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix A

The Federal Pipeline Safety Statutes

49 U.S.C. § 60101 et seq.

showing amendments enacted by:

Pipeline Safety, Regulatory Certainty, and Job Creation Act of 2011 (green)
Public Law No: 112-90
Jan. 3, 2012

and

Pipeline Inspection, Protection, Enforcement and Safety Act of 2006 (red)
Public Law No: 109-468
Dec. 29, 2006

Compiled by
Office of Chief Counsel
Pipeline and Hazardous
Materials Safety Administration
February 2012

Federal Pipeline Safety Statutes (49 U.S.C. § 60101 et seq.)

Table of Contents

Section		Page No.
§ 60101.	Definitions	2
§ 60102.	Purpose and general authority	4
§ 60103.	Standards for liquefied natural gas pipeline facilities	10
§ 60104.	Requirements and limitations	11
§ 60105.	State pipeline safety program certifications	11
§ 60106.	State pipeline safety agreements	13
§ 60107.	State pipeline safety grants	14
§ 60108.	Inspection and maintenance	15
§ 60109.	High-density population areas and environmentally sensitive areas	18
§ 60110.	Excess flow valves	21
§ 60111.	Financial responsibility for liquefied natural gas facilities	22
§ 60112.	Pipeline facilities hazardous to life and property	23
§ 60113.	Customer-owned natural gas service lines	24
§ 60114.	One-call notification systems	24
§ 60115.	Technical safety standards committees	25
§ 60116.	Public education programs	27
§ 60117.	Administrative	27
§ 60118.	Compliance and waivers	30
§ 60119.	Judicial review	31
§ 60120.	Enforcement	32
§ 60121.	Actions by private persons	32
§ 60122.	Civil penalties	33
§ 60123.	Criminal penalties	34
§ 60124.	Biennial reports	34
§ 60125.	Authorization of appropriations	35
§ 60126.	Risk management	36
§ 60127.	Population encroachment and rights-of-way	38
§ 60128.	Dumping within pipeline rights-of-way	39
§ 60129.	Protection of employees providing pipeline safety information	39
§ 60130.	Pipeline safety information grants to communities	41
§ 60131.	Verification of pipeline qualification programs	42
§ 60132.	National pipeline mapping system	43
§ 60133.	Coordination of environmental reviews	44
§ 60134.	State damage prevention programs	46
§ 60135.	Enforcement transparency	47
§ 60136.	Petroleum product transportation capacity study	47
§ 60137.	Pipeline control room management	48
§ 60138.	Response plans	49
§ 60139.	Maximum allowable operating pressure	49
§ 60140.	Cover over buried pipelines	51

§ 60101. Definitions

(a) General.--In this chapter--

(1) "existing liquefied natural gas facility"--

(A) means a liquefied natural gas facility for which an application to approve the site, construction, or operation of the facility was filed before March 1, 1978, with--

(i) the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (or any predecessor); or

(ii) the appropriate State or local authority, if the facility is not subject to the jurisdiction of the Commission under the Natural Gas Act (15 U.S.C. 717 et seq.); but

(B) does not include a facility on which construction is begun after November 29, 1979, without the approval;

(2) "gas" means natural gas, flammable gas, or toxic or corrosive gas;

(3) "gas pipeline facility" includes a pipeline, a right of way, a facility, a building, or equipment used in transporting gas or treating gas during its transportation;

(4) "hazardous liquid" means--

(A) petroleum or a petroleum product; ~~and~~

(B) nonpetroleum fuel, including biofuel, that is flammable, toxic, or corrosive or would be harmful to the environment if released in significant quantities; and

~~(B)~~(C) a substance the Secretary of Transportation decides may pose an unreasonable risk to life or property when transported by a hazardous liquid pipeline facility in a liquid state (except for liquefied natural gas);

(5) "hazardous liquid pipeline facility" includes a pipeline, a right of way, a facility, a building, or equipment used or intended to be used in transporting hazardous liquid;

~~(6) "interstate gas pipeline facility"--~~

~~(A) means a gas pipeline facility--~~

~~(i) used to transport gas; and~~

~~(ii) subject to the jurisdiction of the Commission under the Natural Gas Act (15 U.S.C. 717 et seq.); but~~

~~(B) does not include a gas pipeline facility transporting gas from an interstate gas pipeline in a State to a direct sales customer in that State buying gas for its own consumption;~~

(6) "interstate gas pipeline facility" means a gas pipeline facility—

(A) used to transport gas; and

(B) subject to the jurisdiction of the Commission under the Natural Gas Act (15 U.S.C. 717 et seq.);

(7) "interstate hazardous liquid pipeline facility" means a hazardous liquid pipeline facility used to transport hazardous liquid in interstate or foreign commerce;

(8) "interstate or foreign commerce"--

(A) related to gas, means commerce--

(i) between a place in a State and a place outside that State; or

(ii) that affects any commerce described in subclause (A)(i) of this clause; and

(B) related to hazardous liquid, means commerce between--

(i) a place in a State and a place outside that State; or

(ii) places in the same State through a place outside the State;

~~(9) "intrastate gas pipeline facility" means--~~

~~(A) a gas pipeline facility and transportation of gas within a State not subject to the jurisdiction of the Commission under the Natural Gas Act (15 U.S.C. 717 et seq.); and~~

~~(B) a gas pipeline facility transporting gas from an interstate gas pipeline in a State to a direct sales customer in that State buying gas for its own consumption;~~

(9) "intrastate gas pipeline facility" means a gas pipeline facility and transportation of gas within a State not subject to the jurisdiction of the Commission under the Natural Gas Act (15 U.S.C. 717 et seq.);

(10) "intrastate hazardous liquid pipeline facility" means a hazardous liquid pipeline facility that is not an interstate hazardous liquid pipeline facility;

(11) "liquefied natural gas" means natural gas in a liquid or semisolid state;

(12) "liquefied natural gas accident" means a release, burning, or explosion of liquefied natural gas from any cause, except a release, burning, or explosion that, under regulations prescribed by the Secretary, does not pose a threat to public health or safety, property, or the environment;
(13) "liquefied natural gas conversion" means conversion of natural gas into liquefied natural gas or conversion of liquefied natural gas into natural gas;
(14) "liquefied natural gas pipeline facility"--
(A) means a gas pipeline facility used for transporting or storing liquefied natural gas, or for liquefied natural gas conversion, in interstate or foreign commerce; but
(B) does not include any part of a structure or equipment located in navigable waters (as defined in section 3 of the Federal Power Act (16 U.S.C. 796));
(15) "municipality" means a political subdivision of a State;
(16) "new liquefied natural gas pipeline facility" means a liquefied natural gas pipeline facility except an existing liquefied natural gas pipeline facility;
(17) "person", in addition to its meaning under section 1 of title 1 (except as to societies), includes a State, a municipality, and a trustee, receiver, assignee, or personal representative of a person;
(18) "pipeline facility" means a gas pipeline facility and a hazardous liquid pipeline facility;
(19) "pipeline transportation" means transporting gas and transporting hazardous liquid;
(20) "State" means a State of the United States, the District of Columbia, and Puerto Rico;
(21) "transporting gas"--
(A) means the gathering, transmission, or distribution of gas by pipeline, or the storage of gas, in interstate or foreign commerce; but
(B) does not include the gathering of gas, other than gathering through regulated gathering lines, in those rural locations that are located outside the limits of any incorporated or unincorporated city, town, or village, or any other designated residential or commercial area (including a subdivision, business, shopping center, or community development) or any similar populated area that the Secretary of Transportation determines to be a nonrural area, except that the term "transporting gas" includes the movement of gas through regulated gathering lines;
(22) "transporting hazardous liquid"--
(A) means the movement of hazardous liquid by pipeline, or the storage of hazardous liquid incidental to the movement of hazardous liquid by pipeline, in or affecting interstate or foreign commerce; but
(B) does not include moving hazardous liquid through--
(i) gathering lines in a rural area;
(ii) onshore production, refining, or manufacturing facilities; or
(iii) storage or in-plant piping systems associated with onshore production, refining, or manufacturing facilities;
(23) "risk management" means the systematic application, by the owner or operator of a pipeline facility, of management policies, procedures, finite resources, and practices to the tasks of identifying, analyzing, assessing, reducing, and controlling risk in order to protect employees, the general public, the environment, and pipeline facilities;
(24) "risk management plan" means a management plan utilized by a gas or hazardous liquid pipeline facility owner or operator that encompasses risk management; and
(25) "Secretary" means the Secretary of Transportation.

(b) Gathering lines.--(1)(A) Not later than October 24, 1994, the Secretary shall prescribe standards defining the term "gathering line".
(B) In defining "gathering line" for gas, the Secretary--
(i) shall consider functional and operational characteristics of the lines to be included in the definition; and
(ii) is not bound by a classification the Commission establishes under the Natural Gas Act (15 U.S.C. 717 et seq.).
(2)(A) Not later than October 24, 1995, the Secretary, if appropriate, shall prescribe standards defining the term "regulated gathering line". In defining the term, the Secretary shall consider factors such as location, length of line from the well site, operating pressure, throughput, and the composition of the transported gas or hazardous liquid, as appropriate, in deciding on the types of

lines that functionally are gathering but should be regulated under this chapter because of specific physical characteristics.

(B)(i) The Secretary also shall consider diameter when defining "regulated gathering line" for hazardous liquid.

(ii) The definition of "regulated gathering line" for hazardous liquid may not include a crude oil gathering line that has a nominal diameter of not more than 6 inches, is operated at low pressure, and is located in a rural area that is not unusually sensitive to environmental damage.

§ 60102. Purpose and general authority

(a) Purpose and minimum safety standards.--

(1) Purpose.--The purpose of this chapter is to provide adequate protection against risks to life and property posed by pipeline transportation and pipeline facilities by improving the regulatory and enforcement authority of the Secretary of Transportation.

(2) Minimum safety standards.--The Secretary shall prescribe minimum safety standards for pipeline transportation and for pipeline facilities. The standards--

(A) apply to ~~owners and operators~~ any or all of the owners and operators of pipeline facilities;

(B) may apply to the design, installation, inspection, emergency plans and procedures, testing, construction, extension, operation, replacement, and maintenance of pipeline facilities; and

(C) shall include a requirement that all individuals who operate and maintain pipeline facilities shall be qualified to operate and maintain the pipeline facilities.

(3) Qualifications of pipeline operators.-- The qualifications applicable to an individual who operates and maintains a pipeline facility shall address the ability to recognize and react appropriately to abnormal operating conditions that may indicate a dangerous situation or a condition exceeding design limits. The operator of a pipeline facility shall ensure that employees who operate and maintain the facility are qualified to operate and maintain the pipeline facilities.

(b) Practicability and safety needs standards.--

(1) In general.--A standard prescribed under subsection (a) shall be--

(A) practicable; and

(B) designed to meet the need for--

(i) gas pipeline safety, or safely transporting hazardous liquids, as appropriate; and

(ii) protecting the environment.

(2) Factors for consideration.--When prescribing any standard under this section or section 60101(b), 60103, 60108, 60109, 60110, or 60113, the Secretary shall consider--

(A) relevant available--

(i) gas pipeline safety information;

(ii) hazardous liquid pipeline safety information; and

(iii) environmental information;

(B) the appropriateness of the standard for the particular type of pipeline transportation or facility;

(C) the reasonableness of the standard;

(D) based on a risk assessment, the reasonably identifiable or estimated benefits expected to result from implementation or compliance with the standard;

(E) based on a risk assessment, the reasonably identifiable or estimated costs expected to result from implementation or compliance with the standard;

(F) comments and information received from the public; and

(G) the comments and recommendations of the Technical Pipeline Safety Standards Committee, the Technical Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Safety Standards Committee, or both, as appropriate.

(3) Risk assessment.--In conducting a risk assessment referred to in subparagraphs (D) and (E) of paragraph (2), the Secretary shall--

(A) identify the regulatory and nonregulatory options that the Secretary considered in prescribing a proposed standard;

(B) identify the costs and benefits associated with the proposed standard;
(C) include--
(i) an explanation of the reasons for the selection of the proposed standard in lieu of the other options identified; and
(ii) with respect to each of those other options, a brief explanation of the reasons that the Secretary did not select the option; and
(D) identify technical data or other information upon which the risk assessment information and proposed standard is based.
(4) Review.--
(A) In general.--The Secretary shall--
(i) submit any risk assessment information prepared under paragraph (3) of this subsection to the Technical Pipeline Safety Standards Committee, the Technical Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Safety Standards Committee, or both, as appropriate; and
(ii) make that risk assessment information available to the general public.
(B) Peer review panels.--The committees referred to in subparagraph (A) shall serve as peer review panels to review risk assessment information prepared under this section. Not later than 90 days after receiving risk assessment information for review pursuant to subparagraph (A), each committee that receives that risk assessment information shall prepare and submit to the Secretary a report that includes-
(i) an evaluation of the merit of the data and methods used; and
(ii) any recommended options relating to that risk assessment information and the associated standard that the committee determines to be appropriate.
(C) Review by Secretary.--Not later than 90 days after receiving a report submitted by a committee under subparagraph (B), the Secretary--
(i) shall review the report;
(ii) shall provide a written response to the committee that is the author of the report concerning all significant peer review comments and recommended alternatives contained in the report; and
(iii) may revise the risk assessment and the proposed standard before promulgating the final standard.
(5) Secretarial decisionmaking.--Except where otherwise required by statute, the Secretary shall propose or issue a standard under this Chapter only upon a reasoned determination that the benefits of the intended standard justify its costs.
(6) Exceptions from application.--The requirements of subparagraphs (D) and (E) of paragraph (2) do not apply when--
(A) the standard is the product of a negotiated rulemaking, or other rulemaking including the adoption of industry standards that receives no significant adverse comment within 60 days of notice in the Federal Register;
(B) based on a recommendation (in which three-fourths of the members voting concur) by the Technical Pipeline Safety Standards Committee, the Technical Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Safety Standards Committee, or both, as applicable, the Secretary waives the requirements; or
(C) the Secretary finds, pursuant to section 553(b)(3)(B) of title 5, United States Code, that notice and public procedure are not required.
(7) Report.--Not later than March 31, 2000, the Secretary shall transmit to the Congress a report that--
(A) describes the implementation of the risk assessment requirements of this section, including the extent to which those requirements have affected regulatory decisionmaking and pipeline safety; and
(B) includes any recommendations that the Secretary determines would make the risk assessment process conducted pursuant to the requirements under this chapter a more effective means of assessing the benefits and costs associated with alternative regulatory and nonregulatory options in prescribing standards under the Federal pipeline safety regulatory program under this chapter.

(c) Public safety program requirements.--(1) The Secretary shall include in the standards prescribed under subsection (a) of this section a requirement that an operator of a gas pipeline facility participate in

a public safety program that--

(A) notifies an operator of proposed demolition, excavation, tunneling, or construction near or affecting the facility;

(B) requires an operator to identify a pipeline facility that may be affected by the proposed demolition, excavation, tunneling, or construction, to prevent damaging the facility; and

(C) the Secretary decides will protect a facility adequately against a hazard caused by demolition, excavation, tunneling, or construction.

(2) To the extent a public safety program referred to in paragraph (1) of this subsection is not available, the Secretary shall prescribe standards requiring an operator to take action the Secretary prescribes to provide services comparable to services that would be available under a public safety program.

(3) The Secretary may include in the standards prescribed under subsection (a) of this section a requirement that an operator of a hazardous liquid pipeline facility participate in a public safety program meeting the requirements of paragraph (1) of this subsection or maintain and carry out a damage prevention program that provides services comparable to services that would be available under a public safety program.

(4) Promoting public awareness.--

(A) Not later than one year after the date of enactment of the Accountable Pipeline Safety and Accountability Act of 1996, and annually thereafter, the owner or operator of each interstate gas pipeline facility shall provide to the governing body of each municipality in which the interstate gas pipeline facility is located, a map identifying the location of such facility.

(B)(i) Not later than June 1, 1998, the Secretary shall survey and assess the public education programs under section 60116 and the public safety programs under section 60102(c) and determine their effectiveness and applicability as components of a model program. In particular, the survey shall include the methods by which operators notify residents of the location of the facility and its right of way, public information regarding existing One-Call programs, and appropriate procedures to be followed by residents of affected municipalities in the event of accidents involving interstate gas pipeline facilities.

(ii) Not later than one year after the survey and assessment are completed, the Secretary shall institute a rulemaking to determine the most effective public safety and education program components and promulgate if appropriate, standards implementing those components on a nationwide basis. In the event that the Secretary finds that promulgation of such standards are not appropriate, the Secretary shall report to Congress the reasons for that finding.

(d) Facility operation information standards.--The Secretary shall prescribe minimum standards requiring an operator of a pipeline facility subject to this chapter to maintain, to the extent practicable, information related to operating the facility as required by the standards prescribed under this chapter and, when requested, to make the information available to the Secretary and an appropriate State official as determined by the Secretary. The information shall include--

(1) the business name, address, and telephone number, including an operations emergency telephone number, of the operator;

(2) accurate maps and a supplementary geographic description, including an identification of areas described in regulations prescribed under section 60109 of this title, that show the location in the State of--

(A) major gas pipeline facilities of the operator, including transmission lines and significant distribution lines; and

(B) major hazardous liquid pipeline facilities of the operator;

(3) a description of--

(A) the characteristics of the operator's pipelines in the State; and

(B) products transported through the operator's pipelines in the State;

(4) the manual that governs operating and maintaining pipeline facilities in the State;

(5) an emergency response plan describing the operator's procedures for responding to and containing releases, including--

(A) identifying specific action the operator will take on discovering a release;

(B) liaison procedures with State and local authorities for emergency response; and

(C) communication and alert procedures for immediately notifying State and local officials at the time of a release; and

(6) other information the Secretary considers useful to inform a State of the presence of pipeline facilities and operations in the State.

(e) Pipe inventory standards.--The Secretary shall prescribe minimum standards requiring an operator of a pipeline facility subject to this chapter to maintain for the Secretary, to the extent practicable, an inventory with appropriate information about the types of pipe used for the transportation of gas or hazardous liquid, as appropriate, in the operator's system and additional information, including the material's history and the leak history of the pipe. The inventory--

(1) for a gas pipeline facility, shall include an identification of each facility passing through an area described in regulations prescribed under section 60109 of this title but shall exclude equipment used with the compression of gas; and

(2) for a hazardous liquid pipeline facility, shall include an identification of each facility and gathering line passing through an area described in regulations prescribed under section 60109 of this title, whether the facility or gathering line otherwise is subject to this chapter, but shall exclude equipment associated only with the pipeline pumps or storage facilities.

(f) Standards as accommodating "smart pigs".--

(1) Minimum safety standards.--The Secretary shall prescribe minimum safety standards requiring that-

(A) the design and construction of new natural gas transmission pipeline or hazardous liquid pipeline facilities, and

(B) when the replacement of existing natural gas transmission pipeline or hazardous liquid pipeline facilities or equipment is required, the replacement of such existing facilities be carried out, to the extent practicable, in a manner so as to accommodate the passage through such natural gas transmission pipeline or hazardous liquid pipeline facilities of instrumented internal inspection devices (commonly referred to as "smart pigs"). The Secretary may extend such standards to require existing natural gas transmission pipeline or hazardous liquid pipeline facilities, whose basic construction would accommodate an instrumented internal inspection device to be modified to permit the inspection of such facilities with instrumented internal inspection devices.

(2) Periodic inspections.--Not later than October 24, 1995, the Secretary shall prescribe, if necessary, additional standards requiring the periodic inspection of each pipeline the operator of the pipeline identifies under section 60109 of this title. The standards shall include any circumstances under which an inspection shall be conducted with an instrumented internal inspection device and, if the device is not required, use of an inspection method that is at least as effective as using the device in providing for the safety of the pipeline.

(g) Effective dates.--A standard prescribed under this section and section 60110 of this title is effective on the 30th day after the Secretary prescribes the standard. However, the Secretary for good cause may prescribe a different effective date when required because of the time reasonably necessary to comply with the standard. The different date must be specified in the regulation prescribing the standard.

(h) Safety condition reports.--(1) The Secretary shall prescribe regulations requiring each operator of a pipeline facility (except a master meter) to submit to the Secretary a written report on any--

(A) condition that is a hazard to life, property, or the environment; and

(B) safety-related condition that causes or has caused a significant change or restriction in the operation of a pipeline facility.

(2) The Secretary must receive the report not later than 5 working days after a representative of a person to which this section applies first establishes that the condition exists. Notice of the condition shall be given concurrently to appropriate State authorities.

(i) Carbon dioxide regulation.--

(1) Transportation in liquid state.—The Secretary shall regulate carbon dioxide transported by a hazardous liquid pipeline facility. The Secretary shall prescribe standards related to hazardous liquid to ensure the safe transportation of carbon dioxide by such a facility.

(2) Transportation in gaseous state.—

(A) Minimum safety standards.—The Secretary shall prescribe minimum safety standards for the transportation of carbon dioxide by pipeline in a gaseous state.

(B) Considerations.—In establishing the standards, the Secretary shall consider whether applying the minimum safety standards in part 195 of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on the date of enactment of this paragraph, for the transportation of carbon dioxide in a liquid state to the transportation of carbon dioxide in a gaseous state would ensure safety.

(3) Limitation of statutory construction.—Nothing in this subsection authorizes the Secretary to regulate piping or equipment used in the production, extraction, recovery, lifting, stabilization, separation, or treatment of carbon dioxide or the preparation of carbon dioxide for transportation by pipeline at production, refining, or manufacturing facilities.

(j) Emergency flow restricting devices.--(1) Not later than October 24, 1994, the Secretary shall survey and assess the effectiveness of emergency flow restricting devices (including remotely controlled valves and check valves) and other procedures, systems, and equipment used to detect and locate hazardous liquid pipeline ruptures and minimize product releases from hazardous liquid pipeline facilities.

(2) Not later than 2 years after the survey and assessment are completed, the Secretary shall prescribe standards on the circumstances under which an operator of a hazardous liquid pipeline facility must use an emergency flow restricting device or other procedure, system, or equipment described in paragraph (1) of this subsection on the facility.

~~(3) Remotely controlled valves.--(A) Not later than June 1, 1998, the Secretary shall survey and assess the effectiveness of remotely controlled valves to shut off the flow of natural gas in the event of a rupture of an interstate natural gas pipeline facility and shall make a determination about whether the use of remotely controlled valves is technically and economically feasible and would reduce risks associated with a rupture of an interstate natural gas pipeline facility.~~

~~(B) Not later than one year after the survey and assessment are completed, if the Secretary has determined that the use of remotely controlled valves is technically and economically feasible and would reduce risks associated with a rupture of an interstate natural gas pipeline facility, the Secretary shall prescribe standards under which an operator of an interstate natural gas pipeline facility must use a remotely controlled valve. These standards shall include, but not be limited to, requirements for high-density population areas.~~

~~(k) Prohibition against low internal stress exception.--The Secretary may not provide an exception to this chapter for a hazardous liquid pipeline facility only because the facility operates at low internal stress.~~

(k) Low-stress hazardous liquid pipelines.—

(1) Minimum standards.—Not later than December 31, 2007, the Secretary shall issue regulations subjecting low-stress hazardous liquid pipelines to the same standards and regulations as other hazardous liquid pipelines, except as provided in paragraph (3). The implementation of the applicable standards and regulatory requirements may be phased in. The regulations issued under this paragraph shall not apply to gathering lines.

(2) General prohibition against low internal stress exception.—Except as provided in paragraph (3), the Secretary may not provide an exception to the requirements of this chapter for a hazardous liquid pipeline because the pipeline operates at low internal stress.

(3) Limited exceptions.—The Secretary shall provide or continue in force exceptions to this subsection for low-stress hazardous liquid pipelines that—

(A) are subject to safety regulations of the United States Coast Guard; or

(B) serve refining, manufacturing, or truck, rail, or vessel terminal facilities if the pipeline is less than 1 mile long (measured outside the facility grounds) and does not cross an offshore area or a waterway currently used for commercial navigation,

until regulations issued under paragraph (1) become effective. After such regulations become effective, the Secretary may retain or remove those exceptions as appropriate.

(4) Relationship to other laws.—Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to prohibit or otherwise affect the applicability of any other statutory or regulatory exemption to any hazardous liquid pipeline.
(5) Definition.—For purposes of this subsection, the term 'low-stress hazardous liquid pipeline' means a hazardous liquid pipeline that is operated in its entirety at a stress level of 20 percent or less of the specified minimum yield strength of the line pipe.
(6) Effective date.—The requirements of this subsection shall not take effect as to low-stress hazardous liquid pipeline operators before the effective date of the rules promulgated by the Secretary under this subsection.

(l) Updating standards.--The Secretary shall, to the extent appropriate and practicable, update incorporated industry standards that have been adopted as part of the Federal pipeline safety regulatory program under this chapter.

(m) Inspections by direct assessment.--Not later than 1 year after the date of the enactment of this subsection, the Secretary shall issue regulations prescribing standards for inspection of a pipeline facility by direct assessment.

(n) Automatic and Remote-Controlled Shut-off Valves for New Transmission Pipelines.—
(1) In general.—Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this subsection, and after considering the factors specified in subsection (b)(2), the Secretary, if appropriate, shall require by regulation the use of automatic or remote-controlled shut-off valves, or equivalent technology, where economically, technically, and operationally feasible on transmission pipeline facilities constructed or entirely replaced after the date on which the Secretary issues the final rule containing such requirement.
(2) High-consequence area study.—
(A) Study.—The Comptroller General of the United States shall conduct a study on the ability of transmission pipeline facility operators to respond to a hazardous liquid or gas release from a pipeline segment located in a high-consequence area.
(B) Considerations.—In conducting the study, the Comptroller General shall consider the swiftness of leak detection and pipeline shutdown capabilities, the location of the nearest response personnel, and the costs, risks, and benefits of installing automatic and remote-controlled shut-off valves.
(C) Report.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this subsection, the Comptroller General shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report on the results of the study.

(o) Transportation-Related Oil Flow Lines.—
(1) Data collection.—The Secretary may collect geospatial or technical data on transportation-related oil flow lines, including unregulated transportation-related oil flow lines.
(2) Transportation-related oil flow line defined.—
In this subsection, the term "transportation-related oil flow line" means a pipeline transporting oil off of the grounds of the well where it originated and across areas not owned by the producer, regardless of the extent to which the oil has been processed, if at all.
(3) Limitation.—Nothing in this subsection authorizes the Secretary to prescribe standards for the movement of oil through production, refining, or manufacturing facilities or through oil production flow lines located on the grounds of wells.

(p) Limitation on Incorporation of Documents by Reference.—Beginning 1 year after the date of enactment of this subsection, the Secretary may not issue guidance or a regulation pursuant to this chapter that incorporates by reference any documents or portions thereof unless the documents or portions thereof are made available to the public, free of charge, on an Internet Web site.

§ 60103. Standards for liquefied natural gas pipeline facilities

(a) Location standards.--The Secretary of Transportation shall prescribe minimum safety standards for deciding on the location of a new liquefied natural gas pipeline facility. In prescribing a standard, the Secretary shall consider the--

(1) kind and use of the facility;
(2) existing and projected population and demographic characteristics of the location;
(3) existing and proposed land use near the location;
(4) natural physical aspects of the location;
(5) medical, law enforcement, and fire prevention capabilities near the location that can cope with a risk caused by the facility; and
(6) need to encourage remote siting.

(b) Design, installation, construction, inspection, and testing standards.--The Secretary of Transportation shall prescribe minimum safety standards for designing, installing, constructing, initially inspecting, and initially testing a new liquefied natural gas pipeline facility. When prescribing a standard, the Secretary shall consider--

(1) the characteristics of material to be used in constructing the facility and of alternative material;
(2) design factors;
(3) the characteristics of the liquefied natural gas to be stored or converted at, or transported by, the facility; and
(4) the public safety factors of the design and of alternative designs, particularly the ability to prevent and contain a liquefied natural gas spill.

(c) Nonapplication.--(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2) of this subsection, a design, location, installation, construction, initial inspection, or initial testing standard prescribed under this chapter after March 1, 1978, does not apply to an existing liquefied natural gas pipeline facility if the standard is to be applied because of authority given--

(A) under this chapter; or
(B) under another law, and the standard is not prescribed at the time the authority is applied.

(2)(A) Any design, installation, construction, initial inspection, or initial testing standard prescribed under this chapter after March 1, 1978, may provide that the standard applies to any part of a replacement component of a liquefied natural gas pipeline facility if the component or part is placed in service after the standard is prescribed and application of the standard--

(i) does not make the component or part incompatible with other components or parts; or
(ii) is not impracticable otherwise.

(B) Any location standard prescribed under this chapter after March 1, 1978, does not apply to any part of a replacement component of an existing liquefied natural gas pipeline facility.

(3) A design, installation, construction, initial inspection, or initial testing standard does not apply to a liquefied natural gas pipeline facility existing when the standard is adopted.

(d) Operation and maintenance standards.--The Secretary of Transportation shall prescribe minimum operating and maintenance standards for a liquefied natural gas pipeline facility. In prescribing a standard, the Secretary shall consider--

(1) the conditions, features, and type of equipment and structures that make up or are used in connection with the facility;
(2) the fire prevention and containment equipment at the facility;
(3) security measures to prevent an intentional act that could cause a liquefied natural gas accident;
(4) maintenance procedures and equipment;
(5) the training of personnel in matters specified by this subsection; and
(6) other factors and conditions related to the safe handling of liquefied natural gas.

(e) Effective dates.--A standard prescribed under this section is effective on the 30th day after the Secretary of Transportation prescribes the standard. However, the Secretary for good cause may

prescribe a different effective date when required because of the time reasonably necessary to comply with the standard. The different date must be specified in the regulation prescribing the standard.

(f) Contingency plans.--A new liquefied natural gas pipeline facility may be operated only after the operator submits an adequate contingency plan that states the action to be taken if a liquefied natural gas accident occurs. The Secretary of Energy or appropriate State or local authority shall decide if the plan is adequate.

(g) Effect on other standards.--This section does not preclude applying a standard prescribed under section 60102 of this title to a gas pipeline facility (except a liquefied natural gas pipeline facility) associated with a liquefied natural gas pipeline facility.

§ 60104. Requirements and limitations

(a) Opportunity to present views.--The Secretary of Transportation shall give an interested person an opportunity to make oral and written presentations of information, views, and arguments when prescribing a standard under this chapter.

(b) Nonapplication.--A design, installation, construction, initial inspection, or initial testing standard does not apply to a pipeline facility existing when the standard is adopted.

(c) Preemption.--A State authority that has submitted a current certification under section 60105(a) of this title may adopt additional or more stringent safety standards for intrastate pipeline facilities and intrastate pipeline transportation only if those standards are compatible with the minimum standards prescribed under this chapter. A State authority may not adopt or continue in force safety standards for interstate pipeline facilities or interstate pipeline transportation. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, a State authority may enforce a requirement of a one-call notification program of the State if the program meets the requirements for one-call notification programs under this chapter or chapter 61.

(d) Consultation.--(1) When continuity of gas service is affected by prescribing a standard or waiving compliance with standards under this chapter, the Secretary of Transportation shall consult with and advise the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission or a State authority having jurisdiction over the affected gas pipeline facility before prescribing the standard or waiving compliance. The Secretary shall delay the effective date of the standard or waiver until the Commission or State authority has a reasonable opportunity to grant an authorization it considers necessary.

(2) In a proceeding under section 3 or 7 of the Natural Gas Act (15 U.S.C. 717b or 717f), each applicant for authority to import natural gas or to establish, construct, operate, or extend a gas pipeline facility subject to an applicable safety standard shall certify that it will design, install, inspect, test, construct, operate, replace, and maintain a gas pipeline facility under those standards and plans for inspection and maintenance under section 60108 of this title. The certification is binding on the Secretary of Energy and the Commission except when an appropriate enforcement agency has given timely written notice to the Commission that the applicant has violated a standard prescribed under this chapter.

(e) Location and routing of facilities.--This chapter does not authorize the Secretary of Transportation to prescribe the location or routing of a pipeline facility.

§ 60105. State pipeline safety program certifications

(a) General requirements and submission.--Except as provided in this section and sections 60114 and 60121 of this title, the Secretary of Transportation may not prescribe or enforce safety standards and practices for an intrastate pipeline facility or intrastate pipeline transportation to the extent that the safety standards and practices are regulated by a State authority (including a municipality if the standards and practices apply to intrastate gas pipeline transportation) that submits to the Secretary

annually a certification for the facilities and transportation that complies with subsections (b) and (c) of this section.

(b) Contents.--Each certification submitted under subsection (a) of this section shall state that the State authority--

(1) has regulatory jurisdiction over the standards and practices to which the certification applies;

(2) has adopted, by the date of certification, each applicable standard prescribed under this chapter or, if a standard under this chapter was prescribed not later than 120 days before certification, is taking steps to adopt that standard;

(3) is enforcing each adopted standard through ways that include inspections conducted by State employees meeting the qualifications the Secretary prescribes under section 60107(d)(1)(C) of this title;

~~(4) is encouraging and promoting programs designed to prevent damage by demolition, excavation, tunneling, or construction activity to the pipeline facilities to which the certification applies;~~

(4) is encouraging and promoting the establishment of a program designed to prevent damage by demolition, excavation, tunneling, or construction activity to the pipeline facilities to which the certification applies that subjects persons who violate the applicable requirements of that program to civil penalties and other enforcement actions that are substantially the same as are provided under this chapter, and addresses the elements in section 60134(b);

(5) may require record maintenance, reporting, and inspection substantially the same as provided under section 60117 of this title;

(6) may require that plans for inspection and maintenance under section 60108 (a) and (b) of this title be filed for approval; and

(7) may enforce safety standards of the authority under a law of the State by injunctive relief and civil penalties substantially the same as provided under sections 60120 and 60122(a)(1) and (b)-(f) of this title.

(c) Reports.--(1) Each certification submitted under subsection (a) of this section shall include a report that contains--

(A) the name and address of each person to whom the certification applies that is subject to the safety jurisdiction of the State authority;

(B) each accident or incident reported during the prior 12 months by that person involving a fatality, personal injury requiring hospitalization, or property damage or loss of more than an amount the Secretary establishes (even if the person sustaining the fatality, personal injury, or property damage or loss is not subject to the safety jurisdiction of the authority), any other accident the authority considers significant, and a summary of the investigation by the authority of the cause and circumstances surrounding the accident or incident;

(C) the record maintenance, reporting, and inspection practices conducted by the authority to enforce compliance with safety standards prescribed under this chapter to which the certification applies, including the number of inspections of pipeline facilities the authority made during the prior 12 months; and

(D) any other information the Secretary requires.

(2) The report included in the first certification submitted under subsection (a) of this section is only required to state information available at the time of certification.

(d) Application.--A certification in effect under this section does not apply to safety standards prescribed under this chapter after the date of certification. This chapter applies to each applicable safety standard prescribed after the date of certification until the State authority adopts the standard and submits the appropriate certification to the Secretary under subsection (a) of this section.

(e) Monitoring.--The Secretary may monitor a safety program established under this section to ensure that the program complies with the certification. A State authority shall cooperate with the Secretary under this subsection.

(f) Rejections of certification.--If after receiving a certification the Secretary decides the State authority is not enforcing satisfactorily compliance with applicable safety standards prescribed under this chapter,

the Secretary may reject the certification, assert United States Government jurisdiction, or take other appropriate action to achieve adequate enforcement. The Secretary shall give the authority notice and an opportunity for a hearing before taking final action under this subsection. When notice is given, the burden of proof is on the authority to demonstrate that it is enforcing satisfactorily compliance with the prescribed standards.

§ 60106. State pipeline safety agreements

(a) Agreements without certification.--If the Secretary of Transportation does not receive a certification under section 60105 of this title, the Secretary may make an agreement with a State authority (including a municipality if the agreement applies to intrastate gas pipeline transportation) authorizing it to take necessary action. Each agreement shall--

(1) establish an adequate program for record maintenance, reporting, and inspection designed to assist compliance with applicable safety standards prescribed under this chapter; and

(2) prescribe procedures for approval of plans of inspection and maintenance substantially the same as required under section 60108 (a) and (b) of this title.

(b) Agreements with certification.--

(1) In general.--If the Secretary accepts a certification under section 60105 and makes the determination required under this subsection, the Secretary may make an agreement with a State authority authorizing it to participate in the oversight of interstate pipeline transportation. Each such agreement shall include a plan for the State authority to participate in special investigations involving incidents or new construction and allow the State authority to participate in other activities overseeing interstate pipeline transportation or to assume additional inspection or investigatory duties. Nothing in this section modifies section 60104(c) or authorizes the Secretary to delegate the enforcement of safety standards for interstate pipeline facilities prescribed under this chapter to a State authority.

(2) Determinations required.--The Secretary may not enter into an agreement under this subsection, unless the Secretary determines in writing that--

(A) the agreement allowing participation of the State authority is consistent with the Secretary's program for inspection and consistent with the safety policies and provisions provided under this chapter;

(B) the interstate participation agreement would not adversely affect the oversight responsibilities of intrastate pipeline transportation by the State authority;

(C) the State is carrying out a program demonstrated to promote preparedness and risk prevention activities that enable communities to live safely with pipelines;

(D) the State meets the minimum standards for State one-call notification set forth in chapter 61; and

(E) the actions planned under the agreement would not impede interstate commerce or jeopardize public safety.

(3) Existing agreements.--If requested by the State authority, the Secretary shall authorize a State authority which had an interstate agreement in effect after January 31, 1999, to oversee interstate pipeline transportation pursuant to the terms of that agreement until the Secretary determines that the State meets the requirements of paragraph (2) and executes a new agreement, or until December 31, 2003, whichever is sooner. Nothing in this paragraph shall prevent the Secretary, after affording the State notice, hearing, and an opportunity to correct any alleged deficiencies, from terminating an agreement that was in effect before enactment of the Pipeline Safety Improvement Act of 2002 if--

(A) the State authority fails to comply with the terms of the agreement;

(B) implementation of the agreement has resulted in a gap in the oversight responsibilities of intrastate pipeline transportation by the State authority; or

(C) continued participation by the State authority in the oversight of interstate pipeline transportation has had an adverse impact on pipeline safety.

(c) Notification.--

(1) In general.--Each agreement shall require the State authority to notify the Secretary promptly of a violation or probable violation of an applicable safety standard discovered as a result of action taken in carrying out an agreement under this section.

(2) Response by Secretary.--If a State authority notifies the Secretary under paragraph (1) of a violation or probable violation of an applicable safety standard, the Secretary, not later than 60 days after the date of receipt of the notification, shall--

(A) issue an order under section 60118(b) or take other appropriate enforcement actions to ensure compliance with this chapter; or

(B) provide the State authority with a written explanation as to why the Secretary has determined not to take such actions.

(d) Monitoring.--The Secretary may monitor a safety program established under this section to ensure that the program complies with the agreement. A State authority shall cooperate with the Secretary under this subsection.

(e) Ending agreements.--

(1) Permissive termination.--The Secretary may end an agreement under this section when the Secretary finds that the State authority has not complied with any provision of the agreement.

(2) Mandatory termination of agreement.--The Secretary shall end an agreement for the oversight of interstate pipeline transportation if the Secretary finds that--

(A) implementation of such agreement has resulted in a gap in the oversight responsibilities of intrastate pipeline transportation by the State authority;

(B) the State actions under the agreement have failed to meet the requirements under subsection (b); or

(C) continued participation by the State authority in the oversight of interstate pipeline transportation would not promote pipeline safety.

(3) Procedural requirements.--The Secretary shall give notice and an opportunity for a hearing to a State authority before ending an agreement under this section. The Secretary may provide a State an opportunity to correct any deficiencies before ending an agreement. The finding and decision to end the agreement shall be published in the Federal Register and may not become effective for at least 15 days after the date of publication unless the Secretary finds that continuation of an agreement poses an imminent hazard.

§ 60107. State pipeline safety grants

(a) General authority.--If a State authority files an application not later than September 30 of a calendar year, the Secretary of Transportation shall pay ~~not more than 50 percent~~ not more than 80 percent of the cost of the personnel, equipment, and activities the authority reasonably requires during the next calendar year--

(1) to carry out a safety program under a certification under section 60105 of this title or an agreement under section 60106 of this title; or

(2) to act as an agent of the Secretary on interstate gas pipeline facilities or interstate hazardous liquid pipeline facilities.

(b) Payments.--After notifying and consulting with a State authority, the Secretary may withhold any part of a payment when the Secretary decides that the authority is not carrying out satisfactorily a safety program or not acting satisfactorily as an agent. The Secretary may pay an authority under this section only when the authority ensures the Secretary that it will provide the remaining costs of a safety program and that the total State amount spent for a safety program (excluding grants of the United States Government) will at least equal the average amount ~~spent--~~

~~(1) for a gas safety program, for the fiscal years that ended June 30, 1967, and June 30, 1968; and~~

~~(2) for a hazardous liquid safety program, for the fiscal years that ended September 30, 1978, and September 30, 1979.~~ spent for gas and hazardous liquid safety programs for the 3 fiscal years prior to the fiscal year in which the Secretary makes the payment, except when the Secretary waives this

requirement. For each of fiscal years 2012 and 2013, the Secretary shall grant such a waiver to a State if the State can demonstrate an inability to maintain or increase the required funding share of its safety program at or above the level required by this subsection due to economic hardship in that State. For fiscal year 2014, and each fiscal year thereafter, the Secretary may grant such a waiver to a State if the State can make the demonstration described in the preceding sentence.

(c) Apportionment and method of payment.--The Secretary shall apportion the amount appropriated to carry out this section among the States. A payment may be made under this section in installments, in advance, or on a reimbursable basis.

(d) Additional authority and considerations.--(1) The Secretary may prescribe--

(A) the form of, and way of filing, an application under this section;

(B) reporting and fiscal procedures the Secretary considers necessary to ensure the proper accounting of money of the Government; and

(C) qualifications for a State to meet to receive a payment under this section, including qualifications for State employees who perform inspection activities under section 60105 or 60106 of this title.

(2) The qualifications prescribed under paragraph (1)(C) of this subsection may--

(A) consider the experience and training of the employee;

(B) order training or other requirements; and

(C) provide for approval of qualifications on a conditional basis until specified requirements are met.

§ 60108. Inspection and maintenance

(a) Plans.--(1) Each person owning or operating ~~an intrastate~~ a gas pipeline facility or hazardous liquid pipeline facility shall carry out a current written plan (including any changes) for inspection and maintenance of each facility used in the transportation and owned or operated by the person. A copy of the plan shall be kept at any office of the person the Secretary of Transportation considers appropriate. The Secretary also may require a person owning or operating a pipeline facility subject to this chapter to file a plan for inspection and maintenance for approval.

(2) If the Secretary or a State authority responsible for enforcing standards prescribed under this chapter decides that a plan required under paragraph (1) of this subsection is inadequate for safe operation, the Secretary or authority shall require the person to revise the plan. Revision may be required only after giving notice and an opportunity for a hearing. A plan required under paragraph (1) must be practicable and designed to meet the need for pipeline safety and must include terms designed to enhance the ability to discover safety-related conditions described in section 60102(h)(1) of this title. In deciding on the adequacy of a plan, the Secretary or authority shall consider--

(A) relevant available pipeline safety information;

(B) the appropriateness of the plan for the particular kind of pipeline transportation or facility;

(C) the reasonableness of the plan; and

(D) the extent to which the plan will contribute to public safety and the protection of the environment.

(3) A plan required under this subsection shall be made available to the Secretary or State authority on request under section 60117 of this title.

(b) Inspection and testing.--(1) The Secretary shall inspect and require appropriate testing of a pipeline facility subject to this chapter that is not covered by a certification under section 60105 of this title or an agreement under section 60106 of this title. The Secretary shall decide on the frequency and type of inspection and testing under this subsection on a case-by-case basis after considering the following:

(A) the location of the pipeline facility.

(B) the type, size, age, manufacturer, method of construction, and condition of the pipeline facility.

(C) the nature and volume of material transported through the pipeline facility.

(D) the pressure at which that material is transported.
(E) climatic, geologic, and seismic characteristics (including soil characteristics) and conditions of the area in which the pipeline facility is located.
(F) existing and projected population and demographic characteristics of the area in which the pipeline facility is located.
(G) for a hazardous liquid pipeline facility, the proximity of the area in which the facility is located to an area that is unusually sensitive to environmental damage.
(H) the frequency of leaks.
(I) other factors the Secretary decides are relevant to the safety of pipeline facilities.

(2) To the extent and in amounts provided in advance in an appropriation law, the Secretary shall decide on the frequency of inspection under paragraph (1) of this subsection. The Secretary may reduce the frequency of an inspection of a master meter system.

(3) Testing under this subsection shall use the most appropriate technology practicable.

(c) Pipeline facilities offshore and in other waters.--(1) In this subsection--
(A) "abandoned" means permanently removed from service.
(B) "pipeline facility" includes an underwater abandoned pipeline facility.
(C) if a pipeline facility has no operator, the most recent operator of the facility is deemed to be the operator of the facility.

(2)(A) Not later than May 16, 1993, on the basis of experience with the inspections under section 3(h)(1)(A) of the Natural Gas Pipeline Safety Act of 1968 or section 203(l)(1)(A) of the Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Safety Act of 1979, as appropriate, and any other information available to the Secretary, the Secretary shall establish a mandatory, systematic, and, where appropriate, periodic inspection program of--
(i) all offshore pipeline facilities; and
(ii) any other pipeline facility crossing under, over, or through waters where a substantial likelihood of commercial navigation exists, if the Secretary decides that the location of the facility in those waters could pose a hazard to navigation or public safety.

(B) In prescribing standards to carry out subparagraph (A) of this paragraph--
(i) the Secretary shall identify what is a hazard to navigation with respect to an underwater abandoned pipeline facility; and
(ii) for an underwater pipeline facility abandoned after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall include requirements that will lessen the potential that the facility will pose a hazard to navigation and shall consider the relationship between water depth and navigational safety and factors relevant to the local marine environment.

(3)(A) The Secretary shall establish by regulation a program requiring an operator of a pipeline facility described in paragraph (2) of this subsection to report a potential or existing navigational hazard involving that pipeline facility to the Secretary through the appropriate Coast Guard office.
(B) The operator of a pipeline facility described in paragraph (2) of this subsection that discovers any part of the pipeline facility that is a hazard to navigation shall mark the location of the hazardous part with a Coast-Guard-approved marine buoy or marker and immediately shall notify the Secretary as provided by the Secretary under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph. A marine buoy or marker used under this subparagraph is deemed a pipeline sign or right-of-way marker under section 60123(c) of this title.

(4)(A) The Secretary shall establish a standard that each pipeline facility described in paragraph (2) of this subsection that is a hazard to navigation is buried not later than 6 months after the date the condition of the facility is reported to the Secretary. The Secretary may extend that 6-month period for a reasonable period to ensure compliance with this paragraph.
(B) In prescribing standards for subparagraph (A) of this paragraph for an underwater pipeline facility abandoned after October 24, 1992, the Secretary shall include requirements that will lessen the potential that the facility will pose a hazard to navigation and shall consider the relationship between water depth and navigational safety and factors relevant to the local marine environment.

(5)(A) Not later than October 24, 1994, the Secretary shall establish standards on what is an exposed offshore pipeline facility and what is a hazard to navigation under this subsection.

(B) Not later than 6 months after the Secretary establishes standards under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph, or October 24, 1995, whichever occurs first, the operator of each offshore pipeline facility not described in section 3(h)(1)(A) of the Natural Gas Pipeline Safety Act of 1968 or section 203(l)(1)(A) of the Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Safety Act of 1979, as appropriate, shall inspect the facility and report to the Secretary on any part of the facility that is exposed or is a hazard to navigation. This subparagraph applies only to a facility that is between the high water mark and the point at which the subsurface is under 15 feet of water, as measured from mean low water. An inspection that occurred after October 3, 1989, may be used for compliance with this subparagraph if the inspection conforms to the requirements of this subparagraph.

(C) The Secretary may extend the time period specified in subparagraph (B) of this paragraph for not more than 6 months if the operator of a facility satisfies the Secretary that the operator has made a good faith effort, with reasonable diligence, but has been unable to comply by the end of that period.

(6)(A) The operator of a pipeline facility abandoned after October 24, 1992, shall report the abandonment to the Secretary in a way that specifies whether the facility has been abandoned properly according to applicable United States Government and State requirements.

(B) Not later than October 24, 1995, the operator of a pipeline facility abandoned before October 24, 1992, shall report to the Secretary reasonably available information related to the facility, including information that a third party possesses. The information shall include the location, size, date, and method of abandonment, whether the facility has been abandoned properly under applicable law, and other relevant information the Secretary may require. Not later than April 24, 1994, the Secretary shall specify how the information shall be reported. The Secretary shall ensure that the Government maintains the information in a way accessible to appropriate Government agencies and State authorities.

(C) The Secretary shall request that a State authority having information on a collision between a vessel and an underwater pipeline facility report the information to the Secretary in a timely way and make a reasonable effort to specify the location, date, and severity of the collision. Chapter 35 of title 44 does not apply to this subparagraph.

(7) The Secretary may not exempt from this chapter an offshore hazardous liquid pipeline facility only because the pipeline facility transfers hazardous liquid in an underwater pipeline between a vessel and an onshore facility.

(8) If, after reviewing existing Federal and State regulations for hazardous liquid gathering lines located offshore in the United States, including within the inlets of the Gulf of Mexico, the Secretary determines it is appropriate, the Secretary shall issue regulations, after notice and an opportunity for a hearing, subjecting offshore hazardous liquid gathering lines and hazardous liquid gathering lines located within the inlets of the Gulf of Mexico to the same standards and regulations as other hazardous liquid gathering lines. The regulations issued under this paragraph shall not apply to production pipelines or flow lines.

(d) Replacing cast iron gas pipelines.--(1) The Secretary shall publish a notice on the availability of industry guidelines, developed by the Gas Piping Technology Committee, for replacing cast iron pipelines. Not later than 2 years after the guidelines become available, the Secretary shall conduct a survey of gas pipeline operators with cast iron pipe in their systems to establish--

(A) the extent to which each operator has adopted a plan for the safe management and replacement of cast iron;

(B) the elements of the plan, including the anticipated rate of replacement; and

(C) the progress that has been made.

(2) Chapter 35 of title 44 does not apply to the conduct of the survey.

(3) This subsection does not prevent the Secretary from developing Government guidelines or standards for cast iron gas pipelines as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(4) Not later than December 31, 2012, and every 2 years thereafter, the Secretary shall conduct a follow-up survey to measure the progress that owners and operators of pipeline facilities have made in adopting and implementing their plans for the safe management and replacement of cast iron gas pipelines.

§ 60109. High-density population areas and environmentally sensitive areas

(a) Identification requirements.--Not later than October 24, 1994, the Secretary of Transportation shall prescribe standards that--

(1) establish criteria for identifying--

(A) by operators of gas pipeline facilities, each gas pipeline facility (except a natural gas distribution line) located in a high-density population area; and

(B) by operators of hazardous liquid pipeline facilities and gathering lines--

(i) each hazardous liquid pipeline facility, whether otherwise subject to this chapter, that crosses waters where a substantial likelihood of commercial navigation exists or that is located in an area described in the criteria as a high-density population area; and

(ii) each hazardous liquid pipeline facility and gathering line, whether otherwise subject to this chapter, located in an area that the Secretary, in consultation with the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency, describes as unusually sensitive to environmental damage if there is a hazardous liquid pipeline accident; and

(2) provide that the identification be carried out through the inventory required under section 60102(e) of this title.

(b) Areas to be included as unusually sensitive.--When describing areas that are unusually sensitive to environmental damage if there is a hazardous liquid pipeline accident, the Secretary shall consider areas where a pipeline rupture would likely cause permanent or long-term environmental damage, including--

(1) locations near pipeline rights-of-way that are critical to drinking water, including intake locations for community water systems and critical sole source aquifer protection areas; and

(2) locations near pipeline rights-of-way that have been identified as critical wetlands, riverine or estuarine systems, national parks, wilderness areas, wildlife preservation areas or refuges, wild and scenic rivers, or critical habitat areas for threatened and endangered species.

(c) Risk analysis and integrity management programs.--

(1) Requirement.--Each operator of a gas pipeline facility shall conduct an analysis of the risks to each facility of the operator located in an area identified pursuant to subsection (a)(1) and defined in chapter 192 of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, including any subsequent modifications, and shall adopt and implement a written integrity management program for such facility to reduce the risks.

(2) Regulations.--

(A) In general.--Not later than 12 months after the date of enactment of this subsection, the Secretary shall issue regulations prescribing standards to direct an operator's conduct of a risk analysis and adoption and implementation of an integrity management program under this subsection. The regulations shall require an operator to conduct a risk analysis and adopt an integrity management program within a time period prescribed by the Secretary, ending not later than 24 months after such date of enactment. Not later than 18 months after such date of enactment, each operator of a gas pipeline facility shall begin a baseline integrity assessment described in paragraph (3).

(B) Authority to issue regulations.--The Secretary may satisfy the requirements of this paragraph through the issuance of regulations under this paragraph or under other authority of law.

(3) Minimum requirements of integrity management programs.--An integrity management program required under paragraph (1) shall include, at a minimum, the following requirements:

(A) A baseline integrity assessment of each of the operator's facilities in areas identified pursuant to subsection (a)(1) and defined in chapter 192 of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, including any subsequent modifications, by internal inspection device, pressure testing, direct assessment, or an alternative method that the Secretary determines would provide an equal or greater level of safety. The operator shall complete such assessment not later than 10 years after the date of enactment of this subsection. At least 50 percent of such facilities shall be assessed not later than 5 years after such date of enactment. The operator

shall prioritize such facilities for assessment based on all risk factors, including any previously discovered defects or anomalies and any history of leaks, repairs, or failures. The operator shall ensure that assessments of facilities with the highest risks are given priority for completion and that such assessments will be completed not later than 5 years after such date of enactment.

~~(B) Subject to paragraph (5), periodic reassessment of the facility, at a minimum of once every 7 years, using methods described in subparagraph (A).~~

(B) Subject to paragraph (5), periodic reassessments of the facility, at a minimum of once every 7 calendar years, using methods described in subparagraph (A). The Secretary may extend such deadline for an additional 6 months if the operator submits written notice to the Secretary with sufficient justification of the need for the extension.

(C) Clearly defined criteria for evaluating the results of assessments conducted under subparagraphs (A) and (B) and for taking actions based on such results.

(D) A method for conducting an analysis on a continuing basis that integrates all available information about the integrity of the facility and the consequences of releases from the facility.

(E) A description of actions to be taken by the operator to promptly address any integrity issue raised by an evaluation conducted under subparagraph (C) or the analysis conducted under subparagraph (D).

(F) A description of measures to prevent and mitigate the consequences of releases from the facility.

(G) A method for monitoring cathodic protection systems throughout the pipeline system of the operator to the extent not addressed by other regulations.

(H) If the Secretary raises a safety concern relating to the facility, a description of the actions to be taken by the operator to address the safety concern, including issues raised with the Secretary by States and local authorities under an agreement entered into under section 60106.

(4) Treatment of baseline integrity assessments.--In the case of a baseline integrity assessment conducted by an operator in the period beginning on the date of enactment of this subsection and ending on the date of issuance of regulations under this subsection, the Secretary shall accept the assessment as complete, and shall not require the operator to repeat any portion of the assessment, if the Secretary determines that the assessment was conducted in accordance with the requirements of this subsection.

(5) Waivers and modifications.--In accordance with section 60118(c), the Secretary may waive or modify any requirement for reassessment of a facility under paragraph (3)(B) for reasons that may include the need to maintain local product supply or the lack of internal inspection devices if the Secretary determines that such waiver is not inconsistent with pipeline safety.

(6) Standards.--The standards prescribed by the Secretary under paragraph (2) shall address each of the following factors:

(A) The minimum requirements described in paragraph (3).

(B) The type or frequency of inspections or testing of pipeline facilities, in addition to the minimum requirements of paragraph (3)(B).

(C) The manner in which the inspections or testing are conducted.

(D) The criteria used in analyzing results of the inspections or testing.

(E) The types of information sources that must be integrated in assessing the integrity of a pipeline facility as well as the manner of integration.

(F) The nature and timing of actions selected to address the integrity of a pipeline facility.

(G) Such other factors as the Secretary determines appropriate to ensure that the integrity of a pipeline facility is addressed and that appropriate mitigative measures are adopted to protect areas identified under subsection (a)(1).

In prescribing those standards, the Secretary shall ensure that all inspections required are conducted in a manner that minimizes environmental and safety risks, and shall take into account the applicable level of protection established by national consensus standards organizations.

(7) Additional optional standards.--The Secretary may also prescribe standards requiring an operator of a pipeline facility to include in an integrity management program under this subsection--

(A) changes to valves or the establishment or modification of systems that monitor pressure and detect leaks based on the operator's risk analysis; and

(B) the use of emergency flow restricting devices.

(8) Lack of regulations.--In the absence of regulations addressing the elements of an integrity management program described in this subsection, the operator of a pipeline facility shall conduct a risk analysis and adopt and implement an integrity management program described in this subsection not later than 24 months after the date of enactment of this subsection and shall complete the baseline integrity assessment described in this subsection not later than 10 years after such date of enactment. At least 50 percent of such facilities shall be assessed not later than 5 years after such date of enactment. The operator shall prioritize such facilities for assessment based on all risk factors, including any previously discovered defects or anomalies and any history of leaks, repairs, or failures. The operator shall ensure that assessments of facilities with the highest risks are given priority for completion and that such assessments will be completed not later than 5 years after such date of enactment.

(9) Review of integrity management programs.--

(A) Review of programs.--

(i) In general.--The Secretary shall review a risk analysis and integrity management program under paragraph (1) and record the results of that review for use in the next review of an operator's program.

(ii) Context of review.--The Secretary may conduct a review under clause (i) as an element of the Secretary's inspection of an operator.

~~(iii) Inadequate programs.--If the Secretary determines that a risk analysis or integrity management program does not comply with the requirements of this subsection or regulations issued as described in paragraph (2), or is inadequate for the safe operation of a pipeline facility, the Secretary shall act under section 60108(a)(2) to require the operator to revise the risk analysis or integrity management program.~~

(iii) Inadequate programs.—If the Secretary determines that a risk analysis or integrity management program does not comply with the requirements of this subsection or regulations issued as described in paragraph (2), has not been adequately implemented, or is inadequate for the safe operation of a pipeline facility, the Secretary may conduct proceedings under this chapter.

(B) Amendments to programs.--In order to facilitate reviews under this paragraph, an operator of a pipeline facility shall notify the Secretary of any amendment made to the operator's integrity management program not later than 30 days after the date of adoption of the amendment. The Secretary shall review any such amendment in accordance with this paragraph.

(C) Transmittal of programs to State authorities.--The Secretary shall provide a copy of each risk analysis and integrity management program reviewed by the Secretary under this paragraph to any appropriate State authority with which the Secretary has entered into an agreement under section 60106.

(10) State review of integrity management plans.--A State authority that enters into an agreement pursuant to section 60106, permitting the State authority to review the risk analysis and integrity management program pursuant to paragraph (9), may provide the Secretary with a written assessment of the risk analysis and integrity management program, make recommendations, as appropriate, to address safety concerns not adequately addressed by the operator's risk analysis or integrity management program, and submit documentation explaining the State-proposed revisions. The Secretary shall consider carefully the State's proposals and work in consultation with the States and operators to address safety concerns.

(11) Application of standards.--Section 60104(b) shall not apply to this section.

(d) Evaluation of integrity management regulations.--Not later than 4 years after the date of enactment of this subsection, the Comptroller General shall complete an assessment and evaluation of the effects on public safety and the environment of the requirements for the implementation of integrity management programs contained in the standards prescribed as described in subsection (c)(2).

(e) Distribution integrity management programs.—

(1) Minimum standards.—Not later than December 31, 2007, the Secretary shall prescribe minimum standards for integrity management programs for distribution pipelines.

(2) Additional authority of Secretary.—In carrying out this subsection, the Secretary may require

operators of distribution pipelines to continually identify and assess risks on their distribution lines, to remediate conditions that present a potential threat to line integrity, and to monitor program effectiveness.

(3) Excess flow valves.—

(A) In general.—The minimum standards shall include a requirement for an operator of a natural gas distribution system to install an excess flow valve on each single family residence service line connected to such system if—

(i) the service line is installed or entirely replaced after June 1, 2008;

(ii) the service line operates continuously throughout the year at a pressure not less than 10 pounds per square inch gauge;

(iii) the service line is not connected to a gas stream with respect to which the operator has had prior experience with contaminants, the presence of which could interfere with the operation of an excess flow valve;

(iv) the installation of an excess flow valve on the service line is not likely to cause loss of service to the residence or interfere with necessary operation or maintenance activities, such as purging liquids from the service line; and

(v) an excess flow valve meeting performance standards developed under section 60110(e) of title 49, United States Code, is commercially available to the operator, as determined by the Secretary.

(B) Distribution branch services, multifamily facilities, and small commercial facilities.—Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of the Pipeline Safety, Regulatory Certainty, and Job Creation Act of 2011, and after issuing a final report on the evaluation of the National Transportation Safety Board's recommendation on excess flow valves in applications other than service lines serving one single family residence, the Secretary, if appropriate, shall by regulation require the use of excess flow valves, or equivalent technology, where economically, technically, and operationally feasible on new or entirely replaced distribution branch services, multifamily facilities, and small commercial facilities.

~~(B)~~(C) Reports.—Operators of natural gas distribution systems shall report annually to the Secretary on the number of excess flow valves installed on their systems under subparagraph (A).

(4) Applicability.—The Secretary shall determine which distribution pipelines will be subject to the minimum standards.

(5) Development and implementation.—Each operator of a distribution pipeline that the Secretary determines is subject to the minimum standards prescribed by the Secretary under this subsection shall develop and implement an integrity management program in accordance with those standards.

(6) Savings clause.—Subject to section 60104(c), a State authority having a current certification under section 60105 may adopt or continue in force additional integrity management requirements, including additional requirements for installation of excess flow valves, for gas distribution pipelines within the boundaries of that State.

(f) Certification of pipeline integrity management program performance.—The Secretary shall establish procedures requiring certification of annual and semi-annual pipeline integrity management program performance reports by a senior executive officer of the company operating a pipeline subject to this chapter. The procedures shall require a signed statement, which may be effected electronically in accordance with the provisions of the Electronic Signatures in Global and National Commerce Act (15 U.S.C. 7001 et seq.), certifying that—

(1) the signing officer has reviewed the report; and

(2) to the best of such officer's knowledge and belief, the report is true and complete.

§ 60110. Excess flow valves

(a) Application.--This section applies only to--

(1) a natural gas distribution system installed after the effective date of regulations prescribed under this section; and

(2) any other natural gas distribution system when repair to the system requires replacing a part to accommodate installing excess flow valves.

(b) Installation requirements and considerations.--Not later than April 24, 1994, the Secretary of Transportation shall prescribe standards on the circumstances, if any, under which an operator of a natural gas distribution system must install excess flow valves in the system. The Secretary shall consider--

(1) the system design pressure;
(2) the system operating pressure;
(3) the types of customers to which the distribution system supplies gas, including hospitals, schools, and commercial enterprises;
(4) the technical feasibility and cost of installing, operating, and maintaining the valve;
(5) the public safety benefits of installing the valve;
(6) the location of customer meters; and
(7) other factors the Secretary considers relevant.

(c) Notification of availability.--(1) Not later than October 24, 1994, the Secretary shall prescribe standards requiring an operator of a natural gas distribution system to notify in writing its customers having lines in which excess flow valves are not required by law but can be installed according to the standards prescribed under subsection (e) of this section, of--

(A) the availability of excess flow valves for installation in the system;
(B) safety benefits to be derived from installation; and
(C) costs associated with installation, maintenance, and replacement.

(2) The standards shall provide that, except when installation is required under subsection (b) of this section, excess flow valves shall be installed at the request of the customer if the customer will pay all costs associated with installation.

(d) Report.--If the Secretary decides under subsection (b) of this section that there are no circumstances under which an operator must install excess flow valves, the Secretary shall submit to Congress a report on the reasons for the decision not later than 30 days after the decision is made.

(e) Performance standards.--Not later than April 24, 1994, the Secretary shall develop standards for the performance of excess flow valves used to protect lines in a natural gas distribution system. The Secretary may adopt industry accepted performance standards in order to comply with the requirement under the preceding sentence. The standards shall be incorporated into regulations the Secretary prescribes under this section. All excess flow valves shall be installed according to the standards.

§ 60111. Financial responsibility for liquefied natural gas facilities

(a) Notice.--When the Secretary of Transportation believes that an operator of a liquefied natural gas facility does not have adequate financial responsibility for the facility, the Secretary may issue a notice to the operator about the inadequacy and the amount of financial responsibility the Secretary considers adequate.

(b) Hearings.--An operator receiving a notice under subsection (a) of this section may have a hearing on the record not later than 30 days after receiving the notice. The operator may show why the Secretary should not issue an order requiring the operator to demonstrate and maintain financial responsibility in at least the amount the Secretary considers adequate.

(c) Orders.--After an opportunity for a hearing on the record, the Secretary may issue the order if the Secretary decides it is justified in the public interest.

§ 60112. Pipeline facilities hazardous to life and property

(a) General authority.--After notice and an opportunity for a hearing, the Secretary of Transportation may decide that a pipeline facility is hazardous if the Secretary decides that--

(1) operation of the facility is or would be hazardous to life, property, or the environment; or

(2) the facility is or would be constructed or operated, or a component of the facility is or would be constructed or operated, with equipment, material, or a technique that the Secretary decides is hazardous to life, property, or the environment.

(b) Considerations.--In making a decision under subsection (a) of this section, the Secretary shall consider, if relevant--

(1) the characteristics of the pipe and other equipment used in the pipeline facility, including the age, manufacture, physical properties, and method of manufacturing, constructing, or assembling the equipment;

(2) the nature of the material the pipeline facility transports, the corrosive and deteriorative qualities of the material, the sequence in which the material are transported, and the pressure required for transporting the material;

(3) the aspects of the area in which the pipeline facility is located, including climatic and geologic conditions and soil characteristics;

(4) the proximity of the area in which the hazardous liquid pipeline facility is located to environmentally sensitive areas;

(5) the population density and population and growth patterns of the area in which the pipeline facility is located;

(6) any recommendation of the National Transportation Safety Board made under another law; and

(7) other factors the Secretary considers appropriate.

(c) Opportunity for State comment.--The Secretary shall provide, to any appropriate official of a State in which a pipeline facility is located and about which a proceeding has begun under this section, notice and an opportunity to comment on an agreement the Secretary proposes to make to resolve the proceeding. State comment shall incorporate comments of affected local officials.

(d) Corrective action orders.--

(1) In general.--If the Secretary decides under subsection (a) of this section that a pipeline facility is or would be hazardous, the Secretary shall order the operator of the facility to take necessary corrective action, including suspended or restricted use of the facility, physical inspection, testing, repair, replacement, or other appropriate action.

(2) Actions attributable to an employee.--If, in the case of a corrective action order issued following an accident, the Secretary determines that the actions of an employee carrying out an activity regulated under this chapter, including duties under section 60102(a), may have contributed substantially to the cause of the accident, the Secretary shall direct the operator to relieve the employee from performing those activities, reassign the employee, or place the employee on leave until the earlier of the date on which--

(A) the Secretary, after notice and an opportunity for a hearing, determines that the employee's actions did not contribute substantially to the cause of the accident; or

(B) the Secretary determines the employee has been re-qualified or re- trained as provided for in section 60131 and can safely perform those activities.

(3) Effect of collective bargaining agreements.--An action taken by an operator under paragraph (2) shall be in accordance with the terms and conditions of any applicable collective bargaining agreement.

(e) Waiver of notice and hearing in emergency.--The Secretary may waive the requirements for notice and an opportunity for a hearing under this section and issue expeditiously an order under this section if the Secretary decides failure to issue the order expeditiously will result in likely serious harm to life, property, or the environment. An order under this subsection shall provide an opportunity for a hearing as soon as practicable after the order is issued.

§ 60113. Customer-owned natural gas service lines

Not later than October 24, 1993, the Secretary of Transportation shall prescribe standards requiring an operator of a natural gas distribution pipeline that does not maintain customer-owned natural gas service lines up to building walls to advise its customers of--

(1) the requirements for maintaining those lines;
(2) any resources known to the operator that could assist customers in carrying out the maintenance;
(3) information the operator has on operating and maintaining its lines that could assist customers; and
(4) the potential hazards of not maintaining the lines.

§ 60114. One-call notification systems

(a) Minimum requirements.--The Secretary of Transportation shall prescribe standards providing minimum requirements for establishing and operating a one-call notification system for a State to adopt that will notify an operator of a pipeline facility of activity in the vicinity of the facility that could threaten the safety of the facility. The regulations shall include the following:

(1) a requirement that the system apply to all areas of the State containing underground pipeline facilities.
(2) a requirement that a person, including a government employee or contractor, intending to engage in an activity the Secretary decides could cause physical damage to an underground facility must contact the appropriate system to establish if there are underground facilities present in the area of the intended activity.
(3) a requirement that all operators of underground pipeline facilities participate in an appropriate one-call notification system.
(4) qualifications for an operator of a facility, a private contractor, or a State or local authority to operate a system.
(5) procedures for advertisement and notice of the availability of a system.
(6) a requirement about the information to be provided by a person contacting the system under clause (2) of this subsection.
(7) a requirement for the response of the operator of the system and of the facility after they are contacted by an individual under this subsection.
(8) a requirement that each State decide whether the system will be toll free.
(9) a requirement for sanctions substantially the same as provided under sections 60120 and 60122 of this title.

(b) Marking facilities.--On notification by an operator of a damage prevention program or by a person planning to carry out demolition, excavation, tunneling, or construction in the vicinity of a pipeline facility, the operator of the facility shall mark accurately, in a reasonable and timely way, the location of the pipeline facilities in the vicinity of the demolition, excavation, tunneling, or construction.

(c) Relationship to other laws.--This section and regulations prescribed under this section do not affect the liability established under a law of the United States or a State for damage caused by an activity described in subsection (a)(2) of this section.

(d) Prohibition applicable to excavators.—A person who engages in demolition, excavation, tunneling, or construction—

(1) may not engage in a demolition, excavation, tunneling, or construction activity in a State that has adopted a one-call notification system with out first using that system to establish the location of underground facilities in the demolition, excavation, tunneling, or construction area;
(2) may not engage in such demolition, excavation, tunneling, or construction activity in disregard of location information or markings established by a pipeline facility operator pursuant to subsection (b); and
(3) and who causes damage to a pipeline facility that may endanger life or cause serious bodily

harm or damage to property—

(A) may not fail to promptly report the damage to the owner or operator of the facility; and

(B) if the damage results in the escape of any flammable, toxic, or corrosive gas or liquid, may not fail to promptly report to other appropriate authorities by calling the 911 emergency telephone number.

(e) Prohibition applicable to underground pipeline facility owners and operators.—Any owner or operator of a pipeline facility who fails to respond to a location request in order to prevent damage to the pipeline facility or who fails to take reasonable steps, in response to such a request, to ensure accurate marking of the location of the pipeline facility in order to prevent damage to the pipeline facility shall be subject to a civil action under section 60120 or assessment of a civil penalty under section 60122.

(f) Limitation.—The Secretary may not conduct an enforcement proceeding under subsection (d) for a violation within the boundaries of a State that has the authority to impose penalties described in section 60134(b)(7) against persons who violate that State's damage prevention laws, unless the Secretary has determined that the State's enforcement is inadequate to protect safety, consistent with this chapter, and until the Secretary issues, through a rulemaking proceeding, the procedures for determining inadequate State enforcement of penalties.

(g) Technology development grants.—The Secretary may make grants to any organization or entity (not including for-profit entities) for the development of technologies that will facilitate the prevention of pipeline damage caused by demolition, excavation, tunneling, or construction activities, with emphasis on wireless and global positioning technologies having potential for use in connection with notification systems and underground facility locating and marking services. Funds provided under this subsection may not be used for lobbying or in direct support of litigation. The Secretary may also support such technology development through cooperative agreements with trade associations, academic institutions, and other organizations.

§ 60115. Technical safety standards committees

(a) Organization.--The Technical Pipeline Safety Standards Committee and the Technical Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Safety Standards Committee are committees in the Department of Transportation. The committees referred to in the preceding sentence shall serve as peer review committees for carrying out this chapter. Peer reviews conducted by the committees shall be treated for purposes of all Federal laws relating to risk assessment and peer review (including laws that take effect after the date of the enactment of the Accountable Pipeline Safety and Partnership Act of 1996) as meeting any peer review requirements of such laws.

(b) Composition and appointment.--(1) The Technical Pipeline Safety Standards Committee is composed of 15 members appointed by the Secretary of Transportation after consulting with public and private agencies concerned with the technical aspect of transporting gas or operating a gas pipeline facility. Each member must be experienced in the safety regulation of transporting gas and of gas pipeline facilities or technically qualified, by training, experience, or knowledge in at least one field of engineering applicable to transporting gas or operating a gas pipeline facility, to evaluate gas pipeline safety standards or risk management principles.

(2) The Technical Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Safety Standards Committee is composed of 15 members appointed by the Secretary after consulting with public and private agencies concerned with the technical aspect of transporting hazardous liquid or operating a hazardous liquid pipeline facility. Each member must be experienced in the safety regulation of transporting hazardous liquid and of hazardous liquid pipeline facilities or technically qualified, by training, experience, or knowledge in at least one field of engineering applicable to transporting hazardous liquid or operating a hazardous liquid pipeline facility, to evaluate hazardous liquid pipeline safety standards or risk management principles.

(3) The members of each committee are appointed as follows:

(A) 5 individuals selected from departments, agencies, and instrumentalities of the United States Government and of the States.
(B) 5 individuals selected from the natural gas or hazardous liquid industry, as appropriate, after consulting with industry representatives.
(C) 5 individuals selected from the general public.

(4)(A) Two of the individuals selected for each committee under paragraph (3)(A) of this subsection must be State commissioners. The Secretary shall consult with the national organization of State commissions before selecting those 2 individuals.
(B) At least 3 of the individuals selected for each committee under paragraph (3)(B) of this subsection must be currently in the active operation of natural gas pipelines or hazardous liquid pipeline facilities, as appropriate. At least 1 of the individuals selected for each committee under paragraph (3)(B) shall have education, background, or experience in risk assessment and cost-benefit analysis. The Secretary shall consult with the national organizations representing the owners and operators of pipeline facilities before selecting individuals under paragraph (3)(B).
(C) Two of the individuals selected for each committee under paragraph (3)(C) of this subsection must have education, background, or experience in environmental protection or public safety. At least 1 of the individuals selected for each committee under paragraph (3)(C) shall have education, background, or experience in risk assessment and cost-benefit analysis. At least one individual selected for each committee under paragraph (3)(C) may not have a financial interest in the pipeline, petroleum, or natural gas industries.
(D) None of the individuals selected for a committee under paragraph (3)(C) may have a significant financial interest in the pipeline, petroleum, or gas industry.

(c) Committee reports on proposed standards.--(1) The Secretary shall give to--
(A) the Technical Pipeline Safety Standards Committee each standard proposed under this chapter for transporting gas and for gas pipeline facilities including the risk assessment information and other analyses supporting each proposed standard; and
(B) the Technical Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Safety Standards Committee each standard proposed under this chapter for transporting hazardous liquid and for hazardous liquid pipeline facilities including the risk assessment information and other analyses supporting each proposed standard.

(2) Not later than 90 days after receiving the proposed standard and supporting analyses, the appropriate committee shall prepare and submit to the Secretary a report on the technical feasibility, reasonableness, cost-effectiveness, and practicability of the proposed standard and include in the report recommended actions. The Secretary shall publish each report, including any recommended actions and minority views. The report if timely made is part of the proceeding for prescribing the standard. The Secretary is not bound by the conclusions of the committee. However, if the Secretary rejects the conclusions of the committee, the Secretary shall publish the reasons.
(3) The Secretary may prescribe a standard after the end of the 90-day period.

(d) Proposed committee standards and policy development recommendations.--(1) The Technical Pipeline Safety Standards Committee may propose to the Secretary a safety standard for transporting gas and for gas pipeline facilities. The Technical Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Safety Standards Committee may propose to the Secretary a safety standard for transporting hazardous liquid and for hazardous liquid pipeline facilities.
(2) If requested by the Secretary, a committee shall make policy development recommendations to the Secretary.

(e) Meetings.--Each committee shall meet with the Secretary at least up to 4 times annually. Each committee proceeding shall be recorded. The record of the proceeding shall be available to the public.

(f) Expenses.--A member of a committee under this section is entitled to expenses under section 5703 of title 5. A payment under this subsection does not make a member an officer or employee of the Government. This subsection does not apply to members regularly employed by the Government.

§ 60116. Public education programs

(a) In general.--Each owner or operator of a gas or hazardous liquid pipeline facility shall carry out a continuing program to educate the public on the use of a one-call notification system prior to excavation and other damage prevention activities, the possible hazards associated with unintended releases from the pipeline facility, the physical indications that such a release may have occurred, what steps should be taken for public safety in the event of a pipeline release, and how to report such an event.

(b) Modification of existing programs.--Not later than 12 months after the date of enactment of the Pipeline Safety Improvement Act of 2002, each owner or operator of a gas or hazardous liquid pipeline facility shall review its existing public education program for effectiveness and modify the program as necessary. The completed program shall include activities to advise affected municipalities, school districts, businesses, and residents of pipeline facility locations. The completed program shall be submitted to the Secretary or, in the case of an intrastate pipeline facility operator, the appropriate State agency, and shall be periodically reviewed by the Secretary or, in the case of an intrastate pipeline facility operator, the appropriate State agency.

(c) Standards.--The Secretary may issue standards prescribing the elements of an effective public education program. The Secretary may also develop material for use in the program.

§ 60117. Administrative

(a) General authority.--To carry out this chapter, the Secretary of Transportation may conduct investigations, make reports, issue subpoena, conduct hearings, require the production of records, take depositions, and conduct research, testing, development, demonstration, and training activities and promotional activities relating to prevention of damage to pipeline facilities. The Secretary may not charge a tuition-type fee for training State or local government personnel in the enforcement of regulations prescribed under this chapter.

(b) Records, reports, and information.--To enable the Secretary to decide whether a person owning or operating a pipeline facility is complying with this chapter and standards prescribed or orders issued under this chapter, the person shall--

(1) maintain records, make reports, and provide information the Secretary requires; and

(2) make the records, reports, and information available when the Secretary requests.

The Secretary may require owners and operators of gathering lines to provide the Secretary information pertinent to the Secretary's ability to make a determination as to whether and to what extent to regulate gathering lines.

(c) Entry and inspection.--An officer, employee, or agent of the Department of Transportation designated by the Secretary, on display of proper credentials to the individual in charge, may enter premises to inspect the records and property of a person at a reasonable time and in a reasonable way to decide whether a person is complying with this chapter and standards prescribed or orders issued under this chapter.

(d) Confidentiality of information.--Information related to a confidential matter referred to in section 1905 of title 18 that is obtained by the Secretary or an officer, employee, or agent in carrying out this section may be disclosed only to another officer or employee concerned with carrying out this chapter or in a proceeding under this chapter.

(e) Use of accident reports.--(1) Each accident report made by an officer, employee, or agent of the Department may be used in a judicial proceeding resulting from the accident. The officer, employee, or agent may be required to testify in the proceeding about the facts developed in investigating the accident. The report shall be made available to the public in a way that does not identify an individual.

(2) Each report related to research and demonstration projects and related activities is public information.

(f) Testing facilities involved in accidents.--The Secretary may require testing of a part of a pipeline facility subject to this chapter that has been involved in or affected by an accident only after--

(1) notifying the appropriate State official in the State in which the facility is located; and

(2) attempting to negotiate a mutually acceptable plan for testing with the owner of the facility and, when the Secretary considers appropriate, the National Transportation Safety Board.

(g) Providing safety information.--On request, the Secretary shall provide the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission or appropriate State authority with information the Secretary has on the safety of material, operations, devices, or processes related to pipeline transportation or operating a pipeline facility.

(h) Cooperation.--The Secretary may--

(1) advise, assist, and cooperate with other departments, agencies, and instrumentalities of the United States Government, the States, and public and private agencies and persons in planning and developing safety standards and ways to inspect and test to decide whether those standards have been complied with;

(2) consult with and make recommendations to other departments, agencies, and instrumentalities of the Government, State and local governments, and public and private agencies and persons to develop and encourage activities, including the enactment of legislation, that will assist in carrying out this chapter and improve State and local pipeline safety programs; and

(3) participate in a proceeding involving safety requirements related to a liquefied natural gas facility before the Commission or a State authority.

(i) Promoting coordination.--(1) After consulting with appropriate State officials, the Secretary shall establish procedures to promote more effective coordination between departments, agencies, and instrumentalities of the Government and State authorities with regulatory authority over pipeline facilities about responses to a pipeline accident.

(2) In consultation with the Occupational Safety and Health Administration, the Secretary shall establish procedures to notify the Administration of any pipeline accident in which an excavator that has caused damage to a pipeline may have violated a regulation of the Administration.

(j) Withholding information from Congress.--This section does not authorize information to be withheld from a committee of Congress authorized to have the information.

(k) Authority for cooperative agreements.--To carry out this chapter, the Secretary may enter into grants, cooperative agreements, and other transactions with any person, agency, or instrumentality of the United States, any unit of State or local government, any educational institution, or any other entity to further the objectives of this chapter. The objectives of this chapter include the development, improvement, and promotion of one-call damage prevention programs, research, risk assessment, and mapping.

~~(l) Safety orders.--If the Secretary decides that a pipeline facility has a potential safety-related condition, the Secretary may order the operator of the facility to take necessary corrective action, including physical inspection, testing, repair, replacement, or other appropriate action to remedy the safety-related condition.~~

(l) Safety orders.—

(1) In general.—Not later than December 31, 2007, the Secretary shall issue regulations providing that, after notice and opportunity for a hearing, if the Secretary determines that a pipeline facility has a condition that poses a pipeline integrity risk to public safety, property, or the environment, the Secretary may order the operator of the facility to take necessary corrective action, including physical inspection, testing, repair, or other appropriate action, to remedy that condition.

(2) Considerations.—In making a determination under paragraph (1), the Secretary, if relevant and pursuant to the regulations issued under paragraph (1), shall consider—

(A) the considerations specified in paragraphs (1) through (6) of section 60112(b);
(B) the likelihood that the condition will impair the serviceability of a pipeline;
(C) the likelihood that the condition will worsen over time; and
(D) the likelihood that the condition is present or could develop on other areas of the pipeline.

(m) Restoration of operations.—
(1) In general.—The Secretary may advise, assist, and cooperate with the heads of other departments, agencies, and instrumentalities of the United States Government, the States, and public and private agencies and persons to facilitate the restoration of pipeline operations that have been or are anticipated to become disrupted by man-made or natural disasters.
(2) Savings clause.—Nothing in this section alters or amends the authorities and responsibilities of any department, agency, or instrumentality of the United States Government, other than the Department of Transportation.

~~(n) Cost recovery for design reviews.—~~
~~(1) In general.—If the Secretary conducts facility design safety reviews in connection with a proposal to construct, expand, or operate a liquefied natural gas pipeline facility, the Secretary may require the person requesting such reviews to pay the associated staff costs relating to such reviews incurred by the Secretary in section 60301(d). The Secretary may assess such costs in any reasonable manner.~~
~~(2) Deposit.—The Secretary shall deposit all funds paid to the Secretary under this subsection into the Department of Treasury account 69-5172-0-2-407 or its successor account.~~
~~(3) Authorization of appropriations.—Funds deposited pursuant to this subsection are authorized to be appropriated for the purposes set forth in section 60301(d).~~
(n) Cost Recovery for Design Reviews.—
(1) In general.—
(A) Review costs.—For any project described in subparagraph (B), if the Secretary conducts facility design safety reviews in connection with a proposal to construct, expand, or operate a gas or hazardous liquid pipeline facility or liquefied natural gas pipeline facility, including construction inspections and oversight, the Secretary may require the person proposing the project to pay the costs incurred by the Secretary relating to such reviews. If the Secretary exercises the cost recovery authority described in this paragraph, the Secretary shall prescribe a fee structure and assessment methodology that is based on the costs of providing these reviews and shall prescribe procedures to collect fees under this paragraph. The Secretary may not collect design safety review fees under this paragraph and section 60301 for the same design safety review.
(B) Projects to which applicable.—Subparagraph (A) applies to any project that—
(i) has design and construction costs totaling at least $2,500,000,000, as periodically adjusted by the Secretary to take into account increases in the Consumer Price Index for all-urban consumers published by the Department of Labor, based on—
(I) the cost estimate provided to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission in an application for a certificate of public convenience and necessity for a gas pipeline facility or an application for authorization for a liquefied natural gas pipeline facility; or
(II) a good faith estimate developed by the person proposing a hazardous liquid pipeline facility and submitted to the Secretary; or
(ii) uses new or novel technologies or design, as determined by the Secretary.
(2) Notification.—For any new pipeline facility construction project in which the Secretary will conduct design reviews, the person proposing the project shall notify the Secretary and provide the design specifications, construction plans and procedures, and related materials at least 120 days prior to the commencement of construction. To the maximum extent practicable, not later than 90 days after receiving such design specifications, construction plans and procedures, and related materials, the Secretary shall provide written comments, feedback, and guidance on the project.
(3) Pipeline safety decision review fund.—
(A) Establishment.—There is established a Pipeline Safety Design Review Fund in the Treasury of the United States.
(B) Deposits.—The Secretary shall deposit funds paid under this subsection into the Fund.

(C) Use.—Amounts in the Fund shall be available to the Secretary, in amounts specified in appropriations Acts, to offset the costs of conducting facility design safety reviews under this subsection.

(4) No additional permitting authority.—Nothing in this subsection may be construed as authorizing the Secretary to require a person to obtain a permit before beginning design and construction in connection with a project described in paragraph (1)(B).

§ 60118. Compliance and waivers

(a) General requirements.--A person owning or operating a pipeline facility shall--

(1) comply with applicable safety standards prescribed under this chapter, except as provided in this section or in section 60126;

(2) prepare and carry out a plan for inspection and maintenance required under section 60108(a) and (b) of this title;

(3) allow access to or copying of records, make reports and provide information, and allow entry or inspection required under section 60117(a) to (d) of this title; and

(4) conduct a risk analysis, and adopt and implement an integrity management program, for pipeline facilities as required under section 60109(c).

(b) Compliance orders.--The Secretary of Transportation may issue orders directing compliance with this chapter, an order under section 60126, or a regulation prescribed under this chapter. An order shall state clearly the action a person must take to comply.

~~(c) Waivers by Secretary.--On application of a person owning or operating a pipeline facility, the Secretary by order may waive compliance with any part of an applicable standard prescribed under this chapter on terms the Secretary considers appropriate, if the waiver is not inconsistent with pipeline safety. The Secretary shall state the reasons for granting a waiver under this subsection. The Secretary may act on a waiver only after notice and an opportunity for a hearing.~~

(c) Waivers by Secretary.—

(1) Nonemergency waivers.—

(A) In general.—On application of an owner or operator of a pipeline facility, the Secretary by order may waive compliance with any part of an applicable standard prescribed under this chapter with respect to such facility on terms the Secretary considers appropriate if the Secretary determines that the waiver is not inconsistent with pipeline safety.

(B) Hearing.—The Secretary may act on a waiver under this paragraph only after notice and an opportunity for a hearing.

(2) Emergency waivers.—

(A) In general.—The Secretary by order may waive compliance with any part of an applicable standard prescribed under this chapter on terms the Secretary considers appropriate without prior notice and comment if the Secretary determines that—

(i) it is in the public interest to grant the waiver;

(ii) the waiver is not inconsistent with pipeline safety; and

(iii) the waiver is necessary to address an actual or impending emergency involving pipeline transportation, including an emergency caused by a natural or manmade disaster.

(B) Period of waiver.—A waiver under this paragraph may be issued for a period of not more than 60 days and may be renewed upon application to the Secretary only after notice and an opportunity for a hearing on the waiver. The Secretary shall immediately revoke the waiver if continuation of the waiver would not be consistent with the goals and objectives of this chapter.

(3) Statement of reasons.—The Secretary shall state in an order issued under this subsection the reasons for granting the waiver.

(d) Waivers by State authorities.--If a certification under section 60105 of this title or an agreement under section 60106 of this title is in effect, the State authority may waive compliance with a safety standard to which the certification or agreement applies in the same way and to the same extent the Secretary may waive compliance under subsection (c) of this section. However, the authority must give

the Secretary written notice of the waiver at least 60 days before its effective date. If the Secretary makes a written objection before the effective date of the waiver, the waiver is stayed. After notifying the authority of the objection, the Secretary shall provide a prompt opportunity for a hearing. The Secretary shall make the final decision on granting the waiver.

(e) Operator assistance in investigations.~~--If the Secretary or the National Transportation Safety Board investigate an accident involving a pipeline facility, the operator of the facility shall make available to the Secretary or the Board all records and information that in any way pertain to the accident (including integrity management plans and test results), and shall afford all reasonable assistance in the investigation of the accident.~~

(1) Assistance and Access.— If the Secretary or the National Transportation Safety Board investigates an accident or incident involving a pipeline facility, the operator of the facility shall—

(A) make available to the Secretary or the Board all records and information that in any way pertain to the accident or incident, including integrity management plans and test results; and

(B) afford all reasonable assistance in the investigation of the accident or incident.

(2) Operator Assistance in Investigations.—

(A) In general.—The Secretary may impose a civil penalty under section 60122 on a person who obstructs or prevents the Secretary from carrying out inspections or investigations under this chapter.

(B) Obstructs Defined.—

(i) In General.—In this paragraph, the term "obstructs" includes actions that were known, or reasonably should have been known, to prevent, hinder, or impede an investigation without good cause.

(ii) Good cause.—In clause (i), the term "good cause" may include actions such as restricting access to facilities that are not secure or safe for nonpipeline personnel or visitors.

(f) Limitation on statutory construction.--Nothing in this section may be construed to infringe upon the constitutional rights of an operator or its employees.

§ 60119. Judicial review

(a) Review of Regulations~~ and waiver orders~~, Orders, and Other Final Agency Actions.--(1) Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, a person adversely affected by a regulation prescribed under this chapter or an order issued ~~about an application for a waiver under section 60118(c) or (d) of this title~~ under this chapter may apply for review of the regulation or order by filing a petition for review in the United States Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia Circuit or in the court of appeals of the United States for the circuit in which the person resides or has its principal place of business. The petition must be filed not later than 89 days after the regulation is prescribed or order is issued. The clerk of the court immediately shall send a copy of the petition to the Secretary of Transportation.

(2) A judgment of a court under paragraph (1) of this subsection may be reviewed only by the Supreme Court under section 1254 of title 28. A remedy under paragraph (1) is in addition to any other remedies provided by law.

(3) A judicial review of agency action under this section shall apply the standards of review established in section 706 of title 5.

(b) Review of financial responsibility orders.--(1) A person adversely affected by an order issued under section 60111 of this title may apply for review of the order by filing a petition for review in the appropriate court of appeals of the United States. The petition must be filed not later than 60 days after the order is issued. Findings of fact the Secretary makes are conclusive if supported by substantial evidence.

(2) A judgment of a court under paragraph (1) of this subsection may be reviewed only by the Supreme Court under section 1254(1) of title 28.

§ 60120. Enforcement

(a) Civil actions

(1) Civil actions to enforce this chapter.--At the request of the Secretary of Transportation, the Attorney General may bring a civil action in an appropriate district court of the United States to enforce this chapter, including section 60112, or a regulation prescribed or order issued under this chapter. The court may award appropriate relief, including a temporary or permanent injunction, punitive damages, and assessment of civil penalties, considering the same factors as prescribed for the Secretary in an administrative case under section 60122. The maximum amount of civil penalties for administrative enforcement actions under section 60122 shall not apply to enforcement actions under this section.

(2) Civil actions to require compliance with subpoenas or allow for inspections.--At the request of the Secretary, the Attorney General may bring a civil action in a district court of the United States to require a person to comply immediately with a subpoena or to allow an officer, employee, or agent authorized by the Secretary to enter the premises, and inspect the records and property, of the person to decide whether the person is complying with this chapter. The action may be brought in the judicial district in which the defendant resides, is found, or does business. The court may punish a failure to obey the order as a contempt of court.

(b) Jury trial demand.--In a trial for criminal contempt for violating an injunction issued under this section, the violation of which is also a violation of this chapter, the defendant may demand a jury trial. The defendant shall be tried as provided in rule 42(b) of the Federal Rules of Criminal Procedure (18 App. U.S.C.).

(c) Effect on tort liability.--This chapter does not affect the tort liability of any person.

§ 60121. Actions by private persons

(a) General authority.--(1) A person may bring a civil action in an appropriate district court of the United States for an injunction against another person (including the United States Government and other governmental authorities to the extent permitted under the 11th amendment to the Constitution) for a violation of this chapter or a regulation prescribed or order issued under this chapter. However, the person—

(A) may bring the action only after 60 days after the person has given notice of the violation to the Secretary of Transportation or to the appropriate State authority (when the violation is alleged to have occurred in a State certified under section 60105 of this title) and to the person alleged to have committed the violation;

(B) may not bring the action if the Secretary or authority has begun and diligently is pursuing an administrative proceeding for the violation; and

(C) may not bring the action if the Attorney General of the United States, or the chief law enforcement officer of a State, has begun and diligently is pursuing a judicial proceeding for the violation.

(2) The Secretary shall prescribe the way in which notice is given under this subsection.

(3) The Secretary, with the approval of the Attorney General, or the Attorney General may intervene in an action under paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(b) Costs and fees.--The court may award costs, reasonable expert witness fees, and a reasonable attorney's fee to a prevailing plaintiff in a civil action under this section. The court may award costs to a prevailing defendant when the action is unreasonable, frivolous, or meritless. In this subsection, a reasonable attorney's fee is a fee--

(1) based on the actual time spent and the reasonable expenses of the attorney for legal services provided to a person under this section; and

(2) computed at the rate prevailing for providing similar services for actions brought in the court awarding the fee.

(c) State violations as violations of this chapter.--In this section, a violation of a safety standard or practice of a State is deemed to be a violation of this chapter or a regulation prescribed or order issued under this chapter only to the extent the standard or practice is not more stringent than a comparable minimum safety standard prescribed under this chapter.

(d) Additional remedies.--A remedy under this section is in addition to any other remedies provided by law. This section does not restrict a right to relief that a person or a class of persons may have under another law or at common law.

§ 60122. Civil penalties

(a) General penalties.--(1) A person that the Secretary of Transportation decides, after written notice and an opportunity for a hearing, has violated section ~~60114(b)~~ 60114(b), 60114(d), or 60118(a) of this title or a regulation prescribed or order issued under this chapter is liable to the United States Government for a civil penalty of not more than ~~$100,000~~ $200,000 for each violation. A separate violation occurs for each day the violation continues. The maximum civil penalty under this paragraph for a related series of violations is ~~$1,000,000~~ $2,000,000.

(2) A person violating a standard or order under section 60103 or 60111 of this title is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $50,000 for each violation. A penalty under this paragraph may be imposed in addition to penalties imposed under paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(3) A person violating section 60129, or an order issued thereunder, is liable to the Government for a civil penalty of not more than $1,000 for each violation. The penalties provided by paragraph (1) do not apply to a violation of section 60129 or an order issued thereunder.

(b) Penalty considerations.--In determining the amount of a civil penalty under this section--

(1) the Secretary shall consider--

(A) the nature, circumstances, and gravity of the violation, including adverse impact on the environment;

(B) with respect to the violator, the degree of culpability, any history of prior violations, ~~the ability to pay,~~ and any effect on ability to continue doing business; and

(C) good faith in attempting to comply; and

(2) the Secretary may consider--

(A) the economic benefit gained from the violation without any reduction because of subsequent damages; and

(B) other matters that justice requires.

(c) Collection and compromise.--(1) The Secretary may request the Attorney General to bring a civil action in an appropriate district court of the United States to collect a civil penalty imposed under this section.

(2) The Secretary may compromise the amount of a civil penalty imposed under this section before referral to the Attorney General.

(d) Setoff.--The Government may deduct the amount of a civil penalty imposed or compromised under this section from amounts it owes the person liable for the penalty.

(e) Deposit in Treasury.--Amounts collected under this section shall be deposited in the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts.

(f) Prohibition on multiple penalties for same act.--Separate penalties for violating a regulation prescribed under this chapter and for violating an order under section 60112 or 60118(b) of this title may not be imposed under this chapter if both violations are based on the same act.

§ 60123. Criminal penalties

(a) General penalty.--A person knowingly and willfully violating section 60114(b), 60118(a), or 60128 of this title or a regulation prescribed or order issued under this chapter shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for not more than 5 years, or both.

(b) Penalty for damaging or destroying facility.--A person knowingly and willfully damaging or destroying an interstate gas pipeline facility, an interstate hazardous liquid pipeline facility, or either an intrastate gas pipeline facility or intrastate hazardous liquid pipeline facility that is used in interstate or foreign commerce or in any activity affecting interstate or foreign commerce, or attempting or conspiring to do such an act, shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for not more than 20 years, or both, and, if death results to any person, shall be imprisoned for any term of years or for life.

(c) Penalty for damaging or destroying sign.--A person knowingly and willfully defacing, damaging, removing, or destroying a pipeline sign or right-of-way marker required by a law or regulation of the United States shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for not more than one year, or both.

(d) Penalty for not using one-call notification system or not heeding location information or markings.--A person shall be fined under title 18, imprisoned for not more than 5 years, or both, if the person--

(1) knowingly and willfully engages in an excavation activity--

(A) without first using an available one-call notification system to establish the location of underground facilities in the excavation area; or

(B) without paying attention to appropriate location information or markings the operator of a pipeline facility establishes; and

(2) subsequently damages--

(A) a pipeline facility that results in death, serious bodily harm, or actual damage to property of more than $50,000;

(B) a pipeline facility, and knows or has reason to know of the damage, but does not report the damage promptly to the operator of the pipeline facility and to other appropriate authorities; or

(C) a hazardous liquid pipeline facility that results in the release of more than 50 barrels of product.

Penalties under this subsection may be reduced in the case of a violation that is promptly reported by the violator.

§ 60124. Biennial reports

(a) Submission and contents.--Not later than August 15, 1997, and every 2 years thereafter, the Secretary of Transportation shall submit to Congress a report on carrying out this chapter for the 2 immediately preceding calendar years for gas and a report on carrying out this chapter for such period for hazardous liquid. Each report shall include the following information about the prior year for gas or hazardous liquid, as appropriate:

(1) a thorough compilation of the leak repairs, accidents, and casualties and a statement of cause when investigated and established by the National Transportation Safety Board.

(2) a list of applicable pipeline safety standards prescribed under this chapter including identification of standards prescribed during the year.

(3) a summary of the reasons for each waiver granted under section 60118(c) and (d) of this title.

(4) an evaluation of the degree of compliance with applicable safety standards, including a list of enforcement actions and compromises of alleged violations by location and company name.

(5) a summary of outstanding problems in carrying out this chapter, in order of priority.

(6) an analysis and evaluation of--

(A) research activities, including their policy implications, completed as a result of the United States Government and private sponsorship; and

(B) technological progress in safety achieved.

(7) a list, with a brief statement of the issues, of completed or pending judicial actions under this chapter.

(8) the extent to which technical information was distributed to the scientific community and consumer-oriented information was made available to the public.
(9) a compilation of certifications filed under section 60105 of this title that were--
(A) in effect; or
(B) rejected in any part by the Secretary and a summary of the reasons for each rejection.
(10) a compilation of agreements made under section 60106 of this title that were--
(A) in effect; or
(B) ended in any part by the Secretary and a summary of the reasons for ending each agreement.
(11) a description of the number and qualifications of State pipeline safety inspectors in each State for which a certification under section 60105 of this title or an agreement under section 60106 of this title is in effect and the number and qualifications of inspectors the Secretary recommends for that State.
(12) recommendations for legislation the Secretary considers necessary--
(A) to promote cooperation among the States in improving--
(i) gas pipeline safety; or
(ii) hazardous liquid pipeline safety programs; and
(B) to strengthen the national gas pipeline safety program.

(b) Submission of one report.--The Secretary may submit one report to carry out subsection (a) of this section.

§ 60125. Authorization of appropriations

~~(a) Gas and hazardous liquid.--To carry out this chapter (except for section 60107) related to gas and hazardous liquid, the following amounts are authorized to be appropriated to the Department of Transportation:~~
~~(1) $45,800,000 for fiscal year 2003, of which $31,900,000 is to be derived from user fees for fiscal year 2003 collected under section 60301 of this title.~~
~~(2) $46,800,000 for fiscal year 2004, of which $35,700,000 is to be derived from user fees for fiscal year 2004 collected under section 60301 of this title.~~
~~(3) $47,100,000 for fiscal year 2005, of which $41,100,000 is to be derived from user fees for fiscal year 2005 collected under section 60301 of this title.~~
~~(4) $50,000,000 for fiscal year 2006, of which $45,000,000 is to be derived from user fees for fiscal year 2006 collected under section 60301 of this title.~~
(a) Gas and hazardous liquid.—
(1) In general.—To carry out the provisions of this chapter related to gas and hazardous liquid and section 12 of the Pipeline Safety Improvement Act of 2002 (49 U.S.C. 60101 note; Public Law 107–355), there is authorized to be appropriated to the Department of Transportation for each of fiscal years 2012 through 2015, from fees collected under section 60301, $90,679,000, of which $4,746,000 is for carrying out such section 12 and $36,194,000 is for making grants.
~~the following amounts are authorized to be appropriated to the Department of Transportation from fees collected under section 60301 in each respective year:~~
~~(A) For fiscal year 2007, $60,175,000 of which $7,386,000 is for carrying out such section 12 and $17,556,000 is for making grants.~~
~~(B) For fiscal year 2008, $67,118,000 of which $7,586,000 is for carrying out such section 12 and $20,614,000 is for making grants.~~
~~(C) For fiscal year 2009, $72,045,000 of which $7,586,000 is for carrying out such section 12 and $21,513,000 is for making grants.~~
~~(D) For fiscal year 2010, $76,580,000 of which $7,586,000 is for carrying out subsection 12 and $22,252,000 is for making grants.~~
~~(2) Trust fund amounts.—In addition to the amounts authorized to be appropriated by paragraph (1) the following amounts are authorized from the Oil Spill Liability Trust Fund to carry out the provisions of this chapter related to hazardous liquid and section 12 of the Pipeline Safety Improvement Act of 2002 (49 U.S.C. 60101 note; Public Law 107–355):~~

~~(A) For fiscal year 2007, $18,810,000 of which $4,207,000 is for carrying out such section 12 and $2,682,000 is for making grants.~~
~~(B) For fiscal year 2008, $19,000,000 of which $4,207,000 is for carrying out such section 12 and $2,682,000 is for making grants.~~
~~(C) For fiscal year 2009, $19,500,000 of which $4,207,000 is for carrying out such section 12 and $3,103,000 is for making grants.~~
~~(D) For fiscal year 2010, $20,000,000 of which $4,207,000 is for carrying out such section 12 $3,603,000 is for making grants.~~

(2) Trust fund amounts.—In addition to the amounts authorized to be appropriated by paragraph (1), there is authorized to be appropriated for each of fiscal years 2012 through 2015 from the Oil Spill Liability Trust Fund to carry out the provisions of this chapter related to hazardous liquid and section 12 of the Pipeline Safety Improvement Act of 2002 (49 U.S.C. 60101 note; Public Law 107–355), $18,573,000, of which $2,174,000 is for carrying out such section 12 and $4,558,000 is for making grants.

~~(b) State grants.--(1) Not more than the following amounts may be appropriated to the Secretary to carry out section 60107 of this title:~~

~~(A) $19,800,000 for fiscal year 2003, of which $14,800,000 is to be derived from user fees for fiscal year 2003 collected under section 60301 of this title.~~
~~(B) $21,700,000 for fiscal year 2004, of which $16,700,000 is to be derived from user fees for fiscal year 2004 collected under section 60301 of this title.~~
~~(C) $24,600,000 for fiscal year 2005, of which $19,600,000 is to be derived from user fees for fiscal year 2005 collected under section 60301 of this title.~~
~~(D) $26,500,000 for fiscal year 2006, of which $21,500, 000 is to be derived from user fees for fiscal year 2006 collected under section 60301 of this title.~~

~~(2) At least 5 percent of amounts appropriated to carry out United States Government grants-in-aid programs for a fiscal year are available only to carry out section 60107 of this title related to hazardous liquid.~~
~~(3) Not more than 20 percent of a pipeline safety program grant under section 60107 of this title may be allocated to indirect expenses.~~

~~(c) Oil Spill Liability Trust Fund.--Of the amounts available in the Oil Spill Liability Trust Fund, $8,000,000 shall be transferred to the Secretary of Transportation, as provided in appropriation Acts, to carry out programs authorized in this chapter for each of fiscal years 2003 through 2006.~~

~~(d)~~(b) Emergency response grants.--
(1) In general.--The Secretary may establish a program for making grants to State, county, and local governments in high consequence areas, as defined by the Secretary, for emergency response management, training, and technical assistance. To the extent that such grants are used to train emergency responders, such training shall ensure that emergency responders have the ability to protect nearby persons, property and the environment from the effects of accidents or incidents involving gas or hazardous liquid pipelines, in accordance with existing regulations.
(2) Authorization of appropriations.--There is authorized to be appropriated ~~$6,000,000~~ $10,000,000 for each of fiscal years ~~2003 through 2006~~ ~~2007 through 2010~~ 2012 through 2015 to carry out this subsection.

~~(e)~~(c) Crediting appropriations for expenditures for training.--The Secretary may credit to an appropriation authorized under subsection (a) amounts received from sources other than the Government for reimbursement for expenses incurred by the Secretary in providing training.

§ 60126. Risk management

(a) Risk management program demonstration projects.--
(1) In general.--The Secretary shall establish risk management demonstration projects--

(A) to demonstrate, through the voluntary participation by owners and operators of gas pipeline facilities and hazardous liquid pipeline facilities, the application of risk management; and
(B) to evaluate the safety and cost-effectiveness of the program.
(2) Exemptions.--In carrying out a demonstration project under this subsection, the Secretary, by order--
(A) may exempt an owner or operator of the pipeline facility covered under the project (referred to in this subsection as a "covered pipeline facility"), from the applicability of all or a portion of the requirements under this chapter that would otherwise apply to the covered pipeline facility; and
(B) shall exempt, for the period of the project, an owner or operator of the covered pipeline facility, from the applicability of any new standard that the Secretary promulgates under this chapter during the period of that participation, with respect to the covered facility.

(b) Requirements.--In carrying out a demonstration project under this section, the Secretary shall--
(1) invite owners and operators of pipeline facilities to submit risk management plans for timely approval by the Secretary;
(2) require, as a condition of approval, that a risk management plan submitted under this subsection contain measures that are designed to achieve an equivalent or greater overall level of safety than would otherwise be achieved through compliance with the standards contained in this chapter or promulgated by the Secretary under this chapter;
(3) provide for--
(A) collaborative government and industry training;
(B) methods to measure the safety performance of risk management plans;
(C) the development and application of new technologies;
(D) the promotion of community awareness concerning how the overall level of safety will be maintained or enhanced by the demonstration project;
(E) the development of models that categorize the risks inherent to each covered pipeline facility, taking into consideration the location, volume, pressure, and material transported or stored by that pipeline facility;
(F) the application of risk assessment and risk management methodologies that are suitable to the inherent risks that are determined to exist through the use of models developed under subparagraph (E);
(G) the development of project elements that are necessary to ensure that--
(i) the owners and operators that participate in the demonstration project demonstrate that they are effectively managing the risks referred to in subparagraph (E); and
(ii) the risk management plans carried out under the demonstration project under this subsection can be audited;
(H) a process whereby an owner or operator of a pipeline facility is able to terminate a risk management plan or, with the approval of the Secretary, to amend, modify, or otherwise adjust a risk management plan referred to in paragraph (1) that has been approved by the Secretary pursuant to that paragraph to respond to--
(i) changed circumstances; or
(ii) a determination by the Secretary that the owner or operator is not achieving an overall level of safety that is at least equivalent to the level that would otherwise be achieved through compliance with the standards contained in this chapter or promulgated by the Secretary under this chapter;
(I) such other elements as the Secretary, with the agreement of the owners and operators that participate in the demonstration project under this section, determines to further the purposes of this section; and
(J) an opportunity for public comment in the approval process; and
(4) in selecting participants for the demonstration project, take into consideration the past safety and regulatory performance of each applicant who submits a risk management plan pursuant to paragraph (1).

(c) Emergencies and revocations.--Nothing in this section diminishes or modifies the Secretary's authority under this title to act in case of an emergency. The Secretary may revoke any exemption

granted under this section for substantial noncompliance with the terms and conditions of an approved risk management plan.

(d) Participation by State authority.--In carrying out this section, the Secretary may provide for consultation by a State that has in effect a certification under section 60105. To the extent that a demonstration project comprises an intrastate natural gas pipeline or an intrastate hazardous liquid pipeline facility, the Secretary may make an agreement with the State agency to carry out the duties of the Secretary for approval and administration of the project.

(e) Report.--Not later than March 31, 2000, the Secretary shall transmit to the Congress a report on the results of the demonstration projects carried out under this section that includes--

(1) an evaluation of each such demonstration project, including an evaluation of the performance of each participant in that project with respect to safety and environmental protection; and

(2) recommendations concerning whether the applications of risk management demonstrated under the demonstration project should be incorporated into the Federal pipeline safety program under this chapter on a permanent basis.

§ 60127. Population encroachment and rights-of-way

(a) Study.--The Secretary of Transportation, in conjunction with the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission and in consultation with appropriate Federal agencies and State and local governments, shall undertake a study of land use practices, zoning ordinances, and preservation of environmental resources with regard to pipeline rights-of-way and their maintenance.

(b) Purpose of study.--The purpose of the study shall be to gather information on land use practices, zoning ordinances, and preservation of environmental resources--

(1) to determine effective practices to limit encroachment on existing pipeline rights-of-way;

(2) to address and prevent the hazards and risks to the public, pipeline workers, and the environment associated with encroachment on pipeline rights-of-way;

(3) to raise the awareness of the risks and hazards of encroachment on pipeline rights-of-way; and

(4) to address how to best preserve environmental resources in conjunction with maintaining pipeline rights-of-way, recognizing pipeline operators' regulatory obligations to maintain rights-of-way and to protect public safety.

(c) Considerations.--In conducting the study, the Secretary shall consider, at a minimum, the following:

(1) The legal authority of Federal agencies and State and local governments in controlling land use and the limitations on such authority.

(2) The current practices of Federal agencies and State and local governments in addressing land use issues involving a pipeline easement.

(3) The most effective way to encourage Federal agencies and State and local governments to monitor and reduce encroachment upon pipeline rights-of-way.

(d) Report.--

(1) In general.--Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this subsection, the Secretary shall publish a report identifying practices, laws, and ordinances that are most successful in addressing issues of encroachment and maintenance on pipeline rights-of-way so as to more effectively protect public safety, pipeline workers, and the environment.

(2) Distribution of report.--The Secretary shall provide a copy of the report to--

(A) Congress and appropriate Federal agencies; and

(B) States for further distribution to appropriate local authorities.

(3) Adoption of practices, laws, and ordinances.--The Secretary shall encourage Federal agencies and State and local governments to adopt and implement appropriate practices, laws, and ordinances, as identified in the report, to address the risks and hazards associated with encroachment upon pipeline rights-of-way and to address the potential methods of preserving environmental resources while maintaining pipeline rights-of-way, consistent with pipeline safety.

§ 60128. Dumping within pipeline rights-of-way

(a) Prohibition.--No person shall excavate for the purpose of unauthorized disposal within the right-of-way of an interstate gas pipeline facility or interstate hazardous liquid pipeline facility, or any other limited area in the vicinity of any such interstate pipeline facility established by the Secretary of Transportation, and dispose solid waste therein.

(b) Definition.--For purposes of this section, the term "solid waste" has the meaning given that term in section 1004(27) of the Solid Waste Disposal Act (42 U.S.C. 6903(27)).

§ 60129. Protection of employees providing pipeline safety information

(a) Discrimination against employee.--

(1) In general.--No employer may discharge any employee or otherwise discriminate against any employee with respect to his compensation, terms, conditions, or privileges of employment because the employee (or any person acting pursuant to a request of the employee)--

(A) provided, caused to be provided, or is about to provide or cause to be provided, to the employer or the Federal Government information relating to any violation or alleged violation of any order, regulation, or standard under this chapter or any other Federal law relating to pipeline safety;

(B) refused to engage in any practice made unlawful by this chapter or any other Federal law relating to pipeline safety, if the employee has identified the alleged illegality to the employer;

(C) provided, caused to be provided, or is about to provide or cause to be provided, testimony before Congress or at any Federal or State proceeding regarding any provision (or proposed provision) of this chapter or any other Federal law relating to pipeline safety;

(D) commenced, caused to be commenced, or is about to commence or cause to be commenced a proceeding under this chapter or any other Federal law relating to pipeline safety, or a proceeding for the administration or enforcement of any requirement imposed under this chapter or any other Federal law relating to pipeline safety;

(E) provided, caused to be provided, or is about to provide or cause to be provided, testimony in any proceeding described in subparagraph (D); or

(F) assisted or participated or is about to assist or participate in any manner in such a proceeding or in any other manner in such a proceeding or in any other action to carry out the purposes of this chapter or any other Federal law relating to pipeline safety.

(2) Employer defined.--In this section, the term "employer" means--

(A) a person owning or operating a pipeline facility; or

(B) a contractor or subcontractor of such a person.

(b) Department of labor complaint procedure.--

(1) Filing and notification.--A person who believes that he or she has been discharged or otherwise discriminated against by any person in violation of subsection (a) may, not later than 180 days after the date on which such violation occurs, file (or have any person file on his or her behalf) a complaint with the Secretary of Labor alleging such discharge or discrimination. Upon receipt of such a complaint, the Secretary of Labor shall notify, in writing, the person or persons named in the complaint and the Secretary of Transportation of the filing of the complaint, of the allegations contained in the complaint, of the substance of evidence supporting the complaint, and of the opportunities that will be afforded to such person or persons under paragraph (2).

(2) Investigation; preliminary order.--

(A) In general.--Not later than 60 days after the date of receipt of a complaint filed under paragraph (1) and after affording the person or persons named in the complaint an opportunity to submit to the Secretary of Labor a written response to the complaint and an opportunity to meet with a representative of the Secretary of Labor to present statements from witnesses, the Secretary of Labor shall conduct an investigation and determine whether there is reasonable

cause to believe that the complaint has merit and notify in writing the complainant and the person or persons alleged to have committed a violation of subsection (a) of the Secretary of Labor's findings. If the Secretary of Labor concludes that there is reasonable cause to believe that a violation of subsection (a) has occurred, the Secretary of Labor shall include with the Secretary of Labor's findings with a preliminary order providing the relief prescribed by paragraph (3)(B). Not later than 60 days after the date of notification of findings under this subparagraph, any person alleged to have committed a violation or the complainant may file objections to the findings or preliminary order, or both, and request a hearing on the record. The filing of such objections shall not operate to stay any reinstatement remedy contained in the preliminary order. Such hearings shall be conducted expeditiously. If a hearing is not requested in such 60-day period, the preliminary order shall be deemed a final order that is not subject to judicial review.

(B) Requirements.--

(i) Required showing by complainant.--The Secretary of Labor shall dismiss a complaint filed under this subsection and shall not conduct an investigation otherwise required under subparagraph (A) unless the complainant makes a prima facie showing that any behavior described in subsection (a) was a contributing factor in the unfavorable personnel action alleged in the complaint.

(ii) Showing by employer.--Notwithstanding a finding by the Secretary of Labor that the complainant has made the showing required under clause (i), no investigation otherwise required under subparagraph (A) shall be conducted if the employer demonstrates, by clear and convincing evidence, that the employer would have taken the same unfavorable personnel action in the absence of that behavior.

(iii) Criteria for determination by Secretary.--The Secretary of Labor may determine that a violation of subsection (a) has occurred only if the complainant demonstrates that any behavior described in subsection (a) was a contributing factor in the unfavorable personnel action alleged in the complaint.

(iv) Prohibition.--Relief may not be ordered under subparagraph (A) if the employer demonstrates by clear and convincing evidence that the employer would have taken the same unfavorable personnel action in the absence of that behavior.

(3) Final order.--

(A) Deadline for issuance; settlement agreements.--Not later than 90 days after the date of conclusion of a hearing under paragraph (2), the Secretary of Labor shall issue a final order providing the relief prescribed by this paragraph or denying the complaint. At any time before issuance of a final order, a proceeding under this subsection may be terminated on the basis of a settlement agreement entered into by the Secretary of Labor, the complainant, and the person or persons alleged to have committed the violation.

(B) Remedy.--If, in response to a complaint filed under paragraph (1), the Secretary of Labor determines that a violation of subsection (a) has occurred, the Secretary of Labor shall order the person or persons who committed such violation to--

(i) take affirmative action to abate the violation;

(ii) reinstate the complainant to his or her former position together with the compensation (including back pay) and restore the terms, conditions, and privileges associated with his or her employment; and

(iii) provide compensatory damages to the complainant.

If such an order is issued under this paragraph, the Secretary of Labor, at the request of the complainant, shall assess against the person or persons against whom the order is issued a sum equal to the aggregate amount of all costs and expenses (including attorney's and expert witness fees) reasonably incurred, as determined by the Secretary of Labor, by the complainant for, or in connection with, the bringing the complaint upon which the order was issued.

(C) Frivolous complaints.--If the Secretary of Labor finds that a complaint under paragraph (1) is frivolous or has been brought in bad faith, the Secretary of Labor may award to the prevailing employer a reasonable attorney's fee not exceeding $1,000.

(4) Review.--

(A) Appeal to court of appeals.--Any person adversely affected or aggrieved by an order issued under paragraph (3) may obtain review of the order in the United States Court of Appeals for

the circuit in which the violation, with respect to which the order was issued, allegedly occurred or the circuit in which the complainant resided on the date of such violation. The petition for review must be filed not later than 60 days after the date of issuance of the final order of the Secretary of Labor. Review shall conform to chapter 7 of title 5, United States Code. The commencement of proceedings under this subparagraph shall not, unless ordered by the court, operate as a stay of the order.

(B) Limitation on collateral attack.--An order of the Secretary of Labor with respect to which review could have been obtained under subparagraph (A) shall not be subject to judicial review in any criminal or other civil proceeding.

(5) Enforcement of order by Secretary of labor.--Whenever any person has failed to comply with an order issued under paragraph (3), the Secretary of Labor may file a civil action in the United States district court for the district in which the violation was found to occur to enforce such order. In actions brought under this paragraph, the district courts shall have jurisdiction to grant all appropriate relief, including, but not to be limited to, injunctive relief and compensatory damages.

(6) Enforcement of order by parties.--

(A) Commencement of action.--A person on whose behalf an order was issued under paragraph (3) may commence a civil action against the person or persons to whom such order was issued to require compliance with such order. The appropriate United States district court shall have jurisdiction, without regard to the amount in controversy or the citizenship of the parties, to enforce such order.

(B) Attorney fees.--The court, in issuing any final order under this paragraph, may award costs of litigation (including reasonable attorney and expert witness fees) to any party whenever the court determines such award of costs is appropriate.

(c) Mandamus.--Any nondiscretionary duty imposed by this section shall be enforceable in a mandamus proceeding brought under section 1361 of title 28, United States Code.

(d) Nonapplicability to deliberate violations.--Subsection (a) shall not apply with respect to an action of an employee of an employer who, acting without direction from the employer (or such employer's agent), deliberately causes a violation of any requirement relating to pipeline safety under this chapter or any other law of the United States.

§ 60130. Pipeline safety information grants to communities

(a) Grant authority.--

(1) In general.--The Secretary of Transportation may make grants for technical assistance to local communities and groups of individuals (not including for-profit entities) relating to the safety of pipeline facilities in local communities, other than facilities regulated under Public Law 93-153 (43 U.S.C. 1651 et seq.). ~~The Secretary shall establish competitive~~ No grants may be awarded under section 60114(g) until the Secretary has established competitive procedures for awarding grants under this section and criteria for selecting grant recipients. The amount of any grant under this section may not exceed ~~$50,000~~ $100,000 for a single grant recipient. The Secretary shall establish appropriate procedures to ensure the proper use of funds provided under this section.

(2) Demonstration grants.—At least the first 3 grants awarded under this section shall be demonstration grants for the purpose of demonstrating and evaluating the utility of grants under this section. Each such demonstration grant shall not exceed $25,000.

(3) Dissemination of technical findings.—Each recipient of a grant under this section shall ensure that—

(A) the technical findings made possible by the grants are made available to the relevant operators; and

(B) open communication between the grant recipients, local operators, local communities, and other interested parties is encouraged.

(~~2~~4) Technical assistance defined.--In this subsection, the term "technical assistance" means engineering and other scientific analysis of pipeline safety issues, including the promotion of public participation in official proceedings conducted under this chapter.

(b) Prohibited uses.--Funds provided under this section to grant recipients and their contractors may not be used for lobbying, for direct advocacy for or against a pipeline construction or expansion project, or in direct support of litigation.

(c) Annual report.--

(1) In general.--Not later than 90 days after the last day of each fiscal year for which grants are made by the Secretary under this section, the Secretary shall report to the Committees on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate and the Committees on Transportation and Infrastructure and Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives on grants made under this section in the preceding fiscal year.

(2) Contents.--The report shall include--

(A) a listing of the identity and location of each recipient of a grant under this section in the preceding fiscal year and the amount received by the recipient;

(B) a description of the purpose for which each grant was made; and

(C) a description of how each grant was used by the recipient.

(d) Authorization of appropriations.--There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of Transportation for carrying out this section ~~$1,000,000~~ $1,500,000 for each of the fiscal years ~~2003 through 2006~~ ~~2010~~ 2012 through 2015. Such amounts shall not be derived from user fees collected under section 60301.

§ 60131. Verification of pipeline qualification programs

(a) In general.--Subject to the requirements of this section, the Secretary of Transportation shall require the operator of a pipeline facility to develop and adopt a qualification program to ensure that the individuals who perform covered tasks are qualified to conduct such tasks.

(b) Standards and criteria.--

(1) Development.--Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this section, the Secretary shall ensure that the Department of Transportation has in place standards and criteria for qualification programs referred to in subsection (a).

(2) Contents.--The standards and criteria shall include the following:

(A) The establishment of methods for evaluating the acceptability of the qualifications of individuals described in subsection (a).

(B) A requirement that pipeline operators develop and implement written plans and procedures to qualify individuals described in subsection (a) to a level found acceptable using the methods established under subparagraph (A) and evaluate the abilities of individuals described in subsection (a) according to such methods.

(C) A requirement that the plans and procedures adopted by a pipeline operator under subparagraph (B) be reviewed and verified under subsection (e).

(c) Development of qualification programs by pipeline operators.--The Secretary shall require each pipeline operator to develop and adopt, not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this section, a qualification program that complies with the standards and criteria described in subsection (b).

(d) Elements of qualification programs.--A qualification program adopted by an operator under subsection (a) shall include, at a minimum, the following elements:

(1) A method for examining or testing the qualifications of individuals described in subsection (a). The method may include written examination, oral examination, observation during on-the-job performance, on-the-job training, simulations, and other forms of assessment. The method may not be limited to observation of on-the-job performance, except with respect to tasks for which the Secretary has determined that such observation is the best method of examining or testing qualifications. The Secretary shall ensure that the results of any such observations are documented in writing.

(2) A requirement that the operator complete the qualification of all individuals described in subsection (a) not later than 18 months after the date of adoption of the qualification program.
(3) A periodic requalification component that provides for examination or testing of individuals in accordance with paragraph (1).
(4) A program to provide training, as appropriate, to ensure that individuals performing covered tasks have the necessary knowledge and skills to perform the tasks in a manner that ensures the safe operation of pipeline facilities.

(e) Review and verification of programs.--
(1) In general.--The Secretary shall review the qualification program of each pipeline operator and verify its compliance with the standards and criteria described in subsection (b) and that it includes the elements described in subsection (d). The Secretary shall record the results of that review for use in the next review of an operator's program.
(2) Deadline for completion.--Reviews and verifications under this subsection shall be completed not later than 3 years after the date of the enactment of this section.
(3) Inadequate programs.--If the Secretary decides that a qualification program is inadequate for the safe operation of a pipeline facility, the Secretary shall act as under section 60108(a)(2) to require the operator to revise the qualification program.
(4) Program modifications.--If the operator of a pipeline facility significantly modifies a program that has been verified under this subsection, the operator shall notify the Secretary of the modifications. The Secretary shall review and verify such modifications in accordance with paragraph (1).
(5) Waivers and modifications.--In accordance with section 60118(c), the Secretary may waive or modify any requirement of this section if the waiver or modification is not inconsistent with pipeline safety.
(6) Inaction by the Secretary.--Notwithstanding any failure of the Secretary to prescribe standards and criteria as described in subsection (b), an operator of a pipeline facility shall develop and adopt a qualification program that complies with the requirement of subsection (b)(2)(B) and includes the elements described in subsection (d) not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this section.

(f) Intrastate pipeline facilities.--In the case of an intrastate pipeline facility operator, the duties and powers of the Secretary under this section with respect to the qualification program of the operator shall be vested in the appropriate State regulatory agency, consistent with this chapter.

(g) Covered task defined.--In this section, the term "covered task"--
(1) with respect to a gas pipeline facility, has the meaning such term has under section 192.801 of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, including any subsequent modifications; and
(2) with respect to a hazardous liquid pipeline facility, has the meaning such term has under section 195.501 of such title, including any subsequent modifications.

(h) Report.--Not later than 4 years after the date of enactment of this section, the Secretary shall transmit to Congress a report on the status and results to date of the personnel qualification regulations issued under this chapter.

§ 60132. National pipeline mapping system

(a) Information to be provided.--Not later than 6 months after the date of enactment of this section, the operator of a pipeline facility (except distribution lines and gathering lines) shall provide to the Secretary of Transportation the following information with respect to the facility:
(1) Geospatial data appropriate for use in the National Pipeline Mapping System or data in a format that can be readily converted to geospatial data.
(2) The name and address of the person with primary operational control to be identified as its operator for purposes of this chapter.
(3) A means for a member of the public to contact the operator for additional information about the pipeline facilities it operates.

(4) Any other geospatial or technical data, including design and material specifications, that the Secretary determines are necessary to carry out the purposes of this section. The Secretary shall give reasonable notice to operators that the data are being requested.

(b) Updates.--A person providing information under subsection (a) shall provide to the Secretary updates of the information to reflect changes in the pipeline facility owned or operated by the person and as otherwise required by the Secretary.

(c) Technical assistance to improve local response capabilities.--The Secretary may provide technical assistance to State and local officials to improve local response capabilities for pipeline emergencies by adapting information available through the National Pipeline Mapping System to software used by emergency response personnel responding to pipeline emergencies.

(d) Map of High-consequence Areas.—The Secretary shall—
(1) maintain, as part of the National Pipeline Mapping System, a map of designated high-consequence areas (as described in section 60109(a)) in which pipelines are required to meet integrity management program regulations, excluding any proprietary or sensitive security information; and
(2) update the map biennially.

(e) Program To Promote Awareness of National Pipeline Mapping System.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this subsection, the Secretary shall develop and implement a program promoting greater awareness of the existence of the National Pipeline Mapping System to State and local emergency responders and other interested parties. The program shall include guidance on how to use the National Pipeline Mapping System to locate pipelines in communities and local jurisdictions.

(f) Public Disclosure Limited.—The Secretary may not disclose information collected pursuant to subsection (a) except to the extent permitted by section 552 of title 5.

§ 60133. Coordination of environmental reviews

(a) Interagency committee.--
(1) Establishment and purpose.--Not later than 30 days after the date of enactment of this section, the President shall establish an Interagency Committee to develop and ensure implementation of a coordinated environmental review and permitting process in order to enable pipeline operators to commence and complete all activities necessary to carry out pipeline repairs within any time periods specified by rule by the Secretary.
(2) Membership.--The Chairman of the Council on Environmental Quality (or a designee of the Chairman) shall chair the Interagency Committee, which shall consist of representatives of Federal agencies with responsibilities relating to pipeline repair projects, including each of the following persons (or a designee thereof):
(A) The Secretary of Transportation.
(B) The Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency.
(C) The Director of the United States Fish and Wildlife Service.
(D) The Assistant Administrator for Fisheries of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.
(E) The Director of the Bureau of Land Management.
(F) The Director of the Minerals Management Service.
(G) The Assistant Secretary of the Army for Civil Works.
(H) The Chairman of the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission.
(3) Evaluation.--The Interagency Committee shall evaluate Federal permitting requirements to which access, excavation, and restoration activities in connection with pipeline repairs described in paragraph (1) may be subject. As part of its evaluation, the Interagency Committee shall examine the access, excavation, and restoration practices of the pipeline industry in connection with such

pipeline repairs, and may develop a compendium of best practices used by the industry to access, excavate, and restore the site of a pipeline repair.

(4) Memorandum of understanding.--Based upon the evaluation required under paragraph (3) and not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this section, the members of the Interagency Committee shall enter into a memorandum of understanding to provide for a coordinated and expedited pipeline repair permit review process to carry out the purpose set forth in paragraph (1). The Interagency Committee shall include provisions in the memorandum of understanding identifying those repairs or categories of repairs described in paragraph (1) for which the best practices identified under paragraph (3), when properly employed by a pipeline operator, would result in no more than minimal adverse effects on the environment and for which discretionary administrative reviews may therefore be minimized or eliminated. With respect to pipeline repairs described in paragraph (1) to which the preceding sentence would not be applicable, the Interagency Committee shall include provisions to enable pipeline operators to commence and complete all activities necessary to carry out pipeline repairs within any time periods specified by rule by the Secretary. The Interagency Committee shall include in the memorandum of understanding criteria under which permits required for such pipeline repair activities should be prioritized over other less urgent agency permit application reviews. The Interagency Committee shall not enter into a memorandum of understanding under this paragraph except by unanimous agreement of the members of the Interagency Committee.

(5) State and local consultation.--In carrying out this subsection, the Interagency Committee shall consult with appropriate State and local environmental, pipeline safety, and emergency response officials, and such other officials as the Interagency Committee considers appropriate.

(b) Implementation.--Not later than 180 days after the completion of the memorandum of understanding required under subsection (a)(4), each agency represented on the Interagency Committee shall revise its regulations as necessary to implement the provisions of the memorandum of understanding.

(c) Savings provisions; no preemption.--Nothing in this section shall be construed--

(1) to require a pipeline operator to obtain a Federal permit, if no Federal permit would otherwise have been required under Federal law; or

(2) to preempt applicable Federal, State, or local environmental law.

(d) Interim operational alternatives.--

(1) In general.--Not later than 30 days after the date of enactment of this section, and subject to the limitations in paragraph (2), the Secretary of Transportation shall revise the regulations of the Department, to the extent necessary, to permit a pipeline operator subject to time periods for repair specified by rule by the Secretary to implement alternative mitigation measures until all applicable permits have been granted.

(2) Limitations.--The regulations issued by the Secretary pursuant to this subsection shall not allow an operator to implement alternative mitigation measures pursuant to paragraph (1) unless--

(A) allowing the operator to implement such measures would be consistent with the protection of human health, public safety, and the environment;

(B) the operator, with respect to a particular repair project, has applied for and is pursuing diligently and in good faith all required Federal, State, and local permits to carry out the project; and

(C) the proposed alternative mitigation measures are not incompatible with pipeline safety.

(e) Ombudsman.--The Secretary shall designate an ombudsman to assist in expediting pipeline repairs and resolving disagreements between Federal, State, and local permitting agencies and the pipeline operator during agency review of any pipeline repair activity, consistent with protection of human health, public safety, and the environment.

(f) State and local permitting processes.--The Secretary shall encourage States and local governments to consolidate their respective permitting processes for pipeline repair projects subject to any time periods for repair specified by rule by the Secretary. The Secretary may request other relevant Federal

agencies to provide technical assistance to States and local governments for the purpose of encouraging such consolidation.

§ 60134. State damage prevention programs

(a) In general.—The Secretary may make a grant to a State authority (including a municipality with respect to intrastate gas pipeline transportation) to assist in improving the overall quality and effectiveness of a damage prevention program of the State authority under subsection (e) if the State authority—

(1) has in effect an annual certification under section 60105 or an agreement under section 60106; ~~and~~

(2)(A) has in effect an effective damage prevention program that meets the requirements of subsection (b); or

(B) demonstrates that it has made substantial progress toward establishing such a program, and that such program will meet the requirements of subsection ~~(b).~~(b); and

(3) does not provide any exemptions to municipalities, State agencies, or their contractors from the one-call notification system requirements of the program. *[this amendment takes effect 1/3/2014]*

(b) Damage prevention program elements.— An effective damage prevention program includes the following elements:

(1) Participation by operators, excavators, and other stakeholders in the development and implementation of methods for establishing and maintaining effective communications between stakeholders from receipt of an excavation notification until successful completion of the excavation, as appropriate.

(2) A process for fostering and ensuring the support and partnership of stakeholders, including excavators, operators, locators, designers, and local government in all phases of the program.

(3) A process for reviewing the adequacy of a pipeline operator's internal performance measures regarding persons performing locating services and quality assurance programs.

(4) Participation by operators, excavators, and other stakeholders in the development and implementation of effective employee training programs to ensure that operators, the one-call center, the enforcing agency, and the excavators have partnered to design and implement training for the employees of operators, excavators, and locators.

(5) A process for fostering and ensuring active participation by all stakeholders in public education for damage prevention activities.

(6) A process for resolving disputes that defines the State authority's role as a partner and facilitator to resolve issues.

(7) Enforcement of State damage prevention laws and regulations for all aspects of the damage prevention process, including public education, and the use of civil penalties for violations assessable by the appropriate State authority.

(8) A process for fostering and promoting the use, by all appropriate stakeholders, of improving technologies that may enhance communications, underground pipeline locating capability, and gathering and analyzing information about the accuracy and effectiveness of locating programs.

(9) A process for review and analysis of the effectiveness of each program element, including a means for implementing improvements identified by such program reviews.

(c) Factors to consider.—In making grants under this section, the Secretary shall take into consideration the commitment of each State to ensuring the effectiveness of its damage prevention program, including legislative and regulatory actions taken by the State.

(d) Application.—If a State authority files an application for a grant under this section not later than September 30 of a calendar year and demonstrates that the Governor (or chief executive) of the State has designated it as the appropriate State authority to receive the grant, the Secretary shall review the State's damage prevention program to determine its effectiveness.

(e) Use of funds.—A grant under this section to a State authority may only be used to pay the cost of the personnel, equipment, and activities that the State authority reasonably requires for the calendar year covered by the grant to develop or carry out its damage prevention program in accordance with subsection (b).

(f) Nonapplicability of limitation.—A grant made under this section is not subject to the section 60107(a) limitation on the maximum percentage of funds to be paid by the Secretary.

(g) Limitation on use of funds.—Funds provided to carry out this section may not be used for lobbying or in direct support of litigation.

(h) Damage prevention process defined.—In this section, the term 'damage prevention process' means a process that incorporates the principles described in sections 60114(b), 60114(d), and 60114(e).

(i) Authorization of appropriations.—There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to provide grants under this section $1,500,000 for each of fiscal years 2012 through 2015. Such funds shall remain available until expended.

§ 60135. Enforcement transparency

(a) In general.—Not later than December 31, 2007, the Secretary shall—

(1) provide a monthly updated summary to the public of all gas and hazardous liquid pipeline enforcement actions taken by the Secretary or the Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration, from the time a notice commencing an enforcement action is issued until the enforcement action is final;

(2) include in each such summary identification of the operator involved in the enforcement activity, the type of alleged violation, the penalty or penalties proposed, any changes in case status since the previous summary, the final assessment amount of each penalty, and the reasons for a reduction in the proposed penalty, if appropriate; and

(3) provide a mechanism by which a pipeline operator named in an enforcement action may make information, explanations, or documents it believes are responsive to the enforcement action available to the public.

(b) Electronic availability.—Each summary under this section shall be made available to the public by electronic means.

(c) Relationship to FOIA.—Nothing in this section shall be construed to require disclosure of information or records that are exempt from disclosure under section 552 of title 5.

§ 60136. Petroleum product transportation capacity study

(a) In general.—The Secretaries of Transportation and Energy shall conduct periodic analyses of the domestic transport of petroleum products by pipeline. Such analyses should identify areas of the United States where unplanned loss of individual pipeline facilities may cause shortages of petroleum products or price disruptions and where shortages of pipeline capacity and reliability concerns may have or are anticipated to contribute to shortages of petroleum products or price disruptions. Upon identifying such areas, the Secretaries may determine if the current level of regulation is sufficient to minimize the potential for un-planned losses of pipeline capacity.

(b) Consultation.—In preparing any analysis under this section, the Secretaries may consult with the heads of other government agencies and public- and private-sector experts in pipeline and other forms of petroleum product transportation, energy consumption, pipeline capacity, population, and economic development.

(c) Report to Congress.—Not later than June 1, 2008, the Secretaries shall submit to the Committee on Energy and Commerce and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources of the Senate a report setting forth their recommendations to reduce the likelihood of the shortages and price disruptions referred to in subsection (a).

(d) Additional reports.—The Secretaries shall submit additional reports to the congressional committees referred to in subsection (c) containing the results of any subsequent analyses performed under subsection (a) and any additional recommendations, as appropriate.

(e) Petroleum product defined.—In this section, the term 'petroleum product' means oil of any kind or in any form, gasoline, diesel fuel, aviation fuel, fuel oil, kerosene, any product obtained from refining or processing of crude oil, liquefied petroleum gases, natural gas liquids, petrochemical feedstocks, condensate, waste or refuse mixtures containing any of such oil products, and any other liquid hydrocarbon compounds.

§ 60137. Pipeline control room management

(a) In general.—Not later than June 1, 2008, the Secretary shall issue regulations requiring each operator of a gas or hazardous liquid pipeline to develop, implement, and submit to the Secretary or, in the case of an operator of an intrastate pipeline located within the boundaries of a State that has in effect an annual certification under section 60105, to the head of the appropriate State authority, a human factors management plan designed to reduce risks associated with human factors, including fatigue, in each control center for the pipeline. Each plan must include, among the measures to reduce such risks, a maximum limit on the hours of service established by the operator for individuals employed as controllers in a control center for the pipeline.

(b) Review and approval of the plan.—The Secretary or, in the case of an operator of an intrastate pipeline located within the boundaries of a State that has in effect an annual certification under section 60105, the head of the appropriate State authority, shall review and approve each plan submitted to the Secretary or the head of such authority, under subsection (a). The Secretary and the head of such authority may not approve a plan that does not include a maximum limit on the hours of service established by the operator of the pipeline for individuals employed as controllers in a control center for the pipeline.

(c) Enforcement of the plan.—If the Secretary or the head of the appropriate State authority determines that an operator's plan submitted to the Secretary or the head of such authority under subsection (a), or implementation of such a plan, does not comply with the regulations issued under this section or is inadequate for the safe operation of a pipeline, the Secretary or the head of such authority may take action consistent with this chapter and enforce the requirements of such regulations.

(d) Compliance with the plan.—Each operator of a gas or hazardous liquid pipeline shall document compliance with the plan submitted by the operator under subsection (a) and the reasons for any deviation from compliance with such plan. The Secretary or the head of the appropriate State authority, as the case may be, shall review the reasonableness of any such deviation in considering whether to take enforcement action or discontinue approval of the operator's plan under subsection (b).

(e) Deviation reporting requirements.—In issuing regulations under subsection (a), the Secretary shall develop and include in such regulations requirements for an operator of a gas or hazardous liquid pipeline to report deviations from compliance with the plan submitted to the Secretary by the operator under subsection (a).

§ 60138. Response plans

(a) In General.—The Secretary of Transportation shall—
(1) maintain on file a copy of the most recent response plan (as defined in part 194 of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations) prepared by an owner or operator of a pipeline facility; and
(2) provide upon written request to a person a copy of the plan, which may exclude, as the Secretary determines appropriate—
(A) proprietary information;
(B) security-sensitive information, including information described in section 1520.5(a) of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations;
(C) specific response resources and tactical resource deployment plans; and
(D) the specific amount and location of worst case discharges (as defined in part 194 of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations), including the process by which an owner or operator determines the worst case discharge.

(b) Relationship to FOIA.—Nothing in this section may be construed to require disclosure of information or records that are exempt from disclosure under section 552 of title 5.

§ 60139. Maximum allowable operating pressure

(a) Verification of Records.—
(1) In general.—The Secretary of Transportation shall require each owner or operator of a pipeline facility to conduct, not later than 6 months after the date of enactment of this section, a verification of the records of the owner or operator relating to the interstate and intrastate gas transmission pipelines of the owner or operator in class 3 and class 4 locations and class 1 and class 2 high-consequence areas.
(2) Purpose.—The purpose of the verification shall be to ensure that the records accurately reflect the physical and operational characteristics of the pipelines described in paragraph (1) and confirm the established maximum allowable operating pressure of the pipelines.
(3) Elements.—The verification process under this subsection shall include such elements as the Secretary considers appropriate.

(b) Reporting.—
(1) Documentation of certain pipelines.—Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this section, each owner or operator of a pipeline facility shall identify and submit to the Secretary documentation relating to each pipeline segment of the owner or operator described in subsection (a)(1) for which the records of the owner or operator are insufficient to confirm the established maximum allowable operating pressure of the segment.
(2) Exceedances of maximum allowable operating pressure.—If there is an exceedance of the maximum allowable operating pressure with respect to a gas transmission pipeline of an owner or operator of a pipeline facility that exceeds the build-up allowed for operation of pressure-limiting or control devices, the owner or operator shall report the exceedance to the Secretary and appropriate State authorities on or before the 5th day following the date on which the exceedance occurs.

(c) Determination of maximum allowable operating pressure.—
(1) In general.—In the case of a transmission line of an owner or operator of a pipeline facility identified under subsection (b)(1), the Secretary shall—
(A) require the owner or operator to reconfirm a maximum allowable operating pressure as expeditiously as economically feasible; and
(B) determine what actions are appropriate for the pipeline owner or operator to take to maintain safety until a maximum allowable operating pressure is confirmed.
(2) Interim actions.—In determining the actions for an owner or operator of a pipeline facility to take under paragraph (1)(B), the Secretary shall take into account potential consequences to

public safety and the environment, potential impacts on pipeline system reliability and deliverability, and other factors, as appropriate.

(d) Testing regulations.—

(1) In general.—Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this section, the Secretary shall issue regulations for conducting tests to confirm the material strength of previously untested natural gas transmission pipelines located in high-consequence areas and operating at a pressure greater than 30 percent of specified minimum yield strength.

(2) Considerations.—In developing the regulations, the Secretary shall consider safety testing methodologies, including, at a minimum—

(A) pressure testing; and

(B) other alternative methods, including in-line inspections, determined by the Secretary to be of equal or greater effectiveness.

(3) Completion of testing.—The Secretary, in consultation with the Chairman of the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission and State regulators, as appropriate, shall establish timeframes for the completion of such testing that take into account potential consequences to public safety and the environment and that minimize costs and service disruptions.

(e) High-consequence area defined.—In this section, the term “high-consequence area” means an area described in section 60109(a).

§ 60140. Cover over buried pipelines

(a) Hazardous liquid pipeline incidents involving buried pipelines.—

(1) Study.—The Secretary of Transportation shall conduct a study of hazardous liquid pipeline incidents at crossings of inland bodies of water with a width of at least 100 feet from high water mark to high water mark to determine if the depth of cover over the buried pipeline was a factor in any accidental release of hazardous liquids.

(2) Report.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this section, the Secretary shall transmit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report on the results of the study.

(b) Assessment of current requirements for depth of cover over buried pipelines.—

(1) In general.—If, following completion of the study under subsection (a), the Secretary finds that the depth of cover over buried pipelines is a contributing factor in the accidental release of hazardous liquids from the pipelines, the Secretary, not later than 1 year after the date of completion of the study, shall review and determine the sufficiency of current requirements for the depth of cover over buried pipelines.

(2) Legislative recommendations.—

(A) Development.—If the Secretary determines under paragraph (1) that the current requirements for the depth of cover over buried pipelines are insufficient, the Secretary shall develop legislative recommendations for improving the safety of buried pipelines at crossings of inland bodies of water with a width of at least 100 feet from high water mark to high water mark.

(B) Consideration of factors.—In developing legislative recommendations under subparagraph (A), the Secretary shall consider the factors specified in section 60102(b)(2).

(C) Report to Congress.—If the Secretary develops legislative recommendations under subparagraph (A), the Secretary shall submit to the committees referred to in subsection (a)(2) a report containing the legislative recommendations.

User Fees (49 U.S.C. § 60301)

§ 60301. User fees

(a) Schedule of fees.--The Secretary of Transportation shall prescribe a schedule of fees for all natural gas and hazardous liquids transported by pipelines subject to chapter 601 of this title. The fees shall be based on usage (in reasonable relationship to volume-miles, miles, revenues, or a combination of volume-miles, miles, and revenues) of the pipelines. The Secretary shall consider the allocation of resources of the Department of Transportation when establishing the schedule.

(b) Imposition and time of collection.--A fee shall be imposed on each person operating a gas pipeline transmission facility, a liquefied natural gas pipeline facility, or a hazardous liquid pipeline facility to which chapter 601 of this title applies. The fee shall be collected before the end of the fiscal year to which it applies.

(c) Means of collection.--The Secretary shall prescribe procedures to collect fees under this section. The Secretary may use a department, agency, or instrumentality of the United States Government or of a State or local government to collect the fee and may reimburse the department, agency, or instrumentality a reasonable amount for its services.

(d) Use of fees.--A fee collected under this section--

(1)(A) related to a gas pipeline facility may be used only for an activity related to gas under chapter 601 of this title; and

(B) related to a hazardous liquid pipeline facility may be used only for an activity related to hazardous liquid under chapter 601 of this title; and

(2) may be used only to the extent provided in advance in an appropriation law.

(e) Limitations.--Fees prescribed under subsection (a) of this section shall be sufficient to pay for the costs of activities described in subsection (d) of this section. However, the total amount collected for a fiscal year may not be more than 105 percent of the total amount of the appropriations made for the fiscal year for activities to be financed by the fees.

One-Call Notification Programs Statutes (49 U.S.C. § 6101 et seq.)

Table of Contents

Section		Page No.
§ 6101.	Purposes	53
§ 6102.	Definitions	53
§ 6103.	Minimum standards for State one-call notification programs	53
§ 6104.	Compliance with minimum standards	54
§ 6105.	Implementation of best practices guidelines	55
§ 6106.	Grants to States	55
§ 6107.	Authorization of appropriations	56
§ 6108.	Relationship to State laws	56
§ 6109.	Public education and awareness	56

§ 6101. Purposes

The purposes of this chapter are--
(1) to enhance public safety;
(2) to protect the environment;
(3) to minimize risks to excavators; and
(4) to prevent disruption of vital public services,
by reducing the incidence of damage to underground facilities during excavation through the voluntary adoption and efficient implementation by all States of State one-call notification programs that meet the minimum standards set forth under section 6103.

§ 6102. Definitions

In this chapter, the following definitions apply:
(1) One-call notification system.--The term "one-call notification system" means a system operated by an organization that has as 1 of its purposes to receive notification from excavators of intended excavation in a specified area in order to disseminate such notification to underground facility operators that are members of the system so that such operators can locate and mark their facilities in order to prevent damage to underground facilities in the course of such excavation.
(2) State one-call notification program.--The term "State one-call notification program" means the State statutes, regulations, orders, judicial decisions, and other elements of law and policy in effect in a State that establish the requirements for the operation of one-call notification systems in such State.
(3) State.--The term "State" means a State, the District of Columbia, and Puerto Rico.
(4) Secretary.--The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Transportation.

§ 6103. Minimum standards for State one-call notification programs

~~(a) Minimum standards.--In order to qualify for a grant under section 6106, a State one-call notification program shall, at a minimum, provide for--~~
~~(1) appropriate participation by all underground facility operators, including all government operators;~~
~~(2) appropriate participation by all excavators, including all government and contract excavators; and~~
~~(3) flexible and effective enforcement under State law with respect to participation in, and use of, one-call notification systems.~~
(a) Minimum Standards.—
(1) In general.—In order to qualify for a grant under section 6106, a State one-call notification program, at a minimum, shall provide for—
(A) appropriate participation by all underground facility operators, including all government operators;
(B) appropriate participation by all excavators, including all government and contract excavators; and
(C) flexible and effective enforcement under State law with respect to participation in, and use of, one-call notification systems.
(2) Exemptions prohibited.—In order to qualify for a grant under section 6106, a State one-call notification program may not exempt municipalities, State agencies, or their contractors from the one-call notification system requirements of the program. *[this amendment takes effect 1/3/2014]*

(b) Appropriate participation.--In determining the appropriate extent of participation required for types of underground facilities or excavators under subsection (a), a State shall assess, rank, and take into consideration the risks to the public safety, the environment, excavators, and vital public services associated with--
(1) damage to types of underground facilities; and
(2) activities of types of excavators.

(c) Implementation.--A State one-call notification program also shall, at a minimum, provide for and document--

(1) consideration of the ranking of risks under subsection (b) in the enforcement of its provisions;
(2) a reasonable relationship between the benefits of one-call notification and the cost of implementing and complying with the requirements of the State one-call notification program; and
(3) voluntary participation where the State determines that a type of underground facility or an activity of a type of excavator poses a de minimis risk to public safety or the environment.

(d) Penalties.--To the extent the State determines appropriate and necessary to achieve the purposes of this chapter, a State one-call notification program shall, at a minimum, provide for--

(1) administrative or civil penalties commensurate with the seriousness of a violation by an excavator or facility owner of a State one-call notification program;
(2) increased penalties for parties that repeatedly damage underground facilities because they fail to use one-call notification systems or for parties that repeatedly fail to provide timely and accurate marking after the required call has been made to a one-call notification system;
(3) reduced or waived penalties for a violation of a requirement of a State one-call notification program that results in, or could result in, damage that is promptly reported by the violator;
(4) equitable relief; and
(5) citation of violations.

§ 6104. Compliance with minimum standards

(a) Requirement.--In order to qualify for a grant under section 6106, each State shall submit to the Secretary a grant application under subsection (b). The State shall submit the application not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this chapter.

(b) Application.--

(1) Upon application by a State, the Secretary shall review that State's one-call notification program, including the provisions for the implementation of the program and the record of compliance and enforcement under the program.
(2) Based on the review under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall determine whether the State's one-call notification program meets the minimum standards for such a program set forth in section 6103 in order to qualify for a grant under section 6106.
(3) In order to expedite compliance under this section, the Secretary may consult with the State as to whether an existing State one-call notification program, a specific modification thereof, or a proposed State program would result in a positive determination under paragraph (2).
(4) The Secretary shall prescribe the form and manner of filing an application under this section that shall provide sufficient information about a State's one-call notification program for the Secretary to evaluate its overall effectiveness. Such information may include the nature and reasons for exceptions from required participation, the types of enforcement available, and such other information as the Secretary deems necessary.
(5) The application of a State under paragraph (1) and the record of actions of the Secretary under this section shall be available to the public.

(c) Alternative program.--A State is eligible to receive a grant under section 6106 if the State maintains an alternative one-call notification program that provides protection for public safety, excavators, and the environment that is equivalent to, or greater than, protection provided under a program that meets the minimum standards set forth in section 6103.

(d) Report.--The Secretary shall include the following information in reports submitted under section 60124 of this title--

(1) a description of the extent to which each State has adopted and implemented the minimum Federal standards under section 6103 or maintains an alternative program under subsection (c);

(2) an analysis by the Secretary of the overall effectiveness of each State's one-call notification program and the one-call notification systems operating under such program in achieving the purposes of this chapter;
(3) the impact of each State's decisions on the extent of required participation in one-call notification systems on prevention of damage to underground facilities; and
(4) areas where improvements are needed in one-call notification systems in operation in each State.

The report shall also include any recommendations the Secretary determines appropriate. If the Secretary determines that the purposes of this chapter have been substantially achieved, no further report under this section shall be required.

§ 6105. Implementation of best practices guidelines

(a) Adoption of best practices.--The Secretary of Transportation shall encourage States, operators of one-call notification programs, excavators (including all government and contract excavators), and underground facility operators to adopt and implement practices identified in the best practices report entitled "Common Ground", as periodically updated.

(b) Technical assistance.--The Secretary shall provide technical assistance to and participate in programs sponsored by a non- profit organization specifically established for the purpose of reducing construction-related damage to underground facilities.

(c) Grants.--
(1) In general.--The Secretary may make grants to a non-profit organization described in subsection (b).
(2) Authorization of appropriations.--In addition to amounts authorized under section 6107, there is authorized to be appropriated for making grants under this subsection $500,000 for each of fiscal years 2003 through 2006. Such sums shall remain available until expended.
(3) General revenue funding.--Any sums appropriated under this subsection shall be derived from general revenues and may not be derived from amounts collected under section 60301.

§ 6106. Grants to States

(a) In general.--The Secretary may make a grant of financial assistance to a State that qualifies under section 6104(b) to assist in improving--
(1) the overall quality and effectiveness of one-call notification systems in the State;
(2) communications systems linking one-call notification systems;
(3) location capabilities, including training personnel and developing and using location technology;
(4) record retention and recording capabilities for one-call notification systems;
(5) public information and education;
(6) participation in one-call notification systems; or
(7) compliance and enforcement under the State one-call notification program.

(b) State action taken into account.--In making grants under this section, the Secretary shall take into consideration the commitment of each State to improving its State one-call notification program, including legislative and regulatory actions taken by the State after the date of enactment of this chapter.

(c) Funding for one-call notification systems.--A State may provide funds received under this section directly to any one-call notification system in such State that substantially adopts the best practices identified under section 6105.

§ 6107. Authorization of appropriations

(a) For grants to states.--There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to provide grants to States under section 6106 $1,000,000 for each of fiscal years ~~2003 through 2006~~ ~~2007 through 2010~~ 2012 through 2015. Such funds shall remain available until expended.

(b) For administration.--There are authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary such sums as may be necessary to carry out sections 6103, 6104, and 6105 for ~~fiscal years 2003 through 2006~~ fiscal years ~~2007 through 2010~~ 2012 through 2015.

~~(c) General revenue funding.--Any sums appropriated under this section shall be derived from general revenues and may not be derived from amounts collected under section 60301 of this title.~~

§ 6108. Relationship to State laws

Nothing in this chapter preempts State law or shall impose a new requirement on any State or mandate revisions to a one-call system.

§ 6109. Public education and awareness

(a) Grant authority.—The Secretary shall make a grant to an appropriate entity for promoting public education and awareness with respect to the 811 national excavation damage prevention phone number.

(b) Authorization of appropriations.—There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary $1,000,000 for the period beginning October 1, 2006, and ending September 30, 2008, to carry out this section.

Section 12 of the Pipeline Safety Improvement Act of 2002
(49 U.S.C. 60101 note; Public Law 107–355)

Sec. 12. Pipeline Integrity, Safety, and Reliability Research and Development.

(a) In general.—The heads of the participating agencies shall carry out a program of research, development, demonstration, and standardization to ensure the integrity of pipeline facilities.

(b) Memorandum of understanding.—

(1) In general.—Not later than 120 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the heads of the participating agencies shall enter into a memorandum of understanding detailing their respective responsibilities in the program authorized by subsection (a).

(2) Areas of expertise.—Under the memorandum of understanding, each of the participating agencies shall have the primary responsibility for ensuring that the elements of the program within its expertise are implemented in accordance with this section. The Department of Transportation's responsibilities shall reflect its lead role in pipeline safety and expertise in pipeline inspection, integrity management, and damage prevention. The Department of Energy's responsibilities shall reflect its expertise in system reliability, low-volume gas leak detection, and surveillance technologies. The National Institute of Standards and Technology's responsibilities shall reflect its expertise in materials research and assisting in the development of consensus technical standards, as that term is used in section 12(d)(4) of Public Law 104–13 (15 U.S.C. 272 note).

(c) Program elements.—The program authorized by subsection (a) shall include research, development, demonstration, and standardization activities related to—

(1) materials inspection;

(2) stress and fracture analysis, detection of cracks, ~~corrosion,~~ abrasion, and other abnormalities inside pipelines that lead to pipeline failure, and development of new equipment or technologies that are inserted into pipelines to detect anomalies;

(3) internal inspection and leak detection technologies, including detection of leaks at very low volumes;

(4) methods of analyzing content of pipeline throughput;

(5) pipeline security, including improving the real-time surveillance of pipeline rights-of-way, developing tools for evaluating and enhancing pipeline security and infrastructure, reducing natural, technological, and terrorist threats, and protecting first response units and persons near an incident;

(6) risk assessment methodology, including vulnerability assessment and reduction of third-party damage;

(7) communication, control, and information systems surety;

(8) fire safety of pipelines;

(9) improved excavation, construction, and repair technologies; ~~and~~

(10) corrosion detection and improving methods, best practices, and technologies for identifying, detecting, preventing, and managing internal and external corrosion and other safety risks; and

(~~10~~11) other appropriate elements.

The results of activities carried out under paragraph (10) shall be used by the participating agencies to support development and improvement of national consensus standards.

(d) Program plan.—

(1) In general.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this section, the Secretary of Transportation, in coordination with the Secretary of Energy and the Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, shall prepare and transmit to Congress a 5-year program plan to guide activities under this section. Such program plan shall be submitted to the Technical Pipeline Safety Standards Committee and the Technical Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Safety Standards Committee for review, and the report to Congress shall include the comments of the committees. The 5-year program plan shall be based on the memorandum of understanding under subsection (b) and take into account related activities of other Federal agencies.

(2) Consultation.—In preparing the program plan and selecting and prioritizing appropriate project proposals, the Secretary of Transportation shall consult with or seek the advice of appropriate representatives of the natural gas, crude oil, and petroleum product pipeline industries, utilities, manufacturers, institutions of higher learning, Federal agencies, pipeline research institutions, national laboratories, State pipeline safety officials, labor organizations, environmental organizations, pipeline safety advocates, and professional and technical societies.

(3) Ongoing pipeline transportation research and development.—

(A) In general.—After the initial 5-year program plan has been carried out by the participating agencies, the Secretary of Transportation, in coordination with the Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, as appropriate, shall prepare a research and development program plan every 5 years thereafter and shall transmit a report to Congress on the status and results-to-date of implementation of the program every 2 years. The biennial report shall include a summary of updated research needs and priorities identified through the consultation requirements of paragraph (2).

(B) Consultation.—The Secretary shall comply with the consultation requirements of paragraph (2) when preparing the program plan and in the selection and prioritization of research and development projects.

(C) Funding from non-federal sources.—The Secretary shall ensure at least 30 percent of the costs of program-wide research and development activities are carried out using non-Federal sources.

(e) Reports to Congress.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act, and annually thereafter, the heads of the participating agencies shall transmit jointly to Congress a report on the status and results to date of the implementation of the program plan prepared under subsection (d).

~~(f) Authorization of Appropriations.—~~

~~(1) Department of Transportation.—There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of Transportation for carrying out this section $10,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2003 through 2006.~~

~~(2) Department of Energy.—There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary of Energy for carrying out this section $10,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2003 through 2006.~~

~~(3) National Institute of Standards and Technology.—There is authorized to be appropriated to the Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology for carrying out this section $5,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2003 through 2006.~~

~~(4) General Revenue Funding.—Any sums appropriated under this subsection shall be derived from general revenues and may not be derived from amounts collected under section 60301 of title 49, United States Code.~~

~~(g)~~(f) Pipeline integrity program.—Of the amounts available in the Oil Spill Liability Trust Fund established by section 9509 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (26 U.S.C. 9509), $3,000,000 shall be transferred to the Secretary of Transportation, as provided in appropriation Acts, to carry out programs for detection, prevention, and mitigation of oil spills for each of the fiscal years ~~2003 through 2006~~ 2012 through 2015.

~~(h)~~(g) Participating agencies defined.—In this section, the term ‘‘participating agencies’’ means the Department of Transportation, the Department of Energy, and the National Institute of Standards and Technology.

Uncodified Mandates from Act of 2011

Table of Contents

Section		Page No.
Sec. 3(d).	Pipeline Damage Prevention	60
Sec. 5.	Integrity Management	60
Sec. 6(b).	Information to Emergency Response Agencies	61
Sec. 7(b).	Cast Iron Gas Pipelines	62
Sec. 8.	Leak Detection	62
Sec. 9.	Accident and Incident Notification	63
Sec.13(b).	Cost Recovery for Design Reviews	63
Sec.16.	Study of Transportation of Diluted Bitumen	63
Sec.17.	Study of Nonpetroleum Hazardous Liquids Transported by Pipeline	63
Sec. 20(a).	Administrative Enforcement Process	64
Sec. 21.	Gas and Hazardous Liquid Gathering Lines	64
Sec. 23.	Maximum Allowable Operating Pressure	64
Sec. 25.	Pipeline Safety Training for State and Local Government Personnel	65
Sec. 26.	Report on Minority-Owned, Woman-Owned, and Disadvantaged Businesses	65
Sec. 27.	Report on Pipeline Projects	65
Sec. 29.	Seismicity	66
Sec. 30.	Tribal Consultation for Pipeline Projects	66
Sec. 31.	Pipeline Inspection and Enforcement Needs	66

Sec. 3. Pipeline Damage Prevention.

(d) Excavation Damage.

(1) Study.—The Secretary of Transportation shall conduct a study on the impact of excavation damage on pipeline safety.

(2) Contents.—The study shall include—

(A) an analysis of the frequency and severity of different types of excavation damage incidents;

(B) an analysis of exemptions to the one-call notification system requirements in each State;

(C) a comparison of exemptions to the one-call notification system requirements in each State to the types of excavation damage incidents in that State; and

(D) an analysis of the potential safety benefits and adverse consequences of eliminating all exemptions for mechanized excavation from State one-call notification systems.

(3) Report.—Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report on the results of the study.

Sec. 5. Integrity Management.

(a) Evaluation.—Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall evaluate—

(1) whether integrity management system requirements, or elements thereof, should be expanded beyond high-consequence areas; and

(2) with respect to gas transmission pipeline facilities, whether applying integrity management program requirements, or elements thereof, to additional areas would mitigate the need for class location requirements.

(b) Factors.—In conducting the evaluation under subsection (a), the Secretary shall consider, at a minimum, the following:

(1) The continuing priority to enhance protections for public safety.

(2) The continuing importance of reducing risk in high consequence areas.

(3) The incremental costs of applying integrity management standards to pipelines outside of high-consequence areas where operators are already conducting assessments beyond what is required under chapter 601 of title 49, United States Code.

(4) The need to undertake integrity management assessments and repairs in a manner that is achievable and sustainable, and that does not disrupt pipeline service.

(5) The options for phasing in the extension of integrity management requirements beyond high-consequence areas, including the most effective and efficient options for decreasing risks to an increasing number of people living or working in proximity to pipeline facilities.

(6) The appropriateness of applying repair criteria, such as pressure reductions and special requirements for scheduling remediation, to areas that are not high-consequence areas.

(c) Report.—Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report, based on the evaluation conducted under subsection (a), containing the Secretary's analysis and findings regarding—

(1) expansion of integrity management requirements, or elements thereof, beyond high-consequence areas; and

(2) with respect to gas transmission pipeline facilities, whether applying the integrity management program requirements, or elements thereof, to additional areas would mitigate the need for class location requirements.

(d) Data reporting.—The Secretary shall collect any relevant data necessary to complete the evaluation required by subsection (a).

* * * * *

(f) Rulemaking requirements.—

(1) Review period defined.—In this subsection, the term ‘‘review period’’ means the period beginning on the date of enactment of this Act and ending on the earlier of—

(A) the date that is 1 year after the date of completion of the report under subsection (c); or

(B) the date that is 3 years after the date of enactment of this Act.

(2) Congressional authority.—In order to provide Congress the necessary time to review the results of the report required by subsection (c) and implement appropriate recommendations, the Secretary shall not, during the review period, issue final regulations described in paragraph (3)(B).

(3) Standards.—

(A) Findings.—As soon as practicable following the review period, the Secretary shall issue final regulations described in subparagraph (B), if the Secretary finds, in the report required under subsection (c), that—

(i) integrity management system requirements, or elements thereof, should be expanded beyond high consequence areas; and

(ii) with respect to gas transmission pipeline facilities, applying integrity management program requirements, or elements thereof, to additional areas would mitigate the need for class location requirements.

(B) Regulations.—Regulations issued by the Secretary under subparagraph (A), if any, shall—

(i) expand integrity management system requirements, or elements thereof, beyond high-consequence areas; and

(ii) remove redundant class location requirements for gas transmission pipeline facilities that are regulated under an integrity management program adopted and implemented under section 60109(c)(2) of title 49, United States Code.

(4) Savings clause.—

(A) In general.—Notwithstanding any other provision of this subsection, the Secretary, during the review period, may issue final regulations described in paragraph (3)(B), if the Secretary determines that a condition that poses a risk to public safety, property, or the environment is present or an imminent hazard exists and that the regulations will address the risk or hazard.

(B) Imminent hazard defined.—In subparagraph (A), the term ‘‘imminent hazard’’ means the existence of a condition related to pipelines or pipeline operations that presents a substantial likelihood that death, serious illness, severe personal injury, or substantial endangerment to health, property, or the environment may occur.

(g) Report to Congress on risk-based pipeline reassessment intervals.—Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act, the Comptroller General of the United States shall evaluate—

(1) whether risk-based reassessment intervals are a more effective alternative for managing risks to pipelines in high consequence areas once baseline assessments are complete when compared to the reassessment interval specified in section 60109(c)(3)(B) of title 49, United States Code;

(2) the number of anomalies found in baseline assessments required under section 60109(c)(3)(A) of title 49, United States Code, as compared to the number of anomalies found in reassessments required under section 60109(c)(3)(B) of such title; and

(3) the progress made in implementing the recommendations in GAO Report 06–945 and the current relevance of those recommendations that have not been implemented.

Sec. 6 Public Education and Awareness.

(b) Information to emergency response agencies.—

(1) Guidance.—Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary shall issue guidance to owners and operators of pipeline facilities on the importance of providing system-specific information about their pipeline facilities to emergency response agencies of the communities and jurisdictions in which those facilities are located.

(2) Consultation.—Before issuing guidance under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall consult with owners and operators of pipeline facilities to determine the extent to which the owners and operators are already providing system-specific information about their pipeline facilities to emergency response agencies.

Sec. 7. Cast Iron Gas Pipelines.

(b) Status report.—Not later than December 31, 2013, the Secretary of Transportation shall transmit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report that—

(1) identifies the total mileage of cast iron gas pipelines in the United States; and

(2) evaluates the progress that owners and operators of pipeline facilities have made in implementing their plans for the safe management and replacement of cast iron gas pipelines.

Sec. 8. Leak Detection.

(a) Leak detection report.—

(1) In general.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives a report on leak detection systems utilized by operators of hazardous liquid pipeline facilities and transportation-related flow lines.

(2) Contents.—The report shall include—

(A) an analysis of the technical limitations of current leak detection systems, including the ability of the systems to detect ruptures and small leaks that are ongoing or intermittent, and what can be done to foster development of better technologies; and

(B) an analysis of the practicability of establishing technically, operationally, and economically feasible standards for the capability of such systems to detect leaks, and the safety benefits and adverse consequences of requiring operators to use leak detection systems.

(b) Rule making requirements.—

(1) Review period defined.—In this subsection, the term ‘‘review period’’ means the period beginning on the date of enactment of this Act and ending on the earlier of—

(A) the date that is 1 year after the date of completion of the report under subsection (a); or

(B) the date that is 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act.

(2) Congressional Authority.—In order to provide Congress the necessary time to review the results of the report required by subsection (a) and implement appropriate recommendations, the Secretary, during the review period, shall not issue final regulations described in paragraph (3).

(3) Standards.—As soon as practicable following the review period, if the report required by subsection (a) finds that it is practicable to establish technically, operationally, and economically feasible standards for the capability of leak detection systems to detect leaks, the Secretary shall issue final regulations that—

(A) require operators of hazardous liquid pipeline facilities to use leak detection systems where practicable; and

(B) establish technically, operationally, and economically feasible standards for the capability of such systems to detect leaks.

(4) Savings clause.—

(A) In general.—Notwithstanding any other provision of this subsection, the Secretary, during the review period, may issue final regulations described in paragraph (3) if the Secretary determines that a condition that poses a risk to public safety, property, or the environment is present or an imminent hazard exists and that the regulations will address the risk or hazard.

(B) Imminent hazard defined.—In subparagraph (A), the term ‘‘imminent hazard’’ means the existence of a condition related to pipelines or pipeline operations that presents a substantial

likelihood that death, serious illness, severe personal injury, or substantial endangerment to health, property, or the environment may occur.

Sed. 9. Accident and Incident Notification.

(a) Revision of regulations.—Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall revise regulations issued under sections 191.5 and 195.52 of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, to establish specific time limits for telephonic or electronic notice of accidents and incidents involving pipeline facilities to the Secretary and the National Response Center.

(b) Minimum requirements.—In revising the regulations, the Secretary, at a minimum, shall—

(1) establish time limits for telephonic or electronic notification of an accident or incident to require such notification at the earliest practicable moment following confirmed discovery of an accident or incident and not later than 1 hour following the time of such confirmed discovery;

(2) review procedures for owners and operators of pipeline facilities and the National Response Center to provide thorough and coordinated notification to all relevant State and local emergency response officials, including 911 emergency call centers, for the jurisdictions in which those pipeline facilities are located in the event of an accident or incident, and revise such procedures as appropriate; and

(3) require such owners and operators to revise their initial telephonic or electronic notice to the Secretary and the National Response Center with an estimate of the amount of the product released, an estimate of the number of fatalities and injuries, if any, and any other information determined appropriate by the Secretary within 48 hours of the accident or incident, to the extent practicable.

(c) Updating of reports.—After receiving revisions described in subsection (b)(3), the National Response Center shall update the initial report on an accident or incident instead of generating a new report.

Sec. 13. Cost Recovery for Design Reviews.

(b) Guidance.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall issue guidance to clarify the meaning of the term “new or novel technologies or design” as used in section 60117(n)(1)(B)(ii) of title 49, United States Code, as amended by subsection (a) of this section.

Sec. 16. Study of Transportation of Diluted Bitumen.

Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall complete a comprehensive review of hazardous liquid pipeline facility regulations to determine whether the regulations are sufficient to regulate pipeline facilities used for the transportation of diluted bitumen. In conducting the review, the Secretary shall conduct an analysis of whether any increase in the risk of a release exists for pipeline facilities transporting diluted bitumen. The Secretary shall report the results of the review to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives.

Sec. 17. Study of Nonpetroleum Hazardous Liquid Transported by Pipeline.

The Secretary of Transportation may conduct an analysis of the transportation of nonpetroleum hazardous liquids by pipeline facility for the purpose of identifying the extent to which pipeline facilities are currently being used to transport nonpetroleum hazardous liquids, such as chlorine, from chemical production

facilities across land areas not owned by the producer that are accessible to the public. The analysis should identify the extent to which the safety of the pipeline facilities is unregulated by the States and evaluate whether the transportation of such chemicals by pipeline facility across areas accessible to the public would present significant risks to public safety, property, or the environment in the absence of regulation. The results of the analysis shall be made available to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives.

Sec. 20. Administrative Enforcement Process.

(a) Issuance of regulations.—

(1) In general.—Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall issue regulations—

(A) requiring hearings under sections 60112, 60117, 60118, and 60122 of title 49, United States Code, to be convened before a presiding official;

(B) providing the opportunity for any person requesting a hearing under section 60112, 60117, 60118, or 60122 of such title to arrange for a transcript of the hearing, at the expense of the requesting person;

(C) ensuring expedited review of any order issued pursuant to section 60112(e) of such title;

(D) implementing a separation of functions between personnel involved with the investigation and prosecution of an enforcement case and advising the Secretary on findings and determinations; and

(E) prohibiting ex-parte communication relevant to the question to be decided in such a case by parties to a investigation or hearing.

(2) Presiding official.—The regulations issued under this subsection shall—

(A) define the term ‘‘presiding official’’ to mean the person who conducts any hearing relating to civil penalty assessments, compliance orders, safety orders, or corrective action orders; and

(B) require that the presiding official be an attorney on the staff of the Deputy Chief Counsel of the Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration that is not engaged in investigative or prosecutorial functions including the preparation of notices of probable violations, notices relating to civil penalty assessments, notices relating to compliance, or notices of proposed corrective actions.

(3) Expedited review.—The regulations issued under this subsection shall define the term ‘‘expedited review’’ for the purposes of paragraph (1)(C).

Sec. 21. Gas and Hazardous Liquid Gathering Lines.

(a) Review.—The Secretary of Transportation shall conduct a review of existing Federal and State regulations for gas and hazardous liquid gathering lines located onshore and offshore in the United States, including within the inlets of the Gulf of Mexico.

(b) Report to Congress.

(1) In general.—Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report on the results of the review.

(2) Recommendations.—The report shall include the Secretary’s recommendations with respect to—

(A) the sufficiency of existing Federal and State laws and regulations to ensure the safety of gas and hazardous liquid gathering lines;

(B) the economic impacts, technical practicability, and challenges of applying existing Federal regulations to gathering lines that are not currently subject to Federal regulation when compared to the public safety benefits; and

(C) subject to a risk-based assessment, the need to modify or revoke existing exemptions from Federal regulation for gas and hazardous liquid gathering lines.

* * * * *

Sec. 25. Pipeline Safety Training for State and Local Government Personnel.

(a) In general.—To further the objectives of chapter 601 of title 49, United States Code, the Secretary of Transportation may provide the services of personnel from the Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration to provide training for State and local government personnel at a pipeline safety training facility that is established and operated by an agency or instrumentality of the United States, a unit of State or local government, or an educational institution.

(b) Reimbursements for training expenditures.—
(1) In general.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Secretary may require reimbursement from and local government personnel under subsection (a), including salaries, expenses, transportation for Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration personnel, and the cost of training materials.
(2) Authorization of appropriations.—Amounts collected as reimbursement under paragraph (1) are authorized to be appropriated for the purposes set forth in chapter 601 of title 49, United States Code.

Sec. 26. Report on Minority-owned, Woman-owned, and Disadvantaged Businesses.

Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act, the Comptroller General of the United States, based upon available information, shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives a comprehensive report assessing the levels and types of participation and methods of facilitating the participation of minority-owned business enterprises, woman-owned business enterprises, and disadvantaged business enterprises in the construction and operation of pipeline facilities in the United States.

Sec. 27. Report on Pipeline Projects.

(a) Study. —The Comptroller General of the United States shall conduct a comprehensive study regarding the process for obtaining Federal and State permits for projects to construct pipeline facilities.

(b) Evaluation.—In conducting the study, the Comptroller General shall evaluate how long it takes to issue permits for pipeline construction projects, the relationship between the States and the Federal Government in issuing such permits, and any recommendations from the States for improving the permitting process.

(c) Consultation.—In conducting the study, the Comptroller General shall consult with the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate.

(d) Report.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act, the Comptroller General shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report on the results of the study.

Sec. 29. Seismicity.

In identifying and evaluating all potential threats to each pipeline=segment pursuant to parts 192 and 195 of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, an operator of a pipeline facility shall consider the seismicity of the area.

Sec. 30. Tribal Consultation for Pipeline Projects.

Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall develop and implement a protocol for consulting with Indian tribes to provide technical assistance for the regulation of pipelines that are under the jurisdiction of Indian tribes.

Sec. 31. Pipeline Inspection and Enforcement Needs.

(a) Inspection and enforcement needs.—Not later than 12 months after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report that provides information on—

(1) the total number of full-time equivalent positions for pipeline inspection and enforcement personnel at the Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration;

(2) out of the total number of such positions, how many of the positions are not filled and the reasons why the positions are not filled;

(3) the actions the Administrator of the Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration is taking to fill the positions; and

(4) any additional inspection and enforcement resource needs of the Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration.

(b) Staffing.—Subject to the availability of funds, the Secretary may increase the number of positions for pipeline inspection and enforcement personnel at the Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration by 10 full-time equivalent employees, if—

(1) on or before September 30, 2014, the Secretary fills the 135 full-time equivalent positions for pipeline inspection and enforcement personnel specified in section 18(e) of the Pipeline Inspection, Protection, Enforcement, and Safety Act of 2006 (120 Stat. 3498); and

(2) in preparing the report under subsection (a), the Secretary finds that additional pipeline inspection and enforcement personnel are necessary.

Pipeline Safety, Regulatory Certainty, and Job Creation Act of 2011
Section-By-Section Summary

Issue	Pipeline Safety, Regulatory Certainty, and Job Creation Act of 2011
§ 2. Civil Penalties	Doubles existing penalty caps from $100,000 for each violation, with a max of $1,000,000 for a related series, to $200,000/$2,000,000 respectively. Strikes "ability to pay" from existing penalty considerations. Authorizes civil penalties for obstructing an investigation. Defines "obstructing." Clarifies administrative caps are not applicable to judicial proceedings. Establishes judicial review in Ct. of App
§ 3. Pipeline Damage Prevention (Grant Standards)	Establishes new standards for state one call programs to qualify for Federal grants, including participation by all underground facility operators and excavators, including government entities and effective enforcement, without any exemptions for State or local entities. These standards do not take effect for 2 years after enactment. Requires DOT to conduct a study of third-party damage and report to Congress within 2 years.
§ 4. Automatic and Remote-Controlled Shut- Off Valves	Requires DOT to issue within 2 years regulations requiring the use of automatic or remote-controlled shut-off valves on transmission pipelines constructed or entirely replaced after the date of the rule. Requires GAO to report to Congress within 1 year their review of operators' ability to respond to a release in an HCA, and a consideration of the cost/benefit of retrofitting existing lines with automatic or remote-controlled shut-off valves.
§ 5. Integrity Management (Expansion and Class Location Replacement)	Requires DOT to evaluate (1) whether IMP should be expanded beyond HCAs and (2) whether gas IMP should replace class locations. Must complete evaluation within 18 months. Must consider factors, including applying IMP repair criteria to areas outside HCAs. Results of the evaluation must be submitted to Congress within 2 years. Prohibits DOT from issuing regulations that expand IMP for 3 years unless DOT determines there is a risk to public safety or imminent hazard (as defined). After 3 years, DOT shall issue regulations expanding IMP and/or replacing class locations if appropriate. DOT may extend the 7-year reassessment interval by 6 months if the operator submits an explanation. Requires GAO to report within 2 years on: whether risk-based reassessment intervals are more effective than 7-year interval; numbers of anomalies found; and progress in implementing GAO report recommendations on IMP.

§ 6. Public Education and Awareness	Requires DOT to maintain and update as part of NPMS a map of all HCAs. Requires DOT within 1 year to promote greater awareness of NPMS to state and local responders. Requires DOT within 18 months to issue guidance to pipeline operators on providing system-specific information about their facility to emergency responders. Requires DOT to maintain a copy of operators' most recent oil facility response plans (under Part 194) and provide a copy to anyone who requests, but DOT may exclude certain sensitive information.
§ 7. Cast Iron Gas Pipelines	Requires DOT to conduct a survey by December 31, 2012, to determine the extent to which operators have a plan to manage and replace cast iron gas pipelines, the anticipated rate of replacement, and current progress. Thereafter, DOT must measure the progress of plan implementation every 2 years. Requires DOT to submit a status report to Congress by December 31, 2013.
§ 8. Leak Detection (Hazardous Liquid Lines)	Requires DOT within 1 year to submit to Congress an updated report on leak detection systems used by HL operators. Prohibits DOT from issuing regulations for 2 years unless there is a risk to public safety or imminent hazard (as defined). After that, DOT shall issue regulations requiring HL pipelines to use leak detection systems and establishing standards for such systems, if appropriate.
§ 9. Accident and Incident Notification	Requires DOT within 18 months to revise regulations to (1) establish time limits for telephonic reporting no later than 1 hour following "confirmed discovery"; (2) to require operators to revise their initial telephonic report after 48 hours if practicable; and (3) to review and revise, as necessary, procedures for operators and NRC to notify appropriate responders, including 911. Requires NRC to update the initial report instead of generating a new report.
§ 10. Transportation-related Onshore Facility Response Plan Compliance	Amends the Oil Pollution Act by authorizing DOT to assess civil penalties against pipeline operators who violate the oil pipeline facility response plan regulations (49 C.F.R. Part 194). Authorizes DOT to require operators of oil pipelines to submit information concerning their response plans and for DOT to enter and inspect their oil pipeline facilities.
§ 11. Pipeline Infrastructure Data Collection	Authorizes DOT to collect any other geospatial or technical data, including design and material specifications. Places disclosure of NPMS data under FOIA.
§ 12. Transportation-Related Oil Flow Lines	Authorizes DOT to collect geospatial and other data on "transportation-related oil flow lines." Defines transportation-related oil flow line as a pipeline transporting oil off the grounds of the well across areas not owned by the producer.

§ 13. Cost Recovery for Design Reviews	Authorizes DOT to require the proponent of certain pipeline project to reimburse the agency for expenses incurred in conducting facility design review. Projects subject to cost recovery are those with design and construction costs of at least $2.5 billion or that involve "new or novel technologies or design." Requires DOT within 1 year to issue guidance defining "new or novel technologies or design." Requires project proponent to notify DOT 120 days prior to construction. Requires DOT to provide comments on the project within 90 days of notification to the maximum extent practicable.
§ 14. Biofuel Pipelines	Defines "hazardous liquid" to include non-petroleum fuels, including biofuels that are flammable, toxic, corrosive or would be harmful to the environment if released in significant quantities.
§ 15. Carbon Dioxide Pipelines	Requires DOT to prescribe regulations for transporting carbon dioxide by pipeline in a gaseous state.
§ 16. Study of Transportation of Diluted Bitumen	Requires DOT to report to Congress within 18 months on existing hazardous liquid pipeline regulations, whether they are adequate for pipelines transporting diluted bitumen, and whether diluted bitumen increases the risk of a pipeline release.
§ 17. Study of Non-Petroleum Hazardous Liquids Transported By Pipeline	Authorizes DOT to analyze the extent to which pipelines are currently being used to transport non-petroleum hazardous liquids, such as chlorine, whether they are unregulated by States, and whether being unregulated presents risks to the public. DOT must make the results of the analysis available to Congress.
§ 18. Clarifications	Clarifies that operators of not just intrastate but also interstate pipelines must have plans for inspection and maintenance. Clarifies DOT's safety standards apply to any or all owners and operators.
§ 19. Maintenance of Effort	For FY12 and FY13, requires DOT to grant a waiver of the maintenance of effort clause if a State can demonstrate an inability to maintain or increase funding to its safety program due to economic hardship. For FY 2014, authorizes (but does not require) DOT to grant such a waiver.
§ 20. Administrative Enforcement Process	Requires DOT to promulgate regulations within 2 years that: specify enforcement hearings must be before a presiding official who does not engage in investigative or prosecutorial functions; implement a separation of functions between agency personnel involved with investigative and prosecutorial activities and those advising on findings and determinations; and prohibit ex-parte communications by parties to an investigation or hearing. Regulations must also specify that a person requesting a hearing may arrange for a transcript at their cost. Review of CAOs will be expedited. Judicial review is under the arbitrary and capricious standard.

§ 21. Gas and Hazardous Liquid Gathering Lines	Requires DOT within 2 years to review exemptions for all gas and HL gathering lines and to report to Congress recommendations to modify or revoke existing exemptions. Authorizes DOT to issue regulations subjecting offshore hazardous liquid gathering lines to the same standards as other hazardous liquid gathering lines. Such standards would not apply to production lines or flow lines.
§ 22. Excess Flow Valves	Requires DOT to issue within 2 years regulations requiring the use of excess flow valves, where economically and technically feasible, on new or entirely replaced distribution branch services, multi-family facilities, and small commercial facilities.
§ 23. Maximum Allowable Operating Pressure (Verification)	Requires DOT to establish regulations within 6 months that require operators to verify that their records for gas transmission lines in class 3 and 4 areas (and any other HCA) accurately reflect the pipelines' physical and operational characteristics and confirm the established maximum allowable operating pressure (MAOP) of those pipelines. Requires operators to report to DOT within 18 months if any records for such pipelines are not sufficient to confirm the established MAOP. Requires operators to report to DOT and the appropriate State agency within 5 working days any instance of exceeding MAOP on a gas transmission pipelines that exceeds the build-up allowed for operation of pressure-limiting or control devices. Mandates that DOT, after receiving a report of insufficient records or MAOP exceedance as specified above, require the pipeline operator to reconfirm MAOP expeditiously, and for DOT to determine any appropriate interim actions to maintain safety until MAOP is confirmed. Requires DOT within 18 months to issue regulations for conducting tests to confirm the strength of untested gas transmission pipelines located in HCAs if operating at a pressure greater than 30% SMYS.
§ 24. Limitation on Incorporation By Reference	Prohibits DOT, after 1 year, from incorporating by reference any document that is not made publicly available free of charge on an internet website.
§ 25. Training for State and Local Government Personnel	Authorizes DOT to provide training personnel at state-operated training facilities, and to receive reimbursement for DOT's expenses, including travel.
§ 26. Report on Minority-Owned, Woman-Owned, and Disadvantaged Businesses	Requires GAO to prepare and submit to Congress within 1 year a report on the levels and types of participation of minority-, woman-, and disadvantaged-business enterprises in the construction and operation of pipeline facilities.
§ 27. Report on Pipeline Projects (Permitting)	Requires GAO within 1 year to submit to Congress a comprehensive study on the process for obtaining federal and state permits to construct pipelines, including how long it takes to obtain such permits.

§ 28. Cover Over Buried Pipelines	Requires DOT within 1 year to perform a study of liquid pipeline accidents at water crossings of at least 100 feet to determine if depth of cover was a factor, determine the sufficiency of current depth of cover regulations, and develop any legislative recommendations.
§ 29. Seismicity	Requires pipeline operators to consider seismicity when identifying and evaluating all potential threats to gas and liquid pipelines.
§ 30. Tribal Consultation	Requires DOT within 1 year to develop and implement a protocol to provide technical assistance to Indian tribes for regulating pipelines that are under the jurisdiction of Indian tribes.
§ 31. Pipeline Inspection and Enforcement Needs (Personnel)	Requires DOT within 1 year to report on the total number of FTEs for pipeline inspection and enforcement, the number of such FTEs that are not presently filled and the reasons they are not filled, the actions being taken to fill the FTEs, and any additional resources needed. Authorizes DOT to increase the number of such FTEs by 10 in FY14 only if all the original FTEs are filled on or before 9/30/14.
§ 32. Authorization of Appropriations	Authorizes appropriations of approximately $91 million for each FY12-15 from user fees. In addition, authorizes appropriations of approximately $19 million for each FY12-15 from the Oil Spill Liability Trust Fund. Reauthorizes appropriations at current levels for grant programs related to emergency response training, one-call system improvements, and R&D. Requires at least 30% of funding for R&D to come from non-Federal sources. Authorizes $1.5 million per FY for state damage prevention program grants. Increases appropriation authorized for technical assistance to local communities from $1 million to $1.5 million per FY, and increases maximum grant from $50K to $100K. Prohibits such grants to be used for any type of advocacy for or against a pipeline construction or expansion project. Requires DOT every 5 years to prepare an R&D program plan and every 2 years to report to Congress on the status and results of the program. Requires DOT to consult with other federal agencies when preparing the program plan and in selection and prioritization of R&D projects.

AUTHENTICATED
U.S. GOVERNMENT
INFORMATION
GPO

H. R. 2845

One Hundred Twelfth Congress of the United States of America

AT THE FIRST SESSION

Begun and held at the City of Washington on Wednesday, the fifth day of January, two thousand and eleven

An Act

To amend title 49, United States Code, to provide for enhanced safety and environmental protection in pipeline transportation, to provide for enhanced reliability in the transportation of the Nation's energy products by pipeline, and for other purposes.

Be it enacted by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled,

SECTION 1. SHORT TITLE; AMENDMENT OF TITLE 49, UNITED STATES CODE; DEFINITIONS; TABLE OF CONTENTS.

(a) SHORT TITLE.—This Act may be cited as the "Pipeline Safety, Regulatory Certainty, and Job Creation Act of 2011".

(b) AMENDMENT OF TITLE 49, UNITED STATES CODE.—Except as otherwise expressly provided, whenever in this Act an amendment or repeal is expressed in terms of an amendment to, or a repeal of, a section or other provision, the reference shall be considered to be made to a section or other provision of title 49, United States Code.

(c) DEFINITIONS.—

(1) APPLICABILITY OF CHAPTER 601 DEFINITIONS.—In this Act, any term defined in chapter 601 of title 49, United States Code, has the meaning given that term in that chapter.

(2) HIGH-CONSEQUENCE AREA.—In this Act, the term "high-consequence area" means an area described in section 60109(a) of title 49, United States Code.

(d) TABLE OF CONTENTS.—The table of contents for this Act is as follows:

Sec. 1. Short title; amendment of title 49, United States Code; definitions; table of contents.
Sec. 2. Civil penalties.
Sec. 3. Pipeline damage prevention.
Sec. 4. Automatic and remote-controlled shut-off valves.
Sec. 5. Integrity management.
Sec. 6. Public education and awareness.
Sec. 7. Cast iron gas pipelines.
Sec. 8. Leak detection.
Sec. 9. Accident and incident notification.
Sec. 10. Transportation-related onshore facility response plan compliance.
Sec. 11. Pipeline infrastructure data collection.
Sec. 12. Transportation-related oil flow lines.
Sec. 13. Cost recovery for design reviews.
Sec. 14. Biofuel pipelines.
Sec. 15. Carbon dioxide pipelines.
Sec. 16. Study of transportation of diluted bitumen.
Sec. 17. Study of nonpetroleum hazardous liquids transported by pipeline.
Sec. 18. Clarifications.
Sec. 19. Maintenance of effort.
Sec. 20. Administrative enforcement process.
Sec. 21. Gas and hazardous liquid gathering lines.

Sec. 22. Excess flow valves.
Sec. 23. Maximum allowable operating pressure.
Sec. 24. Limitation on incorporation of documents by reference.
Sec. 25. Pipeline safety training for State and local government personnel.
Sec. 26. Report on minority-owned, woman-owned, and disadvantaged businesses.
Sec. 27. Report on pipeline projects.
Sec. 28. Cover over buried pipelines.
Sec. 29. Seismicity.
Sec. 30. Tribal consultation for pipeline projects.
Sec. 31. Pipeline inspection and enforcement needs.
Sec. 32. Authorization of appropriations.

SEC. 2. CIVIL PENALTIES.

(a) GENERAL PENALTIES; PENALTY CONSIDERATIONS.—Section 60122 is amended—

(1) in subsection (a)(1)—

(A) in the first sentence by striking "$100,000" and inserting "$200,000"; and

(B) in the last sentence by striking "$1,000,000" and inserting "$2,000,000"; and

(2) in subsection (b)(1)(B) by striking "the ability to pay,".

(b) OPERATOR ASSISTANCE IN INVESTIGATIONS.—Section 60118(e) is amended to read as follows:

"(e) OPERATOR ASSISTANCE IN INVESTIGATIONS.—

"(1) ASSISTANCE AND ACCESS.—If the Secretary or the National Transportation Safety Board investigates an accident or incident involving a pipeline facility, the operator of the facility shall—

"(A) make available to the Secretary or the Board all records and information that in any way pertain to the accident or incident, including integrity management plans and test results; and

"(B) afford all reasonable assistance in the investigation of the accident or incident.

"(2) OPERATOR ASSISTANCE IN INVESTIGATIONS.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may impose a civil penalty under section 60122 on a person who obstructs or prevents the Secretary from carrying out inspections or investigations under this chapter.

"(B) OBSTRUCTS DEFINED.—

"(i) IN GENERAL.—In this paragraph, the term 'obstructs' includes actions that were known, or reasonably should have been known, to prevent, hinder, or impede an investigation without good cause.

"(ii) GOOD CAUSE.—In clause (i), the term 'good cause' may include actions such as restricting access to facilities that are not secure or safe for nonpipeline personnel or visitors.".

(c) ADMINISTRATIVE PENALTY CAPS INAPPLICABLE.—Section 60120(a)(1) is amended by adding at the end the following: "The maximum amount of civil penalties for administrative enforcement actions under section 60122 shall not apply to enforcement actions under this section.".

(d) JUDICIAL REVIEW OF ADMINISTRATIVE ENFORCEMENT ORDERS.—Section 60119(a) is amended—

(1) in the subsection heading by striking "AND WAIVER ORDERS" and inserting ", ORDERS, AND OTHER FINAL AGENCY ACTIONS"; and

(2) by striking "about an application for a waiver under section 60118(c) or (d) of this title" and inserting "under this chapter".

SEC. 3. PIPELINE DAMAGE PREVENTION.

(a) MINIMUM STANDARDS FOR STATE ONE-CALL NOTIFICATION PROGRAMS.—Section 6103(a) is amended to read as follows:

"(a) MINIMUM STANDARDS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—In order to qualify for a grant under section 6106, a State one-call notification program, at a minimum, shall provide for—

"(A) appropriate participation by all underground facility operators, including all government operators;

"(B) appropriate participation by all excavators, including all government and contract excavators; and

"(C) flexible and effective enforcement under State law with respect to participation in, and use of, one-call notification systems.

"(2) EXEMPTIONS PROHIBITED.—In order to qualify for a grant under section 6106, a State one-call notification program may not exempt municipalities, State agencies, or their contractors from the one-call notification system requirements of the program.".

(b) STATE DAMAGE PREVENTION PROGRAMS.—Section 60134(a) is amended—

(1) in paragraph (1) by striking "and" after the semicolon;

(2) in paragraph (2)(B) by striking "(b)." and inserting "(b); and"; and

(3) by adding at the end the following:

"(3) does not provide any exemptions to municipalities, State agencies, or their contractors from the one-call notification system requirements of the program.".

(c) EFFECTIVE DATE.—The amendments made by this section shall take effect 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act.

(d) EXCAVATION DAMAGE.—

(1) STUDY.—The Secretary of Transportation shall conduct a study on the impact of excavation damage on pipeline safety.

(2) CONTENTS.—The study shall include—

(A) an analysis of the frequency and severity of different types of excavation damage incidents;

(B) an analysis of exemptions to the one-call notification system requirements in each State;

(C) a comparison of exemptions to the one-call notification system requirements in each State to the types of excavation damage incidents in that State; and

(D) an analysis of the potential safety benefits and adverse consequences of eliminating all exemptions for mechanized excavation from State one-call notification systems.

(3) REPORT.—Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report on the results of the study.

SEC. 4. AUTOMATIC AND REMOTE-CONTROLLED SHUT-OFF VALVES.

Section 60102 is amended—

(1) by striking subsection (j)(3); and

(2) by adding at the end the following:

"(n) AUTOMATIC AND REMOTE-CONTROLLED SHUT-OFF VALVES FOR NEW TRANSMISSION PIPELINES.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this subsection, and after considering the factors specified in subsection (b)(2), the Secretary, if appropriate, shall require by regulation the use of automatic or remote-controlled shut-off valves, or equivalent technology, where economically, technically, and operationally feasible on transmission pipeline facilities constructed or entirely replaced after the date on which the Secretary issues the final rule containing such requirement.

"(2) HIGH-CONSEQUENCE AREA STUDY.—

"(A) STUDY.—The Comptroller General of the United States shall conduct a study on the ability of transmission pipeline facility operators to respond to a hazardous liquid or gas release from a pipeline segment located in a high-consequence area.

"(B) CONSIDERATIONS.—In conducting the study, the Comptroller General shall consider the swiftness of leak detection and pipeline shutdown capabilities, the location of the nearest response personnel, and the costs, risks, and benefits of installing automatic and remote-controlled shut-off valves.

"(C) REPORT.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this subsection, the Comptroller General shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report on the results of the study.".

SEC. 5. INTEGRITY MANAGEMENT.

(a) EVALUATION.—Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall evaluate—

(1) whether integrity management system requirements, or elements thereof, should be expanded beyond high-consequence areas; and

(2) with respect to gas transmission pipeline facilities, whether applying integrity management program requirements, or elements thereof, to additional areas would mitigate the need for class location requirements.

(b) FACTORS.—In conducting the evaluation under subsection (a), the Secretary shall consider, at a minimum, the following:

(1) The continuing priority to enhance protections for public safety.

(2) The continuing importance of reducing risk in high-consequence areas.

(3) The incremental costs of applying integrity management standards to pipelines outside of high-consequence areas where operators are already conducting assessments beyond what is required under chapter 601 of title 49, United States Code.

(4) The need to undertake integrity management assessments and repairs in a manner that is achievable and sustainable, and that does not disrupt pipeline service.

(5) The options for phasing in the extension of integrity management requirements beyond high-consequence areas, including the most effective and efficient options for decreasing risks to an increasing number of people living or working in proximity to pipeline facilities.

(6) The appropriateness of applying repair criteria, such as pressure reductions and special requirements for scheduling remediation, to areas that are not high-consequence areas.

(c) REPORT.—Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report, based on the evaluation conducted under subsection (a), containing the Secretary's analysis and findings regarding—

(1) expansion of integrity management requirements, or elements thereof, beyond high-consequence areas; and

(2) with respect to gas transmission pipeline facilities, whether applying the integrity management program requirements, or elements thereof, to additional areas would mitigate the need for class location requirements.

(d) DATA REPORTING.—The Secretary shall collect any relevant data necessary to complete the evaluation required by subsection (a).

(e) TECHNICAL CORRECTION.—Section 60109(c)(3)(B) is amended to read as follows:

"(B) Subject to paragraph (5), periodic reassessments of the facility, at a minimum of once every 7 calendar years, using methods described in subparagraph (A). The Secretary may extend such deadline for an additional 6 months if the operator submits written notice to the Secretary with sufficient justification of the need for the extension.".

(f) RULEMAKING REQUIREMENTS.—

(1) REVIEW PERIOD DEFINED.—In this subsection, the term "review period" means the period beginning on the date of enactment of this Act and ending on the earlier of—

(A) the date that is 1 year after the date of completion of the report under subsection (c); or

(B) the date that is 3 years after the date of enactment of this Act.

(2) CONGRESSIONAL AUTHORITY.—In order to provide Congress the necessary time to review the results of the report required by subsection (c) and implement appropriate recommendations, the Secretary shall not, during the review period, issue final regulations described in paragraph (3)(B).

(3) STANDARDS.—

(A) FINDINGS.—As soon as practicable following the review period, the Secretary shall issue final regulations described in subparagraph (B), if the Secretary finds, in the report required under subsection (c), that—

(i) integrity management system requirements, or elements thereof, should be expanded beyond high-consequence areas; and

(ii) with respect to gas transmission pipeline facilities, applying integrity management program requirements, or elements thereof, to additional areas would mitigate the need for class location requirements.

(B) REGULATIONS.—Regulations issued by the Secretary under subparagraph (A), if any, shall—

(i) expand integrity management system requirements, or elements thereof, beyond high-consequence areas; and

(ii) remove redundant class location requirements for gas transmission pipeline facilities that are regulated under an integrity management program adopted and implemented under section 60109(c)(2) of title 49, United States Code.

(4) SAVINGS CLAUSE.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any other provision of this subsection, the Secretary, during the review period, may issue final regulations described in paragraph (3)(B), if the Secretary determines that a condition that poses a risk to public safety, property, or the environment is present or an imminent hazard exists and that the regulations will address the risk or hazard.

(B) IMMINENT HAZARD DEFINED.—In subparagraph (A), the term "imminent hazard" means the existence of a condition related to pipelines or pipeline operations that presents a substantial likelihood that death, serious illness, severe personal injury, or substantial endangerment to health, property, or the environment may occur.

(g) REPORT TO CONGRESS ON RISK-BASED PIPELINE REASSESSMENT INTERVALS.—Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act, the Comptroller General of the United States shall evaluate—

(1) whether risk-based reassessment intervals are a more effective alternative for managing risks to pipelines in high-consequence areas once baseline assessments are complete when compared to the reassessment interval specified in section 60109(c)(3)(B) of title 49, United States Code;

(2) the number of anomalies found in baseline assessments required under section 60109(c)(3)(A) of title 49, United States Code, as compared to the number of anomalies found in reassessments required under section 60109(c)(3)(B) of such title; and

(3) the progress made in implementing the recommendations in GAO Report 06–945 and the current relevance of those recommendations that have not been implemented.

SEC. 6. PUBLIC EDUCATION AND AWARENESS.

(a) NATIONAL PIPELINE MAPPING SYSTEM.—Section 60132 is amended by adding at the end the following:

"(d) MAP OF HIGH-CONSEQUENCE AREAS.—The Secretary shall—

"(1) maintain, as part of the National Pipeline Mapping System, a map of designated high-consequence areas (as described in section 60109(a)) in which pipelines are required to meet integrity management program regulations, excluding any proprietary or sensitive security information; and

"(2) update the map biennially.

"(e) PROGRAM TO PROMOTE AWARENESS OF NATIONAL PIPELINE MAPPING SYSTEM.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this subsection, the Secretary shall develop and implement a program promoting greater awareness of the existence of the National Pipeline Mapping System to State and local emergency responders and other interested parties. The program shall include guidance on how to use the National Pipeline Mapping System to locate pipelines in communities and local jurisdictions.".

(b) INFORMATION TO EMERGENCY RESPONSE AGENCIES.—

(1) GUIDANCE.—Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary shall issue guidance to owners and operators of pipeline facilities on the importance of providing system-specific information about their pipeline facilities to emergency response agencies of the communities and jurisdictions in which those facilities are located.

(2) CONSULTATION.—Before issuing guidance under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall consult with owners and operators of pipeline facilities to determine the extent to which the owners and operators are already providing system-specific information about their pipeline facilities to emergency response agencies.

(c) RESPONSE PLANS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Chapter 601 is amended by adding at the end the following:

"§ 60138. Response plans

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall—

"(1) maintain on file a copy of the most recent response plan (as defined in part 194 of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations) prepared by an owner or operator of a pipeline facility; and

"(2) provide upon written request to a person a copy of the plan, which may exclude, as the Secretary determines appropriate—

"(A) proprietary information;

"(B) security-sensitive information, including information described in section 1520.5(a) of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations;

"(C) specific response resources and tactical resource deployment plans; and

"(D) the specific amount and location of worst case discharges (as defined in part 194 of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations), including the process by which an owner or operator determines the worst case discharge.

"(b) RELATIONSHIP TO FOIA.—Nothing in this section may be construed to require disclosure of information or records that are exempt from disclosure under section 552 of title 5.".

(2) CLERICAL AMENDMENT.—The analysis for chapter 601 is amended by inserting after the item relating to section 60137 the following:

"60138. Response plans.".

SEC. 7. CAST IRON GAS PIPELINES.

(a) FOLLOW-UP SURVEYS.—Section 60108(d) is amended by adding at the end the following:

"(4) Not later than December 31, 2012, and every 2 years thereafter, the Secretary shall conduct a follow-up survey to measure the progress that owners and operators of pipeline facilities

have made in adopting and implementing their plans for the safe management and replacement of cast iron gas pipelines.”.

(b) STATUS REPORT.—Not later than December 31, 2013, the Secretary of Transportation shall transmit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report that—

(1) identifies the total mileage of cast iron gas pipelines in the United States; and

(2) evaluates the progress that owners and operators of pipeline facilities have made in implementing their plans for the safe management and replacement of cast iron gas pipelines.

SEC. 8. LEAK DETECTION.

(a) LEAK DETECTION REPORT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives a report on leak detection systems utilized by operators of hazardous liquid pipeline facilities and transportation-related flow lines.

(2) CONTENTS.—The report shall include—

(A) an analysis of the technical limitations of current leak detection systems, including the ability of the systems to detect ruptures and small leaks that are ongoing or intermittent, and what can be done to foster development of better technologies; and

(B) an analysis of the practicability of establishing technically, operationally, and economically feasible standards for the capability of such systems to detect leaks, and the safety benefits and adverse consequences of requiring operators to use leak detection systems.

(b) RULEMAKING REQUIREMENTS.—

(1) REVIEW PERIOD DEFINED.—In this subsection, the term “review period” means the period beginning on the date of enactment of this Act and ending on the earlier of—

(A) the date that is 1 year after the date of completion of the report under subsection (a); or

(B) the date that is 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act.

(2) CONGRESSIONAL AUTHORITY.—In order to provide Congress the necessary time to review the results of the report required by subsection (a) and implement appropriate recommendations, the Secretary, during the review period, shall not issue final regulations described in paragraph (3).

(3) STANDARDS.—As soon as practicable following the review period, if the report required by subsection (a) finds that it is practicable to establish technically, operationally, and economically feasible standards for the capability of leak detection systems to detect leaks, the Secretary shall issue final regulations that—

(A) require operators of hazardous liquid pipeline facilities to use leak detection systems where practicable; and

(B) establish technically, operationally, and economically feasible standards for the capability of such systems to detect leaks.

(4) SAVINGS CLAUSE.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any other provision of this subsection, the Secretary, during the review period, may issue final regulations described in paragraph (3) if the Secretary determines that a condition that poses a risk to public safety, property, or the environment is present or an imminent hazard exists and that the regulations will address the risk or hazard.

(B) IMMINENT HAZARD DEFINED.—In subparagraph (A), the term "imminent hazard" means the existence of a condition related to pipelines or pipeline operations that presents a substantial likelihood that death, serious illness, severe personal injury, or substantial endangerment to health, property, or the environment may occur.

SEC. 9. ACCIDENT AND INCIDENT NOTIFICATION.

(a) REVISION OF REGULATIONS.—Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall revise regulations issued under sections 191.5 and 195.52 of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, to establish specific time limits for telephonic or electronic notice of accidents and incidents involving pipeline facilities to the Secretary and the National Response Center.

(b) MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS.—In revising the regulations, the Secretary, at a minimum, shall—

(1) establish time limits for telephonic or electronic notification of an accident or incident to require such notification at the earliest practicable moment following confirmed discovery of an accident or incident and not later than 1 hour following the time of such confirmed discovery;

(2) review procedures for owners and operators of pipeline facilities and the National Response Center to provide thorough and coordinated notification to all relevant State and local emergency response officials, including 911 emergency call centers, for the jurisdictions in which those pipeline facilities are located in the event of an accident or incident, and revise such procedures as appropriate; and

(3) require such owners and operators to revise their initial telephonic or electronic notice to the Secretary and the National Response Center with an estimate of the amount of the product released, an estimate of the number of fatalities and injuries, if any, and any other information determined appropriate by the Secretary within 48 hours of the accident or incident, to the extent practicable.

(c) UPDATING OF REPORTS.—After receiving revisions described in subsection (b)(3), the National Response Center shall update the initial report on an accident or incident instead of generating a new report.

SEC. 10. TRANSPORTATION-RELATED ONSHORE FACILITY RESPONSE PLAN COMPLIANCE.

(a) IN GENERAL.—Subparagraphs (A) and (B) of section 311(m)(2) of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1321(m)(2)) are each amended by striking "Administrator or" and inserting "Administrator, the Secretary of Transportation, or".

(b) CONFORMING AMENDMENT.—Section 311(b)(6)(A) of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1321(b)(6)(A)) is amended by striking "operating or" and inserting "operating, the Secretary of Transportation, or".

SEC. 11. PIPELINE INFRASTRUCTURE DATA COLLECTION.

(a) IN GENERAL.—Section 60132(a) is amended by adding at the end the following:

"(4) Any other geospatial or technical data, including design and material specifications, that the Secretary determines are necessary to carry out the purposes of this section. The Secretary shall give reasonable notice to operators that the data are being requested.".

(b) DISCLOSURE LIMITED TO FOIA REQUIREMENTS.—Section 60132, as amended by this Act, is further amended by adding at the end the following:

"(f) PUBLIC DISCLOSURE LIMITED.—The Secretary may not disclose information collected pursuant to subsection (a) except to the extent permitted by section 552 of title 5.".

SEC. 12. TRANSPORTATION-RELATED OIL FLOW LINES.

Section 60102, as amended by this Act, is further amended by adding at the end the following:

"(o) TRANSPORTATION-RELATED OIL FLOW LINES.—

"(1) DATA COLLECTION.—The Secretary may collect geospatial or technical data on transportation-related oil flow lines, including unregulated transportation-related oil flow lines.

"(2) TRANSPORTATION-RELATED OIL FLOW LINE DEFINED.—In this subsection, the term 'transportation-related oil flow line' means a pipeline transporting oil off of the grounds of the well where it originated and across areas not owned by the producer, regardless of the extent to which the oil has been processed, if at all.

"(3) LIMITATION.—Nothing in this subsection authorizes the Secretary to prescribe standards for the movement of oil through production, refining, or manufacturing facilities or through oil production flow lines located on the grounds of wells.".

SEC. 13. COST RECOVERY FOR DESIGN REVIEWS.

(a) IN GENERAL.—Section 60117(n) is amended to read as follows:

"(n) COST RECOVERY FOR DESIGN REVIEWS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—

"(A) REVIEW COSTS.—For any project described in subparagraph (B), if the Secretary conducts facility design safety reviews in connection with a proposal to construct, expand, or operate a gas or hazardous liquid pipeline facility or liquefied natural gas pipeline facility, including construction inspections and oversight, the Secretary may require the person proposing the project to pay the costs incurred by the Secretary relating to such reviews. If the Secretary exercises the cost recovery authority described in this paragraph, the Secretary shall prescribe a fee structure and assessment methodology that is based on the costs of providing these reviews and shall prescribe procedures to collect fees under this paragraph. The Secretary

may not collect design safety review fees under this paragraph and section 60301 for the same design safety review.

"(B) PROJECTS TO WHICH APPLICABLE.—Subparagraph (A) applies to any project that—

"(i) has design and construction costs totaling at least $2,500,000,000, as periodically adjusted by the Secretary to take into account increases in the Consumer Price Index for all-urban consumers published by the Department of Labor, based on—

"(I) the cost estimate provided to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission in an application for a certificate of public convenience and necessity for a gas pipeline facility or an application for authorization for a liquefied natural gas pipeline facility; or

"(II) a good faith estimate developed by the person proposing a hazardous liquid pipeline facility and submitted to the Secretary; or

"(ii) uses new or novel technologies or design, as determined by the Secretary.

"(2) NOTIFICATION.—For any new pipeline facility construction project in which the Secretary will conduct design reviews, the person proposing the project shall notify the Secretary and provide the design specifications, construction plans and procedures, and related materials at least 120 days prior to the commencement of construction. To the maximum extent practicable, not later than 90 days after receiving such design specifications, construction plans and procedures, and related materials, the Secretary shall provide written comments, feedback, and guidance on the project.

"(3) PIPELINE SAFETY DESIGN REVIEW FUND.—

"(A) ESTABLISHMENT.—There is established a Pipeline Safety Design Review Fund in the Treasury of the United States.

"(B) DEPOSITS.—The Secretary shall deposit funds paid under this subsection into the Fund.

"(C) USE.—Amounts in the Fund shall be available to the Secretary, in amounts specified in appropriations Acts, to offset the costs of conducting facility design safety reviews under this subsection.

"(4) NO ADDITIONAL PERMITTING AUTHORITY.—Nothing in this subsection may be construed as authorizing the Secretary to require a person to obtain a permit before beginning design and construction in connection with a project described in paragraph (1)(B).".

(b) GUIDANCE.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall issue guidance to clarify the meaning of the term "new or novel technologies or design" as used in section 60117(n)(1)(B)(ii) of title 49, United States Code, as amended by subsection (a) of this section.

SEC. 14. BIOFUEL PIPELINES.

Section 60101(a)(4) is amended—

(1) in subparagraph (A) by striking "and" after the semicolon;

(2) by redesignating subparagraph (B) as subparagraph (C); and

(3) by inserting after subparagraph (A) the following:

"(B) nonpetroleum fuel, including biofuel, that is flammable, toxic, or corrosive or would be harmful to the environment if released in significant quantities; and".

SEC. 15. CARBON DIOXIDE PIPELINES.

Section 60102(i) is amended—

(1) by striking "The Secretary shall regulate" and inserting the following:

"(1) TRANSPORTATION IN LIQUID STATE.—The Secretary shall regulate".

(2) by adding at the end the following new paragraph:

"(2) TRANSPORTATION IN GASEOUS STATE.—

"(A) MINIMUM SAFETY STANDARDS.—The Secretary shall prescribe minimum safety standards for the transportation of carbon dioxide by pipeline in a gaseous state.

"(B) CONSIDERATIONS.—In establishing the standards, the Secretary shall consider whether applying the minimum safety standards in part 195 of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on the date of enactment of this paragraph, for the transportation of carbon dioxide in a liquid state to the transportation of carbon dioxide in a gaseous state would ensure safety.

"(3) LIMITATION ON STATUTORY CONSTRUCTION.—Nothing in this subsection authorizes the Secretary to regulate piping or equipment used in the production, extraction, recovery, lifting, stabilization, separation, or treatment of carbon dioxide or the preparation of carbon dioxide for transportation by pipeline at production, refining, or manufacturing facilities.".

SEC. 16. STUDY OF TRANSPORTATION OF DILUTED BITUMEN.

Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall complete a comprehensive review of hazardous liquid pipeline facility regulations to determine whether the regulations are sufficient to regulate pipeline facilities used for the transportation of diluted bitumen. In conducting the review, the Secretary shall conduct an analysis of whether any increase in the risk of a release exists for pipeline facilities transporting diluted bitumen. The Secretary shall report the results of the review to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives.

SEC. 17. STUDY OF NONPETROLEUM HAZARDOUS LIQUIDS TRANSPORTED BY PIPELINE.

The Secretary of Transportation may conduct an analysis of the transportation of nonpetroleum hazardous liquids by pipeline facility for the purpose of identifying the extent to which pipeline facilities are currently being used to transport nonpetroleum hazardous liquids, such as chlorine, from chemical production facilities across land areas not owned by the producer that are accessible to the public. The analysis should identify the extent to which the safety of the pipeline facilities is unregulated by the States and evaluate whether the transportation of such chemicals by pipeline facility across areas accessible to the public would present significant risks to public safety, property, or the environment in the absence of regulation. The results of the analysis shall be

made available to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives.

SEC. 18. CLARIFICATIONS.

(a) INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE.—Section 60108(a)(1) is amended by striking "an intrastate" and inserting "a".

(b) OWNER AND OPERATOR.—Section 60102(a)(2)(A) is amended by striking "owners and operators" and inserting "any or all of the owners or operators".

SEC. 19. MAINTENANCE OF EFFORT.

Section 60107(b) is amended by adding at the end the following: "For each of fiscal years 2012 and 2013, the Secretary shall grant such a waiver to a State if the State can demonstrate an inability to maintain or increase the required funding share of its safety program at or above the level required by this subsection due to economic hardship in that State. For fiscal year 2014, and each fiscal year thereafter, the Secretary may grant such a waiver to a State if the State can make the demonstration described in the preceding sentence.".

SEC. 20. ADMINISTRATIVE ENFORCEMENT PROCESS.

(a) ISSUANCE OF REGULATIONS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall issue regulations—

(A) requiring hearings under sections 60112, 60117, 60118, and 60122 of title 49, United States Code, to be convened before a presiding official;

(B) providing the opportunity for any person requesting a hearing under section 60112, 60117, 60118, or 60122 of such title to arrange for a transcript of the hearing, at the expense of the requesting person;

(C) ensuring expedited review of any order issued pursuant to section 60112(e) of such title;

(D) implementing a separation of functions between personnel involved with the investigation and prosecution of an enforcement case and advising the Secretary on findings and determinations; and

(E) prohibiting ex-parte communication relevant to the question to be decided in such a case by parties to an investigation or hearing.

(2) PRESIDING OFFICIAL.—The regulations issued under this subsection shall—

(A) define the term "presiding official" to mean the person who conducts any hearing relating to civil penalty assessments, compliance orders, safety orders, or corrective action orders; and

(B) require that the presiding official be an attorney on the staff of the Deputy Chief Counsel of the Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration that is not engaged in investigative or prosecutorial functions, including the preparation of notices of probable violations, notices relating to civil penalty assessments, notices relating to compliance, or notices of proposed corrective actions.

(3) EXPEDITED REVIEW.—The regulations issued under this subsection shall define the term "expedited review" for the purposes of paragraph (1)(C).

(b) STANDARDS OF JUDICIAL REVIEW.—Section 60119(a) is amended by adding at the end the following new paragraph:

"(3) A judicial review of agency action under this section shall apply the standards of review established in section 706 of title 5.".

SEC. 21. GAS AND HAZARDOUS LIQUID GATHERING LINES.

(a) REVIEW.—The Secretary of Transportation shall conduct a review of existing Federal and State regulations for gas and hazardous liquid gathering lines located onshore and offshore in the United States, including within the inlets of the Gulf of Mexico.

(b) REPORT TO CONGRESS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report on the results of the review.

(2) RECOMMENDATIONS.—The report shall include the Secretary's recommendations with respect to—

(A) the sufficiency of existing Federal and State laws and regulations to ensure the safety of gas and hazardous liquid gathering lines;

(B) the economic impacts, technical practicability, and challenges of applying existing Federal regulations to gathering lines that are not currently subject to Federal regulation when compared to the public safety benefits; and

(C) subject to a risk-based assessment, the need to modify or revoke existing exemptions from Federal regulation for gas and hazardous liquid gathering lines.

(c) OFFSHORE GATHERING LINES.—Section 60108(c) is amended by adding at the end the following:

"(8) If, after reviewing existing Federal and State regulations for hazardous liquid gathering lines located offshore in the United States, including within the inlets of the Gulf of Mexico, the Secretary determines it is appropriate, the Secretary shall issue regulations, after notice and an opportunity for a hearing, subjecting offshore hazardous liquid gathering lines and hazardous liquid gathering lines located within the inlets of the Gulf of Mexico to the same standards and regulations as other hazardous liquid gathering lines. The regulations issued under this paragraph shall not apply to production pipelines or flow lines.".

SEC. 22. EXCESS FLOW VALVES.

Section 60109(e)(3) is amended—

(1) by redesignating subparagraph (B) as subparagraph (C); and

(2) by inserting after subparagraph (A) the following:

"(B) DISTRIBUTION BRANCH SERVICES, MULTIFAMILY FACILITIES, AND SMALL COMMERCIAL FACILITIES.—Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of the Pipeline Safety, Regulatory Certainty, and Job Creation Act of 2011, and after issuing a final report on the evaluation of the National Transportation Safety Board's recommendation on excess flow valves in applications other than service

lines serving one single family residence, the Secretary, if appropriate, shall by regulation require the use of excess flow valves, or equivalent technology, where economically, technically, and operationally feasible on new or entirely replaced distribution branch services, multifamily facilities, and small commercial facilities.".

SEC. 23. MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE OPERATING PRESSURE.

(a) IN GENERAL.—Chapter 601, as amended by this Act, is further amended by adding at the end the following:

"§ 60139. Maximum allowable operating pressure

"(a) VERIFICATION OF RECORDS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary of Transportation shall require each owner or operator of a pipeline facility to conduct, not later than 6 months after the date of enactment of this section, a verification of the records of the owner or operator relating to the interstate and intrastate gas transmission pipelines of the owner or operator in class 3 and class 4 locations and class 1 and class 2 high-consequence areas.

"(2) PURPOSE.—The purpose of the verification shall be to ensure that the records accurately reflect the physical and operational characteristics of the pipelines described in paragraph (1) and confirm the established maximum allowable operating pressure of the pipelines.

"(3) ELEMENTS.—The verification process under this subsection shall include such elements as the Secretary considers appropriate.

"(b) REPORTING.—

"(1) DOCUMENTATION OF CERTAIN PIPELINES.—Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this section, each owner or operator of a pipeline facility shall identify and submit to the Secretary documentation relating to each pipeline segment of the owner or operator described in subsection (a)(1) for which the records of the owner or operator are insufficient to confirm the established maximum allowable operating pressure of the segment.

"(2) EXCEEDANCES OF MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE OPERATING PRESSURE.—If there is an exceedance of the maximum allowable operating pressure with respect to a gas transmission pipeline of an owner or operator of a pipeline facility that exceeds the build-up allowed for operation of pressure-limiting or control devices, the owner or operator shall report the exceedance to the Secretary and appropriate State authorities on or before the 5th day following the date on which the exceedance occurs.

"(c) DETERMINATION OF MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE OPERATING PRESSURE.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—In the case of a transmission line of an owner or operator of a pipeline facility identified under subsection (b)(1), the Secretary shall—

"(A) require the owner or operator to reconfirm a maximum allowable operating pressure as expeditiously as economically feasible; and

"(B) determine what actions are appropriate for the pipeline owner or operator to take to maintain safety until a maximum allowable operating pressure is confirmed.

"(2) INTERIM ACTIONS.—In determining the actions for an owner or operator of a pipeline facility to take under paragraph (1)(B), the Secretary shall take into account potential consequences to public safety and the environment, potential impacts on pipeline system reliability and deliverability, and other factors, as appropriate.

"(d) TESTING REGULATIONS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this section, the Secretary shall issue regulations for conducting tests to confirm the material strength of previously untested natural gas transmission pipelines located in high-consequence areas and operating at a pressure greater than 30 percent of specified minimum yield strength.

"(2) CONSIDERATIONS.—In developing the regulations, the Secretary shall consider safety testing methodologies, including, at a minimum—

"(A) pressure testing; and

"(B) other alternative methods, including in-line inspections, determined by the Secretary to be of equal or greater effectiveness.

"(3) COMPLETION OF TESTING.—The Secretary, in consultation with the Chairman of the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission and State regulators, as appropriate, shall establish timeframes for the completion of such testing that take into account potential consequences to public safety and the environment and that minimize costs and service disruptions.

"(e) HIGH-CONSEQUENCE AREA DEFINED.—In this section, the term 'high-consequence area' means an area described in section 60109(a).".

(b) CLERICAL AMENDMENT.—The analysis for chapter 601 is amended by inserting after the item relating to section 60138 the following:

"60139. Maximum allowable operating pressure.".

SEC. 24. LIMITATION ON INCORPORATION OF DOCUMENTS BY REFERENCE.

Section 60102, as amended by this Act, is further amended by adding at the end the following:

"(p) LIMITATION ON INCORPORATION OF DOCUMENTS BY REFERENCE.—Beginning 1 year after the date of enactment of this subsection, the Secretary may not issue guidance or a regulation pursuant to this chapter that incorporates by reference any documents or portions thereof unless the documents or portions thereof are made available to the public, free of charge, on an Internet Web site.".

SEC. 25. PIPELINE SAFETY TRAINING FOR STATE AND LOCAL GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL.

(a) IN GENERAL.—To further the objectives of chapter 601 of title 49, United States Code, the Secretary of Transportation may provide the services of personnel from the Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration to provide training for State and local government personnel at a pipeline safety training facility that is established and operated by an agency or instrumentality of the United States, a unit of State or local government, or an educational institution.

(b) REIMBURSEMENTS FOR TRAINING EXPENDITURES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Secretary may require reimbursement from sources other than the Federal Government for all expenses incurred by the Secretary in providing training for State and local government personnel under subsection (a), including salaries, expenses, transportation for Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration personnel, and the cost of training materials.

(2) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—Amounts collected as reimbursement under paragraph (1) are authorized to be appropriated for the purposes set forth in chapter 601 of title 49, United States Code.

SEC. 26. REPORT ON MINORITY-OWNED, WOMAN-OWNED, AND DISADVANTAGED BUSINESSES.

Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act, the Comptroller General of the United States, based upon available information, shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives a comprehensive report assessing the levels and types of participation and methods of facilitating the participation of minority-owned business enterprises, woman-owned business enterprises, and disadvantaged business enterprises in the construction and operation of pipeline facilities in the United States.

SEC. 27. REPORT ON PIPELINE PROJECTS.

(a) STUDY.—The Comptroller General of the United States shall conduct a comprehensive study regarding the process for obtaining Federal and State permits for projects to construct pipeline facilities.

(b) EVALUATION.—In conducting the study, the Comptroller General shall evaluate how long it takes to issue permits for pipeline construction projects, the relationship between the States and the Federal Government in issuing such permits, and any recommendations from the States for improving the permitting process.

(c) CONSULTATION.—In conducting the study, the Comptroller General shall consult with the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate.

(d) REPORT.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act, the Comptroller General shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report on the results of the study.

SEC. 28. COVER OVER BURIED PIPELINES.

(a) IN GENERAL.—Chapter 601, as amended by this Act, is further amended by adding at the end the following:

"§ 60140. Cover over buried pipelines

"(a) HAZARDOUS LIQUID PIPELINE INCIDENTS INVOLVING BURIED PIPELINES.—

"(1) STUDY.—The Secretary of Transportation shall conduct a study of hazardous liquid pipeline incidents at crossings of inland bodies of water with a width of at least 100 feet

from high water mark to high water mark to determine if the depth of cover over the buried pipeline was a factor in any accidental release of hazardous liquids.

"(2) REPORT.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this section, the Secretary shall transmit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report on the results of the study.

"(b) ASSESSMENT OF CURRENT REQUIREMENTS FOR DEPTH OF COVER OVER BURIED PIPELINES.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—If, following completion of the study under subsection (a), the Secretary finds that the depth of cover over buried pipelines is a contributing factor in the accidental release of hazardous liquids from the pipelines, the Secretary, not later than 1 year after the date of completion of the study, shall review and determine the sufficiency of current requirements for the depth of cover over buried pipelines.

"(2) LEGISLATIVE RECOMMENDATIONS.—

"(A) DEVELOPMENT.—If the Secretary determines under paragraph (1) that the current requirements for the depth of cover over buried pipelines are insufficient, the Secretary shall develop legislative recommendations for improving the safety of buried pipelines at crossings of inland bodies of water with a width of at least 100 feet from high water mark to high water mark.

"(B) CONSIDERATION OF FACTORS.—In developing legislative recommendations under subparagraph (A), the Secretary shall consider the factors specified in section 60102(b)(2).

"(C) REPORT TO CONGRESS.—If the Secretary develops legislative recommendations under subparagraph (A), the Secretary shall submit to the committees referred to in subsection (a)(2) a report containing the legislative recommendations.".

(b) CLERICAL AMENDMENT.—The analysis for chapter 601 is amended by inserting after the item relating to section 60139 the following:

"60140. Cover over buried pipelines.".

SEC. 29. SEISMICITY.

In identifying and evaluating all potential threats to each pipeline segment pursuant to parts 192 and 195 of title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, an operator of a pipeline facility shall consider the seismicity of the area.

SEC. 30. TRIBAL CONSULTATION FOR PIPELINE PROJECTS.

Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary of Transportation shall develop and implement a protocol for consulting with Indian tribes to provide technical assistance for the regulation of pipelines that are under the jurisdiction of Indian tribes.

SEC. 31. PIPELINE INSPECTION AND ENFORCEMENT NEEDS.

(a) INSPECTION AND ENFORCEMENT NEEDS.—Not later than 12 months after the date of enactment of this Act, the Secretary

of Transportation shall submit to the Committee on Transportation and Infrastructure and the Committee on Energy and Commerce of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate a report that provides information on—

(1) the total number of full-time equivalent positions for pipeline inspection and enforcement personnel at the Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration;

(2) out of the total number of such positions, how many of the positions are not filled and the reasons why the positions are not filled;

(3) the actions the Administrator of the Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration is taking to fill the positions; and

(4) any additional inspection and enforcement resource needs of the Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration.

(b) STAFFING.—Subject to the availability of funds, the Secretary may increase the number of positions for pipeline inspection and enforcement personnel at the Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration by 10 full-time equivalent employees, if—

(1) on or before September 30, 2014, the Secretary fills the 135 full-time equivalent positions for pipeline inspection and enforcement personnel specified in section 18(e) of the Pipeline Inspection, Protection, Enforcement, and Safety Act of 2006 (120 Stat. 3498); and

(2) in preparing the report under subsection (a), the Secretary finds that additional pipeline inspection and enforcement personnel are necessary.

SEC. 32. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.

(a) GAS AND HAZARDOUS LIQUID.—Section 60125(a) is amended to read as follows:

"(a) GAS AND HAZARDOUS LIQUID.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—To carry out the provisions of this chapter related to gas and hazardous liquid and section 12 of the Pipeline Safety Improvement Act of 2002 (49 U.S.C. 60101 note; Public Law 107–355), there is authorized to be appropriated to the Department of Transportation for each of fiscal years 2012 through 2015, from fees collected under section 60301, $90,679,000, of which $4,746,000 is for carrying out such section 12 and $36,194,000 is for making grants.

"(2) TRUST FUND AMOUNTS.—In addition to the amounts authorized to be appropriated by paragraph (1), there is authorized to be appropriated for each of fiscal years 2012 through 2015 from the Oil Spill Liability Trust Fund to carry out the provisions of this chapter related to hazardous liquid and section 12 of the Pipeline Safety Improvement Act of 2002 (49 U.S.C. 60101 note; Public Law 107–355), $18,573,000, of which $2,174,000 is for carrying out such section 12 and $4,558,000 is for making grants.".

(b) EMERGENCY RESPONSE GRANTS.—Section 60125(b)(2) is amended by striking "2007 through 2010" and inserting "2012 through 2015".

(c) ONE-CALL NOTIFICATION PROGRAMS.—Section 6107 is amended—

(1) in subsection (a) by striking "2007 through 2010." and inserting "2012 through 2015.";

(2) in subsection (b) by striking "2007 through 2010." and inserting "2012 through 2015."; and

(3) by striking subsection (c).

(d) STATE DAMAGE PREVENTION PROGRAMS.—Section 60134 is amended by adding at the end the following:

"(i) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There is authorized to be appropriated to the Secretary to provide grants under this section $1,500,000 for each of fiscal years 2012 through 2015. Such funds shall remain available until expended.".

(e) COMMUNITY PIPELINE SAFETY INFORMATION GRANTS.—Section 60130 is amended—

(1) in subsection (a)(1) by striking "$50,000" and inserting "$100,000";

(2) in subsection (b)—

(A) by inserting "to grant recipients and their contractors" after "this section"; and

(B) by inserting ", for direct advocacy for or against a pipeline construction or expansion project," after "for lobbying"; and

(3) in subsection (d) by striking "$1,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 2003 through 2010" and inserting "$1,500,000 for each of fiscal years 2012 through 2015".

(f) PIPELINE TRANSPORTATION RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT.—Section 12 of the Pipeline Safety Improvement Act of 2002 (49 U.S.C. 60101 note) is amended—

(1) in subsection (d) by adding at the end the following:

"(3) ONGOING PIPELINE TRANSPORTATION RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—After the initial 5-year program plan has been carried out by the participating agencies, the Secretary of Transportation, in coordination with the Director of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, as appropriate, shall prepare a research and development program plan every 5 years thereafter and shall transmit a report to Congress on the status and results-to-date of implementation of the program every 2 years. The biennial report shall include a summary of updated research needs and priorities identified through the consultation requirements of paragraph (2).

"(B) CONSULTATION.—The Secretary shall comply with the consultation requirements of paragraph (2) when preparing the program plan and in the selection and prioritization of research and development projects.

"(C) FUNDING FROM NON-FEDERAL SOURCES.—The Secretary shall ensure at least 30 percent of the costs of program-wide research and development activities are carried out using non-Federal sources.".

(2) in subsection (f) by striking "2003 through 2006." and inserting "2012 through 2015.".

Speaker of the House of Representatives.

Vice President of the United States and President of the Senate.

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix B

Appendix B – Interstate Agent Agreement Form And Guidance Policy

Background

A more effective OPS Interstate Pipeline Oversight Program will employ a more collaborative work process between States and OPS which will benefit safety oversight and make more effective use of existing resources. This process will add emphasis on high policy priorities through new special emphasis initiatives and will clarify procedures for the purpose of a more nationally harmonized program. This policy document identifies options available, program prerequisites, and administrative considerations for qualified State agencies interested in entering the Program.

I. Agreement Options Available

OPS will provide State agencies participating in the pipeline safety program with opportunities to join in interstate pipeline oversight activities through interstate agent agreements or time-defined agreements.

- ***Existing Interstate Agent Agreements***
  OPS anticipates continuing existing interstate agents, but if federal inspection resources increase PHMSA may transition existing interstate agents to time defined agreements allowing a transition period to plan for program changes. ~~Beginning in 2002, OPS replaced the one- year agreement with a five-year long-term agreement to facilitate and improve State planning efforts.~~ States still need to develop annual work plans with the regional OPS office in support of the agreement.
- ***New Applications for Interstate Agents***
  OPS will consider applications for interstate agent agreements from qualified States interested in the Interstate Pipeline Oversight Program; however, it is current policy to enter into temporary interstate agreements for time defined projects as agreed upon by the State and OPS as opposed to long term formal agreements for new applicants~~.~~ The requirements for regional inspection activity are generally defined by the Region Director. The Program allows for the State agency to perform inspections of new construction, oversight of rehabilitation projects and integrity management programs, accident investigation, and standard inspections identified in the work plan, and also provides for participation in non-regulatory program initiatives. Non-regulatory program initiatives would include damage prevention, land use guidance, community education and technical assistance,

including mapping system briefings and emergency response planning support, and other special projects... All agents' programs would include state participation in all program elements.

- ***Time-defined Agreements***

States interested in participating in interstate pipeline oversight activities but not meeting all the criteria listed in Section II may apply for time-defined agreements. These agreements are established for specific, short-term projects and generally provide for State agency performance of new construction inspections, supervision of pipeline rehabilitation projects, and accident investigations of interstate operators. They may be issued on an annual basis, but do not require a formal work plan as for interstate agents. Although program administration requirements under Section III are specific to Interstate Agents, State agencies working under time-defined agreements are encouraged to comply with them whenever practicable.

II. Anticipated Criteria for Participation as an Interstate Agent

Eligibility requirements remain the same as in past years for current and previous interstate agents.

- ***Intrastate Coverage First Priority***
  States must be certified and take full intrastate jurisdiction within the natural gas or hazardous liquid program, as applicable, with adequate and trained staff.
- ***No Impact on Intrastate Performance***
  OPS continues to stress that States focus resources on intrastate facilities as a first priority before apportioning any resources to interstate facilities. Intrastate program participation should not be adversely affected by oversight responsibilities related to interstate pipeline transportation. To qualify for interstate agency status, State programs need to meet and maintain a prerequisite minimum two-year average performance score of 95 in their intrastate program. Staffing level and inspection person-days available for the intrastate program should not be adversely affected.
- ***Damage Prevention and Outreach Activities in Agreement*** *(Compliance-plus)*
  Participation in the Interstate Program may require a commitment to projects beyond standard compliance areas. These include damage prevention and continued efforts to improve communication with local authorities. Additionally, States should have elements in their current programs that promote preparedness and risk prevention activities for communities to live safely with pipelines.
- ***Maintaining Interstate Agent Status***
  Participating State agencies must meet the terms of the agreement, follow Standard Operating Procedures and maintain their performance on the intrastate

program. OPS will notify the State agency if it does not comply with any of these requirements. A State agency will have an opportunity to correct deficiencies and will be provided advance notification commensurate with the level of effort required for correction. If a deficiency still remains uncorrected, the State agency will be notified, at least 30 days in advance, of OPS' intent to terminate, or to decline to renew, an agreement. The State agency will also have the opportunity for a hearing prior to termination or a decision not to renew. Hearings may be held before an OPS Region office with Director of State Programs, the OPS Associate Administrator or the PHMSA Administrator. If a State does not meet the performance score or if staffing levels and inspection days are adversely affected OPS may terminate the agreement without opportunity for a hearing in accordance with Section III C of the Agreement.

- Dissemination of Inspection Reports and Incident/Accident Reports

  State agencies must refer all requests for information concerning Inspection Reports and Incident/Accident Reports to PHMSA. PHMSA will handle all requests for information.

Formatted: List Paragraph, Bulleted + Level: 1 + Aligned at: 1" + Indent at: 1.25"

Formatted: Indent: Left: 1.5"

Formatted: Font: (Default) Times New Roman

III. Program Administration

OPS will work to accommodate State interests in its development of Standard Operating Procedures for each inspection type, associated activities, reporting and record keeping requirements. These Procedures will address the use of OPS inspection forms, reports, and other guidance material as appropriate, and generally would be consistent with current practice.

- ***Record Keeping***

  Interstate inspections are to be documented in the Inspection Assistant (IA) software.~~States are requested to separate costs incurred for their interstate program activities from those of their intrastate program for improved accountability reporting. One approach is to prorate efforts on interstate program activities, such as with inspection days, and use as an annual average for the State's base interstate work. This method would allow for a variance in effort levels from year to year.~~

- ***Negotiated Work Plans***

  In addition to a signed Interstate Agreement, each interstate agent will also have an annual work plan. The Regional Director will work with the interstate agent on an annual basis to establish the work plans to support the various functions authorized under the particular Agreement, such as new construction, major

rehabilitation, accident investigations, integrity management plan reviews, damage prevention projects, and standard inspections as determined necessary. For new pipeline construction, the State could be requested to monitor the construction and report noncompliance to OPS. For accident investigations, the State could provide onsite evaluations and witness testing and remedial work. The State could review an operator's integrity management plan, and participate in response planning activities. The State agency may be needed to join in damage prevention projects and outreach activities, such as conducting seminars independently or in conjunction with major pipeline operators. Other

options are participation in Federal inspections of company operations and maintenance practices and the monitoring of safety-related condition reports.

To the extent practicable, workload planning will seek to make maximum use of Federal and State resources and avoid duplicative efforts. Estimates of time and effort for each inspection assignment should be agreed upon. Once the inspection year has started, the State agency needs to consult with OPS for any modification to the work plan due to emergency or unanticipated conditions.

- ***Advance Scheduling***

  OPS and States need to be flexible to accommodate the evolving planning process to the extent practicable. The following Scheduling Time Line results from agreement by OPS and State agencies in planning meetings:

  - Guidance from OPS to States on policy, areas of emphasis, operator names, and other information are due by September 15 of each year.
  - State agency requests for any interstate program activity are due back to Regional Directors by October 15.
  - OPS and State discussions on the requested activities should be completed by November 1.
  - The final plan for States is completed by January 31.

- ***Need for Systems Inspections and Sharing of Resources***

  OPS has revised its inspection approach to include a combination of unit-based and a broader-reaching system-based inspection. Certain aspects of oversight lend themselves to a systemic inspection basis. Other areas should be field validated on a unit-basis. After reviewing and comparing State requests with our regional plans, OPS will draft work plans for state participation in scheduled systems inspections. Consideration will be given to the level of effort needed from Federal and State resources in programming inspection assignments. Once identified, OPS will assign an OPS team coordinator for each interstate operator inspection. The Team Coordinator will harmonize and schedule the inspection activities for greater efficiency and, with input from the State agency, determine the focus of inspections and estimate the time needed to carry out the inspections assigned.

- ***Hours of Service***

State inspectors assigned to interstate activities need to be able to participate in inspection activities in accordance with work requirements. On a job site, particularly during construction and repair activities, this may require work performance outside of standard business hours. If the subject inspections warrant working overtime, 24-hour coverage or overnight travel, the interstate agent will be expected to support such requirements.

- ***Training***

  Inspectors are required to complete PHMSA TQ training for the area of emphasis of the inspection performed.

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix C

CY 2015 Training Requirements
Mandatory Training for Gas Inspectors

All mandatory courses must be completed within **3 years** from the completion date of the first course taken in the curriculum (successful completion within 5 years). An inspector has an additional 3 years, from the date training is added to the requirements to complete that specific training (successful completion within 5 years). If new training replaces previous required training and equivalency records are allowed for the new training, then no additional years are permitted.

	Course Code	Course Title	Date added to requirements
1	PHMSA-PL1250	*Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
2	PHMSA-PL1255	*Gas Pressure Regulation & Overpressure Protection Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
3	PHMSA-PL1310	*Plastic and Composite Materials Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
4	PHMSA-PL3242	*Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
5	PHMSA-PL3256	*Failure Investigation Pipeline Failure Investigation Techniques Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
6	PHMSA-PL3293	*Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
7	PHMSA-PL3257	*Pipeline Safety Regulation Application and Compliance Procedures Course*	Prior to Dec 2008

1. PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1ODOR Natural Gas Odorization WBT
PHMSA-PL1P192 Introduction to Part 192 WBT
PHMSA-PL3REG Regulatory Overview WBT

2. PHMSA-PL1255 Gas Pressure Regulation & Overpressure Protection Course

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL1GLAW Introduction to Gas Laws WBT
PHMSA-PL1PRESS Fundamentals of Gas Pressure Regulators WBT

3. PHMSA-PL1310 Plastic and Composite Materials Course

Successful completion of PHMSA-PL3254 Joining of Pipeline Materials Course is equivalency training.

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3PP Fundamentals of Plastic Pipe WBT

4. PHMSA-PL3242 Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course

Successful completion of PHMSA-PL3254 Joining of Pipeline Materials Course is equivalency training.

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3WELD Introduction to Pipeline Welding WBT

5. PHMSA-PL3256 Pipeline Failure Investigation Techniques Course

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course

6. PHMSA-PL3293 Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course

Successful completion of PHMSA-PL3251 (PL00251) & PHMSA-PL3252 (PL00252) corrosion courses is equivalency training.

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3CP Fundamentals of Pipeline Corrosion and Cathodic Protection WBT
PHMSA-PL3ELEC Fundamentals of Basic DC Electricity WBT
PHMSA-PL3IC Investigating and Managing Internal Corrosion of Pipelines WBT

7. PHMSA-PL3257 Pipeline Safety Regulation Application and Compliance Procedures Course

This class should be taken last in the curriculum.

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course

CY 2015 Training Requirements
Mandatory Training for Gas Integrity Management Inspectors

All mandatory courses must be completed within **3 years** from the completion date of the first completed course in the curriculum (successful completion within 5 years). An inspector has an additional 3 years from the date training is added to the requirements to complete (successful completion within 5 years). If new training replaces previous required training and equivalency records are allowed for the new training, then no additional years are permitted. Since many of the standard gas courses are included in the gas IM training requirements, the 3 year requirement starts over for the gas IM curriculum using the completion date of the first course taken that is unique to the gas IM requirements. Lead IM inspectors must complete all mandatory training prior to conducting an inspection.

	Course Code	Course Title	Date added to requirements
1	PHMSA-PL1250	*Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
2	PHMSA-PL1255	*Gas Pressure Regulation & Overpressure Protection Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
3	PHMSA-PL1310	*Plastic and Composite Materials Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
4	PHMSA-PL3242	*Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
5	PHMSA-PL3256	*Pipeline Failure Investigation Techniques Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
6	PHMSA-PL3293	*Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
7	PHMSA-PL3257	*Pipeline Safety Regulation Application and Compliance Procedures Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
8	PHMSA-PL3267	*Fundamentals of Integrity Management Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
9	PHMSA-PL1297	*Gas Integrity Management (IM) Protocol Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
10	PHMSA-PL3291	*Fundamentals of (SCADA) System Technology and Operation Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
11	PHMSA-PL3292	*Safety Evaluation of Inline Inspection (ILI)/Pigging Programs Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
12	PHMSA-PL3306	*External Corrosion Direct Assessment (ECDA) Field Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
13	PHMSA-PL3IC	*Investigating and Managing Internal Corrosion of Pipelines WBT*	Prior to Dec 2008

1. PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1ODOR Natural Gas Odorization WBT
PHMSA-PL1P192 Introduction to Part 192 WBT
PHMSA-PL3REG Regulatory Overview WBT

2. PHMSA-PL1255 Gas Pressure Regulation & Overpressure Protection Course

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL1GLAW Introduction to Gas Laws WBT
PHMSA-PL1PRESS Fundamentals of Gas Pressure Regulators WBT

3. PHMSA-PL1310 Plastic and Composite Materials Course

Successful completion of PHMSA-PL3254 Joining of Pipeline Materials Course is equivalency training.

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3PP Fundamentals of Plastic Pipe WBT

4. PHMSA-PL3242 Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course

Successful completion of PHMSA-PL3254 Joining of Pipeline Materials Course is equivalency training.

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3WELD Introduction to Pipeline Welding WBT

5. PHMSA-PL3256 Pipeline Failure Investigation Techniques Course

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course

6. PHMSA-PL3293 Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course

Successful completion of PHMSA-PL3251 (PL00251) & PHMSA-PL3252 (PL00252) corrosion courses is equivalency training.

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3CP Fundamentals of Pipeline Corrosion and Cathodic Protection WBT
PHMSA-PLELEC Fundamentals of Basic DC Electricity WBT
PHMSA-PL3IC Investigating and Managing Internal Corrosion of Pipelines WBT

7. PHMSA-PL3257 Pipeline Safety Regulation Application and Compliance Procedures Course

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course

CY 2015 Training Requirements
Mandatory Training for Gas Integrity Management Inspectors

8. PHMSA-PL3267 Fundamentals of Integrity Management Course

Successful completion of both PHMSA-PL3296 Pipeline Reliability Assessment Seminar and PHMSA-PL1297 Gas Integrity Management (IM) Protocol Course is equivalency training.

Prerequisites

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3242 Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course
PHMSA-PL3293 Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL1IPROC Integrity Management Processes WBT
PHMSA-PL1RA Introduction to Risk Assessment Methods WBT
PHMSA-PL3ECDA External Corrosion Direct Assessment WBT

9. PHMSA-PL1297 Gas Integrity Management (IM) Programs Course

Prerequisites

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3267 Fundamentals of Integrity Management Course
PHMSA-PL1ICDA Internal Corrosion Direct Assessment WBT
PHMSA-PL1HCA High Consequence Areas WBT
PHMSA-PL1IPROC Integrity Management Processes WBT
PHMSA-PL1RA Introduction to Risk Assessment Methods WBT
PHMSA-PL3ECDA External Corrosion Direct Assessment WBT
PHMSA-PL3SCCDA Stress Corrosion Cracking Direct Assessment WBT

10. PHMSA-PL3291 Fundamentals of (SCADA) System Technology and Operation Course

Prerequisites

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3SCADA Fundamentals of SCADA Systems WBT

11. PHMSA-PL3292 Safety Evaluation of Inline Inspection (ILI)/Pigging Programs Course

Prerequisites

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3PIG Fundamentals of Launching and Receiving Maintenance Pigs WBT
PHMSA-PL3HIP The History of Intelligent Pigging WBT

12. PHMSA-PL3306 External Corrosion Direct Assessment (ECDA) Field Course

Prerequisites

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3293 Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3ECDA External Corrosion Direct Assessment WBT

13. PHMSA-PL3IC Investigating and Managing Internal Corrosion of Pipelines WBT

CY 2015 Training Requirements
Mandatory Training for Liquid Inspectors

All mandatory courses must be completed within **3 years** from the completion date of the first course taken in the curriculum (successful completion within 5 years). An inspector has an additional 3 years from the date training is added to the requirements to complete that specific training (successful completion within 5 years). If new training replaces previous required training and equivalency records are allowed for the new training, then no additional years are permitted.

	Course Code	Course Title	Date added to requirements
1	PHMSA-PL2258	*Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
2	PHMSA-PL3242	*Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
3	PHMSA-PL3256	*Pipeline Failure Investigation Techniques Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
4	PHMSA-PL3257	*Pipeline Safety Regulation Application and Compliance Procedures Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
5	PHMSA-PL3293	*Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
6	PHMSA-PL2284 / PHMSA-PL3275	*Current HAZWOPER Certification (24-hour HAZWOPER with an annual 8-hour refresher)*	Prior to Dec 2008

1. PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL2FLMEC Fundamentals of Fluid Mechanics WBT
PHMSA-PL2P195 Introduction to Part 195 WBT
PHMSA-PL3REG Regulatory Overview WBT

2. PHMSA-PL3242 Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course

Successful completion of PHMSA-PL3254 Joining of Pipeline Materials Course is equivalency training.

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3WELD Introduction to Pipeline Welding WBT

3. PHMSA-PL3256 Pipeline Failure Investigation Techniques Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course

4. PHMSA-PL3257 Pipeline Safety Regulation Application and Compliance Procedures Course

This class should be taken last in the curriculum.

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course

5. PHMSA-PL3293 Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course

Successful completion of PHMSA-PL3251 (PL00251) & PHMSA-PL3252 (PL00252) corrosion courses is equivalency training.

Prerequisites
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3CP Fundamentals of Pipeline Corrosion and Cathodic Protection
PHMSA-PL3IC Investigating and Managing Internal Corrosion of Pipelines WBT
PHMSA-PL3ELEC Fundamentals of Basic DC Electricity WBT

6. PHMSA-PL3275 / PHMSA-PL2284 Current HAZWOPER Certification (24-hour HAZWOPER with an annual 8-hour refresher)

Current certification is the successful completion of a 24-hour HAZWOPER which is kept current by successfully completing an annual 8-hour HAZWOPER refresher. Anyone reaching or exceeding a 2-year span or gap between training will be required to take a minimum, 24-hour HAZWOPER training to recertify.

CY 2015 Training Requirements
Mandatory Training for Liquid Integrity Management Inspectors

All mandatory courses must be completed within **3 years** from the completion date of the first course taken in the curriculum (successful completion within 5 years). An inspector has an additional 3 years from the date training is added to the requirements to complete the course, successful completion within 5 years. If new training replaces previous required training and equivalency records are allowed for the new training, then no additional years are permitted. Since many of the standard liquid courses are included in the liquid IM training requirements, the 3-year requirement starts over for the liquid IM curriculum using the completion date of the first course taken that is unique to the liquid IM requirements. Lead IM inspectors must complete all mandatory training prior to conducting an inspection.

	Course Code	Course Title	Date added to requirements
1	PHMSA-PL2258	*Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
2	PHMSA-PL2288	*Safety Evaluation of Breakout Tanks Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
3	PHMSA-PL2294	*Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Integrity Management (IM) Programs Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
4	PHMSA-PL3242	*Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
5	PHMSA-PL3256	*Pipeline Failure Investigation Techniques Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
6	PHMSA-PL3257	*Pipeline Safety Regulation Application and Compliance Procedures Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
7	PHMSA-PL3267	*Fundamentals of Integrity Management Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
8	PHMSA-PL3291	*Fundamentals of (SCADA) System Technology and Operation Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
9	PHMSA-PL3292	*Safety Evaluation of Inline Inspection (ILI)/Pigging Program Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
10	PHMSA-PL3293	*Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
11	PHMSA-PL3306	*External Corrosion Direct Assessment (ECDA) Field Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
12	PHMSA-PL3IC	*Investigating and Managing Internal Corrosion of Pipelines WBT*	Prior to Dec 2008
13	PHMSA-PL2284 / PHMSA-PL3275	*Current HAZWOPER Certification (24-hour HAZWOPER with an annual 8-hour refresher)*	Prior to Dec 2008

1. PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL2FLMEC Fundamentals of Fluid Mechanics WBT
PHMSA-PL2P195 Introduction to Part 195 WBT
PHMSA-PL3REG Regulatory Overview WBT

2. PHMSA-PL2288 Safety Evaluation of Breakout Tanks Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL2TANK Introduction to Aboveground Storage Tanks WBT

3. PHMSA-PL2294 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Integrity Management (IM) Programs Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3267 Fundamentals of Integrity Management Course
PHMSA-PL1HCA High Consequence Areas WBT
PHMSA-PL1RA Introduction to Risk Assessment Methods WBT
PHMSA-PL3ECDA External Corrosion Direct Assessment WBT

4. PHMSA-PL3242 Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course

Successful completion of PHMSA-PL3254 Joining of Pipeline Materials Course is equivalency training.

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3WELD Introduction to Pipeline Welding WBT

5. PHMSA-PL3256 Pipeline Failure Investigation Techniques Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course

6. PHMSA-PL3257 Pipeline Safety Regulation Application and Compliance Procedures Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course

CY 2015 Training Requirements
Mandatory Training for Liquid Integrity Management Inspectors

7. PHMSA-PL3267 Fundamentals of Integrity Management Course

Successful completion of both PHMSA-PL3296 Pipeline Reliability Assessment Seminar and PHMSA-PL2294 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Integrity Management (IM) Programs Course is equivalency training.

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3242 Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course
PHMSA-PL3293 Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL1IPROC Integrity Management Processes WBT
PHMSA-PL1RA Introduction to Risk Assessment Methods WBT
PHMSA-PL3ECDA External Corrosion Direct Assessment WBT

8. PHMSA-PL3291 Fundamentals of (SCADA) System Technology and Operation Course

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3SCADA Fundamentals of SCADA Systems WBT

9. PHMSA-PL3292 Safety Evaluation of Inline Inspection (ILI)/Pigging Programs Course

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3PIG Fundamentals of Launching and Receiving Maintenance Pigs WBT
PHMSA-PL3HIP The History of Intelligent Pigging WBT

10. PHMSA-PL3293 Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course

Successful completion of PHMSA-PL3251 (PL00251) & PHMSA-PL3252 (PL00252) corrosion courses is equivalency training.

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3ELEC Fundamentals of Basic DC Electricity WBT
PHMSA-PL3CP Fundamentals of Pipeline Corrosion and Cathodic Protection WBT
PHMSA-PL3IC Investigating and Managing Internal Corrosion of Pipelines WBT

11. PHMSA-PL3306 External Corrosion Direct Assessment (ECDA) Field Course

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3293 Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3ECDA External Corrosion Direct Assessment WBT

12. PHMSA-PL3IC Investigating and Managing Internal Corrosion of Pipelines WBT

13. PHMSA-PL3275 / PHMSA-PL2284 Current HAZWOPER Certification (24-hour HAZWOPER with an annual 8-hour refresher)

Current certification is the successful completion of a 24-hour HAZWOPER which is kept current by successfully completing an annual 8-hour HAZWOPER refresher. Anyone reaching or exceeding a 2-year span or gap between training will be required to take, at a minimum, 24-hour HAZWOPER training to recertify.

CY 2015 Training Requirements
Mandatory Training for DIMP Inspectors

All mandatory courses must be completed within **3 years** from the completion date of the first course taken in the curriculum (successful completion within 5 years). An inspector has an additional 3 years from the date training is added to the requirements to complete that specific training (successful completion within 5 years). If new training replaces previous required training and equivalency records are allowed for the new training, then no additional years are permitted.

	Course Code	Course Title	Date added to requirements
1	PHMSA-PL1245	*Safety Evaluation of Distribution Integrity Management Programs (DIMP) Course*	Dec 2012
2	PHMSA-PL1250	*Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course*	Dec 2012
3	PHMSA-PL1255	*Gas Pressure Regulation & Overpressure Protection Course*	Dec 2012
4	PHMSA-PL1310	*Plastic and Composite Materials Course*	Dec 2012
5	PHMSA-PL3242	*Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course*	Dec 2012
6	PHMSA-PL3293	*Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course*	Dec 2012
7	PHMSA-PL3257	*Pipeline Safety Regulation Application and Compliance Procedures Course*	Dec 2012

1. PHMSA-PL1245 Safety Evaluation of Distribution Integrity Management Programs (DIMP)

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL1310 Plastic and Composite Materials Course
PHMSA-PL3242 Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course
PHMSA-PL1255 Gas Pressure Regulation & Overpressure Protection Course
PHMSA-PL3293 Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course

2. PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1ODOR Natural Gas Odorization WBT
PHMSA-PL1P192 Introduction to Part 192 WBT
PHMSA-PL3REG Regulatory Overview WBT

3. PHMSA-PL1255 Gas Pressure Regulation & Overpressure Protection Course

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL1GLAW Introduction to Gas Laws WBT
PHMSA-PL1PRESS Fundamentals of Gas Pressure Regulators WBT

4. PHMSA-PL1310 Plastic and Composite Materials Course

Successful completion of PHMSA-PL3254 Joining of Pipeline Materials Course is equivalency training.

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3PP Fundamentals of Plastic Pipe WBT

5. PHMSA-PL3242 Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course

Successful completion of PHMSA-PL3254 Joining of Pipeline Materials Course is equivalency training.

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3WELD Introduction to Pipeline Welding WBT

6. PHMSA-PL3293 Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course

Successful completion of PHMSA-PL3251 (PL00251) & PHMSA-PL3252 (PL00252) corrosion courses is equivalency training.

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3CP Fundamentals of Pipeline Corrosion and Cathodic Protection WBT
PHMSA-PL3IC Investigating and Managing Internal Corrosion of Pipelines WBT
PHMSA-PL3ELEC Fundamentals of Basic DC Electricity WBT

7. PHMSA-PL3257 Pipeline Safety Regulation Application and Compliance Procedures Course

This class should be taken last in the curriculum.

Prerequisites:

PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course

CY 2015 Training Requirements
Mandatory Training for LNG Inspectors

All mandatory courses must be completed within **3 years** from the completion date of the first course taken in the curriculum (successful completion within 5 years). An inspector has an additional 3 years from the date training is added to the requirements to complete that specific training (successful completion within 5 years). If new training replaces previous required training and equivalency records are allowed for the new training, then no additional years are permitted.

	Course Code	Course Title	Date added to requirements
1	PHMSA-PL1250	*Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
2	PHMSA-PL4253	*Liquefied Natural Gas (LNG) Safety Technology and Inspection Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
3	PHMSA-PL3242	*Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
4	PHMSA-PL3256	*Pipeline Failure Investigation Techniques Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
5	PHMSA-PL3293	*Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
6	PHMSA-PL3257	*Pipeline Safety Regulation Application and Compliance Procedures Course*	Prior to Dec 2008

1. PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1ODOR Natural Gas Odorization WBT
PHMSA-PL1P192 Introduction to Part 192 WBT
PHMSA-PL3REG Regulatory Overview WBT

2. PHMSA-PL4253 Liquefied Natural Gas (LNG) Safety Technology and Inspection Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL4LNG Fundamentals of Liquefied Natural Gas WBT

3. PHMSA-PL3242 Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course

Successful completion of PHMSA-PL3254 Joining of Pipeline Materials Course is equivalency training.

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3WELD Introduction to Pipeline Welding WBT

4. PHMSA-PL3256 Pipeline Failure Investigation Techniques Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course

5. PHMSA-PL3293 Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course

Successful completion of PHMSA-PL3251 (PL00251) & PHMSA-PL3252 (PL00252) corrosion courses is equivalency training.

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3CP Fundamentals of Pipeline Corrosion and Cathodic Protection WBT
PHMSA-PL3IC Investigating and Managing Internal Corrosion of Pipelines WBT
PHMSA-PL3ELEC Fundamentals of Basic DC Electricity WBT

6. PHMSA-PL3257 Pipeline Safety Regulation Application and Compliance Procedures Course

This class should be taken last in the curriculum.

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course

CY 2015 Training Requirements
Additional Mandatory Training

Required for Federal inspectors and at least one inspector/program manager from each state program agency

	Course Code	Course Title	Date added to requirements
1	PHMSA-PL3600	*Root Cause/Incident Investigation Course*	Dec 2010

Training required if inspection contains elements related to course content

	Course Code	Course Title	Date added to requirements
1	PHMSA-PL2288	*Safety Evaluation of Breakout Tanks Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
2	PHMSA-PL3291	*Fundamentals of (SCADA) System Technology and Operation Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
3	PHMSA-PL3292	*Safety Evaluation of Inline Inspection (ILI)/Pigging Programs Course*	Prior to Dec 2008
4	PHMSA-PL3355	*Safety Evaluation of Control Room Management Programs Course*	Dec 2011
5	PHMSA-PL3IC	*Investigating and Managing Internal Corrosion of Pipelines WBT*	Prior to Dec 2008
6	PHMSA-PL3OQ	*Operator Qualification WBT Course*	Prior to Dec 2008

1. PHMSA-PL2288 Safety Evaluation of Breakout Tanks Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL2TANK Introduction to Aboveground Storage Tank WBT

2. PHMSA-PL3291 Fundamentals of (SCADA) System Technology and Operation Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3SCADA Fundamentals of SCADA Systems WBT

3. PHMSA-PL3292 Safety Evaluation of Inline Inspection (ILI)/Pigging Programs Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3PIG Fundamentals of Launching and Receiving Maintenance Pigs WBT
PHMSA-PL3HIP The History of Intelligent Pigging WBT

4. PHMSA-PL3355 Safety Evaluation of Control room Management Programs Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course

5. PHMSA-PL3IC Investigating and Managing Internal Corrosion of Pipelines WBT

6. **PHMSA-PL3OQ Operator Qualification WBT Course**
Required training for lead OQ inspectors

CY 2015 Training Requirements
Elective Training

Elective training is training that is recommended but is not currently required on any program curriculum

	Course Code	Course Title
1	PHMSA-PL3322	*Evaluation of Operator Qualification (OQ) Programs Course*
2	PHMSA-PL3350	*Integrated Inspection Course*
3	PHMSA-PL5342	*Safety Evaluation of Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG) Systems Course*

1. PHMSA-PL3322 Evaluation of Operator Qualification (OQ) Programs Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL3OQ Operator Qualification WBT

2. PHMSA-PL3350 Integrated Inspection Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course
PHMSA-PL3293 Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course

3. PHMSA-PL5342 Safety Evaluation of Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG) Systems Course

Prerequisites:
PHMSA-PL1250 Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course or PHMSA-PL2258 Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems Course

Appendix C – Guidelines for Determining Minimum Qualifications of State Agency Lead Inspectors to Conduct Standard Inspections

Category	Qualification Guidelines	Qualified as Lead Inspector?
Engineering Degree	• Has an engineering degree from an accredited engineering college or university and / or is a registered professional engineer *and* • Has EEE* in gas or liquid pipeline engineering, enforcement, construction, inspection, or other related job functions; *or* • Has completed appropriate PHMSA TQ (See Note 2) and / or State Agency training as determined by the State Program Manager.	Yes (See Note 1)
Significant Experience	• Has a minimum of 5 years of EEE* in gas or liquid pipeline engineering, enforcement, construction, inspection, or other related job functions *and* • Has completed appropriate PHMSA TQ (See Note 2) and / or State Agency training as determined by the State Program Manager.	Yes (See Note 1)
Limited Experience	• Has less than 5 years of EEE* in gas or liquid pipeline engineering, enforcement, construction, inspection, or other related job functions *and* • Has completed PHMSA TQ Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipelines Systems PL1250, Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems PL3293 and Gas Pressure Regulation and Overpressure Protection PL1255 courses for Gas inspections or Has completed PHMSA TQ Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems PL2258 and Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems PL3293 courses for Hazardous Liquid inspections; *and / or* • Has completed State Agency training as determined by the State Program Manager.	Yes (See Note 1)

* Equivalent Education/Experience (EEE) - A combination of college level (degree or non-degree) education or training and technical experience that has furnished the inspector with the knowledge, skills, and abilities to conduct independent pipeline safety inspections and investigations.

Note 1: Each State Program Manager will evaluate and determine whether a State inspector is qualified to lead pipeline safety inspections and investigations using the qualification guidelines contained in this table.

- Each State Program Manager will also have the option of considering the needs of the State program, size of the inspection staff, and other factors in deciding whether a State inspector is qualified to be a lead inspector for a specific inspection activity.
- Evaluations of qualified State lead inspectors will be documented by State Program Managers on appropriate State evaluation forms noting the qualifying criteria and factors that resulted in qualifying a State inspector as a lead inspector for a specific inspection activity (for example, lead code compliance, construction, incident investigation, integrity management, or operator qualification inspectors).

Note 2: An on the job evaluation from the Program Manager and/or an evaluation of knowledge/skills based on the PHMSA TQ Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipelines Systems PL1250, Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems PL3293 and Gas Pressure Regulation and Overpressure Protection PL1255 courses for Gas inspections or PHMSA TQ Safety Evaluation of Hazardous Liquid Pipeline Systems PL2258 and Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems PL3293 courses for Hazardous Liquid inspections may allow for the inspector to lead a standard inspection prior to completion of the full complement of required PHMSA TQ courses.

Note 3: If the Program Manager is not available or does not have pipeline safety inspection experience, PHMSA TQ may conduct the evaluation of the inspector using these guidelines if requested by a State to conduct an evaluation.

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix D

Appendix D
Memorandum of Understanding Between Department of Transportation and National Transportation Safety Board

I. Purpose

The purpose of this Appendix is to establish the relationship between the Office of Pipeline Safety (OPS) and the National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB) within the framework of the DOT-NTSB for the notification of pipeline failures, investigation of accidents, providing services, and program coordination.

II. Background

The OPS is responsible for establishing and enforcing Federal safety regulations, including investigation of accidents, for the transportation of gas and liquid hazardous materials by pipelines. These responsibilities are carried out in response to five Acts. These are (1) Chapter 601; (2) the Transportation of Explosives Act; (3) the Mineral Leasing Act, as amended; (4) the Deepwater Port Act of 1974; and (5) the Transportation Safety Act of 1974. NTSB, by the Independent Safety Board Act of 1974, has responsibility for investigating and determining the probable cause(s) of any pipeline accident in which there is a fatality, substantial property damage (estimated $100,000), or any other accident which occurs which, in the judgment of the Board, is catastrophic.

This agreement then is established to minimize duplication in efforts and maximize exchange of information as both parties execute their respective investigatory responsibilities.

III. Notification of Pipeline Failures

A representative of OPS will immediately notify, by telephone, NTSB of the occurrence of each pipeline accident which involves one or more fatalities or which causes substantial property damage estimated to be more than $100,000.

If, in the initial notification, the information regarding the accident is incomplete, OPS will provide follow-up information as appropriate.

IV. Investigation of Accidents

A. NTSB and OPS will coordinate and notify the other agency of accidents which it will investigate.

B. When one agency is investigating an accident and the other agency decides to investigate the same accident for its own purposes, the two agencies may jointly participate in the investigation.
C. In a joint investigation, OPS and NTSB will coordinate their investigative activities so as to avoid duplication of effort and in accordance with the interest and expertise of the agency representatives.
D. Each agency will be responsible for dealing with the operator, State, local officials and the press within its own area of responsibility.

V. Service

A. **Investigative.** The assistance of OPS personnel and any agents under contract to OPS may be requested by the NTSB in any investigation. When OPS assistance is required, NTSB will notify OPS as soon as practicable after receipt of initial notification of a pipeline accident and specify the assistance required. All data developed by OPS or its contractors in response to requests for assistance from NTSB will be provided to NTSB, and NTSB will be considered the office of record of public release of such data.

B. **Furnishing of Studies and Technical Investigations Reports. The OPS** will furnish to NTSB two copies of published studies and technical investigations concerning pipeline operations, design, maintenance, personnel training, and such other studies as are directly concerned with safety in pipeline transportation and accident prevention. Likewise, NTSB will furnish OPS with two copies of all studies and technical investigations.

C. **Furnishing and Processing Pipeline Safety Data.** Each party of this agreement will furnish pipeline safety data to the other party upon request.

D. **Furnishing of Accident Investigation and Hearing Reports.** The OPS will furnish NTSB with two copies of on-site or field investigation reports of those accidents of such significance as to prompt the completion of a report. NTSB will furnish OPS with two copies of accident reports at least 5 days in advance of the release of that report.

VI. Program Coordination

Each party of this agreement is invited to participate in or observe the hearings conducted by the other party. Whether the other party will participate or observe will be determined by the inviting party. Copies of the proceedings and subsequent reports will be furnished the invited party.

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix E

Appendix - E
Federal/State Cooperation in Case of Accident

I. Background

Section 60117(i) of Chapter 601 requires the following:

PROMOTING COORDINATION - After consulting with appropriate State officials, the Secretary shall establish procedures to promote more effective coordination between departments, agencies, and instrumentalities of Government and State authorities with regulatory authority over pipeline facilities about responses to a pipeline accident.

II. Definitions

State Agency—For the purpose of these procedures, a State or State agency means the agency participating in the pipeline safety program under Section 60105 certification or a Section 60106 agreement.

Office of Pipeline Safety (OPS)—For the purpose of these procedures, OPS means the U.S. Department of Transportation's Office of Pipeline Safety.

III. Office of Pipeline Safety and State Agency Role in Accident Investigation

The remainder of this document is replaced with the OPS Failure Investigation policy which outlines OPS and State Roles in an Accident Investigation.

1. Scope
2. Telephonic Notifications – Tier A
    a. Telephonic Reporting Requirements for Operators
    b. Staff Schedules for Telephonic Notifications
    c. Telephonic Notifications from CMC
    d. Telephonic Notifications to Regions
    e. Region Telephonic Investigation and Report to HQ
    f. Updates to PHMSA & OPS Management
    g. Updates to State Partners
3. Return-to-Service Compliance Action
4. Written Reports from the Operator – Tier B
5. Monitoring Operator Investigation – Tier C
6. OPS Investigation – Tier D
    a. Cooperation With Other Federal Agencies
    b. OPS Failure Investigation & Enforcement Actions
    c. On-Site Investigation
    d. OPS Failure Investigation Report
    e. Recommendation Memo
7. OPS Team Investigation – Tier E
8. Special Investigations
    a. Train Derailments
    b. Natural Disasters

Appendices

A Criteria for Sending Staff On-Site

B PHP-80 Criteria for creating and sending a formal summary of failure to "PHMSA Pipeline Failure Exec Update "

1. Scope

Return to ToC

This failure investigation policy applies to both gas incidents and hazardous liquids accidents. The five investigation tiers are not sequential and multiple tiers may be in process at any given time. Both HQ and Region OPS staff have responsibility for Tiers A and B for failures on all pipelines subject to regulation. For failures on pipeline Units inspected by OPS, including those inspected by Interstate Agents, Regions have responsibility for Tiers C, D & E. For failures on intrastate pipelines subject to regulation by a State Agency, the State will cooperate with Region staff on Tiers A and B and have primary responsibility for conducting investigations pursuant to State procedures.

2. Telephonic Notifications – Tier A

a. Telephonic Reporting Requirements for Operators

Return to ToC

When an operator gains knowledge of an event meeting the reporting requirements of Part 191.5 or Part 195.52, the operator must give direct telephonic notice to the National Response Center (NRC) at the earliest practicable moment. In Alert Notice (ALN)-91-01, OPS advises operators that NRC reports should be made within 1-2 hours of discovery by the operator. While State Partners may have separate or additional telephonic reporting requirements, all operators are required to notify the NRC by either calling or submitting a notification online.

Under Part 192.612 and 195.413, operators are required to notify the NRC when an offshore pipeline in the Gulf of Mexico is exposed or poses a hazard to navigation.

b. Staff Schedules for Telephonic Notifications

Return to ToC

HQ – On-call duties are rotated among PHP-5/80 staff and Region Accident Investigators. All staff subject to inclusion in the schedule are included in the PHMSA PHP80 Response e-mail group. HQ on-call schedules are e-mailed to:

- CMC-01
- CMC-02
- PHP Accident Incident Cadre
- PHMSA PHP80 Response
- Region response groups (section c. below)
- NTSB contacts
- Chemical Safety Board

The e-mail typically includes operators and geographic areas that are more likely to require immediate follow-up.

Region – On-call lists are available in SharePoint. When the list changes, the National Field Coordinator (NFC) e-mails the updated list to the PHP-80 Response and NAPSR All States e-mail groups with a copy to the Region e-mail groups.

State – State Partners provide on-call lists to the Regions.

c. Telephonic Notifications from CMC

Return to ToC

Upon receiving a telephonic notification, the NRC enters information about the event into its database. OPS has provided the NRC with guidance to determine if a telephonic notification should be categorized as Pipeline in the database. The NRC concurrently e-mails Pipeline notifications to the continuously staffed DOT Crisis Management Center (CMC) and PHP Accident/Incident Cadre e-mail group. The CMC will forward these e-mails to PHMSA PHP80 Response and the appropriate Region e-mail group:

Eastern Region	PHMSA PHP100 EASTERN
Southern Region	PHMSA PHP200 SOUTHERN
Central Region	PHMSA PHP300 CENTRAL
Southwest Region	PHMSA PHP400 SOUTHWEST
Western Region	PHMSA PHP500 Response

If the CMC becomes aware of an event receiving national media attention, the CMC will call the PHMSA Emergency Coordinator. If the event is pipeline-related, the PHMSA Emergency Coordinator will call the HQ on-call staff to request details of the failure and a summary of the operator response.

d. Telephonic Notifications to Regions

Return to ToC

If the CMC does not include the appropriate Region e-mail group, HQ on-call staff will forward the CMC e-mail to the appropriate Region.

If the report is from a pipeline operator and the Impact section of the NRC report includes any injury, fatality, or an environmental impact to a waterway, the HQ on-call staff will call the Region on-call staff and request details of the failure and a summary of the operator response. Special circumstances, such as repeated failures for a single operator, national media attention, or interest from PHMSA leadership or other government agencies, may also lead the HQ on-call staff to call the Region.

NRC reports are available to Region staff through the HMIS at https://phmhqnwas003/hmis/Login.aspx. Contact the PHMSA IT HelpDesk, 202-435-4357, if you need assistance with your HMIS Username and Password. The HelpDesk does not frequently receive HMIS help requests and may initially rebuff your request. If so, be persistent and convince the HelpDesk staff to help.

Region on-call staff check e-mail and HMIS every working day and follow Region procedure for documenting their investigation of Pipeline NRC reports.

State Partners or pipeline operators may notify Region staff about pipeline failures before the NRC report is submitted. In these cases, Region staff should send the information to the PHP80 Response e-mail group.

e. Region Telephonic Investigation and Report to HQ Return to ToC

If the Region on-call staff has not received a phone call from the HQ on-call staff, follow-up with the operator or State agency will occur no later than the next working day. **No follow-up reporting to HQ is required unless the Region on-call staff receives a phone call from the HQ on-call staff.** When HQ on-call staff does call the Region on-call staff, Region staff will follow the procedures in the remainder of this section to review the notification, make the appropriate follow-up phone calls, and report to HQ.

The Region's first investigation goal is to determine if the telephonic notification involved a pipeline subject to regulation under 49 CFR. Regions may need to communicate with a State Agency or the operator to make this determination. NPMS may be a useful tool to determine if a gas transmission or hazardous liquid pipeline is near the reported location. If the notification does not involve a pipeline subject to regulation under 49 CFR, the Region will e-mail this information to the PHMSA PHP-80 Response e-mail group or call the HQ on-call staff. The Region will also e-mail this information to the State Program Manager.

If the notification involves a pipeline subject to regulation under 49 CFR, the Region will need to determine if the pipeline is subject to regulation by a State Agency. If Region on-call staff learns that the failure is on a pipeline subject to regulation by a State Agency, Region staff will cease communication with the operator, call the State on-call staff, and provide the operator contact information to the State Agency. Region staff needs to clearly communicate to the State Agency expectations for receiving details of the failure and a summary of the operator response in a timely manner. If a member of the State Agency response group cannot be reached within one hour, Region staff will contact the operator directly. If the pipeline is subject to regulation by the Region, the Region will contact the operator.

After details of the failure and a summary of the operator's response are gathered, Region staff e-mail the information to the PHMSA PHP-80 Response e-mail group or call the HQ on-call staff. There may be more communication back and forth requesting additional information or clarification.

At this point, the Region has typically gathered sufficient information to determine if Region staff should be sent on-site. **For failures meeting any of the criteria in Appendix A, the Region will send staff on-site, unless the OPS Deputy Associate Administrator for Field Operations (DAAFO) agrees with an exception.**

f. Updates to PHMSA & OPS Management Return to ToC

Updates from HQ on-call staff to management will be delivered using the PHMSA Pipeline Failure Exec Update e-mail group, with a copy to PHMSA PHP80 Response and the appropriate Region response group. HQ on-call staff will use the criteria in Appendix B to determine the format of communication to management. If the criteria in Appendix B are not met, HQ will forward information received from the Region to management. If a criterion in Appendix B has been met, HQ will prepare a more formal summary of the failure.

g. Updates to State Partners

Return to ToC

State Partners have next-day access to NRC reports through FedSTAR.

When HQ has called the Region to request information and the Region determines the event is subject to regulation by a State, the State plays an integral role in providing input to HQ.

When HQ has called the Region to request information and the Region determines the event is non-jurisdictional, the Region will e-mail this information to the State Program Manager (see section g above). If the event involves a pipeline subject to regulation by the Region and HQ provides an update to management (see section f above), Regions will update the State Partner through a new e-mail. The requirement for a new e-mail establishes separation between PHMSA-internal and State Partner e-mail chains.

3. Return-to-Service Compliance Action

Return to ToC

In some cases, the Region may create and issue a formal plan for returning a pipeline to service after a failure. An on-site investigation is usually conducted before determining the need for either a Corrective Action Order (CAO) or Safety Order (SO). Information to be collected when considering a CAO or SO is available on the PHP-60, Enforcement SharePoint page.

The Region Director (RD), PHMSA Counsel (PHC), Engineering (PHP-80), and the DAAFO should agree on the CAO or SO as soon as practicable, but typically within 14 days of the incident. Follow-up on the return-to-service plan will be managed independent of the failure investigation.

4. Written Reports from the Operator – Tier B

Return to ToC

Within 30 days of the failure, the operator is required to submit a written report to OPS under Part 195.54, Part 191.15 (Transmission & Gathering), and Part 191.9 (Distribution). The operator may submit the report directly through the On-Line Data Entry System (ODES) or may send the report to OPS for entry into ODES. When the operator obtains new relevant information, they are required to supplement the written report.

Hazardous liquid accident reports and gas distribution, gas transmission, and gas gathering written incident reports submitted by operators are reviewed by the Region to ensure the data is accurate and complete. The ODES Regional Review (RR) system shows the operator reports for the Region. The most recently submitted report will be displayed after clicking the Report ID link. Regions close the report if the data is complete and accurate, pass the report to a State Agency for validation, or flag the report for a subsequent supplemental report. Passing the report to a State Agency is not an acceptable end point. The NFC will schedule a review of the ODES RR status during quarterly meetings.

For incidents subject to State regulatory authority, the Region must receive feedback

from the State Partner and enter the status in ODES RR. Accident and incident reports can be accessed by State Partners through the Pipeline Data Mart.

Supplemental reports from the operator are processed in ODES RR. If a supplemental report is submitted after the Region has closed the report, the report will re-open in ODES RR with a status of Past Due.

5. Monitoring Operator Investigations – Tier C

Return to ToC

For some failures, OPS will not conduct an on-site investigation, but will monitor the progress of the operator's investigation. At any time during this monitoring, OPS may decide to initiate a Tier D or E investigation.

6. OPS Investigation – Tier D

Return to ToC

The decision to investigate a failure on-site is typically made during Tier A – Telephonic Notifications. However, there may not be a clear dividing line between Tiers A and D. A decision to send staff on-site or conduct procedure and records inspections may be made well after the date of the telephonic notification. When the Region investigation during Tier A indicates that a Failure Investigation Report is warranted, the investigation will be considered as Tier D.

a. Cooperation With Other Federal Agencies

Return to ToC

OPS will cooperate, coordinate, and share information with all Federal agencies investigating failures, especially those involving multiple modes of transportation. OPS may take the lead in the failure investigation if the failure was caused by a pipeline facility. Monitoring or directing spill cleanup and product disposal is the responsibility of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), Coast Guard, or other agencies as appropriate for the type of product and location of the failure.

The Independent Safety Board Act (ISBA), 49 U.S.C. 1901 et seq. created the National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB), and authorized it to investigate various transportation accidents. An amendment to the ISBA gave NTSB investigations priority over investigations conducted by other Federal agencies. However, this change does not preclude DOT or any of its operating modes from conducting its own investigations or obtaining information directly from parties involved in or witnesses to an accident. OPS will recognize the NTSB as the lead agency for determining the cause of failures NTSB investigates. OPS will determine what immediate steps the pipeline operator must take to protect the public and environment and determine if probable violations exist.

b. OPS Failure Investigation & Enforcement Actions

Return to ToC

All findings from the investigation will be promptly presented to the RD. If the findings are determined to be probable violations, a Violation Report will be prepared and used to develop an enforcement action. Findings are included in the Failure Investigation Report, but probable violations are not.

c. On Site Investigation

Return to ToC

The criteria for sending Region staff on-site were introduced in section 2.e. and are shown in Appendix A. If an RD does not feel that an on-site investigation is warranted even though one or more of the criterion have been met, the DAAFO must concur with the decision. For failures on pipelines under an Inspection Agreement with a State, the RD will decide whether the Region or the State Partner will lead the on-site investigation, but the Interstate Agent will always be asked to participate. For failures on intrastate pipelines under Certification with a State, the Region typically only participates in the on-site investigation if the State Partner requests assistance or the NTSB sends staff. A State Partner can investigate a failure on a pipeline subject to regulation by a Region if the RD establishes a Time Defined Agreement with the State Partner. Details on Time Defined Agreements are included in Appendix B to the Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program.

Region staff deployed to a failure site will complete the appropriate sections of OPS Form 11. The information recorded on the Form 11 may be used to support the development of a failure investigation report and enforcement letters.

Goals of the on-site investigation:

a. Determine if the operator has taken the necessary actions to protect public safety, property, and the environment at the failure site
b. Preliminary assessment of whether the failure mode could impact other portions of the operator's system
c. Assure the operator is fully cooperating with local emergency response officials and federal agencies, such as the EPA, Coast Guard, and NTSB.
d. Assist local emergency response officials with information and access to PHMSA Governmental, International, and Public Affairs (PHG) as needed.
e. Ensure the pipeline and other infrastructure potentially affected by, or contributing to, the failure has been assessed.
f. Determine if a portion of the failed pipeline needs to be secured for laboratory analysis or if failed equipment performance testing is needed. If laboratory testing is warranted, use the Metallurgical Laboratory Failure Examination Protocol in SharePoint.
g. Identify potential supply issues.
h. Determine the need for a Return-to-Service Enforcement Plan to assure the pipeline is returned to service safely.
i. Identify probable violations of pipeline safety regulations by collecting appropriate evidence, taking photographs, and conducting interviews
j. Identify all employees and contractors who should be drug and alcohol tested
k. Assess whether control room action or inaction contributed to the failure or exacerbated the consequences.
l. Collect information to help determine the probable cause, contributing factors, and root causes

d. OPS Failure Investigation Report

Return to ToC

Upon conclusion of the investigation, the Region will prepare a Failure Investigation Report using the template in SharePoint. If the NTSB is investigating the failure, the Region is not required to create a report, but will investigate and proceed with enforcement actions as needed. The report will include the sections listed below. Guidance for each section of the report is included in the template. Recognizing that each failure is unique, the contents of the report should be driven by the unique circumstances of the failure and not by the guidance. Every issue for which guidance is provided may not need to be included in the report.

1) Operator, Location, & Consequences
2) System Details
3). Events Leading up to the Failure
4) Emergency Response
5) Summary of Return-to-Service
6) Investigation Details
7) Findings & Contributing Factors
8) Appendices, as needed – template in SharePoint
   - Photographs
   - Maps
   - NRC Report
   - Operator Accident/Incident Written Report
   - Operator Procedures and Records
   - Laboratory Analysis
   - Operator Failure Investigation Report

Regions will verify that the apparent cause reported by the operator aligns with the investigation findings. If there are discrepancies, the Region will request that the operator file a supplemental report . If the operator refuses to change the cause through a supplemental report, document the discrepancy in causes in the report.

The Failure Investigation Report will include neither probable violations nor recommendations. Probable violations are captured on the Violation Report and made part of any enforcement action (see section b above). Recommendations are covered in section e. below.

Regions will provide Failure Investigation Reports to the NFC within 12 months of the failure. Regions will e-mail a single Adobe file containing the entire report, with signatures, and all appendices to the NFC. If the file is too large for e-mail, Regions will save the file to T:\Failure Investigation Reports and notify the NFC. After the report is approved by the DAAFO, the NFC will load this file to SharePoint and notify OPS Office Directors via e-mail. Before loading the report to the OPS Internet, the NFC will coordinate a PHC redaction review for Personally Identifiable Information, Sensitive Security Information, or confidential content.

PHC has asked that all reports with an associated enforcement action not be posted to

the internet until all related enforcement is closed. OPS may pursue changing this policy in the future.

Files posted to the internet are expected to be readable by software to comply with section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973. The body of the report and as many appendices as feasible will be prepared in Microsoft Word. When possible, Adobe files will be software-readable rather than scanned. The NFC will coordinate with the PHMSA webmaster to create the file to be posted to the internet.

e. Recommendation Memo Return to ToC

If the investigation results in recommendations beyond actions the operator should take, the RD will submit a memo to the DAAFO containing the executive summary from the report and recommendations. The memos will be loaded to SharePoint, discussed during quarterly meetings, and follow-up managed by the NFC.

7. OPS Team Investigation – Tier E Return to ToC

The Tier D procedures are followed for Tier E investigations, but a team of OPS staff from multiple Regions will work on the investigation and more emphasis will be placed on using root cause analysis tools. The decision to launch a Tier E investigation will be made jointly by the RDs and the DAAFO. Formation of the team will be coordinated by the DAAFO.

8. Special Investigations

a. Train Derailments Return to ToC

The CMC may notify HQ on-call staff of train derailments. If a train derailment occurs near a pipeline, the Region/State Partner should communicate with the pipeline operator. The operator should assess the impact of the derailment and subsequent cleanup on the integrity of the pipeline. If the Region receives information indicating that the pipeline may be in jeopardy, the Region/State Partner should deploy to the site.

The NPMS may be used to determine if pipeline systems are in proximity to the derailment. If a pipeline could be affected by a train derailment, the Region should notify HQ on-call staff, who will contact the FRA to ensure the safety of personnel responding to the derailment.

b. Natural Disasters Return to ToC

PHP-5 manages OPS response and information collection for natural disasters. Many of the Tier A communication methods are used.

Appendix A
Criteria for Sending Staff On-Site
(exceptions must be approved by the DAAFO)

Return to ToC

When System Subject to Regulation by Region

Gas Transmission & Distribution Pipelines

- Fatality, one or more
- Multiple injuries requiring hospitalization
- NTSB sending staff
- Major property damage – multiple or critical structures
- Multi-modal impact – major interstate highway or railroad shut-down
- National media attention
- Pipeline systems with recent failure history
- Washington DC metropolitan area failures

Hazardous Liquids Pipelines

- Fatality, one or more
- Multiple injuries requiring hospitalization
- Major spill to body of water
- NTSB sending staff
- Major property damage – multiple or critical structures
- Liquid Spill over 500 bbl
- Multi-modal impact – major interstate highway or railroad shut-down
- National media attention
- Sensitive areas that have incurred multiple pipeline failures
- Washington DC metropolitan area failures
- Anhydrous ammonia pipeline release in urban area
- Pipeline systems with recent failure history

LNG/Propane Peak-shaving and Refineries

- LNG/Propane peak shaving plant major release with or without fire
- National media attention
- Plant destruction by any cause
- Major supply impacts

When System Subject to Regulation by State Partner

Before sending OPS staff on-site, the RD will discuss the situation with the DAAFO. Among the factors to consider are: failure consequences, whether NTSB has launched, and media coverage.

Appendix B
PHP-5 Criteria for creating and sending a formal summary of failure to "PHMSA Pipeline Failure Exec Update"

Return to ToC

Natural Gas Transmission Pipelines
(Pipelines and compressor stations including interstate, intrastate transmission, and gathering)

- Fatality, one or more; or multiple injuries requiring hospital treatment
- Injury to public on systems jurisdictional to PHMSA
- Major property damage – multiple or critical structures
- Supply curtailed to major metropolitan area during heating season
- Multi-modal impact – major interstate highway or railroad shut-down
- National media attention
- Pipeline systems with recent failure history
- Washington DC metropolitan area failures

Hazardous Liquids Pipelines
(Pipelines and pump stations including crude oil, refined products or highly volatile liquids)

- Fatality, one or more; or multiple injuries requiring hospital treatment
- Injury to public on systems jurisdictional to PHMSA
- Major property damage – multiple of critical structures
- Liquid Spill over 1000 bbl
- Supply curtailed to major metropolitan area
- Multi-modal impact – major interstate highway or railroad shut-down
- National media attention
- Sensitive areas that have incurred multiple pipeline failures
- Washington DC metropolitan area failures
- Anhydrous ammonia pipeline release in urban area
- Pipeline systems with recent failure history

Natural Gas Distribution Pipelines

- Fatalities, three or more
- Pipeline systems with recent failure history
- Washington DC metropolitan area failures

LNG/Propane Peak-shaving and Refineries

- LNG/Propane peak shaving plant major release with or without fire
- National media attention
- Plant destruction by any cause
- Major supply impacts
- LNG marine carrier incidents – disabled ship in US waters

Appendix F – State Program Certification/Agreement Status

CY2014

STATES PARTICIPATING IN THE FEDERAL/STATE COOPERATIVE GAS AND HAZARDOUS LIQUID PIPELINE SAFETY PROGRAMS

NATURAL GAS PROGRAM

State Agencies Under Section 60105(a) Certification (51)

Alabama	Louisiana	Ohio
Arizona	Maine	Oklahoma
Arkansas PSC	Maryland	Oregon
Arkansas Oil and Gas	Massachusetts	Pennsylvania
California*	Michigan	Puerto Rico
Colorado	Minnesota	Rhode Island
Connecticut	Mississippi	South Carolina
Delaware	Missouri	South Dakota
District of Columbia	Montana	Tennessee
Florida PSC	Nebraska	Texas
Georgia	Nevada	Utah
Idaho	New Hampshire	Vermont
Illinois	New Jersey	Virginia*
Indiana	New Mexico	Washington
Iowa	New York	West Virginia
Kansas	North Carolina	Wisconsin
Kentucky	North Dakota	Wyoming

*California PUC does not exercise jurisdiction over municipal operators

State Agencies Under Section 60106(a) Agreement (1)

*Virginia (municipal systems)

State Agencies Acting as Interstate Agents (8)

Arizona	Michigan	Ohio
Connecticut	Minnesota	Washington
Iowa	New York	

Appendix F – State Program Certification/Agreement Status

HAZARDOUS LIQUID PROGRAM

State Agencies Under Section 60105(a) Certification (14)

Alabama	Maryland	Oklahoma
Arizona	Minnesota	Texas
California (Fire Marshal)	New York	Virginia
Indiana	New Mexico	Washington
Louisiana		West Virginia

State Agencies Acting as Interstate Agents (5)

Arizona	New York	Washington
Minnesota	Virginia	

State Program	Full Name	Job Title	Phone #	E-mail Address
Alabama Public Service Commission	Wallace R. Jones, Sr.	Administrator, Gas Pipeline Safety	334-242-5780	wallace.jones@psc.alabama.gov
Arizona Corporation Commission	Robert Miller	Pipeline Safety Supervisor	602-262-5601	rmiller@azcc.gov
Arkansas Oil and Gas Commission	Gary Looney	Assistant Director	870-862-4965	gary.looney@aogc.state.ar.us
Arkansas Public Service Commission	Bobby Henry	Chief of Pipeline Safety	501-682-5716	bobby_henry@psc.state.ar.us
California Public Utilities Commission	Kenneth Bruno	Program Manager, Gas Safety and Reliability	415-703-5265	kenneth.bruno@cpuc.ca.gov
California State Fire Marshal	Bob Gorham	Division Chief - Pipeline Safety Division	562-497-9102	bob.gorham@fire.ca.gov
Colorado Public Utilities Commission	Joe Molloy	Chief, Gas Pipeline Safety	303-894-2852	joseph.molloy@state.co.us
Connecticut Department of Energy and Environmental Protection	Karl H. Baker	Public Utilities Supervisor of Technical Analysis	860-827-2661	karl.baker@ct.gov
Delaware Public Service Commission	Jerry Platt	Program Manager	302-736-7526	Jerry.platt@state.de.us
District of Columbia Public Service Commission	Udeozo Ogbue	Chief Engineer	202-626-9190	uogbue@psc.dc.gov
Florida Public Service Commission	Rick Moses	Bureau Chief Safety	850-413-6582	rmoses@psc.state.fl.us
Georgia Public Service Commission	Michelle Thebert	Director of Facilities Protection Unit	(404) 463-2765	michellet@psc.state.ga.us
Idaho Public Utilities Commission	Ellis Hire	Program Manager	208-365-0667	ellis.hire@puc.idaho.gov
Illinois Commerce Commission	Darin Burk	Pipeline Safety Manager	217-785-1165	dburk@icc.illinois.gov
Indiana Utility Regulatory Commission	Steve E. Allen	Director Pipeline Safety	(317) 232-2785	SteAllen@urc.IN.gov
Iowa Utilities Board	Donald J. Stursma	Manager, Safety & Engineering Section	515-725-7352	don.stursma@iub.iowa.gov
Kansas Corporation Commission	Leo M. Haynos	Chief of Gas Operations and Pipeline Safety	785-271-3278	l.haynos@kcc.ks.gov
Kentucky Public Service Commission	Jason Hurt	Manager, Gas Pipeline Safety Branch	502-782-2599	Jason.Hurt2@ky.gov
Louisiana Department of Natural Resources	James M. Mergist	Director of Pipelines - Office of Conservation	225-342-9137	James.Mergist@LA.GOV
Maine Public Utilities Commission	Gary A. Kenny	Gas Safety Manager	207-287-1364	gary.kenny@maine.gov
Maryland Public Service Commission	John J. Clementson, II	Assistant Chief Engineer	410-767-8111	John.Clementson@maryland.gov
Massachusetts Department of Public Utilities	Jorge Santi	Director, Pipeline Engineering & Safety Division	(617) 305-3717	jorge.santi@state.ma.us
Michigan Public Service Commission	David Chislea	Manager, Gas Operations	517-241-6132	chislead@michigan.gov
Minnesota Department of Public Safety Office of Pipeline Safety	Jon Wolfgram	Program Manager/Chief Engineer	651-201-7234	Jonathan.Wolfgram@state.mn.us
Mississippi Public Service Commission	Ricky Cotton	Director, Pipeline Safety Division	601-961-5475	Rickey.Cotton@psc.state.ms.us
Missouri Public Service Commission	Bob Leonberger	Pipeline Safety Program Manager	573-751-3456	bob.leonberger@psc.mo.gov
Montana Public Service Commission	G. Joel Tierney	Pipeline Safety Program Manager	406-444-6181	jtierney@mt.gov
NAPSR	Robert Clarillos	Administrative Manager	480-263-2260	rclarillos@gmail.com
Nebraska State Fire Marshal	Clark Conklin	Chief Deputy State Fire Marshal	402-471-9467	clark.conklin@nebraska.gov
Nevada Public Utilities Commission	Clark Stoner	Pipeline Program Manager	775-684-6139	Cstoner@puc.nv.gov
New Hampshire Public Utilities Commission	Randall S. Knepper	Director, Safety Division	603-271-6026	randy.knepper@puc.nh.gov
New Jersey Board of Public Utilities	Michael F. Stonack	Chief, Bureau of Pipeline Safety	609-341-2795	michael.stonack@bpu.state.nj.us
New Mexico Public Regulation Commission	Jason Montoya	Bureau Chief	(505) 476-0253	jasonn.montoya@state.nm.us
New York State Department of Public Service	Kevin Speicher	Program Manager/ Chief- Safety Section	315-428-5154	kevin.speicher@dps.ny.gov
North Carolina Utilities Commission	John Hall	Director, Pipeline Safety Section	(919) 218-2320	hall@ncuc.net
North Dakota Public Service Commission	Aaron Morman	Program Manager	701-220-5779	aarmorman@nd.gov
Ohio Public Utilities Commission	Peter Chace	Chief, Gas Pipeline Safety Section	614-644-8983	peter.chace@puc.state.oh.us
Oklahoma Corporation Commission	Dennis Fothergill	Manager, Gas Pipeline Safety	405-521-2258	d.fothergill@occemail.com
Oregon Public Utility Commission	Kevin Hennessy	Chief, Pipeline Safety	503-378-6115	kevin.hennessy@state.or.us
Pennsylvania Public Utility Commission	Paul J. Metro	Chief, Gas Safety Division	717-787-1063	PMETRO@pa.gov
Puerto Rico Departament of Transportation and Public Works	Pedro J. Rosa Saavedra	Acting Program Manager	787-721-8787	prosa@dtop.gov.pr
Railroad Commission of Texas	Polly McDonald	Director, Pipeline Safety Division	512-463-7008	polly.mcdonald@rrc.state.tx.us
Rhode Island Division of Public Utilities & Carriers	Don A. Ledversis	Program Manager - Gas Safety Engineer	401-780-2123	Don.Ledversis@dpuc.ri.gov
South Carolina Office of Regulatory Staff	Vernon L. Gainey	Pipeline Safety Supervisor	803-737-0914	vgainey@regstaff.sc.gov
South Dakota Public Utilities Commission	Mary Zanter	Pipeline Safety Acting Program Manager	605-295-3375	Mary.Zanter@state.sd.us
Tennessee Regulatory Authority	Annette Ponds	Chief, Gas Pipeline Safety Division	615-770-6859	annette.ponds@tn.gov
Utah Department of Commerce	Al Zadeh	Pipeline Safety Manager - Division of Public Utilities	801-530-6673	azadeh@utah.gov
Vermont Department of Public Service	GC Morris	Acting Director of Engineering Services & Chief Engineer	802-828-4073	gc.morris@state.vt.us
Virginia State Corporation Commission	Massoud Tahamtani	Director, Division of Utility and Railroad Safety	804-371-9264	massoud.tahamtani@scc.virginia.gov
Washington Utilities and Transportation Commission	Dave Lykken	Director, Pipeline Safety	360-664-1219	DLykken@utc.wa.gov
West Virginia Public Service Commission	Mary Friend	Director, Gas Pipeline Safety	304-340-0770	MFriend@psc.state.wv.us
Wisconsin Public Service Commission	Tom Stemrich	Pipeline Safety Program Manager - Natural Gas Division	608-266-2800	Thomas.stemrich@wisconsin.gov
Wyoming Public Service Commission	David W. Piroutek	Engineering Supervisor	307-777-5750	david.piroutek@wyo.gov

Last Name	First Name	Department	Position	Office Location	Office Phone	Cell Phone
Search Last Name	Search First Name	Search Department	Search Position	Search Office Location	Search Office Phone	Search Cell Phone
Adesanwo	Adebowale	PHP-70 Office of Inspector Training & Qualifications	Instructor	Oklahoma City, OK	405-686-2306	816-803-5935
Allen	Claude	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	General Engineer	Lakewood, CO	720-963-3190	303-808-0532
Anderson	Jim	PHP-50 State Programs Division	Transportation Specialist	Fuquay Varina, NC	919-762-9157	919-757-7193
Anderson	Susan	PHP-4 Financial Administration & Resource Mgmt	Management Program Analyst	Washington, DC	202-366-4358	
Anova	Felipe	PHP-4 Financial Administration & Resource Mgmt	Accountant	Washington, DC	202-366-3751	
Arnold	Jim	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Inspector	Houston, TX	713-272-2823	281-216-4459
Asebe	Tewabe	PHP-30 Standards & Rulemaking Division	Transportation Specialist	Washington, DC	202-366-5523	202-365-0226
Atkins	Molly	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Accident Coordinator	Houston, TX	713-272-2839	
Bacenty	Basim	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Inspector	Houston, TX	713-272-2838	713-294-6972
Baltor	Vanessa	PHP-60 Enforcement	Compliance Officer	Washington, DC	202-366-1389	
Barrett	David	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Operations Supervisor	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3817	816-308-3081
Barrett	Zach	PHP-50 State Programs Division	Director	Oklahoma City, OK	405-834-8344	405-834-8344
		PHP-300		Granville,	740-587-	440-

Bauman	Gerhardt	Pipeline Central Region	Inspector	OH	0275	725-7043
Bender	Jared	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	General Engineer	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3824	
Beshore	Allan	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Director	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3811	816-308-3884
Binns	Terri	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Operations Supervisor	Houston, TX	713-272-2825	281-513-3219
Blanton	Glynn	PHP-50 State Programs Division	Transportation Specialist	Thompsons Station, TN	615-368-2900	615-545-5683
Bonnett	Kristi	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	Program Assistant	Lakewood, CO	720-963-3181	303-601-2809
Breen	Anthony	PHP-100 Pipeline Eastern Region	Data Manager	Trenton, NJ	609-989-2342	609-575-4811
Brown	Brent	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	General Engineer	Lakewood, CO	720-963-3189	303-807-9633
Buff	Arthur	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern Region	CATS Manager	Atlanta, GA	404-832-1155	
Bunn	James	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Inspector	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3806	816-308-8799
Burrough	Robert	PHP-100 Pipeline Eastern Region	Inspector	Trenton, NJ	609-771-8732	267-746-0071
Butler	Karen	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Operations Supervisor	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3835	816-214-3027
Causey	Frank	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Inspector	Houston, TX	713-272-2863	832-331-4480
Chai	Nancy	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern Region	Program Assistant - Fed	Atlanta, GA	404-832-1167	
Chandler	Keith	PHP-70 Office of Inspector Training & Qualifications	Mgmt Program Analyst	Oklahoma City, OK	405-686-2330	
Chung	Sunny	PHP-60 Enforcement Division	Transportation Specialist	Washington, DC	202-366-0341	202-578-9266

Coleman	James	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	Inspector	Lakewood, CO	720-963-3188	303-324-6662
Coy	Byron	PHP-100 Pipeline Eastern Region	Region Director	Trenton, NJ	609-989-2180	609-433-2173
Coyle	Alyson	PHP-70 Office of Inspector Training & Qualifications	Mgmt Program Analyst	Oklahoma City, OK	405-686-2333	
D'Souza	Chris	PHP-100 Pipeline Eastern Region	Project Manager	Trenton, NJ	609-989-2173	202-510-6146
Dahlinger	Barbara	PHP-100 Pipeline Eastern Region	Program Assistant	Trenton, NJ	609-989-2175	
Dankanich	Alex	PHP-100 Pipeline Eastern Region	CATS Manager	Woodbine, MD	202-550-0481	202-550-0481
Daugherty	Linda	PHP-2 Office of the DAA for Field Operations	Deputy Associate Administrator	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3821	202-368-5530
DelToro	Eric	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Inspector	Kansas City, MO	816 329-3818	816-730-9744
DelVecchio	Todd	PHP-30 Standards & Rulemaking Division	General Engineer	Palm Harbor, FL	727-213-1575	
Desai	Kumar	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Inspector	Houston, TX	713-272-2850	713-314-6084
Dewey	Alan	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Student Engineer	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3814	
Dingess	Kathy	PHP-4 Financial Administration & Resource Mgmt	Managment Program Analyst	Washington, DC	202-366-3169	
Donohue	Jenny	PHP-30 Standards & Rulemaking Division	Program Assistant	Washington, DC	202-366-4046	
Dow	Angela	PHP-30 Standards & Rulemaking Division	Transportation Specialist	Washington, DC	202-366-1246	
Dunphy	Jason	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	General Engineer	Lakewood, CO	303-956-1873	303-956-1873
						202-

Dyck	Rod	PHP-60 Enforcement	Director	Washington, DC	202-366-3844	507-0950
Elmer	Joseph	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Inspector	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3807	816-527-7813
Eng	David	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Project Manager	Houston, TX	713-272-2861	281-217-9970
Evans	Rex	PHP-50 State Programs Division	Transportation Specialist	Chatham, IL	217-697-8222	217-801-8014
Finch	Thomas	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	CATS Manager	Lakewood, CO	720-963-3175	303-807-7200
Flores	David	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Project Manager	Houston, TX	713-272-2859	
Gale	John	PHP-30 Standards & Rulemaking Division	Director	Washington, DC	202-366-0434	202-527-3021
Garcia	Marion	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Inspector	Houston, TX	713-272-2835	
Gaume	Patrick	PHP-50 State Programs Division	General Engineer	The Woodlands, TX	281-419-0023	281-224-7132
Gentile	Karen	PHP-100 Pipeline Eastern Region	CATS Manager	Trenton, NJ	609-989-2252	609-433-6650
Gistand	Brian	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern Region	Inspector	Atlanta, GA	404 832-1161	
Gliebe	Stephen	PHP-100 Pipeline Eastern Region	Operations Supervisor	Trenton, NJ	609-989-2279	609-775-8257
Gooding	Leigha	PHP-20 Program Development Division	GIS Specialist	Washington, DC	202-366-0667	202-441-9086
Guisinger	Robert	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	Project Manager	Anchorage, AK	907-271-6520	907-947-6128
Haddow	John	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	General Engineer	Lakewood, CO	720-963-3184	303-807-9068
Hall	Sam	PHP-20 Program Development	Program Manager	Maidens, VA	804-556-4678	804-551-

		Division				3876
Halliday	Julie	PHP-80 Engineering & Research	General Engineer	Washington, DC	202-366-0287	703-585-5791
Hamilton	Darren	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Inspector	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3810	816-807-0212
Hassell	David	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	Engineer	Lakewood, CO	907-271-6519	
Helm	Charles	PHP-70 Office of Inspector Training & Qualifications	Instructor	Oklahoma City, OK	405-686-2323	405-431-9329
Hill	Gwendolyn	PHP-4 Financial Administration & Resource Mgmt	Team Lead	Washington, DC	202-366-4395	202-604-3821
Hindman	Gregory	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern Region	Project Manager	Atlanta, GA	404-832-1154	404-661-7179
Hoidal	Chris	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	Region Director	Lakewood, CO	720-963-3171	303-807-8833
Holohan	Vincent	PHP-80 Engineering & Research	General Engineer	Washington, DC	202-366-1933	202-360-6615
Hubbard	Dustin	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	Inspector	Lakewood, CO	720-963-3183	303-330-5537
Hulett	Michael	PHP-2 Office of the DAA for Field Operations	Program Analyst	Washington, DC	202-366-1524	202-480-4725
Hutwagner	Lori	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern Region	Data Manager	Atlanta, GA	404-832-1152	404-702-0512
Hwang	Seong	PHP-60 Enforcement	Program Analyst	Washington, DC	202-366-8188	
Ishikawa	Cynthia	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	General Engineer	Ontario, CA	909-937-7229	909-215-2020
Israni	Mike	PHP-30 Standards & Rulemaking Division	Senior Technical Advisor	Washington, DC	202-366-4571	202-330-1061
Jagger	Robert	PHP-30 Standards & Rulemaking Division	Technical Writer	Washington, DC	202-366-4361	
Johnson	Joshua	PHP-80 Engineering &	Materials Engineer	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3825	816-308-

		Research				6074
Johnson	Judy	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Inspector	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3809	816-214-1737
Johnson	Tom	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	Project Manager	Anchorage, AK	907-271-4934	907-947-4978
Kastanas	Stanley	PHP-100 Pipeline Eastern Region	Substance Abuse Director	Tyngsboro, MA	202-550-0629	202-550-0629
Katchmar	Peter	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	Accident Investigator	Cheynenne, WY	303-807-8458	303-807-8458
Keener	Blaine	PHP-2 Office of the DAA for Field Operations	National Field Coordinator	Washington, DC	202-366-0970	202-251-7766
Kenerson	Jerry	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	General Engineer	Lakewood, CO	720-963-3191	303-807-8216
Kerl	Jocelyn	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	General Engineer	Houston, TX	713-272-2846	
Khayata	Michael	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern Region	Project Manager	Atlanta, GA	404-832-1165	404-416-7742
Kichler	Bryan	PHP-70 Office of Inspector Training & Qualifications	Instructor	Oklahoma City, OK	405-686-2335	
Kieba	Max	PHP-80 Engineering & Research	General Engineer	Washington, DC	202-493-0595	202-420-9169
Klesin	Joseph	PHP-100 Pipeline Eastern Region	Project Manager		202-570-3143	202-570-3143
Kotsis	Gabriel	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern Region	Inspector	Atlanta, GA	404-832-1151	404-839-1217
Larson	Terrence	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	Operations Supervisor	Lakewood, CO	720-963-3176	303-513-7026
Lee	Kenneth	PHP-80 Engineering & Research	Director	Washington, DC	202-366-2694	202-573-1546
Lehman	David	PHP-5 Emergency Support and Security	Director	Washington, DC	202-366-4439	202-297-5537
		PHP-300			763-444-	816-

Lemmerman	Darren	Pipeline Central Region	Inspector	Home, MN	9282/816-807-2606	807-2606
Lemoi	Wayne	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern Region	Region Director	Atlanta, GA	404-832-1160	404-414-1655
Lewis	Cynthia	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Program Assistant - Fed	Houston, TX	713-272-2842	281-513-0464
Licari	Frank	PHP-5 Emergency Support and Security	General Engineer	Washington, DC	202-366-5162	202-821-6749
Little	Roger	PHP-2 Office of the DAA for Field Operations	Data Analysis	Washington, DC	202-366-4569	202-281-9423
Lopez	Agustin	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	General Engineer	Houston, TX	713-272-2844	281-513-2655
Lopez	Victor	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Inspector	Houston, TX	713-272-2848	281-686-0256
Lowry	Bill	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Project Manager	Houston, TX	713-272-2845	281-546-7618
Lynch	Karen	PHP-20 Program Development Division	Senior Program Manager (CATS Manager)	Washington, DC	202-366-6855	202-713-8861
Mahmood	Mohammed	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Inspector	Houston, TX	713-272-5100	
Manning	Jon	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Project Manager	Houston, TX	713-272-2856	281-660-8586
Marlowe	Adelheid	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	Inspector	Anchorage, AK	907-271-5261	
Marshall	Glenda	PHP-4 Financial Administration & Resource Mgmt	Administrative Assistant	Washington, DC	202-366-6570	
Martin	Don	PHP-50 State Programs Division	Coordinator	Atlanta, GA	202-251-1497	202-251-1497
Mataich	Joseph	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern Region	CATS Manager	Atlanta, GA	404-832-1159	404-434-7025

Matthews	Noah	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Inspector	Houston, TX	713-272-2857	
Mayberry	Alan	PHP-3 Office of the DAA for Policy and Programs	Deputy Associate Administrator for Policy and Programs	Washington, DC	202-366-5124	202-281-8632
McDaniel	Mary	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Operations Supervisor	Houston, TX	713-272-2847	202-510-1200
Mciver	Kay	PHP-30 Standards & Rulemaking Division	Transportation Specialist	Washington, DC	202-366-0113	
McLaren	Chris	PHP-50 State Programs Division	Transportation Specialist	Houston, TX	281-216-4455	281-216-4455
Mendoza	Juan	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Project Manager	Houston, TX	713-272-2824	281-513-2014
Merritt	James	PHP-80 Engineering & Research	Program Manager	Littleton, CO	303-683-3117	303-638-4758
Milam	Jean	PHP-4 Financial Administration & Resource Mgmt	Management Program Analyst	Washington, DC	202-493-0967	
Miller	Lane	PHP-70 Office of Inspector Training & Qualifications	Director	Oklahoma City, OK	405-686-2345	405-823-3845
Monfared	Hossein	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	General Engineer	Ontario, CA	909-937-7226	909-225-1386
Mulligan	David	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	CATS Manager	Lakewood, CO	720-963-3193	720-431-5003
Murk	David	PHP-2 Office of the DAA for Field Operations	Director	Washington, DC	202-366-3814	202-590-8719
Murphy	Donald	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern Region	Inspector	Land O Lakes, FL	404-694-8236	404-694-8236
Murphy	Eddie	PHP-5 Emergency Support and Security	Training Exercise Specialist	Washington, DC	202-366-7043	202-734-9122
Murray	Christie	PHP-20 Program Development	Program Development	Washington, DC	202-366-4996	202-617-

			Director			9438
Nanney	Steve	PHP-80 Engineering & Research	Project Manager	Houston, TX	713-272-2855	713-628-7479
Nelson	Amy	PHP-20 Program Development Division	GIS Manager	Washington, DC	202-493-0591	202-281-9414
Nelson	Jill	PHP-70 Office of Inspector Training & Qualifications	Training Information Specialist	Oklahoma City, OK	405-686-2309	
Nguyen	Hung	PHP-20 Program Development Division	Senior Program Manager	Washington, DC	202-366-0568	202-713-7913
Nguyen	Huy	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	Operations Supervisor	Lakewood, CO	720-963-3174	303-807-7883
Nguyen	Phillip	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	General Engineer	Ontario, CA	909-937-7221	909-615-0792
Obeidi	Zaid	PHP-80 Engineering & Research	General Engineer	Washington, DC	202-366-5267	
Ochs	Gregory	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Operations Supervisor	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3814	816-308-2783
Ogirima	George	PHMSA-PHP-500	Inspector	Lakewood, CO	720-963-3163	
Onwuachi	Charles	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	General Engineer	Houston, TX	713-272-2859	
Ortiz	Aurea	PHP-4 Financial Administration & Resource Mgmt	Management Program Analyst	Washington, DC	202-366-3283	
Payne	Alton	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	General Engineer	Houston, TX	713-272-2853	
Petronis	Michael	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	General Engineer	Columbus, MT	720-884-6538	720-884-6538
Pickett	Angela	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Pipeline Safety Inspector	Washington, DC	816-329-3823	816-478-8979
Pierzina	Brian	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Project Manager	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3827	816-589-8293
Powell	James	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern	Engineer	Atlanta, GA	404-832-1162	

		Region				
Prothro	James	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	General Engineer	Houston, TX	713-272-2832	
Pryor	Justin	PHP-5 Emergency Support and Security	Compliance Specialist	Washington, DC	202-366-4510	
Raisinger	Jan	PHP-5 Emergency Support and Security	Compliance Specialist	Washington	202-366-4560	
Rea	Dallas	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern Region	Project Manager	Atlanta, GA	404-832-1157	404-661-7181
Register	Dana	PHP-30 Standards & Rulemaking Division	Transportation Specialist	Washington, DC	202-366-0490	
Reineke	Ross	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	Project Manager	Lakewood, CO	720-963-3182	303-956-5981
Reynolds	James	PHP-60 Enforcement Division	General Engineer	Washington, DC	202-366-2786	202-281-9425
Rivers	Sean	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Student Engineer	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3800	
Roberson	Gene	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Inspector	Houston, TX	713-272-2851	281-686-0292
Robertson	Annmarie	PHP-20 Program Development Division	Program Manager	Indianapolis, IN	317-253-1622	317-964-1670
Rohlck	Gabriela	PHP-60 Enforcement Division	Transportation Specialist	Washington, DC	202-366-5151	
Santos	Leticia	PHP-70 Office of Inspector Training & Qualifications	Instructor	Oklahoma City, OK	405-686-2349	
Satterthwaite	Cameron	PHP-30 Standards & Rulemaking Division	Transportation Specialist	Washington, DC	202-366-1319	202-579-8769
Schoen	Alvin	PHP-100 Pipeline Eastern Region	Inspector	Trenton, NJ	609-989-2239	609-954-5197
		PHP-5				

Schoenkin	Nathan	Emergency Support and Security	Compliance Specialist	Washington, DC	202-366-4774	202-740-1978
Scott	Kenneth	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	General Engineer	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3812	
Secor	Meredith	PHP-80 Engineering & Research	General Engineer	Washington, DC	202-493-0452	202-754-2594
Seeley	Rodrick	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Region Director	Houston, TX	713-272-2852	281-513-1741
Sheets	Buddy	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Inspector	Prairieville, LA	225-677-8495	225-229-3080
Shieh	Hans	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Inspector	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3805	816-214-1299
Shoaib	Mohammed	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern Region	Project Manager	Atlanta, GA	404-832-1153	404-661-7183
Sieve	Joseph	PHP-80 Engineering & Research	General Engineer	Washington, DC	202-366-5064	202-480-0149
Small	Barry	PHP-100 Pipeline Eastern Region	Engineer	Trenton, NJ	713-272-2862	
Smallcomb	Robert	PHP-100 Pipeline Eastern Region	Inspector	Salem, MA	617-510-3275	617-510-3275
Smith	Robert	PHP-80 Engineering & Research	Program Manager	Apex, NC	919-238-4759	202-330-1132
Solem	Nathan	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	General Engineer	Home, SD	605-224-9848	816-585-7107
Spillers	Dane	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Inspector	Home, IL	(217) 546-9284	(816) 813-8733
Springer	Michael	PHP-100 Pipeline Eastern Region	General Inspector	Trenton, NH	609-771-8730	
Spruill	Russell	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	General Engineer	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3832	816-260-2906
St. Germain	Wayne	PHP-70 Office of Inspector Training &	Instructor	Oklahoma City, OK	405-686-2315	405-823-4268

		Qualifications				
St. Pierre	Gabrielle	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	General Engineer	Anchorage, AK	907-271-5285	907-947-0813
Stahoviak	Jeff	PHP-500 Pipeline Western Region	General Engineer	Lakewood, CO	720-963-3192	303-807-7046
Steiner	Leonard	PHP-50 State Programs Division	General Engineer	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3813	816-728-8552
Stephens	Clint	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Inspector	Houston, TX	713-272-2826	713-305-2705
Talukdar	Piyali	PHP-2 Office of the DAA for Field Operations	Economist	Wayland, MA	202-821-6314	202-821-6314
Taylor	Chris	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern Region	Accident Investigator	Atlanta, GA	404-832-1166	404-825-2617
Terry	Jason	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Inspector	Houston, TX	713-272-2854	281-513-1568
Thompson	Michael	PHP-50 State Programs Division	Transportation Specialist	Salem, OR	503-391-2991	503-883-3495
Turner	Derick	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern Region	Project Manager	Atlanta, GA	404-832-1156	404-414-1645
Tzamos	Bill	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern Region	Inspector	Atlanta, GA	404-832-1163	404-694-8360
Urisko	James	PHP-200 Pipeline Southern Region	Inspector	Atlanta, GA	404-832-1150	404-771-1905
Valerio	Matthew	PHP-100 Pipeline Eastern Region	Inspector	Trenton, NJ	609-989-2177	267-398-4699
Verbeck	Patricia	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Program Assistant	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3801	
Washabaugh	Catherine	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	Staff Engineer	Home, MI	(989) 686-2463	(816) 728-7945
Webb	Sharon	PHP-70 Office of Inspector Training & Qualifications	Technical Writer/Editor	Oklahoma City, OK	405-686-2319	
		PHP-100		Springfield,	202-368-	202-

Wendorff	Mark	Pipeline Eastern Region	Project Manager	VA	5512	368-5512
West	Pamela	PHP-70 Office of Inspector Training & Qualifications	Instructor	Oklahoma City, OK	405-686-2328	405-397-5553
Whetsel	Cheryl	PHP-30 Standards & Rulemaking Division	Transportation Specialist	Washington, DC	202-366-4431	
White	Nancy	PHP-3-Office of the DAA for Policy & Programs	Senior Policy Advisor	Washington, DC	202-366-1419	202-573-5909
Wiese	Jeff	PHP-1 Office of Pipeline Safety	Associate Administrator	Washington, DC	202-366-2036	202-368-5522
Wilson	Ursula	PHP-4 Financial Administration & Resource Mgmt	Management Program Analyst	Washington, DC	202-493-0074	
Winnie	Harold	PHP-300 Pipeline Central Region	CATS Manager	Kansas City, MO	816-329-3836	816-308-2586
Winslow	Carrie	PHP-50 State Programs Division	Program Specialist	Virginia Beach, VA	757-689-3168	757-619-8351
Yazemboski	Mike	PHP-100 Pipeline Eastern Region	Accident Investigator	Valencia, PA	724-898-3705	609-636-2727
York	David	PHP-400 Pipeline Southwest Region	Engineer	Houston, TX	713-272-2859	
Zimmerman	Cliff	PHP-60 Enforcement Division	Compliance Officer	Washington, DC	202-366-3351	202-579-8770

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix G

AUTHENTICATED
U.S. GOVERNMENT
INFORMATION
GPO

FEDERAL REGISTER

Vol. 78 Thursday,
No. 248 December 26, 2013

Part III

Office of Management and Budget

2 CFR Chapter I, Chapter II, Part 200, et al.
Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards; Final Rule

OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET

2 CFR Chapter I, and Chapter II, Parts 200, 215, 220, 225, and 230

Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards

AGENCY: Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget (OMB).

ACTION: Final guidance.

SUMMARY: To deliver on the promise of a 21st-Century government that is more efficient, effective and transparent, the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) is streamlining the Federal government's guidance on Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal awards. These modifications are a key component of a larger Federal effort to more effectively focus Federal resources on improving performance and outcomes while ensuring the financial integrity of taxpayer dollars in partnership with non-Federal stakeholders. This guidance provides a governmentwide framework for grants management which will be complemented by additional efforts to strengthen program outcomes through innovative and effective use of grant-making models, performance metrics, and evaluation. This reform of OMB guidance will reduce administrative burden for non-Federal entities receiving Federal awards while reducing the risk of waste, fraud and abuse.

This final guidance supersedes and streamlines requirements from OMB Circulars A–21, A–87, A–110, and A–122 (which have been placed in OMB guidances); Circulars A–89, A–102, and A–133; and the guidance in Circular A–50 on Single Audit Act follow-up. Future reform efforts may eventually seek to incorporate the Cost Principles for Hospitals in Department of Health and Human Services regulations. Copies of the OMB Circulars that are superseded by this guidance are available on OMB's Web site at *http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/circulars_default/.* The final guidance consolidates the guidance previously contained in the aforementioned citations into a streamlined format that aims to improve both the clarity and accessibility. This final guidance is located in Title 2 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

This final guidance does not broaden the scope of applicability from existing government-wide requirements, affecting Federal awards to non-Federal entities including state and local governments, Indian tribes, institutions of higher education, and nonprofit organizations. Parts of it may also apply to for-profit entities in limited circumstances and to foreign entities as described in this guidance and the Federal Acquisition Regulation. This guidance does not change or modify any existing statute or guidance otherwise based on any existing statute. This guidance does not supersede any existing or future authority under law or by executive order or the Federal Acquisition Regulation.

DATES: *Effective Date:* This guidance is effective December 26, 2013.

Applicability Date: This guidance is applicable for Federal agencies December 26, 2013 and applicable for non-Federal entities as described in this guidance.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: OMB will host an informational webcast with the Council on Financial Assistance Reform and key stakeholders. Please visit *www.cfo.gov/cofar* for further information on the time and date of the webcast and on the Council on Financial Assistance Reform. For general information, please contact Victoria Collin or Gil Tran at the OMB Office of Federal Financial Management at (202) 395–3993.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

I. Objectives and Background

A. Objectives

The goal of this reform is to deliver on the President's directives to (1) streamline our guidance for Federal awards to ease administrative burden and (2) strengthen oversight over Federal funds to reduce risks of waste, fraud, and abuse. Streamlining existing OMB guidance will increase the efficiency and effectiveness of Federal awards to ensure best use of the more than $500 billion expended annually.

This reform builds on two years of work by the Federal government and its non-Federal partners: state, and local governments, Indian tribes, institutions of higher education, nonprofit organizations, and the audit community to rethink and reform the rules that govern our stewardship of Federal dollars. The revised rules set standard requirements for financial management of Federal awards across the entire Federal government.

These reforms complement targeted efforts by OMB and a number of Federal agencies to reform overall approaches to grant-making by implementing innovative, outcome-focused grant-making designs and processes in collaboration with their non-Federal partners, in accordance with OMB guidance in M–13–17 ''Next Steps in the Evidence and Innovation Agenda''. This new guidance plays an important role in fostering these and other innovative models and cost-effective approaches by including many provisions that strengthen requirements for internal controls while providing administrative flexibility for non-Federal entities. These provisions include mechanisms such as ''fixed amount awards'' which rely more on performance than compliance requirements to ensure accountability, and allow Federal agencies some additional flexibility to waive some requirements (in addition to the longstanding option to apply to OMB to waive requirements) that impede their capacity to achieve better outcomes through Federal awards. This guidance will provide a backbone for sound financial management as Federal agencies and their partners continue to develop and advance innovative and effective practices.

This reform of OMB guidance will improve the integrity of the financial management and operation of Federal programs and strengthen accountability for Federal dollars by improving policies that protect against waste, fraud, and abuse. At the same time, this reform will increase the impact and accessibility of programs by minimizing time spent complying with unnecessarily burdensome administrative requirements, and so re-orients recipients toward achieving program objectives. Through close and sustained collaboration with Federal and non-Federal partners, OMB has developed ideas that will ensure that discretionary grants and cooperative agreements are awarded based on merit; that management increases focus on performance outcomes; that rules governing the allocation of Federal funds are streamlined, and that the Single Audit oversight tool is better focused to reduce waste, fraud, and abuse.

As set forth in Executive Order 13563 of January 18, 2011, on Improving Regulation and Regulatory Review (76 FR 3821; January 21, 2011; *http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/FR-2011-01-21/pdf/2011-1385.pdf*), each Federal agency must ''tailor its regulations to impose the least burden on society, consistent with regulatory objectives, taking into account, among other things, and to the extent practicable, the costs of cumulative regulations.'' To that end, it is important that Federal agencies identify those ''rules that may be outmoded, ineffective, insufficient, or excessively burdensome,'' and ''modify,

streamline, expand, or repeal them in accordance with what has been learned.'' This was reinforced in Executive Order 13579 of July 11, 2011 on Regulation and Independent Regulatory Agencies (76 FR 41587; July 14, 2011; *http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/FR-2011-07-14/pdf/2011-17953.pdf*).

As in other areas involving Federal requirements, this guidance follows OMB's commitment to making government more accountable to the American people while eliminating requirements that are unnecessary and reforming those requirements that are overly burdensome. Eliminating unnecessary requirements will allow recipients of Federal awards to re-orient efforts spent on compliance with complex requirements towards achievement of programmatic objectives. In order to ensure that the public receives the most value, it is essential that these programs function as effectively and efficiently as possible, and that there is a high level of accountability to prevent waste, fraud, and abuse.

This reform streamlines the language from eight existing OMB circulars into one consolidated set of guidance in the code of Federal regulations. This consolidation is aimed at eliminating duplicative or almost duplicative language in order to clarify where policy is substantively different across types of entities, and where it is not. As a result, the guidance includes sections and parts of sections which are clearly delineated by the type of non-Federal entity to which they apply. For Federal agencies, auditors, and pass-through entities that engage with multiple types of non-Federal entities in the course of managing grants, this consolidation is intended to clarify where policies are uniform or differ across non-Federal entities, protecting variances in policy where required by the unique nature of each type of non-Federal entity. This clarification will make compliance less burdensome for recipients and reduce the number of audit findings that result more from unclear guidance than actual noncompliance. Section 200.101 Applicability outlines how each subpart of the proposed guidance will apply across types of Federal awards. Following the implementation of these reforms, OMB will continue to monitor their effects to evaluate whether (and the extent to which) the reforms are achieving their desired results, and will consider making further modifications as appropriate.

B. The Development of the Reform

This proposal reflects input from more than two years of work by the Federal and non-Federal financial assistance community led by the COFAR in response to the following two Presidential Directives:

1. February 28, 2011, Presidential Memorandum on Administrative Flexibility, Lower Costs, and Better Results for State, Local, and Tribal Governments, (Daily Comp. Pres. Docs.; *http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/DCPD-201100123/pdf/DCPD-201100123.pdf*). This memorandum directs OMB to, with input from our partners and consistent with law, reduce unnecessary regulatory and administrative burdens and redirect resources to services that are essential to achieving better outcomes at lower cost. Specifically, the memorandum directs OMB to ''review and where appropriate revise guidance concerning cost principles, burden minimizations, and audits for state, local, and tribal governments in order to eliminate, to the extent permitted by law, unnecessary, unduly burdensome, duplicative, or low-priority recordkeeping requirements and effectively tie such requirements to achievement of outcomes.''

2. Executive Order 13520 on Reducing Improper Payments (74 FR 62201; November 25, 2009; *http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/FR-2009-11-25/pdf/E9-28493.pdf*). Equally as essential to a 21st-Century government as reducing burdensome requirements that promote inefficiency is strengthening accountability by ''intensifying efforts to eliminate payment error, waste, fraud, and abuse'' in Federal programs, as required by EO 13520. Accordingly, Federal agencies must ''more effectively tailor their methodologies for identifying and measuring improper payments to those programs, or components of programs, where improper payments are most likely to occur.''

In response to the President's directives above, OMB worked with the Council on Financial Assistance Reform (COFAR, more information available at cfo.gov/COFAR) to publish the February 28, 2012 Advance Notice of Proposed Guidance (ANPG available at *www.regulations.gov* under docket number OMB–2012–0002) and the February 1, 2013 Notice of Proposed Guidance (NPG available at *www.regulations.gov* under docket number OMB–2013–0001) in the **Federal Register**. Through the COFAR's review of the comments received in response to the ANPG and the NPG, it has worked to formulate and further develop reform ideas to create the 21st-Century version of financial management policy for Federal awards. The COFAR continues to be committed to engaging in outreach efforts with both Federal and non-Federal stakeholders, with respect to this reform and beyond.

OMB has adopted changes from the NPG to the final guidance as recommended by the COFAR as described in the summary of major policy reforms (Part II) and the text of the final guidance (Part III). OMB will publish additional supporting materials on the OMB Web site at *http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants_docs*.

II. Major Policy Reforms

In the ANPG and NPG, OMB invited comments from the public on all issues addressed in those notices, and further invited the public to make additional reform suggestions. The goal of both previous notices was to provide the broadest possible collection of stakeholders in the grants community with visibility on these ideas and the opportunity to participate in the discussion.

In response to each notice, OMB received more than 300 comments which were carefully considered in the development of this guidance. This section will discuss the policy reforms proposed in the NPG, the broad themes identified in the comments that were received across stakeholders, and the resulting reforms that OMB is implementing in this guidance. The vast majority of comments supported the idea of the consolidation itself and the structure of the guidance. As a result, this final guidance incorporates the proposed consolidation of eight previous sets of guidance into one. Conforming changes made throughout the document support streamlining and improve clarity of language; many of these were suggested by stakeholders during the comment period and have been incorporated, but are not specifically discussed in this preamble.

The objective of this reform is to reduce both administrative burden and risk of waste, fraud and abuse.

Reducing Administrative Burden and Waste, Fraud, and Abuse:

1. Eliminating Duplicative and Conflicting Guidance: By combining eight previously separate sets of OMB guidance into one, OMB has eliminated numerous overlapping duplicative and conflicting provisions of guidance that were written separately over many years. Beyond dealing with the administrative burden associated with understanding such guidance, non-Federal entities have faced risks of more restrictive oversight and audit findings that stem from inappropriate applications of the guidance caused by overlapping requirements. Streamlining

the guidance into one document improves consistency and eliminates of many duplicative provisions throughout. Further, as described in § 200.110 Effective Date, Federal agencies will implement this guidance in unison, which will provide non-Federal entities with a predictable, transparent, and governmentwide consistent implementation schedule. Finally, this completes a long-standing goal of co-locating all related OMB guidance into Title 2 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

2. Focusing on Performance over Compliance for Accountability: The final guidance includes provisions that focus on performance over compliance to provide accountability for Federal funds.

• Section 200.102 Exceptions notes that on a case-by-case basis, in accordance with OMB guidance in M–13–17, OMB will waive certain compliance requirements and approve new strategies for innovative program designs that improve cost-effectiveness and encourage effective collaboration across programs to achieve outcomes. The models described in OMB Memorandum 13–17 include tiered evidence grants, Pay for Success and other pay-for-performance approaches, and Performance Partnerships allowing braided and blended funding. The goals for these models include encouraging a greater share of funding to support approaches with strong evidence of effectiveness and building more evaluation into grant-making so we keep learning more about what works. In addition to these specific models, M–13–17 also encourages Federal agencies to pursue other strategies to increase cost-effectiveness in high-priority programs.

• Section 200.201 Use of Grant Agreements (Including Fixed Amount Awards), Cooperative Agreements, And Contracts includes provisions for fixed amount awards that minimize compliance requirements in favor of requirements to meet performance milestones.

• Section 200.301 Performance Measurement provides more robust guidance to Federal agencies to measure performance in a way that will help the Federal awarding agency and other non-Federal entities to improve program outcomes, share lessons learned, and spread the adoption of promising practices. The Federal awarding agency is required to provide recipients with clear performance goals, indicators, and milestones.

• Section 200.419 Cost Accounting Standards and Disclosure Statement, the threshold for IHEs to comply with Cost Accounting Standards is raised to align with the threshold in the Federal Acquisition Regulations and the process for Federal agency review of changes in accounting practices is streamlined to reduce risk of noncompliance.

• Section 200.430 Compensation—Personal Services strengthens the requirements for non-Federal entities to maintain high standards for internal controls over salaries and wages while allowing for additional flexibility in how non-Federal entities implement processes to meet those standards. In addition, it provides for Federal agencies to approve alternative methods of accounting for salaries and wages based on achievement of performance outcomes, including in approved instances where funding from multiple programs is blended to more efficiently achieve a combined outcome.

3. Encouraging Efficient Use of Information Technology and Shared Services: The final guidance updates provisions throughout to account for the efficient use of electronic information, as well as the acquisition and use of the information technology systems and services that permeate an effective and modern operating environment.

• Section 200.94 Supplies clarifies the threshold for defining personal property as a supply, and also that computing devices are subject to the less burdensome administrative requirements of supplies (as opposed to equipment) if the acquisition cost is less than the lesser of the capitalization level established by the non-Federal entity for financial statement purposes or $5,000.

• Section 200.303 Internal Controls requires non-Federal entities to take reasonable measures to safeguard protected personally identifiable information as well as any information that the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity designates as sensitive.

• Section 200.318 General Procurement Standards paragraphs (d), (e), and (f) require non-Federal entity's procurement procedures to avoid duplicative purchases and encourage non-Federal entities to enter into inter-entity agreements for shared goods and services.

• In accordance with the May 2013 Executive Order on Making Open and Machine Readable the New Default for Government Information, Section 200.335 Methods for Collection, Transmission and Storage of Information encourages non-Federal entities to, whenever practicable, collect, transmit and store Federal award-related information in open and machine-readable formats.

• Section 200.446 Idle Facilities and Idle Capacity allows for the costs of idle facilities when they are necessary to meet fluctuations in workload, as they often are when developing shared service arrangements.

• Section 200.449 Interest allows non-Federal entities to be reimbursed for financing costs associated with patents and computer software capitalized in accordance with GAAP on or after January 1, 2016.

4. Providing For Consistent and Transparent Treatment of Costs: The final guidance updates policies on direct and indirect cost to reduce administrative burden by providing more consistent and transparent treatment governmentwide.

• Section 200.306 Cost Sharing Or Matching clarifies policies on voluntary committed cost sharing to ensure that such cost sharing is only solicited for research proposals when required by regulation and transparent in the notice of funding opportunity. It may never be considered during the merit review.

• Section 200.331 Requirements For Pass-Through Entities requires pass-through entities to provide an indirect cost rate to subrecipients, which may be the de minimis rate described above, thereby further reducing potential barriers to receiving and effectively implementing Federal financial assistance.

• Section 200.413 Direct Costs makes consistent the guidance that administrative costs may be treated as direct costs when they meet certain conditions to demonstrate that they are directly allocable to a Federal award.

• Section 200.414 Indirect (F&A) Costs includes provisions that:

• Provide a de minimis indirect cost rate of 10% of MTDC to those non-Federal entities who have never had a negotiated indirect cost rate, thereby eliminating a potential administrative barrier to receiving and effectively implementing Federal financial assistance (sections 200.210 Information Contained in a Federal award, 200.331 Requirements for Pass-through entities, and 200.510 Financial Statements all require documentation of usage of this rate to allow for future evaluation of its effectiveness);

• Require Federal agencies to accept negotiated indirect cost rates unless an exception is required by statute or regulation, or approved by a Federal awarding agency head or delegate based on publicly documented justification;

• Allow for a one-time extension without further negotiation of a federally approved negotiated indirect cost rate for a period of up to 4 years.

• Section 200.433 Contingency Provisions clarifies the circumstances under which contingency costs may be included in Federal awards.

• Appendix III Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs) includes provisions that extend to all IHEs the provisions previously extended only to a few that allow for recovery of increased utility costs associated with research.

5. Limiting Allowable Costs to Make Best Use of Federal Resources: The final guidance strengthens language in certain items of cost to appropriately limit costs under Federal awards.

• Section 200.432 Conferences clarifies allowable conference spending and requires conference hosts/sponsors to exercise discretion and judgment in ensuring that conference costs are appropriate, necessary and managed in a manner that minimizes costs to the Federal award.

• Section 200.437 Employee Health And Welfare Costs eliminates the existing allowance for ''morale'' cost.

• Section 200.464 Relocation Costs Of Employees limits the previously unlimited amount of time for which a Federal award may be charged for the costs of an employee's vacant home for up to six-months.

• Section 200.469 Student Activity Costs expands to all entities the limitation on student activity costs that previously applied only to IHEs.

6. Setting Standard Business Processes Using Data Definitions: The final guidance includes provisions that set the stage for Federal agencies to manage Federal awards via standardized business process and use of consistently defined data elements. This will reduce administrative burden on non-Federal entities that must navigate the processes of multiple Federal agencies as they manage information required to implement Federal awards.

• Subpart A—Acronyms and Definitions provides standard definitions of terms present not only throughout the document, but also throughout many approved Federal information collections used to manage Federal awards.

• Section 200.203 Notices Of Funding Opportunities provides a standard set of data elements to be provided in all Federal notices of funding opportunities. This will make such notices easier for non-Federal entities to compare and understand.

• Sections 200.206 Standard Application Requirements, 200.301 Performance Measurement, 200.327 Financial Reporting, and 200.328 Monitoring And Reporting Program Performance all require Federal awarding agencies to consistently use OMB-approved standard information collections in their management of Federal awards.

• Section 200.210 Information Contained In A Federal Award provides a standard set of data elements to be provided in all Federal awards. As a result, non-Federal entities will receive a consistent set of information for each Federal award they receive, which will reduce the administrative burden and costs associated with managing this information throughout the life of the Federal award.

• Section 200.305 Payment extends to non-Federal entities previously covered by OMB Circular A–102 the existing flexibility in OMB Circular A–110 to pay interest earned on Federal funds annually to the Department of Health and Human Services, rather than ''promptly'' to each Federal awarding agency.

• Section 200.407 Prior Written Approval (Prior Approval) provides both Federal agencies and non-Federal entities with a one-stop comprehensive list of the circumstances under which non-Federal entities should seek prior approval from the Federal awarding agency.

7. Encouraging Non-Federal Entities to Have Family-Friendly Policies: Provisions in the final guidance provide flexibilities that better allow non-Federal entities to have policies that allow their employees to balance their personal responsibilities while maintaining successful careers contributing to Federal awards. Specifically, these provisions allow for policies that ease dependent care costs when attending conferences- an issue that has been as one that prevents more women from maintaining careers in science.

• Section 200.432 Conferences provides that, for hosts of conferences, the costs of identifying (but not providing) locally available child-care resources are allowable.

• Section 200.474 Travel Costs provides that temporary dependent care costs that result directly from travel to conferences and meet specified standards are allowable.

8. Strengthening Oversight: The final guidance strengthens oversight over Federal awards by requiring Federal agencies and pass-through entities to review the risk associated with a potential recipient prior to making an award (including by making better use of available audit information where appropriate), requiring disclosures conflict of interest and relevant criminal violations, expressly prohibiting profit, requiring certifications of senior non-Federal entity officials, and providing Federal agencies with strong remedies to address non-compliance.

• Sections 200.112 Conflict of Interest and 200.113 Mandatory Disclosures require non-Federal entities to disclose to Federal agencies any instances of conflict of interest or relevant violations of Federal criminal law.

• Sections 200.204 Federal Awarding Agency Review of Merit of Proposals and 200.205 Federal Awarding Agency Review of Risk Posed by Applicants combined with section 200.207 Specific Conditions require Federal awarding agencies to evaluate the merit and risks associated with a potential Federal award and to impose specific conditions where necessary to mitigate potential risks of waste, fraud, and abuse, before the money is spent.

• Section 200.303 Internal Controls moves guidance that previously was only discussed in audit requirements (which are often only considered after the funds have been spent) into the administrative requirements to encourage non-Federal entities to better structure their internal controls earlier in the process.

• Section 200.331 Requirements for Pass-Through Entities provides a similar requirement for pass-through entities to consider risks associated with subawards combined with flexibility to adjust their oversight framework based on that consideration of risk.

• Subtitle VII Remedies for Noncompliance and Subtitle VIII Closeout of Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements respectively provide Federal agencies with clear tools to manage non-compliance and efficiently closeout Federal awards.

• Section 200.400 Policy Guide expressly prohibits the non-Federal entity from earning or keeping profit resulting from Federal financial assistance unless expressly authorized by the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

• Section 200.415 Required Certifications strengthens non-Federal entity accountability by providing explicit and consistent language for required certifications that includes awareness of potential penalties under the False Claims Act.

9. Targeting Audit Requirements on Risk of Waste, Fraud, and Abuse: The final guidance right-sizes the footprint of oversight and Single Audit requirements to strengthen oversight and focus audits where there is greatest risk of waste, fraud, and abuse of taxpayer dollars. It improves transparency and accountability by making single audit reports available to

the public online, and encourages Federal agencies to take a more cooperative approach to audit resolution in order to more conclusively resolve underlying weaknesses in internal controls.

• Section 200.501 Audit Requirements raises the Single Audit threshold from $500,000 in Federal awards per year to $750,000 in Federal awards per year. This reduces the audit burden for approximately 5,000 non-Federal entities while maintaining Single Audit coverage over 99% of the Federal dollars currently covered.

• Section 200.512 Report Submission requires publication of Single Audit Reports online with safeguards for protected personally identifiable information and an exception for Indian tribes in order to reduce the administrative burden on non-Federal entities associated with transmitting these reports to all interested parties.

• Section 200.513 Responsibilities requires Federal awarding agencies to designate a Senior Accountable Official who will be responsible for overseeing effective use of the Single Audit tool and implementing metrics to evaluate audit follow-up. This section also encourages Federal awarding agencies to make effective use of cooperative audit resolution practices in order to reduce repeated audit findings.

• Section 200.518 Major Program Determination focuses audits on the areas with internal control deficiencies that have been identified as material weaknesses. Future updates to the Compliance Supplement will reflect this focus as well.

The specific reform ideas and the responses to public comments received are outlined below in three main categories:

Section A: Subparts A–E: Reforms to Administrative Requirements (the governmentwide Common Rule implementing Circular A–102; Circular A–110; and Circular A–89)

Section B: Subpart F: Reforms to Cost Principles (Circulars A–21, A–87, and A–122)

Section C: Subpart G: Reforms to Audit Requirements (Circulars A–133 and A–50

In addition, conforming changes and those for linguistic clarity are shown in supporting materials provided on the OMB Web site with this proposal (available at *http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants_docs#final).*

Section A: Subparts A–E Reforms to Administrative Requirements (The Common Rule Implementing Circular A–102); Circular A–110; and Circular A–89

This section discusses changes to the governmentwide common rule implementing Circular A–102 on Grants and Cooperative Agreements with State and Local Governments; Circular A–110 on Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Other Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals and Other Non-Profit Organizations (2 CFR part 215); and Circular A–89 on Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance. The following are major policy changes included in the final guidance.

Subpart A—Acronyms and Definitions

Subpart A lists definitions and acronyms for key terms found throughout the document. Because these terms, like the rest of the guidance, originated in eight different sets of guidance, there are many conforming changes made to harmonize the definitions with the terms that are used throughout the guidance. Some definitions reflect policy decisions as follows:

200.18 Cognizant Agency for Audit and 200.73 Oversight Agency for Audit

Commenters suggested that instead of defining the cognizant or oversight agency for audit as the Federal awarding agency that provides the most direct funding, it should be defined as the one that provides the most total funding. The suggestion that this would eliminate a potentially burdensome process of changing cognizance to allow for situations where a non-Federal entity receives most of its funding indirectly from one Federal agency, and only a small portion from another agency directly.

The COFAR considered this, but noted that even where significant portions of Federal funds are passed-through to subrecipients, the Federal agency retains a direct relationship only with a direct recipient, and relies on the pass-through entity to oversee the subaward. Further, the COFAR understands these instances to be relatively few, and in those cases where they have preferred to have a cognizant or oversight relationship, they have not found the process of negotiating a change to be burdensome. Contrary to comments reflecting a belief that the current OMB policy requires any change to be made within 30 days, changes have always been permissible at any time with notification to the Federal Audit Clearinghouse within 30 days of the change. As such, the COFAR did not recommend a change to this definition.

200.23 Contractor

Some commenters suggested that the term ''vendor'' is more appropriate and, in line with the Federal Acquisition Regulation, should be used throughout the final guidance in place of the proposed ''contractor''. The COFAR considered this but determined that contractor is more accurate in the context of guidance on how to distinguish between a contract and a grant. The COFAR believes that framing the distinction this way will better encourage Federal agencies to appropriately apply the guidance to awards for financial assistance regardless of the term they currently use to describe those awards. The COFAR recommended continued use of the term ''contractor'' throughout. As used in this guidance, the term ''contractor'' includes entities that, in other contexts, may be referred to as ''vendors''.

200.54 Indian Tribe (or ''Federally Recognized Indian Tribe'')

Existing guidance, including NPG, included Indian Tribes in the definition of a state. With the streamlined merging of the circulars and the inclusion of some guidance that is clearly intended only for either states or Indian Tribes, and in response to comments received, the COFAR found that this inclusion is no longer appropriate. As a result, the COFAR recommended that Indian Tribes, including Alaskan Natives, be separately defined as they are under existing statute.

200.94 Supplies

The definition of supplies in existing guidance includes all tangible personal property that fall below the prescribed threshold for equipment. Since, as technology improves, computing devices (inclusive of accessories) increasingly fall below this threshold, the proposed guidance made explicit that when they do, they shall be treated consistently with all other items below this level. Many commenters were highly supportive of this clarification in the proposal and indicated that it would greatly help in minimizing administrative burden. Other commenters recommended that because of the high value of the information on computing devices and because of their attractiveness to potential thieves, they should be subject to the more prescriptive oversight requirements of equipment that falls above the threshold.

The COFAR considered both views and determined that the sensitive information on computing devices could more efficiently be protected through guidance specifically on internal controls for sensitive information, rather than through prescriptive requirements for the devices themselves. Further, the COFAR considered that the prescriptive requirements that are appropriately in place for equipment over the threshold of $5,000 would create an administrative burden the cost of which would outweigh any benefits achieved by reducing the potential attractiveness of these devices to thieves. To guard against the costly burden that treating these devices as equipment would create, the COFAR recommended retaining the definition of supplies as proposed. To protect the sensitive information on these devices, the COFAR recommended new specific language on internal controls governing sensitive information (see section 200.303 Internal Controls).

200.33 Equipment

Commenters advocated for a higher threshold for equipment than $5,000. Comments suggested that particularly for large state governments with high amounts of Federal awards, and with state policies of higher capitalization thresholds in place, a higher threshold, possibly in line with the non-Federal entity's own capitalization threshold, would be more appropriate. The COFAR considered and determined that even though entities may view higher thresholds as appropriate for their own purposes, maintaining the threshold at $5,000 is important to protect the assets purchased with taxpayer dollars under Federal awards. The COFAR did not recommend raising the threshold.

2. Subchapter B: General Provisions

200.101 Applicability

Some commenters suggested at a minimum that this section in the proposal needed to be revised for clarity, and some proposed significant changes to applicability of the guidance beyond what had been proposed.

The COFAR reviewed these and recommended changes for clarity. The guidance maintains existing language stating that this guidance does not supersede any existing or future authority under law or by executive order or the Federal Acquisition Regulation. In various sections throughout the guidance, commenters noted that it would be helpful to note a policy was ''except as provided in statute''. The COFAR recommended that this language be included once in the beginning as applicable throughout.

200.102 Exceptions

Commenters suggested that this section should reflect a more active role for OMB as an arbiter of situations where non-Federal entities encounter policies that deviate from this guidance and do not appear to conform to the list of exceptions articulated. The COFAR considered this feedback, but determined that Federal agencies are responsible for implementing their programs under authorities provided specifically by statute, and are further responsible for responding to any potential concerns from their particular recipients. OMB, as the entity responsible for promulgating the governmentwide guidance, is responsible for ensuring that the policies best meet the desired goals and for providing assistance where it is needed in interpreting the guidance. As reflected in section 200.108 Inquiries, non-Federal entities should address their specific concerns to the Federal awarding agency, cognizant agency for indirect costs, or cognizant or oversight agency for audit. OMB will periodically review the guidance for effectiveness and will provide assistance interpreting the guidance upon request. In addition, new language in paragraph (d) notes that on a case-by-case basis, in accordance with OMB guidance in M–13–17, OMB will waive certain compliance requirements and approve new strategies for innovative program designs that improve cost-effectiveness and encourage effective collaboration across programs to achieve outcomes.

200.111 Effective Date

Commenters requested that OMB and the COFAR orchestrate the implementation of the final guidance in a manner that results in a smooth transition for entities that are required to comply. The COFAR considered these requests as well as past implementations of OMB guidance and recommended that Federal agencies coordinate under OMB's guidance to issue regulations or OMB-reviewed guidance in unison, which will be effective one year from the publication of this final guidance. As a result, upon implementation, this guidance will be in effect for all Federal awards or funding increments provided after the effective date. Non-Federal entities wishing to implement entity-wide system changes to comply with the guidance after the effective date will not be penalized for doing so.

The COFAR further recommended that provisions of Subpart F—Audit Requirements be effective for non-Federal entity fiscal years beginning on or after the effective date of this guidance. An auditee that conducts a biennial audit and has a biennial period beginning before the effective date of this guidance should apply the provisions of OMB Circular A–133. The requirements of Subpart F—Audit Requirements apply to any biennial periods beginning on or after the effective date of this guidance. Federal agencies must submit draft implementing regulations to OMB no later than six months from the date of publication of this guidance unless different provisions are required by statute or approved by OMB.

200.112 Conflict of Interest

Commenters suggested that the guidance is missing a broad general statement requiring standards of conduct that mitigate potential conflicts of interest in the administration of Federal awards. The COFAR concurred, but noted that many Federal agencies have specific policies on this that are appropriately tailored to the specific nature of their programs. As a result, the COFAR recommended adding language that requires Federal agencies to have policies on conflict of interest in Federal awards (in case there are any that do not) and requires non-Federal entities to disclose in writing any potential conflicts of interest (in accordance with applicable policies) to the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

200.113 Mandatory Disclosures

Commenters suggested that requirements in procurement regulations for non-Federal entities to disclose in writing any violations of Federal criminal law involving fraud, bribery, or gratuity violations in Title 18 of the United States Code have been effective measures to help prevent or prosecute instances of waste, fraud, and abuse. These commenters recommended that a similar provision be added to this guidance. The COFAR concurred with the recommendation.

Commenters also suggested that requiring two signatures on all certifications would be a similarly effective measure to guard against waste, fraud, and abuse. The COFAR considered this, but determined that due to the extensive responsibility for having expert knowledge of the non-Federal entities' cost accounting that is required in order to make the certifications as they are required now, adding this requirement for an additional person would be a significant source of administrative burden. The

COFAR did not recommend the addition.

3. Subpart C—Pre-Award Requirements

Content in the NPG from Subchapters previously designated as C—Notice of Federal Awards and D—Terms and Conditions of Federal Awards was reorganized to provide more streamlined guidance on information that is required to be provided to a non-Federal entity upon receipt of a Federal award.

200.201 Use of Grant Agreements (Including Fixed Amount Awards), Cooperative Agreements, and Contracts

In order to broaden a best practice within many Federal agencies' existing policy and to facilitate implementation of M–13–17, a recently published policy encouraging evidence-based programs, and drawing on existing policies and practices from several Federal agencies, new language has been added to the final guidance to allow for ''Fixed amount'' awards that rely more on performance than compliance for accountability. (See also Section 200.102 Exceptions and 200.430 Compensation—Personal Services.)

200.202 Requirement To Provide Public Notice of Federal Financial Assistance Programs

Comments suggested that, in order to facilitate auditor's ability to ensure that programs are correctly evaluated during audits, this section include the existing requirement for Federal agencies to include in the Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance whether or not the particular program is subject to Single Audit Requirements in Subpart F. The COFAR recommended this change. The COFAR further recommended that due to uncertain timing regarding the integration of the Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance into the System for Award Management, the name be left unchanged instead of changed to Catalog of Federal Financial Assistance as proposed.

200.203 Notices of Funding Opportunities

As discussed in the ANPG and NPG, the bulk of this section is not a policy change, but rather incorporates the existing requirement for certain categories of information to be published in announcements of public funding opportunities. See OMB Memorandum M–04–01 of October 15, 2003 (*http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/memoranda_fy04_m04-01*), announcing the **Federal Register** notice that OMB published at 68 FR 58146 (October 8, 2003).

Commenters did note that the policy change providing a minimum timeframe of 30-days for applications to be available was a helpful idea, but that the proposed timeframe was too short to be of use. Federal agencies had previously indicated that the 90-day timeframe proposed in the ANPG was too long to be practicable given the constraints they often operate under.

The COFAR considered these perspectives and recommended the final guidance require all funding opportunities to be available for application for at least 60 days, with an exception for Federal awarding agencies to make a determination to have a less than 60 day availability period but no funding opportunity should be available for less than 30 days. The recommended policy would assure a minimum timeframe that is useful to applicants, and while many Federal agencies would likely continue best practices of a longer application period, they would have the exceptions that they require under exigent circumstances.

200.204 Federal Awarding Agency Review of Merit of Proposals

The proposed guidance required that unless prohibited by Federal statute for competitive grants and cooperative agreements, Federal awarding agencies must design and execute a merit review process for applications. This section left the design of the process to the Federal awarding agencies in order to leave as much flexibility as possible to incorporate the requirements of specific programs.

This reform was received positively in the proposal, with the comment that it should be separated out from the financial risk review discussed in the following section. The COFAR considered the feedback and recommended the suggested change in organization.

200.205 Federal Awarding Agency Review of Risk Posed by Applicants

As proposed, the guidance provides latitude for Federal awarding agencies to design this review as appropriate for the program. As noted in Section 200.101 Applicability, since nothing in this guidance can supersede the requirements of Federal statute, flexibilities such as those enshrined in the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act (ISDEAA) would not be contravened by this policy. Comments suggested that this section be structured to require a ''framework'' for reviewing risk, rather than an award-by-award review, where some programs have long histories and a strong understanding of the risks associated with frequent applicants. Evidence from comments suggests that Federal agencies would likely design their risk-based framework to make best use as possible of existing resources such as Single Audit reports—which aligns with comments indicating a preference for use of existing resources from the non-Federal entity community.

The COFAR considered the comments and recommended the suggested changes. In addition, the COFAR recommended that the final guidance clarify that, as a baseline for their review, Federal awarding agencies are required by 31 U.S.C. 3321 and 41 U.S.C. 2313 to review information available through any OMB-designated repositories of governmentwide eligibility qualification or financial integrity information, such as Federal Awardee Performance and Integrity Information System (FAPIIS), Dun and Bradstreet, or ''Do Not Pay'', and also to comply with suspension and debarment requirements at 2 CFR part 180.

200.206 Standard Application Requirements

As proposed in the NPG, the guidance includes the requirement that Federal awarding agencies may only use those application information collections approved by OMB under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995 and OMB's implementing regulation in 5 CFR part 1320. Comments were generally in favor of maintaining this longstanding requirement and strengthening enforcement. In addition, OMB and the COFAR have been working closely with the Government Accountability and Transparency Board to identify opportunities for greater standardization of information collections governmentwide.

Though this is not a policy change, the COFAR endorsed it as an indicator of work by the COFAR and broader financial assistance community to further standardize governmentwide information collections. It is a further indicator of OMB's intent to authorize exceptions only on a limited basis.

200.207 Specific Conditions

This section of the final guidance was revised in response to comments received to include the list of examples of specific conditions from existing guidance that may be applied to a Federal award.

4. Subpart D—Post-Award Requirements

Subtitle I Standards for Financial and Program Management

200.301 Performance Measurement

In this section, commenters expressed concern about the longstanding requirement to relate performance to financial information whenever practicable. This language was not a change from existing policy, but in response to concerns, the COFAR recommended clarifications that this requirement will be met through use of governmentwide standard information collections, and notes that further requirements are as appropriate in accordance with those collections. This means that, for the research community where there are standard information collections for performance that, in accordance with the ''where practicable'' aspect of the guidance, do not relate financial information to performance data, there will be no such requirement.

200.302 Financial Management

Some commenters suggested that to strengthen financial management, non-Federal entities should be required to maintain separate bank accounts for each Federal award. The COFAR considered this but determined that doing so would be excessively administratively burdensome for non-Federal entities, and is not necessary to assure accountability as long as non-Federal entities have appropriate records that meet the standards as described in the guidance. The COFAR recommended further edits to better streamline this section of the guidance on financial management that was previously more scattered throughout the guidance, such as incorporating documentation standards previously in the audit requirements into this section.

200.303 Internal Controls

In response to comments that suggested that efforts to mitigate risks of waste, fraud, and abuse would be strengthened by a more explicit reference to existing internal control requirements issued by the Government Accountability Office (GAO) and the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO), the COFAR recommended including this new section of the guidance which makes explicit non-Federal entity's responsibilities with regard to effective internal controls. In response to comments expressed regarding controls over sensitive information, the COFAR recommended adding language to make explicit a non-Federal entity's responsibility for safeguarding protected personally identifiable information (PII) and information designated as sensitive. This new language will result in stronger policies for protecting this information across Federal awards.

200.305 Payment

Comments noted with concern that the proposal included language from OMB Circular A–102 which required entities to remit interest payments due to Federal agencies promptly across multiple agencies. The final guidance reinstates and expands applicability of existing language from OMB Circular A–110 that instructs non-Federal entities to remit interest earned on Federal awards annually to the Department of Health and Human Services Payment Management System. This will result in a much less burdensome annual payment process.

In addition, this section has been revised to more accurately reflect the requirements in 31 U.S.C. chapter 65 and implementing Treasury Department regulations in 31 CFR Part 205 Rules And Procedures For Efficient Federal-State Funds Transfers. All requirements for payments to states are set forth in 31 CFR Part 205. Accordingly, the payment section now covers payments to states in paragraph (a) and refers to the Treasury requirements. Payment requirements for other non-Federal entities are set forth in the rest of the section.

200.306 Cost Sharing or Matching

Many comments were supportive of the proposed language stating that voluntary committed cost sharing is not expected under Federal research proposals and is not to be used as a factor in the review of applications or proposals. Federal agencies recommended adding that such cost sharing may be considered when in accordance with regulation and included in the notice of funding opportunity. In addition, commenters suggested that the final guidance incorporate existing guidance that only mandatory cost sharing or cost sharing specifically submitted in the project budget shall be included in the organized research base for computing indirect (F&A) costs for research projects. The COFAR considered the feedback and recommended the addition.

Subtitle III Procurement Standards

Subtitle III Procurement Standards takes the majority of the language from OMB Circular A–102. In the NPG, OMB requested comments on whether the inclusion of this language would be administratively burdensome for non-Federal entities currently subject to A–110. Responses indicated that it could be, and pointed to a few specific areas recommending refinement. The COFAR recommended keeping the A–102 language over the A–110 language because it considered this language to be better able to mitigate the risk of waste, fraud, and abuse. In response to the comments received, the COFAR recommended the specific changes described as follows.

200.318 General Procurement Standards

Commenters were concerned about possible administrative burden resulting from the requirement in paragraph (b) to maintain a contract administration system that ensures contractors perform in accordance with the terms, conditions and specifications of their contracts and delivery orders. The COFAR considers this to be a requirement that already exists in OMB Circular A–110, just perhaps not recognized due to different language. The COFAR recommended clarifying the language to require non-Federal entities to maintain ''oversight'' rather than a ''system'' to eliminate potential confusion over the standards of the system and to conform more explicitly to existing guidance.

Commenters recommended that the conflict of interest language found in paragraph (c) of this section be expanded to provide guidance on conflicts of interest for Federal awards more broadly. The COFAR considered this, but found that many Federal agencies already have conflict of interest policies, and these are fairly specific and vary by Federal agency. The COFAR recommended treating conflict of interest more broadly separately as described in section 200.112 Conflict of Interest, and also recommended expanding the conflict of interest guidance in this section to include organizational conflict of interest. This expansion will require non-Federal entities to have strong policies preventing organizational conflicts of interest which will be used to protect the integrity of procurements under Federal awards and subawards.

Commenters were concerned that language in the NPG requiring a review of proposed procurement methods by Federal awarding agencies would add an unnecessary layer of administrative burden to the process. The COFAR concurred and recommended that the language be removed from the final guidance.

Language in paragraphs (d), (e), and (f) is longstanding language which has always encouraged state and local governments subject to A–102 to avoid duplicative purchases and to enter into common procurements to promote efficient use of Federal awards. Comments recommended strengthening the language in light of OMB's 2012 Shared Services Strategy for Federal agencies encouraging the use of ''shared services'' for increased efficiency. The COFAR recommended strengthening the language in line with comments received. Additional changes as noted below in the cost principles are further intended to facilitate these types of arrangements.

Commenters were concerned that the requirement in paragraph (i) requiring the maintenance of records sufficient to detail the history of performance would similarly create administrative burden. The COFAR considered this requirement to be an important one for documenting the integrity of the transaction and recommended it be retained.

Commenters were concerned that language in the NPG, which required information concerning any protests of a procurement to be provided to the Federal awarding agency, would create an unnecessary layer of administrative burden to that process. The COFAR concurred, and that language has been removed from the section.

200.319 Competition

Commenters were concerned that language this section, which prohibits the use of geographic preference in solicitations, would put some non-Federal entities in conflict with the requirements of state law in some cases where state laws require such preferences. The COFAR considered this, but ultimately determined that such preferences could result in the non-Federal entity not making the most efficient possible use of the funds received under a Federal award, and so recommended the language remain unchanged. Where there is a conflict between state or tribal law and this guidance as implemented in regulation with respect to the administration of a Federal award, this Federal guidance prevails.

200.320 Methods of Procurement To Be Followed

Commenters were concerned that the methods of procurement this section might be overly proscriptive and might prevent entities from making purchases from specific contractors where such purchases were necessary, especially for example, for the integrity of a research project. The COFAR considered the language and recommended that with minor clarifications these methods, which include sole source procurements with justification, be retained as they should be inclusive enough to account for such situations.

200.322 Procurement of Recovered Materials

The COFAR also recommended including language in paragraph (f) on the procurement of recovered material to reiterate non-Federal entities' obligations under section 6002 of the Solid Waste Disposal Act, as amended by the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act.

Subtitle IV Performance and Financial Monitoring and Reporting

200.328 Monitoring and Reporting Program Performance

Some language in this section that had been included in the NPG aligning requirements with those in OMB Circular A–11 were found by Federal agencies to be overly broad, and have instead been replaced by more narrow language in section 200.102 Exceptions. The more specific language is designed to encourage evidence based program design.

The final guidance also includes language from existing guidance that had been dropped from the NPG noting that reporting should not be required more frequently than quarterly. In addition, similar language to that in section 200.501 on Standards for Performance and Financial Management notes that performance reports are subject to the Paperwork Reduction Act requirements and should use OMB-approved governmentwide information collections.

200.329 Reporting on Real Property

The language in this section is based on the supplementary information provided in the purpose section of the Final Notice of the Real Property Status Report (RPSR) form SF–429 available at 75 FR 56540 published September 16, 2010.

Subtitle V Subrecipient Monitoring and Management

This section was proposed in the NPG as section 200.501, but the COFAR recommended it be reordered in the final guidance for a more logical flow of post-award requirements.

200.331 Requirements for Pass-Through Entities

Many commenters were concerned that this section could expand the monitoring requirements for subrecipients significantly and result in increased administrative burden. In addition to re-ordering certain elements of the NPG language for clarity as some commenters suggested, the COFAR recommended the following further modifications:

In paragraph (a), data elements that are required to be included in subawards are aligned with those required to be included by Federal awarding agencies in Federal awards in section 200.210 Information Contained In A Federal Award.

Comments on the proposed language requiring pass-through entities to include an indirect cost rate in the subaward were highly positive, but suggested that the de minimis rate as outlined in section 200.414 Indirect (F&A) Costs should be higher. Commenters were concerned that pass-through entities might decline to negotiate, and this would make the de minimis rate more likely a de facto rate for subrecipients. The COFAR considered this feedback but determined that as an automatic rate without any review of actual costs, the rate should remain at the conservative levels discussed in that section to protect the Federal government against excessive over reimbursement.

Comments noted concern that as stated the language broadened pass-through entity responsibility for monitoring subrecipients particularly with respect to audit follow-up. The COFAR recommended modifications to clarify that the required monitoring of subrecipients is limited to reviewing any performance and financial reports that the pass-through entity has decided to require in order to meet their own requirements under the terms and conditions of the Federal award, following up, ensuring corrective action, and issuing management decisions on weaknesses found through audits only when those findings pertain to Federal award funds provided to the subrecipient from the pass-through entity. This is consistent with existing requirements. Language is further modified to clarify that pass-through entities must only verify, rather than ensure, that a subrecipient has an audit as required by Subpart F Audit Requirements. As a result of these clarifications, the requirements for subrecipient monitoring are substantively unchanged from existing guidance.

Subtitle VI Record Retention and Access

200.333 Retention Requirements for Records

The final guidance maintains and clarifies the existing requirement that records be retained for three years from the date of submission of the final expenditure report. The COFAR considered alternative scenarios proposed by commenters, and recommended that the proposed language be retained. The COFAR noted that this length can be extended if required by statute or with an exception from OMB, but that in most cases it is sufficient.

200.335 Methods for Collection, Transmission and Storage of Information

In addition, in response to the May 2013 Executive Order on Making Open and Machine Readable the New Default for Government Information, as well as to comments requesting that the guidance in general be updated to reflect 21st century methods of communicating, the COFAR recommended a new paragraph be added. The new paragraph (c) adds language on methods for the collection, transmission, and storage of information, which combines language that had been previously scattered throughout the guidance to make clear that electronic, open, machine readable information is preferable to paper, as long as there are appropriate and reasonable internal controls in place to safeguard against any inappropriate alteration of records.

Subtitle VII Remedies for Noncompliance

200.338 Remedies for Noncompliance

Commenters suggested that this section, which was titled ''Termination and Enforcement'' in the NPG, should be expanded to more accurately describe the actions that could be taken under enforcement. The COFAR recommended this change.

200.339 Termination

Commenters suggested that language should be added to allow for Federal agency termination for cause, because situations often arise beyond the Federal agency's or non-Federal entity's control which may require awards to be terminated. This language would prove useful in situations like those encountered during implementation of the Recovery Act or Sequestration, where congressional mandates encouraged expedited performance, or changes to appropriated amounts require modifications to programs. The COFAR recommended these additions.

200.343 Closeout

The proposal included expanded guidance on closeout, to help strengthen Federal agencies policies for this process in line with OMB's July 2012 Controller Alert. Commenters recommended this language be modified to extend the closeout period for an award from 180 days to the more realistic timeframe of one year, in addition to the clarifying language that non-Federal entities have 90 days from the end date of the period of performance to submit all final reports, and also to clarify that the one-year period begins once final reports have been received from the non-Federal entity. The COFAR recommended the addition.

200.344 Post-Closeout Adjustments and Continuing Responsibilities

Commenters suggested that language be added to limit the period when Federal agencies may disallow costs to within the three-year record retention period required under section 506 Record Retention and Access. The COFAR recommended the addition.

200.345 Collection Of Amounts Due

As with section 200.343 Post-Closeout Adjustments and Continuing Responsibilities, commenters recommended language to limit the collection period to within the three-year record retention period required under section 200.333 Retention Requirements for Records. The COFAR noted that the Federal government has the right to collect amounts due at any point, and while recognizing that a determination of disallowance should be made within the record retention period, did not recommend the addition in this section.

Section B: Subpart E and Appendices III–VIII: Cost Principles. Reforms to Cost Principles (Circulars A–21, A–87, and A–122)

This section discusses proposed changes to the OMB cost-principle circulars that have been placed at 2 CFR Parts 220, 225, and 215 (Circulars A–21, Cost Principles for Educational Institutions; Circular A–87, Cost Principles for State, Local and Indian Tribal Governments; and Circular A–122, Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations). The COFAR considered adding the hospital cost principles to the guidance, but decided that doing so would require in depth further review that would be best done as part of a separate process at a later date.

200.400 Policy Guide

Commenters requested that the final guidance include language which was previously included in OMB Circular A–21 to address the dual role of students in research at IHEs. The COFAR recommended that a slightly updated version of the language be included.

Other commenters suggested that to better mitigate the risks of waste, fraud, and abuse, the final guidance include language to make explicit that non-Federal entities are not permitted to earn or keep any profit resulting from Federal awards, unless expressly authorized by the applicable award conditions. The COFAR recommended the language be included.

200.401 Application

At the suggestion of commenters, the COFAR recommended this section include additional language to clarify that when a non-Federal entity has a Cost Accounting Standards (CAS) covered contract subject to the requirements of 48 CFR 995, those requirements do not automatically extend beyond the covered contract to other awards, though the non-Federal entity is required to maintain consistent application of cost accounting standards.

200.407 Prior Written Approval (Prior Approval)

In response to comments, the COFAR recommended the title of this section be changed from ''Advance Understanding'' to more closely mirror the language used in the guidance. In addition, a list of instances of sections that discuss conditions under which prior approval is required is included to ensure that these requirements are transparent and to reduce burden by providing both Federal agencies and non-Federal entities a complete listing of where all these types of requirements may be found.

200.413 Direct Costs

Paragraph (d) includes the language in this section that was proposed as a change to clarify the circumstances under which it is allowable to directly charge administrative support Costs. This language was proposed in order to address an ongoing inconsistency in the definition of direct costs; which required administrative costs to be charged indirectly but otherwise provided that costs are direct when they may be specifically allocated to one award; regardless of what activities they support.

Many commenters were supportive of the change with some concerns about

the way it was proposed. Some commenters were concerned that the conditions as originally articulated were not sufficiently clear for auditors to determine whether a directly charged administrative cost was allowable or not. Other commenters were concerned that the requirement to have these costs approved in the budget was more restrictive than otherwise standard rebudgeting practices and would unduly constrain implementation. The COFAR considered the issue and recommended adding explicit language to clarify that when these costs are allowable, they must have the prior approval of the Federal awarding agency. Additional language was added to allow for this approval after the initial budget approval in order to allow for flexibility in implementation. The clarified language addresses both sets of concerns; clarifying conditions for allowability while providing additional flexibility in project management.

200.414 Indirect (F&A) Costs

In response to a wide range of feedback from diverse stakeholders, Section 615 Indirect Costs contained a number of proposals for making indirect costs more transparent and consistent for non-Federal entities. These were well received by most stakeholders who submitted comments, and have mostly been retained as proposed, with some modifications.

Language in paragraph (c) provides for the consistent application of negotiated indirect cost rates, and articulates the conditions under which a Federal awarding agency may use a different rate. These conditions include approval of the Federal awarding agency head (as delegated per standard delegations of authority) based on documented justification, the public availability of established policies for determinations to use other than negotiated rates, the inclusion of notice of such a decision in the announcement of funding opportunity, as well as in any pre-announcement outreach, and notification to OMB of the decision. Comments received regarding these proposals were mostly positive, and indicated that these provisions would likely lead to greater consistency, and transparency in the application of indirect cost rates governmentwide. Some commenters recommended that for even greater consistency decisions about the use of rates be subject to OMB approval rather than Federal agency approval. The COFAR considered this, but ultimately recommends that responsibility for administering Federal financial assistance programs continue to rest with the Federal awarding agencies, and that the conditions set by OMB for these determinations are stringent enough to ensure that they do not occur without strong justification. The COFAR did not recommend the change.

Language in paragraph (f) provides that any non-Federal entity that has never had a negotiated indirect cost rate may use a de minimis rate of 10% of modified total direct costs. Commenters recommended that this rate should be higher—either at 15% or 20% respectively. They were concerned that because for smaller organizations the capacity to conduct full negotiations is often out of reach, this rate will most likely be the de facto rate rather than the de minimis rate. The COFAR considered the possibility of raising this rate, but ultimately recommended that as an automatic de minimis rate without analysis of actual costs it should stay at a conservative level in order to minimize the possibility that the Federal government over reimburse for these costs. Additional comments also suggested that to further reduce burden for both recipients and the Federal government, this de minimis rate be allowable for use indefinitely, and the COFAR concurred.

Language in paragraph (g) provides an option for entities with an approved federally negotiated indirect cost rate to apply for a one-time extension without further negotiation subject to the approval of the negotiating Federal agency. Commenters responded positively to this option, though some suggested that the extension period be longer, or that additional extensions be allowable. The COFAR considered these, but found it important to renegotiate after an initial 4-year extension period to ensure that such rates continue to be based on actual costs. The COFAR recommended this provision remain as proposed.

200.415 Required Certifications

Comments recommended that in order to better mitigate risks of waste, fraud, and abuse, required certification language be strengthened to include specific language acknowledging the statutory consequences of false certifications. The COFAR concurred with the recommendation.

200.419 Cost Accounting Standards and Disclosure Statement

The NPG proposed deleting the requirements that apply only to IHEs to comply with the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) Cost Accounting Standards (CAS) and to file a Disclosure Statement when their Federal awards total $25 million or more. Some commenters responded favorably that this would reduce a source of administrative burden, but others were concerned, stating that this disclosure statement was a critical tool to mitigating waste, fraud, and abuse and opposed its elimination. Since the most likely source of burden occurs when an entity crosses the threshold for the first time, the COFAR recommended reinstating the requirement at the new threshold of $50 million to be consistent with current FAR requirements.

The COFAR further noted that for most IHEs that have already passed the threshold, the biggest source of burden associated with these requirements arises from uncertainty when awaiting Federal agency approval for a submitted change in a Disclosure Statement. In response, instead of requiring Federal agency approval for changes, the COFAR recommended the final guidance require only that non-Federal entities submit their changes six months in advance of implementing a change. If they receive no indication of an extension of the review period or of concern from a Federal agency, they may proceed with the implementation without further delay. The COFAR's recommended solution would thus continue to require use a valuable tool for mitigating risks of waste, fraud, and abuse while eliminating key sources of administrative burden and uncertainty for non-Federal entities that can lead to unnecessary audit findings.

Subtitle VI General Provisions for Selected Items of Cost

Some commenters noted concern that the current item of cost for ''Communication costs'' had been deleted from the proposed guidance. The COFAR considered this, but considered communications costs to be straightforward enough to be easily covered by the guidance in Subtitle II: Basic Considerations. The COFAR notes that all items not specifically covered in the items of cost are subject to the guidance in Subtitle II Basic Considerations, and that this section should be read as a guiding framework for all specific discussions of cost in the section that follow.

200.421 Advertising and Public Relations

Commenters noted that it was important that costs relating to advertising and public relations allow for costs of advertising program outreach and other specific costs necessary to meet the requirements of the federal award. The COFAR recommended the addition.

200.422 Advisory Councils

Commenters were concerned that the proposed guidance disallowed previously allowable costs for documented advisory council costs that benefited a federal award.

The COFAR reviewed the language and noted that the revised language is clarifying in nature and does not substantively change the existing requirements, noting that these costs are still allowable with prior approval from the Federal awarding agency. The COFAR did not recommend a change.

200.425 Audit Services

Commenters recommended that this section be clarified to include reference to a non-Federal entity's fiscal year in noting that when Federal awards total less than $750,000 the non-Federal entity is exempted from having a single audit. The commenters wanted the addition of the fiscal year clause in order to be consistent with Subpart F. The COFAR recommended the addition.

Commenters noted concern for language which stated that other audit costs were allowable if included in an approved cost allocation plan or an indirect cost proposal, or if it was approved by the Federal awarding agency as a direct cost to the Federal award.

Upon further review, the COFAR notes that though this language allowing costs of other audits has been in place for years, it is not consistent with the Single Audit Act, and so recommended deleting it. Instead, the COFAR recommends language that allows the costs of a financial statement audit for a non-Federal entity that does not currently have a Federal award when included in the indirect cost pool as part of a cost allocation plan or indirect cost proposal. These audits may be useful to the Federal agency negotiating an indirect cost rate, and the COFAR does not believe them to be in conflict with the Single Audit Act.

The COFAR further recommends clarification that agreed-upon-procedures are defined in section 2(A) of the GAGAS attestation standards, and this section will be aligned with the types of compliance requirements in the compliance supplement once updated.

200.428 Collections of Improper Payments

The COFAR recommends that the last sentence of this section, which describes the collection of improper payments when time elapses between the collection of funds from entities and their expenditure, be deleted because it is redundant and duplicates what is said in section 200.305 Payment, which is also cross-referenced. The result is more streamlined language that articulates the requirement more clearly.

200.430 Compensation—Personal Services

The COFAR began review of these requirements under this reform effort based on feedback that the existing requirements had become extremely administratively burdensome, and as written, the guidance did not allow for advances in technology, record keeping, and internal controls, which allow non-Federal entities to document these costs in increasingly efficient and sophisticated ways. In addition, the COFAR considered the long-term goal of tying justification for salaries to the achievement of programmatic objectives rather than measurement of effort (hours) expended. Though such performance-oriented reporting is not currently possible across the diverse suite of Federal assistance programs, the advances noted above allow for alternatives to the current requirements that can provide an even higher standard of accountability without burdensome process requirements. The COFAR received many comments on this proposed language indicating that the changes had potential for positive impact but recommended modifications to the proposed language.

Comments suggested that language be added to include more detail as to the general explanation of what compensation for personal services is allowable.

The COFAR considered the current level of detail to be sufficient, especially since any personal services not listed in this section would be addressed in section 200.431 Compensation—Fringe Benefits.

Commenters suggested that compensation surveys providing data representative of the labor market involved were inferior to the other methods described in the NPG for evaluating the reasonableness of compensation for personal services. Others commented that with regard to the basis for salary rates, unless there is prior approval by the Federal awarding agency, charges of a faculty member's salary to a Federal award should not exceed the proportionate share of the institutional base salary for the period during which the faculty member worked on the award.

The COFAR recommended additions to support both proposals.

Commenters recommended deleting the specific reference to conflict of interest policies, noting that there is no reason to highlight any one institutional policy in this section over others. They also recommended deleting the rest of the section allowing Federal agencies to negotiate alternative arrangements when non-Federal entity policy is deemed inadequate. Commenters also recommended the deletion language which provided special consideration in determining allowability for any change in the non-Federal entity's compensation policy because they found it redundant to other language describing the compensation for personal services and the reasonableness with which these services need to be proven in order for compensation to be expected.

The COFAR concurred with the recommended deletion of conflict of interest policy but did not recommended further changes on special considerations which they found to provide important provisions that mitigate the risks of waste, fraud, and abuse.

Another comment recommended deletion of language on allowable incentive compensation because the commenter believed this provision has resulted in cost disallowances and is burdensome. The COFAR disagreed and recommended that the section stay the way it was originally proposed.

Comments noted with concern that that nonprofit organizations are not subject to the same rules as other types of non-Federal entities. The COFAR considered that due to the unique facets of nonprofit organizations, these flexibilities are important, and recommended that paragraph (g) stay the way it was originally proposed.

Commenters proposed major changes to paragraph (h), which provides provisions specific to IHEs describing conditions that require special consideration and possible limitations in determining allowable compensation costs. They recommended re-organization of the section for clarity and an explicit recognition of Institutional Base Salary rate (a type of policy most IHEs have well defined) instead of references to a more loosely defined ''base rate''. The COFAR concurred and recommended most of the suggested changes.

Many diverse stakeholders submitted comments on paragraph (i) Standards for Documentation of Personnel Expenses (also known informally as ''time and effort reporting''). Many agreed on the need for clearer standards of the internal controls around these charges. Many commenters also requested additional flexibility in how these standards could be implemented, while others recommended stricter uniformity in the provision of specific

certification language that would better prevent and facilitate prosecution of fraud. Some commenters that allowance for costs based on estimates could result in a lack of sufficient documentation that the costs were in accordance with the work performed.

The COFAR agreed with the recommendations on the risks in this area and the need for a strong system of internal controls to document compliance. This final guidance requires non-Federal entities to comply with a stringent framework of internal control objectives and requirements. The guidance also requires that when interim charges are based on budget estimates, the non-Federal entity's system of internal controls must include processes to ensure necessary adjustments are made such that the final amount charged to Federal awards is proper.

The COFAR considered recommendations from commenters to include specific certification language, but was concerned that requiring specific language at this level would result in audit findings more likely to be based on incorrect documentation rather than uncovering weaknesses in internal control or instances of fraud. Further, the COFAR notes that other certifications included by recipients in their applications and indirect cost rate agreements provide a layer of assurance that can be used in preventing and prosecuting instances of fraud.

The COFAR believes this focus on overall internal controls provides greater accountability as the non-Federal entity must ensure that the total internal control system for documenting personal expenses provides proper accountability and the auditor must test these internal controls as part of the Single Audit requirements in Subpart F. While many non-Federal entities may still find that existing procedures in place such as personal activity reports and similar documentation are the best method for them to meet the internal control requirements, this final guidance does not specifically require them. The focus in this final guidance on overall internal controls mitigates the risk that a non-Federal entity or their auditor will focus solely on prescribed procedures such as reports, certifications, or certification time periods which alone may be ineffective in assuring full accountability.

While this approach may increase burden on non-Federal entities with weak internal controls, the COFAR believes overall it will reduce burden by providing non-Federal entities the ability to implement the internal control systems and business processes that best fit a non-Federal entity's needs. Also, placing requirements at the internal control objective level is consistent with the requirements in section 200.303 Internal Controls. Specifically, the COFAR recommended stating explicitly that charges to Federal awards for salaries and wages must be based on records that accurately reflect the work performed. Further clarifications describe the required controls in more detail.

The COFAR received positive feedback on proposed language that provided for Federal agencies to approve alternative methods where proposals are submitted that are more performance oriented or in instances of approved blended funding and recommended it be retained.

The combined result of these changes is that non-Federal entities have clear high standards for maintaining a strong system of internal controls over their records to justify costs of salaries and wages, and also additional flexibility in the processes they use to meet these standards. This should allow them to be more accountable for these costs at less expense.

200.431 Compensation—Fringe Benefits

Commenters recommended eliminating a requirement for awarding agency pre-approval for insurance payments based on consistent entity policy for actual payments to or on behalf of employees or former employees for unemployment compensation or workers' compensation. The COFAR agreed and recommends removing the language.

Based on recommendations from diverse comments, the COFAR recommended clarification of the applicability of GAAP to entities using accrual based accounting. The COFAR also recommends that prior approval by the Federal awarding agency or cognizant agency be given before an indirect cost is charged to the Federal award for abnormal or mass severance pay.

Federal agencies recommended that all severance in excess of normal severance policy in accordance with institutional policy or other conditions for allowability discussed in the guidance should be unallowable, not just golden parachute packages. The COFAR recommended the proposed changes to prevent excessive severance payments.

Finally, many commenters commended the inclusion of family-related leave among the examples of types of leave that may be allowed according to the non-Federal entity's written policies. The COFAR recommended keeping this language as proposed.

200.432 Conferences

The language from the proposed item of costs for External Meetings and Conferences has been clarified to better articulate the limits on the types of gatherings for which these costs are allowable. In addition, the language clarifies that the costs of identifying, but not providing, locally available dependent care options for attendees are allowable. The result is that non-Federal entities have clear limits around conference spending which should limit these costs appropriately.

Further, without adding significant cost, the policy encourages family-friendly practices that will better enable employees of non-Federal entities with dependent care responsibilities to progress in their careers. This is an outcome which was noted in comments as one that is essential for advancing the careers of women in science, technology, engineering and math. Similar outcomes are supported by reforms to 200.474 Travel Costs and 200.431 Compensation—Fringe Benefits.

200.433 Contingency Provisions

Many commenters noted that this proposed section made positive and helpful clarifications which enable a better understanding of how contingency costs may be budgeted and charged. Some commenters recommended additional provisions for further clarity on the types of costs that are allowable for contingencies, and recommended additional controls on how Federal agencies provide oversight over these funds as part of their Federal awards. In particular, commenters suggested adding a requirement to track funds that are spent as contingency funds throughout the non-Federal entity's records.

The COFAR reviewed the language, and concluded that it does provide sufficient controls to Federal agencies to manage Federal awards. The COFAR noted that: (i) though a diversity of techniques are available to establish contingency estimates, the estimates must be based on broadly-accepted cost estimating methodologies, (ii) budgeted amounts would be explicitly subject to Federal agency approval at time of award, (iii) funds would not be drawn down unless in accordance with all the other applicable provisions of this guidance (such as Subtitle II Basic Considerations), and (iv) actual costs incurred must be verifiable from the non-Federal entity's records. The

COFAR considered this last requirement to be sufficient for tracking the use of funds, as contingency funds should most properly be charged not as ''contingency funds'' specifically, but according to the cost category into which they would naturally fall. The COFAR did not recommend any changes to the proposed language.

200.434 Contributions and Donations

Comments suggested that the value of a donated item, whether it is a good or a building, should not be charged to a Federal award as either a direct or indirect cost.

The COFAR concurred and recommended changes accordingly. The COFAR also recommended clarifying that depreciation on donated assets is permitted in accordance with 200.436 Depreciation, as long as the donated property is not counted towards cost sharing or matching requirements. The COFAR also recommended consolidation of much this section with section 200.306 Cost Sharing Or Matching.

200.435 Defense and Prosecution of Criminal and Civil Proceedings, Claims, Appeals and Patent Infringements

Commenters recommended that that all costs related to defense of criminal, civil, or administrative proceedings should be completely unallowable, regardless of disposition.

The COFAR considered this but recommended keeping the language as it was originally proposed in order to preserve a wrongly accused defendant's ability to charge the Federal award for legal costs related to charges or claims for which the defendant ultimately receives a favorable disposition.

200.436 Depreciation

Commenters suggested that allowable compensation for the use of their buildings, capital improvements, equipment, and software projects should be based on capitalization in accordance with GAAP instead of the Government Accounting Standards Board Statement Number 51.

The COFAR agreed and recommended changing the language to reflect this change. The COFAR also recommend adding clarification that an asset donated to the non-Federal entity by a third party will have its fair market value documented at the time of the donation and shall be considered as the acquisition cost. Such assets may be depreciated or claimed as matching but not both.

Commenters noted that proposed language on depreciating assets donated by a third party would prevent recipients from recovering depreciation on assets that might be purchased under non-Federal awards, but nevertheless used at least in part to support a Federal award. This exclusion would discourage efficiencies to Federal awards that could otherwise be gained through shared use of these assets. The COFAR agreed and recommended the proposed change.

200.437 Employee Health and Welfare Costs

Commenters suggested that allowing costs to improve ''morale'' in this item as proposed would be difficult to distinguish from the language in the following item that disallows entertainment costs, potentially resulting in opportunities for waste, fraud, and abuse.

The COFAR concurred and, to better mitigate these risks recommended eliminating references to morale, limiting this item to those for Health and Welfare as established in the non-Federal entity's documented policies.

200.438 Entertainment Costs

Many diverse commenters noted the potential for conflicting guidance between this section as proposed and the guidance under 200.437 Employee Health And Welfare Costs, as well as confusion about exceptions for entertainment under the terms and conditions of the award.

In addition to the clarifications to 200.437 Employee Health And Welfare Costs, the COFAR recommended clarifying that any exceptions require a programmatic purpose as well as written prior approval from the Federal awarding agency.

200.439 Equipment and Other Capital Expenditures

Many diverse commenters noted opportunity for clarification in this section. The COFAR recommended addressing most of these either in consolidated definitions in the definitions section or through appropriate consolidations with the language in Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements, section Subtitle II Property Standards.

200.441 Fines, Penalties, Damages and Other Settlements

Commenters suggested that the list of laws under which failure to comply could result in costs of fines and other penalties should include Tribal law. The COFAR recommended the addition.

Commenters suggested that costs resulting from ''alleged violations'' and not just ''violations'' should be unallowable, except when they result directly from complying with the terms of a Federal award or are approved in advance by the Federal awarding agency. The COFAR recommended the addition.

200.444 General Costs of Government

Commenters suggested that to be consistent with current policy this item should include language that allows up to 50% of the portion of salaries and wages for the chief executive and his or her staff supporting Federal awards for Indian Tribes and Councils of Government to be allowable as indirect costs without further justification. The COFAR recommended the addition.

200.445 Goods or Services for Personal Use

Diverse stakeholders suggested additional types of costs that could be explicitly discussed under this item. The COFAR considered these but found them to be items either addressed elsewhere in the guidance or covered under Subpart II Basic Considerations. The COFAR did not recommend changes to this section.

200.446 Idle Facilities and Idle Capacity

Commenters requested further clarification on the circumstances under which costs of idle facilities are unallowable versus allowable. The COFAR recommended changes for clarification and to ensure sure that these fluctuations are allocated properly to all benefiting programs.

Other commenters suggested that the one year time limit that the guidance provides on funding idle facilities may be arbitrary, and noted that often the projects which require this flexibility are multi-year projects, where a two year horizon might be considered an extremely aggressive timeline.

The COFAR considered that the exact requirement is for a ''reasonable period of time, ordinarily not to exceed one year'', which provides some flexibility on the timeline when needed, while still setting expectations of limits. The COFAR did not recommend changes to this language.

200.447 Insurance and Indemnification

Commenters suggested that policy allowing Federal agencies to choose whether to participate in losses not covered by the recipient's self-insurance reserves is inappropriate and burdensome to entities, and also contradicts other provisions in the language.

The COFAR agreed and recommended that the sentence be deleted. The COFAR also recommended deleting

policy that the Federal government will participate in actual losses of a self-insurance fund that are in excess of the reserves, to protect the Federal government from inappropriate exposure to these types of costs.

Commenters recommended that language discussing fees paid to or on behalf of employees or former employees for worker's compensation, unemployment compensation, be moved to the section on fringe benefits. The COFAR recommended the language be moved.

200.448 Intellectual Property

One comment requested use of a more commonly understood phrase than ''searching the art'', which is currently used in the guidance.

The COFAR determined that this is a term of art and is the appropriate phrase for this guidance. The COFAR did not recommend a change.

200.449 Interest

Commenters noted that they preferred the organization of the language used in the A–21 circular, suggesting that this section begin with the general principle that costs incurred for interest on borrowed capital, temporary use of endowment funds, or the use of the non-Federal entity's own funds are unallowable, followed by exceptions. The COFAR recommended the change in organization.

Commenters responded positively to the more explicit inclusion of information technology in the definition of capital assets. They also recommended that the date for the provision to take effect be based on a non-Federal entity's fiscal year rather than a specific date. The COFAR recommended moving this and all other definitions to the streamlined definitions section and concurred with the adjustment to the effective date.

Some commenters suggested recipient's limits for claims for federal reimbursement of interest costs to the least expensive alternative and that criterion for the non-Federal entity to make an equity contribution of at least 25% of the purchase debt arrangements over a million dollars be removed. Other commenters suggested that these should remain in order to protect Federal government interests. The COFAR did not recommend removing these provisions.

Commenters suggested that extra criteria for nonprofit organizations is not appropriate and ask that all the conditions specifically for nonprofit organizations be removed. The COFAR recommended deleting all but one of specific conditions for nonprofit organizations. The COFAR recommended keeping the provision that requires that the non-profit organization had to have incurred the cost after September 29, 1995, in connection with acquisitions of capital assets that occurred after the data. The COFAR also recommended deleting any additional conditions for non-profit organizations that are duplicative of CAS.

Commenters suggested adding a provision to ensure that interest attributable to a fully depreciated asset is unallowable. The COFAR recommended the addition.

200.453 Materials and Supplies Costs, Including Costs Of Computing Devices

The COFAR recommended moving the definition of supplies to the definition section, and feedback on that definition is discussed there.

200.454 Memberships, Subscriptions, and Professional Activity Costs

Commenters noted that it was unclear what was meant by ''substantially engaged in lobbying''. The COFAR recommended substituting ''whose principal purpose is lobbying'' and adding a citation to section 200.450 Lobbying to clarify.

200.455 Organization Costs

Commenters recommended parity in application of this item across types of non-Federal entities. The COFAR recommended making this section applicable to all stakeholders.

200.456 Participant Support Costs

The proposed guidance included language on participant support costs that expands to all entities a provision which previously applied only to nonprofit entities, though moves the definition of these costs to the definition section. The proposal received mostly positive feedback from commenters. The COFAR recommended keeping this language and that treatment of participant support costs in the definition of modified total direct costs and appendices on indirect cost rates be modified in accordance with this guidance.

200.460 Proposal Costs

Many comments were supportive of the proposed language, though some were concerned that the language allowing for other than indirect treatment with prior Federal agency approval could lead to inconsistencies. The COFAR recommended deleting this language to improve consistency and allow proposal costs to be charged only as an indirect cost.

200.461 Publication and Printing Costs

Commenters suggested that language should be added to resolve a long-standing issue with charges necessary to publish research results, which typically occur after expiration, but are otherwise allowable costs of an award.

The COFAR concurred with the comments and recommended additional language to clarify that non-Federal entities may charge the Federal award before closeout for the costs of publication or sharing of research results if the costs are not incurred during the period of performance of the Federal award.

200.463 Recruiting Costs

Commenters suggested that since ''special emoluments, fringe benefits, and salary allowances'' that do not meet the test of reasonableness or do not conform with established practices of the entity would be unallowable regardless of where the personnel are currently employed; language should be clarified accordingly with the deletion of ''from other non-federal entities'' after the list of benefits that attract professional personnel. Commenters also noted that modifications were needed to clarify that when relocation costs incurred with the recruitment of a new employee have been funded in whole or in part as a direct cost to the federal award, and the newly hired employee resigns for reasons within the employee's control within 12 months after hire, the non-Federal entity will be required to refund or credit only the Federal share of such relocation costs to the Federal government. The COFAR concurred with the suggested change.

Commenters suggested that this section in its proposed form (and in existing guidance) fails to account for costs associated with obtaining critical foreign research skills and proposed additional language and standards to remediate the problem. Commenters recommended that costs associated with visas when critical skills are needed for a specific award should be allowed. The COFAR concurred with the recommended change.

200.464 Relocation Costs of Employees

Commenters suggested that the costs of the ownership of the vacant former home after the settlement or lease date of the employees new permanent home should only be paid for up to 6 months to eliminate excessive charges to the Federal government. The COFAR concurred with the recommended change.

200.465 Rental Costs of Real Property and Equipment

Commenters requested that an exception for Indian tribes to the provisions that allow ''less-than-arm's-length'' transactions only up to the actual costs of ownership. They suggest that this is a matter of tribal autonomy and a way to better support tribal enterprises. The COFAR considered the suggestion but determined that despite the unique government-to-government relationship with Indian tribes and the importance of tribal autonomy, allowing these transactions at higher than the costs of actual ownership would result in undue increases in costs to the Federal government. The COFAR did not recommend the change.

Commenters recommended that rental costs under ''sale and lease back'' arrangements should only be allowable up to the actual costs of ownership, and not up to the amount that would be allowed had the entity continued to own the property. They also commented that language explaining that for clarity rental costs under ''less-than-arm's length'' leases are allowable only up to the amount as explained in paragraph (2) need not include that the costs are allowable up to the amount had the title to the property vested in the institution.

Commenters suggested that the provisions of the General Accepted Accounting Principles should determine whether a lease is a capital lease or not. Commenters also suggested that language should be added prohibiting the charge of home office space and utilities charged to a Federal award.

The COFAR recommended these proposed changes.

200.466 Scholarships and Student Aid Costs

Commenters suggested that this section should reflect the dual role of students and that the language should make clear that voluntary committed cost sharing should not be used as a factor in the review of applications.

The COFAR concurred with the recommended clarifications, but recommended they be more appropriately added in section 200.400 Policy Guide, and section 200.306 Cost Sharing Or Matching, respectively.

200.467 Selling and Marketing Costs

Commenters suggested that a cross-reference to section 200.460 Proposal Costs should be added to the existing cross reference to section 200.421 Advertising and Public Relations as allowable exceptions to the otherwise unallowable costs covered by this section. The COFAR concurred with the recommendation.

200.468 Specialized Service Facilities

Commenters suggested introducing the concept of an ''equipment replacement fund''. Their concern is that when federally-funded equipment is being used, the depreciation charges on this equipment are not allowed to be included in the rates charged to users of the equipment. Consequently, this restricts the ability of the non-Federal entity to recover funds that could be used to replace the equipment in the future. Allowing non-Federal entities to establish an ''equipment replacement fund'' would help to ensure that institutions are in a position to fund future equipment without having to rely on equipment grants from research funding agencies. The COFAR considered this suggestion, but was concerned that allowing such costs would inappropriately increase costs under Federal awards and reduce the benefits intended to be achieved by the Federal award. The COFAR did not recommend the change.

Commenters suggested that examples of costs of services provided by highly complex or specialized facilities operated by the entity are not needed.

The COFAR considered the suggestion and although generally throughout the guidance has declined to include specific examples recommended that in this case the examples be kept as an important way to illustrate the intent of the language.

200.469 Student Activity Costs

Upon review of this section, the COFAR recommended that though it primarily applies to IHEs, expanding this language to all entities would further mitigate risks of waste, fraud, and abuse.

200.471 Termination Costs

Commenters suggested that the cross reference to an exception for reimbursement for a predetermined amount under proposed Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements, Subtitle II Property Standards did not exist in the document and recommended the cross-reference be deleted.

Commenters suggested that while there is no substantive change in the proposed guidance from the existing circulars, they are unsure why indirect costs are being specifically cited with regard to settlement expenses, and were concerned the citation could be misinterpreted as somehow limiting the allowable indirect costs to only a portion of termination costs. They propose deleting the reference.

The COFAR recommended making both proposed deletions.

200.472 Training and Education Costs

Commenters indicated concern that the language allowing the costs of training and education for employee development is too open-ended and recommended more restrictive language.

The COFAR considered the suggestion, but believes that the basic considerations for allowability in Subtitle II Basic Considerations provide adequate restrictions that will appropriately limit the risk of waste, fraud, and abuse. The COFAR did not recommend a change.

200.474 Travel Costs

Commenters suggested that the proposed language allowing temporary dependent care costs was too open-ended and could increase risks of waste, fraud, and abuse.

The COFAR concurred with the concerns raised and modified the language to provide more specific parameters for the conditions under which these costs are allowable. The result is language that provides, under specific and limited circumstances, a family-friendly policy that should allow for individuals with dependent care responsibilities to better balance their responsibilities to both their families and the Federal award.

200.475 Trustees

Commenters noted that this section reverses existing language from OMB Circulars A–21 and A–122 where travel and subsistence costs of trustees, or directors, are allowable under certain conditions. They proposed that past policy from A–21 and A–122 be reinstated.

The COFAR concurred and recommended that the costs for the nonprofit community and institutions be allowable, given those costs are also in line with section 200.474 Travel Costs.

Appendix III Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs), paragraph B.4.c.

Commenters noted that while many of those who do not currently benefit from the 1.3% utility cost adjustment currently allowed under A–21 appreciated the proposed new language, they would further appreciate the opportunity to suggest alternative indices to measure ''effective square footage''.

The COFAR considered this, but determined that such open ended adjustments to costs would result in increased risk of waste, fraud, and abuse. Further, some commenters expressed concern about the total costs

to Federal agencies that could result from these charges, particularly given the lack of conclusive data available to accurately project these costs. The COFAR concurred with the concern, and so recommended that while these charges should be based on actual costs, the amount recoverable should be limited to an amount equal to 1.3% of the IHE's indirect cost rate until such time as OMB and Federal agencies can better understand the cost implications of full reimbursement of actual costs and the potential implication for Federal programs.

Appendix V State/Local Government and Indian Tribe-Wide Central Service Cost Allocation Plans

Under existing requirements, any ''major local government'' is required to submit a Cost Allocation Plan to its cognizant agency for indirect cost on an annual basis in order to claim its central services costs against Federal awards. The ''major local governments'' subject to this requirement, along with each cognizant agency assignment, are listed in the **Federal Register** notice dated January 6, 1986 (available at: *http://www.whitehouse.gov/sites/default/files/omb/assets/financial_pdf/fr-notice_cost_negotiation_010686.pdf*).

The proposed guidance set the definition of ''major local government'' at $100 million in order to more accurately reflect the updated universe of such governments which has changed since 1986, and also to provide a threshold that will remain in place as the sizes of individual local governments fluctuates over time. Commenters inquired whether the new definition supersedes the 1986 listing.

The COFAR noted the new definition of major local government does supersede the 1986 listing. The COFAR recommended adding this notice to the list of supersessions in section 200.104 Rescission and Supersession.

In addition, the COFAR recommended a change to the guidance on cognizant agencies. The policy would remain as it is for indirect cost rates, with cognizance being based on direct Federal awards. However, for local governments' central service cost allocation plans, the COFAR recommended that cognizance is best governed by total Federal awards, in order to avoid a situation where direct funding for one program (for example in housing) may result in a different outcome of cognizance than would otherwise be appropriate.

Section C: Subpart F Audit Requirements (Circulars A–133 and A–50)

This section discusses ideas for changes that would be made to the audit guidance that is contained in Circular A–133 on Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations and in Circular A–50 on Audit Follow-up. The following ideas for reform were discussed in the ANPG.

200.501 Audit Requirements

OMB received many comments on the appropriateness of the proposed threshold for the single audit requirement at $750,000, some of which recommended the threshold be raised to a higher level, others ambivalent, and some recommended it be kept at its current level of $500,000.

The COFAR considered the comments and the implications that raising the threshold to $750,000 would maintain Single Audit oversight over 99.7% of the dollars that are currently subject to the requirement and 87.1% of the entities that are currently subject to the requirement; eliminating the requirement for approximately 5,000 out of the 37,500 entities that currently receive a Single Audit. The COFAR also noted that an increase of $250,000 is in line with the previous adjustment to the threshold.

The COFAR considered that raising the threshold would allow Federal agencies to focus their audit resolution resources on the findings that put higher amounts of taxpayer dollars at risk, thus better mitigating overall risks of waste, fraud, and abuse across the government. Further, the COFAR notes that provisions throughout the guidance, including pre-award review of risks, standards for financial and program management, subrecipient monitoring and management, and remedies for noncompliance provide a strengthened level of oversight for non-Federal entities that would fall below the new threshold.

The COFAR recommended that the threshold be kept at the proposed level of $750,000.

200.503 Relation to Other Audit Requirements

Commenters recommended that language be added to this section to explicitly require Federal agencies or pass-through entities to review the Federal Audit Clearinghouse for existing audits submitted by the entities, and to rely on those to the extent possible prior to commencing an additional audit.

The COFAR concurred with the suggestion and recommended the addition in order to reduce duplication by better leveraging existing audit resources prior to initiating new engagements.

200.507 Program-Specific Audits

Commenters suggested that rather than requiring auditors to contact inspectors general for program specific audit guides, such guides should be listed in the annual compliance supplement. The COFAR recommended the addition to reduce administrative burden.

200.509 Auditor Selection

Comments recommended that peer reviews be added to the factors considered in selecting an auditor. The COFAR recommended the addition to strengthen audit quality and ensure that audit resources are used most effectively.

200.510 Financial Statements

Commenters suggested that the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards must include the total Federal awards expended as determined in accordance with section 200.502 Basis for Determining Federal Awards Expended, and also that for clusters of programs, the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards should include the cluster name and also include the Federal awarding agency name with the list of programs within the cluster. The COFAR recommended the addition to facilitate a more efficient and effective audit follow-up process.

200.511 Audit Findings Follow-Up

Commenters recommended restoring existing language from OMB Circular A–133 that lists the valid reasons for considering an audit finding as not warranting further action. The COFAR recommended the addition.

200.512 Report Submission

Commenters noted concern with the proposed language in this section that would make audit reports publicly available on the internet. Despite the fact that the non-Federal entity is already required to make the Single Audit report available for public inspection under the Single Audit Act, Indian Tribes were concerned that publishing them would expose sensitive confidential business information that would be harmful to the tribes. The COFAR considered this feedback including feedback from the Department of the Interior, which noted that even if a single audit report for an Indian Tribe were to be requested by a member of the public under the Freedom of Information Act, the confidential

business information would be redacted under exemption 4 under the Act.

To fully address this problem, the COFAR would need to explore with the audit community whether auditing standards could allow for financial statements that do not include this sensitive information in the first place. Since this solution is beyond the reach of the COFAR at this time, the COFAR recommended adding an option to allow Indian Tribes to opt out of having the Federal Audit Clearinghouse publish their reports. If an Indian tribe were to exercise this option, it would be responsible for providing its audit report to any pass-through entities as appropriate.

Commenters recommended additional language to make explicit that the Federal Audit Clearinghouse is the repository of record and authoritative source for single audit reports. Federal agencies, pass-through entities, and others interested should therefore obtain it by accessing the clearinghouse rather than requesting it directly from the non-Federal entity. The COFAR agreed that the proposed addition would likely reduce administrative burden and recommended the addition.

Commenters also recommended that the section include language to allow for exceptions to reporting deadlines particularly in cases of emergency. The COFAR considered this, but noted that such language would likely lead to an administratively burdensome process of frequent requests and denials of the extension period. In cases of true emergency, OMB and Federal agencies together often issue pre-emptive extensions of the deadline. The COFAR did not recommend further changes to the language.

Further comments noted possible confusion over the deadline for report submission if it falls on a holiday. The COFAR also recommended changes to clarify that if the due date falls on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal legal holiday, the reporting package is due the next business day.

200.513 Responsibilities

Commenters recommended that the proposed language on quality control reviews be revised back to current OMB Circular A–133 for reviews that are risk based, which is more in line with agency capacity for reviews. The COFAR concurred with the recommendation. The COFAR further recommended further language to require a governmentwide audit quality project every six years similar to those done in the past to take a meaningful look at audit quality governmentwide and make substantive changes where needed.

Commenters noted that the responsibility to coordinate a management decision for cross-cutting findings is one that Federal agencies struggle to accomplish currently. The COFAR considered this and agreed, but recommended the language remain as an articulation of the best policy. The Single Audit resolution pilot project currently under supervision of the COFAR is aimed at addressing some of the difficulties currently found in implementation.

Commenters noted that the proposed requirement to submit management decisions to the Federal Audit Clearinghouse is one they concur with, but find that significant work would need to be done to coordinate the management decision process at a governmentwide level before this could feasibly be implemented. The COFAR concurred and struck the proposed language, as well as language that would allow other Federal agencies and pass-through entities to rely on cross-cutting management decisions from Cognizant or Oversight Agencies for Audit. The COFAR further notes that the Single Audit resolution pilot project currently under supervision of the COFAR will hopefully result in lessons learned and best practices that can facilitate the implementation of this policy in the future.

Commenters responded positively to new provisions that would strengthen the audit-follow-up process including the appointment of Senior Accountable Officials, implementation of metrics, and encouragement of cooperative audit resolution techniques. These revisions would effectively strengthen the follow-up process and reduce risk of repeated findings of waste, fraud, and abuse.

Some commenters posed questions about the role of the Senior Accountable Official for Audit and how it would align with responsibilities of the Office of Inspectors General. Similar questions were posed about the role of the designated key single audit coordinator. The COFAR considered these and recommended clarifications that the Senior Accountable Official is intended to be a policy official of the awarding agency who can be responsible for overseeing agency management's role in audit resolution. The COFAR also recommended the key single audit coordinator be renamed the key management single audit liaison, and notes that neither of these roles should in any way impact existing responsibilities of Inspectors General, but rather as the COFAR moves toward greater governmentwide coordination of the audit resolution process, these officials will be accountable for implementing that coordination and ensuring best results.

200.514 Scope of Audit

Several commenters indicated sections where they recommended further references to Generally Accepted Government Auditing Standards (GAGAS). The COFAR considered these but noted that language in this section states upfront that Single Audits shall be conducted in accordance with GAGAS, and recommends that further repetition of this language throughout the document be avoided as unnecessary. The COFAR further recommended conforming changes to eliminate duplicative references throughout the guidance.

200.515 Audit Reporting

Commenters recommended several minor technical edits throughout this section to align with auditing standards which the COFAR recommended. Commenters also recommended new language to note that nothing in this section should preclude combining of audit reporting required by this section with reporting required by section 200.512 Report Submission. The COFAR considered that such an addition would be useful if future advances in technology allow more consolidated reporting in the future, and recommended the addition.

200.516 Audit Findings

Some commenters requested that the proposed threshold for questioned costs of $25,000 be lowered, even below the existing threshold to a level of zero. Other commenters asked that it be raised higher than $25,000, and recommended that the level be set on a sliding scale as a percentage of total dollars awarded per program.

The COFAR considered these recommendations, and noted that for purposes of accountability, types of compliance requirements are reviewed with levels of materiality in mind. The questioned cost threshold serves in most cases to dramatically lower the level at which a finding would otherwise be considered material and be reported. The threshold is a valuable tool that provides assurance that questioned costs above it will under no circumstances go unreported regardless of materiality. Based on these considerations, the COFAR recommended that the proposed threshold of $25,000 be accepted.

200.718 Major Program Determination

The Government Accountability Office (GAO) commented that step 1 of the major program determination would be more easily understood if presented in a table. The COFAR concurred and recommended the new format for ease of comprehension among readers.

Commenters noted the inconsistency of the single audit threshold at $750,000, the Type A/B program threshold at $500,000, and the threshold for an entity to have a Type A program at $1,000,000. Commenters suggested that that the level of the threshold for major programs needed to be raised consistent with the threshold for the Single Audit as a whole at $750,000 to ensure consistent coverage. The COFAR recommended the modification that all three thresholds be the same at $750.000 consistent with the single audit threshold.

Commenters also recommended additional language to clarify the criteria under the step 2 determination of Type A programs which are low-risk. The COFAR recommended the addition.

200.520 Criteria for a Low-Risk Auditee

Members of the audit community and states commented on the criteria for a low-risk auditee that includes whether the financial statements were prepared in accordance with GAAP. Members of the audit community note that GAAP is the preferred method, and states note that state law sometimes provides for other methods of preparation. The COFAR considered this and recommended revised language to allow for exceptions where state law requires otherwise.

200.521 Management Decision

Upon review of the structure of the proposed guidance, the COFAR recommended that this section be moved to the end of the document.

Commenters suggested that auditees should be required to initiate corrective action as rapidly as possible, and not wait until audit reports are submitted. The COFAR recommended the addition. Commenters also noted that while they supported the ultimate publication of management decisions through the Federal audit clearinghouse, this is not a change that they are prepared to implement immediately. As a result, the COFAR recommended that this be added to the current Single Audit Resolution Pilot currently underway within the COFAR, and that based on the results of the pilot, the COFAR work with Federal agencies to begin implementation of publication of management decisions in 2016.

Appendix XI Compliance Supplement

While most commenters were in favor of the proposed reduction of the number of types of compliance requirements in the compliance supplement, many voiced concern about the process that would implement such changes. Comments questioned whether Federal agencies adding back provisions under special tests and provisions would result in increased administrative burden and requested that such fundamental changes be subject to a public notice and comment period. Since the Compliance Supplement is published as part of a separate process, no final changes are made at this time, but the COFAR recommended that any future changes to the compliance supplement be made based on available evidence on past findings and the potential impact of non-compliance for each type of compliance requirement. The COFAR further recommends that further public outreach be conducted prior to making any structural changes to the format of the compliance supplement to mitigate potential risks of an inadvertent increase in administrative burden.

List of Subjects in 2 CFR Parts 200, 215, 220, 225, and 230

Accounting, Auditing, Colleges and universities, State and local governments, Grant programs, Grants administration, Hospitals, Indians, Nonprofit organizations, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements.

Norman Dong,

Deputy Controller.

For the reasons stated in the preamble, under the Authority of the Chief Financial Officer Act of 1990 (31 U.S.C. 503), the Office of Management and Budget amends 2 CFR Chapters I and II as set forth below:

Chapter I—Office Of Management and Budget Governmentwide Guidance for Grants and Agreements

■ 1. Remove the subchapter headings for Subchapters A through G from Chapter I.

Chapter II—Office of Management and Budget Guidance

■ 2. The heading of chapter II is revised to read as set forth above.

■ 3. Add part 200 to read as follows:

PART 200—UNIFORM ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS, COST PRINCIPLES, AND AUDIT REQUIREMENTS FOR FEDERAL AWARDS

Subpart A—Acronyms and Definitions

Acronyms

Sec.

200.0 Acronyms.
200.1 Definitions.
200.2 Acquisition cost.
200.3 Advance payment.
200.4 Allocation.
200.5 Audit finding.
200.6 Auditee.
200.7 Auditor.
200.8 Budget.
200.9 Central service cost allocation plan.
200.10 Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance number.
200.11 CFDA program title.
200.12 Capital assets.
200.13 Capital expenditures.
200.14 Claim.
200.15 Class of Federal awards.
200.16 Closeout.
200.17 Cluster of programs.
200.18 Cognizant agency for audit.
200.19 Cognizant agency for indirect costs.
200.20 Computing devices.
200.21 Compliance supplement.
200.22 Contract.
200.23 Contractor.
200.24 Cooperative agreement.
200.25 Cooperative audit resolution.
200.26 Corrective action.
200.27 Cost allocation plan.
200.28 Cost objective.
200.29 Cost sharing or matching.
200.30 Cross-cutting audit finding.
200.31 Disallowed costs.
200.32 Data Universal Numbering System (DUNS) number.
200.33 Equipment.
200.34 Expenditures.
200.35 Federal agency.
200.36 Federal Audit Clearinghouse (FAC).
200.37 Federal awarding agency.
200.38 Federal award.
200.39 Federal award date.
200.40 Federal financial assistance.
200.41 Federal interest.
200.42 Federal program.
200.43 Federal share.
200.44 Final cost objective.
200.45 Fixed amount awards.
200.46 Foreign public entity.
200.47 Foreign organization.
200.48 General purpose equipment.
200.49 Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP).
200.50 Generally Accepted Government Auditing Standards (GAGAS).
200.51 Grant agreement.
200.52 Hospital.
200.53 Improper payment.
200.54 Indian tribe (or ''federally recognized Indian tribe'').
200.55 Institutions Of Higher Education (IHEs).
200.56 Indirect (facilities & administrative) costs.
200.57 Indirect cost rate proposal.
200.58 Information technology systems.

200.59 Intangible property.
200.60 Intermediate cost objective.
200.61 Internal controls.
200.62 Internal control over compliance requirements for Federal awards.
200.63 Loan.
200.64 Local government.
200.65 Major program.
200.66 Management decision.
200.67 Micro-purchase.
200.68 Modified Total Direct Cost (MTDC).
200.69 Non-Federal entity.
200.70 Nonprofit organization.
200.71 Obligations.
200.72 Office of Management and Budget (OMB).
200.73 Oversight agency for audit.
200.74 Pass-through entity.
200.75 Participant support costs.
200.76 Performance goal.
200.77 Period of performance.
200.78 Personal property.
200.79 Personally Identifiable Information (PII).
200.80 Program income.
200.81 Property.
200.82 Protected Personally Identifiable Information (Protected PII).
200.83 Project cost.
200.84 Questioned cost.
200.85 Real property.
200.86 Recipient.
200.87 Research and Development (R&D).
200.88 Simplified acquisition threshold.
200.89 Special purpose equipment.
200.90 State.
200.91 Student Financial Aid (SFA).
200.92 Subaward.
200.93 Subrecipient.
200.94 Supplies.
200.95 Termination.
200.96 Third-party in-kind contributions.
200.97 Unliquidated obligations.
200.98 Unobligated balance.
200.99 Voluntary committed cost sharing.

Subpart B—General Provisions

200.100 Purpose.
200.101 Applicability.
200.102 Exceptions.
200.103 Authorities.
200.104 Supersession.
200.105 Effect on other issuances.
200.106 Agency implementation.
200.107 OMB responsibilities.
200.108 Inquiries.
200.109 Review date.
200.110 Effective date.
200.111 English language.
200.112 Conflict of interest.
200.113 Mandatory disclosures.

Subpart C—Pre-Federal Award Requirements and Contents of Federal Awards

200.200 Purpose.
200.201 Use of grant agreements (including fixed amount awards), cooperative agreements, and contracts.
200.202 Requirement to provide public notice of Federal financial assistance arograms.
200.203 Notices of funding opportunities.
200.204 Federal awarding agency review of merit of proposals.
200.205 Federal awarding agency review of risk posed by applicants.
200.206 Standard application requirements.
200.207 Specific conditions.
200.208 Certifications and representations.
200.209 Pre-award costs.
200.210 Information contained in a Federal award.
200.211 Public access to Federal award information.

Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements

Standards for Financial and Program Management

200.300 Statutory and national policy requirements.
200.301 Performance measurement.
200.302 Financial management.
200.303 Internal controls.
200.304 Bonds.
200.305 Payment.
200.306 Cost sharing or matching.
200.307 Program income.
200.308 Revision of budget and program plans.
200.309 Period of performance.

Property Standards

200.310 Insurance coverage.
200.311 Real property.
200.312 Federally-owned and exempt property.
200.313 Equipment.
200.314 Supplies.
200.315 Intangible property.
200.316 Property trust relationship.

Procurement Standards

200.317 Procurements by states.
200.318 General procurement standards.
200.319 Competition.
200.320 Methods of procurement to be followed.
200.321 Contracting with small and minority businesses, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms.
200.322 Procurement of recovered materials.
200.323 Contract cost and price.
200.324 Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity review.
200.325 Bonding requirements.
200.326 Contract provisions.

Performance and Financial Monitoring and Reporting

200.327 Financial reporting.
200.328 Monitoring and reporting program performance.
200.329 Reporting on real property.

Subrecipient Monitoring and Management

200.330 Subrecipient and contractor determinations.
200.331 Requirements for pass-through entities.
200.332 Fixed amount subawards.

Record Retention and Access

200.333 Retention Requirements for Records.
200.334 Requests for transfer of records.
200.335 Methods for collection, transmission and storage of information.
200.336 Access to records.
200.337 Restrictions on public access to records.

Remedies for Noncompliance

200.338 Remedies for noncompliance.
200.339 Termination.
200.340 Notification of termination requirement.
200.341 Opportunities to object, hearings and appeals.
200.342 Effects of suspension and termination.

Closeout

200.343 Closeout.

Post-Closeout Adjustments and Continuing Responsibilities

200.344 Post-closeout adjustments and continuing responsibilities.

Collection of Amounts Due

200.345 Collection of amounts due.

Subpart E—Cost Principles

General Provisions

200.400 Policy guide.
200.401 Application.

Basic Considerations

200.402 Composition of costs.
200.403 Factors affecting allowability of costs.
200.404 Reasonable costs.
200.405 Allocable costs.
200.406 Applicable credits.
200.407 Prior written approval (prior approval).
200.408 Limitation on allowance of costs.
200.409 Special considerations.
200.410 Collection of unallowable costs.
200.411 Adjustment of previously negotiated indirect (F&A) cost rates containing unallowable costs.

Direct and Indirect (F&A) Costs

200.412 Classification of costs.
200.413 Direct costs.
200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs.
200.415 Required certifications.

Special Considerations for States, Local Governments and Indian Tribes

200.416 Cost allocation plans and indirect cost proposals.
200.417 Interagency service.

Special Considerations for Institutions of Higher Education

200.418 Costs incurred by states and local governments.
200.419 Cost accounting standards and disclosure statement.

General Provisions for Selected Items of Cost

200.420 Considerations for selected items of cost.
200.421 Advertising and public relations.
200.422 Advisory councils.
200.423 Alcoholic beverages.
200.424 Alumni/ae activities.
200.425 Audit services.
200.426 Bad debts.
200.427 Bonding costs.
200.428 Collections of improper payments.
200.429 Commencement and convocation costs.
200.430 Compensation—personal services.
200.431 Compensation—fringe benefits.
200.432 Conferences.
200.433 Contingency provisions.
200.434 Contributions and donations.

200.435 Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, claims, appeals and patent infringements.
200.436 Depreciation.
200.437 Employee health and welfare costs.
200.438 Entertainment costs.
200.439 Equipment and other capital expenditures.
200.440 Exchange rates.
200.441 Fines, penalties, damages and other settlements.
200.442 Fund raising and investment management costs.
200.443 Gains and losses on disposition of depreciable assets.
200.444 General costs of government.
200.445 Goods or services for personal use.
200.446 Idle facilities and idle capacity.
200.447 Insurance and indemnification.
200.448 Intellectual property.
200.449 Interest.
200.450 Lobbying.
200.451 Losses on other awards or contracts.
200.452 Maintenance and repair costs.
200.453 Materials and supplies costs, including costs of computing devices.
200.454 Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs.
200.455 Organization costs.
200.456 Participant support costs.
200.457 Plant and security costs.
200.458 Pre-award costs.
200.459 Professional service costs.
200.460 Proposal costs.
200.461 Publication and printing costs.
200.462 Rearrangement and reconversion costs.
200.463 Recruiting costs.
200.464 Relocation costs of employees.
200.465 Rental costs of real property and equipment.
200.466 Scholarships and student aid costs.
200.467 Selling and marketing costs.
200.468 Specialized service facilities.
200.469 Student activity costs.
200.470 Taxes (including Value Added Tax).
200.471 Termination costs.
200.472 Training and education costs.
200.473 Transportation costs.
200.474 Travel costs.
200.475 Trustees.

Subpart F—Audit Requirements

General

200.500 Purpose.

Audits

200.501 Audit requirements.
200.502 Basis for determining Federal awards expended.
200.503 Relation to other audit requirements.
200.504 Frequency of audits.
200.505 Sanctions.
200.506 Audit costs.
200.507 Program-specific audits.

Auditees

200.508 Auditee responsibilities.
200.509 Auditor selection.
200.510 Financial statements.
200.511 Audit findings follow-up.
200.512 Report submission.

Federal Agencies

200.513 Responsibilities.

Auditors

200.514 Scope of audit.
200.515 Audit reporting.
200.516 Audit findings.
200.517 Audit documentation.
200.518 Major program determination.
200.519 Criteria for Federal program risk.
200.520 Criteria for a low-risk auditee.

Management Decisions

200.521 Management decision.

Appendix I to Part 200—Full Text of Notice of Funding Opportunity

Appendix II to Part 200—Contract Provisions for Non-Federal Entity Contracts Under Federal Awards

Appendix III to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs)

Appendix IV to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Nonprofit Organizations

Appendix V to Part 200—State/Local Government and Indian Tribe-Wide Central Service Cost Allocation Plans

Appendix VI to Part 200—Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans

Appendix VII to Part 220—States and Local Government and Indian Tribe Indirect Cost Proposals

Appendix VIII to Part 200—Nonprofit Organizations Exempted From Subpart E—Cost Principles of Part 200

Appendix IX to Part 200—Hospital Cost Principles

Appendix X to Part 200—Data Collection Form (Form SF–SAC)

Appendix XI to Part 200—Compliance Supplement

Authority: 31 U.S.C. 503

Subpart A—Acronyms and Definitions

Acronyms

§ 200.0 Acronyms.

ACRONYM TERM

CAS Cost Accounting Standards
CFDA Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance
CFR Code of Federal Regulations
CMIA Cash Management Improvement Act
COG Councils Of Governments
COSO Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission
D&B Dun and Bradstreet
DUNS Data Universal Numbering System
EPA Environmental Protection Agency
ERISA Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (29 U.S.C. 1301–1461)
EUI Energy Usage Index
F&A Facilities and Administration
FAC Federal Audit Clearinghouse
FAIN Federal Award Identification Number
FAPIIS Federal Awardee Performance and Integrity Information System
FAR Federal Acquisition Regulation
FFATA Federal Funding Accountability and Transparency Act of 2006 or Transparency Act—Public Law 109–282, as amended by section 6202(a) of Public Law 110–252 (31 U.S.C. 6101)
FICA Federal Insurance Contributions Act
FOIA Freedom of Information Act
FR Federal Register
FTE Full-time equivalent
GAAP Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
GAGAS Generally Accepted Government Accounting Standards
GAO General Accounting Office
GOCO Government owned, contractor operated
GSA General Services Administration
IBS Institutional Base Salary
IHE Institutions of Higher Education
IRC Internal Revenue Code
ISDEAA Indian Self-Determination and Education and Assistance Act
MTC Modified Total Cost
MTDC Modified Total Direct Cost
OMB Office of Management and Budget
PII Personally Identifiable Information
PRHP Post-retirement Health Plans
PTE Pass-through Entity
REUI Relative Energy Usage Index
SAM System for Award Management
SFA Student Financial Aid
SNAP Supplemental Nutrition Assistance Program
SPOC Single Point of Contact
TANF Temporary Assistance for Needy Families
TFM Treasury Financial Manual
U.S.C. United States Code
VAT Value Added Tax

§ 200.1 Definitions.

These are the definitions for terms used in this Part. Different definitions may be found in Federal statutes or regulations that apply more specifically to particular programs or activities. These definitions could be supplemented by additional instructional information provided in governmentwide standard information collections.

§ 200.2 Acquisition cost.

Acquisition cost means the cost of the asset including the cost to ready the asset for its intended use. Acquisition cost for equipment, for example, means the net invoice price of the equipment, including the cost of any modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make it usable for the purpose for which it is acquired. Acquisition costs for software includes those development costs capitalized in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP). Ancillary charges, such as taxes, duty, protective in transit insurance, freight, and installation may be included in or excluded from the acquisition cost in

accordance with the non-Federal entity's regular accounting practices.

§200.3 Advance payment.

Advance payment means a payment that a Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity makes by any appropriate payment mechanism, including a predetermined payment schedule, before the non-Federal entity disburses the funds for program purposes.

§ 200.4 Allocation.

Allocation means the process of assigning a cost, or a group of costs, to one or more cost objective(s), in reasonable proportion to the benefit provided or other equitable relationship. The process may entail assigning a cost(s) directly to a final cost objective or through one or more intermediate cost objectives.

§ 200.5 Audit finding.

Audit finding means deficiencies which the auditor is required by § 200.516 Audit findings, paragraph (a) to report in the schedule of findings and questioned costs.

§ 200.6 Auditee.

Auditee means any non-Federal entity that expends Federal awards which must be audited under Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part.

§ 200.7 Auditor.

Auditor means an auditor who is a public accountant or a Federal, state or local government audit organization, which meets the general standards specified in generally accepted government auditing standards (GAGAS). The term auditor does not include internal auditors of nonprofit organizations.

§ 200.8 Budget.

Budget means the financial plan for the project or program that the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity approves during the Federal award process or in subsequent amendments to the Federal award. It may include the Federal and non-Federal share or only the Federal share, as determined by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

§ 200.9 Central service cost allocation plan.

Central service cost allocation plan means the documentation identifying, accumulating, and allocating or developing billing rates based on the allowable costs of services provided by a state, local government, or Indian tribe on a centralized basis to its departments and agencies. The costs of these services may be allocated or billed to users.

§ 200.10 Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance (CFDA) number.

CFDA number means the number assigned to a Federal program in the CFDA.

§ 200.11 CFDA program title.

CFDA program title means the title of the program under which the Federal award was funded in the CFDA.

§ 200.12 Capital assets.

Capital assets means tangible or intangible assets used in operations having a useful life of more than one year which are capitalized in accordance with GAAP. Capital assets include:

(a) Land, buildings (facilities), equipment, and intellectual property (including software) whether acquired by purchase, construction, manufacture, lease-purchase, exchange, or through capital leases; and

(b) Additions, improvements, modifications, replacements, rearrangements, reinstallations, renovations or alterations to capital assets that materially increase their value or useful life (not ordinary repairs and maintenance).

§ 200.13 Capital expenditures.

Capital expenditures means expenditures to acquire capital assets or expenditures to make additions, improvements, modifications, replacements, rearrangements, reinstallations, renovations, or alterations to capital assets that materially increase their value or useful life.

§ 200.14 Claim.

Claim means, depending on the context, either:

(a) A written demand or written assertion by one of the parties to a Federal award seeking as a matter of right:

(1) The payment of money in a sum certain;

(2) The adjustment or interpretation of the terms and conditions of the Federal award; or

(3) Other relief arising under or relating to a Federal award.

(b) A request for payment that is not in dispute when submitted.

§ 200.15 Class of Federal awards.

Class of Federal awards means a group of Federal awards either awarded under a specific program or group of programs or to a specific type of non-Federal entity or group of non-Federal entities to which specific provisions or exceptions may apply.

§ 200.16 Closeout.

Closeout means the process by which the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity determines that all applicable administrative actions and all required work of the Federal award have been completed and takes actions as described in § 200.343 Closeout.

§ 200.17 Cluster of programs.

Cluster of programs means a grouping of closely related programs that share common compliance requirements. The types of clusters of programs are research and development (R&D), student financial aid (SFA), and other clusters. ''Other clusters'' are as defined by OMB in the compliance supplement or as designated by a state for Federal awards the state provides to its subrecipients that meet the definition of a cluster of programs. When designating an ''other cluster,'' a state must identify the Federal awards included in the cluster and advise the subrecipients of compliance requirements applicable to the cluster, consistent with § 200.331 Requirements for pass-through entities, paragraph (a). A cluster of programs must be considered as one program for determining major programs, as described in § 200.518 Major program determination, and, with the exception of R&D as described in § 200.501 Audit requirements, paragraph (c), whether a program-specific audit may be elected.

§ 200.18 Cognizant agency for audit.

Cognizant agency for audit means the Federal agency designated to carry out the responsibilities described in § 200.513 Responsibilities, paragraph (a). The cognizant agency for audit is not necessarily the same as the cognizant agency for indirect costs. A list of cognizant agencies for audit may be found at the FAC Web site.

§ 200.19 Cognizant agency for indirect costs.

Cognizant agency for indirect costs means the Federal agency responsible for reviewing, negotiating, and approving cost allocation plans or indirect cost proposals developed under this Part on behalf of all Federal agencies. The cognizant agency for indirect cost is not necessarily the same as the cognizant agency for audit. For assignments of cognizant agencies see the following:

(a) For IHEs: Appendix III to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs), paragraph C.10.

(b) For nonprofit organizations: Appendix IV to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and

Assignment, and Rate Determination for Nonprofit Organizations, paragraph C.1.

(c) For state and local governments: Appendix V to Part 200—State/Local Government and Indian Tribe-Wide Central Service Cost Allocation Plans, paragraph F.1.

§ 200.20 Computing devices.

Computing devices means machines used to acquire, store, analyze, process, and publish data and other information electronically, including accessories (or ''peripherals'') for printing, transmitting and receiving, or storing electronic information. See also §§ 200.94 Supplies and 200.58 Information technology systems.

§ 200.21 Compliance supplement.

Compliance supplement means Appendix XI to Part 200—Compliance Supplement (previously known as the Circular A–133 Compliance Supplement).

§ 200.22 Contract.

Contract means a legal instrument by which a non-Federal entity purchases property or services needed to carry out the project or program under a Federal award. The term as used in this Part does not include a legal instrument, even if the non-Federal entity considers it a contract, when the substance of the transaction meets the definition of a Federal award or subaward (see § 200.92 Subaward).

§ 200.23 Contractor.

Contractor means an entity that receives a contract as defined in § 200.22 Contract.

§ 200.24 Cooperative agreement.

Cooperative agreement means a legal instrument of financial assistance between a Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity and a non-Federal entity that, consistent with 31 U.S.C. 6302–6305:

(a) Is used to enter into a relationship the principal purpose of which is to transfer anything of value from the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity to the non-Federal entity to carry out a public purpose authorized by a law of the United States (see 31 U.S.C. 6101(3)); and not to acquire property or services for the Federal government or pass-through entity's direct benefit or use;

(b) Is distinguished from a grant in that it provides for substantial involvement between the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity and the non-Federal entity in carrying out the activity contemplated by the Federal award.

(c) The term does not include:

(1) A cooperative research and development agreement as defined in 15 U.S.C. 3710a; or

(2) An agreement that provides only:

(i) Direct United States Government cash assistance to an individual;

(ii) A subsidy;

(iii) A loan;

(iv) A loan guarantee; or

(v) Insurance.

§ 200.25 Cooperative audit resolution.

Cooperative audit resolution means the use of audit follow-up techniques which promote prompt corrective action by improving communication, fostering collaboration, promoting trust, and developing an understanding between the Federal agency and the non-Federal entity. This approach is based upon:

(a) A strong commitment by Federal agency and non-Federal entity leadership to program integrity;

(b) Federal agencies strengthening partnerships and working cooperatively with non-Federal entities and their auditors; and non-Federal entities and their auditors working cooperatively with Federal agencies;

(c) A focus on current conditions and corrective action going forward;

(d) Federal agencies offering appropriate relief for past noncompliance when audits show prompt corrective action has occurred; and

(e) Federal agency leadership sending a clear message that continued failure to correct conditions identified by audits which are likely to cause improper payments, fraud, waste, or abuse is unacceptable and will result in sanctions.

§ 200.26 Corrective action.

Corrective action means action taken by the auditee that:

(a) Corrects identified deficiencies;

(b) Produces recommended improvements; or

(c) Demonstrates that audit findings are either invalid or do not warrant auditee action.

§ 200.27 Cost allocation plan.

Cost allocation plan means central service cost allocation plan or public assistance cost allocation plan.

§ 200.28 Cost objective.

Cost objective means a program, function, activity, award, organizational subdivision, contract, or work unit for which cost data are desired and for which provision is made to accumulate and measure the cost of processes, products, jobs, capital projects, etc. A cost objective may be a major function of the non-Federal entity, a particular service or project, a Federal award, or an indirect (Facilities & Administrative (F&A)) cost activity, as described in Subpart E—Cost Principles of this Part. See also §§ 200.44 Final cost objective and 200.60 Intermediate cost objective.

§ 200.29 Cost sharing or matching.

Cost sharing or matching means the portion of project costs not paid by Federal funds (unless otherwise authorized by Federal statute). See also § 200.306 Cost sharing or matching.

§ 200.30 Cross-cutting audit finding.

Cross-cutting audit finding means an audit finding where the same underlying condition or issue affects Federal awards of more than one Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

§ 200.31 Disallowed costs.

Disallowed costs means those charges to a Federal award that the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity determines to be unallowable, in accordance with the applicable Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

§ 200.32 Data Universal Numbering System (DUNS) number.

DUNS number means the nine-digit number established and assigned by Dun and Bradstreet, Inc. (D&B) to uniquely identify entities. A non-Federal entity is required to have a DUNS number in order to apply for, receive, and report on a Federal award. A DUNS number may be obtained from D&B by telephone (currently 866–705–5711) or the Internet (currently at *http://fedgov.dnb.com/webform)*.

§ 200.33 Equipment.

Equipment means tangible personal property (including information technology systems) having a useful life of more than one year and a per-unit acquisition cost which equals or exceeds the lesser of the capitalization level established by the non-Federal entity for financial statement purposes, or $5,000. See also §§ 200.12 Capital assets, 200.20 Computing devices, 200.48 General purpose equipment, 200.58 Information technology systems, 200.89 Special purpose equipment, and 200.94 Supplies.

§ 200.34 Expenditures.

Expenditures means charges made by a non-Federal entity to a project or program for which a Federal award was received.

(a) The charges may be reported on a cash or accrual basis, as long as the methodology is disclosed and is consistently applied.

(b) For reports prepared on a cash basis, expenditures are the sum of:

(1) Cash disbursements for direct charges for property and services;

(2) The amount of indirect expense charged;

(3) The value of third-party in-kind contributions applied; and

(4) The amount of cash advance payments and payments made to subrecipients.

(c) For reports prepared on an accrual basis, expenditures are the sum of:

(1) Cash disbursements for direct charges for property and services;

(2) The amount of indirect expense incurred;

(3) The value of third-party in-kind contributions applied; and

(4) The net increase or decrease in the amounts owed by the non-Federal entity for:

(i) Goods and other property received;

(ii) Services performed by employees, contractors, subrecipients, and other payees; and

(iii) Programs for which no current services or performance are required such as annuities, insurance claims, or other benefit payments.

§ 200.35 Federal agency.

Federal agency means an ''agency'' as defined at 5 U.S.C. 551(1) and further clarified by 5 U.S.C. 552(f).

§ 200.36 Federal Audit Clearinghouse (FAC).

FAC means the clearinghouse designated by OMB as the repository of record where non-Federal entities are required to transmit the reporting packages required by Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part. The mailing address of the FAC is Federal Audit Clearinghouse, Bureau of the Census, 1201 E. 10th Street, Jeffersonville, IN 47132 and the web address is: *http://harvester.census.gov/sac/*. Any future updates to the location of the FAC may be found at the OMB Web site.

§ 200.37 Federal awarding agency.

Federal awarding agency means the Federal agency that provides a Federal award directly to a non-Federal entity.

§ 200.38 Federal award.

Federal award has the meaning, depending on the context, in either paragraph (a) or (b) of this section: (a)(1) The Federal financial assistance that a non-Federal entity receives directly from a Federal awarding agency or indirectly from a pass-through entity, as described in § 200.101 Applicability; or

(2) The cost-reimbursement contract under the Federal Acquisition Regulations that a non-Federal entity receives directly from a Federal awarding agency or indirectly from a pass-through entity, as described in § 200.101 Applicability.

(b) The instrument setting forth the terms and conditions. The instrument is the grant agreement, cooperative agreement, other agreement for assistance covered in paragraph (b) of § 200.40 Federal financial assistance, or the cost-reimbursement contract awarded under the Federal Acquisition Regulations.

(c) Federal award does not include other contracts that a Federal agency uses to buy goods or services from a contractor or a contract to operate Federal government owned, contractor operated facilities (GOCOs).

(d) See also definitions of Federal financial assistance, grant agreement, and cooperative agreement.

§ 200.39 Federal award date.

Federal award date means the date when the Federal award is signed by the authorized official of the Federal awarding agency.

§ 200.40 Federal financial assistance.

(a) For grants and cooperative agreements, *Federal financial assistance* means assistance that non-Federal entities receive or administer in the form of:

(1) Grants;

(2) Cooperative agreements;

(3) Non-cash contributions or donations of property (including donated surplus property);

(4) Direct appropriations;

(5) Food commodities; and

(6) Other financial assistance (except assistance listed in paragraph (b) of this section).

(b) For Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this part, *Federal financial assistance* also includes assistance that non-Federal entities receive or administer in the form of:

(1) Loans;

(2) Loan Guarantees;

(3) Interest subsidies; and

(4) Insurance.

(c) *Federal financial assistance* does not include amounts received as reimbursement for services rendered to individuals as described in § 200.502 Basis for determining Federal awards *expended,* paragraph (h) and (i) of this Part.

§ 200.41 Federal interest.

Federal interest means, for purposes of § 200.329 Reporting on real property or when used in connection with the acquisition or improvement of real property, equipment, or supplies under a Federal award, the dollar amount that is the product of the:

(a) Federal share of total project costs; and

(b) Current fair market value of the property, improvements, or both, to the extent the costs of acquiring or improving the property were included as project costs.

§ 200.42 Federal program.

Federal program means:

(a) All Federal awards which are assigned a single number in the CFDA.

(b) When no CFDA number is assigned, all Federal awards to non-Federal entities from the same agency made for the same purpose should be combined and considered one program.

(c) Notwithstanding paragraphs (a) and (b) of this definition, a cluster of programs. The types of clusters of programs are:

(1) Research and development (R&D);

(2) Student financial aid (SFA); and

(3) ''Other clusters,'' as described in the definition of Cluster of Programs.

§ 200.43 Federal share.

Federal share means the portion of the total project costs that are paid by Federal funds.

§ 200.44 Final cost objective.

Final cost objective means a cost objective which has allocated to it both direct and indirect costs and, in the non-Federal entity's accumulation system, is one of the final accumulation points, such as a particular award, internal project, or other direct activity of a non-Federal entity. See also §§ 200.28 Cost objective and 200.60 Intermediate cost objective.

§ 200.45 Fixed amount awards.

Fixed amount awards means a type of grant agreement under which the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity provides a specific level of support without regard to actual costs incurred under the Federal award. This type of Federal award reduces some of the administrative burden and record-keeping requirements for both the non-Federal entity and Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity. Accountability is based primarily on performance and results. See §§ 200.201 Use of grant agreements (including fixed amount awards), cooperative agreements, and contracts, paragraph (b) and 200.332 Fixed amount subawards.

§ 200.46 Foreign public entity.

Foreign public entity means:

(a) A foreign government or foreign governmental entity;

(b) A public international organization, which is an organization entitled to enjoy privileges, exemptions, and immunities as an international

organization under the International Organizations Immunities Act (22 U.S.C. 288–288f);

(c) An entity owned (in whole or in part) or controlled by a foreign government; or

(d) Any other entity consisting wholly or partially of one or more foreign governments or foreign governmental entities.

§ 200.47 Foreign organization.

Foreign organization means an entity that is:

(a) A public or private organization located in a country other than the United States and its territories that are subject to the laws of the country in which it is located, irrespective of the citizenship of project staff or place of performance;

(b) A private nongovernmental organization located in a country other than the United States that solicits and receives cash contributions from the general public;

(c) A charitable organization located in a country other than the United States that is nonprofit and tax exempt under the laws of its country of domicile and operation, and is not a university, college, accredited degree-granting institution of education, private foundation, hospital, organization engaged exclusively in research or scientific activities, church, synagogue, mosque or other similar entities organized primarily for religious purposes; or

(d) An organization located in a country other than the United States not recognized as a Foreign Public Entity.

§ 200.48 General purpose equipment.

General purpose equipment means equipment which is not limited to research, medical, scientific or other technical activities. Examples include office equipment and furnishings, modular offices, telephone networks, information technology equipment and systems, air conditioning equipment, reproduction and printing equipment, and motor vehicles. See also Equipment and Special Purpose Equipment.

§ 200.49 Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP).

GAAP has the meaning specified in accounting standards issued by the Government Accounting Standards Board (GASB) and the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB).

§ 200.50 Generally Accepted Government Auditing Standards (GAGAS).

GAGAS means generally accepted government auditing standards issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, which are applicable to financial audits.

§ 200.51 Grant agreement.

Grant agreement means a legal instrument of financial assistance between a Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity and a non-Federal entity that, consistent with 31 U.S.C. 6302, 6304:

(a) Is used to enter into a relationship the principal purpose of which is to transfer anything of value from the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity to the non-Federal entity to carry out a public purpose authorized by a law of the United States (see 31 U.S.C. 6101(3)); and not to acquire property or services for the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity's direct benefit or use;

(b) Is distinguished from a cooperative agreement in that it does not provide for substantial involvement between the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity and the non-Federal entity in carrying out the activity contemplated by the Federal award.

(c) Does not include an agreement that provides only:

(1) Direct United States Government cash assistance to an individual;

(2) A subsidy;

(3) A loan;

(4) A loan guarantee; or

(5) Insurance.

§ 200.52 Hospital.

Hospital means a facility licensed as a hospital under the law of any state or a facility operated as a hospital by the United States, a state, or a subdivision of a state.

§ 200.53 Improper payment.

(a) *Improper payment* means any payment that should not have been made or that was made in an incorrect amount (including overpayments and underpayments) under statutory, contractual, administrative, or other legally applicable requirements; and

(b) *Improper payment* includes any payment to an ineligible party, any payment for an ineligible good or service, any duplicate payment, any payment for a good or service not received (except for such payments where authorized by law), any payment that does not account for credit for applicable discounts, and any payment where insufficient or lack of documentation prevents a reviewer from discerning whether a payment was proper.

§ 200.54 Indian tribe (or "federally recognized Indian tribe").

Indian tribe means any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community, including any Alaska Native village or regional or village corporation as defined in or established pursuant to the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. Chapter 33), which is recognized as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians (25 U.S.C. 450b(e)). See annually published Bureau of Indian Affairs list of Indian Entities Recognized and Eligible to Receive Services.

§ 200.55 Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs).

IHE is defined at 20 U.S.C. 1001.

§ 200.56 Indirect (facilities & administrative (F&A)) costs.

Indirect (F&A) costs means those costs incurred for a common or joint purpose benefitting more than one cost objective, and not readily assignable to the cost objectives specifically benefitted, without effort disproportionate to the results achieved. To facilitate equitable distribution of indirect expenses to the cost objectives served, it may be necessary to establish a number of pools of indirect (F&A) costs. Indirect (F&A) cost pools should be distributed to benefitted cost objectives on bases that will produce an equitable result in consideration of relative benefits derived.

§ 200.57 Indirect cost rate proposal.

Indirect cost rate proposal means the documentation prepared by a non-Federal entity to substantiate its request for the establishment of an indirect cost rate as described in Appendix III to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs) through Appendix VII to Part 200—States and Local Government and Indian Tribe Indirect Cost Proposals of this Part.

§ 200.58 Information technology systems.

Information technology systems means computing devices, ancillary equipment, software, firmware, and similar procedures, services (including support services), and related resources. See also §§ 200.20 Computing devices and 200.33 Equipment.

§ 200.59 Intangible property.

Intangible property means property having no physical existence, such as trademarks, copyrights, patents and patent applications and property, such as loans, notes and other debt instruments, lease agreements, stock and other instruments of property ownership (whether the property is tangible or intangible).

§ 200.60 Intermediate cost objective.

Intermediate cost objective means a cost objective that is used to accumulate indirect costs or service center costs that are subsequently allocated to one or more indirect cost pools or final cost objectives. See also § 200.28 Cost objective and § 200.44 Final cost objective.

§ 200.61 Internal controls.

Internal controls means a process, implemented by a non-Federal entity, designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the achievement of objectives in the following categories:

(a) Effectiveness and efficiency of operations;

(b) Reliability of reporting for internal and external use; and

(c) Compliance with applicable laws and regulations.

§ 200.62 Internal control over compliance requirements for Federal awards.

Internal control over compliance requirements for Federal awards means a process implemented by a non-Federal entity designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the achievement of the following objectives for Federal awards:

(a) Transactions are properly recorded and accounted for, in order to:

(1) Permit the preparation of reliable financial statements and Federal reports;

(2) Maintain accountability over assets; and

(3) Demonstrate compliance with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the Federal award;

(b) Transactions are executed in compliance with:

(1) Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the Federal award that could have a direct and material effect on a Federal program; and

(2) Any other Federal statutes and regulations that are identified in the Compliance Supplement; and

(c) Funds, property, and other assets are safeguarded against loss from unauthorized use or disposition.

§ 200.63 Loan.

Loan means a Federal loan or loan guarantee received or administered by a non-Federal entity, except as used in the definition of § 200.80 Program income.

(a) The term ''direct loan'' means a disbursement of funds by the Federal government to a non-Federal borrower under a contract that requires the repayment of such funds with or without interest. The term includes the purchase of, or participation in, a loan made by another lender and financing arrangements that defer payment for more than 90 days, including the sale of a Federal government asset on credit terms. The term does not include the acquisition of a federally guaranteed loan in satisfaction of default claims or the price support loans of the Commodity Credit Corporation.

(b) The term ''direct loan obligation'' means a binding agreement by a Federal awarding agency to make a direct loan when specified conditions are fulfilled by the borrower.

(c) The term ''loan guarantee'' means any Federal government guarantee, insurance, or other pledge with respect to the payment of all or a part of the principal or interest on any debt obligation of a non-Federal borrower to a non-Federal lender, but does not include the insurance of deposits, shares, or other withdrawable accounts in financial institutions.

(d) The term ''loan guarantee commitment'' means a binding agreement by a Federal awarding agency to make a loan guarantee when specified conditions are fulfilled by the borrower, the lender, or any other party to the guarantee agreement.

§ 200.64 Local government.

Local government means any unit of government within a state, including a:

(a) County;

(b) Borough;

(c) Municipality;

(d) City;

(e) Town;

(f) Township;

(g) Parish;

(h) Local public authority, including any public housing agency under the United States Housing Act of 1937;

(i) Special district;

(j) School district;

(k) Intrastate district;

(l) Council of governments, whether or not incorporated as a nonprofit corporation under state law; and

(m) Any other agency or instrumentality of a multi-, regional, or intra-state or local government.

§ 200.65 Major program.

Major program means a Federal program determined by the auditor to be a major program in accordance with § 200.518 Major program determination or a program identified as a major program by a Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity in accordance with § 200.503 Relation to other audit requirements, paragraph (e).

§ 200.66 Management decision.

Management decision means the evaluation by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity of the audit findings and corrective action plan and the issuance of a written decision to the auditee as to what corrective action is necessary.

§ 200.67 Micro-purchase.

Micro-purchase means a purchase of supplies or services using simplified acquisition procedures, the aggregate amount of which does not exceed the micro-purchase threshold. Micro-purchase procedures comprise a subset of a non-Federal entity's small purchase procedures. The non-Federal entity uses such procedures in order to expedite the completion of its lowest-dollar small purchase transactions and minimize the associated administrative burden and cost. The micro-purchase threshold is set by the Federal Acquisition Regulation at 48 CFR Subpart 2.1 (Definitions). It is $3,000 except as otherwise discussed in Subpart 2.1 of that regulation, but this threshold is periodically adjusted for inflation.

§ 200.68 Modified Total Direct Cost (MTDC).

MTDC means all direct salaries and wages, applicable fringe benefits, materials and supplies, services, travel, and subawards and subcontracts up to the first $25,000 of each subaward or subcontract (regardless of the period of performance of the subawards and subcontracts under the award). MTDC excludes equipment, capital expenditures, charges for patient care, rental costs, tuition remission, scholarships and fellowships, participant support costs and the portion of each subaward and subcontract in excess of $25,000. Other items may only be excluded when necessary to avoid a serious inequity in the distribution of indirect costs, and with the approval of the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

§ 200.69 Non-Federal entity.

Non-Federal entity means a state, local government, Indian tribe, institution of higher education (IHE), or nonprofit organization that carries out a Federal award as a recipient or subrecipient.

§ 200.70 Nonprofit organization.

Nonprofit organization means any corporation, trust, association, cooperative, or other organization, not including IHEs, that:

(a) Is operated primarily for scientific, educational, service, charitable, or similar purposes in the public interest;

(b) Is not organized primarily for profit; and

(c) Uses net proceeds to maintain, improve, or expand the operations of the organization.

§ 200.71 Obligations.

When used in connection with a non-Federal entity's utilization of funds under a Federal award, *obligations* means orders placed for property and services, contracts and subawards made, and similar transactions during a given period that require payment by the non-Federal entity during the same or a future period.

§ 200.72 Office of Management and Budget (OMB).

OMB means the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget.

§ 200.73 Oversight agency for audit.

Oversight agency for audit means the Federal awarding agency that provides the predominant amount of funding directly to a non-Federal entity not assigned a cognizant agency for audit. When there is no direct funding, the Federal awarding agency which is the predominant source of pass-through funding must assume the oversight responsibilities. The duties of the oversight agency for audit and the process for any reassignments are described in § 200.513 Responsibilities, paragraph (b).

§ 200.74 Pass-through entity.

Pass-through entity means a non-Federal entity that provides a subaward to a subrecipient to carry out part of a Federal program.

§ 200.75 Participant support costs.

Participant support costs means direct costs for items such as stipends or subsistence allowances, travel allowances, and registration fees paid to or on behalf of participants or trainees (but not employees) in connection with conferences, or training projects.

§ 200.76 Performance goal.

Performance goal means a target level of performance expressed as a tangible, measurable objective, against which actual achievement can be compared, including a goal expressed as a quantitative standard, value, or rate. In some instances (e.g., discretionary research awards), this may be limited to the requirement to submit technical performance reports (to be evaluated in accordance with agency policy).

§ 200.77 Period of performance.

Period of performance means the time during which the non-Federal entity may incur new obligations to carry out the work authorized under the Federal award. The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must include start and end dates of the period of performance in the Federal award (see §§ 200.210 Information contained in a Federal award paragraph (a)(5) and 200.331 Requirements for pass-through entities, paragraph (a)(1)(iv)).

§ 200.78 Personal property.

Personal property means property other than real property. It may be tangible, having physical existence, or intangible.

§ 200.79 Personally Identifiable Information (PII).

PII means information that can be used to distinguish or trace an individual's identity, either alone or when combined with other personal or identifying information that is linked or linkable to a specific individual. Some information that is considered to be PII is available in public sources such as telephone books, public Web sites, and university listings. This type of information is considered to be Public PII and includes, for example, first and last name, address, work telephone number, email address, home telephone number, and general educational credentials. The definition of PII is not anchored to any single category of information or technology. Rather, it requires a case-by-case assessment of the specific risk that an individual can be identified. Non-PII can become PII whenever additional information is made publicly available, in any medium and from any source, that, when combined with other available information, could be used to identify an individual.

§ 200.80 Program income.

Program income means gross income earned by the non-Federal entity that is directly generated by a supported activity or earned as a result of the Federal award during the period of performance. (See § 200.77 Period of performance.) Program income includes but is not limited to income from fees for services performed, the use or rental or real or personal property acquired under Federal awards, the sale of commodities or items fabricated under a Federal award, license fees and royalties on patents and copyrights, and principal and interest on loans made with Federal award funds. Interest earned on advances of Federal funds is not program income. Except as otherwise provided in Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of the Federal award, program income does not include rebates, credits, discounts, and interest earned on any of them.

See also § 200.407 Prior written approval (prior approval). See also 35 U.S.C. 200–212 ''Disposition of Rights in Educational Awards'' applies to inventions made under Federal awards.

§ 200.81 Property.

Property means real property or personal property.

§ 200.82 Protected Personally Identifiable Information (Protected PII).

Protected PII means an individual's first name or first initial and last name in combination with any one or more of types of information, including, but not limited to, social security number, passport number, credit card numbers, clearances, bank numbers, biometrics, date and place of birth, mother's maiden name, criminal, medical and financial records, educational transcripts. This does not include PII that is required by law to be disclosed. (See also § 200.79 Personally Identifiable Information (PII)).

§ 200.83 Project cost.

Project cost means total allowable costs incurred under a Federal award and all required cost sharing and voluntary committed cost sharing, including third-party contributions.

§ 200.84 Questioned cost.

Questioned cost means a cost that is questioned by the auditor because of an audit finding:

(a) Which resulted from a violation or possible violation of a statute, regulation, or the terms and conditions of a Federal award, including for funds used to match Federal funds;

(b) Where the costs, at the time of the audit, are not supported by adequate documentation; or

(c) Where the costs incurred appear unreasonable and do not reflect the actions a prudent person would take in the circumstances.

§ 200.85 Real property.

Real property means land, including land improvements, structures and appurtenances thereto, but excludes moveable machinery and equipment.

§ 200.86 Recipient.

Recipient means a non-Federal entity that receives a Federal award directly from a Federal awarding agency to carry out an activity under a Federal program. The term recipient does not include subrecipients. See also § 200.69 Non-Federal entity.

§ 200.87 Research and Development (R&D).

R&D means all research activities, both basic and applied, and all development activities that are performed by non-Federal entities. The term research also includes activities involving the training of individuals in research techniques where such activities utilize the same facilities as other research and development activities and where such activities are not included in the instruction function.

''Research'' is defined as a systematic study directed toward fuller scientific knowledge or understanding of the subject studied. ''Development'' is the systematic use of knowledge and understanding gained from research directed toward the production of useful materials, devices, systems, or methods, including design and development of prototypes and processes.

§ 200.88 Simplified acquisition threshold.

Simplified acquisition threshold means the dollar amount below which a non-Federal entity may purchase property or services using small purchase methods. Non-Federal entities adopt small purchase procedures in order to expedite the purchase of items costing less than the simplified acquisition threshold. The simplified acquisition threshold is set by the Federal Acquisition Regulation at 48 CFR Subpart 2.1 (Definitions) and in accordance with 41 U.S.C. 1908. As of the publication of this Part, the simplified acquisition threshold is $150,000, but this threshold is periodically adjusted for inflation. (Also see definition of § 200.67 Micro-purchase.)

§ 200.89 Special purpose equipment.

Special purpose equipment means equipment which is used only for research, medical, scientific, or other technical activities. Examples of special purpose equipment include microscopes, x-ray machines, surgical instruments, and spectrometers. See also §§ 200.33 Equipment and 200.48 General purpose equipment.

§ 200.90 State.

State means any state of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, and any agency or instrumentality thereof exclusive of local governments.

§ 200.91 Student Financial Aid (SFA).

SFA means Federal awards under those programs of general student assistance, such as those authorized by Title IV of the Higher Education Act of 1965, as amended, (20 U.S.C. 1070–1099d), which are administered by the U.S. Department of Education, and similar programs provided by other Federal agencies. It does not include Federal awards under programs that provide fellowships or similar Federal awards to students on a competitive basis, or for specified studies or research.

§ 200.92 Subaward.

Subaward means an award provided by a pass-through entity to a subrecipient for the subrecipient to carry out part of a Federal award received by the pass-through entity. It does not include payments to a contractor or payments to an individual that is a beneficiary of a Federal program. A subaward may be provided through any form of legal agreement, including an agreement that the pass-through entity considers a contract.

§ 200.93 Subrecipient.

Subrecipient means a non-Federal entity that receives a subaward from a pass-through entity to carry out part of a Federal program; but does not include an individual that is a beneficiary of such program. A subrecipient may also be a recipient of other Federal awards directly from a Federal awarding agency.

§ 200.94 Supplies.

Supplies means all tangible personal property other than those described in § 200.33 Equipment. A computing device is a supply if the acquisition cost is less than the lesser of the capitalization level established by the non-Federal entity for financial statement purposes or $5,000, regardless of the length of its useful life. See also §§ 200.20 Computing devices and 200.33 Equipment.

§ 200.95 Termination.

Termination means the ending of a Federal award, in whole or in part at any time prior to the planned end of period of performance.

§ 200.96 Third-party in-kind contributions.

Third-party in-kind contributions means the value of non-cash contributions (i.e., property or services) that—

(a) Benefit a federally assisted project or program; and

(b) Are contributed by non-Federal third parties, without charge, to a non-Federal entity under a Federal award.

§ 200.97 Unliquidated obligations.

Unliquidated obligations means, for financial reports prepared on a cash basis, obligations incurred by the non-Federal entity that have not been paid (liquidated). For reports prepared on an accrual expenditure basis, these are obligations incurred by the non-Federal entity for which an expenditure has not been recorded.

§ 200.98 Unobligated balance.

Unobligated balance means the amount of funds under a Federal award that the non-Federal entity has not obligated. The amount is computed by subtracting the cumulative amount of the non-Federal entity's unliquidated obligations and expenditures of funds under the Federal award from the cumulative amount of the funds that the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity authorized the non-Federal entity to obligate.

§ 200.99 Voluntary committed cost sharing.

Voluntary committed cost sharing means cost sharing specifically pledged on a voluntary basis in the proposal's budget or the Federal award on the part of the non-Federal entity and that becomes a binding requirement of Federal award.

Subpart B—General Provisions

§ 200.100 Purpose.

(a)(1) This Part establishes uniform administrative requirements, cost principles, and audit requirements for Federal awards to non-Federal entities, as described in § 200.101 Applicability. Federal awarding agencies must not impose additional or inconsistent requirements, except as provided in §§ 200.102 Exceptions and 200.210 Information contained in a Federal award, or unless specifically required by Federal statute, regulation, or Executive Order.

(2) This Part provides the basis for a systematic and periodic collection and uniform submission by Federal agencies of information on all Federal financial assistance programs to the Office of Management and Budget (OMB). It also establishes Federal policies related to the delivery of this information to the public, including through the use of electronic media. It prescribes the manner in which General Services Administration (GSA), OMB, and Federal agencies that administer Federal financial assistance programs are to carry out their statutory responsibilities under the Federal Program Information Act (31 U.S.C. 6101–6106).

(b) Administrative requirements. Subparts B through D of this Part set

forth the uniform administrative requirements for grant and cooperative agreements, including the requirements for Federal awarding agency management of Federal grant programs before the Federal award has been made, and the requirements Federal awarding agencies may impose on non-Federal entities in the Federal award.

(c) Cost Principles. Subpart E—Cost Principles of this Part establishes principles for determining the allowable costs incurred by non-Federal entities under Federal awards. The principles are for the purpose of cost determination and are not intended to identify the circumstances or dictate the extent of Federal government participation in the financing of a particular program or project. The principles are designed to provide that Federal awards bear their fair share of cost recognized under these principles except where restricted or prohibited by statute.

(d) Single Audit Requirements and Audit Follow-up. Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part is issued pursuant to the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, (31 U.S.C. 7501–7507). It sets forth standards for obtaining consistency and uniformity among Federal agencies for the audit of non-Federal entities expending Federal awards. These provisions also provide the policies and procedures for Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities when using the results of these audits.

(e) For OMB guidance to Federal awarding agencies on Challenges and Prizes, please see M–10–11 Guidance on the Use of Challenges and Prizes to Promote Open Government, issued March 8, 2010, or its successor.

§ 200.101 Applicability.

(a) General applicability to Federal agencies. The requirements established in this Part apply to Federal agencies that make Federal awards to non-Federal entities. These requirements are applicable to all costs related to Federal awards.

(b)(1) Applicability to different types of Federal awards. The following table describes what portions of this Part apply to which types of Federal awards. The terms and conditions of Federal awards (including this Part) flow down to subawards to subrecipients unless a particular section of this Part or the terms and conditions of the Federal award specifically indicate otherwise. This means that non-Federal entities must comply with requirements in this Part regardless of whether the non-Federal entity is a recipient or subrecipient of a Federal award. Pass-through entities must comply with the requirements described in Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements of this Part, §§ 200.330 Subrecipient and contractor determinations through 200.332 Fixed amount Subawards, but not any requirements in this Part directed towards Federal awarding agencies unless the requirements of this Part or the terms and conditions of the Federal award indicate otherwise.

The following portions of the Part:	Are applicable to the following types of Federal Awards (except as noted in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section):	Are NOT applicable to the following types of Federal Awards:
This table must be read along with the other provisions of this section		
Authority: 31 U.S.C. 503		
Subpart A—Acronyms and Definitions	—All.	
Subpart B—General Provisions, except for §§ § 200.111 English *language,* § 200.112 Conflict of *interest,* § 200.113. Mandatory *disclosures*	—All.	
§ 200.111 English *language,* § 200.112 Conflict of *interest,* and § 200.113. Mandatory *disclosures*	—Grant agreements and cooperative agreements.	—Agreements for: loans, loan guarantees, interest subsidies, and insurance. —Cost-reimbursement contracts awarded under the Federal Acquisition Regulations and cost-reimbursement subcontracts under these contracts.
Subparts C–D, except for Subrecipient Monitoring and Management.	—Grant agreements and cooperative agreements.	—Agreements for: loans, loan guarantees, interest subsidies, and insurance. —Cost-reimbursement contracts awarded under the Federal Acquisition Regulations and cost-reimbursement subcontracts under these contracts.
Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements, Subrecipient Monitoring and Management.	—All.	
Subpart E—Cost Principles	—Grant agreements and cooperative agreements, except those providing food commodities. —Cost-reimbursement contracts awarded under the Federal Acquisition Regulations and cost-reimbursement subcontracts under these contracts in accordance with the FAR.	—Grant agreements and cooperative agreements providing food commodities. —Fixed amount awards. —Agreements for: loans, loan guarantees, interest subsidies, insurance. —Federal awards to hospitals (see Appendix IX to Part 200—Hospital Cost Principles).
Subpart F—Audit Requirements	—All.	

(2) Federal award of cost-reimbursement contract under the FAR to a non-Federal entity. When a non-Federal entity is awarded a cost-reimbursement contract, only Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements of this Part, §§ 200.330 Subrecipient and contractor determinations through 200.332 Fixed amount Subawards (in addition to any FAR related requirements for subaward monitoring), Subpart E—Cost Principles of this Part and Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part are incorporated by reference into the contract. However, when the Cost Accounting Standards (CAS) are applicable to the contract, they take precedence over the requirements of this Part except for Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part when they are in conflict. In addition, costs that are made unallowable under 10 U.S.C. 2324(e) and 41 U.S.C. 4304(a) as described in the FAR subpart 31.2 and subpart 31.603 are always unallowable. For requirements other than those covered in Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements of this Part, §§ 200.330 Subrecipient and contractor determinations through 200.332 Fixed amount Subawards, Subpart E—Cost Principles of this Part and Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part, the terms of the contract and the FAR apply.

(3) With the exception of Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part, which is required by the Single Audit Act, in any circumstances where the provisions of Federal statutes or regulations differ from the provisions of this Part, the provision of the Federal statutes or regulations govern. This includes, for agreements with Indian tribes, the provisions of the Indian Self-Determination and Education and Assistance Act (ISDEAA), as amended, 25 U.S.C 450–458ddd–2.

(c) Federal agencies may apply subparts A through E of this Part to for-profit entities, foreign public entities, or foreign organizations, except where the Federal awarding agency determines that the application these subparts would be inconsistent with the international obligations of the United States or the statute or regulations of a foreign government.

(d) Except for § 200.202 Requirement to provide public notice of Federal financial assistance programs and §§ 200.330 Subrecipient and contractor determinations through 200.332 Fixed amount Subawards of Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements of this Part, the requirements in Subpart C—Pre-Federal Award Requirements and Contents of Federal Awards, Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements of this Part, and Subpart E—Cost Principles of this Part do not apply to the following programs:

(1) The block grant awards authorized by the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981 (including Community Services; Preventive Health and Health Services; Alcohol, Drug Abuse, and Mental Health Services; Maternal and Child Health Services; Social Services; Low-Income Home Energy Assistance; States' Program of Community Development Block Grant Awards for Small Cities; and Elementary and Secondary Education other than programs administered by the Secretary of Education under title V, subtitle D, chapter 2, section 583—the Secretary's discretionary award program) and both the Alcohol and Drug Abuse Treatment and Rehabilitation Block Grant Award (42 U.S.C. 300x–21 to 300x–35 and 42 U.S.C. 300x–51 to 300x64) and the Mental Health Service for the Homeless Block Grant Award (42 U.S.C. 300x to 300x–9) under the Public Health Services Act.

(2) Federal awards to local education agencies under 20 U.S.C. 7702–7703b, (portions of the Impact Aid program);

(3) Payments under the Department of Veterans Affairs' State Home Per Diem Program (38 U.S.C. 1741); and

(4) Federal awards authorized under the Child Care and Development Block Grant Act of 1990, as amended:

(i) Child Care and Development Block Grant (42 U.S.C. 9858)

(ii) Child Care Mandatory and Matching Funds of the Child Care and Development Fund (42 U.S.C. 9858)

(e) Except for § 200.202 Requirement to provide public notice of Federal financial assistance programs the guidance in Subpart C—Pre-Federal Award Requirements and Contents of Federal Awards of this Part does not apply to the following programs:

(1) Entitlement Federal awards to carry out the following programs of the Social Security Act:

(i) Temporary Assistance to Needy Families (title IV–A of the Social Security Act, 42 U.S.C. 601–619);

(ii) Child Support Enforcement and Establishment of Paternity (title IV–D of the Social Security Act, 42 U.S.C. 651–669b);

(iii) Foster Care and Adoption Assistance (title IV–E of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 670–679c);

(iv) Aid to the Aged, Blind, and Disabled (titles I, X, XIV, and XVI–AABD of the Act, as amended); and

(v) Medical Assistance (Medicaid) (title XIX of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1396–1396w–5) not including the State Medicaid Fraud Control program authorized by section 1903(a)(6)(B) of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1396b(a)(6)(B)).

(2) A Federal award for an experimental, pilot, or demonstration project that is also supported by a Federal award listed in paragraph (e)(1) of this section;

(3) Federal awards under subsection 412(e) of the Immigration and Nationality Act and subsection 501(a) of the Refugee Education Assistance Act of 1980 (Pub. L. 96–422, 94 Stat. 1809), for cash assistance, medical assistance, and supplemental security income benefits to refugees and entrants and the administrative costs of providing the assistance and benefits (8 U.S.C. 1522(e));

(4) Entitlement awards under the following programs of The National School Lunch Act:

(i) National School Lunch Program (section 4 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1753),

(ii) Commodity Assistance (section 6 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1755),

(iii) Special Meal Assistance (section 11 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1759a),

(iv) Summer Food Service Program for Children (section 13 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1761), and

(v) Child and Adult Care Food Program (section 17 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1766).

(5) Entitlement awards under the following programs of The Child Nutrition Act of 1966:

(i) Special Milk Program (section 3 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1772),

(ii) School Breakfast Program (section 4 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1773), and

(iii) State Administrative Expenses (section 7 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. section 1776).

(6) Entitlement awards for State Administrative Expenses under The Food and Nutrition Act of 2008 (section 16 of the Act, 7 U.S.C. 2025).

(7) Non-discretionary Federal awards under the following non-entitlement programs:

(i) Special Supplemental Nutrition Program for Women, Infants and Children (section 17 of the Child Nutrition Act of 1966) 42 U.S.C. section 1786;

(ii) The Emergency Food Assistance Programs (Emergency Food Assistance Act of 1983) 7 U.S.C. section 7501 note; and

(iii) Commodity Supplemental Food Program (section 5 of the Agriculture and Consumer Protection Act of 1973) 7 U.S.C. section 612c note.

§ 200.102 Exceptions.

(a) With the exception of Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part, OMB may allow exceptions for classes of Federal awards or non-Federal entities subject to the requirements of this Part when exceptions are not prohibited by statute. However, in the interest of maximum uniformity, exceptions from the requirements of this Part will be permitted only in unusual circumstances. Exceptions for classes of Federal awards or non-Federal entities will be published on the OMB Web site at *www.whitehouse.gov/omb*.

(b) Exceptions on a case-by-case basis for individual non-Federal entities may be authorized by the Federal awarding agency or cognizant agency for indirect costs except where otherwise required by law or where OMB or other approval is expressly required by this Part. No case-by-case exceptions may be granted to the provisions of Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part.

(c) The Federal awarding agency may apply more restrictive requirements to a class of Federal awards or non-Federal entities when approved by OMB, required by Federal statutes or regulations except for the requirements in Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part. A Federal awarding agency may apply less restrictive requirements when making fixed amount awards as defined in Subpart A—Acronyms and Definitions of this Part, except for those requirements imposed by statute or in Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part.

(d) On a case-by-case basis, OMB will approve new strategies for Federal awards when proposed by the Federal awarding agency in accordance with OMB guidance (such as M–13–17) to develop additional evidence relevant to addressing important policy challenges or to promote cost-effectiveness in and across Federal programs. Proposals may draw on the innovative program designs discussed in M–13–17 to expand or improve the use of effective practices in delivering Federal financial assistance while also encouraging innovation in service delivery. Proposals submitted to OMB in accordance with M–13–17 may include requests to waive requirements other than those in Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part.

§ 200.103 Authorities.

This Part is issued under the following authorities.

(a) Subpart B—General Provisions of this Part through Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements of this Part are authorized under 31 U.S.C. 503 (the Chief Financial Officers Act, Functions of the Deputy Director for Management), 31 U.S.C. 1111 (Improving Economy and Efficiency of the United States Government), 41 U.S.C. 1101–1131 (the Office of Federal Procurement Policy Act), Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1970, and Executive Order 11541 (''Prescribing the Duties of the Office of Management and Budget and the Domestic Policy Council in the Executive Office of the President''), the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, (31 U.S.C. 7501–7507), as well as The Federal Program Information Act (Public Law 95–220 and Public Law 98–169, as amended, codified at 31 U.S.C. 6101–6106).

(b) Subpart E—Cost Principles of this Part is authorized under the Budget and Accounting Act of 1921, as amended; the Budget and Accounting Procedures Act of 1950, as amended (31 U.S.C. 1101–1125); the Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990 (31 U.S.C. 503–504); Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1970; and Executive Order No. 11541, ''Prescribing the Duties of the Office of Management and Budget and the Domestic Policy Council in the Executive Office of the President.''

(c) Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part is authorized under the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, (31 U.S.C. 7501–7507).

§ 200.104 Supersession.

As described in § 200.110 Effective/applicability date, this Part supersedes the following OMB guidance documents and regulations under Title 2 of the Code of Federal Regulations:

(a) A–21, ''Cost Principles for Educational Institutions'' (2 CFR Part 220);

(b) A–87, ''Cost Principles for State, Local and Indian Tribal Governments'' (2 CFR Part 225) and also **Federal Register** notice 51 FR 552 (January 6, 1986);

(c) A–89, ''Federal Domestic Assistance Program Information'';

(d) A–102, ''Grant Awards and Cooperative Agreements with State and Local Governments'';

(e) A–110, ''Uniform Administrative Requirements for Awards and Other Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Nonprofit Organizations'' (codified at 2 CFR 215);

(f) A–122, ''Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations'' (2 CFR Part 230);

(g) A–133, ''Audits of States, Local Governments and Non-Profit Organizations,''; and

(h) Those sections of A–50 related to audits performed under Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part.

§ 200.105 Effect on other issuances.

For Federal awards subject to this Part, all administrative requirements, program manuals, handbooks and other non-regulatory materials that are inconsistent with the requirements of this Part must be superseded upon implementation of this Part by the Federal agency, except to the extent they are required by statute or authorized in accordance with the provisions in § 200.102 Exceptions.

§ 200.106 Agency implementation.

The specific requirements and responsibilities of Federal agencies and non-Federal entities are set forth in this Part. Federal agencies making Federal awards to non-Federal entities must implement the language in the Subpart C—Pre-Federal Award Requirements and Contents of Federal Awards of this Part through Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part in codified regulations unless different provisions are required by Federal statute or are approved by OMB.

§ 200.107 OMB responsibilities.

OMB will review Federal agency regulations and implementation of this Part, and will provide interpretations of policy requirements and assistance to ensure effective and efficient implementation. Any exceptions will be subject to approval by OMB. Exceptions will only be made in particular cases where adequate justification is presented.

§ 200.108 Inquiries.

Inquiries concerning this Part may be directed to the Office of Federal Financial Management Office of Management and Budget, in Washington, DC. Non-Federal entities' inquiries should be addressed to the Federal awarding agency, cognizant agency for indirect costs, cognizant or

oversight agency for audit, or pass-through entity as appropriate.

§ 200.109 Review date.

OMB will review this Part at least every five years after December 26, 2013.

§ 200.110 Effective/applicability date.

(a) The standards set forth in this Part which affect administration of Federal awards issued by Federal agencies become effective once implemented by Federal agencies or when any future amendment to this Part becomes final. Federal agencies must implement the policies and procedures applicable to Federal awards by promulgating a regulation to be effective by December 26, 2014 unless different provisions are required by statute or approved by OMB.

(b) The standards set forth in Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part and any other standards which apply directly to Federal agencies will be effective December 26, 2013 and will apply to audits of fiscal years beginning on or after December 26, 2014.

§ 200.111 English language.

(a) All Federal financial assistance announcements and Federal award information must be in the English language. Applications must be submitted in the English language and must be in the terms of U.S. dollars. If the Federal awarding agency receives applications in another currency, the Federal awarding agency will evaluate the application by converting the foreign currency to United States currency using the date specified for receipt of the application.

(b) Non-Federal entities may translate the Federal award and other documents into another language. In the event of inconsistency between any terms and conditions of the Federal award and any translation into another language, the English language meaning will control. Where a significant portion of the non-Federal entity's employees who are working on the Federal award are not fluent in English, the non-Federal entity must provide the Federal award in English and the language(s) with which employees are more familiar.

§ 200.112 Conflict of interest.

The Federal awarding agency must establish conflict of interest policies for Federal awards. The non-Federal entity must disclose in writing any potential conflict of interest to the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity in accordance with applicable Federal awarding agency policy.

§ 200.113 Mandatory disclosures.

The non-Federal entity or applicant for a Federal award must disclose, in a timely manner, in writing to the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity all violations of Federal criminal law involving fraud, bribery, or gratuity violations potentially affecting the Federal award. Failure to make required disclosures can result in any of the remedies described in § 200.338 Remedies for noncompliance, including suspension or debarment. (See also 2 CFR Part 180 and 31 U.S.C. 3321).

Subpart C—Pre-Federal Award Requirements and Contents of Federal Awards

§ 200.200 Purpose.

(a) Sections 200.201 Use of grant agreements (including fixed amount awards), cooperative agreements, and contracts through 200.208 Certifications and representations. Prescribe instructions and other pre-award matters to be used in the announcement and application process.

(b) Use of §§ 200.203 Notices of funding opportunities, 200.204 Federal awarding agency review of merit of proposals, 200.205 Federal awarding agency review of risk posed by applicants, and 200.207 Specific conditions, is required only for competitive Federal awards, but may also be used by the Federal awarding agency for non-competitive awards where appropriate or where required by Federal statute.

§ 200.201 Use of grant agreements (including fixed amount awards), cooperative agreements, and contracts.

(a) The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must decide on the appropriate instrument for the Federal award (i.e., grant agreement, cooperative agreement, or contract) in accordance with the Federal Grant and Cooperative Agreement Act (31 U.S.C. 6301–08).

(b) Fixed Amount Awards. In addition to the options described in paragraph (a) of this section, Federal awarding agencies, or pass-through entities as permitted in § 200.332 Fixed amount subawards, may use fixed amount awards (see § 200.45 Fixed amount awards) to which the following conditions apply:

(1) Payments are based on meeting specific requirements of the Federal award. Accountability is based on performance and results. The Federal award amount is negotiated using the cost principles (or other pricing information) as a guide. Except in the case of termination before completion of the Federal award, there is no governmental review of the actual costs incurred by the non-Federal entity in performance of the award. The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may use fixed amount awards if the project scope is specific and if adequate cost, historical, or unit pricing data is available to establish a fixed amount award with assurance that the non-Federal entity will realize no increment above actual cost. Some of the ways in which the Federal award may be paid include, but are not limited to:

(i) In several partial payments, the amount of each agreed upon in advance, and the ''milestone'' or event triggering the payment also agreed upon in advance, and set forth in the Federal award;

(ii) On a unit price basis, for a defined unit or units, at a defined price or prices, agreed to in advance of performance of the Federal award and set forth in the Federal award; or,

(iii) In one payment at Federal award completion.

(2) A fixed amount award cannot be used in programs which require mandatory cost sharing or match.

(3) The non-Federal entity must certify in writing to the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity at the end of the Federal award that the project or activity was completed or the level of effort was expended. If the required level of activity or effort was not carried out, the amount of the Federal award must be adjusted.

(4) Periodic reports may be established for each Federal award.

(5) Changes in principal investigator, project leader, project partner, or scope of effort must receive the prior written approval of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

§ 200.202 Requirement to provide public notice of Federal financial assistance programs.

(a) The Federal awarding agency must notify the public of Federal programs in the Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance (CFDA), maintained by the General Services Administration (GSA).

(1) The CFDA, or any OMB-designated replacement, is the single, authoritative, governmentwide comprehensive source of Federal financial assistance program information produced by the executive branch of the Federal government.

(2) The information that the Federal awarding agency must submit to GSA for approval by OMB is listed in paragraph (b) of this section. GSA must prescribe the format for the submission.

(3) The Federal awarding agency may not award Federal financial assistance without assigning it to a program that

has been included in the CFDA as required in this section unless there are exigent circumstances requiring otherwise, such as timing requirements imposed by statute.

(b) For each program that awards discretionary Federal awards, non-discretionary Federal awards, loans, insurance, or any other type of Federal financial assistance, the Federal awarding agency must submit the following information to GSA:

(1) Program Description, Purpose, Goals and Measurement. A brief summary of the statutory or regulatory requirements of the program and its intended outcome. Where appropriate, the Program Description, Purpose, Goals, and Measurement should align with the strategic goals and objectives within the Federal awarding agency's performance plan and should support the Federal awarding agency's performance measurement, management, and reporting as required by Part 6 of OMB Circular A–11;

(2) Identification of whether the program makes Federal awards on a discretionary basis or the Federal awards are prescribed by Federal statute, such as in the case of formula grants.

(3) Projected total amount of funds available for the program. Estimates based on previous year funding are acceptable if current appropriations are not available at the time of the submission;

(4) Anticipated Source of Available Funds: The statutory authority for funding the program and, to the extent possible, agency, sub-agency, or, if known, the specific program unit that will issue the Federal awards, and associated funding identifier (e.g., Treasury Account Symbol(s));

(5) General Eligibility Requirements: The statutory, regulatory or other eligibility factors or considerations that determine the applicant's qualification for Federal awards under the program (e.g., type of non-Federal entity); and

(6) Applicability of Single Audit Requirements as required by Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part.

§ 200.203 Notices of funding opportunities.

For competitive grants and cooperative agreements, the Federal awarding agency must announce specific funding opportunities by providing the following information in a public notice:

(a) Summary Information in Notices of Funding Opportunities. The Federal awarding agency must display the following information posted on the OMB-designated governmentwide Web site for finding and applying for Federal financial assistance, in a location preceding the full text of the announcement:

(1) Federal Awarding Agency Name;

(2) Funding Opportunity Title;

(3) Announcement Type (whether the funding opportunity is the initial announcement of this funding opportunity or a modification of a previously announced opportunity);

(4) Funding Opportunity Number (required, if applicable). If the Federal awarding agency has assigned or will assign a number to the funding opportunity announcement, this number must be provided;

(5) Catalog of Federal Financial Assistance (CFDA) Number(s);

(6) Key Dates. Key dates include due dates for applications or Executive Order 12372 submissions, as well as for any letters of intent or pre-applications. For any announcement issued before a program's application materials are available, key dates also include the date on which those materials will be released; and any other additional information, as deemed applicable by the relevant Federal awarding agency.

(b) The Federal awarding agency must generally make all funding opportunities available for application for at least 60 calendar days. The Federal awarding agency may make a determination to have a less than 60 calendar day availability period but no funding opportunity should be available for less than 30 calendar days unless exigent circumstances require as determined by the Federal awarding agency head or delegate.

(c) Full Text of Funding Opportunities. The Federal awarding agency must include the following information in the full text of each funding opportunity. For specific instructions on the content required in this section, refer to Appendix I to Part 200—Full Text of Notice of Funding Opportunity to this Part.

(1) Full programmatic description of the funding opportunity.

(2) Federal award information, including sufficient information to help an applicant make an informed decision about whether to submit an application. (See also § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs, paragraph (b)).

(3) Specific eligibility information, including any factors or priorities that affect an applicant's or its application's eligibility for selection.

(4) Application Preparation and Submission Information, including the applicable submission dates and time.

(5) Application Review Information including the criteria and process to be used to evaluate applications. See also § 200.205 Federal awarding agency review of risk posed by applicants. See also 2 CFR Part 27.

(6) Federal Award Administration Information. See also § 200.210 Information contained in a Federal award.

§ 200.204 Federal awarding agency review of merit of proposals.

For competitive grants or cooperative agreements, unless prohibited by Federal statute, the Federal awarding agency must design and execute a merit review process for applications. This process must be described or incorporated by reference in the applicable funding opportunity (see Appendix I to this Part, Full text of the Funding Opportunity.) See also § 200.203 Notices of funding opportunities.

§ 200.205 Federal awarding agency review of risk posed by applicants.

(a) Prior to making a Federal award, the Federal awarding agency is required by 31 U.S.C. 3321 and 41 U.S.C. 2313 note to review information available through any OMB-designated repositories of governmentwide eligibility qualification or financial integrity information, such as Federal Awardee Performance and Integrity Information System (FAPIIS), Dun and Bradstreet, and ''Do Not Pay''. See also suspension and debarment requirements at 2 CFR Part 180 as well as individual Federal agency suspension and debarment regulations in title 2 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

(b) In addition, for competitive grants or cooperative agreements, the Federal awarding agency must have in place a framework for evaluating the risks posed by applicants before they receive Federal awards. This evaluation may incorporate results of the evaluation of the applicant's eligibility or the quality of its application. If the Federal awarding agency determines that a Federal award will be made, special conditions that correspond to the degree of risk assessed may be applied to the Federal award. Criteria to be evaluated must be described in the announcement of funding opportunity described in § 200.203 Notices of funding opportunities.

(c) In evaluating risks posed by applicants, the Federal awarding agency may use a risk-based approach and may consider any items such as the following:

(1) Financial stability;

(2) Quality of management systems and ability to meet the management standards prescribed in this Part;

(3) History of performance. The applicant's record in managing Federal

awards, if it is a prior recipient of Federal awards, including timeliness of compliance with applicable reporting requirements, conformance to the terms and conditions of previous Federal awards, and if applicable, the extent to which any previously awarded amounts will be expended prior to future awards;

(4) Reports and findings from audits performed under Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part or the reports and findings of any other available audits; and

(5) The applicant's ability to effectively implement statutory, regulatory, or other requirements imposed on non-Federal entities.

(d) In addition to this review, the Federal awarding agency must comply with the guidelines on governmentwide suspension and debarment in 2 CFR Part 180, and must require non-Federal entities to comply with these provisions. These provisions restrict Federal awards, subawards and contracts with certain parties that are debarred, suspended or otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in Federal programs or activities.

§ 200.206 Standard application requirements.

(a) Paperwork clearances. The Federal awarding agency may only use application information collections approved by OMB under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995 and OMB's implementing regulations in 5 CFR Part 1320, Controlling Paperwork Burdens on the Public. Consistent with these requirements, OMB will authorize additional information collections only on a limited basis.

(b) If applicable, the Federal awarding agency may inform applicants and recipients that they do not need to provide certain information otherwise required by the relevant information collection.

§ 200.207 Specific conditions.

(a) Based on the criteria set forth in § 200.205 Federal awarding agency review of risk posed by applicants or when an applicant or recipient has a history of failure to comply with the general or specific terms and conditions of a Federal award, or failure to meet expected performance goals as described in § 200.210 Information contained in a Federal award, or is not otherwise responsible, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may impose additional specific award conditions as needed under the procedure specified in paragraph (b) of this section. These additional Federal award conditions may include items such as the following:

(1) Requiring payments as reimbursements rather than advance payments;

(2) Withholding authority to proceed to the next phase until receipt of evidence of acceptable performance within a given period of performance;

(3) Requiring additional, more detailed financial reports;

(4) Requiring additional project monitoring;

(5) Requiring the non-Federal entity to obtain technical or management assistance; or

(6) Establishing additional prior approvals.

(b) The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must notify the applicant or non-Federal entity as to:

(1) The nature of the additional requirements;

(2) The reason why the additional requirements are being imposed;

(3) The nature of the action needed to remove the additional requirement, if applicable;

(4) The time allowed for completing the actions if applicable, and

(5) The method for requesting reconsideration of the additional requirements imposed.

(c) Any special conditions must be promptly removed once the conditions that prompted them have been corrected.

§ 200.208 Certifications and representations.

Unless prohibited by Federal statutes or regulations, each Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity is authorized to require the non-Federal entity to submit certifications and representations required by Federal statutes, or regulations on an annual basis. Submission may be required more frequently if the non-Federal entity fails to meet a requirement of a Federal award.

§ 200.209 Pre-award costs.

For requirements on costs incurred by the applicant prior to the start date of the period of performance of the Federal award, see § 200.458 Pre-award costs.

§ 200.210 Information contained in a Federal award.

A Federal award must include the following information:

(a) General Federal Award Information. The Federal awarding agency must include the following general Federal award information in each Federal award:

(1) Recipient name (which must match registered name in DUNS);

(2) Recipient's DUNS number (see § 200.32 Data Universal Numbering System (DUNS) number);

(3) Unique Federal Award Identification Number (FAIN);

(4) Federal Award Date (see § 200.39 Federal award date);

(5) Period of Performance Start and End Date;

(6) Amount of Federal Funds Obligated by this action;

(7) Total Amount of Federal Funds Obligated;

(8) Total Amount of the Federal Award;

(9) Budget Approved by the Federal Awarding Agency;

(10) Total Approved Cost Sharing or Matching, where applicable;

(11) Federal award project description, (to comply with statutory requirements (e.g., FFATA));

(12) Name of Federal awarding agency and contact information for awarding official,

(13) CFDA Number and Name;

(14) Identification of whether the award is R&D; and

(15) Indirect cost rate for the Federal award (including if the de minimis rate is charged per § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs).

(b) General Terms and Conditions

(1) Federal awarding agencies must incorporate the following general terms and conditions either in the Federal award or by reference, as applicable:

(i) Administrative requirements implemented by the Federal awarding agency as specified in this Part.

(ii) National policy requirements. These include statutory, executive order, other Presidential directive, or regulatory requirements that apply by specific reference and are not program-specific. See § 200.300 Statutory and national policy requirements.

(2) The Federal award must include wording to incorporate, by reference, the applicable set of general terms and conditions. The reference must be to the Web site at which the Federal awarding agency maintains the general terms and conditions.

(3) If a non-Federal entity requests a copy of the full text of the general terms and conditions, the Federal awarding agency must provide it.

(4) Wherever the general terms and conditions are publicly available, the Federal awarding agency must maintain an archive of previous versions of the general terms and conditions, with effective dates, for use by the non-Federal entity, auditors, or others.

(c) Federal Awarding Agency, Program, or Federal Award Specific Terms and Conditions. The Federal awarding agency may include with each

Federal award any terms and conditions necessary to communicate requirements that are in addition to the requirements outlined in the Federal awarding agency's general terms and conditions. Whenever practicable, these specific terms and conditions also should be shared on a public Web site and in notices of funding opportunities (as outlined in § 200.203 Notices of funding opportunities) in addition to being included in a Federal award. See also § 200.206 Standard application requirements.

(d) Federal Award Performance Goals. The Federal awarding agency must include in the Federal award an indication of the timing and scope of expected performance by the non-Federal entity as related to the outcomes intended to be achieved by the program. In some instances (e.g., discretionary research awards), this may be limited to the requirement to submit technical performance reports (to be evaluated in accordance with Federal awarding agency policy). Where appropriate, the Federal award may include specific performance goals, indicators, milestones, or expected outcomes (such as outputs, or services performed or public impacts of any of these) with an expected timeline for accomplishment. Reporting requirements must be clearly articulated such that, where appropriate, performance during the execution of the Federal award has a standard against which non-Federal entity performance can be measured. The Federal awarding agency may include program-specific requirements, as applicable. These requirements should be aligned with agency strategic goals, strategic objectives or performance goals that are relevant to the program. See also OMB Circular A–11, Preparation, Submission and Execution of the Budget Part 6 for definitions of strategic objectives and performance goals.

(e) Any other information required by the Federal awarding agency.

§ 200.211 Public access to Federal award information.

(a) In accordance with statutory requirements for Federal spending transparency (e.g., FFATA), except as noted in this section, for applicable Federal awards the Federal awarding agency must announce all Federal awards publicly and publish the required information on a publicly available OMB-designated governmentwide Web site (at time of publication, *www.USAspending.gov*).

(b) Nothing in this section may be construed as requiring the publication of information otherwise exempt under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C 552), or controlled unclassified information pursuant to Executive Order 13556.

Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements Standards for Financial and Program Management

§ 200.300 Statutory and national policy requirements.

(a) The Federal awarding agency must manage and administer the Federal award in a manner so as to ensure that Federal funding is expended and associated programs are implemented in full accordance with U.S. statutory and public policy requirements: including, but not limited to, those protecting public welfare, the environment, and prohibiting discrimination. The Federal awarding agency must communicate to the non-Federal entity all relevant public policy requirements, including those in general appropriations provisions, and incorporate them either directly or by reference in the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(b) The non-Federal entity is responsible for complying with all requirements of the Federal award. For all Federal awards, this includes the provisions of FFATA, which includes requirements on executive compensation, and also requirements implementing the Act for the non-Federal entity at 2 CFR Part 25 Financial Assistance Use of Universal Identifier and Central Contractor Registration and 2 CFR Part 170 Reporting Subaward and Executive Compensation Information. See also statutory requirements for whistleblower protections at 10 U.S.C. 2409, 41 U.S.C. 4712, and 10 U.S.C. 2324, 41 U.S.C. 4304 and 4310.

§ 200.301 Performance measurement.

The Federal awarding agency must require the recipient to use OMB-approved governmentwide standard information collections when providing financial and performance information. As appropriate and in accordance with above mentioned information collections, the Federal awarding agency must require the recipient to relate financial data to performance accomplishments of the Federal award. Also, in accordance with above mentioned governmentwide standard information collections, and when applicable, recipients must also provide cost information to demonstrate cost effective practices (e.g., through unit cost data). The recipient's performance should be measured in a way that will help the Federal awarding agency and other non-Federal entities to improve program outcomes, share lessons learned, and spread the adoption of promising practices. The Federal awarding agency should provide recipients with clear performance goals, indicators, and milestones as described in § 200.210 Information contained in a Federal award. Performance reporting frequency and content should be established to not only allow the Federal awarding agency to understand the recipient progress but also to facilitate identification of promising practices among recipients and build the evidence upon which the Federal awarding agency's program and performance decisions are made.

§ 200.302 Financial management.

(a) Each state must expend and account for the Federal award in accordance with state laws and procedures for expending and accounting for the state's own funds. In addition, the state's and the other non-Federal entity's financial management systems, including records documenting compliance with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the Federal award, must be sufficient to permit the preparation of reports required by general and program-specific terms and conditions; and the tracing of funds to a level of expenditures adequate to establish that such funds have been used according to the Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the Federal award. See also § 200.450 Lobbying.

(b) The financial management system of each non-Federal entity must provide for the following (see also §§ 200.333 Retention requirements for records, 200.334 Requests for transfer of records, 200.335 Methods for collection, transmission and storage of information, 200.336 Access to records, and 200.337 Restrictions on public access to records):

(1) Identification, in its accounts, of all Federal awards received and expended and the Federal programs under which they were received. Federal program and Federal award identification must include, as applicable, the CFDA title and number, Federal award identification number and year, name of the Federal agency, and name of the pass-through entity, if any.

(2) Accurate, current, and complete disclosure of the financial results of each Federal award or program in accordance with the reporting requirements set forth in §§ 200.327 Financial reporting and 200.328 Monitoring and reporting program performance. If a Federal awarding agency requires reporting on an accrual basis from a recipient that maintains its

records on other than an accrual basis, the recipient must not be required to establish an accrual accounting system. This recipient may develop accrual data for its reports on the basis of an analysis of the documentation on hand. Similarly, a pass-through entity must not require a subrecipient to establish an accrual accounting system and must allow the subrecipient to develop accrual data for its reports on the basis of an analysis of the documentation on hand.

(3) Records that identify adequately the source and application of funds for federally-funded activities. These records must contain information pertaining to Federal awards, authorizations, obligations, unobligated balances, assets, expenditures, income and interest and be supported by source documentation.

(4) Effective control over, and accountability for, all funds, property, and other assets. The non-Federal entity must adequately safeguard all assets and assure that they are used solely for authorized purposes. See § 200.303 Internal controls.

(5) Comparison of expenditures with budget amounts for each Federal award.

(6) Written procedures to implement the requirements of § 200.305 Payment.

(7) Written procedures for determining the allowability of costs in accordance with Subpart E—Cost Principles of this Part and the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

§ 200.303 Internal controls.

The non-Federal entity must:

(a) Establish and maintain effective internal control over the Federal award that provides reasonable assurance that the non-Federal entity is managing the Federal award in compliance with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the Federal award. These internal controls should be in compliance with guidance in ''Standards for Internal Control in the Federal Government'' issued by the Comptroller General of the United States and the ''Internal Control Integrated Framework'', issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO).

(b) Comply with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the Federal awards.

(c) Evaluate and monitor the non-Federal entity's compliance with statute, regulations and the terms and conditions of Federal awards.

(d) Take prompt action when instances of noncompliance are identified including noncompliance identified in audit findings.

(e) Take reasonable measures to safeguard protected personally identifiable information and other information the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity designates as sensitive or the non-Federal entity considers sensitive consistent with applicable Federal, state and local laws regarding privacy and obligations of confidentiality.

§ 200.304 Bonds.

The Federal awarding agency may include a provision on bonding, insurance, or both in the following circumstances:

(a) Where the Federal government guarantees or insures the repayment of money borrowed by the recipient, the Federal awarding agency, at its discretion, may require adequate bonding and insurance if the bonding and insurance requirements of the non-Federal entity are not deemed adequate to protect the interest of the Federal government.

(b) The Federal awarding agency may require adequate fidelity bond coverage where the non-Federal entity lacks sufficient coverage to protect the Federal government's interest.

(c) Where bonds are required in the situations described above, the bonds must be obtained from companies holding certificates of authority as acceptable sureties, as prescribed in 31 CFR Part 223, ''Surety Companies Doing Business with the United States.''

§ 200.305 Payment.

(a) For states, payments are governed by Treasury-State CMIA agreements and default procedures codified at 31 CFR Part 205 ''Rules and Procedures for Efficient Federal-State Funds Transfers'' and TFM 4A–2000 Overall Disbursing Rules for All Federal Agencies.

(b) For non-Federal entities other than states, payments methods must minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds from the United States Treasury or the pass-through entity and the disbursement by the non-Federal entity whether the payment is made by electronic funds transfer, or issuance or redemption of checks, warrants, or payment by other means. See also § 200.302 Financial management paragraph (f). Except as noted elsewhere in this Part, Federal agencies must require recipients to use only OMB-approved standard governmentwide information collection requests to request payment.

(1) The non-Federal entity must be paid in advance, provided it maintains or demonstrates the willingness to maintain both written procedures that minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds and disbursement by the non-Federal entity, and financial management systems that meet the standards for fund control and accountability as established in this Part. Advance payments to a non-Federal entity must be limited to the minimum amounts needed and be timed to be in accordance with the actual, immediate cash requirements of the non-Federal entity in carrying out the purpose of the approved program or project. The timing and amount of advance payments must be as close as is administratively feasible to the actual disbursements by the non-Federal entity for direct program or project costs and the proportionate share of any allowable indirect costs. The non-Federal entity must make timely payment to contractors in accordance with the contract provisions.

(2) Whenever possible, advance payments must be consolidated to cover anticipated cash needs for all Federal awards made by the Federal awarding agency to the recipient.

(i) Advance payment mechanisms include, but are not limited to, Treasury check and electronic funds transfer and should comply with applicable guidance in 31 CFR Part 208.

(ii) Non-Federal entities must be authorized to submit requests for advance payments and reimbursements at least monthly when electronic fund transfers are not used, and as often as they like when electronic transfers are used, in accordance with the provisions of the Electronic Fund Transfer Act (15 U.S.C. 1601).

(3) Reimbursement is the preferred method when the requirements in paragraph (b) cannot be met, when the Federal awarding agency sets a specific condition per § 200.207 Specific conditions, or when the non-Federal entity requests payment by reimbursement. This method may be used on any Federal award for construction, or if the major portion of the construction project is accomplished through private market financing or Federal loans, and the Federal award constitutes a minor portion of the project. When the reimbursement method is used, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must make payment within 30 calendar days after receipt of the billing, unless the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity reasonably believes the request to be improper.

(4) If the non-Federal entity cannot meet the criteria for advance payments and the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity has determined that reimbursement is not feasible because the non-Federal entity lacks sufficient

working capital, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may provide cash on a working capital advance basis. Under this procedure, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must advance cash payments to the non-Federal entity to cover its estimated disbursement needs for an initial period generally geared to the non-Federal entity's disbursing cycle. Thereafter, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must reimburse the non-Federal entity for its actual cash disbursements. Use of the working capital advance method of payment requires that the pass-through entity provide timely advance payments to any subrecipients in order to meet the subrecipient's actual cash disbursements. The working capital advance method of payment must not be used by the pass-through entity if the reason for using this method is the unwillingness or inability of the pass-through entity to provide timely advance payments to the subrecipient to meet the subrecipient's actual cash disbursements.

(5) Use of resources before requesting cash advance payments. To the extent available, the non-Federal entity must disburse funds available from program income (including repayments to a revolving fund), rebates, refunds, contract settlements, audit recoveries, and interest earned on such funds before requesting additional cash payments.

(6) Unless otherwise required by Federal statutes, payments for allowable costs by non-Federal entities must not be withheld at any time during the period of performance unless the conditions of §§ 200.207 Specific conditions, Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements of this Part, 200.338 Remedies for Noncompliance, or the following apply:

(i) The non-Federal entity has failed to comply with the project objectives, Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(ii) The non-Federal entity is delinquent in a debt to the United States as defined in OMB Guidance A–129, ''Policies for Federal Credit Programs and Non-Tax Receivables.'' Under such conditions, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may, upon reasonable notice, inform the non-Federal entity that payments must not be made for obligations incurred after a specified date until the conditions are corrected or the indebtedness to the Federal government is liquidated.

(iii) A payment withheld for failure to comply with Federal award conditions, but without suspension of the Federal award, must be released to the non-Federal entity upon subsequent compliance. When a Federal award is suspended, payment adjustments will be made in accordance with § 200.342 Effects of suspension and termination.

(iv) A payment must not be made to a non-Federal entity for amounts that are withheld by the non-Federal entity from payment to contractors to assure satisfactory completion of work. A payment must be made when the non-Federal entity actually disburses the withheld funds to the contractors or to escrow accounts established to assure satisfactory completion of work.

(7) Standards governing the use of banks and other institutions as depositories of advance payments under Federal awards are as follows.

(i) The Federal awarding agency and pass-through entity must not require separate depository accounts for funds provided to a non-Federal entity or establish any eligibility requirements for depositories for funds provided to the non-Federal entity. However, the non-Federal entity must be able to account for the receipt, obligation and expenditure of funds.

(ii) Advance payments of Federal funds must be deposited and maintained in insured accounts whenever possible.

(8) The non-Federal entity must maintain advance payments of Federal awards in interest-bearing accounts, unless the following apply.

(i) The non-Federal entity receives less than $120,000 in Federal awards per year.

(ii) The best reasonably available interest-bearing account would not be expected to earn interest in excess of $500 per year on Federal cash balances.

(iii) The depository would require an average or minimum balance so high that it would not be feasible within the expected Federal and non-Federal cash resources.

(iv) A foreign government or banking system prohibits or precludes interest bearing accounts.

(9) Interest earned on Federal advance payments deposited in interest-bearing accounts must be remitted annually to the Department of Health and Human Services, Payment Management System, Rockville, MD 20852. Interest amounts up to $500 per year may be retained by the non-Federal entity for administrative expense.

§ 200.306 Cost sharing or matching.

(a) Under Federal research proposals, voluntary committed cost sharing is not expected. It cannot be used as a factor during the merit review of applications or proposals, but may be considered if it is both in accordance with Federal awarding agency regulations and specified in a notice of funding opportunity. Criteria for considering voluntary committed cost sharing and any other program policy factors that may be used to determine who may receive a Federal award must be explicitly described in the notice of funding opportunity. Furthermore, only mandatory cost sharing or cost sharing specifically committed in the project budget must be included in the organized research base for computing the indirect (F&A) cost rate or reflected in any allocation of indirect costs. See also §§ 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs, 200.203 Notices of funding opportunities, and Appendix I to Part 200—Full Text of Notice of Funding Opportunity.

(b) For all Federal awards, any shared costs or matching funds and all contributions, including cash and third party in-kind contributions, must be accepted as part of the non-Federal entity's cost sharing or matching when such contributions meet all of the following criteria:

(1) Are verifiable from the non-Federal entity's records;

(2) Are not included as contributions for any other Federal award;

(3) Are necessary and reasonable for accomplishment of project or program objectives;

(4) Are allowable under Subpart E—Cost Principles of this Part;

(5) Are not paid by the Federal government under another Federal award, except where the Federal statute authorizing a program specifically provides that Federal funds made available for such program can be applied to matching or cost sharing requirements of other Federal programs;

(6) Are provided for in the approved budget when required by the Federal awarding agency; and

(7) Conform to other provisions of this Part, as applicable.

(c) Unrecovered indirect costs, including indirect costs on cost sharing or matching may be included as part of cost sharing or matching only with the prior approval of the Federal awarding agency. Unrecovered indirect cost means the difference between the amount charged to the Federal award and the amount which could have been to the Federal award under the non-Federal entity's approved negotiated indirect cost rate.

(d) Values for non-Federal entity contributions of services and property must be established in accordance with § 200.434 Contributions and donations. If a Federal awarding agency authorizes the non-Federal entity to donate

buildings or land for construction/facilities acquisition projects or long-term use, the value of the donated property for cost sharing or matching must be the lesser of paragraphs (d)(1) or (2) of this section.

(1) The value of the remaining life of the property recorded in the non-Federal entity's accounting records at the time of donation.

(2) The current fair market value. However, when there is sufficient justification, the Federal awarding agency may approve the use of the current fair market value of the donated property, even if it exceeds the value described in (1) above at the time of donation.

(e) Volunteer services furnished by third-party professional and technical personnel, consultants, and other skilled and unskilled labor may be counted as cost sharing or matching if the service is an integral and necessary part of an approved project or program. Rates for third-party volunteer services must be consistent with those paid for similar work by the non-Federal entity. In those instances in which the required skills are not found in the non-Federal entity, rates must be consistent with those paid for similar work in the labor market in which the non-Federal entity competes for the kind of services involved. In either case, paid fringe benefits that are reasonable, necessary, allocable, and otherwise allowable may be included in the valuation.

(f) When a third-party organization furnishes the services of an employee, these services must be valued at the employee's regular rate of pay plus an amount of fringe benefits that is reasonable, necessary, allocable, and otherwise allowable, and indirect costs at either the third-party organization's approved federally negotiated indirect cost rate or, a rate in accordance with § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs, paragraph (d), provided these services employ the same skill(s) for which the employee is normally paid. Where donated services are treated as indirect costs, indirect cost rates will separate the value of the donated services so that reimbursement for the donated services will not be made.

(g) Donated property from third parties may include such items as equipment, office supplies, laboratory supplies, or workshop and classroom supplies. Value assessed to donated property included in the cost sharing or matching share must not exceed the fair market value of the property at the time of the donation.

(h) The method used for determining cost sharing or matching for third-party-donated equipment, buildings and land for which title passes to the non-Federal entity may differ according to the purpose of the Federal award, if paragraph (h)(1) or (2) of this section applies.

(1) If the purpose of the Federal award is to assist the non-Federal entity in the acquisition of equipment, buildings or land, the aggregate value of the donated property may be claimed as cost sharing or matching.

(2) If the purpose of the Federal award is to support activities that require the use of equipment, buildings or land, normally only depreciation charges for equipment and buildings may be made. However, the fair market value of equipment or other capital assets and fair rental charges for land may be allowed, provided that the Federal awarding agency has approved the charges. See also § 200.420 Considerations for selected items of cost.

(i) The value of donated property must be determined in accordance with the usual accounting policies of the non-Federal entity, with the following qualifications:

(1) The value of donated land and buildings must not exceed its fair market value at the time of donation to the non-Federal entity as established by an independent appraiser (e.g., certified real property appraiser or General Services Administration representative) and certified by a responsible official of the non-Federal entity as required by the Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970, as amended, (42 U.S.C. 4601–4655) (Uniform Act) except as provided in the implementing regulations at 49 CFR Part 24.

(2) The value of donated equipment must not exceed the fair market value of equipment of the same age and condition at the time of donation.

(3) The value of donated space must not exceed the fair rental value of comparable space as established by an independent appraisal of comparable space and facilities in a privately-owned building in the same locality.

(4) The value of loaned equipment must not exceed its fair rental value.

(j) For third-party in-kind contributions, the fair market value of goods and services must be documented and to the extent feasible supported by the same methods used internally by the non-Federal entity.

§ 200.307 Program income.

(a) General. Non-Federal entities are encouraged to earn income to defray program costs where appropriate.

(b) Cost of generating program income. If authorized by Federal regulations or the Federal award, costs incidental to the generation of program income may be deducted from gross income to determine program income, provided these costs have not been charged to the Federal award.

(c) Governmental revenues. Taxes, special assessments, levies, fines, and other such revenues raised by a non-Federal entity are not program income unless the revenues are specifically identified in the Federal award or Federal awarding agency regulations as program income.

(d) Property. Proceeds from the sale of real property or equipment are not program income; such proceeds will be handled in accordance with the requirements of Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements of this Part, Property Standards §§ 200.311 Real property and 200.313 Equipment, or as specifically identified in Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(e) Use of program income. If the Federal awarding agency does not specify in its regulations or the terms and conditions of the Federal award, or give prior approval for how program income is to be used, paragraph (e)(1) of this section must apply. For Federal awards made to IHEs and nonprofit research institutions, if the Federal awarding agency does not specify in its regulations or the terms and conditions of the Federal award how program income is to be used, paragraph (e)(2) of this section must apply. In specifying alternatives to paragraphs (e)(1) and (2) of this section, the Federal awarding agency may distinguish between income earned by the recipient and income earned by subrecipients and between the sources, kinds, or amounts of income. When the Federal awarding agency authorizes the approaches in paragraphs (e)(2) and (3) of this section, program income in excess of any amounts specified must also be deducted from expenditures.

(1) Deduction. Ordinarily program income must be deducted from total allowable costs to determine the net allowable costs. Program income must be used for current costs unless the Federal awarding agency authorizes otherwise. Program income that the non-Federal entity did not anticipate at the time of the Federal award must be used to reduce the Federal award and non-Federal entity contributions rather than to increase the funds committed to the project.

(2) Addition. With prior approval of the Federal awarding agency, program income may be added to the Federal award by the Federal agency and the non-Federal entity. The program income

must be used for the purposes and under the conditions of the Federal award.

(3) Cost sharing or matching. With prior approval of the Federal awarding agency, program income may be used to meet the cost sharing or matching requirement of the Federal award. The amount of the Federal award remains the same.

(f) Income after the period of performance. There are no Federal requirements governing the disposition of income earned after the end of the period of performance for the Federal award, unless the Federal awarding agency regulations or the terms and conditions of the Federal award provide otherwise. The Federal awarding agency may negotiate agreements with recipients regarding appropriate uses of income earned after the period of performance as part of the grant closeout process. See also § 200.343 Closeout.

§ 200.308 Revision of budget and program plans.

(a) The approved budget for the Federal award summarizes the financial aspects of the project or program as approved during the Federal award process. It may include either the Federal and non-Federal share (see § 200.43 Federal share) or only the Federal share, depending upon Federal awarding agency requirements. It must be related to performance for program evaluation purposes whenever appropriate.

(b) Recipients are required to report deviations from budget or project scope or objective, and request prior approvals from Federal awarding agencies for budget and program plan revisions, in accordance with this section.

(c) For non-construction Federal awards, recipients must request prior approvals from Federal awarding agencies for one or more of the following program or budget-related reasons:

(1) Change in the scope or the objective of the project or program (even if there is no associated budget revision requiring prior written approval).

(2) Change in a key person specified in the application or the Federal award.

(3) The disengagement from the project for more than three months, or a 25 percent reduction in time devoted to the project, by the approved project director or principal investigator.

(4) The inclusion, unless waived by the Federal awarding agency, of costs that require prior approval in accordance with Subpart E—Cost Principles of this Part or 45 CFR Part 74 Appendix E, ''Principles for Determining Costs Applicable to Research and Development under Awards and Contracts with Hospitals,'' or 48 CFR Part 31, ''Contract Cost Principles and Procedures,'' as applicable.

(5) The transfer of funds budgeted for participant support costs as defined in § 200.75 Participant support costs to other categories of expense.

(6) Unless described in the application and funded in the approved Federal awards, the subawarding, transferring or contracting out of any work under a Federal award. This provision does not apply to the acquisition of supplies, material, equipment or general support services.

(7) Changes in the amount of approved cost-sharing or matching provided by the non-Federal entity. No other prior approval requirements for specific items may be imposed unless a deviation has been approved by OMB. See also §§ 200.102 Exceptions and 200.407 Prior written approval (prior approval).

(d) Except for requirements listed in paragraph (c)(1) of this section, the Federal awarding agency are authorized, at their option, to waive prior written approvals required by paragraph (c) this section. Such waivers may include authorizing recipients to do any one or more of the following:

(1) Incur project costs 90 calendar days before the Federal awarding agency makes the Federal award. Expenses more than 90 calendar days pre-award require prior approval of the Federal awarding agency. All costs incurred before the Federal awarding agency makes the Federal award are at the recipient's risk (i.e., the Federal awarding agency is under no obligation to reimburse such costs if for any reason the recipient does not receive a Federal award or if the Federal award is less than anticipated and inadequate to cover such costs). See also § 200.458 Pre-award costs.

(2) Initiate a one-time extension of the period of performance by up to 12 months unless one or more of the conditions outlined in paragraphs (d)(2)(i) through (iii) of this section apply. For one-time extensions, the recipient must notify the Federal awarding agency in writing with the supporting reasons and revised period of performance at least 10 calendar days before the end of the period of performance specified in the Federal award. This one-time extension may not be exercised merely for the purpose of using unobligated balances. Extensions require explicit prior Federal awarding agency approval when:

(i) The terms and conditions of the Federal award prohibit the extension.

(ii) The extension requires additional Federal funds.

(iii) The extension involves any change in the approved objectives or scope of the project.

(3) Carry forward unobligated balances to subsequent periods of performance.

(4) For Federal awards that support research, unless the Federal awarding agency provides otherwise in the Federal award or in the Federal awarding agency's regulations, the prior approval requirements described in paragraph (d) are automatically waived (i.e., recipients need not obtain such prior approvals) unless one of the conditions included in paragraph (d)(2) applies.

(e) The Federal awarding agency may, at its option, restrict the transfer of funds among direct cost categories or programs, functions and activities for Federal awards in which the Federal share of the project exceeds the Simplified Acquisition Threshold and the cumulative amount of such transfers exceeds or is expected to exceed 10 percent of the total budget as last approved by the Federal awarding agency. The Federal awarding agency cannot permit a transfer that would cause any Federal appropriation to be used for purposes other than those consistent with the appropriation.

(f) All other changes to non-construction budgets, except for the changes described in paragraph (c) of this section, do not require prior approval (see also § 200.407 Prior written approval (prior approval)).

(g) For construction Federal awards, the recipient must request prior written approval promptly from the Federal awarding agency for budget revisions whenever paragraph (g)(1), (2), or (3) of this section applies.

(1) The revision results from changes in the scope or the objective of the project or program.

(2) The need arises for additional Federal funds to complete the project.

(3) A revision is desired which involves specific costs for which prior written approval requirements may be imposed consistent with applicable OMB cost principles listed in Subpart E—Cost Principles of this Part.

(4) No other prior approval requirements for budget revisions may be imposed unless a deviation has been approved by OMB.

(5) When a Federal awarding agency makes a Federal award that provides support for construction and non-construction work, the Federal awarding agency may require the recipient to

obtain prior approval from the Federal awarding agency before making any fund or budget transfers between the two types of work supported.

(h) When requesting approval for budget revisions, the recipient must use the same format for budget information that was used in the application, unless the Federal awarding agency indicates a letter of request suffices.

(i) Within 30 calendar days from the date of receipt of the request for budget revisions, the Federal awarding agency must review the request and notify the recipient whether the budget revisions have been approved. If the revision is still under consideration at the end of 30 calendar days, the Federal awarding agency must inform the recipient in writing of the date when the recipient may expect the decision.

§ 200.309 Period of performance.

A non-Federal entity may charge to the Federal award only allowable costs incurred during the period of performance and any costs incurred before the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity made the Federal award that were authorized by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

Property Standards

§ 200.310 Insurance coverage.

The non-Federal entity must, at a minimum, provide the equivalent insurance coverage for real property and equipment acquired or improved with Federal funds as provided to property owned by the non-Federal entity. Federally-owned property need not be insured unless required by the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

§ 200.311 Real property.

(a) Title. Subject to the obligations and conditions set forth in this section, title to real property acquired or improved under a Federal award will vest upon acquisition in the non-Federal entity.

(b) Use. Except as otherwise provided by Federal statutes or by the Federal awarding agency, real property will be used for the originally authorized purpose as long as needed for that purpose, during which time the non-Federal entity must not dispose of or encumber its title or other interests.

(c) Disposition. When real property is no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, the non-Federal entity must obtain disposition instructions from the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity. The instructions must provide for one of the following alternatives:

(1) Retain title after compensating the Federal awarding agency. The amount paid to the Federal awarding agency will be computed by applying the Federal awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase (and costs of any improvements) to the fair market value of the property. However, in those situations where non-Federal entity is disposing of real property acquired or improved with a Federal award and acquiring replacement real property under the same Federal award, the net proceeds from the disposition may be used as an offset to the cost of the replacement property.

(2) Sell the property and compensate the Federal awarding agency. The amount due to the Federal awarding agency will be calculated by applying the Federal awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase (and cost of any improvements) to the proceeds of the sale after deduction of any actual and reasonable selling and fixing-up expenses. If the Federal award has not been closed out, the net proceeds from sale may be offset against the original cost of the property. When non-Federal entity is directed to sell property, sales procedures must be followed that provide for competition to the extent practicable and result in the highest possible return.

(3) Transfer title to the Federal awarding agency or to a third party designated/approved by the Federal awarding agency. The non-Federal entity is entitled to be paid an amount calculated by applying the non-Federal entity's percentage of participation in the purchase of the real property (and cost of any improvements) to the current fair market value of the property.

§ 200.312 Federally-owned and exempt property.

(a) Title to federally-owned property remains vested in the Federal government. The non-Federal entity must submit annually an inventory listing of federally-owned property in its custody to the Federal awarding agency. Upon completion of the Federal award or when the property is no longer needed, the non-Federal entity must report the property to the Federal awarding agency for further Federal agency utilization.

(b) If the Federal awarding agency has no further need for the property, it must declare the property excess and report it for disposal to the appropriate Federal disposal authority, unless the Federal awarding agency has statutory authority to dispose of the property by alternative methods (e.g., the authority provided by the Federal Technology Transfer Act (15 U.S.C. 3710 (i)) to donate research equipment to educational and non-profit organizations in accordance with Executive Order 12999, ''Educational Technology: Ensuring Opportunity for All Children in the Next Century.''). The Federal awarding agency must issue appropriate instructions to the non-Federal entity.

(c) Exempt federally-owned property means property acquired under a Federal award the title based upon the explicit terms and conditions of the Federal award that indicate the Federal awarding agency has chosen to vest in the non-Federal entity without further obligation to the Federal government or under conditions the Federal agency considers appropriate. The Federal awarding agency may exercise this option when statutory authority exists. Absent statutory authority and specific terms and conditions of the Federal award, title to exempt federally-owned property acquired under the Federal award remains with the Federal government.

§ 200.313 Equipment.

See also § 200.439 Equipment and other capital expenditures.

(a) Title. Subject to the obligations and conditions set forth in this section, title to equipment acquired under a Federal award will vest upon acquisition in the non-Federal entity. Unless a statute specifically authorizes the Federal agency to vest title in the non-Federal entity without further obligation to the Federal government, and the Federal agency elects to do so, the title must be a conditional title. Title must vest in the non-Federal entity subject to the following conditions:

(1) Use the equipment for the authorized purposes of the project until funding for the project ceases, or until the property is no longer needed for the purposes of the project.

(2) Not encumber the property without approval of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

(3) Use and dispose of the property in accordance with paragraphs (b), (c) and (e) of this section.

(b) A state must use, manage and dispose of equipment acquired under a Federal award by the state in accordance with state laws and procedures. Other non-Federal entities must follow paragraphs (c) through (e) of this section.

(c) Use.

(1) Equipment must be used by the non-Federal entity in the program or project for which it was acquired as long as needed, whether or not the project or program continues to be supported by

the Federal award, and the non-Federal entity must not encumber the property without prior approval of the Federal awarding agency. When no longer needed for the original program or project, the equipment may be used in other activities supported by the Federal awarding agency, in the following order of priority:

(i) Activities under a Federal award from the Federal awarding agency which funded the original program or project, then

(ii) Activities under Federal awards from other Federal awarding agencies. This includes consolidated equipment for information technology systems.

(2) During the time that equipment is used on the project or program for which it was acquired, the non-Federal entity must also make equipment available for use on other projects or programs currently or previously supported by the Federal government, provided that such use will not interfere with the work on the projects or program for which it was originally acquired. First preference for other use must be given to other programs or projects supported by Federal awarding agency that financed the equipment and second preference must be given to programs or projects under Federal awards from other Federal awarding agencies. Use for non-federally-funded programs or projects is also permissible. User fees should be considered if appropriate.

(3) Notwithstanding the encouragement in § 200.307 Program income to earn program income, the non-Federal entity must not use equipment acquired with the Federal award to provide services for a fee that is less than private companies charge for equivalent services unless specifically authorized by Federal statute for as long as the Federal government retains an interest in the equipment.

(4) When acquiring replacement equipment, the non-Federal entity may use the equipment to be replaced as a trade-in or sell the property and use the proceeds to offset the cost of the replacement property.

(d) Management requirements. Procedures for managing equipment (including replacement equipment), whether acquired in whole or in part under a Federal award, until disposition takes place will, as a minimum, meet the following requirements:

(1) Property records must be maintained that include a description of the property, a serial number or other identification number, the source of funding for the property (including the FAIN), who holds title, the acquisition date, and cost of the property, percentage of Federal participation in the project costs for the Federal award under which the property was acquired, the location, use and condition of the property, and any ultimate disposition data including the date of disposal and sale price of the property.

(2) A physical inventory of the property must be taken and the results reconciled with the property records at least once every two years.

(3) A control system must be developed to ensure adequate safeguards to prevent loss, damage, or theft of the property. Any loss, damage, or theft must be investigated.

(4) Adequate maintenance procedures must be developed to keep the property in good condition.

(5) If the non-Federal entity is authorized or required to sell the property, proper sales procedures must be established to ensure the highest possible return.

(e) Disposition. When original or replacement equipment acquired under a Federal award is no longer needed for the original project or program or for other activities currently or previously supported by a Federal awarding agency, except as otherwise provided in Federal statutes, regulations, or Federal awarding agency disposition instructions, the non-Federal entity must request disposition instructions from the Federal awarding agency if required by the terms and conditions of the Federal award. Disposition of the equipment will be made as follows, in accordance with Federal awarding agency disposition instructions:

(1) Items of equipment with a current per unit fair market value of $5,000 or less may be retained, sold or otherwise disposed of with no further obligation to the Federal awarding agency.

(2) Except as provided in § 200.312 Federally-owned and exempt property, paragraph (b), or if the Federal awarding agency fails to provide requested disposition instructions within 120 days, items of equipment with a current per-unit fair-market value in excess of $5,000 may be retained by the non-Federal entity or sold. The Federal awarding agency is entitled to an amount calculated by multiplying the current market value or proceeds from sale by the Federal awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase. If the equipment is sold, the Federal awarding agency may permit the non-Federal entity to deduct and retain from the Federal share $500 or ten percent of the proceeds, whichever is less, for its selling and handling expenses.

(3) The non-Federal entity may transfer title to the property to the Federal Government or to an eligible third party provided that, in such cases, the non-Federal entity must be entitled to compensation for its attributable percentage of the current fair market value of the property.

(4) In cases where a non-Federal entity fails to take appropriate disposition actions, the Federal awarding agency may direct the non-Federal entity to take disposition actions.

§ 200.314 Supplies.

See also § 200.453 Materials and supplies costs, including costs of computing devices.

(a) Title to supplies will vest in the non-Federal entity upon acquisition. If there is a residual inventory of unused supplies exceeding $5,000 in total aggregate value upon termination or completion of the project or program and the supplies are not needed for any other Federal award, the non-Federal entity must retain the supplies for use on other activities or sell them, but must, in either case, compensate the Federal government for its share. The amount of compensation must be computed in the same manner as for equipment. See § 200.313 Equipment, paragraph (e)(2) for the calculation methodology.

(b) As long as the Federal government retains an interest in the supplies, the non-Federal entity must not use supplies acquired under a Federal award to provide services to other organizations for a fee that is less than private companies charge for equivalent services, unless specifically authorized by Federal statute.

§ 200.315 Intangible property.

(a) Title to intangible property (see § 200.59 Intangible property) acquired under a Federal award vests upon acquisition in the non-Federal entity. The non-Federal entity must use that property for the originally-authorized purpose, and must not encumber the property without approval of the Federal awarding agency. When no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, disposition of the intangible property must occur in accordance with the provisions in § 200.313 Equipment paragraph (e).

(b) The non-Federal entity may copyright any work that is subject to copyright and was developed, or for which ownership was acquired, under a Federal award. The Federal awarding agency reserves a royalty-free, nonexclusive and irrevocable right to reproduce, publish, or otherwise use the work for Federal purposes, and to authorize others to do so.

(c) The non-Federal entity is subject to applicable regulations governing patents and inventions, including governmentwide regulations issued by the Department of Commerce at 37 CFR Part 401, ''Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Awards, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements.''

(d) The Federal government has the right to:

(1) Obtain, reproduce, publish, or otherwise use the data produced under a Federal award; and

(2) Authorize others to receive, reproduce, publish, or otherwise use such data for Federal purposes.

(e) Freedom of Information Act (FOIA).

(1) In addition, in response to a Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) request for research data relating to published research findings produced under a Federal award that were used by the Federal government in developing an agency action that has the force and effect of law, the Federal awarding agency must request, and the non-Federal entity must provide, within a reasonable time, the research data so that they can be made available to the public through the procedures established under the FOIA. If the Federal awarding agency obtains the research data solely in response to a FOIA request, the Federal awarding agency may charge the requester a reasonable fee equaling the full incremental cost of obtaining the research data. This fee should reflect costs incurred by the Federal agency and the non-Federal entity. This fee is in addition to any fees the Federal awarding agency may assess under the FOIA (5 U.S.C. 552(a)(4)(A)).

(2) Published research findings means when:

(i) Research findings are published in a peer-reviewed scientific or technical journal; or

(ii) A Federal agency publicly and officially cites the research findings in support of an agency action that has the force and effect of law. ''Used by the Federal government in developing an agency action that has the force and effect of law'' is defined as when an agency publicly and officially cites the research findings in support of an agency action that has the force and effect of law.

(3) Research data means the recorded factual material commonly accepted in the scientific community as necessary to validate research findings, but not any of the following: preliminary analyses, drafts of scientific papers, plans for future research, peer reviews, or communications with colleagues. This ''recorded'' material excludes physical objects (e.g., laboratory samples). Research data also do not include:

(i) Trade secrets, commercial information, materials necessary to be held confidential by a researcher until they are published, or similar information which is protected under law; and

(ii) Personnel and medical information and similar information the disclosure of which would constitute a clearly unwarranted invasion of personal privacy, such as information that could be used to identify a particular person in a research study.

§ 200.316 Property trust relationship.

Real property, equipment, and intangible property, that are acquired or improved with a Federal award must be held in trust by the non-Federal entity as trustee for the beneficiaries of the project or program under which the property was acquired or improved. The Federal awarding agency may require the non-Federal entity to record liens or other appropriate notices of record to indicate that personal or real property has been acquired or improved with a Federal award and that use and disposition conditions apply to the property.

Procurement Standards

§ 200.317 Procurements by states.

When procuring property and services under a Federal award, a state must follow the same policies and procedures it uses for procurements from its non-Federal funds. The state will comply with § 200.322 Procurement of recovered *materials* and ensure that every purchase order or other contract includes any clauses required by section § 200.326 Contract provisions. All other non-Federal entities, including subrecipients of a state, will follow §§ 200.318 General procurement standards through 200.326 Contract provisions.

§ 200.318 General procurement standards.

(a) The non-Federal entity must use its own documented procurement procedures which reflect applicable State and local laws and regulations, provided that the procurements conform to applicable Federal law and the standards identified in this section.

(b) Non-Federal entities must maintain oversight to ensure that contractors perform in accordance with the terms, conditions, and specifications of their contracts or purchase orders.

(c)(1) The non-Federal entity must maintain written standards of conduct covering conflicts of interest and governing the performance of its employees engaged in the selection, award and administration of contracts. No employee, officer, or agent must participate in the selection, award, or administration of a contract supported by a Federal award if he or she has a real or apparent conflict of interest. Such a conflict of interest would arise when the employee, officer, or agent, any member of his or her immediate family, his or her partner, or an organization which employs or is about to employ any of the parties indicated herein, has a financial or other interest in or a tangible personal benefit from a firm considered for a contract. The officers, employees, and agents of the non-Federal entity must neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors, or anything of monetary value from contractors or parties to subcontracts. However, non-Federal entities may set standards for situations in which the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal value. The standards of conduct must provide for disciplinary actions to be applied for violations of such standards by officers, employees, or agents of the non-Federal entity.

(2) If the non-Federal entity has a parent, affiliate, or subsidiary organization that is not a state, local government, or Indian tribe, the non-Federal entity must also maintain written standards of conduct covering organizational conflicts of interest. Organizational conflicts of interest means that because of relationships with a parent company, affiliate, or subsidiary organization, the non-Federal entity is unable or appears to be unable to be impartial in conducting a procurement action involving a related organization.

(d) The non-Federal entity's procedures must avoid acquisition of unnecessary or duplicative items. Consideration should be given to consolidating or breaking out procurements to obtain a more economical purchase. Where appropriate, an analysis will be made of lease versus purchase alternatives, and any other appropriate analysis to determine the most economical approach.

(e) To foster greater economy and efficiency, and in accordance with efforts to promote cost-effective use of shared services across the Federal government, the non-Federal entity is encouraged to enter into state and local intergovernmental agreements or inter-entity agreements where appropriate for procurement or use of common or shared goods and services.

(f) The non-Federal entity is encouraged to use Federal excess and surplus property in lieu of purchasing new equipment and property whenever such use is feasible and reduces project costs.

(g) The non-Federal entity is encouraged to use value engineering clauses in contracts for construction projects of sufficient size to offer reasonable opportunities for cost reductions. Value engineering is a systematic and creative analysis of each contract item or task to ensure that its essential function is provided at the overall lower cost.

(h) The non-Federal entity must award contracts only to responsible contractors possessing the ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of a proposed procurement. Consideration will be given to such matters as contractor integrity, compliance with public policy, record of past performance, and financial and technical resources.

(i) The non-Federal entity must maintain records sufficient to detail the history of procurement. These records will include, but are not necessarily limited to the following: rationale for the method of procurement, selection of contract type, contractor selection or rejection, and the basis for the contract price.

(j)(1) The non-Federal entity may use time and material type contracts only after a determination that no other contract is suitable and if the contract includes a ceiling price that the contractor exceeds at its own risk. Time and material type contract means a contract whose cost to a non-Federal entity is the sum of:

(i) The actual cost of materials; and

(ii) Direct labor hours charged at fixed hourly rates that reflect wages, general and administrative expenses, and profit.

(2) Since this formula generates an open-ended contract price, a time-and-materials contract provides no positive profit incentive to the contractor for cost control or labor efficiency. Therefore, each contract must set a ceiling price that the contractor exceeds at its own risk. Further, the non-Federal entity awarding such a contract must assert a high degree of oversight in order to obtain reasonable assurance that the contractor is using efficient methods and effective cost controls.

(k) The non-Federal entity alone must be responsible, in accordance with good administrative practice and sound business judgment, for the settlement of all contractual and administrative issues arising out of procurements. These issues include, but are not limited to, source evaluation, protests, disputes, and claims. These standards do not relieve the non-Federal entity of any contractual responsibilities under its contracts. The Federal awarding agency will not substitute its judgment for that of the non-Federal entity unless the matter is primarily a Federal concern. Violations of law will be referred to the local, state, or Federal authority having proper jurisdiction.

§ 200.319 Competition.

(a) All procurement transactions must be conducted in a manner providing full and open competition consistent with the standards of this section. In order to ensure objective contractor performance and eliminate unfair competitive advantage, contractors that develop or draft specifications, requirements, statements of work, and invitations for bids or requests for proposals must be excluded from competing for such procurements. Some of the situations considered to be restrictive of competition include but are not limited to:

(1) Placing unreasonable requirements on firms in order for them to qualify to do business;

(2) Requiring unnecessary experience and excessive bonding;

(3) Noncompetitive pricing practices between firms or between affiliated companies;

(4) Noncompetitive contracts to consultants that are on retainer contracts;

(5) Organizational conflicts of interest;

(6) Specifying only a ''brand name'' product instead of allowing ''an equal'' product to be offered and describing the performance or other relevant requirements of the procurement; and

(7) Any arbitrary action in the procurement process.

(b) The non-Federal entity must conduct procurements in a manner that prohibits the use of statutorily or administratively imposed state or local geographical preferences in the evaluation of bids or proposals, except in those cases where applicable Federal statutes expressly mandate or encourage geographic preference. Nothing in this section preempts state licensing laws. When contracting for architectural and engineering (A/E) services, geographic location may be a selection criterion provided its application leaves an appropriate number of qualified firms, given the nature and size of the project, to compete for the contract.

(c) The non-Federal entity must have written procedures for procurement transactions. These procedures must ensure that all solicitations:

(1) Incorporate a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements for the material, product, or service to be procured. Such description must not, in competitive procurements, contain features which unduly restrict competition. The description may include a statement of the qualitative nature of the material, product or service to be procured and, when necessary, must set forth those minimum essential characteristics and standards to which it must conform if it is to satisfy its intended use. Detailed product specifications should be avoided if at all possible. When it is impractical or uneconomical to make a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements, a ''brand name or equivalent'' description may be used as a means to define the performance or other salient requirements of procurement. The specific features of the named brand which must be met by offers must be clearly stated; and

(2) Identify all requirements which the offerors must fulfill and all other factors to be used in evaluating bids or proposals.

(d) The non-Federal entity must ensure that all prequalified lists of persons, firms, or products which are used in acquiring goods and services are current and include enough qualified sources to ensure maximum open and free competition. Also, the non-Federal entity must not preclude potential bidders from qualifying during the solicitation period.

§ 200.320 Methods of procurement to be followed.

The non-Federal entity must use one of the following methods of procurement.

(a) Procurement by micro-purchases. Procurement by micro-purchase is the acquisition of supplies or services, the aggregate dollar amount of which does not exceed $3,000 (or $2,000 in the case of acquisitions for construction subject to the Davis-Bacon Act). To the extent practicable, the non-Federal entity must distribute micro-purchases equitably among qualified suppliers. Micro-purchases may be awarded without soliciting competitive quotations if the non-Federal entity considers the price to be reasonable.

(b) Procurement by small purchase procedures. Small purchase procedures are those relatively simple and informal procurement methods for securing services, supplies, or other property that do not cost more than the Simplified Acquisition Threshold. If small purchase procedures are used, price or rate quotations must be obtained from an adequate number of qualified sources.

(c) Procurement by sealed bids (formal advertising). Bids are publicly solicited and a firm fixed price contract (lump sum or unit price) is awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming with all the material terms and conditions of the invitation for bids, is the lowest in price. The sealed bid method is the preferred method for procuring construction, if the conditions in paragraph (c)(1) of this section apply.

(1) In order for sealed bidding to be feasible, the following conditions should be present:

(i) A complete, adequate, and realistic specification or purchase description is available;

(ii) Two or more responsible bidders are willing and able to compete effectively for the business; and

(iii) The procurement lends itself to a firm fixed price contract and the selection of the successful bidder can be made principally on the basis of price.

(2) If sealed bids are used, the following requirements apply:

(i) The invitation for bids will be publicly advertised and bids must be solicited from an adequate number of known suppliers, providing them sufficient response time prior to the date set for opening the bids;

(ii) The invitation for bids, which will include any specifications and pertinent attachments, must define the items or services in order for the bidder to properly respond;

(iii) All bids will be publicly opened at the time and place prescribed in the invitation for bids;

(iv) A firm fixed price contract award will be made in writing to the lowest responsive and responsible bidder. Where specified in bidding documents, factors such as discounts, transportation cost, and life cycle costs must be considered in determining which bid is lowest. Payment discounts will only be used to determine the low bid when prior experience indicates that such discounts are usually taken advantage of; and

(v) Any or all bids may be rejected if there is a sound documented reason.

(d) Procurement by competitive proposals. The technique of competitive proposals is normally conducted with more than one source submitting an offer, and either a fixed price or cost-reimbursement type contract is awarded. It is generally used when conditions are not appropriate for the use of sealed bids. If this method is used, the following requirements apply:

(1) Requests for proposals must be publicized and identify all evaluation factors and their relative importance. Any response to publicized requests for proposals must be considered to the maximum extent practical;

(2) Proposals must be solicited from an adequate number of qualified sources;

(3) The non-Federal entity must have a written method for conducting technical evaluations of the proposals received and for selecting recipients;

(4) Contracts must be awarded to the responsible firm whose proposal is most advantageous to the program, with price and other factors considered; and

(5) The non-Federal entity may use competitive proposal procedures for qualifications-based procurement of architectural/engineering (A/E) professional services whereby competitors' qualifications are evaluated and the most qualified competitor is selected, subject to negotiation of fair and reasonable compensation. The method, where price is not used as a selection factor, can only be used in procurement of A/E professional services. It cannot be used to purchase other types of services though A/E firms are a potential source to perform the proposed effort.

(f) Procurement by noncompetitive proposals. Procurement by noncompetitive proposals is procurement through solicitation of a proposal from only one source and may be used only when one or more of the following circumstances apply:

(1) The item is available only from a single source;

(2) The public exigency or emergency for the requirement will not permit a delay resulting from competitive solicitation;

(3) The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity expressly authorizes noncompetitive proposals in response to a written request from the non-Federal entity; or

(4) After solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

§ 200.321 Contracting with small and minority businesses, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms.

(a) The non-Federal entity must take all necessary affirmative steps to assure that minority businesses, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms are used when possible.

(b) Affirmative steps must include:

(1) Placing qualified small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises on solicitation lists;

(2) Assuring that small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources;

(3) Dividing total requirements, when economically feasible, into smaller tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises;

(4) Establishing delivery schedules, where the requirement permits, which encourage participation by small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises;

(5) Using the services and assistance, as appropriate, of such organizations as the Small Business Administration and the Minority Business Development Agency of the Department of Commerce; and

(6) Requiring the prime contractor, if subcontracts are to be let, to take the affirmative steps listed in paragraphs (1) through (5) of this section.

§ 200.322 Procurement of recovered materials.

A non-Federal entity that is a state agency or agency of a political subdivision of a state and its contractors must comply with section 6002 of the Solid Waste Disposal Act, as amended by the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act. The requirements of Section 6002 include procuring only items designated in guidelines of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) at 40 CFR Part 247 that contain the highest percentage of recovered materials practicable, consistent with maintaining a satisfactory level of competition, where the purchase price of the item exceeds $10,000 or the value of the quantity acquired by the preceding fiscal year exceeded $10,000; procuring solid waste management services in a manner that maximizes energy and resource recovery; and establishing an affirmative procurement program for procurement of recovered materials identified in the EPA guidelines.

§ 200.323 Contract cost and price.

(a) The non-Federal entity must perform a cost or price analysis in connection with every procurement action in excess of the Simplified Acquisition Threshold including contract modifications. The method and degree of analysis is dependent on the facts surrounding the particular procurement situation, but as a starting point, the non-Federal entity must make independent estimates before receiving bids or proposals.

(b) The non-Federal entity must negotiate profit as a separate element of the price for each contract in which there is no price competition and in all cases where cost analysis is performed. To establish a fair and reasonable profit, consideration must be given to the complexity of the work to be performed,

the risk borne by the contractor, the contractor's investment, the amount of subcontracting, the quality of its record of past performance, and industry profit rates in the surrounding geographical area for similar work.

(c) Costs or prices based on estimated costs for contracts under the Federal award are allowable only to the extent that costs incurred or cost estimates included in negotiated prices would be allowable for the non-Federal entity under Subpart E—Cost Principles of this Part. The non-Federal entity may reference its own cost principles that comply with the Federal cost principles.

(d) The cost plus a percentage of cost and percentage of construction cost methods of contracting must not be used.

§ 200.324 Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity review.

(a) The non-Federal entity must make available, upon request of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity, technical specifications on proposed procurements where the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity believes such review is needed to ensure that the item or service specified is the one being proposed for acquisition. This review generally will take place prior to the time the specification is incorporated into a solicitation document. However, if the non-Federal entity desires to have the review accomplished after a solicitation has been developed, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may still review the specifications, with such review usually limited to the technical aspects of the proposed purchase.

(b) The non-Federal entity must make available upon request, for the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity pre-procurement review, procurement documents, such as requests for proposals or invitations for bids, or independent cost estimates, when:

(1) The non-Federal entity's procurement procedures or operation fails to comply with the procurement standards in this Part;

(2) The procurement is expected to exceed the Simplified Acquisition Threshold and is to be awarded without competition or only one bid or offer is received in response to a solicitation;

(3) The procurement, which is expected to exceed the Simplified Acquisition Threshold, specifies a ''brand name'' product;

(4) The proposed contract is more than the Simplified Acquisition Threshold and is to be awarded to other than the apparent low bidder under a sealed bid procurement; or

(5) A proposed contract modification changes the scope of a contract or increases the contract amount by more than the Simplified Acquisition Threshold.

(c) The non-Federal entity is exempt from the pre-procurement review in paragraph (b) of this section if the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity determines that its procurement systems comply with the standards of this Part.

(1) The non-Federal entity may request that its procurement system be reviewed by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity to determine whether its system meets these standards in order for its system to be certified. Generally, these reviews must occur where there is continuous high-dollar funding, and third party contracts are awarded on a regular basis;

(2) The non-Federal entity may self-certify its procurement system. Such self-certification must not limit the Federal awarding agency's right to survey the system. Under a self-certification procedure, the Federal awarding agency may rely on written assurances from the non-Federal entity that it is complying with these standards. The non-Federal entity must cite specific policies, procedures, regulations, or standards as being in compliance with these requirements and have its system available for review.

§ 200.325 Bonding requirements.

For construction or facility improvement contracts or subcontracts exceeding the Simplified Acquisition Threshold, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may accept the bonding policy and requirements of the non-Federal entity provided that the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity has made a determination that the Federal interest is adequately protected. If such a determination has not been made, the minimum requirements must be as follows:

(a) A bid guarantee from each bidder equivalent to five percent of the bid price. The ''bid guarantee'' must consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond, certified check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder will, upon acceptance of the bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

(b) A performance bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A ''performance bond'' is one executed in connection with a contract to secure fulfillment of all the contractor's obligations under such contract.

(c) A payment bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A ''payment bond'' is one executed in connection with a contract to assure payment as required by law of all persons supplying labor and material in the execution of the work provided for in the contract.

§ 200.326 Contract provisions.

The non-Federal entity's contracts must contain the applicable provisions described in Appendix II to Part 200—Contract Provisions for non-Federal Entity Contracts Under Federal Awards.

Performance and Financial Monitoring and Reporting

§ 200.327 Financial reporting.

Unless otherwise approved by OMB, the Federal awarding agency may solicit only the standard, OMB-approved governmentwide data elements for collection of financial information (at time of publication the Federal Financial Report or such future collections as may be approved by OMB and listed on the OMB Web site). This information must be collected with the frequency required by the terms and conditions of the Federal award, but no less frequently than annually nor more frequently than quarterly except in unusual circumstances, for example where more frequent reporting is necessary for the effective monitoring of the Federal award or could significantly affect program outcomes, and preferably in coordination with performance reporting.

200.328 Monitoring and reporting program performance.

(a) Monitoring by the non-Federal entity. The non-Federal entity is responsible for oversight of the operations of the Federal award supported activities. The non-Federal entity must monitor its activities under Federal awards to assure compliance with applicable Federal requirements and performance expectations are being achieved. Monitoring by the non-Federal entity must cover each program, function or activity. See also § 200.331 Requirements for pass-through *entities.*

(b) Non-construction performance reports. The Federal awarding agency must use standard, OMB-approved data elements for collection of performance information (including performance progress reports, Research Performance Progress Report, or such future collections as may be approved by OMB and listed on the OMB Web site).

(1) The non-Federal entity must submit performance reports at the interval required by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity

to best inform improvements in program outcomes and productivity. Intervals must be no less frequent than annually nor more frequent than quarterly except in unusual circumstances, for example where more frequent reporting is necessary for the effective monitoring of the Federal award or could significantly affect program outcomes. Annual reports must be due 90 calendar days after the reporting period; quarterly or semiannual reports must be due 30 calendar days after the reporting period. Alternatively, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may require annual reports before the anniversary dates of multiple year Federal awards. The final performance report will be due 90 calendar days after the period of performance end date. If a justified request is submitted by a non-Federal entity, the Federal agency may extend the due date for any performance report.

(2) The non-Federal entity must submit performance reports using OMB-approved governmentwide standard information collections when providing performance information. As appropriate in accordance with above mentioned information collections, these reports will contain, for each Federal award, brief information on the following unless other collections are approved by OMB:

(i) A comparison of actual accomplishments to the objectives of the Federal award established for the period. Where the accomplishments of the Federal award can be quantified, a computation of the cost (for example, related to units of accomplishment) may be required if that information will be useful. Where performance trend data and analysis would be informative to the Federal awarding agency program, the Federal awarding agency should include this as a performance reporting requirement.

(ii) The reasons why established goals were not met, if appropriate.

(iii) Additional pertinent information including, when appropriate, analysis and explanation of cost overruns or high unit costs.

(c) Construction performance reports. For the most part, onsite technical inspections and certified percentage of completion data are relied on heavily by Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities to monitor progress under Federal awards and subawards for construction. The Federal awarding agency may require additional performance reports only when considered necessary.

(d) Significant developments. Events may occur between the scheduled performance reporting dates that have significant impact upon the supported activity. In such cases, the non-Federal entity must inform the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity as soon as the following types of conditions become known:

(1) Problems, delays, or adverse conditions which will materially impair the ability to meet the objective of the Federal award. This disclosure must include a statement of the action taken, or contemplated, and any assistance needed to resolve the situation.

(2) Favorable developments which enable meeting time schedules and objectives sooner or at less cost than anticipated or producing more or different beneficial results than originally planned.

(e) The Federal awarding agency may make site visits as warranted by program needs.

(f) The Federal awarding agency may waive any performance report required by this Part if not needed.

§ 200.329 Reporting on real property.

The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must require a non-Federal entity to submit reports at least annually on the status of real property in which the Federal government retains an interest, unless the Federal interest in the real property extends 15 years or longer. In those instances where the Federal interest attached is for a period of 15 years or more, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity, at its option, may require the non-Federal entity to report at various multi-year frequencies (e.g., every two years or every three years, not to exceed a five-year reporting period; or a Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may require annual reporting for the first three years of a Federal award and thereafter require reporting every five years).

Subrecipient Monitoring and Management

§ 200.330 Subrecipient and contractor determinations.

The non-Federal entity may concurrently receive Federal awards as a recipient, a subrecipient, and a contractor, depending on the substance of its agreements with Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities. Therefore, a pass-through entity must make case-by-case determinations whether each agreement it makes for the disbursement of Federal program funds casts the party receiving the funds in the role of a subrecipient or a contractor. The Federal awarding agency may supply and require recipients to comply with additional guidance to support these determinations provided such guidance does not conflict with this section.

(a) Subrecipients. A subaward is for the purpose of carrying out a portion of a Federal award and creates a Federal assistance relationship with the subrecipient. See § 200.92 Subaward. Characteristics which support the classification of the non-Federal entity as a subrecipient include when the non-Federal entity:

(1) Determines who is eligible to receive what Federal assistance;

(2) Has its performance measured in relation to whether objectives of a Federal program were met;

(3) Has responsibility for programmatic decision making;

(4) Is responsible for adherence to applicable Federal program requirements specified in the Federal award; and

(5) In accordance with its agreement, uses the Federal funds to carry out a program for a public purpose specified in authorizing statute, as opposed to providing goods or services for the benefit of the pass-through entity.

(b) Contractors. A contract is for the purpose of obtaining goods and services for the non-Federal entity's own use and creates a procurement relationship with the contractor. See § 200.22 Contract. Characteristics indicative of a procurement relationship between the non-Federal entity and a contractor are when the non-Federal entity receiving the Federal funds:

(1) Provides the goods and services within normal business operations;

(2) Provides similar goods or services to many different purchasers;

(3) Normally operates in a competitive environment;

(4) Provides goods or services that are ancillary to the operation of the Federal program; and

(5) Is not subject to compliance requirements of the Federal program as a result of the agreement, though similar requirements may apply for other reasons.

(c) Use of judgment in making determination. In determining whether an agreement between a pass-through entity and another non-Federal entity casts the latter as a subrecipient or a contractor, the substance of the relationship is more important than the form of the agreement. All of the characteristics listed above may not be present in all cases, and the pass-through entity must use judgment in classifying each agreement as a subaward or a procurement contract.

§ 200.331 Requirements for pass-through entities.

All pass-through entities must:

(a) Ensure that every subaward is clearly identified to the subrecipient as a subaward and includes the following information at the time of the subaward and if any of these data elements change, include the changes in subsequent subaward modification. When some of this information is not available, the pass-through entity must provide the best information available to describe the Federal award and subaward. Required information includes:

(1) Federal Award Identification.

(i) Subrecipient name (which must match registered name in DUNS);

(ii) Subrecipient's DUNS number (see § 200.32 Data Universal Numbering System (DUNS) *number*);

(iii) Federal Award Identification Number (FAIN);

(iv) Federal Award Date (see § 200.39 Federal award date);

(v) Subaward Period of Performance Start and End Date;

(vi) Amount of Federal Funds Obligated by this action;

(vii) Total Amount of Federal Funds Obligated to the subrecipient;

(viii) Total Amount of the Federal Award;

(ix) Federal award project description, as required to be responsive to the Federal Funding Accountability and Transparency Act (FFATA);

(x) Name of Federal awarding agency, pass-through entity, and contact information for awarding official,

(xi) CFDA Number and Name; the pass-through entity must identify the dollar amount made available under each Federal award and the CFDA number at time of disbursement;

(xii) Identification of whether the award is R&D; and

(xiii) Indirect cost rate for the Federal award (including if the de minimis rate is charged per § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs).

(2) All requirements imposed by the pass-through entity on the subrecipient so that the Federal award is used in accordance with Federal statutes, regulations and the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(3) Any additional requirements that the pass-through entity imposes on the subrecipient in order for the pass-through entity to meet its own responsibility to the Federal awarding agency including identification of any required financial and performance reports;

(4) An approved federally recognized indirect cost rate negotiated between the subrecipient and the Federal government or, if no such rate exists, either a rate negotiated between the pass-through entity and the subrecipient (in compliance with this Part), or a de minimis indirect cost rate as defined in § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs, paragraph (b) of this Part.

(5) A requirement that the subrecipient permit the pass-through entity and auditors to have access to the subrecipient's records and financial statements as necessary for the pass-through entity to meet the requirements of this section, §§ 200.300 Statutory and national policy requirements through 200.309 Period of performance, and Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part; and

(6) Appropriate terms and conditions concerning closeout of the subaward.

(b) Evaluate each subrecipient's risk of noncompliance with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the subaward for purposes of determining the appropriate subrecipient monitoring described in paragraph (e) of this section, which may include consideration of such factors as:

(1) The subrecipient's prior experience with the same or similar subawards;

(2) The results of previous audits including whether or not the subrecipient receives a Single Audit in accordance with Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part, and the extent to which the same or similar subaward has been audited as a major program;

(3) Whether the subrecipient has new personnel or new or substantially changed systems; and

(4) The extent and results of Federal awarding agency monitoring (e.g., if the subrecipient also receives Federal awards directly from a Federal awarding agency).

(c) Consider imposing specific subaward conditions upon a subrecipient if appropriate as described in § 200.207 Specific conditions.

(d) Monitor the activities of the subrecipient as necessary to ensure that the subaward is used for authorized purposes, in compliance with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the subaward; and that subaward performance goals are achieved. Pass-through entity monitoring of the subrecipient must include:

(1) Reviewing financial and programmatic reports required by the pass-through entity.

(2) Following-up and ensuring that the subrecipient takes timely and appropriate action on all deficiencies pertaining to the Federal award provided to the subrecipient from the pass-through entity detected through audits, on-site reviews, and other means.

(3) Issuing a management decision for audit findings pertaining to the Federal award provided to the subrecipient from the pass-through entity as required by § 200.521 Management decision.

(e) Depending upon the pass-through entity's assessment of risk posed by the subrecipient (as described in paragraph (b) of this section), the following monitoring tools may be useful for the pass-through entity to ensure proper accountability and compliance with program requirements and achievement of performance goals:

(1) Providing subrecipients with training and technical assistance on program-related matters; and

(2) Performing on-site reviews of the subrecipient's program operations;

(3) Arranging for agreed-upon-procedures engagements as described in § 200.425 Audit services.

(f) Verify that every subrecipient is audited as required by Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part when it is expected that the subrecipient's Federal awards expended during the respective fiscal year equaled or exceeded the threshold set forth in § 200.501 Audit requirements.

(g) Consider whether the results of the subrecipient's audits, on-site reviews, or other monitoring indicate conditions that necessitate adjustments to the pass-through entity's own records.

(h) Consider taking enforcement action against noncompliant subrecipients as described in § 200.338 Remedies for noncompliance of this Part and in program regulations.

§ 200.332 Fixed amount subawards.

With prior written approval from the Federal awarding agency, a pass-through entity may provide subawards based on fixed amounts up to the Simplified Acquisition Threshold, provided that the subawards meet the requirements for fixed amount awards in § 200.201 Use of grant agreements (including fixed amount awards), cooperative agreements, and contracts.

Record Retention and Access

§ 200.333 Retention requirements for records.

Financial records, supporting documents, statistical records, and all other non-Federal entity records pertinent to a Federal award must be retained for a period of three years from the date of submission of the final expenditure report or, for Federal awards that are renewed quarterly or annually, from the date of the submission of the quarterly or annual financial report, respectively, as reported to the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity in the case of a

subrecipient. Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities must not impose any other record retention requirements upon non-Federal entities. The only exceptions are the following:

(a) If any litigation, claim, or audit is started before the expiration of the 3-year period, the records must be retained until all litigation, claims, or audit findings involving the records have been resolved and final action taken.

(b) When the non-Federal entity is notified in writing by the Federal awarding agency, cognizant agency for audit, oversight agency for audit, cognizant agency for indirect costs, or pass-through entity to extend the retention period.

(c) Records for real property and equipment acquired with Federal funds must be retained for 3 years after final disposition.

(d) When records are transferred to or maintained by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity, the 3-year retention requirement is not applicable to the non-Federal entity.

(e) Records for program income transactions after the period of performance. In some cases recipients must report program income after the period of performance. Where there is such a requirement, the retention period for the records pertaining to the earning of the program income starts from the end of the non-Federal entity's fiscal year in which the program income is earned.

(f) Indirect cost rate proposals and cost allocations plans. This paragraph applies to the following types of documents and their supporting records: indirect cost rate computations or proposals, cost allocation plans, and any similar accounting computations of the rate at which a particular group of costs is chargeable (such as computer usage chargeback rates or composite fringe benefit rates).

(1) If submitted for negotiation. If the proposal, plan, or other computation is required to be submitted to the Federal government (or to the pass-through entity) to form the basis for negotiation of the rate, then the 3-year retention period for its supporting records starts from the date of such submission.

(2) If not submitted for negotiation. If the proposal, plan, or other computation is not required to be submitted to the Federal government (or to the pass-through entity) for negotiation purposes, then the 3-year retention period for the proposal, plan, or computation and its supporting records starts from the end of the fiscal year (or other accounting period) covered by the proposal, plan, or other computation.

§ 200.334 Requests for transfer of records.

The Federal awarding agency must request transfer of certain records to its custody from the non-Federal entity when it determines that the records possess long-term retention value. However, in order to avoid duplicate recordkeeping, the Federal awarding agency may make arrangements for the non-Federal entity to retain any records that are continuously needed for joint use.

§ 200.335 Methods for collection, transmission and storage of information.

In accordance with the May 2013 Executive Order on Making Open and Machine Readable the New Default for Government Information, the Federal awarding agency and the non-Federal entity should, whenever practicable, collect, transmit, and store Federal award-related information in open and machine readable formats rather than in closed formats or on paper. The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must always provide or accept paper versions of Federal award-related information to and from the non-Federal entity upon request. If paper copies are submitted, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must not require more than an original and two copies. When original records are electronic and cannot be altered, there is no need to create and retain paper copies. When original records are paper, electronic versions may be substituted through the use of duplication or other forms of electronic media provided that they are subject to periodic quality control reviews, provide reasonable safeguards against alteration, and remain readable.

§ 200.336 Access to records.

(a) Records of non-Federal entities. The Federal awarding agency, Inspectors General, the Comptroller General of the United States, and the pass-through entity, or any of their authorized representatives, must have the right of access to any documents, papers, or other records of the non-Federal entity which are pertinent to the Federal award, in order to make audits, examinations, excerpts, and transcripts. The right also includes timely and reasonable access to the non-Federal entity's personnel for the purpose of interview and discussion related to such documents.

(b) Only under extraordinary and rare circumstances would such access include review of the true name of victims of a crime. Routine monitoring cannot be considered extraordinary and rare circumstances that would necessitate access to this information. When access to the true name of victims of a crime is necessary, appropriate steps to protect this sensitive information must be taken by both the non-Federal entity and the Federal awarding agency. Any such access, other than under a court order or subpoena pursuant to a bona fide confidential investigation, must be approved by the head of the Federal awarding agency or delegate.

(c) Expiration of right of access. The rights of access in this section are not limited to the required retention period but last as long as the records are retained. Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities must not impose any other access requirements upon non-Federal entities.

§ 200.337 Restrictions on public access to records

No Federal awarding agency may place restrictions on the non-Federal entity that limit public access to the records of the non-Federal entity pertinent to a Federal award, except for protected personally identifiable information (PII) or when the Federal awarding agency can demonstrate that such records will be kept confidential and would have been exempted from disclosure pursuant to the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) or controlled unclassified information pursuant to Executive Order 13556 if the records had belonged to the Federal awarding agency. The Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) (FOIA) does not apply to those records that remain under a non-Federal entity's control except as required under § 200.315 Intangible property. Unless required by Federal, state, or local statute, non-Federal entities are not required to permit public access to their records. The non-Federal entity's records provided to a Federal agency generally will be subject to FOIA and applicable exemptions.

Remedies for Noncompliance

§ 200.338 Remedies for noncompliance.

If a non-Federal entity fails to comply with Federal statutes, regulations or the terms and conditions of a Federal award, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may impose additional conditions, as described in § 200.207 Specific conditions. If the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity determines that noncompliance cannot be remedied by imposing additional conditions, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may take one or more of the following actions, as appropriate in the circumstances:

(a) Temporarily withhold cash payments pending correction of the

deficiency by the non-Federal entity or more severe enforcement action by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

(b) Disallow (that is, deny both use of funds and any applicable matching credit for) all or part of the cost of the activity or action not in compliance.

(c) Wholly or partly suspend or terminate the Federal award.

(d) Initiate suspension or debarment proceedings as authorized under 2 CFR Part 180 and Federal awarding agency regulations (or in the case of a pass-through entity, recommend such a proceeding be initiated by a Federal awarding agency).

(e) Withhold further Federal awards for the project or program.

(f) Take other remedies that may be legally available.

§ 200.339 Termination

(a) The Federal award may be terminated in whole or in part as follows:

(1) By the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity, if a non-Federal entity fails to comply with the terms and conditions of a Federal award;

(2) By the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity for cause;

(3) By the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity with the consent of the non-Federal entity, in which case the two parties must agree upon the termination conditions, including the effective date and, in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated; or

(4) By the non-Federal entity upon sending to the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity written notification setting forth the reasons for such termination, the effective date, and, in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated. However, if the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity determines in the case of partial termination that the reduced or modified portion of the Federal award or subaward will not accomplish the purposes for which the Federal award was made, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may terminate the Federal award in its entirety.

(b) When a Federal award is terminated or partially terminated, both the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity and the non-Federal entity remain responsible for compliance with the requirements in §§ 200.343 Closeout and 200.344 Post-closeout adjustments and continuing responsibilities.

§ 200.340 Notification of termination requirement.

(a) The Federal agency or pass-through entity must provide to the non-Federal entity a notice of termination.

(b) If the Federal award is terminated for the non-Federal entity's failure to comply with the Federal statutes, regulations, or terms and conditions of the Federal award, the notification must state that the termination decision may be considered in evaluating future applications received from the non-Federal entity.

(c) Upon termination of a Federal award, the Federal awarding agency must provide the information required under FFATA to the Federal Web site established to fulfill the requirements of FFATA, and update or notify any other relevant governmentwide systems or entities of any indications of poor performance as required by 41 U.S.C. 417b and 31 U.S.C. 3321 and implementing guidance at 2 CFR Part 77. See also the requirements for Suspension and Debarment at 2 CFR Part 180.

§ 200.341 Opportunities to object, hearings and appeals.

Upon taking any remedy for non-compliance, the Federal awarding agency must provide the non-Federal entity an opportunity to object and provide information and documentation challenging the suspension or termination action, in accordance with written processes and procedures published by the Federal awarding agency. The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must comply with any requirements for hearings, appeals or other administrative proceedings which the non-Federal entity is entitled under any statute or regulation applicable to the action involved.

§ 200.342 Effects of suspension and termination.

Costs to the non-Federal entity resulting from obligations incurred by the non-Federal entity during a suspension or after termination of a Federal award or subaward are not allowable unless the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity expressly authorizes them in the notice of suspension or termination or subsequently. However, costs during suspension or after termination are allowable if:

(a) The costs result from obligations which were properly incurred by the non-Federal entity before the effective date of suspension or termination, are not in anticipation of it; and

(b) The costs would be allowable if the Federal award was not suspended or expired normally at the end of the period of performance in which the termination takes effect.

Closeout

§ 200.343 Closeout.

The Federal agency or pass-through entity will close-out the Federal award when it determines that all applicable administrative actions and all required work of the Federal award have been completed by the non-Federal entity. This section specifies the actions the non-Federal entity and Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must take to complete this process at the end of the period of performance.

(a) The non-Federal entity must submit, no later than 90 calendar days after the end date of the period of performance, all financial, performance, and other reports as required by or the terms and conditions of the Federal award. The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may approve extensions when requested by the non-Federal entity.

(b) Unless the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity authorizes an extension, a non-Federal entity must liquidate all obligations incurred under the Federal award not later than 90 calendar days after the end date of the period of performance as specified in the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(c) The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must make prompt payments to the non-Federal entity for allowable reimbursable costs under the Federal award being closed out.

(d) The non-Federal entity must promptly refund any balances of unobligated cash that the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity paid in advance or paid and that is not authorized to be retained by the non-Federal entity for use in other projects. See OMB Circular A–129 and see § 200.345 Collection of amounts due for requirements regarding unreturned amounts that become delinquent debts.

(e) Consistent with the terms and conditions of the Federal award, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must make a settlement for any upward or downward adjustments to the Federal share of costs after closeout reports are received.

(f) The non-Federal entity must account for any real and personal property acquired with Federal funds or received from the Federal government in accordance with §§ 200.310 Insurance coverage through 200.316 Property trust relationship and 200.329 Reporting on real property.

(g) The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity should complete all

closeout actions for Federal awards no later than one year after receipt and acceptance of all required final reports.

Post-Closeout Adjustments and Continuing Responsibilities

§ 200.344 Post-closeout adjustments and continuing responsibilities.

(a) The closeout of a Federal award does not affect any of the following.

(1) The right of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity to disallow costs and recover funds on the basis of a later audit or other review. The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must make any cost disallowance determination and notify the non-Federal entity within the record retention period.

(2) The obligation of the non-Federal entity to return any funds due as a result of later refunds, corrections, or other transactions including final indirect cost rate adjustments.

(3) Audit requirements in Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part.

(4) Property management and disposition requirements in Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements of this Part, §§ 200.310 Insurance Coverage through 200.316 Property trust relationship.

(5) Records retention as required in Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements of this Part, §§ 200.333 Retention requirements for records through 200.337 Restrictions on public access to records.

(b) After closeout of the Federal award, a relationship created under the Federal award may be modified or ended in whole or in part with the consent of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity and the non-Federal entity, provided the responsibilities of the non-Federal entity referred to in paragraph (a) of this section including those for property management as applicable, are considered and provisions made for continuing responsibilities of the non-Federal entity, as appropriate.

Collection of Amounts Due

§ 200.345 Collection of amounts due.

(a) Any funds paid to the non-Federal entity in excess of the amount to which the non-Federal entity is finally determined to be entitled under the terms of the Federal award constitute a debt to the Federal government. If not paid within 90 calendar days after demand, the Federal awarding agency may reduce the debt by:

(1) Making an administrative offset against other requests for reimbursements;

(2) Withholding advance payments otherwise due to the non-Federal entity; or

(3) Other action permitted by Federal statute.

(b) Except where otherwise provided by statutes or regulations, the Federal awarding agency will charge interest on an overdue debt in accordance with the Federal Claims Collection Standards (31 CFR Parts 900 through 999). The date from which interest is computed is not extended by litigation or the filing of any form of appeal.

Subpart E—Cost Principles

General Provisions

§ 200.400 Policy guide.

The application of these cost principles is based on the fundamental premises that:

(a) The non-Federal entity is responsible for the efficient and effective administration of the Federal award through the application of sound management practices.

(b) The non-Federal entity assumes responsibility for administering Federal funds in a manner consistent with underlying agreements, program objectives, and the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(c) The non-Federal entity, in recognition of its own unique combination of staff, facilities, and experience, has the primary responsibility for employing whatever form of sound organization and management techniques may be necessary in order to assure proper and efficient administration of the Federal award.

(d) The application of these cost principles should require no significant changes in the internal accounting policies and practices of the non-Federal entity. However, the accounting practices of the non-Federal entity must be consistent with these cost principles and support the accumulation of costs as required by the principles, and must provide for adequate documentation to support costs charged to the Federal award.

(e) In reviewing, negotiating and approving cost allocation plans or indirect cost proposals, the cognizant agency for indirect costs should generally assure that the non-Federal entity is applying these cost accounting principles on a consistent basis during their review and negotiation of indirect cost proposals. Where wide variations exist in the treatment of a given cost item by the non-Federal entity, the reasonableness and equity of such treatments should be fully considered. See § 200.56 Indirect (facilities & administrative (F&A)) costs.

(f) For non-Federal entities that educate and engage students in research, the dual role of students as both trainees and employees contributing to the completion of Federal awards for research must be recognized in the application of these principles.

(g) The non-Federal entity may not earn or keep any profit resulting from Federal financial assistance, unless expressly authorized by the terms and conditions of the Federal award. See also § 200.307 Program income.

§ 200.401 Application.

(a) General. These principles must be used in determining the allowable costs of work performed by the non-Federal entity under Federal awards. These principles also must be used by the non-Federal entity as a guide in the pricing of fixed-price contracts and subcontracts where costs are used in determining the appropriate price. The principles do not apply to:

(1) Arrangements under which Federal financing is in the form of loans, scholarships, fellowships, traineeships, or other fixed amounts based on such items as education allowance or published tuition rates and fees.

(2) For IHEs, capitation awards, which are awards based on case counts or number of beneficiaries according to the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(3) Fixed amount awards. See also Subpart A—Acronyms and Definitions, §§ 200.45 Fixed amount awards and 200.201 Use of grant agreements (including fixed amount awards), cooperative agreements, and contracts.

(4) Federal awards to hospitals (see Appendix IX to Part 200—Hospital Cost Principles).

(5) Other awards under which the non-Federal entity is not required to account to the Federal government for actual costs incurred.

(b) Federal Contract. Where a Federal contract awarded to a non-Federal entity is subject to the Cost Accounting Standards (CAS), it incorporates the applicable CAS clauses, Standards, and CAS administration requirements per the 48 CFR Chapter 99 and 48 CFR Part 30 (FAR Part 30). CAS applies directly to the CAS-covered contract and the Cost Accounting Standards at 48 CFR Parts 9904 or 9905 takes precedence over the cost principles in this Subpart E—Cost Principles of this Part with respect to the allocation of costs. When a contract with a non-Federal entity is subject to full CAS coverage, the allowability of certain costs under the

cost principles will be affected by the allocation provisions of the Cost Accounting Standards (e.g., CAS 414—48 CFR 9904.414, Cost of Money as an Element of the Cost of Facilities Capital, and CAS 417—48 CFR 9904.417, Cost of Money as an Element of the Cost of Capital Assets Under Construction), apply rather the allowability provisions of § 200.449 Interest. In complying with those requirements, the non-Federal entity's application of cost accounting practices for estimating, accumulating, and reporting costs for other Federal awards and other cost objectives under the CAS-covered contract still must be consistent with its cost accounting practices for the CAS-covered contracts. In all cases, only one set of accounting records needs to be maintained for the allocation of costs by the non-Federal entity.

(c) Exemptions. Some nonprofit organizations, because of their size and nature of operations, can be considered to be similar to for-profit entities for purpose of applicability of cost principles. Such nonprofit organizations must operate under Federal cost principles applicable to for-profit entities located at 48 CFR 31.2. A listing of these organizations is contained in Appendix VIII to Part 200—Nonprofit Organizations Exempted From Subpart E—Cost Principles of this Part. Other organizations, as approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs, may be added from time to time.

Basic Considerations

§ 200.402 Composition of costs.

Total cost. The total cost of a Federal award is the sum of the allowable direct and allocable indirect costs less any applicable credits.

§ 200.403 Factors affecting allowability of costs.

Except where otherwise authorized by statute, costs must meet the following general criteria in order to be allowable under Federal awards:

(a) Be necessary and reasonable for the performance of the Federal award and be allocable thereto under these principles.

(b) Conform to any limitations or exclusions set forth in these principles or in the Federal award as to types or amount of cost items.

(c) Be consistent with policies and procedures that apply uniformly to both federally-financed and other activities of the non-Federal entity.

(d) Be accorded consistent treatment. A cost may not be assigned to a Federal award as a direct cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances has been allocated to the Federal award as an indirect cost.

(e) Be determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP), except, for state and local governments and Indian tribes only, as otherwise provided for in this Part.

(f) Not be included as a cost or used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements of any other federally-financed program in either the current or a prior period. See also § 200.306 Cost sharing or matching paragraph (b).

(g) Be adequately documented. See also §§ 200.300 Statutory and national policy requirements through 200.309 Period of performance of this Part.

§ 200.404 Reasonable costs.

A cost is reasonable if, in its nature and amount, it does not exceed that which would be incurred by a prudent person under the circumstances prevailing at the time the decision was made to incur the cost. The question of reasonableness is particularly important when the non-Federal entity is predominantly federally-funded. In determining reasonableness of a given cost, consideration must be given to:

(a) Whether the cost is of a type generally recognized as ordinary and necessary for the operation of the non-Federal entity or the proper and efficient performance of the Federal award.

(b) The restraints or requirements imposed by such factors as: sound business practices; arm's-length bargaining; Federal, state and other laws and regulations; and terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(c) Market prices for comparable goods or services for the geographic area.

(d) Whether the individuals concerned acted with prudence in the circumstances considering their responsibilities to the non-Federal entity, its employees, where applicable its students or membership, the public at large, and the Federal government.

(e) Whether the non-Federal entity significantly deviates from its established practices and policies regarding the incurrence of costs, which may unjustifiably increase the Federal award's cost.

§ 200.405 Allocable costs.

(a) A cost is allocable to a particular Federal award or other cost objective if the goods or services involved are chargeable or assignable to that Federal award or cost objective in accordance with relative benefits received. This standard is met if the cost:

(1) Is incurred specifically for the Federal award;

(2) Benefits both the Federal award and other work of the non-Federal entity and can be distributed in proportions that may be approximated using reasonable methods; and

(3) Is necessary to the overall operation of the non-Federal entity and is assignable in part to the Federal award in accordance with the principles in this subpart.

(b) All activities which benefit from the non-Federal entity's indirect (F&A) cost, including unallowable activities and donated services by the non-Federal entity or third parties, will receive an appropriate allocation of indirect costs.

(c) Any cost allocable to a particular Federal award under the principles provided for in this Part may not be charged to other Federal awards to overcome fund deficiencies, to avoid restrictions imposed by Federal statutes, regulations, or terms and conditions of the Federal awards, or for other reasons. However, this prohibition would not preclude the non-Federal entity from shifting costs that are allowable under two or more Federal awards in accordance with existing Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of the Federal awards.

(d) Direct cost allocation principles. If a cost benefits two or more projects or activities in proportions that can be determined without undue effort or cost, the cost should be allocated to the projects based on the proportional benefit. If a cost benefits two or more projects or activities in proportions that cannot be determined because of the interrelationship of the work involved, then, notwithstanding paragraph (c) of this section, the costs may be allocated or transferred to benefitted projects on any reasonable documented basis. Where the purchase of equipment or other capital asset is specifically authorized under a Federal award, the costs are assignable to the Federal award regardless of the use that may be made of the equipment or other capital asset involved when no longer needed for the purpose for which it was originally required. See also §§ 200.310 Insurance coverage through 200.316 Property trust relationship and 200.439 Equipment and other capital expenditures.

(e) If the contract is subject to CAS, costs must be allocated to the contract pursuant to the Cost Accounting Standards. To the extent that CAS is applicable, the allocation of costs in accordance with CAS takes precedence over the allocation provisions in this Part.

§ 200.406 Applicable credits.

(a) Applicable credits refer to those receipts or reduction-of-expenditure-

type transactions that offset or reduce expense items allocable to the Federal award as direct or indirect (F&A) costs. Examples of such transactions are: purchase discounts, rebates or allowances, recoveries or indemnities on losses, insurance refunds or rebates, and adjustments of overpayments or erroneous charges. To the extent that such credits accruing to or received by the non-Federal entity relate to allowable costs, they must be credited to the Federal award either as a cost reduction or cash refund, as appropriate.

(b) In some instances, the amounts received from the Federal government to finance activities or service operations of the non-Federal entity should be treated as applicable credits. Specifically, the concept of netting such credit items (including any amounts used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements) should be recognized in determining the rates or amounts to be charged to the Federal award. (See §§ 200.436 Depreciation and 200.468 Specialized service facilities, for areas of potential application in the matter of Federal financing of activities.)

§ 200.407 Prior written approval (prior approval).

Under any given Federal award, the reasonableness and allocability of certain items of costs may be difficult to determine. In order to avoid subsequent disallowance or dispute based on unreasonableness or nonallocability, the non-Federal entity may seek the prior written approval of the cognizant agency for indirect costs or the Federal awarding agency in advance of the incurrence of special or unusual costs. Prior written approval should include the timeframe or scope of the agreement. The absence of prior written approval on any element of cost will not, in itself, affect the reasonableness or allocability of that element, unless prior approval is specifically required for allowability as described under certain circumstances in the following sections of this Part:

(a) § 200.201 Use of grant agreements (including fixed amount awards), cooperative agreements, and contracts, paragraph (b)(5);

(b) § 200.306 Cost sharing or matching;

(c) § 200.307 Program income;

(d) § 200.308 Revision of budget and program plans;

(e) § 200.332 Fixed amount subawards;

(f) § 200.413 Direct costs, paragraph (c);

(g) § 200.430 Compensation—personal services, paragraph (h);

(h) § 200.431 Compensation—fringe benefits;

(i) § 200.438 Entertainment costs;

(j) § 200.439 Equipment and other capital expenditures;

(k) § 200.440 Exchange rates;

(l) § 200.441 Fines, penalties, damages and other settlements;

(m) § 200.442 Fund raising and investment management costs;

(n) § 200.445 Goods or services for personal use;

(o) § 200.447 Insurance and indemnification;

(p) § 200.454 Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs, paragraph (c);

(q) § 200.455 Organization costs;

(r) § 200.456 Participant support costs;

(s) § 200.458 Pre-award costs;

(t) § 200.462 Rearrangement and reconversion costs;

(u) § 200.467 Selling and marketing costs; and

(v) § 200.474 Travel costs.

§ 200.408 Limitation on allowance of costs.

The Federal award may be subject to statutory requirements that limit the allowability of costs. When the maximum amount allowable under a limitation is less than the total amount determined in accordance with the principles in this Part, the amount not recoverable under the Federal award may not be charged to the Federal award.

§ 200.409 Special considerations.

In addition to the basic considerations regarding the allowability of costs highlighted in this subtitle, other subtitles in this Part describe special considerations and requirements applicable to states, local governments, Indian tribes, and IHEs. In addition, certain provisions among the items of cost in this subpart, are only applicable to certain types of non-Federal entities, as specified in the following sections:

(a) Direct and Indirect (F&A) Costs (§§ 200.412 Classification of costs through 200.415 Required certifications) of this subpart;

(b) Special Considerations for States, Local Governments and Indian Tribes (§§ 200.416 Cost allocation plans and indirect cost proposals and 200.417 Interagency service) of this subpart; and

(c) Special Considerations for Institutions of Higher Education (§§ 200.418 Costs incurred by states and local governments and 200.419 Cost accounting standards and disclosure statement) of this subpart.

§ 200.410 Collection of unallowable costs.

Payments made for costs determined to be unallowable by either the Federal awarding agency, cognizant agency for indirect costs, or pass-through entity, either as direct or indirect costs, must be refunded (including interest) to the Federal government in accordance with instructions from the Federal agency that determined the costs are unallowable unless Federal statute or regulation directs otherwise. See also Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements of this Part, §§ 200.300 Statutory and national policy requirements through 200.309 Period of performance.

§ 200.411 Adjustment of previously negotiated indirect (F&A) cost rates containing unallowable costs.

(a) Negotiated indirect (F&A) cost rates based on a proposal later found to have included costs that:

(1) Are unallowable as specified by Federal statutes, regulations or the terms and conditions of a Federal award; or

(2) Are unallowable because they are not allocable to the Federal award(s), must be adjusted, or a refund must be made, in accordance with the requirements of this section. These adjustments or refunds are designed to correct the proposals used to establish the rates and do not constitute a reopening of the rate negotiation. The adjustments or refunds will be made regardless of the type of rate negotiated (predetermined, final, fixed, or provisional).

(b) For rates covering a future fiscal year of the non-Federal entity, the unallowable costs will be removed from the indirect (F&A) cost pools and the rates appropriately adjusted.

(c) For rates covering a past period, the Federal share of the unallowable costs will be computed for each year involved and a cash refund (including interest chargeable in accordance with applicable regulations) will be made to the Federal government. If cash refunds are made for past periods covered by provisional or fixed rates, appropriate adjustments will be made when the rates are finalized to avoid duplicate recovery of the unallowable costs by the Federal government.

(d) For rates covering the current period, either a rate adjustment or a refund, as described in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, must be required by the cognizant agency for indirect costs. The choice of method must be at the discretion of the cognizant agency for indirect costs, based on its judgment as to which method would be most practical.

(e) The amount or proportion of unallowable costs included in each year's rate will be assumed to be the same as the amount or proportion of

unallowable costs included in the base year proposal used to establish the rate.

Direct and Indirect (F&A) Costs

§ 200.412 Classification of costs.

There is no universal rule for classifying certain costs as either direct or indirect (F&A) under every accounting system. A cost may be direct with respect to some specific service or function, but indirect with respect to the Federal award or other final cost objective. Therefore, it is essential that each item of cost incurred for the same purpose be treated consistently in like circumstances either as a direct or an indirect (F&A) cost in order to avoid possible double-charging of Federal awards. Guidelines for determining direct and indirect (F&A) costs charged to Federal awards are provided in this subpart.

§ 200.413 Direct costs.

(a) General. Direct costs are those costs that can be identified specifically with a particular final cost objective, such as a Federal award, or other internally or externally funded activity, or that can be directly assigned to such activities relatively easily with a high degree of accuracy. Costs incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances must be treated consistently as either direct or indirect (F&A) costs. See also § 200.405 Allocable costs.

(b) Application to Federal awards. Identification with the Federal award rather than the nature of the goods and services involved is the determining factor in distinguishing direct from indirect (F&A) costs of Federal awards. Typical costs charged directly to a Federal award are the compensation of employees who work on that award, their related fringe benefit costs, the costs of materials and other items of expense incurred for the Federal award. If directly related to a specific award, certain costs that otherwise would be treated as indirect costs may also include extraordinary utility consumption, the cost of materials supplied from stock or services rendered by specialized facilities or other institutional service operations.

(c) The salaries of administrative and clerical staff should normally be treated as indirect (F&A) costs. Direct charging of these costs may be appropriate only if all of the following conditions are met:

(1) Administrative or clerical services are integral to a project or activity;

(2) Individuals involved can be specifically identified with the project or activity;

(3) Such costs are explicitly included in the budget or have the prior written approval of the Federal awarding agency; and

(4) The costs are not also recovered as indirect costs.

(d) Minor items. Any direct cost of minor amount may be treated as an indirect (F&A) cost for reasons of practicality where such accounting treatment for that item of cost is consistently applied to all Federal and non-Federal cost objectives.

(e) The costs of certain activities are not allowable as charges to Federal awards. However, even though these costs are unallowable for purposes of computing charges to Federal awards, they nonetheless must be treated as direct costs for purposes of determining indirect (F&A) cost rates and be allocated their equitable share of the non-Federal entity's indirect costs if they represent activities which:

(1) Include the salaries of personnel,

(2) Occupy space, and

(3) Benefit from the non-Federal entity's indirect (F&A) costs.

(f) For nonprofit organizations, the costs of activities performed by the non-Federal entity primarily as a service to members, clients, or the general public when significant and necessary to the non-Federal entity's mission must be treated as direct costs whether or not allowable, and be allocated an equitable share of indirect (F&A) costs. Some examples of these types of activities include:

(1) Maintenance of membership rolls, subscriptions, publications, and related functions. See also § 200.454 Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs.

(2) Providing services and information to members, legislative or administrative bodies, or the public. See also §§ 200.454 Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs and 200.450 Lobbying.

(3) Promotion, lobbying, and other forms of public relations. See also §§ 200.421 Advertising and public relations and 200.450 Lobbying.

(4) Conferences except those held to conduct the general administration of the non-Federal entity. See also § 200.432 Conferences.

(5) Maintenance, protection, and investment of special funds not used in operation of the non-Federal entity.

(6) Administration of group benefits on behalf of members or clients, including life and hospital insurance, annuity or retirement plans, and financial aid. See also § 200.431 Compensation—fringe benefits.

§ 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs.

(a) Facilities and Administration Classification. For major IHEs and major nonprofit organizations, indirect (F&A) costs must be classified within two broad categories: ''Facilities'' and ''Administration.'' ''Facilities'' is defined as depreciation on buildings, equipment and capital improvement, interest on debt associated with certain buildings, equipment and capital improvements, and operations and maintenance expenses. ''Administration'' is defined as general administration and general expenses such as the director's office, accounting, personnel and all other types of expenditures not listed specifically under one of the subcategories of ''Facilities'' (including cross allocations from other pools, where applicable). For nonprofit organizations, library expenses are included in the ''Administration'' category; for institutions of higher education, they are included in the ''Facilities'' category. Major IHEs are defined as those required to use the Standard Format for Submission as noted in Appendix III to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs) paragraph C. 11. Major nonprofit organizations are those which receive more than $10 million dollars in direct Federal funding.

(b) Diversity of nonprofit organizations. Because of the diverse characteristics and accounting practices of nonprofit organizations, it is not possible to specify the types of cost which may be classified as indirect (F&A) cost in all situations. Identification with a Federal award rather than the nature of the goods and services involved is the determining factor in distinguishing direct from indirect (F&A) costs of Federal awards. However, typical examples of indirect (F&A) cost for many nonprofit organizations may include depreciation on buildings and equipment, the costs of operating and maintaining facilities, and general administration and general expenses, such as the salaries and expenses of executive officers, personnel administration, and accounting.

(c) Federal Agency Acceptance of Negotiated Indirect Cost Rates. (See also § 200.306 Cost sharing or matching.)

(1) The negotiated rates must be accepted by all Federal awarding agencies. A Federal awarding agency may use a rate different from the negotiated rate for a class of Federal awards or a single Federal award only when required by Federal statute or regulation, or when approved by a Federal awarding agency head or delegate based on documented

justification as described in paragraph (c)(3) of this section.

(2) The Federal awarding agency head or delegate must notify OMB of any approved deviations.

(3) The Federal awarding agency must implement, and make publicly available, the policies, procedures and general decision making criteria that their programs will follow to seek and justify deviations from negotiated rates.

(4) As required under § 200.203 Notices of funding opportunities, the Federal awarding agency must include in the notice of funding opportunity the policies relating to indirect cost rate reimbursement, matching, or cost share as approved under paragraph (e)(1) of this section. As appropriate, the Federal agency should incorporate discussion of these policies into Federal awarding agency outreach activities with non-Federal entities prior to the posting of a notice of funding opportunity.

(d) Pass-through entities are subject to the requirements in § 200.331 Requirements for pass-through entities, paragraph (a)(4).

(e) Requirements for development and submission of indirect (F&A) cost rate proposals and cost allocation plans are contained in Appendices III–VII as follows:

(1) Appendix III to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for

(2) Appendix IV to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Nonprofit Organizations;

(3) Appendix V to Part 200—State/Local Government and Indian Tribe-Wide Central Service Cost Allocation Plans;

(4) Appendix VI to Part 200—Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans; and

(5) Appendix VII to Part 200—States and Local Government and Indian Tribe Indirect Cost Proposals.

(f) In addition to the procedures outlined in the appendices in paragraph (e) of this section, any non-Federal entity that has never received a negotiated indirect cost rate, except for those non-Federal entities described in Appendix VII to Part 200—States and Local Government and Indian Tribe Indirect Cost Proposals, paragraph (d)(1)(B) may elect to charge a de minimis rate of) 10% of modified total direct costs (MTDC) which may be used indefinitely. As described in § 200.403 Factors affecting allowability of costs, costs must be consistently charged as either indirect or direct costs, but may not be double charged or inconsistently charged as both. If chosen, this methodology once elected must be used consistently for all Federal awards until such time as a non-Federal entity chooses to negotiate for a rate, which the non-Federal entity may apply to do at any time.

(g) Any non-Federal entity that has a federally negotiated indirect cost rate may apply for a one-time extension of a current negotiated indirect cost rates for a period of up to four years. This extension will be subject to the review and approval of the cognizant agency for indirect costs. If an extension is granted the non-Federal entity may not request a rate review until the extension period ends. At the end of the 4-year extension, the non-Federal entity must re-apply to negotiate a rate.

§ 200.415 Required certifications.

Required certifications include:

(a) To assure that expenditures are proper and in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Federal award and approved project budgets, the annual and final fiscal reports or vouchers requesting payment under the agreements must include a certification, signed by an official who is authorized to legally bind the non-Federal entity, which reads as follows: ''By signing this report, I certify to the best of my knowledge and belief that the report is true, complete, and accurate, and the expenditures, disbursements and cash receipts are for the purposes and objectives set forth in the terms and conditions of the Federal award. I am aware that any false, fictitious, or fraudulent information, or the omission of any material fact, may subject me to criminal, civil or administrative penalties for fraud, false statements, false claims or otherwise. (U.S. Code Title 18, Section 1001 and Title 31, Sections 3729–3730 and 3801–3812).''

(b) Certification of cost allocation plan or indirect (F&A) cost rate proposal. Each cost allocation plan or indirect (F&A) cost rate proposal must comply with the following:

(1) A proposal to establish a cost allocation plan or an indirect (F&A) cost rate, whether submitted to a Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs or maintained on file by the non-Federal entity, must be certified by the non-Federal entity using the Certificate of Cost Allocation Plan or Certificate of Indirect Costs as set forth in Appendices III through VII. The certificate must be signed on behalf of the non-Federal entity by an individual at a level no lower than vice president or chief financial officer of the non-Federal entity that submits the proposal.

(2) Unless the non-Federal entity has elected the option under § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs, paragraph (f), the Federal government may either disallow all indirect (F&A) costs or unilaterally establish such a plan or rate when the non-Federal entity fails to submit a certified proposal for establishing such a plan or rate in accordance with the requirements. Such a plan or rate may be based upon audited historical data or such other data that have been furnished to the cognizant agency for indirect costs and for which it can be demonstrated that all unallowable costs have been excluded. When a cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate is unilaterally established by the Federal government because the non-Federal entity failed to submit a certified proposal, the plan or rate established will be set to ensure that potentially unallowable costs will not be reimbursed.

(c) Certifications by non-profit organizations as appropriate that they did not meet the definition of a major corporation as defined in § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs, paragraph (a).

(d) See also § 200.450 Lobbying for another required certification.

Special Considerations for States, Local Governments and Indian Tribes

§ 200.416 Cost allocation plans and indirect cost proposals.

(a) For states, local governments and Indian tribes, certain services, such as motor pools, computer centers, purchasing, accounting, etc., are provided to operating agencies on a centralized basis. Since Federal awards are performed within the individual operating agencies, there needs to be a process whereby these central service costs can be identified and assigned to benefitted activities on a reasonable and consistent basis. The central service cost allocation plan provides that process.

(b) Individual operating agencies (governmental department or agency), normally charge Federal awards for indirect costs through an indirect cost rate. A separate indirect cost rate(s) proposal for each operating agency is usually necessary to claim indirect costs under Federal awards. Indirect costs include:

(1) The indirect costs originating in each department or agency of the governmental unit carrying out Federal awards and (2) The costs of central governmental services distributed through the central service cost allocation plan and not otherwise treated as direct costs.

(c) The requirements for development and submission of cost allocation plans (for central service costs and public assistance programs) and indirect cost rate proposals are contained in Appendices IV, V and VI to this part.

§ 200.417 Interagency service.

The cost of services provided by one agency to another within the governmental unit may include allowable direct costs of the service plus a pro-rated share of indirect costs. A standard indirect cost allowance equal to ten percent of the direct salary and wage cost of providing the service (excluding overtime, shift premiums, and fringe benefits) may be used in lieu of determining the actual indirect costs of the service. These services do not include centralized services included in central service cost allocation plans as described in Appendix V to Part 200—State/Local Government and Indian Tribe- Wide Central Service Cost Allocation Plans.

Special Considerations For Institutions Of Higher Education

§ 200.418 Costs incurred by states and local government

Costs incurred or paid by a state or local government on behalf of its IHEs for fringe benefit programs, such as pension costs and FICA and any other costs specifically incurred on behalf of, and in direct benefit to, the IHEs, are allowable costs of such IHEs whether or not these costs are recorded in the accounting records of the institutions, subject to the following:

(a) The costs meet the requirements of §§ 200.402 Composition of costs through 200.411 Adjustment of previously negotiated indirect (F&A) cost rates containing unallowable costs, of this subpart;

(b) The costs are properly supported by approved cost allocation plans in accordance with applicable Federal cost accounting principles in this Part; and

(c) The costs are not otherwise borne directly or indirectly by the Federal government.

§ 200.419 Cost accounting standards and disclosure statement.

(a) An IHE that receives aggregate Federal awards totaling $50 million or more in Federal awards subject to this Part in its most recently completed fiscal year must comply with the Cost Accounting Standards Board's cost accounting standards located at 48 CFR 9905.501, 9905.502, 9905.505, and 9905.506. CAS-covered contracts awarded to the IHEs are subject to the CAS requirements at 48 CFR 9900 through 9999 and 48 CFR Part 30 (FAR Part 30).

(b) Disclosure statement. An IHE that receives aggregate Federal awards totaling $50 million or more subject to this Part during its most recently completed fiscal year must disclose their cost accounting practices by filing a Disclosure Statement (DS–2), which is reproduced in Appendix III to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs). With the approval of the cognizant agency for indirect costs, an IHE may meet the DS–2 submission by submitting the DS–2 for each business unit that received $50 million or more in Federal awards.

(1) The DS–2 must be submitted to the cognizant agency for indirect costs with a copy to the IHE's cognizant agency for audit.

(2) An IHE is responsible for maintaining an accurate DS–2 and complying with disclosed cost accounting practices. An IHE must file amendments to the DS–2 to the cognizant agency for indirect costs six months in advance of a disclosed practices being changed to comply with a new or modified standard, or when practices are changed for other reasons. An IHE may proceed with implementing the change only if it has not been notified by the Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs that either a longer period will be needed for review or there are concerns with the potential change within the six months period. Amendments of a DS–2 may be submitted at any time. Resubmission of a complete, updated DS–2 is discouraged except when there are extensive changes to disclosed practices.

(3) Cost and funding adjustments. Cost adjustments must be made by the cognizant agency for indirect costs if an IHE fails to comply with the cost policies in this Part or fails to consistently follow its established or disclosed cost accounting practices when estimating, accumulating or reporting the costs of Federal awards, and the aggregate cost impact on Federal awards is material. The cost adjustment must normally be made on an aggregate basis for all affected Federal awards through an adjustment of the IHE's future F&A costs rates or other means considered appropriate by the cognizant agency for indirect costs. Under the terms of CAS covered contracts, adjustments in the amount of funding provided may also be required when the estimated proposal costs were not determined in accordance with established cost accounting practices.

(4) Overpayments. Excess amounts paid in the aggregate by the Federal government under Federal awards due to a noncompliant cost accounting practice used to estimate, accumulate, or report costs must be credited or refunded, as deemed appropriate by the cognizant agency for indirect costs. Interest applicable to the excess amounts paid in the aggregate during the period of noncompliance must also be determined and collected in accordance with applicable Federal agency regulations.

(5) Compliant cost accounting practice changes. Changes from one compliant cost accounting practice to another compliant practice that are approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs may require cost adjustments if the change has a material effect on Federal awards and the changes are deemed appropriate by the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

(6) Responsibilities. The cognizant agency for indirect cost must:

(i) Determine cost adjustments for all Federal awards in the aggregate on behalf of the Federal Government. Actions of the cognizant agency for indirect cost in making cost adjustment determinations must be coordinated with all affected Federal awarding agencies to the extent necessary.

(ii) Prescribe guidelines and establish internal procedures to promptly determine on behalf of the Federal Government that a DS–2 adequately discloses the IHE's cost accounting practices and that the disclosed practices are compliant with applicable CAS and the requirements of this Part.

(iii) Distribute to all affected Federal awarding agencies any DS–2 determination of adequacy or noncompliance.

General Provisions for Selected Items of Cost

§ 200.420 Considerations for selected items of cost.

This section provides principles to be applied in establishing the allowability of certain items involved in determining cost, in addition to the requirements of Subtitle II. Basic Considerations of this subpart. These principles apply whether or not a particular item of cost is properly treated as direct cost or indirect (F&A) cost. Failure to mention a particular item of cost is not intended to imply that it is either allowable or unallowable; rather, determination as to allowability in each case should be based on the treatment provided for similar or related items of cost, and based on the principles described in §§ 200.402 Composition of costs through 200.411 Adjustment of previously negotiated indirect (F&A) cost rates containing unallowable costs. In case of a discrepancy between the provisions of a specific Federal award and the provisions below, the Federal award governs. Criteria outlined in § 200.403 Factors affecting allowability of *costs*

must be applied in determining allowability. See also § 200.102 Exceptions.

§ 200.421 Advertising and public relations.

(a) The term advertising costs means the costs of advertising media and corollary administrative costs. Advertising media include magazines, newspapers, radio and television, direct mail, exhibits, electronic or computer transmittals, and the like.

(b) The only allowable advertising costs are those which are solely for:

(1) The recruitment of personnel required by the non-Federal entity for performance of a Federal award (See also § 200.463 Recruiting costs);

(2) The procurement of goods and services for the performance of a Federal award;

(3) The disposal of scrap or surplus materials acquired in the performance of a Federal award except when non-Federal entities are reimbursed for disposal costs at a predetermined amount; or

(4) Program outreach and other specific purposes necessary to meet the requirements of the Federal award.

(c) The term ''public relations'' includes community relations and means those activities dedicated to maintaining the image of the non-Federal entity or maintaining or promoting understanding and favorable relations with the community or public at large or any segment of the public.

(d) The only allowable public relations costs are:

(1) Costs specifically required by the Federal award;

(2) Costs of communicating with the public and press pertaining to specific activities or accomplishments which result from performance of the Federal award (these costs are considered necessary as part of the outreach effort for the Federal award); or

(3) Costs of conducting general liaison with news media and government public relations officers, to the extent that such activities are limited to communication and liaison necessary to keep the public informed on matters of public concern, such as notices of funding opportunities, financial matters, etc.

(e) Unallowable advertising and public relations costs include the following:

(1) All advertising and public relations costs other than as specified in paragraphs (b) and (d) of this section;

(2) Costs of meetings, conventions, convocations, or other events related to other activities of the entity (see also § 200.432 Conferences), including:

(i) Costs of displays, demonstrations, and exhibits;

(ii) Costs of meeting rooms, hospitality suites, and other special facilities used in conjunction with shows and other special events; and

(iii) Salaries and wages of employees engaged in setting up and displaying exhibits, making demonstrations, and providing briefings;

(3) Costs of promotional items and memorabilia, including models, gifts, and souvenirs;

(4) Costs of advertising and public relations designed solely to promote the non-Federal entity.

§ 200.422 Advisory councils.

Costs incurred by advisory councils or committees are unallowable unless authorized by statute, the Federal awarding agency or as an indirect cost where allocable to Federal awards. See § 200.444 General costs of government, applicable to states, local governments and Indian tribes.

§ 200.423 Alcoholic beverages.

Costs of alcoholic beverages are unallowable.

§ 200.424 Alumni/ae activities.

Costs incurred by IHEs for, or in support of, alumni/ae activities are unallowable.

§ 200.425 Audit services.

(a) A reasonably proportionate share of the costs of audits required by, and performed in accordance with, the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (31 U.S.C. 7501–7507), as implemented by requirements of this Part, are allowable. However, the following audit costs are unallowable:

(1) Any costs when audits required by the Single Audit Act and Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part have not been conducted or have been conducted but not in accordance therewith; and

(2) Any costs of auditing a non-Federal entity that is exempted from having an audit conducted under the Single Audit Act and Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part because its expenditures under Federal awards are less than $750,000 during the non-Federal entity's fiscal year.

(b) The costs of a financial statement audit of a non-Federal entity that does not currently have a Federal award may be included in the indirect cost pool for a cost allocation plan or indirect cost proposal.

(c) Pass-through entities may charge Federal awards for the cost of agreed-upon-procedures engagements to monitor subrecipients (in accordance with Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements of this Part, §§ 200.330 Subrecipient and contractor determinations through 200.332 Fixed Amount Subawards) who are exempted from the requirements of the Single Audit Act and Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part. This cost is allowable only if the agreed-upon-procedures engagements are:

(1) Conducted in accordance with GAGAS attestation standards;

(2) Paid for and arranged by the pass-through entity; and

(3) Limited in scope to one or more of the following types of compliance requirements: activities allowed or unallowed; allowable costs/cost principles; eligibility; and reporting.

§ 200.426 Bad debts.

Bad debts (debts which have been determined to be uncollectable), including losses (whether actual or estimated) arising from uncollectable accounts and other claims, are unallowable. Related collection costs, and related legal costs, arising from such debts after they have been determined to be uncollectable are also unallowable. See also § 200.428 Collections of improper payments.

§ 200.427 Bonding costs.

(a) Bonding costs arise when the Federal awarding agency requires assurance against financial loss to itself or others by reason of the act or default of the non-Federal entity. They arise also in instances where the non-Federal entity requires similar assurance, including: bonds as bid, performance, payment, advance payment, infringement, and fidelity bonds for employees and officials.

(b) Costs of bonding required pursuant to the terms and conditions of the Federal award are allowable.

(c) Costs of bonding required by the non-Federal entity in the general conduct of its operations are allowable as an indirect cost to the extent that such bonding is in accordance with sound business practice and the rates and premiums are reasonable under the circumstances.

§ 200.428 Collections of improper payments.

The costs incurred by a non-Federal entity to recover improper payments are allowable as either direct or indirect costs, as appropriate. Amounts collected may be used by the non-Federal entity in accordance with cash management standards set forth in § 200.305 *Payment.*

§ 200.429 Commencement and convocation costs.

For IHEs, costs incurred for commencements and convocations are

unallowable, except as provided for in Appendix III to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs), paragraph (B)(9) Student Administration and Services, as student activity costs.

§ 200.430 Compensation—personal services.

(a) General. Compensation for personal services includes all remuneration, paid currently or accrued, for services of employees rendered during the period of performance under the Federal award, including but not necessarily limited to wages and salaries. Compensation for personal services may also include fringe benefits which are addressed in § 200.431 Compensation—fringe benefits. Costs of compensation are allowable to the extent that they satisfy the specific requirements of this Part, and that the total compensation for individual employees:

(1) Is reasonable for the services rendered and conforms to the established written policy of the non-Federal entity consistently applied to both Federal and non-Federal activities;

(2) Follows an appointment made in accordance with a non-Federal entity's laws and/or rules or written policies and meets the requirements of Federal statute, where applicable; and

(3) Is determined and supported as provided in paragraph (i) of this section, Standards for Documentation of Personnel Expenses, when applicable.

(b) Reasonableness. Compensation for employees engaged in work on Federal awards will be considered reasonable to the extent that it is consistent with that paid for similar work in other activities of the non-Federal entity. In cases where the kinds of employees required for Federal awards are not found in the other activities of the non-Federal entity, compensation will be considered reasonable to the extent that it is comparable to that paid for similar work in the labor market in which the non-Federal entity competes for the kind of employees involved.

(c) Professional activities outside the non-Federal entity. Unless an arrangement is specifically authorized by a Federal awarding agency, a non-Federal entity must follow its written non-Federal entity-wide policies and practices concerning the permissible extent of professional services that can be provided outside the non-Federal entity for non-organizational compensation. Where such non-Federal entity-wide written policies do not exist or do not adequately define the permissible extent of consulting or other non-organizational activities undertaken for extra outside pay, the Federal government may require that the effort of professional staff working on Federal awards be allocated between:

(1) Non-Federal entity activities, and

(2) Non-organizational professional activities. If the Federal awarding agency considers the extent of non-organizational professional effort excessive or inconsistent with the conflicts-of-interest terms and conditions of the Federal award, appropriate arrangements governing compensation will be negotiated on a case-by-case basis.

(d) Unallowable costs.

(1) Costs which are unallowable under other sections of these principles must not be allowable under this section solely on the basis that they constitute personnel compensation.

(2) The allowable compensation for certain employees is subject to a ceiling in accordance with statute. For the amount of the ceiling for cost-reimbursement contracts, the covered compensation subject to the ceiling, the covered employees, and other relevant provisions, see 10 U.S.C. 2324(e)(1)(P), and 41 U.S.C. 1127 and 4304(a)(16). For other types of Federal awards, other statutory ceilings may apply.

(e) Special considerations. Special considerations in determining allowability of compensation will be given to any change in a non-Federal entity's compensation policy resulting in a substantial increase in its employees' level of compensation (particularly when the change was concurrent with an increase in the ratio of Federal awards to other activities) or any change in the treatment of allowability of specific types of compensation due to changes in Federal policy.

(f) Incentive compensation. Incentive compensation to employees based on cost reduction, or efficient performance, suggestion awards, safety awards, etc., is allowable to the extent that the overall compensation is determined to be reasonable and such costs are paid or accrued pursuant to an agreement entered into in good faith between the non-Federal entity and the employees before the services were rendered, or pursuant to an established plan followed by the non-Federal entity so consistently as to imply, in effect, an agreement to make such payment.

(g) Nonprofit organizations. For compensation to members of nonprofit organizations, trustees, directors, associates, officers, or the immediate families thereof, determination should be made that such compensation is reasonable for the actual personal services rendered rather than a distribution of earnings in excess of costs. This may include director's and executive committee member's fees, incentive awards, allowances for off-site pay, incentive pay, location allowances, hardship pay, and cost-of-living differentials.

(h) Institutions of higher education (IHEs).

(1) Certain conditions require special consideration and possible limitations in determining allowable personnel compensation costs under Federal awards. Among such conditions are the following:

(i) Allowable activities. Charges to Federal awards may include reasonable amounts for activities contributing and directly related to work under an agreement, such as delivering special lectures about specific aspects of the ongoing activity, writing reports and articles, developing and maintaining protocols (human, animals, etc.), managing substances/chemicals, managing and securing project-specific data, coordinating research subjects, participating in appropriate seminars, consulting with colleagues and graduate students, and attending meetings and conferences.

(ii) Incidental activities. Incidental activities for which supplemental compensation is allowable under written institutional policy (at a rate not to exceed institutional base salary) need not be included in the records described in paragraph (h)(9) of this section to directly charge payments of incidental activities, such activities must either be specifically provided for in the Federal award budget or receive prior written approval by the Federal awarding agency.

(2) Salary basis. Charges for work performed on Federal awards by faculty members during the academic year are allowable at the IBS rate. Except as noted in paragraph (h)(1)(ii) of this section, in no event will charges to Federal awards, irrespective of the basis of computation, exceed the proportionate share of the IBS for that period. This principle applies to all members of faculty at an institution. IBS is defined as the annual compensation paid by an IHE for an individual's appointment, whether that individual's time is spent on research, instruction, administration, or other activities. IBS excludes any income that an individual earns outside of duties performed for the IHE. Unless there is prior approval by the Federal awarding agency, charges of a faculty member's salary to a Federal award must not exceed the proportionate share of the IBS for the

period during which the faculty member worked on the award.

(3) Intra-Institution of Higher Education (IHE) consulting. Intra-IHE consulting by faculty is assumed to be undertaken as an IHE obligation requiring no compensation in addition to IBS. However, in unusual cases where consultation is across departmental lines or involves a separate or remote operation, and the work performed by the faculty member is in addition to his or her regular responsibilities, any charges for such work representing additional compensation above IBS are allowable provided that such consulting arrangements are specifically provided for in the Federal award or approved in writing by the Federal awarding agency.

(4) Extra Service Pay normally represents overload compensation, subject to institutional compensation policies for services above and beyond IBS. Where extra service pay is a result of Intra-IHE consulting, it is subject to the same requirements of paragraph (b) above. It is allowable if all of the following conditions are met:

(i) The non-Federal entity establishes consistent written policies which apply uniformly to all faculty members, not just those working on Federal awards.

(ii) The non-Federal entity establishes a consistent written definition of work covered by IBS which is specific enough to determine conclusively when work beyond that level has occurred. This may be described in appointment letters or other documentations.

(iii) The supplementation amount paid is commensurate with the IBS rate of pay and the amount of additional work performed. See paragraph (h)(2) of this section.

(iv) The salaries, as supplemented, fall within the salary structure and pay ranges established by and documented in writing or otherwise applicable to the non-Federal entity.

(v) The total salaries charged to Federal awards including extra service pay are subject to the Standards of Documentation as described in paragraph (i) of this section.

(5) Periods outside the academic year.

(i) Except as specified for teaching activity in paragraph (h)(5)(ii) of this section, charges for work performed by faculty members on Federal awards during periods not included in the base salary period will be at a rate not in excess of the IBS.

(ii) Charges for teaching activities performed by faculty members on Federal awards during periods not included in IBS period will be based on the normal written policy of the IHE governing compensation to faculty members for teaching assignments during such periods.

(6) Part-time faculty. Charges for work performed on Federal awards by faculty members having only part-time appointments will be determined at a rate not in excess of that regularly paid for part-time assignments.

(7) Sabbatical leave costs. Rules for sabbatical leave are as follow:

(i) Costs of leaves of absence by employees for performance of graduate work or sabbatical study, travel, or research are allowable provided the IHE has a uniform written policy on sabbatical leave for persons engaged in instruction and persons engaged in research. Such costs will be allocated on an equitable basis among all related activities of the IHE.

(ii) Where sabbatical leave is included in fringe benefits for which a cost is determined for assessment as a direct charge, the aggregate amount of such assessments applicable to all work of the institution during the base period must be reasonable in relation to the IHE's actual experience under its sabbatical leave policy.

(8) Salary rates for non-faculty members. Non-faculty full-time professional personnel may also earn ''extra service pay'' in accordance with the non-Federal entity's written policy and consistent with paragraph (h)(1)(i) of this section.

(i) Standards for Documentation of Personnel Expenses

(1) Charges to Federal awards for salaries and wages must be based on records that accurately reflect the work performed. These records must:

(i) Be supported by a system of internal control which provides reasonable assurance that the charges are accurate, allowable, and properly allocated;

(ii) Be incorporated into the official records of the non-Federal entity;

(iii) Reasonably reflect the total activity for which the employee is compensated by the non-Federal entity, not exceeding 100% of compensated activities (for IHE, this per the IHE's definition of IBS);

(iv) Encompass both federally assisted and all other activities compensated by the non-Federal entity on an integrated basis, but may include the use of subsidiary records as defined in the non-Federal entity's written policy;

(v) Comply with the established accounting policies and practices of the non-Federal entity (See paragraph (h)(1)(ii) above for treatment of incidental work for IHEs.); and

(vii) Support the distribution of the employee's salary or wages among specific activities or cost objectives if the employee works on more than one Federal award; a Federal award and non-Federal award; an indirect cost activity and a direct cost activity; two or more indirect activities which are allocated using different allocation bases; or an unallowable activity and a direct or indirect cost activity.

(viii) Budget estimates (i.e., estimates determined before the services are performed) alone do not qualify as support for charges to Federal awards, but may be used for interim accounting purposes, provided that:

(A) The system for establishing the estimates produces reasonable approximations of the activity actually performed;

(B) Significant changes in the corresponding work activity (as defined by the non-Federal entity's written policies) are identified and entered into the records in a timely manner. Short term (such as one or two months) fluctuation between workload categories need not be considered as long as the distribution of salaries and wages is reasonable over the longer term; and

(C) The non-Federal entity's system of internal controls includes processes to review after-the-fact interim charges made to a Federal awards based on budget estimates. All necessary adjustment must be made such that the final amount charged to the Federal award is accurate, allowable, and properly allocated.

(ix) Because practices vary as to the activity constituting a full workload (for IHEs, IBS), records may reflect categories of activities expressed as a percentage distribution of total activities.

(x) It is recognized that teaching, research, service, and administration are often inextricably intermingled in an academic setting. When recording salaries and wages charged to Federal awards for IHEs, a precise assessment of factors that contribute to costs is therefore not always feasible, nor is it expected.

(2) For records which meet the standards required in paragraph (i)(1) of this section, the non-Federal entity will not be required to provide additional support or documentation for the work performed, other than that referenced in paragraph (i)(3) of this section.

(3) In accordance with Department of Labor regulations implementing the Fair Labor Standards Act (FLSA) (29 CFR Part 516), charges for the salaries and wages of nonexempt employees, in addition to the supporting documentation described in this section, must also be supported by records indicating the total number of hours worked each day.

(4) Salaries and wages of employees used in meeting cost sharing or matching requirements on Federal awards must be supported in the same manner as salaries and wages claimed for reimbursement from Federal awards.

(5) For states, local governments and Indian tribes, substitute processes or systems for allocating salaries and wages to Federal awards may be used in place of or in addition to the records described in paragraph (1) if approved by the cognizant agency for indirect cost. Such systems may include, but are not limited to, random moment sampling, ''rolling'' time studies, case counts, or other quantifiable measures of work performed.

(i) Substitute systems which use sampling methods (primarily for Temporary Assistance for Needy Families (TANF), the Supplemental Nutrition Assistance Program (SNAP), Medicaid, and other public assistance programs) must meet acceptable statistical sampling standards including:

(A) The sampling universe must include all of the employees whose salaries and wages are to be allocated based on sample results except as provided in paragraph (i)(5)(iii) of this section;

(B) The entire time period involved must be covered by the sample; and

(C) The results must be statistically valid and applied to the period being sampled.

(ii) Allocating charges for the sampled employees' supervisors, clerical and support staffs, based on the results of the sampled employees, will be acceptable.

(iii) Less than full compliance with the statistical sampling standards noted in subsection (5)(i) may be accepted by the cognizant agency for indirect costs if it concludes that the amounts to be allocated to Federal awards will be minimal, or if it concludes that the system proposed by the non-Federal entity will result in lower costs to Federal awards than a system which complies with the standards.

(6) Cognizant agencies for indirect costs are encouraged to approve alternative proposals based on outcomes and milestones for program performance where these are clearly documented. Where approved by the Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs, these plans are acceptable as an alternative to the requirements of paragraph (i)(1) of this section.

(7) For Federal awards of similar purpose activity or instances of approved blended funding, a non-Federal entity may submit performance plans that incorporate funds from multiple Federal awards and account for their combined use based on performance-oriented metrics, provided that such plans are approved in advance by all involved Federal awarding agencies. In these instances, the non-Federal entity must submit a request for waiver of the requirements based on documentation that describes the method of charging costs, relates the charging of costs to the specific activity that is applicable to all fund sources, and is based on quantifiable measures of the activity in relation to time charged.

(8) For a non-Federal entity where the records do not meet the standards described in this section, the Federal government may require personnel activity reports, including prescribed certifications, or equivalent documentation that support the records as required in this section.

§ 200.431 Compensation—fringe benefits.

(a) Fringe benefits are allowances and services provided by employers to their employees as compensation in addition to regular salaries and wages. Fringe benefits include, but are not limited to, the costs of leave (vacation, family-related, sick or military), employee insurance, pensions, and unemployment benefit plans. Except as provided elsewhere in these principles, the costs of fringe benefits are allowable provided that the benefits are reasonable and are required by law, non-Federal entity-employee agreement, or an established policy of the non-Federal entity.

(b) Leave. The cost of fringe benefits in the form of regular compensation paid to employees during periods of authorized absences from the job, such as for annual leave, family-related leave, sick leave, holidays, court leave, military leave, administrative leave, and other similar benefits, are allowable if all of the following criteria are met:

(1) They are provided under established written leave policies;

(2) The costs are equitably allocated to all related activities, including Federal awards; and,

(3) The accounting basis (cash or accrual) selected for costing each type of leave is consistently followed by the non-Federal entity or specified grouping of employees.

(i) When a non-Federal entity uses the cash basis of accounting, the cost of leave is recognized in the period that the leave is taken and paid for. Payments for unused leave when an employee retires or terminates employment are allowable as indirect costs in the year of payment.

(ii) The accrual basis may be only used for those types of leave for which a liability as defined by GAAP exists when the leave is earned. When a non-Federal entity uses the accrual basis of accounting, allowable leave costs are the lesser of the amount accrued or funded.

(c) The cost of fringe benefits in the form of employer contributions or expenses for social security; employee life, health, unemployment, and worker's compensation insurance (except as indicated in § 200.447 Insurance and indemnification); pension plan costs (see paragraph (i) of this section); and other similar benefits are allowable, provided such benefits are granted under established written policies. Such benefits, must be allocated to Federal awards and all other activities in a manner consistent with the pattern of benefits attributable to the individuals or group(s) of employees whose salaries and wages are chargeable to such Federal awards and other activities, and charged as direct or indirect costs in accordance with the non-Federal entity's accounting practices.

(d) Fringe benefits may be assigned to cost objectives by identifying specific benefits to specific individual employees or by allocating on the basis of entity-wide salaries and wages of the employees receiving the benefits. When the allocation method is used, separate allocations must be made to selective groupings of employees, unless the non-Federal entity demonstrates that costs in relationship to salaries and wages do not differ significantly for different groups of employees.

(e) Insurance. See also § 200.447 Insurance and indemnification, paragraphs (d)(1) and (2).

(1) Provisions for a reserve under a self-insurance program for unemployment compensation or workers' compensation are allowable to the extent that the provisions represent reasonable estimates of the liabilities for such compensation, and the types of coverage, extent of coverage, and rates and premiums would have been allowable had insurance been purchased to cover the risks. However, provisions for self-insured liabilities which do not become payable for more than one year after the provision is made must not exceed the present value of the liability.

(2) Costs of insurance on the lives of trustees, officers, or other employees holding positions of similar responsibility are allowable only to the extent that the insurance represents additional compensation. The costs of such insurance when the non-Federal entity is named as beneficiary are unallowable.

(3) Actual claims paid to or on behalf of employees or former employees for

workers' compensation, unemployment compensation, severance pay, and similar employee benefits (e.g., post-retirement health benefits), are allowable in the year of payment provided that the non-Federal entity follows a consistent costing policy and they are allocated as indirect costs.

(f) Automobiles. That portion of automobile costs furnished by the entity that relates to personal use by employees (including transportation to and from work) is unallowable as fringe benefit or indirect (F&A) costs regardless of whether the cost is reported as taxable income to the employees.

(g) Pension Plan Costs. Pension plan costs which are incurred in accordance with the established policies of the non-Federal entity are allowable, provided that:

(1) Such policies meet the test of reasonableness.

(2) The methods of cost allocation are not discriminatory.

(3) For entities using accrual based accounting, the cost assigned to each fiscal year is determined in accordance with GAAP.

(4) The costs assigned to a given fiscal year are funded for all plan participants within six months after the end of that year. However, increases to normal and past service pension costs caused by a delay in funding the actuarial liability beyond 30 calendar days after each quarter of the year to which such costs are assignable are unallowable. Non-Federal entity may elect to follow the ''Cost Accounting Standard for Composition and Measurement of Pension Costs'' (48 CFR 9904.412).

(5) Pension plan termination insurance premiums paid pursuant to the Employee Retirement Income Security Act (ERISA) of 1974 (29 U.S.C. 1301–1461) are allowable. Late payment charges on such premiums are unallowable. Excise taxes on accumulated funding deficiencies and other penalties imposed under ERISA are unallowable.

(6) Pension plan costs may be computed using a pay-as-you-go method or an acceptable actuarial cost method in accordance with established written policies of the non-Federal entity.

(i) For pension plans financed on a pay-as-you-go method, allowable costs will be limited to those representing actual payments to retirees or their beneficiaries.

(ii) Pension costs calculated using an actuarial cost-based method recognized by GAAP are allowable for a given fiscal year if they are funded for that year within six months after the end of that year. Costs funded after the six month period (or a later period agreed to by the cognizant agency for indirect costs) are allowable in the year funded. The cognizant agency for indirect costs may agree to an extension of the six month period if an appropriate adjustment is made to compensate for the timing of the charges to the Federal government and related Federal reimbursement and the non-Federal entity's contribution to the pension fund. Adjustments may be made by cash refund or other equitable procedures to compensate the Federal government for the time value of Federal reimbursements in excess of contributions to the pension fund.

(iii) Amounts funded by the non-Federal entity in excess of the actuarially determined amount for a fiscal year may be used as the non-Federal entity's contribution in future periods.

(iv) When a non-Federal entity converts to an acceptable actuarial cost method, as defined by GAAP, and funds pension costs in accordance with this method, the unfunded liability at the time of conversion is allowable if amortized over a period of years in accordance with GAAP.

(v) The Federal government must receive an equitable share of any previously allowed pension costs (including earnings thereon) which revert or inure to the non-Federal entity in the form of a refund, withdrawal, or other credit.

(h) Post-Retirement Health. Post-retirement health plans (PRHP) refers to costs of health insurance or health services not included in a pension plan covered by paragraph (g) of this section for retirees and their spouses, dependents, and survivors. PRHP costs may be computed using a pay-as-you-go method or an acceptable actuarial cost method in accordance with established written policies of the non-Federal entity.

(1) For PRHP financed on a pay-as-you-go method, allowable costs will be limited to those representing actual payments to retirees or their beneficiaries.

(2) PRHP costs calculated using an actuarial cost method recognized by GAAP are allowable if they are funded for that year within six months after the end of that year. Costs funded after the six month period (or a later period agreed to by the cognizant agency) are allowable in the year funded. The Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs may agree to an extension of the six month period if an appropriate adjustment is made to compensate for the timing of the charges to the Federal government and related Federal reimbursements and the non-Federal entity's contributions to the PRHP fund. Adjustments may be made by cash refund, reduction in current year's PRHP costs, or other equitable procedures to compensate the Federal government for the time value of Federal reimbursements in excess of contributions to the PRHP fund.

(3) Amounts funded in excess of the actuarially determined amount for a fiscal year may be used as the Federal government's contribution in a future period.

(4) When a non-Federal entity converts to an acceptable actuarial cost method and funds PRHP costs in accordance with this method, the initial unfunded liability attributable to prior years is allowable if amortized over a period of years in accordance with GAAP, or, if no such GAAP period exists, over a period negotiated with the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

(5) To be allowable in the current year, the PRHP costs must be paid either to:

(i) An insurer or other benefit provider as current year costs or premiums, or

(ii) An insurer or trustee to maintain a trust fund or reserve for the sole purpose of providing post-retirement benefits to retirees and other beneficiaries.

(6) The Federal government must receive an equitable share of any amounts of previously allowed post-retirement benefit costs (including earnings thereon) which revert or inure to the entity in the form of a refund, withdrawal, or other credit.

(i) Severance Pay.

(1) Severance pay, also commonly referred to as dismissal wages, is a payment in addition to regular salaries and wages, by non-Federal entities to workers whose employment is being terminated. Costs of severance pay are allowable only to the extent that in each case, it is required by (a) law, (b) employer-employee agreement, (c) established policy that constitutes, in effect, an implied agreement on the non-Federal entity's part, or (d) circumstances of the particular employment.

(2) Costs of severance payments are divided into two categories as follows:

(i) Actual normal turnover severance payments must be allocated to all activities; or, where the non-Federal entity provides for a reserve for normal severances, such method will be acceptable if the charge to current operations is reasonable in light of payments actually made for normal severances over a representative past period, and if amounts charged are

allocated to all activities of the non-Federal entity.

(ii) Measurement of costs of abnormal or mass severance pay by means of an accrual will not achieve equity to both parties. Thus, accruals for this purpose are not allowable. However, the Federal government recognizes its obligation to participate, to the extent of its fair share, in any specific payment. Prior approval by the Federal awarding agency or cognizant agency for indirect cost, as appropriate, is required.

(3) Costs incurred in certain severance pay packages which are in an amount in excess of the normal severance pay paid by the non-Federal entity to an employee upon termination of employment and are paid to the employee contingent upon a change in management control over, or ownership of, the non-Federal entity's assets, are unallowable.

(4) Severance payments to foreign nationals employed by the non-Federal entity outside the United States, to the extent that the amount exceeds the customary or prevailing practices for the non-Federal entity in the United States, are unallowable, unless they are necessary for the performance of Federal programs and approved by the Federal awarding agency.

(5) Severance payments to foreign nationals employed by the non-Federal entity outside the United States due to the termination of the foreign national as a result of the closing of, or curtailment of activities by, the non-Federal entity in that country, are unallowable, unless they are necessary for the performance of Federal programs and approved by the Federal awarding agency.

(j)(1) For IHEs only. Fringe benefits in the form of tuition or remission of tuition for individual employees are allowable, provided such benefits are granted in accordance with established non-Federal entity policies, and are distributed to all non-Federal entity activities on an equitable basis. Tuition benefits for family members other than the employee are unallowable.

(2) Fringe benefits in the form of tuition or remission of tuition for individual employees not employed by IHEs are limited to the tax-free amount allowed per section 127 of the Internal Revenue Code as amended.

(3) IHEs may offer employees tuition waivers or tuition reductions for undergraduate education under IRC Section 117(d) as amended, provided that the benefit does not discriminate in favor of highly compensated employees. Federal reimbursement of tuition or remission of tuition is also limited to the institution for which the employee works. See § 200.466 Scholarships and student aid costs, for treatment of tuition remission provided to students.

(k) For IHEs whose costs are paid by state or local governments, fringe benefit programs (such as pension costs and FICA) and any other benefits costs specifically incurred on behalf of, and in direct benefit to, the non-Federal entity, are allowable costs of such non-Federal entities whether or not these costs are recorded in the accounting records of the non-Federal entities, subject to the following:

(1) The costs meet the requirements of Basic Considerations in §§ 200.402 Composition of costs through 200.411 Adjustment of previously negotiated indirect (F&A) cost rates containing unallowable costs of this subpart;

(2) The costs are properly supported by approved cost allocation plans in accordance with applicable Federal cost accounting principles; and

(3) The costs are not otherwise borne directly or indirectly by the Federal government.

§ 200.432 Conferences.

A conference is defined as a meeting, retreat, seminar, symposium, workshop or event whose primary purpose is the dissemination of technical information beyond the non-Federal entity and is necessary and reasonable for successful performance under the Federal award. Allowable conference costs paid by the non-Federal entity as a sponsor or host of the conference may include rental of facilities, speakers' fees, costs of meals and refreshments, local transportation, and other items incidental to such conferences unless further restricted by the terms and conditions of the Federal award. As needed, the costs of identifying, but not providing, locally available dependent-care resources are allowable. Conference hosts/sponsors must exercise discretion and judgment in ensuring that conference costs are appropriate, necessary and managed in a manner that minimizes costs to the Federal award. The Federal awarding agency may authorize exceptions where appropriate for programs including Indian tribes, children, and the elderly. See also §§ 200.438 Entertainment costs, 200.456 Participant support costs, 200.474 Travel costs, and 200.475 Trustees.

§ 200.433 Contingency provisions.

(a) Contingency is that part of a budget estimate of future costs (typically of large construction projects, IT systems, or other items as approved by the Federal awarding agency) which is associated with possible events or conditions arising from causes the precise outcome of which is indeterminable at the time of estimate, and that experience shows will likely result, in aggregate, in additional costs for the approved activity or project. Amounts for major project scope changes, unforeseen risks, or extraordinary events may not be included.

(b) It is permissible for contingency amounts other than those excluded in paragraph (b)(1) of this section to be explicitly included in budget estimates, to the extent they are necessary to improve the precision of those estimates. Amounts must be estimated using broadly-accepted cost estimating methodologies, specified in the budget documentation of the Federal award, and accepted by the Federal awarding agency. As such, contingency amounts are to be included in the Federal award. In order for actual costs incurred to be allowable, they must comply with the cost principles and other requirements in this Part (see also §§ 200.300 Statutory and national policy requirements through 200.309 Period of performance of Subpart D of this Part and 200.403 Factors affecting allowability of costs); be necessary and reasonable for proper and efficient accomplishment of project or program objectives, and be verifiable from the non-Federal entity's records.

(c) Payments made by the Federal awarding agency to the non-Federal entity's ''contingency reserve'' or any similar payment made for events the occurrence of which cannot be foretold with certainty as to the time or intensity, or with an assurance of their happening, are unallowable, except as noted in §§ 200.431 Compensation—fringe benefits regarding self-insurance, pensions, severance and post-retirement health costs and 200.447 Insurance and indemnification.

§ 200.434 Contributions and donations.

(a) Costs of contributions and donations, including cash, property, and services, from the non-Federal entity to other entities, are unallowable.

(b) The value of services and property donated to the non-Federal entity may not be charged to the Federal award either as a direct or indirect (F&A) cost. The value of donated services and property may be used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements (see § 200.306 Cost sharing or matching). Depreciation on donated assets is permitted in accordance with § 200.436 Depreciation, as long as the donated property is not counted towards cost sharing or matching requirements.

(c) Services donated or volunteered to the non-Federal entity may be furnished

to a non-Federal entity by professional and technical personnel, consultants, and other skilled and unskilled labor. The value of these services is not allowable either as a direct or indirect cost. However, the value of donated services may be used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements in accordance with the provisions of § 200.306 Cost sharing or matching.

(d) To the extent feasible, services donated to the non-Federal entity will be supported by the same methods used to support the allocability of regular personnel services.

(e) The following provisions apply to nonprofit organizations. The value of services donated to the nonprofit organization utilized in the performance of a direct cost activity must be considered in the determination of the non-Federal entity's indirect cost rate(s) and, accordingly, must be allocated a proportionate share of applicable indirect costs when the following circumstances exist:

(1) The aggregate value of the services is material;

(2) The services are supported by a significant amount of the indirect costs incurred by the non-Federal entity;

(i) In those instances where there is no basis for determining the fair market value of the services rendered, the non-Federal entity and the cognizant agency for indirect costs must negotiate an appropriate allocation of indirect cost to the services.

(ii) Where donated services directly benefit a project supported by the Federal award, the indirect costs allocated to the services will be considered as a part of the total costs of the project. Such indirect costs may be reimbursed under the Federal award or used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements.

(f) Fair market value of donated services must be computed as described in § 200.306 Cost sharing or matching.

(g) Personal Property and Use of Space.

(1) Donated personal property and use of space may be furnished to a non-Federal entity. The value of the personal property and space is not reimbursable either as a direct or indirect cost.

(2) The value of the donations may be used to meet cost sharing or matching share requirements under the conditions described in §§ 200.300 Statutory and national policy requirements through 200.309 Period of performance of Subpart D of this Part. The value of the donations must be determined in accordance with §§ 200.300 Statutory and national policy requirements through 200.309 Period of performance. Where donations are treated as indirect costs, indirect cost rates will separate the value of the donations so that reimbursement will not be made.

§ 200.435 Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, claims, appeals and patent infringements.

(a) Definitions for the purposes of this section.

(1) *Conviction* means a judgment or conviction of a criminal offense by any court of competent jurisdiction, whether entered upon verdict or a plea, including a conviction due to a plea of nolo contendere.

(2) *Costs* include the services of in-house or private counsel, accountants, consultants, or others engaged to assist the non-Federal entity before, during, and after commencement of a judicial or administrative proceeding, that bear a direct relationship to the proceeding.

(3) *Fraud* means:

(i) Acts of fraud or corruption or attempts to defraud the Federal government or to corrupt its agents,

(ii) Acts that constitute a cause for debarment or suspension (as specified in agency regulations), and

(iii) Acts which violate the False Claims Act (31 U.S.C. 3729–3732) or the Anti-kickback Act (41 U.S.C. 1320a–7b(b)).

(4) *Penalty* does not include restitution, reimbursement, or compensatory damages.

(5) *Proceeding* includes an investigation.

(b) Costs.

(1) Except as otherwise described herein, costs incurred in connection with any criminal, civil or administrative proceeding (including filing of a false certification) commenced by the Federal government, a state, local government, or foreign government, or joined by the Federal government (including a proceeding under the False Claims Act), against the non-Federal entity, (or commenced by third parties or a current or former employee of the non-Federal entity who submits a whistleblower complaint of reprisal in accordance with 10 U.S.C. 2409 or 41 U.S.C. 4712), are not allowable if the proceeding:

(i) Relates to a violation of, or failure to comply with, a Federal, state, local or foreign statute, regulation or the terms and conditions of the Federal award, by the non-Federal entity (including its agents and employees); and

(ii) Results in any of the following dispositions:

(A) In a criminal proceeding, a conviction.

(B) In a civil or administrative proceeding involving an allegation of fraud or similar misconduct, a determination of non-Federal entity liability.

(C) In the case of any civil or administrative proceeding, the disallowance of costs or the imposition of a monetary penalty, or an order issued by the Federal awarding agency head or delegate to the non-Federal entity to take corrective action under 10 U.S.C. 2409 or 41 U.S.C. 4712.

(D) A final decision by an appropriate Federal official to debar or suspend the non-Federal entity, to rescind or void a Federal award, or to terminate a Federal award for default by reason of a violation or failure to comply with a statute, regulation, or the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(E) A disposition by consent or compromise, if the action could have resulted in any of the dispositions described in paragraphs (b)(1)(ii)(A) through (D) of this section.

(2) If more than one proceeding involves the same alleged misconduct, the costs of all such proceedings are unallowable if any results in one of the dispositions shown in paragraph (b) of this section.

(c) If a proceeding referred to in paragraph (b) of this section is commenced by the Federal government and is resolved by consent or compromise pursuant to an agreement by the non-Federal entity and the Federal government, then the costs incurred may be allowed to the extent specifically provided in such agreement.

(d) If a proceeding referred to in paragraph (b) of this section is commenced by a state, local or foreign government, the authorized Federal official may allow the costs incurred if such authorized official determines that the costs were incurred as a result of:

(1) A specific term or condition of the Federal award, or

(2) Specific written direction of an authorized official of the Federal awarding agency.

(e) Costs incurred in connection with proceedings described in paragraph (b) of this section, which are not made unallowable by that subsection, may be allowed but only to the extent that:

(1) The costs are reasonable and necessary in relation to the administration of the Federal award and activities required to deal with the proceeding and the underlying cause of action;

(2) Payment of the reasonable, necessary, allocable and otherwise allowable costs incurred is not prohibited by any other provision(s) of the Federal award;

(3) The costs are not recovered from the Federal Government or a third party,

either directly as a result of the proceeding or otherwise; and,

(4) An authorized Federal official must determine the percentage of costs allowed considering the complexity of litigation, generally accepted principles governing the award of legal fees in civil actions involving the United States, and such other factors as may be appropriate. Such percentage must not exceed 80 percent. However, if an agreement reached under paragraph (c) of this section has explicitly considered this 80 percent limitation and permitted a higher percentage, then the full amount of costs resulting from that agreement are allowable.

(f) Costs incurred by the non-Federal entity in connection with the defense of suits brought by its employees or ex-employees under section 2 of the Major Fraud Act of 1988 (18 U.S.C. 1031), including the cost of all relief necessary to make such employee whole, where the non-Federal entity was found liable or settled, are unallowable.

(g) Costs of prosecution of claims against the Federal government, including appeals of final Federal agency decisions, are unallowable.

(h) Costs of legal, accounting, and consultant services, and related costs, incurred in connection with patent infringement litigation, are unallowable unless otherwise provided for in the Federal award.

(i) Costs which may be unallowable under this section, including directly associated costs, must be segregated and accounted for separately. During the pendency of any proceeding covered by paragraphs (b) and (f) of this section, the Federal government must generally withhold payment of such costs. However, if in its best interests, the Federal government may provide for conditional payment upon provision of adequate security, or other adequate assurance, and agreement to repay all unallowable costs, plus interest, if the costs are subsequently determined to be unallowable.

§ 200.436 Depreciation.

(a) Depreciation is the method for allocating the cost of fixed assets to periods benefitting from asset use. The non-Federal entity may be compensated for the use of its buildings, capital improvements, equipment, and software projects capitalized in accordance with GAAP, provided that they are used, needed in the non-Federal entity's activities, and properly allocated to Federal awards. Such compensation must be made by computing depreciation.

(b) The allocation for depreciation must be made in accordance with Appendices IV through VIII.

(c) Depreciation is computed applying the following rules. The computation of depreciation must be based on the acquisition cost of the assets involved. For an asset donated to the non-Federal entity by a third party, its fair market value at the time of the donation must be considered as the acquisition cost. Such assets may be depreciated or claimed as matching but not both. For this purpose, the acquisition cost will exclude:

(1) The cost of land;

(2) Any portion of the cost of buildings and equipment borne by or donated by the Federal government, irrespective of where title was originally vested or where it is presently located;

(3) Any portion of the cost of buildings and equipment contributed by or for the non-Federal entity, or where law or agreement prohibits recovery; and

(4) Any asset acquired solely for the performance of a non-Federal award.

(d) When computing depreciation charges, the following must be observed:

(1) The period of useful service or useful life established in each case for usable capital assets must take into consideration such factors as type of construction, nature of the equipment, technological developments in the particular area, historical data, and the renewal and replacement policies followed for the individual items or classes of assets involved.

(2) The depreciation method used to charge the cost of an asset (or group of assets) to accounting periods must reflect the pattern of consumption of the asset during its useful life. In the absence of clear evidence indicating that the expected consumption of the asset will be significantly greater in the early portions than in the later portions of its useful life, the straight-line method must be presumed to be the appropriate method. Depreciation methods once used may not be changed unless approved in advance by the cognizant agency. The depreciation methods used to calculate the depreciation amounts for indirect (F&A) rate purposes must be the same methods used by the non-Federal entity for its financial statements.

(3) The entire building, including the shell and all components, may be treated as a single asset and depreciated over a single useful life. A building may also be divided into multiple components. Each component item may then be depreciated over its estimated useful life. The building components must be grouped into three general components of a building: building shell (including construction and design costs), building services systems (e.g., elevators, HVAC, plumbing system and heating and air-conditioning system) and fixed equipment (e.g., sterilizers, casework, fume hoods, cold rooms and glassware/washers). In exceptional cases, a cognizant agency may authorize a non-Federal entity to use more than these three groupings. When a non-Federal entity elects to depreciate its buildings by its components, the same depreciation methods must be used for indirect (F&A) purposes and financial statements purposes, as described in paragraphs (d)(1) and (2) of this section.

(4) No depreciation may be allowed on any assets that have outlived their depreciable lives.

(5) Where the depreciation method is introduced to replace the use allowance method, depreciation must be computed as if the asset had been depreciated over its entire life (i.e., from the date the asset was acquired and ready for use to the date of disposal or withdrawal from service). The total amount of use allowance and depreciation for an asset (including imputed depreciation applicable to periods prior to the conversion from the use allowance method as well as depreciation after the conversion) may not exceed the total acquisition cost of the asset.

(e) Charges for depreciation must be supported by adequate property records, and physical inventories must be taken at least once every two years to ensure that the assets exist and are usable, used, and needed. Statistical sampling techniques may be used in taking these inventories. In addition, adequate depreciation records showing the amount of depreciation taken each period must also be maintained.

§ 200.437 Employee health and welfare costs.

(a) Costs incurred in accordance with the non-Federal entity's documented policies for the improvement of working conditions, employer-employee relations, employee health, and employee performance are allowable.

(b) Such costs will be equitably apportioned to all activities of the non-Federal entity. Income generated from any of these activities will be credited to the cost thereof unless such income has been irrevocably sent to employee welfare organizations.

(c) Losses resulting from operating food services are allowable only if the non-Federal entity's objective is to operate such services on a break-even basis. Losses sustained because of operating objectives other than the above are allowable only:

(1) Where the non-Federal entity can demonstrate unusual circumstances; and

(2) With the approval of the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

§ 200.438 Entertainment costs.

Costs of entertainment, including amusement, diversion, and social activities and any associated costs are unallowable, except where specific costs that might otherwise be considered entertainment have a programmatic purpose and are authorized either in the approved budget for the Federal award or with prior written approval of the Federal awarding agency.

§ 200.439 Equipment and other capital expenditures.

(a) See §§ 200.13 Capital expenditures, 200.33 Equipment, 200.89 Special purpose equipment, 200.48 General purpose equipment, 200.2 Acquisition cost, and 200.12 Capital assets.

(b) The following rules of allowability must apply to equipment and other capital expenditures:

(1) Capital expenditures for general purpose equipment, buildings, and land are unallowable as direct charges, except with the prior written approval of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

(2) Capital expenditures for special purpose equipment are allowable as direct costs, provided that items with a unit cost of $5,000 or more have the prior written approval of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

(3) Capital expenditures for improvements to land, buildings, or equipment which materially increase their value or useful life are unallowable as a direct cost except with the prior written approval of the Federal awarding agency, or pass-through entity. See § 200.436 Depreciation, for rules on the allowability of depreciation on buildings, capital improvements, and equipment. See also § 200.465 Rental costs of real property and equipment.

(4) When approved as a direct charge pursuant to paragraphs (b)(1) through (3) of this section, capital expenditures will be charged in the period in which the expenditure is incurred, or as otherwise determined appropriate and negotiated with the Federal awarding agency.

(5) The unamortized portion of any equipment written off as a result of a change in capitalization levels may be recovered by continuing to claim the otherwise allowable depreciation on the equipment, or by amortizing the amount to be written off over a period of years negotiated with the Federal cognizant agency for indirect cost.

(6) Cost of equipment disposal. If the non-Federal entity is instructed by the Federal awarding agency to otherwise dispose of or transfer the equipment the costs of such disposal or transfer are allowable.

§ 200.440 Exchange rates.

(a) Cost increases for fluctuations in exchange rates are allowable costs subject to the availability of funding, and prior approval by the Federal awarding agency. The Federal awarding agency must however ensure that adequate funds are available to cover currency fluctuations in order to avoid a violation of the Anti-Deficiency Act.

(b) The non-Federal entity is required to make reviews of local currency gains to determine the need for additional federal funding before the expiration date of the Federal award. Subsequent adjustments for currency increases may be allowable only when the non-Federal entity provides the Federal awarding agency with adequate source documentation from a commonly used source in effect at the time the expense was made, and to the extent that sufficient Federal funds are available.

§ 200.441 Fines, penalties, damages and other settlements.

Costs resulting from non-Federal entity violations of, alleged violations of, or failure to comply with, Federal, state, tribal, local or foreign laws and regulations are unallowable, except when incurred as a result of compliance with specific provisions of the Federal award, or with prior written approval of the Federal awarding agency. See also § 200.435 Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, claims, appeals and patent infringements.

§ 200.442 Fund raising and investment management costs.

(a) Costs of organized fund raising, including financial campaigns, endowment drives, solicitation of gifts and bequests, and similar expenses incurred to raise capital or obtain contributions are unallowable. Fund raising costs for the purposes of meeting the Federal program objectives are allowable with prior written approval from the Federal awarding agency. Proposal costs are covered in § 200.460 Proposal costs.

(b) Costs of investment counsel and staff and similar expenses incurred to enhance income from investments are unallowable except when associated with investments covering pension, self-insurance, or other funds which include Federal participation allowed by this Part.

(c) Costs related to the physical custody and control of monies and securities are allowable.

(d) Both allowable and unallowable fund raising and investment activities must be allocated as an appropriate share of indirect costs under the conditions described in § 200.413 Direct costs.

§ 200.443 Gains and losses on disposition of depreciable assets.

(a) Gains and losses on the sale, retirement, or other disposition of depreciable property must be included in the year in which they occur as credits or charges to the asset cost grouping(s) in which the property was included. The amount of the gain or loss to be included as a credit or charge to the appropriate asset cost grouping(s) is the difference between the amount realized on the property and the undepreciated basis of the property.

(b) Gains and losses from the disposition of depreciable property must not be recognized as a separate credit or charge under the following conditions:

(1) The gain or loss is processed through a depreciation account and is reflected in the depreciation allowable under §§ 200.436 Depreciation and 200.439 Equipment and other capital expenditures.

(2) The property is given in exchange as part of the purchase price of a similar item and the gain or loss is taken into account in determining the depreciation cost basis of the new item.

(3) A loss results from the failure to maintain permissible insurance, except as otherwise provided in § 46*200.447 Insurance and indemnification.

(4) Compensation for the use of the property was provided through use allowances in lieu of depreciation.

(5) Gains and losses arising from mass or extraordinary sales, retirements, or other dispositions must be considered on a case-by-case basis.

(c) Gains or losses of any nature arising from the sale or exchange of property other than the property covered in paragraph (a) of this section, e.g., land, must be excluded in computing Federal award costs.

(d) When assets acquired with Federal funds, in part or wholly, are disposed of, the distribution of the proceeds must be made in accordance with §§ 200.310 Insurance Coverage through 200.316 Property trust relationship.

§ 200.444 General costs of government.

(a) For states, local governments, and Indian Tribes, the general costs of government are unallowable (except as provided in § 200.474 Travel costs). Unallowable costs include:

(1) Salaries and expenses of the Office of the Governor of a state or the chief executive of a local government or the chief executive of an Indian tribe;

(2) Salaries and other expenses of a state legislature, tribal council, or similar local governmental body, such as a county supervisor, city council, school board, etc., whether incurred for purposes of legislation or executive direction;

(3) Costs of the judicial branch of a government;

(4) Costs of prosecutorial activities unless treated as a direct cost to a specific program if authorized by statute or regulation (however, this does not preclude the allowability of other legal activities of the Attorney General as described in § 200.435 Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, claims, appeals and patent infringements); and

(5) Costs of other general types of government services normally provided to the general public, such as fire and police, unless provided for as a direct cost under a program statute or regulation.

(b) For Indian tribes and Councils Of Governments (COGs) (see § 200.64 Local government), the portion of salaries and expenses directly attributable to managing and operating Federal programs by the chief executive and his or her staff is allowable. Up to 50% of these costs can be included in the indirect cost calculation without documentation.

§ 200.445 Goods or services for personal use.

(a) Costs of goods or services for personal use of the non-Federal entity's employees are unallowable regardless of whether the cost is reported as taxable income to the employees.

(b) Costs of housing (e.g., depreciation, maintenance, utilities, furnishings, rent), housing allowances and personal living expenses are only allowable as direct costs regardless of whether reported as taxable income to the employees. In addition, to be allowable direct costs must be approved in advance by a Federal awarding agency.

§ 200.446 Idle facilities and idle capacity.

(a) As used in this section the following terms have the meanings set forth in this section:

(1) Facilities means land and buildings or any portion thereof, equipment individually or collectively, or any other tangible capital asset, wherever located, and whether owned or leased by the non-Federal entity.

(2) Idle facilities means completely unused facilities that are excess to the non-Federal entity's current needs.

(3) Idle capacity means the unused capacity of partially used facilities. It is the difference between:

(i) That which a facility could achieve under 100 percent operating time on a one-shift basis less operating interruptions resulting from time lost for repairs, setups, unsatisfactory materials, and other normal delays and;

(ii) The extent to which the facility was actually used to meet demands during the accounting period. A multi-shift basis should be used if it can be shown that this amount of usage would normally be expected for the type of facility involved.

(4) Cost of idle facilities or idle capacity means costs such as maintenance, repair, housing, rent, and other related costs, e.g., insurance, interest, and depreciation. These costs could include the costs of idle public safety emergency facilities, telecommunications, or information technology system capacity that is built to withstand major fluctuations in load, e.g., consolidated data centers.

(b) The costs of idle facilities are unallowable except to the extent that:

(1) They are necessary to meet workload requirements which may fluctuate and are allocated appropriately to all benefiting programs; or

(2) Although not necessary to meet fluctuations in workload, they were necessary when acquired and are now idle because of changes in program requirements, efforts to achieve more economical operations, reorganization, termination, or other causes which could not have been reasonably foreseen. Under the exception stated in this subsection, costs of idle facilities are allowable for a reasonable period of time, ordinarily not to exceed one year, depending on the initiative taken to use, lease, or dispose of such facilities.

(c) The costs of idle capacity are normal costs of doing business and are a factor in the normal fluctuations of usage or indirect cost rates from period to period. Such costs are allowable, provided that the capacity is reasonably anticipated to be necessary to carry out the purpose of the Federal award or was originally reasonable and is not subject to reduction or elimination by use on other Federal awards, subletting, renting, or sale, in accordance with sound business, economic, or security practices. Widespread idle capacity throughout an entire facility or among a group of assets having substantially the same function may be considered idle facilities.

§ 200.447 Insurance and indemnification.

(a) Costs of insurance required or approved and maintained, pursuant to the Federal award, are allowable.

(b) Costs of other insurance in connection with the general conduct of activities are allowable subject to the following limitations:

(1) Types and extent and cost of coverage are in accordance with the non-Federal entity's policy and sound business practice.

(2) Costs of insurance or of contributions to any reserve covering the risk of loss of, or damage to, Federal government property are unallowable except to the extent that the Federal awarding agency has specifically required or approved such costs.

(3) Costs allowed for business interruption or other similar insurance must exclude coverage of management fees.

(4) Costs of insurance on the lives of trustees, officers, or other employees holding positions of similar responsibilities are allowable only to the extent that the insurance represents additional compensation (see § 200.431 Compensation—fringe benefits). The cost of such insurance when the non-Federal entity is identified as the beneficiary is unallowable.

(5) Insurance against defects. Costs of insurance with respect to any costs incurred to correct defects in the non-Federal entity's materials or workmanship are unallowable.

(6) Medical liability (malpractice) insurance. Medical liability insurance is an allowable cost of Federal research programs only to the extent that the Federal research programs involve human subjects or training of participants in research techniques. Medical liability insurance costs must be treated as a direct cost and must be assigned to individual projects based on the manner in which the insurer allocates the risk to the population covered by the insurance.

(c) Actual losses which could have been covered by permissible insurance (through a self-insurance program or otherwise) are unallowable, unless expressly provided for in the Federal award. However, costs incurred because of losses not covered under nominal deductible insurance coverage provided in keeping with sound management practice, and minor losses not covered by insurance, such as spoilage, breakage, and disappearance of small hand tools, which occur in the ordinary course of operations, are allowable.

(d) Contributions to a reserve for certain self-insurance programs including workers' compensation, unemployment compensation, and

severance pay are allowable subject to the following provisions:

(1) The type of coverage and the extent of coverage and the rates and premiums would have been allowed had insurance (including reinsurance) been purchased to cover the risks. However, provision for known or reasonably estimated self-insured liabilities, which do not become payable for more than one year after the provision is made, must not exceed the discounted present value of the liability. The rate used for discounting the liability must be determined by giving consideration to such factors as the non-Federal entity's settlement rate for those liabilities and its investment rate of return.

(2) Earnings or investment income on reserves must be credited to those reserves.

(3)(i) Contributions to reserves must be based on sound actuarial principles using historical experience and reasonable assumptions. Reserve levels must be analyzed and updated at least biennially for each major risk being insured and take into account any reinsurance, coinsurance, etc. Reserve levels related to employee-related coverages will normally be limited to the value of claims:

(A) Submitted and adjudicated but not paid;

(B) Submitted but not adjudicated; and

(C) Incurred but not submitted.

(ii) Reserve levels in excess of the amounts based on the above must be identified and justified in the cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate proposal.

(4) Accounting records, actuarial studies, and cost allocations (or billings) must recognize any significant differences due to types of insured risk and losses generated by the various insured activities or agencies of the non-Federal entity. If individual departments or agencies of the non-Federal entity experience significantly different levels of claims for a particular risk, those differences are to be recognized by the use of separate allocations or other techniques resulting in an equitable allocation.

(5) Whenever funds are transferred from a self-insurance reserve to other accounts (e.g., general fund or unrestricted account), refunds must be made to the Federal government for its share of funds transferred, including earned or imputed interest from the date of transfer and debt interest, if applicable, chargeable in accordance with applicable Federal cognizant agency for indirect cost, claims collection regulations.

(e) Insurance refunds must be credited against insurance costs in the year the refund is received.

(f) Indemnification includes securing the non-Federal entity against liabilities to third persons and other losses not compensated by insurance or otherwise. The Federal government is obligated to indemnify the non-Federal entity only to the extent expressly provided for in the Federal award, except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section.

§ 200.448 Intellectual property.

(a) Patent costs.

(1) The following costs related to securing patents and copyrights are allowable:

(i) Costs of preparing disclosures, reports, and other documents required by the Federal award, and of searching the art to the extent necessary to make such disclosures;

(ii) Costs of preparing documents and any other patent costs in connection with the filing and prosecution of a United States patent application where title or royalty-free license is required by the Federal government to be conveyed to the Federal government; and

(iii) General counseling services relating to patent and copyright matters, such as advice on patent and copyright laws, regulations, clauses, and employee intellectual property agreements (See also § 200.459 Professional service costs).

(2) The following costs related to securing patents and copyrights are unallowable:

(i) Costs of preparing disclosures, reports, and other documents, and of searching the art to make disclosures not required by the Federal award;

(ii) Costs in connection with filing and prosecuting any foreign patent application, or any United States patent application, where the Federal award does not require conveying title or a royalty-free license to the Federal government.

(b) Royalties and other costs for use of patents and copyrights.

(1) Royalties on a patent or copyright or amortization of the cost of acquiring by purchase a copyright, patent, or rights thereto, necessary for the proper performance of the Federal award are allowable unless:

(i) The Federal government already has a license or the right to free use of the patent or copyright.

(ii) The patent or copyright has been adjudicated to be invalid, or has been administratively determined to be invalid.

(iii) The patent or copyright is considered to be unenforceable.

(iv) The patent or copyright is expired.

(2) Special care should be exercised in determining reasonableness where the royalties may have been arrived at as a result of less-than-arm's-length bargaining, such as:

(i) Royalties paid to persons, including corporations, affiliated with the non-Federal entity.

(ii) Royalties paid to unaffiliated parties, including corporations, under an agreement entered into in contemplation that a Federal award would be made.

(iii) Royalties paid under an agreement entered into after a Federal award is made to a non-Federal entity.

(3) In any case involving a patent or copyright formerly owned by the non-Federal entity, the amount of royalty allowed should not exceed the cost which would have been allowed had the non-Federal entity retained title thereto.

§ 200.449 Interest.

(a) General. Costs incurred for interest on borrowed capital, temporary use of endowment funds, or the use of the non-Federal entity's own funds, however represented, are unallowable. Financing costs (including interest) to acquire, construct, or replace capital assets are allowable, subject to the conditions in this section.

(b)(1) Capital assets is defined as noted in § 200.12 Capital assets. An asset cost includes (as applicable) acquisition costs, construction costs, and other costs capitalized in accordance with GAAP.

(2) For non-Federal entity fiscal years beginning on or after January 1, 2016, intangible assets include patents and computer software. For software development projects, only interest attributable to the portion of the project costs capitalized in accordance with GAAP is allowable.

(c) Conditions for all non-Federal entities.

(1) The non-Federal entity uses the capital assets in support of Federal awards;

(2) The allowable asset costs to acquire facilities and equipment are limited to a fair market value available to the non-Federal entity from an unrelated (arm's length) third party.

(3) The non-Federal entity obtains the financing via an arm's-length transaction (that is, a transaction with an unrelated third party); or claims reimbursement of actual interest cost at a rate available via such a transaction.

(4) The non-Federal entity limits claims for Federal reimbursement of interest costs to the least expensive alternative. For example, a capital lease

may be determined less costly than purchasing through debt financing, in which case reimbursement must be limited to the amount of interest determined if leasing had been used.

(5) The non-Federal entity expenses or capitalizes allowable interest cost in accordance with GAAP.

(6) Earnings generated by the investment of borrowed funds pending their disbursement for the asset costs are used to offset the current period's allowable interest cost, whether that cost is expensed or capitalized. Earnings subject to being reported to the Federal Internal Revenue Service under arbitrage requirements are excludable.

(7) The following conditions must apply to debt arrangements over $1 million to purchase or construct facilities, unless the non-Federal entity makes an initial equity contribution to the purchase of 25 percent or more. For this purpose, ''initial equity contribution'' means the amount or value of contributions made by the non-Federal entity for the acquisition of facilities prior to occupancy.

(i) The non-Federal entity must reduce claims for reimbursement of interest cost by an amount equal to imputed interest earnings on excess cash flow attributable to the portion of the facility used for Federal awards.

(ii) The non-Federal entity must impute interest on excess cash flow as follows:

(A) Annually, the non-Federal entity must prepare a cumulative (from the inception of the project) report of monthly cash inflows and outflows, regardless of the funding source. For this purpose, inflows consist of Federal reimbursement for depreciation, amortization of capitalized construction interest, and annual interest cost. Outflows consist of initial equity contributions, debt principal payments (less the pro-rata share attributable to the cost of land), and interest payments.

(B) To compute monthly cash inflows and outflows, the non-Federal entity must divide the annual amounts determined in step (i) by the number of months in the year (usually 12) that the building is in service.

(C) For any month in which cumulative cash inflows exceed cumulative outflows, interest must be calculated on the excess inflows for that month and be treated as a reduction to allowable interest cost. The rate of interest to be used must be the three-month Treasury bill closing rate as of the last business day of that month.

(8) Interest attributable to a fully depreciated asset is unallowable.

(d) Additional conditions for states, local governments and Indian tribes. For costs to be allowable, the non-Federal entity must have incurred the interest costs for buildings after October 1, 1980, or for land and equipment after September 1, 1995.

(1) The requirement to offset interest earned on borrowed funds against current allowable interest cost (paragraph (c)(5), above) also applies to earnings on debt service reserve funds.

(2) The non-Federal entity will negotiate the amount of allowable interest cost related to the acquisition of facilities with asset costs of $1 million or more, as outlined in paragraph (c)(7) of this section. For this purpose, a non-Federal entity must consider only cash inflows and outflows attributable to that portion of the real property used for Federal awards.

(e) Additional conditions for IHEs. For costs to be allowable, the IHE must have incurred the interest costs after September 23, 1982, in connection with acquisitions of capital assets that occurred after that date.

(f) Additional condition for nonprofit organizations. For costs to be allowable, the nonprofit organization incurred the interest costs after September 29, 1995, in connection with acquisitions of capital assets that occurred after that date.

(g) The interest allowability provisions of this section do not apply to a nonprofit organization subject to ''full coverage'' under the Cost Accounting Standards (CAS), as defined at 48 CFR 9903.201–2(a). The non-Federal entity's Federal awards are instead subject to CAS 414 (48 CFR 9904.414), ''Cost of Money as an Element of the Cost of Facilities Capital'', and CAS 417 (48 CFR 9904.417), ''Cost of Money as an Element of the Cost of Capital Assets Under Construction''.

§ 200.450 Lobbying.

(a) The cost of certain influencing activities associated with obtaining grants, contracts, cooperative agreements, or loans is an unallowable cost. Lobbying with respect to certain grants, contracts, cooperative agreements, and loans is governed by relevant statutes, including among others, the provisions of 31 U.S.C. 1352, as well as the common rule, ''New Restrictions on Lobbying'' published at 55 FR 6736 (February 26, 1990), including definitions, and the Office of Management and Budget ''Governmentwide Guidance for New Restrictions on Lobbying'' and notices published at 54 FR 52306 (December 20, 1989), 55 FR 24540 (June 15, 1990), 57 FR 1772 (January 15, 1992), and 61 FR 1412 (January 19, 1996).

(b) Executive lobbying costs. Costs incurred in attempting to improperly influence either directly or indirectly, an employee or officer of the executive branch of the Federal government to give consideration or to act regarding a Federal award or a regulatory matter are unallowable. Improper influence means any influence that induces or tends to induce a Federal employee or officer to give consideration or to act regarding a Federal award or regulatory matter on any basis other than the merits of the matter.

(c) In addition to the above, the following restrictions are applicable to nonprofit organizations and IHEs:

(1) Costs associated with the following activities are unallowable:

(i) Attempts to influence the outcomes of any Federal, state, or local election, referendum, initiative, or similar procedure, through in-kind or cash contributions, endorsements, publicity, or similar activity;

(ii) Establishing, administering, contributing to, or paying the expenses of a political party, campaign, political action committee, or other organization established for the purpose of influencing the outcomes of elections in the United States;

(iii) Any attempt to influence:

(A)The introduction of Federal or state legislation;

(B) The enactment or modification of any pending Federal or state legislation through communication with any member or employee of the Congress or state legislature (including efforts to influence state or local officials to engage in similar lobbying activity);

(C) The enactment or modification of any pending Federal or state legislation by preparing, distributing, or using publicity or propaganda, or by urging members of the general public, or any segment thereof, to contribute to or participate in any mass demonstration, march, rally, fund raising drive, lobbying campaign or letter writing or telephone campaign; or

(D) Any government official or employee in connection with a decision to sign or veto enrolled legislation;

(iv) Legislative liaison activities, including attendance at legislative sessions or committee hearings, gathering information regarding legislation, and analyzing the effect of legislation, when such activities are carried on in support of or in knowing preparation for an effort to engage in unallowable lobbying.

(2) The following activities are excepted from the coverage of paragraph (c)(1) of this section:

(i) Technical and factual presentations on topics directly related to the

performance of a grant, contract, or other agreement (through hearing testimony, statements, or letters to the Congress or a state legislature, or subdivision, member, or cognizant staff member thereof), in response to a documented request (including a Congressional Record notice requesting testimony or statements for the record at a regularly scheduled hearing) made by the non-Federal entity's member of congress, legislative body or a subdivision, or a cognizant staff member thereof, provided such information is readily obtainable and can be readily put in deliverable form, and further provided that costs under this section for travel, lodging or meals are unallowable unless incurred to offer testimony at a regularly scheduled Congressional hearing pursuant to a written request for such presentation made by the Chairman or Ranking Minority Member of the Committee or Subcommittee conducting such hearings;

(ii) Any lobbying made unallowable by paragraph (c)(1)(iii) of this section to influence state legislation in order to directly reduce the cost, or to avoid material impairment of the non-Federal entity's authority to perform the grant, contract, or other agreement; or

(iii) Any activity specifically authorized by statute to be undertaken with funds from the Federal award.

(iv) Any activity excepted from the definitions of ''lobbying'' or ''influencing legislation'' by the Internal Revenue Code provisions that require nonprofit organizations to limit their participation in direct and ''grass roots'' lobbying activities in order to retain their charitable deduction status and avoid punitive excise taxes, I.R.C. §§ 501(c)(3), 501(h), 4911(a), including:

(A) Nonpartisan analysis, study, or research reports;

(B) Examinations and discussions of broad social, economic, and similar problems; and

(C) Information provided upon request by a legislator for technical advice and assistance, as defined by I.R.C. § 4911(d)(2) and 26 CFR 56.4911–2(c)(1)–(c)(3).

(v) When a non-Federal entity seeks reimbursement for indirect (F&A) costs, total lobbying costs must be separately identified in the indirect (F&A) cost rate proposal, and thereafter treated as other unallowable activity costs in accordance with the procedures of § 200.413 Direct costs.

(vi) The non-Federal entity must submit as part of its annual indirect (F&A) cost rate proposal a certification that the requirements and standards of this section have been complied with. (See also § 200.415 Required certifications.)

(vii)(A) Time logs, calendars, or similar records are not required to be created for purposes of complying with the record keeping requirements in § 200.302 Financial management with respect to lobbying costs during any particular calendar month when:

(*1*) The employee engages in lobbying (as defined in paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section) 25 percent or less of the employee's compensated hours of employment during that calendar month; and

(*2*) Within the preceding five-year period, the non-Federal entity has not materially misstated allowable or unallowable costs of any nature, including legislative lobbying costs.

(B) When conditions in paragraph (c)(2)(vii)(A)(*1*) and (*2*) of this section are met, non-Federal entities are not required to establish records to support the allowability of claimed costs in addition to records already required or maintained. Also, when conditions in paragraphs (c)(2)(vii)(A)(*1*) and (*2*) of this section are met, the absence of time logs, calendars, or similar records will not serve as a basis for disallowing costs by contesting estimates of lobbying time spent by employees during a calendar month.

(viii) The Federal awarding agency must establish procedures for resolving in advance, in consultation with OMB, any significant questions or disagreements concerning the interpretation or application of this section. Any such advance resolutions must be binding in any subsequent settlements, audits, or investigations with respect to that grant or contract for purposes of interpretation of this Part, provided, however, that this must not be construed to prevent a contractor or non-Federal entity from contesting the lawfulness of such a determination.

§ 200.451 Losses on other awards or contracts.

Any excess of costs over income under any other award or contract of any nature is unallowable. This includes, but is not limited to, the non-Federal entity's contributed portion by reason of cost-sharing agreements or any under-recoveries through negotiation of flat amounts for indirect (F&A) costs. Also, any excess of costs over authorized funding levels transferred from any award or contract to another award or contract is unallowable. All losses are not allowable indirect (F&A) costs and are required to be included in the appropriate indirect cost rate base for allocation of indirect costs.

§ 200.452 Maintenance and repair costs.

Costs incurred for utilities, insurance, security, necessary maintenance, janitorial services, repair, or upkeep of buildings and equipment (including Federal property unless otherwise provided for) which neither add to the permanent value of the property nor appreciably prolong its intended life, but keep it in an efficient operating condition, are allowable. Costs incurred for improvements which add to the permanent value of the buildings and equipment or appreciably prolong their intended life must be treated as capital expenditures (see § 200.439 Equipment and other capital expenditures). These costs are only allowable to the extent not paid through rental or other agreements.

§ 200.453 Materials and supplies costs, including costs of computing devices.

(a) Costs incurred for materials, supplies, and fabricated parts necessary to carry out a Federal award are allowable.

(b) Purchased materials and supplies must be charged at their actual prices, net of applicable credits. Withdrawals from general stores or stockrooms should be charged at their actual net cost under any recognized method of pricing inventory withdrawals, consistently applied. Incoming transportation charges are a proper part of materials and supplies costs.

(c) Materials and supplies used for the performance of a Federal award may be charged as direct costs. In the specific case of computing devices, charging as direct costs is allowable for devices that are essential and allocable, but not solely dedicated, to the performance of a Federal award.

(d) Where federally-donated or furnished materials are used in performing the Federal award, such materials will be used without charge.

§ 200.454 Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs.

(a) Costs of the non-Federal entity's membership in business, technical, and professional organizations are allowable.

(b) Costs of the non-Federal entity's subscriptions to business, professional, and technical periodicals are allowable.

(c) Costs of membership in any civic or community organization are allowable with prior approval by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

(d) Costs of membership in any country club or social or dining club or organization are unallowable.

(e) Costs of membership in organizations whose primary purpose is

lobbying are unallowable. See also § 200.450 Lobbying.

§ 200.455 Organization costs.

Costs such as incorporation fees, brokers' fees, fees to promoters, organizers or management consultants, attorneys, accountants, or investment counselor, whether or not employees of the non-Federal entity in connection with establishment or reorganization of an organization, are unallowable except with prior approval of the Federal awarding agency.

§ 200.456 Participant support costs.

Participant support costs as defined in § 200.75 Participant support costs are allowable with the prior approval of the Federal awarding agency.

§ 200.457 Plant and security costs.

Necessary and reasonable expenses incurred for routine and security to protect facilities, personnel, and work products are allowable. Such costs include, but are not limited to, wages and uniforms of personnel engaged in security activities; equipment; barriers; protective (non-military) gear, devices, and equipment; contractual security services; and consultants. Capital expenditures for plant security purposes are subject to § 200.439 Equipment and other capital expenditures.

§ 200.458 Pre-award costs.

Pre-award costs are those incurred prior to the effective date of the Federal award directly pursuant to the negotiation and in anticipation of the Federal award where such costs are necessary for efficient and timely performance of the scope of work. Such costs are allowable only to the extent that they would have been allowable if incurred after the date of the Federal award and only with the written approval of the Federal awarding agency.

§ 200.459 Professional service costs.

(a) Costs of professional and consultant services rendered by persons who are members of a particular profession or possess a special skill, and who are not officers or employees of the non-Federal entity, are allowable, subject to paragraphs (b) and (c) when reasonable in relation to the services rendered and when not contingent upon recovery of the costs from the Federal government. In addition, legal and related services are limited under § 200.435 Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, claims, appeals and patent infringements.

(b) In determining the allowability of costs in a particular case, no single factor or any special combination of factors is necessarily determinative. However, the following factors are relevant:

(1) The nature and scope of the service rendered in relation to the service required.

(2) The necessity of contracting for the service, considering the non-Federal entity's capability in the particular area.

(3) The past pattern of such costs, particularly in the years prior to Federal awards.

(4) The impact of Federal awards on the non-Federal entity's business (i.e., what new problems have arisen).

(5) Whether the proportion of Federal work to the non-Federal entity's total business is such as to influence the non-Federal entity in favor of incurring the cost, particularly where the services rendered are not of a continuing nature and have little relationship to work under Federal awards.

(6) Whether the service can be performed more economically by direct employment rather than contracting.

(7) The qualifications of the individual or concern rendering the service and the customary fees charged, especially on non-federally funded activities.

(8) Adequacy of the contractual agreement for the service (e.g., description of the service, estimate of time required, rate of compensation, and termination provisions).

(c) In addition to the factors in paragraph (b) of this section, to be allowable, retainer fees must be supported by evidence of bona fide services available or rendered.

§ 200.460 Proposal costs.

Proposal costs are the costs of preparing bids, proposals, or applications on potential Federal and non-Federal awards or projects, including the development of data necessary to support the non-Federal entity's bids or proposals. Proposal costs of the current accounting period of both successful and unsuccessful bids and proposals normally should be treated as indirect (F&A) costs and allocated currently to all activities of the non-Federal entity. No proposal costs of past accounting periods will be allocable to the current period.

§ 200.461 Publication and printing costs.

(a) Publication costs for electronic and print media, including distribution, promotion, and general handling are allowable. If these costs are not identifiable with a particular cost objective, they should be allocated as indirect costs to all benefiting activities of the non-Federal entity.

(b) Page charges for professional journal publications are allowable where:

(1) The publications report work supported by the Federal government; and

(2) The charges are levied impartially on all items published by the journal, whether or not under a Federal award.

(3) The non-Federal entity may charge the Federal award before closeout for the costs of publication or sharing of research results if the costs are not incurred during the period of performance of the Federal award.

§ 200.462 Rearrangement and reconversion costs.

(a) Costs incurred for ordinary and normal rearrangement and alteration of facilities are allowable as indirect costs. Special arrangements and alterations costs incurred specifically for a Federal award are allowable as a direct cost with the prior approval of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

(b) Costs incurred in the restoration or rehabilitation of the non-Federal entity's facilities to approximately the same condition existing immediately prior to commencement of Federal awards, less costs related to normal wear and tear, are allowable.

§ 200.463 Recruiting costs.

(a) Subject to paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, and provided that the size of the staff recruited and maintained is in keeping with workload requirements, costs of ''help wanted'' advertising, operating costs of an employment office necessary to secure and maintain an adequate staff, costs of operating an aptitude and educational testing program, travel costs of employees while engaged in recruiting personnel, travel costs of applicants for interviews for prospective employment, and relocation costs incurred incident to recruitment of new employees, are allowable to the extent that such costs are incurred pursuant to the non-Federal entity's standard recruitment program. Where the non-Federal entity uses employment agencies, costs not in excess of standard commercial rates for such services are allowable.

(b) Special emoluments, fringe benefits, and salary allowances incurred to attract professional personnel that do not meet the test of reasonableness or do not conform with the established practices of the non-Federal entity, are unallowable.

(c) Where relocation costs incurred incident to recruitment of a new employee have been funded in whole or in part as a direct cost to a Federal award, and the newly hired employee

resigns for reasons within the employee's control within 12 months after hire, the non-Federal entity will be required to refund or credit the Federal share of such relocation costs to the Federal government. See also § 200.464 Relocation costs of employees.

(d) Short-term, travel visa costs (as opposed to longer-term, immigration visas) are generally allowable expenses that may be proposed as a direct cost. Since short-term visas are issued for a specific period and purpose, they can be clearly identified as directly connected to work performed on a Federal award. For these costs to be directly charged to a Federal award, they must:

(1) Be critical and necessary for the conduct of the project;

(2) Be allowable under the applicable cost principles;

(3) Be consistent with the non-Federal entity's cost accounting practices and non-Federal entity policy; and

(4) Meet the definition of ''direct cost'' as described in the applicable cost principles.

§ 200.464 Relocation costs of employees.

(a) Relocation costs are costs incident to the permanent change of duty assignment (for an indefinite period or for a stated period of not less than 12 months) of an existing employee or upon recruitment of a new employee. Relocation costs are allowable, subject to the limitations described in paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section, provided that:

(1) The move is for the benefit of the employer.

(2) Reimbursement to the employee is in accordance with an established written policy consistently followed by the employer.

(3) The reimbursement does not exceed the employee's actual (or reasonably estimated) expenses.

(b) Allowable relocation costs for current employees are limited to the following:

(1) The costs of transportation of the employee, members of his or her immediate family and his household, and personal effects to the new location.

(2) The costs of finding a new home, such as advance trips by employees and spouses to locate living quarters and temporary lodging during the transition period, up to maximum period of 30 calendar days.

(3) Closing costs, such as brokerage, legal, and appraisal fees, incident to the disposition of the employee's former home. These costs, together with those described in (4), are limited to 8 per cent of the sales price of the employee's former home.

(4) The continuing costs of ownership (for up to six months) of the vacant former home after the settlement or lease date of the employee's new permanent home, such as maintenance of buildings and grounds (exclusive of fixing-up expenses), utilities, taxes, and property insurance.

(5) Other necessary and reasonable expenses normally incident to relocation, such as the costs of canceling an unexpired lease, transportation of personal property, and purchasing insurance against loss of or damages to personal property. The cost of canceling an unexpired lease is limited to three times the monthly rental.

(c) Allowable relocation costs for new employees are limited to those described in paragraphs (b)(1) and (2) of this section. When relocation costs incurred incident to the recruitment of new employees have been allowed either as a direct or indirect cost and the employee resigns for reasons within the employee's control within 12 months after hire, the non-Federal entity must refund or credit the Federal government for its share of the cost. However, the costs of travel to an overseas location must be considered travel costs in accordance with § 200.474 Travel costs, and not this § 200.464 Relocation costs of employees, for the purpose of this paragraph if dependents are not permitted at the location for any reason and the costs do not include costs of transporting household goods.

(d) The following costs related to relocation are unallowable:

(1) Fees and other costs associated with acquiring a new home.

(2) A loss on the sale of a former home.

(3) Continuing mortgage principal and interest payments on a home being sold.

(4) Income taxes paid by an employee related to reimbursed relocation costs.

§ 200.465 Rental costs of real property and equipment.

(a) Subject to the limitations described in paragraphs (b) through (d) of this section, rental costs are allowable to the extent that the rates are reasonable in light of such factors as: rental costs of comparable property, if any; market conditions in the area; alternatives available; and the type, life expectancy, condition, and value of the property leased. Rental arrangements should be reviewed periodically to determine if circumstances have changed and other options are available.

(b) Rental costs under ''sale and lease back'' arrangements are allowable only up to the amount that would be allowed had the non-Federal entity continued to own the property. This amount would include expenses such as depreciation, maintenance, taxes, and insurance.

(c) Rental costs under ''less-than-arm's-length'' leases are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in paragraph (b) of this section). For this purpose, a less-than-arm's-length lease is one under which one party to the lease agreement is able to control or substantially influence the actions of the other. Such leases include, but are not limited to those between:

(1) Divisions of the non-Federal entity;

(2) The non-Federal entity under common control through common officers, directors, or members; and

(3) The non-Federal entity and a director, trustee, officer, or key employee of the non-Federal entity or an immediate family member, either directly or through corporations, trusts, or similar arrangements in which they hold a controlling interest. For example, the non-Federal entity may establish a separate corporation for the sole purpose of owning property and leasing it back to the non-Federal entity.

(4) Family members include one party with any of the following relationships to another party:

(i) Spouse, and parents thereof;

(ii) Children, and spouses thereof;

(iii) Parents, and spouses thereof;

(iv) Siblings, and spouses thereof;

(v) Grandparents and grandchildren, and spouses thereof;

(vi) Domestic partner and parents thereof, including domestic partners of any individual in 2 through 5 of this definition; and

(vii) Any individual related by blood or affinity whose close association with the employee is the equivalent of a family relationship.

(5) Rental costs under leases which are required to be treated as capital leases under GAAP are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in paragraph (b) of this section) that would be allowed had the non-Federal entity purchased the property on the date the lease agreement was executed. The provisions of GAAP must be used to determine whether a lease is a capital lease. Interest costs related to capital leases are allowable to the extent they meet the criteria in § 200.449 Interest. Unallowable costs include amounts paid for profit, management fees, and taxes that would not have been incurred had the non-Federal entity purchased the property.

(6) The rental of any property owned by any individuals or entities affiliated with the non-Federal entity, to include commercial or residential real estate, for purposes such as the home office workspace is unallowable.

§ 200.466 Scholarships and student aid costs.

(a) Costs of scholarships, fellowships, and other programs of student aid at IHEs are allowable only when the purpose of the Federal award is to provide training to selected participants and the charge is approved by the Federal awarding agency. However, tuition remission and other forms of compensation paid as, or in lieu of, wages to students performing necessary work are allowable provided that:

(1) The individual is conducting activities necessary to the Federal award;

(2) Tuition remission and other support are provided in accordance with established policy of the IHE and consistently provided in a like manner to students in return for similar activities conducted under Federal awards as well as other activities; and

(3) During the academic period, the student is enrolled in an advanced degree program at a non-Federal entity or affiliated institution and the activities of the student in relation to the Federal award are related to the degree program;

(4) The tuition or other payments are reasonable compensation for the work performed and are conditioned explicitly upon the performance of necessary work; and

(5) It is the IHE's practice to similarly compensate students under Federal awards as well as other activities.

(b) Charges for tuition remission and other forms of compensation paid to students as, or in lieu of, salaries and wages must be subject to the reporting requirements in § 200.430 Compensation—personal services, and must be treated as direct or indirect cost in accordance with the actual work being performed. Tuition remission may be charged on an average rate basis. See also § 200.431 Compensation—fringe benefits.

§ 200.467 Selling and marketing costs.

Costs of selling and marketing any products or services of the non-Federal entity (unless allowed under § 200.421 Advertising and public relations.) are unallowable, except as direct costs, with prior approval by the Federal awarding agency when necessary for the performance of the Federal award.

§ 200.468 Specialized service facilities.

(a) The costs of services provided by highly complex or specialized facilities operated by the non-Federal entity, such as computing facilities, wind tunnels, and reactors are allowable, provided the charges for the services meet the conditions of either paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section, and, in addition, take into account any items of income or Federal financing that qualify as applicable credits under § 200.406 Applicable credits.

(b) The costs of such services, when material, must be charged directly to applicable awards based on actual usage of the services on the basis of a schedule of rates or established methodology that:

(1) Does not discriminate between activities under Federal awards and other activities of the non-Federal entity, including usage by the non-Federal entity for internal purposes, and

(2) Is designed to recover only the aggregate costs of the services. The costs of each service must consist normally of both its direct costs and its allocable share of all indirect (F&A) costs. Rates must be adjusted at least biennially, and must take into consideration over/under applied costs of the previous period(s).

(c) Where the costs incurred for a service are not material, they may be allocated as indirect (F&A) costs.

(d) Under some extraordinary circumstances, where it is in the best interest of the Federal government and the non-Federal entity to establish alternative costing arrangements, such arrangements may be worked out with the Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs.

§ 200.469 Student activity costs.

Costs incurred for intramural activities, student publications, student clubs, and other student activities, are unallowable, unless specifically provided for in the Federal award.

§ 200.470 Taxes (including Value Added Tax).

(a) For states, local governments and Indian tribes:

(1) Taxes that a governmental unit is legally required to pay are allowable, except for self-assessed taxes that disproportionately affect Federal programs or changes in tax policies that disproportionately affect Federal programs.

(2) Gasoline taxes, motor vehicle fees, and other taxes that are in effect user fees for benefits provided to the Federal government are allowable.

(3) This provision does not restrict the authority of the Federal awarding agency to identify taxes where Federal participation is inappropriate. Where the identification of the amount of unallowable taxes would require an inordinate amount of effort, the cognizant agency for indirect costs may accept a reasonable approximation thereof.

(b) For nonprofit organizations and IHEs:

(1) In general, taxes which the non-Federal entity is required to pay and which are paid or accrued in accordance with GAAP, and payments made to local governments in lieu of taxes which are commensurate with the local government services received are allowable, except for:

(i) Taxes from which exemptions are available to the non-Federal entity directly or which are available to the non-Federal entity based on an exemption afforded the Federal government and, in the latter case, when the Federal awarding agency makes available the necessary exemption certificates,

(ii) Special assessments on land which represent capital improvements, and

(iii) Federal income taxes.

(2) Any refund of taxes, and any payment to the non-Federal entity of interest thereon, which were allowed as Federal award costs, will be credited either as a cost reduction or cash refund, as appropriate, to the Federal government. However, any interest actually paid or credited to an non-Federal entity incident to a refund of tax, interest, and penalty will be paid or credited to the Federal government only to the extent that such interest accrued over the period during which the non-Federal entity has been reimbursed by the Federal government for the taxes, interest, and penalties.

(c) Value Added Tax (VAT) Foreign taxes charged for the purchase of goods or services that a non-Federal entity is legally required to pay in country is an allowable expense under Federal awards. Foreign tax refunds or applicable credits under Federal awards refer to receipts, or reduction of expenditures, which operate to offset or reduce expense items that are allocable to Federal awards as direct or indirect costs. To the extent that such credits accrued or received by the non-Federal entity relate to allowable cost, these costs must be credited to the Federal awarding agency either as costs or cash refunds. If the costs are credited back to the Federal award, the non-Federal entity may reduce the Federal share of costs by the amount of the foreign tax reimbursement, or where Federal award has not expired, use the foreign government tax refund for approved activities under the Federal award with prior approval of the Federal awarding agency.

§ 200.471 Termination costs.

Termination of a Federal award generally gives rise to the incurrence of costs, or the need for special treatment of costs, which would not have arisen had the Federal award not been terminated. Cost principles covering

these items are set forth in this section. They are to be used in conjunction with the other provisions of this Part in termination situations.

(a) The cost of items reasonably usable on the non-Federal entity's other work must not be allowable unless the non-Federal entity submits evidence that it would not retain such items at cost without sustaining a loss. In deciding whether such items are reasonably usable on other work of the non-Federal entity, the Federal awarding agency should consider the non-Federal entity's plans and orders for current and scheduled activity. Contemporaneous purchases of common items by the non-Federal entity must be regarded as evidence that such items are reasonably usable on the non-Federal entity's other work. Any acceptance of common items as allocable to the terminated portion of the Federal award must be limited to the extent that the quantities of such items on hand, in transit, and on order are in excess of the reasonable quantitative requirements of other work.

(b) If in a particular case, despite all reasonable efforts by the non-Federal entity, certain costs cannot be discontinued immediately after the effective date of termination, such costs are generally allowable within the limitations set forth in this Part, except that any such costs continuing after termination due to the negligent or willful failure of the non-Federal entity to discontinue such costs must be unallowable.

(c) Loss of useful value of special tooling, machinery, and equipment is generally allowable if:

(1) Such special tooling, special machinery, or equipment is not reasonably capable of use in the other work of the non-Federal entity,

(2) The interest of the Federal government is protected by transfer of title or by other means deemed appropriate by the Federal awarding agency (see also § 200.313 Equipment, paragraph (d), and

(3) The loss of useful value for any one terminated Federal award is limited to that portion of the acquisition cost which bears the same ratio to the total acquisition cost as the terminated portion of the Federal award bears to the entire terminated Federal award and other Federal awards for which the special tooling, machinery, or equipment was acquired.

(d) Rental costs under unexpired leases are generally allowable where clearly shown to have been reasonably necessary for the performance of the terminated Federal award less the residual value of such leases, if:

(1) The amount of such rental claimed does not exceed the reasonable use value of the property leased for the period of the Federal award and such further period as may be reasonable, and

(2) The non-Federal entity makes all reasonable efforts to terminate, assign, settle, or otherwise reduce the cost of such lease. There also may be included the cost of alterations of such leased property, provided such alterations were necessary for the performance of the Federal award, and of reasonable restoration required by the provisions of the lease.

(e) Settlement expenses including the following are generally allowable:

(1) Accounting, legal, clerical, and similar costs reasonably necessary for:

(i) The preparation and presentation to the Federal awarding agency of settlement claims and supporting data with respect to the terminated portion of the Federal award, unless the termination is for cause (see Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements of this Part, §§ 200.338 Remedies for Noncompliance through 200.342 Effects of Suspension and termination); and

(ii) The termination and settlement of subawards.

(2) Reasonable costs for the storage, transportation, protection, and disposition of property provided by the Federal government or acquired or produced for the Federal award.

(f) Claims under subawards, including the allocable portion of claims which are common to the Federal award and to other work of the non-Federal entity, are generally allowable. An appropriate share of the non-Federal entity's indirect costs may be allocated to the amount of settlements with contractors and/or subrecipients, provided that the amount allocated is otherwise consistent with the basic guidelines contained in § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs. The indirect costs so allocated must exclude the same and similar costs claimed directly or indirectly as settlement expenses.

§ 200.472 Training and education costs.

The cost of training and education provided for employee development is allowable.

§ 200.473 Transportation costs.

Costs incurred for freight, express, cartage, postage, and other transportation services relating either to goods purchased, in process, or delivered, are allowable. When such costs can readily be identified with the items involved, they may be charged directly as transportation costs or added to the cost of such items. Where identification with the materials received cannot readily be made, inbound transportation cost may be charged to the appropriate indirect (F&A) cost accounts if the non-Federal entity follows a consistent, equitable procedure in this respect. Outbound freight, if reimbursable under the terms and conditions of the Federal award, should be treated as a direct cost.

§ 200.474 Travel costs.

(a) General. Travel costs are the expenses for transportation, lodging, subsistence, and related items incurred by employees who are in travel status on official business of the non-Federal entity. Such costs may be charged on an actual cost basis, on a per diem or mileage basis in lieu of actual costs incurred, or on a combination of the two, provided the method used is applied to an entire trip and not to selected days of the trip, and results in charges consistent with those normally allowed in like circumstances in the non-Federal entity's non-federally-funded activities and in accordance with non-Federal entity's written travel reimbursement policies. Notwithstanding the provisions of § 200.444 General costs of government, travel costs of officials covered by that section are allowable with the prior written approval of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity when they are specifically related to the Federal award.

(b) Lodging and subsistence. Costs incurred by employees and officers for travel, including costs of lodging, other subsistence, and incidental expenses, must be considered reasonable and otherwise allowable only to the extent such costs do not exceed charges normally allowed by the non-Federal entity in its regular operations as the result of the non-Federal entity's written travel policy. In addition, if these costs are charged directly to the Federal award documentation must justify that:

(1) Participation of the individual is necessary to the Federal award; and

(2) The costs are reasonable and consistent with non-Federal entity's established travel policy.

(c)(1) Temporary dependent care costs (as dependent is defined in 26 U.S.C. 152) above and beyond regular dependent care that directly results from travel to conferences is allowable provided that:

(i) The costs are a direct result of the individual's travel for the Federal award;

(ii) The costs are consistent with the non-Federal entity's documented travel policy for all entity travel; and

(iii) Are only temporary during the travel period.

(2) Travel costs for dependents are unallowable, except for travel of duration of six months or more with prior approval of the Federal awarding agency. See also § 200.432 Conferences.

(3) In the absence of an acceptable, written non-Federal entity policy regarding travel costs, the rates and amounts established under 5 U.S.C. 5701–11, (''Travel and Subsistence Expenses; Mileage Allowances''), or by the Administrator of General Services, or by the President (or his or her designee) pursuant to any provisions of such subchapter must apply to travel under Federal awards (48 CFR 31.205–46(a)).

(d) Commercial air travel.

(1) Airfare costs in excess of the basic least expensive unrestricted accommodations class offered by commercial airlines are unallowable except when such accommodations would:

(i) Require circuitous routing;

(ii) Require travel during unreasonable hours;

(iii) Excessively prolong travel;

(iv) Result in additional costs that would offset the transportation savings; or

(v) Offer accommodations not reasonably adequate for the traveler's medical needs. The non-Federal entity must justify and document these conditions on a case-by-case basis in order for the use of first-class or business-class airfare to be allowable in such cases.

(2) Unless a pattern of avoidance is detected, the Federal government will generally not question a non-Federal entity's determinations that customary standard airfare or other discount airfare is unavailable for specific trips if the non-Federal entity can demonstrate that such airfare was not available in the specific case.

(e) Air travel by other than commercial carrier. Costs of travel by non-Federal entity-owned, -leased, or -chartered aircraft include the cost of lease, charter, operation (including personnel costs), maintenance, depreciation, insurance, and other related costs. The portion of such costs that exceeds the cost of airfare as provided for in paragraph (d) of this section, is unallowable.

§ 200.475 Trustees.

Travel and subsistence costs of trustees (or directors) at IHEs and nonprofit organizations are allowable. See also § 200.474 Travel costs.

Subpart F—Audit Requirements

General

§ 200.500 Purpose.

This Part sets forth standards for obtaining consistency and uniformity among Federal agencies for the audit of non-Federal entities expending Federal awards.

Audits

§ 200.501 Audit requirements.

(a) Audit required. A non-Federal entity that expends $750,000 or more during the non-Federal entity's fiscal year in Federal awards must have a single or program-specific audit conducted for that year in accordance with the provisions of this Part.

(b) Single audit. A non-Federal entity that expends $750,000 or more during the non-Federal entity's fiscal year in Federal awards must have a single audit conducted in accordance with § 200.514 Scope of audit except when it elects to have a program-specific audit conducted in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) Program-specific audit election. When an auditee expends Federal awards under only one Federal program (excluding R&D) and the Federal program's statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of the Federal award do not require a financial statement audit of the auditee, the auditee may elect to have a program-specific audit conducted in accordance with § 200.507 Program-specific audits. A program-specific audit may not be elected for R&D unless all of the Federal awards expended were received from the same Federal agency, or the same Federal agency and the same pass-through entity, and that Federal agency, or pass-through entity in the case of a subrecipient, approves in advance a program-specific audit.

(d) Exemption when Federal awards expended are less than $750,000. A non-Federal entity that expends less than $750,000 during the non-Federal entity's fiscal year in Federal awards is exempt from Federal audit requirements for that year, except as noted in § 200.503 Relation to other audit requirements, but records must be available for review or audit by appropriate officials of the Federal agency, pass-through entity, and Government Accountability Office (GAO).

(e) Federally Funded Research and Development Centers (FFRDC). Management of an auditee that owns or operates a FFRDC may elect to treat the FFRDC as a separate entity for purposes of this Part.

(f) Subrecipients and Contractors. An auditee may simultaneously be a recipient, a subrecipient, and a contractor. Federal awards expended as a recipient or a subrecipient are subject to audit under this Part. The payments received for goods or services provided as a contractor are not Federal awards. Section § 200.330 Subrecipient and contractor determinations should be considered in determining whether payments constitute a Federal award or a payment for goods or services provided as a contractor.

(g) Compliance responsibility for contractors. In most cases, the auditee's compliance responsibility for contractors is only to ensure that the procurement, receipt, and payment for goods and services comply with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards. Federal award compliance requirements normally do not pass through to contractors. However, the auditee is responsible for ensuring compliance for procurement transactions which are structured such that the contractor is responsible for program compliance or the contractor's records must be reviewed to determine program compliance. Also, when these procurement transactions relate to a major program, the scope of the audit must include determining whether these transactions are in compliance with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards.

(h) For-profit subrecipient. Since this Part does not apply to for-profit subrecipients, the pass-through entity is responsible for establishing requirements, as necessary, to ensure compliance by for-profit subrecipients. The agreement with the for-profit subrecipient should describe applicable compliance requirements and the for-profit subrecipient's compliance responsibility. Methods to ensure compliance for Federal awards made to for-profit subrecipients may include pre-award audits, monitoring during the agreement, and post-award audits. See also § 200.331 Requirements for pass-through entities.

§ 200.502 Basis for determining Federal awards expended.

(a) Determining Federal awards expended. The determination of when a Federal award is expended should be based on when the activity related to the Federal award occurs. Generally, the activity pertains to events that require the non-Federal entity to comply with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards, such as: expenditure/expense transactions associated with awards

including grants, cost-reimbursement contracts under the FAR, compacts with Indian Tribes, cooperative agreements, and direct appropriations; the disbursement of funds to subrecipients; the use of loan proceeds under loan and loan guarantee programs; the receipt of property; the receipt of surplus property; the receipt or use of program income; the distribution or use of food commodities; the disbursement of amounts entitling the non-Federal entity to an interest subsidy; and the period when insurance is in force.

(b) Loan and loan guarantees (loans). Since the Federal government is at risk for loans until the debt is repaid, the following guidelines must be used to calculate the value of Federal awards expended under loan programs, except as noted in paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section:

(1) Value of new loans made or received during the audit period; plus

(2) Beginning of the audit period balance of loans from previous years for which the Federal government imposes continuing compliance requirements; plus

(3) Any interest subsidy, cash, or administrative cost allowance received.

(c) Loan and loan guarantees (loans) at IHEs. When loans are made to students of an IHE but the IHE does not make the loans, then only the value of loans made during the audit period must be considered Federal awards expended in that audit period. The balance of loans for previous audit periods is not included as Federal awards expended because the lender accounts for the prior balances.

(d) Prior loan and loan guarantees (loans). Loans, the proceeds of which were received and expended in prior years, are not considered Federal awards expended under this Part when the Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards pertaining to such loans impose no continuing compliance requirements other than to repay the loans.

(e) Endowment funds. The cumulative balance of Federal awards for endowment funds that are federally restricted are considered Federal awards expended in each audit period in which the funds are still restricted.

(f) Free rent. Free rent received by itself is not considered a Federal award expended under this Part. However, free rent received as part of a Federal award to carry out a Federal program must be included in determining Federal awards expended and subject to audit under this Part.

(g) Valuing non-cash assistance. Federal non-cash assistance, such as free rent, food commodities, donated property, or donated surplus property, must be valued at fair market value at the time of receipt or the assessed value provided by the Federal agency.

(h) Medicare. Medicare payments to a non-Federal entity for providing patient care services to Medicare-eligible individuals are not considered Federal awards expended under this Part.

(i) Medicaid. Medicaid payments to a subrecipient for providing patient care services to Medicaid-eligible individuals are not considered Federal awards expended under this Part unless a state requires the funds to be treated as Federal awards expended because reimbursement is on a cost-reimbursement basis.

(j) Certain loans provided by the National Credit Union Administration. For purposes of this Part, loans made from the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund and the Central Liquidity Facility that are funded by contributions from insured non-Federal entities are not considered Federal awards expended.

§ 200.503 Relation to other audit requirements.

(a) An audit conducted in accordance with this Part must be in lieu of any financial audit of Federal awards which a non-Federal entity is required to undergo under any other Federal statute or regulation. To the extent that such audit provides a Federal agency with the information it requires to carry out its responsibilities under Federal statute or regulation, a Federal agency must rely upon and use that information.

(b) Notwithstanding subsection (a), a Federal agency, Inspectors General, or GAO may conduct or arrange for additional audits which are necessary to carry out its responsibilities under Federal statute or regulation. The provisions of this Part do not authorize any non-Federal entity to constrain, in any manner, such Federal agency from carrying out or arranging for such additional audits, except that the Federal agency must plan such audits to not be duplicative of other audits of Federal awards. Prior to commencing such an audit, the Federal agency or pass-through entity must review the FAC for recent audits submitted by the non-Federal entity, and to the extent such audits meet a Federal agency or pass-through entity's needs, the Federal agency or pass-through entity must rely upon and use such audits. Any additional audits must be planned and performed in such a way as to build upon work performed, including the audit documentation, sampling, and testing already performed, by other auditors.

(c) The provisions of this Part do not limit the authority of Federal agencies to conduct, or arrange for the conduct of, audits and evaluations of Federal awards, nor limit the authority of any Federal agency Inspector General or other Federal official. For example, requirements that may be applicable under the FAR or CAS and the terms and conditions of a cost-reimbursement contract may include additional applicable audits to be conducted or arranged for by Federal agencies.

(d) Federal agency to pay for additional audits. A Federal agency that conducts or arranges for additional audits must, consistent with other applicable Federal statutes and regulations, arrange for funding the full cost of such additional audits.

(e) Request for a program to be audited as a major program. A Federal awarding agency may request that an auditee have a particular Federal program audited as a major program in lieu of the Federal awarding agency conducting or arranging for the additional audits. To allow for planning, such requests should be made at least 180 calendar days prior to the end of the fiscal year to be audited. The auditee, after consultation with its auditor, should promptly respond to such a request by informing the Federal awarding agency whether the program would otherwise be audited as a major program using the risk-based audit approach described in § 200.518 Major program determination and, if not, the estimated incremental cost. The Federal awarding agency must then promptly confirm to the auditee whether it wants the program audited as a major program. If the program is to be audited as a major program based upon this Federal awarding agency request, and the Federal awarding agency agrees to pay the full incremental costs, then the auditee must have the program audited as a major program. A pass-through entity may use the provisions of this paragraph for a subrecipient.

§ 200.504 Frequency of audits.

Except for the provisions for biennial audits provided in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, audits required by this Part must be performed annually. Any biennial audit must cover both years within the biennial period.

(a) A state, local government, or Indian tribe that is required by constitution or statute, in effect on January 1, 1987, to undergo its audits less frequently than annually, is permitted to undergo its audits pursuant to this Part biennially. This requirement must still be in effect for the biennial period.

(b) Any nonprofit organization that had biennial audits for all biennial periods ending between July 1, 1992, and January 1, 1995, is permitted to undergo its audits pursuant to this Part biennially.

§ 200.505 Sanctions.

In cases of continued inability or unwillingness to have an audit conducted in accordance with this Part, Federal agencies and pass-through entities must take appropriate action as provided in § 200.338 Remedies for noncompliance.

§ 200.506 Audit costs.

See § 200.425 Audit services.

§ 200.507 Program-specific audits.

(a) Program-specific audit guide available. In many cases, a program-specific audit guide will be available to provide specific guidance to the auditor with respect to internal controls, compliance requirements, suggested audit procedures, and audit reporting requirements. A listing of current program-specific audit guides can be found in the compliance supplement beginning with the 2014 supplement including Federal awarding agency contact information and a Web site where a copy of the guide can be obtained. When a current program-specific audit guide is available, the auditor must follow GAGAS and the guide when performing a program-specific audit.

(b) Program-specific audit guide not available.

(1) When a program-specific audit guide is not available, the auditee and auditor must have basically the same responsibilities for the Federal program as they would have for an audit of a major program in a single audit.

(2) The auditee must prepare the financial statement(s) for the Federal program that includes, at a minimum, a schedule of expenditures of Federal awards for the program and notes that describe the significant accounting policies used in preparing the schedule, a summary schedule of prior audit findings consistent with the requirements of § 200.511 Audit findings follow-up, paragraph (b), and a corrective action plan consistent with the requirements of § 200.511 Audit findings follow-up, paragraph (c).

(3) The auditor must:

(i) Perform an audit of the financial statement(s) for the Federal program in accordance with GAGAS;

(ii) Obtain an understanding of internal controls and perform tests of internal controls over the Federal program consistent with the requirements of § 200.514 Scope of audit, paragraph (c) for a major program;

(iii) Perform procedures to determine whether the auditee has complied with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards that could have a direct and material effect on the Federal program consistent with the requirements of § 200.514 Scope of audit, paragraph (d) for a major program;

(iv) Follow up on prior audit findings, perform procedures to assess the reasonableness of the summary schedule of prior audit findings prepared by the auditee in accordance with the requirements of § 200.511 Audit findings follow-up, and report, as a current year audit finding, when the auditor concludes that the summary schedule of prior audit findings materially misrepresents the status of any prior audit finding; and

(v) Report any audit findings consistent with the requirements of § 200.516 Audit findings.

(4) The auditor's report(s) may be in the form of either combined or separate reports and may be organized differently from the manner presented in this section. The auditor's report(s) must state that the audit was conducted in accordance with this Part and include the following:

(i) An opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) as to whether the financial statement(s) of the Federal program is presented fairly in all material respects in accordance with the stated accounting policies;

(ii) A report on internal control related to the Federal program, which must describe the scope of testing of internal control and the results of the tests;

(iii) A report on compliance which includes an opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) as to whether the auditee complied with laws, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards which could have a direct and material effect on the Federal program; and

(iv) A schedule of findings and questioned costs for the Federal program that includes a summary of the auditor's results relative to the Federal program in a format consistent with § 200.515 Audit reporting, paragraph (d)(1) and findings and questioned costs consistent with the requirements of § 200.515 Audit reporting, paragraph (d)(3).

(c) Report submission for program-specific audits.

(1) The audit must be completed and the reporting required by paragraph (c)(2) or (c)(3) of this section submitted within the earlier of 30 calendar days after receipt of the auditor's report(s), or nine months after the end of the audit period, unless a different period is specified in a program-specific audit guide. Unless restricted by Federal law or regulation, the auditee must make report copies available for public inspection. Auditees and auditors must ensure that their respective parts of the reporting package do not include protected personally identifiable information.

(2) When a program-specific audit guide is available, the auditee must electronically submit to the FAC the data collection form prepared in accordance with § 200.512 Report submission, paragraph (b), as applicable to a program-specific audit, and the reporting required by the program-specific audit guide.

(3) When a program-specific audit guide is not available, the reporting package for a program-specific audit must consist of the financial statement(s) of the Federal program, a summary schedule of prior audit findings, and a corrective action plan as described in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, and the auditor's report(s) described in paragraph (b)(4) of this section. The data collection form prepared in accordance with § 200.512 Report submission, paragraph (b), as applicable to a program-specific audit, and one copy of this reporting package must be electronically submitted to the FAC.

(d) Other sections of this Part may apply. Program-specific audits are subject to:

(1) 200.500 Purpose through 200.503 Relation to other audit requirements, paragraph (d);

(2) 200.504 Frequency of audits through 200.506 Audit costs;

(3) 200.508 Auditee responsibilities through 200.509 Auditor selection;

(4) 200.511 Audit findings follow-up;

(5) 200.512 Report submission, paragraphs (e) through (h);

(6) 200.513 Responsibilities;

(7) 200.516 Audit findings through 200.517 Audit documentation;

(8) 200.521 Management decision, and

(9) Other referenced provisions of this Part unless contrary to the provisions of this section, a program-specific audit guide, or program statutes and regulations.

Auditees

§ 200.508 Auditee responsibilities.

The auditee must:

(a) Procure or otherwise arrange for the audit required by this Part in accordance with § 200.509 Auditor

selection, and ensure it is properly performed and submitted when due in accordance with § 200.512 Report submission.

(b) Prepare appropriate financial statements, including the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards in accordance with § 200.510 Financial statements.

(c) Promptly follow up and take corrective action on audit findings, including preparation of a summary schedule of prior audit findings and a corrective action plan in accordance with § 200.511 Audit findings follow-up, paragraph (b) and § 200.511 Audit findings follow-up, paragraph (c), respectively.

(d) Provide the auditor with access to personnel, accounts, books, records, supporting documentation, and other information as needed for the auditor to perform the audit required by this Part.

§ 200.509 Auditor selection.

(a) Auditor procurement. In procuring audit services, the auditee must follow the procurement standards prescribed by the Procurement Standards in §§ 200.317 Procurement by states through 20.326 Contract provisions of Subpart D- Post Federal Award Requirements of this Part or the FAR (48 CFR Part 42), as applicable. When procuring audit services, the objective is to obtain high-quality audits. In requesting proposals for audit services, the objectives and scope of the audit must be made clear and the non-Federal entity must request a copy of the audit organization's peer review report which the auditor is required to provide under GAGAS. Factors to be considered in evaluating each proposal for audit services include the responsiveness to the request for proposal, relevant experience, availability of staff with professional qualifications and technical abilities, the results of peer and external quality control reviews, and price. Whenever possible, the auditee must make positive efforts to utilize small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises, in procuring audit services as stated in § 200.321 Contracting with small and minority businesses, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms, or the FAR (48 CFR Part 42), as applicable.

(b) Restriction on auditor preparing indirect cost proposals. An auditor who prepares the indirect cost proposal or cost allocation plan may not also be selected to perform the audit required by this Part when the indirect costs recovered by the auditee during the prior year exceeded $1 million. This restriction applies to the base year used in the preparation of the indirect cost proposal or cost allocation plan and any subsequent years in which the resulting indirect cost agreement or cost allocation plan is used to recover costs.

(c) Use of Federal auditors. Federal auditors may perform all or part of the work required under this Part if they comply fully with the requirements of this Part.

§ 200.510 Financial statements.

(a) Financial statements. The auditee must prepare financial statements that reflect its financial position, results of operations or changes in net assets, and, where appropriate, cash flows for the fiscal year audited. The financial statements must be for the same organizational unit and fiscal year that is chosen to meet the requirements of this Part. However, non-Federal entity-wide financial statements may also include departments, agencies, and other organizational units that have separate audits in accordance with § 200.514 Scope of audit, paragraph (a) and prepare separate financial statements.

(b) Schedule of expenditures of Federal awards. The auditee must also prepare a schedule of expenditures of Federal awards for the period covered by the auditee's financial statements which must include the total Federal awards expended as determined in accordance with § 200.502 Basis for determining Federal awards expended. While not required, the auditee may choose to provide information requested by Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities to make the schedule easier to use. For example, when a Federal program has multiple Federal award years, the auditee may list the amount of Federal awards expended for each Federal award year separately. At a minimum, the schedule must:

(1) List individual Federal programs by Federal agency. For a cluster of programs, provide the cluster name, list individual Federal programs within the cluster of programs, and provide the applicable Federal agency name. For R&D, total Federal awards expended must be shown either by individual Federal award or by Federal agency and major subdivision within the Federal agency. For example, the National Institutes of Health is a major subdivision in the Department of Health and Human Services.

(2) For Federal awards received as a subrecipient, the name of the pass-through entity and identifying number assigned by the pass-through entity must be included.

(3) Provide total Federal awards expended for each individual Federal program and the CFDA number or other identifying number when the CFDA information is not available. For a cluster of programs also provide the total for the cluster.

(4) Include the total amount provided to subrecipients from each Federal program.

(5) For loan or loan guarantee programs described in § 200.502 Basis for determining Federal awards expended, paragraph (b), identify in the notes to the schedule the balances outstanding at the end of the audit period. This is in addition to including the total Federal awards expended for loan or loan guarantee programs in the schedule.

(6) Include notes that describe that significant accounting policies used in preparing the schedule, and note whether or not the non-Federal entity elected to use the 10% de minimis cost rate as covered in § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs.

§ 200.511 Audit findings follow-up.

(a) General. The auditee is responsible for follow-up and corrective action on all audit findings. As part of this responsibility, the auditee must prepare a summary schedule of prior audit findings. The auditee must also prepare a corrective action plan for current year audit findings. The summary schedule of prior audit findings and the corrective action plan must include the reference numbers the auditor assigns to audit findings under § 200.516 Audit findings, paragraph (c). Since the summary schedule may include audit findings from multiple years, it must include the fiscal year in which the finding initially occurred. The corrective action plan and summary schedule of prior audit findings must include findings relating to the financial statements which are required to be reported in accordance with GAGAS.

(b) Summary schedule of prior audit findings. The summary schedule of prior audit findings must report the status of all audit findings included in the prior audit's schedule of findings and questioned costs. The summary schedule must also include audit findings reported in the prior audit's summary schedule of prior audit findings except audit findings listed as corrected in accordance with paragraph (b)(1) of this section, or no longer valid or not warranting further action in accordance with paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

(1) When audit findings were fully corrected, the summary schedule need only list the audit findings and state that corrective action was taken.

(2) When audit findings were not corrected or were only partially corrected, the summary schedule must describe the reasons for the finding's recurrence and planned corrective action, and any partial corrective action taken. When corrective action taken is significantly different from corrective action previously reported in a corrective action plan or in the Federal agency's or pass-through entity's management decision, the summary schedule must provide an explanation.

(3) When the auditee believes the audit findings are no longer valid or do not warrant further action, the reasons for this position must be described in the summary schedule. A valid reason for considering an audit finding as not warranting further action is that all of the following have occurred:

(i) Two years have passed since the audit report in which the finding occurred was submitted to the FAC;

(ii) The Federal agency or pass-through entity is not currently following up with the auditee on the audit finding; and

(iii) A management decision was not issued.

(c) Corrective action plan. At the completion of the audit, the auditee must prepare, in a document separate from the auditor's findings described in § 200.516 Audit findings, a corrective action plan to address each audit finding included in the current year auditor's reports. The corrective action plan must provide the name(s) of the contact person(s) responsible for corrective action, the corrective action planned, and the anticipated completion date. If the auditee does not agree with the audit findings or believes corrective action is not required, then the corrective action plan must include an explanation and specific reasons.

§ 200.512 Report submission.

(a) General. (1) The audit must be completed and the data collection form described in paragraph (b) of this section and reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section must be submitted within the earlier of 30 calendar days after receipt of the auditor's report(s), or nine months after the end of the audit period. If the due date falls on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday, the reporting package is due the next business day.

(2) Unless restricted by Federal statutes or regulations, the auditee must make copies available for public inspection. Auditees and auditors must ensure that their respective parts of the reporting package do not include protected personally identifiable information.

(b) Data Collection. The FAC is the repository of record for Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this Part reporting packages and the data collection form. All Federal agencies, pass-through entities and others interested in a reporting package and data collection form must obtain it by accessing the FAC.

(1) The auditee must submit required data elements described in Appendix X to Part 200—Data Collection Form (Form SF–SAC), which state whether the audit was completed in accordance with this Part and provides information about the auditee, its Federal programs, and the results of the audit. The data must include information available from the audit required by this Part that is necessary for Federal agencies to use the audit to ensure integrity for Federal programs. The data elements and format must be approved by OMB, available from the FAC, and include collections of information from the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section. A senior level representative of the auditee (e.g., state controller, director of finance, chief executive officer, or chief financial officer) must sign a statement to be included as part of the data collection that says that the auditee complied with the requirements of this Part, the data were prepared in accordance with this Part (and the instructions accompanying the form), the reporting package does not include protected personally identifiable information, the information included in its entirety is accurate and complete, and that the FAC is authorized to make the reporting package and the form publicly available on a Web site.

(2) Exception for Indian Tribes. An auditee that is an Indian tribe may opt not to authorize the FAC to make the reporting package publicly available on a Web site, by excluding the authorization for the FAC publication in the statement described in paragraph (b)(1) of this section. If this option is exercised, the auditee becomes responsible for submitting the reporting package directly to any pass-through entities through which it has received a Federal award and to pass-through entities for which the summary schedule of prior audit findings reported the status of any findings related to Federal awards that the pass-through entity provided. Unless restricted by Federal statute or regulation, if the auditee opts not to authorize publication, it must make copies of the reporting package available for public inspection.

(3) Using the information included in the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section, the auditor must complete the applicable data elements of the data collection form. The auditor must sign a statement to be included as part of the data collection form that indicates, at a minimum, the source of the information included in the form, the auditor's responsibility for the information, that the form is not a substitute for the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section, and that the content of the form is limited to the collection of information prescribed by OMB.

(c) Reporting package. The reporting package must include the:

(1) Financial statements and schedule of expenditures of Federal awards discussed in § 200.510 Financial statements, paragraphs (a) and (b), respectively;

(2) Summary schedule of prior audit findings discussed in § 200.511 Audit findings follow-up, paragraph (b);

(3) Auditor's report(s) discussed in § 200.515 Audit reporting; and

(4) Corrective action plan discussed in § 200.511 Audit findings follow-up, paragraph (c).

(d) Submission to FAC. The auditee must electronically submit to the FAC the data collection form described in paragraph (b) of this section and the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section.

(e) Requests for management letters issued by the auditor. In response to requests by a Federal agency or pass-through entity, auditees must submit a copy of any management letters issued by the auditor.

(f) Report retention requirements. Auditees must keep one copy of the data collection form described in paragraph (b) of this section and one copy of the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section on file for three years from the date of submission to the FAC.

(g) FAC responsibilities. The FAC must make available the reporting packages received in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section and § 200.507 Program-specific audits, paragraph (c) to the public, except for Indian tribes exercising the option in (b)(2) of this section, and maintain a data base of completed audits, provide appropriate information to Federal agencies, and follow up with known auditees that have not submitted the required data collection forms and reporting packages.

(h) Electronic filing. Nothing in this Part must preclude electronic submissions to the FAC in such manner as may be approved by OMB.

Federal Agencies

§ 200.513 Responsibilities.

(a)(1) Cognizant agency for audit responsibilities. A non-Federal entity expending more than $50 million a year in Federal awards must have a cognizant agency for audit. The designated cognizant agency for audit must be the Federal awarding agency that provides the predominant amount of direct funding to a non-Federal entity unless OMB designates a specific cognizant agency for audit.

(2) To provide for continuity of cognizance, the determination of the predominant amount of direct funding must be based upon direct Federal awards expended in the non-Federal entity's fiscal years ending in 2009, 2014, 2019 and every fifth year thereafter. For example, audit cognizance for periods ending in 2011 through 2015 will be determined based on Federal awards expended in 2009.

(3) Notwithstanding the manner in which audit cognizance is determined, a Federal awarding agency with cognizance for an auditee may reassign cognizance to another Federal awarding agency that provides substantial funding and agrees to be the cognizant agency for audit. Within 30 calendar days after any reassignment, both the old and the new cognizant agency for audit must provide notice of the change to the FAC, the auditee, and, if known, the auditor. The cognizant agency for audit must:

(i) Provide technical audit advice and liaison assistance to auditees and auditors.

(ii) Obtain or conduct quality control reviews on selected audits made by non-Federal auditors, and provide the results to other interested organizations. Cooperate and provide support to the Federal agency designated by OMB to lead a governmentwide project to determine the quality of single audits by providing a statistically reliable estimate of the extent that single audits conform to applicable requirements, standards, and procedures; and to make recommendations to address noted audit quality issues, including recommendations for any changes to applicable requirements, standards and procedures indicated by the results of the project. This governmentwide audit quality project must be performed once every 6 years beginning in 2018 or at such other interval as determined by OMB, and the results must be public.

(iii) Promptly inform other affected Federal agencies and appropriate Federal law enforcement officials of any direct reporting by the auditee or its auditor required by GAGAS or statutes and regulations.

(iv) Advise the community of independent auditors of any noteworthy or important factual trends related to the quality of audits stemming from quality control reviews. Significant problems or quality issues consistently identified through quality control reviews of audit reports must be referred to appropriate state licensing agencies and professional bodies.

(v) Advise the auditor, Federal awarding agencies, and, where appropriate, the auditee of any deficiencies found in the audits when the deficiencies require corrective action by the auditor. When advised of deficiencies, the auditee must work with the auditor to take corrective action. If corrective action is not taken, the cognizant agency for audit must notify the auditor, the auditee, and applicable Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities of the facts and make recommendations for follow-up action. Major inadequacies or repetitive substandard performance by auditors must be referred to appropriate state licensing agencies and professional bodies for disciplinary action.

(vi) Coordinate, to the extent practical, audits or reviews made by or for Federal agencies that are in addition to the audits made pursuant to this Part, so that the additional audits or reviews build upon rather than duplicate audits performed in accordance with this Part.

(vii) Coordinate a management decision for cross-cutting audit findings (as defined in § 200.30 Cross-cutting audit finding) that affect the Federal programs of more than one agency when requested by any Federal awarding agency whose awards are included in the audit finding of the auditee.

(viii) Coordinate the audit work and reporting responsibilities among auditors to achieve the most cost-effective audit.

(ix) Provide advice to auditees as to how to handle changes in fiscal years.

(b) Oversight agency for audit responsibilities. An auditee who does not have a designated cognizant agency for audit will be under the general oversight of the Federal agency determined in accordance with § 200.73 Oversight agency for audit. A Federal agency with oversight for an auditee may reassign oversight to another Federal agency that agrees to be the oversight agency for audit. Within 30 calendar days after any reassignment, both the old and the new oversight agency for audit must provide notice of the change to the FAC, the auditee, and, if known, the auditor. The oversight agency for audit:

(1) Must provide technical advice to auditees and auditors as requested.

(2) May assume all or some of the responsibilities normally performed by a cognizant agency for audit.

(c) Federal awarding agency responsibilities. The Federal awarding agency must perform the following for the Federal awards it makes (See also the requirements of § 200.210 Information contained in a Federal award):

(1) Ensure that audits are completed and reports are received in a timely manner and in accordance with the requirements of this Part.

(2) Provide technical advice and counsel to auditees and auditors as requested.

(3) Follow-up on audit findings to ensure that the recipient takes appropriate and timely corrective action. As part of audit follow-up, the Federal awarding agency must:

(i) Issue a management decision as prescribed in § 200.521 Management decision;

(ii) Monitor the recipient taking appropriate and timely corrective action;

(iii) Use cooperative audit resolution mechanisms (see § 200.25 Cooperative audit resolution) to improve Federal program outcomes through better audit resolution, follow-up, and corrective action; and

(iv) Develop a baseline, metrics, and targets to track, over time, the effectiveness of the Federal agency's process to follow-up on audit findings and on the effectiveness of Single Audits in improving non-Federal entity accountability and their use by Federal awarding agencies in making award decisions.

(4) Provide OMB annual updates to the compliance supplement and work with OMB to ensure that the compliance supplement focuses the auditor to test the compliance requirements most likely to cause improper payments, fraud, waste, abuse or generate audit finding for which the Federal awarding agency will take sanctions.

(5) Provide OMB with the name of a single audit accountable official from among the senior policy officials of the Federal awarding agency who must be:

(i) Responsible for ensuring that the agency fulfills all the requirement of § 200.513 Responsibilities and effectively uses the single audit process to reduce improper payments and improve Federal program outcomes.

(ii) Held accountable to improve the effectiveness of the single audit process based upon metrics as described in paragraph (c)(3)(iv) of this section.

(iii) Responsible for designating the Federal agency's key management single audit liaison.

(6) Provide OMB with the name of a key management single audit liaison who must:

(i) Serve as the Federal awarding agency's management point of contact for the single audit process both within and outside the Federal government.

(ii) Promote interagency coordination, consistency, and sharing in areas such as coordinating audit follow-up; identifying higher-risk non-Federal entities; providing input on single audit and follow-up policy; enhancing the utility of the FAC; and studying ways to use single audit results to improve Federal award accountability and best practices.

(iii) Oversee training for the Federal awarding agency's program management personnel related to the single audit process.

(iv) Promote the Federal awarding agency's use of cooperative audit resolution mechanisms.

(v) Coordinate the Federal awarding agency's activities to ensure appropriate and timely follow-up and corrective action on audit findings.

(vi) Organize the Federal cognizant agency for audit's follow-up on cross-cutting audit findings that affect the Federal programs of more than one Federal awarding agency.

(vii) Ensure the Federal awarding agency provides annual updates of the compliance supplement to OMB.

(viii) Support the Federal awarding agency's single audit accountable official's mission.

Auditors

§ 200.514 Scope of audit.

(a) General. The audit must be conducted in accordance with GAGAS. The audit must cover the entire operations of the auditee, or, at the option of the auditee, such audit must include a series of audits that cover departments, agencies, and other organizational units that expended or otherwise administered Federal awards during such audit period, provided that each such audit must encompass the financial statements and schedule of expenditures of Federal awards for each such department, agency, and other organizational unit, which must be considered to be a non-Federal entity. The financial statements and schedule of expenditures of Federal awards must be for the same audit period.

(b) Financial statements. The auditor must determine whether the financial statements of the auditee are presented fairly in all material respects in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. The auditor must also determine whether the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards is stated fairly in all material respects in relation to the auditee's financial statements as a whole.

(c) Internal control.

(1) The compliance supplement provides guidance on internal controls over Federal programs based upon the guidance in Standards for Internal Control in the Federal Government issued by the Comptroller General of the United States and the Internal Control—Integrated Framework, issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO).

(2) In addition to the requirements of GAGAS, the auditor must perform procedures to obtain an understanding of internal control over Federal programs sufficient to plan the audit to support a low assessed level of control risk of noncompliance for major programs.

(3) Except as provided in paragraph (c)(4) of this section, the auditor must:

(i) Plan the testing of internal control over compliance for major programs to support a low assessed level of control risk for the assertions relevant to the compliance requirements for each major program; and

(ii) Perform testing of internal control as planned in paragraph (c)(3)(i) of this section.

(4) When internal control over some or all of the compliance requirements for a major program are likely to be ineffective in preventing or detecting noncompliance, the planning and performing of testing described in paragraph (c)(3) of this section are not required for those compliance requirements. However, the auditor must report a significant deficiency or material weakness in accordance with § 200.516 Audit findings, assess the related control risk at the maximum, and consider whether additional compliance tests are required because of ineffective internal control.

(d) Compliance.

(1) In addition to the requirements of GAGAS, the auditor must determine whether the auditee has complied with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards that may have a direct and material effect on each of its major programs.

(2) The principal compliance requirements applicable to most Federal programs and the compliance requirements of the largest Federal programs are included in the compliance supplement.

(3) For the compliance requirements related to Federal programs contained in the compliance supplement, an audit of these compliance requirements will meet the requirements of this Part. Where there have been changes to the compliance requirements and the changes are not reflected in the compliance supplement, the auditor must determine the current compliance requirements and modify the audit procedures accordingly. For those Federal programs not covered in the compliance supplement, the auditor should follow the compliance supplement's guidance for programs not included in the supplement.

(4) The compliance testing must include tests of transactions and such other auditing procedures necessary to provide the auditor sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support an opinion on compliance.

(e) Audit follow-up. The auditor must follow-up on prior audit findings, perform procedures to assess the reasonableness of the summary schedule of prior audit findings prepared by the auditee in accordance with § 200.511 Audit findings follow-up paragraph (b), and report, as a current year audit finding, when the auditor concludes that the summary schedule of prior audit findings materially misrepresents the status of any prior audit finding. The auditor must perform audit follow-up procedures regardless of whether a prior audit finding relates to a major program in the current year.

(f) Data Collection Form. As required in § 200.512 Report submission paragraph (b)(3), the auditor must complete and sign specified sections of the data collection form.

§ 200.515 Audit reporting.

The auditor's report(s) may be in the form of either combined or separate reports and may be organized differently from the manner presented in this section. The auditor's report(s) must state that the audit was conducted in accordance with this Part and include the following:

(a) An opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) as to whether the financial statements are presented fairly in all material respects in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles and an opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) as to whether the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the financial statements as a whole.

(b) A report on internal control over financial reporting and compliance with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the Federal award, noncompliance with which could have a material effect on the financial statements. This report must describe the scope of testing of internal control and compliance and the results

of the tests, and, where applicable, it will refer to the separate schedule of findings and questioned costs described in paragraph (d) of this section.

(c) A report on compliance for each major program and report and internal control over compliance. This report must describe the scope of testing of internal control over compliance, include an opinion or modified opinion as to whether the auditee complied with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards which could have a direct and material effect on each major program and refer to the separate schedule of findings and questioned costs described in paragraph (d) of this section.

(d) A schedule of findings and questioned costs which must include the following three components:

(1) A summary of the auditor's results, which must include:

(i) The type of report the auditor issued on whether the financial statements audited were prepared in accordance with GAAP (i.e., unmodified opinion, qualified opinion, adverse opinion, or disclaimer of opinion);

(ii) Where applicable, a statement about whether significant deficiencies or material weaknesses in internal control were disclosed by the audit of the financial statements;

(iii) A statement as to whether the audit disclosed any noncompliance that is material to the financial statements of the auditee;

(iv) Where applicable, a statement about whether significant deficiencies or material weaknesses in internal control over major programs were disclosed by the audit;

(v) The type of report the auditor issued on compliance for major programs (i.e., unmodified opinion, qualified opinion, adverse opinion, or disclaimer of opinion);

(vi) A statement as to whether the audit disclosed any audit findings that the auditor is required to report under § 200.516 Audit findings paragraph (a);

(vii) An identification of major programs by listing each individual major program; however in the case of a cluster of programs only the cluster name as shown on the Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards is required;

(viii) The dollar threshold used to distinguish between Type A and Type B programs, as described in § 200.518 Major program determination paragraph (b)(1), or (b)(3) when a recalculation of the Type A threshold is required for large loan or loan guarantees; and

(ix) A statement as to whether the auditee qualified as a low-risk auditee under § 200.520 Criteria for a low-risk auditee.

(2) Findings relating to the financial statements which are required to be reported in accordance with GAGAS.

(3) Findings and questioned costs for Federal awards which must include audit findings as defined in § 200.516 Audit findings, paragraph (a).

(i) Audit findings (e.g., internal control findings, compliance findings, questioned costs, or fraud) that relate to the same issue should be presented as a single audit finding. Where practical, audit findings should be organized by Federal agency or pass-through entity.

(ii) Audit findings that relate to both the financial statements and Federal awards, as reported under paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section, respectively, should be reported in both sections of the schedule. However, the reporting in one section of the schedule may be in summary form with a reference to a detailed reporting in the other section of the schedule.

(e) Nothing in this Part precludes combining of the audit reporting required by this section with the reporting required by § 200.512 Report submission, paragraph (b) Data Collection when allowed by GAGAS and Appendix X to Part 200—Data Collection Form (Form SF–SAC).

§ 200.516 Audit findings.

(a) Audit findings reported. The auditor must report the following as audit findings in a schedule of findings and questioned costs:

(1) Significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in internal control over major programs and significant instances of abuse relating to major programs. The auditor's determination of whether a deficiency in internal control is a significant deficiency or material weakness for the purpose of reporting an audit finding is in relation to a type of compliance requirement for a major program identified in the Compliance Supplement.

(2) Material noncompliance with the provisions of Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of Federal awards related to a major program. The auditor's determination of whether a noncompliance with the provisions of Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of Federal awards is material for the purpose of reporting an audit finding is in relation to a type of compliance requirement for a major program identified in the compliance supplement.

(3) Known questioned costs that are greater than $25,000 for a type of compliance requirement for a major program. Known questioned costs are those specifically identified by the auditor. In evaluating the effect of questioned costs on the opinion on compliance, the auditor considers the best estimate of total costs questioned (likely questioned costs), not just the questioned costs specifically identified (known questioned costs). The auditor must also report known questioned costs when likely questioned costs are greater than $25,000 for a type of compliance requirement for a major program. In reporting questioned costs, the auditor must include information to provide proper perspective for judging the prevalence and consequences of the questioned costs.

(4) Known questioned costs that are greater than $25,000 for a Federal program which is not audited as a major program. Except for audit follow-up, the auditor is not required under this Part to perform audit procedures for such a Federal program; therefore, the auditor will normally not find questioned costs for a program that is not audited as a major program. However, if the auditor does become aware of questioned costs for a Federal program that is not audited as a major program (e.g., as part of audit follow-up or other audit procedures) and the known questioned costs are greater than $25,000, then the auditor must report this as an audit finding.

(5) The circumstances concerning why the auditor's report on compliance for each major program is other than an unmodified opinion, unless such circumstances are otherwise reported as audit findings in the schedule of findings and questioned costs for Federal awards.

(6) Known or likely fraud affecting a Federal award, unless such fraud is otherwise reported as an audit finding in the schedule of findings and questioned costs for Federal awards. This paragraph does not require the auditor to report publicly information which could compromise investigative or legal proceedings or to make an additional reporting when the auditor confirms that the fraud was reported outside the auditor's reports under the direct reporting requirements of GAGAS.

(7) Instances where the results of audit follow-up procedures disclosed that the summary schedule of prior audit findings prepared by the auditee in accordance with § 200.511 Audit findings follow-up, paragraph (b) materially misrepresents the status of any prior audit finding.

(b) Audit finding detail and clarity. Audit findings must be presented in sufficient detail and clarity for the auditee to prepare a corrective action

plan and take corrective action, and for Federal agencies and pass-through entities to arrive at a management decision. The following specific information must be included, as applicable, in audit findings:

(1) Federal program and specific Federal award identification including the CFDA title and number, Federal award identification number and year, name of Federal agency, and name of the applicable pass-through entity. When information, such as the CFDA title and number or Federal award identification number, is not available, the auditor must provide the best information available to describe the Federal award.

(2) The criteria or specific requirement upon which the audit finding is based, including the Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of the Federal awards. Criteria generally identify the required or desired state or expectation with respect to the program or operation. Criteria provide a context for evaluating evidence and understanding findings.

(3) The condition found, including facts that support the deficiency identified in the audit finding.

(4) A statement of cause that identifies the reason or explanation for the condition or the factors responsible for the difference between the situation that exists (condition) and the required or desired state (criteria), which may also serve as a basis for recommendations for corrective action.

(5) The possible asserted effect to provide sufficient information to the auditee and Federal agency, or pass-through entity in the case of a subrecipient, to permit them to determine the cause and effect to facilitate prompt and proper corrective action. A statement of the effect or potential effect should provide a clear, logical link to establish the impact or potential impact of the difference between the condition and the criteria.

(6) Identification of questioned costs and how they were computed. Known questioned costs must be identified by applicable CFDA number(s) and applicable Federal award identification number(s).

(7) Information to provide proper perspective for judging the prevalence and consequences of the audit findings, such as whether the audit findings represent an isolated instance or a systemic problem. Where appropriate, instances identified must be related to the universe and the number of cases examined and be quantified in terms of dollar value. The auditor should report whether the sampling was a statistically valid sample.

(8) Identification of whether the audit finding was a repeat of a finding in the immediately prior audit and if so any applicable prior year audit finding numbers.

(9) Recommendations to prevent future occurrences of the deficiency identified in the audit finding.

(10) Views of responsible officials of the auditee.

(c) Reference numbers. Each audit finding in the schedule of findings and questioned costs must include a reference number in the format meeting the requirements of the data collection form submission required by § 200.512 Report submission, paragraph (b) to allow for easy referencing of the audit findings during follow-up.

§ 200.517 Audit documentation.

(a) Retention of audit documentation. The auditor must retain audit documentation and reports for a minimum of three years after the date of issuance of the auditor's report(s) to the auditee, unless the auditor is notified in writing by the cognizant agency for audit, oversight agency for audit, cognizant agency for indirect costs, or pass-through entity to extend the retention period. When the auditor is aware that the Federal agency, pass-through entity, or auditee is contesting an audit finding, the auditor must contact the parties contesting the audit finding for guidance prior to destruction of the audit documentation and reports.

(b) Access to audit documentation. Audit documentation must be made available upon request to the cognizant or oversight agency for audit or its designee, cognizant agency for indirect cost, a Federal agency, or GAO at the completion of the audit, as part of a quality review, to resolve audit findings, or to carry out oversight responsibilities consistent with the purposes of this Part. Access to audit documentation includes the right of Federal agencies to obtain copies of audit documentation, as is reasonable and necessary.

§ 200.518 Major program determination.

(a) General. The auditor must use a risk-based approach to determine which Federal programs are major programs. This risk-based approach must include consideration of: current and prior audit experience, oversight by Federal agencies and pass-through entities, and the inherent risk of the Federal program. The process in paragraphs (b) through (i) of this section must be followed.

(b) Step one.

(1) The auditor must identify the larger Federal programs, which must be labeled Type A programs. Type A programs are defined as Federal programs with Federal awards expended during the audit period exceeding the levels outlined in the table in this paragraph (b)(1):

Total Federal awards expended	Type A/B threshold
Equal to $750,000 but less than or equal to $25 million	$750,000.
Exceed $25 million but less than or equal to $100 million	Total Federal awards expended times .03.
Exceed $100 million but less than or equal to $1 billion	$3 million.
Exceed $1 billion but less than or equal to $10 billion	Total Federal awards expended times .003.
Exceed $10 billion but less than or equal to $20 billion	$30 million.
Exceed $20 billion	Total Federal awards expended times .0015.

(2) Federal programs not labeled Type A under paragraph (b)(1) of this section must be labeled Type B programs.

(3) The inclusion of large loan and loan guarantees (loans) should not result in the exclusion of other programs as Type A programs. When a Federal program providing loans exceeds four times the largest non-loan program it is considered a large loan program, and the auditor must consider this Federal program as a Type A program and exclude its values in determining other Type A programs. This recalculation of the Type A program is performed after removing the total of all large loan programs. For the purposes of this paragraph a program is only considered to be a Federal program providing loans if the value of Federal awards expended for loans within the program comprises fifty percent or more of the total Federal

awards expended for the program. A cluster of programs is treated as one program and the value of Federal awards expended under a loan program is determined as described in § 200.502 Basis for determining Federal awards *expended.*

(4) For biennial audits permitted under § 200.504 Frequency of audits, the determination of Type A and Type B programs must be based upon the Federal awards expended during the two-year period.

(c) Step two.

(1) The auditor must identify Type A programs which are low-risk. In making this determination, the auditor must consider whether the requirements in § 200.519 Criteria for Federal program risk paragraph (c), the results of audit follow-up, or any changes in personnel or systems affecting the program indicate significantly increased risk and preclude the program from being low risk. For a Type A program to be considered low-risk, it must have been audited as a major program in at least one of the two most recent audit periods (in the most recent audit period in the case of a biennial audit), and, in the most recent audit period, the program must have not had:

(i) Internal control deficiencies which were identified as material weaknesses in the auditor's report on internal control for major programs as required under § 200.515 Audit reporting, paragraph (c);

(ii) A modified opinion on the program in the auditor's report on major programs as required under § 200.515 Audit reporting, paragraph (c); or

(iii) Known or likely questioned costs that exceed five percent of the total Federal awards expended for the program.

(2) Notwithstanding paragraph (c)(1) of this section, OMB may approve a Federal awarding agency's request that a Type A program may not be considered low risk for a certain recipient. For example, it may be necessary for a large Type A program to be audited as a major program each year at a particular recipient to allow the Federal awarding agency to comply with 31 U.S.C. 3515. The Federal awarding agency must notify the recipient and, if known, the auditor of OMB's approval at least 180 calendar days prior to the end of the fiscal year to be audited.

(d) Step three.

(1) The auditor must identify Type B programs which are high-risk using professional judgment and the criteria in § 200.519 Criteria for Federal program risk. However, the auditor is not required to identify more high-risk Type B programs than at least one fourth the number of low-risk Type A programs identified as low-risk under Step 2 (paragraph (c) of this section). Except for known material weakness in internal control or compliance problems as discussed in § 200.519 Criteria for Federal program risk paragraphs (b)(1), (b)(2), and (c)(1), a single criteria in risk would seldom cause a Type B program to be considered high-risk. When identifying which Type B programs to risk assess, the auditor is encouraged to use an approach which provides an opportunity for different high-risk Type B programs to be audited as major over a period of time.

(2) The auditor is not expected to perform risk assessments on relatively small Federal programs. Therefore, the auditor is only required to perform risk assessments on Type B programs that exceed twenty-five percent (0.25) of the Type A threshold determined in Step 1 (paragraph (b) of this section).

(e) Step four. At a minimum, the auditor must audit all of the following as major programs:

(1) All Type A programs not identified as low risk under step two (paragraph (c)(1) of this section).

(2) All Type B programs identified as high-risk under step three (paragraph (d) of this section).

(3) Such additional programs as may be necessary to comply with the percentage of coverage rule discussed in paragraph (f) of this section. This may require the auditor to audit more programs as major programs than the number of Type A programs.

(f) Percentage of coverage rule. If the auditee meets the criteria in § 200.520 Criteria for a low-risk auditee, the auditor need only audit the major programs identified in Step 4 (paragraph (e)(1) and (2) of this section) and such additional Federal programs with Federal awards expended that, in aggregate, all major programs encompass at least 20 percent (0.20) of total Federal awards expended. Otherwise, the auditor must audit the major programs identified in Step 4 (paragraphs (e)(1) and (2) of this section) and such additional Federal programs with Federal awards expended that, in aggregate, all major programs encompass at least 40 percent (0.40) of total Federal awards expended.

(g) Documentation of risk. The auditor must include in the audit documentation the risk analysis process used in determining major programs.

(h) Auditor's judgment. When the major program determination was performed and documented in accordance with this Subpart, the auditor's judgment in applying the risk-based approach to determine major programs must be presumed correct. Challenges by Federal agencies and pass-through entities must only be for clearly improper use of the requirements in this Part. However, Federal agencies and pass-through entities may provide auditors guidance about the risk of a particular Federal program and the auditor must consider this guidance in determining major programs in audits not yet completed.

§ 200.519 Criteria for Federal program risk.

(a) General. The auditor's determination should be based on an overall evaluation of the risk of noncompliance occurring that could be material to the Federal program. The auditor must consider criteria, such as described in paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section, to identify risk in Federal programs. Also, as part of the risk analysis, the auditor may wish to discuss a particular Federal program with auditee management and the Federal agency or pass-through entity.

(b) Current and prior audit experience.

(1) Weaknesses in internal control over Federal programs would indicate higher risk. Consideration should be given to the control environment over Federal programs and such factors as the expectation of management's adherence to Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards and the competence and experience of personnel who administer the Federal programs.

(i) A Federal program administered under multiple internal control structures may have higher risk. When assessing risk in a large single audit, the auditor must consider whether weaknesses are isolated in a single operating unit (e.g., one college campus) or pervasive throughout the entity.

(ii) When significant parts of a Federal program are passed through to subrecipients, a weak system for monitoring subrecipients would indicate higher risk.

(2) Prior audit findings would indicate higher risk, particularly when the situations identified in the audit findings could have a significant impact on a Federal program or have not been corrected.

(3) Federal programs not recently audited as major programs may be of higher risk than Federal programs recently audited as major programs without audit findings.

(c) Oversight exercised by Federal agencies and pass-through entities.

(1) Oversight exercised by Federal agencies or pass-through entities could

be used to assess risk. For example, recent monitoring or other reviews performed by an oversight entity that disclosed no significant problems would indicate lower risk, whereas monitoring that disclosed significant problems would indicate higher risk.

(2) Federal agencies, with the concurrence of OMB, may identify Federal programs that are higher risk. OMB will provide this identification in the compliance supplement.

(d) Inherent risk of the Federal program.

(1) The nature of a Federal program may indicate risk. Consideration should be given to the complexity of the program and the extent to which the Federal program contracts for goods and services. For example, Federal programs that disburse funds through third party contracts or have eligibility criteria may be of higher risk. Federal programs primarily involving staff payroll costs may have high risk for noncompliance with requirements of § 200.430 Compensation—personal services, but otherwise be at low risk.

(2) The phase of a Federal program in its life cycle at the Federal agency may indicate risk. For example, a new Federal program with new or interim regulations may have higher risk than an established program with time-tested regulations. Also, significant changes in Federal programs, statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of Federal awards may increase risk.

(3) The phase of a Federal program in its life cycle at the auditee may indicate risk. For example, during the first and last years that an auditee participates in a Federal program, the risk may be higher due to start-up or closeout of program activities and staff.

(4) Type B programs with larger Federal awards expended would be of higher risk than programs with substantially smaller Federal awards expended.

§ 200.520 Criteria for a low-risk auditee.

An auditee that meets all of the following conditions for each of the preceding two audit periods must qualify as a low-risk auditee and be eligible for reduced audit coverage in accordance with § 200.518 Major program determination.

(a) Single audits were performed on an annual basis in accordance with the provisions of this Subpart, including submitting the data collection form and the reporting package to the FAC within the timeframe specified in § 200.512 Report submission. A non-Federal entity that has biennial audits does not qualify as a low-risk auditee.

(b) The auditor's opinion on whether the financial statements were prepared in accordance with GAAP, or a basis of accounting required by state law, and the auditor's in relation to opinion on the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards were unmodified.

(c) There were no deficiencies in internal control which were identified as material weaknesses under the requirements of GAGAS.

(d) The auditor did not report a substantial doubt about the auditee's ability to continue as a going concern.

(e) None of the Federal programs had audit findings from any of the following in either of the preceding two audit periods in which they were classified as Type A programs:

(1) Internal control deficiencies that were identified as material weaknesses in the auditor's report on internal control for major programs as required under § 200.515 Audit reporting, paragraph (c);

(2) A modified opinion on a major program in the auditor's report on major programs as required under § 200.515 Audit reporting, paragraph (c); or

(3) Known or likely questioned costs that exceeded five percent of the total Federal awards expended for a Type A program during the audit period.

Management Decisions

§ 200.521 Management decision.

(a) General. The management decision must clearly state whether or not the audit finding is sustained, the reasons for the decision, and the expected auditee action to repay disallowed costs, make financial adjustments, or take other action. If the auditee has not completed corrective action, a timetable for follow-up should be given. Prior to issuing the management decision, the Federal agency or pass-through entity may request additional information or documentation from the auditee, including a request for auditor assurance related to the documentation, as a way of mitigating disallowed costs. The management decision should describe any appeal process available to the auditee. While not required, the Federal agency or pass-through entity may also issue a management decision on findings relating to the financial statements which are required to be reported in accordance with GAGAS.

(b) Federal agency. As provided in § 200.513 Responsibilities, paragraph (a)(7), the cognizant agency for audit must be responsible for coordinating a management decision for audit findings that affect the programs of more than one Federal agency. As provided in § 200.513 Responsibilities, paragraph (c)(3), a Federal awarding agency is responsible for issuing a management decision for findings that relate to Federal awards it makes to non-Federal entities.

(c) Pass-through entity. As provided in § 200.331 Requirements for pass-through entities, paragraph (d), the pass-through entity must be responsible for issuing a management decision for audit findings that relate to Federal awards it makes to subrecipients.

(d) Time requirements. The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity responsible for issuing a management decision must do so within six months of acceptance of the audit report by the FAC. The auditee must initiate and proceed with corrective action as rapidly as possible and corrective action should begin no later than upon receipt of the audit report.

(e) Reference numbers. Management decisions must include the reference numbers the auditor assigned to each audit finding in accordance with § 200.516 Audit findings paragraph (c).

Appendix I to Part 200—Full Text of Notice of Funding Opportunity

The full text of the notice of funding opportunity is organized in sections. The required format outlined in this appendix indicates immediately following the title of each section whether that section is required in every announcement or is a Federal awarding agency option. The format is designed so that similar types of information will appear in the same sections in announcements of different Federal funding opportunities. Toward that end, there is text in each of the following sections to describe the types of information that a Federal awarding agency would include in that section of an actual announcement.

A Federal awarding agency that wishes to include information that the format does not specifically discuss may address that subject in whatever section(s) is most appropriate. For example, if a Federal awarding agency chooses to address performance goals in the announcement, it might do so in the funding opportunity description, the application content, or the reporting requirements.

Similarly, when this format calls for a type of information to be in a particular section, a Federal awarding agency wishing to address that subject in other sections may elect to repeat the information in those sections or use cross references between the sections (there should be hyperlinks for cross-references in any electronic versions of the announcement). For example, a Federal awarding agency may want to include in Section I information about the types of non-Federal entities who are eligible to apply. The format specifies a standard location for that information in Section III.1 but that does not preclude repeating the information in Section I or creating a cross reference between Sections I and III.1, as long as a potential applicant can find the information

quickly and easily from the standard location.

The sections of the full text of the announcement are described in the following paragraphs.

A. Program Description—Required

This section contains the full program description of the funding opportunity. It may be as long as needed to adequately communicate to potential applicants the areas in which funding may be provided. It describes the Federal awarding agency's funding priorities or the technical or focus areas in which the Federal awarding agency intends to provide assistance. As appropriate, it may include any program history (e.g., whether this is a new program or a new or changed area of program emphasis). This section may communicate indicators of successful projects (e.g., if the program encourages collaborative efforts) and may include examples of projects that have been funded previously. This section also may include other information the Federal awarding agency deems necessary, and must at a minimum include citations for authorizing statutes and regulations for the funding opportunity.

B. Federal Award Information—Required

This section provides sufficient information to help an applicant make an informed decision about whether to submit a proposal. Relevant information could include the total amount of funding that the Federal awarding agency expects to award through the announcement; the anticipated number of Federal awards; the expected amounts of individual Federal awards (which may be a range); the amount of funding per Federal award, on average, experienced in previous years; and the anticipated start dates and periods of performance for new Federal awards. This section also should address whether applications for renewal or supplementation of existing projects are eligible to compete with applications for new Federal awards.

This section also must indicate the type(s) of assistance instrument (e.g., grant, cooperative agreement) that may be awarded if applications are successful. If cooperative agreements may be awarded, this section either should describe the ''substantial involvement'' that the Federal awarding agency expects to have or should reference where the potential applicant can find that information (e.g., in the funding opportunity description in A. Program Description—Required or Federal award administration information in section D. Application and Submission Information). If procurement contracts also may be awarded, this must be stated.

C. Eligibility Information

This section addresses the considerations or factors that determine applicant or application eligibility. This includes the eligibility of particular types of applicant organizations, any factors affecting the eligibility of the principal investigator or project director, and any criteria that make particular projects ineligible. Federal agencies should make clear whether an applicant's failure to meet an eligibility criterion by the time of an application deadline will result in the Federal awarding agency returning the application without review or, even though an application may be reviewed, will preclude the Federal awarding agency from making a Federal award. Key elements to be addressed are:

1. *Eligible Applicants—Required.* Announcements must clearly identify the types of entities that are eligible to apply. If there are no restrictions on eligibility, this section may simply indicate that all potential applicants are eligible. If there are restrictions on eligibility, it is important to be clear about the specific types of entities that are eligible, not just the types that are ineligible. For example, if the program is limited to nonprofit organizations subject to 26 U.S.C. 501(c)(3) of the tax code (26 U.S.C. 501(c)(3)), the announcement should say so. Similarly, it is better to state explicitly that Native American tribal organizations are eligible than to assume that they can unambiguously infer that from a statement that nonprofit organizations may apply. Eligibility also can be expressed by exception, (e.g., open to all types of domestic applicants other than individuals). This section should refer to any portion of Section IV specifying documentation that must be submitted to support an eligibility determination (e.g., proof of 501(c)(3) status as determined by the Internal Revenue Service or an authorizing tribal resolution). To the extent that any funding restriction in Section IV.5 could affect the eligibility of an applicant or project, the announcement must either restate that restriction in this section or provide a cross-reference to its description in Section IV.5.

2. *Cost Sharing or Matching—Required.* Announcements must state whether there is required cost sharing, matching, or cost participation without which an application would be ineligible (if cost sharing is not required, the announcement must explicitly say so). Required cost sharing may be a certain percentage or amount, or may be in the form of contributions of specified items or activities (e.g., provision of equipment). It is important that the announcement be clear about any restrictions on the types of cost (e.g., in-kind contributions) that are acceptable as cost sharing. Cost sharing as an eligibility criterion includes requirements based in statute or regulation, as described in § 200.306 Cost sharing or matching of this Part. This section should refer to the appropriate portion(s) of section D. Application and Submission Information stating any pre-award requirements for submission of letters or other documentation to verify commitments to meet cost-sharing requirements if a Federal award is made.

3. *Other—Required, if applicable.* If there are other eligibility criteria (i.e., criteria that have the effect of making an application or project ineligible for Federal awards, whether referred to as ''responsiveness'' criteria, ''go-no go'' criteria, ''threshold'' criteria, or in other ways), must be clearly stated and must include a reference to the regulation of requirement that describes the restriction, as applicable. For example, if entities that have been found to be in violation of a particular Federal statute are ineligible, it is important to say so. This section must also state any limit on the number of applications an applicant may submit under the announcement and make clear whether the limitation is on the submitting organization, individual investigator/program director, or both. This section should also address any eligibility criteria for beneficiaries or for program participants other than Federal award recipients.

D. Application and Submission Information

1. *Address to Request Application Package—Required.* Potential applicants must be told how to get application forms, kits, or other materials needed to apply (if this announcement contains everything needed, this section need only say so). An Internet address where the materials can be accessed is acceptable. However, since high-speed Internet access is not yet universally available for downloading documents, and applicants may have additional accessibility requirements, there also should be a way for potential applicants to request paper copies of materials, such as a U.S. Postal Service mailing address, telephone or FAX number, Telephone Device for the Deaf (TDD), Text Telephone (TTY) number, and/or Federal Information Relay Service (FIRS) number.

2. *Content and Form of Application Submission—Required.* This section must identify the required content of an application and the forms or formats that an applicant must use to submit it. If any requirements are stated elsewhere because they are general requirements that apply to multiple programs or funding opportunities, this section should refer to where those requirements may be found. This section also should include required forms or formats as part of the announcement or state where the applicant may obtain them.

This section should specifically address content and form or format requirements for:

i. Pre-applications, letters of intent, or white papers required or encouraged (see Section IV.3), including any limitations on the number of pages or other formatting requirements similar to those for full applications.

ii. The application as a whole. For all submissions, this would include any limitations on the number of pages, font size and typeface, margins, paper size, number of copies, and sequence or assembly requirements. If electronic submission is permitted or required, this could include special requirements for formatting or signatures.

iii. Component pieces of the application (e.g., if all copies of the application must bear original signatures on the face page or the program narrative may not exceed 10 pages). This includes any pieces that may be submitted separately by third parties (e.g., references or letters confirming commitments from third parties that will be contributing a portion of any required cost sharing).

iv. Information that successful applicants must submit after notification of intent to make a Federal award, but prior to a Federal award. This could include evidence of compliance with requirements relating to human subjects or information needed to comply with the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) (42 U.S.C. 4321–4370h).

3. *Dun and Bradstreet Universal Numbering System (DUNS) Number and System for Award Management (SAM)—Required.*

This paragraph must state clearly that each applicant (unless the applicant is an individual or Federal awarding agency that is excepted from those requirements under 2 CFR § 25.110(b) or (c), or has an exception approved by the Federal awarding agency under 2 CFR § 25.110(d)) is required to: (i) Be registered in SAM before submitting its application; (ii) provide a valid DUNS number in its application; and (iii) continue to maintain an active SAM registration with current information at all times during which it has an active Federal award or an application or plan under consideration by a Federal awarding agency. It also must state that the Federal awarding agency may not make a Federal award to an applicant until the applicant has complied with all applicable DUNS and SAM requirements and, if an applicant has not fully complied with the requirements by the time the Federal awarding agency is ready to make a Federal award, the Federal awarding agency may determine that the applicant is not qualified to receive a Federal award and use that determination as a basis for making a Federal award to another applicant.

4. *Submission Dates and Times—Required.* Announcements must identify due dates and times for all submissions. This includes not only the full applications but also any preliminary submissions (e.g., letters of intent, white papers, or pre-applications). It also includes any other submissions of information before Federal award that are separate from the full application. If the funding opportunity is a general announcement that is open for a period of time with no specific due dates for applications, this section should say so. Note that the information on dates that is included in this section also must appear with other overview information in a location preceding the full text of the announcement (see § 200.203 Notices of funding opportunities of this Part).

Each type of submission should be designated as encouraged or required and, if required, any deadline date (or dates, if the Federal awarding agency plans more than one cycle of application submission, review, and Federal award under the announcement) should be specified. The announcement must state (or provide a reference to another document that states):

i. Any deadline in terms of a date and local time. If the due date falls on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday, the reporting package is due the next business day.

ii. What the deadline means (e.g., whether it is the date and time by which the Federal awarding agency must receive the application, the date by which the application must be postmarked, or something else) and how that depends, if at all, on the submission method (e.g., mail, electronic, or personal/courier delivery).

iii. The effect of missing a deadline (e.g., whether late applications are neither reviewed nor considered or are reviewed and considered under some circumstances).

iv. How the receiving Federal office determines whether an application or pre-application has been submitted before the deadline. This includes the form of acceptable proof of mailing or system-generated documentation of receipt date and time.

This section also may indicate whether, when, and in what form the applicant will receive an acknowledgement of receipt. This information should be displayed in ways that will be easy to understand and use. It can be difficult to extract all needed information from narrative paragraphs, even when they are well written. A tabular form for providing a summary of the information may help applicants for some programs and give them what effectively could be a checklist to verify the completeness of their application package before submission.

5. *Intergovernmental Review—Required, if applicable.* If the funding opportunity is subject to Executive Order 12372, ''Intergovernmental Review of Federal Programs,'' the notice must say so. In alerting applicants that they must contact their state's Single Point of Contact (SPOC) to find out about and comply with the state's process under Executive Order 12372, it may be useful to inform potential applicants that the names and addresses of the SPOCs are listed in the Office of Management and Budget's Web site. *www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants/spoc.html.*

6. *Funding Restrictions—Required.* Notices must include information on funding restrictions in order to allow an applicant to develop an application and budget consistent with program requirements. Examples are whether construction is an allowable activity, if there are any limitations on direct costs such as foreign travel or equipment purchases, and if there are any limits on indirect costs (or facilities and administrative costs). Applicants must be advised if Federal awards will not allow reimbursement of pre-Federal award costs.

7. *Other Submission Requirements—Required.* This section must address any other submission requirements not included in the other paragraphs of this section. This might include the format of submission, i.e., paper or electronic, for each type of required submission. Applicants should not be required to submit in more than one format and this section should indicate whether they may choose whether to submit applications in hard copy or electronically, may submit only in hard copy, or may submit only electronically.

This section also must indicate where applications (and any pre-applications) must be submitted if sent by postal mail, electronic means, or hand-delivery. For postal mail submission, this must include the name of an office, official, individual or function (e.g., application receipt center) and a complete mailing address. For electronic submission, this must include the URL or email address; whether a password(s) is required; whether particular software or other electronic capabilities are required; what to do in the event of system problems and a point of contact who will be available in the event the applicant experiences technical difficulties.[1]

E. Application Review Information

1. Criteria—Required. This section must address the criteria that the Federal awarding agency will use to evaluate applications. This includes the merit and other review criteria that evaluators will use to judge applications, including any statutory, regulatory, or other preferences (e.g., minority status or Native American tribal preferences) that will be applied in the review process. These criteria are distinct from eligibility criteria that are addressed before an application is accepted for review and any program policy or other factors that are applied during the selection process, after the review process is completed. The intent is to make the application process transparent so applicants can make informed decisions when preparing their applications to maximize fairness of the process. The announcement should clearly describe all criteria, including any sub-criteria. If criteria vary in importance, the announcement should specify the relative percentages, weights, or other means used to distinguish among them. For statutory, regulatory, or other preferences, the announcement should provide a detailed explanation of those preferences with an explicit indication of their effect (e.g., whether they result in additional points being assigned).

If an applicant's proposed cost sharing will be considered in the review process (as opposed to being an eligibility criterion described in Section III.2), the announcement must specifically address how it will be considered (e.g., to assign a certain number of additional points to applicants who offer cost sharing, or to break ties among applications with equivalent scores after evaluation against all other factors). If cost sharing will not be considered in the evaluation, the announcement should say so, so that there is no ambiguity for potential applicants. Vague statements that cost sharing is encouraged, without clarification as to what that means, are unhelpful to applicants. It also is important that the announcement be clear about any restrictions on the types of cost (e.g., in-kind contributions) that are acceptable as cost sharing.

2. *Review and Selection Process—Required.* This section may vary in the level of detail provided. The announcement must list any program policy or other factors or elements, other than merit criteria, that the selecting official may use in selecting applications for Federal award (e.g., geographical dispersion, program balance, or diversity). The Federal awarding agency may also include other appropriate details. For example, this section may indicate who is responsible for evaluation against the merit criteria (e.g., peers external to the Federal awarding agency or Federal awarding agency personnel) and/or who makes the final selections for Federal awards. If there is a multi-phase review process (e.g., an external panel advising internal Federal awarding agency personnel who make final

[1] With respect to electronic methods for providing information about funding opportunities or accepting applicants' submissions of information, each Federal awarding agency is responsible for compliance with Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 794d).

recommendations to the deciding official), the announcement may describe the phases. It also may include: the number of people on an evaluation panel and how it operates, the way reviewers are selected, reviewer qualifications, and the way that conflicts of interest are avoided. With respect to electronic methods for providing information about funding opportunities or accepting applicants' submissions of information, each Federal awarding agency is responsible for compliance with Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 794d).

In addition, if the Federal awarding agency permits applicants to nominate suggested reviewers of their applications or suggest those they feel may be inappropriate due to a conflict of interest, that information should be included in this section.

3. Anticipated Announcement and Federal Award Dates—Optional. This section is intended to provide applicants with information they can use for planning purposes. If there is a single application deadline followed by the simultaneous review of all applications, the Federal awarding agency can include in this section information about the anticipated dates for announcing or notifying successful and unsuccessful applicants and for having Federal awards in place. If applications are received and evaluated on a ''rolling'' basis at different times during an extended period, it may be appropriate to give applicants an estimate of the time needed to process an application and notify the applicant of the Federal awarding agency's decision.

F. Federal Award Administration Information

1. Federal Award Notices—Required. This section must address what a successful applicant can expect to receive following selection. If the Federal awarding agency's practice is to provide a separate notice stating that an application has been selected before it actually makes the Federal award, this section would be the place to indicate that the letter is not an authorization to begin performance (to the extent that it allows charging to Federal awards of pre-award costs at the non-Federal entity's own risk). This section should indicate that the notice of Federal award signed by the grants officer (or equivalent) is the authorizing document, and whether it is provided through postal mail or by electronic means and to whom. It also may address the timing, form, and content of notifications to unsuccessful applicants. See also § 200.210 Information contained in a Federal award.

2. Administrative and National Policy Requirements—Required. This section must identify the usual administrative and national policy requirements the Federal awarding agency's Federal awards may include. Providing this information lets a potential applicant identify any requirements with which it would have difficulty complying if its application is successful. In those cases, early notification about the requirements allows the potential applicant to decide not to apply or to take needed actions before receiving the Federal award. The announcement need not include all of the terms and conditions of the Federal award, but may refer to a document (with information about how to obtain it) or Internet site where applicants can see the terms and conditions. If this funding opportunity will lead to Federal awards with some special terms and conditions that differ from the Federal awarding agency's usual (sometimes called ''general'') terms and conditions, this section should highlight those special terms and conditions. Doing so will alert applicants that have received Federal awards from the Federal awarding agency previously and might not otherwise expect different terms and conditions. For the same reason, the announcement should inform potential applicants about special requirements that could apply to particular Federal awards after the review of applications and other information, based on the particular circumstances of the effort to be supported (e.g., if human subjects were to be involved or if some situations may justify special terms on intellectual property, data sharing or security requirements).

3. Reporting—Required. This section must include general information about the type (e.g., financial or performance), frequency, and means of submission (paper or electronic) of post-Federal award reporting requirements. Highlight any special reporting requirements for Federal awards under this funding opportunity that differ (e.g., by report type, frequency, form/format, or circumstances for use) from what the Federal awarding agency's Federal awards usually require.

G. Federal Awarding Agency Contact(s)—Required

The announcement must give potential applicants a point(s) of contact for answering questions or helping with problems while the funding opportunity is open. The intent of this requirement is to be as helpful as possible to potential applicants, so the Federal awarding agency should consider approaches such as giving:

i. Points of contact who may be reached in multiple ways (e.g., by telephone, FAX, and/or email, as well as regular mail).

ii. A fax or email address that multiple people access, so that someone will respond even if others are unexpectedly absent during critical periods.

iii. Different contacts for distinct kinds of help (e.g., one for questions of programmatic content and a second for administrative questions).

H. Other Information—Optional

This section may include any additional information that will assist a potential applicant. For example, the section might:

i. Indicate whether this is a new program or a one-time initiative.

ii. Mention related programs or other upcoming or ongoing Federal awarding agency funding opportunities for similar activities.

iii. Include current Internet addresses for Federal awarding agency Web sites that may be useful to an applicant in understanding the program.

iv. Alert applicants to the need to identify proprietary information and inform them about the way the Federal awarding agency will handle it.

v. Include certain routine notices to applicants (e.g., that the Federal government is not obligated to make any Federal award as a result of the announcement or that only grants officers can bind the Federal government to the expenditure of funds).

Appendix II to Part 200—Contract Provisions for Non-Federal Entity Contracts Under Federal Awards

In addition to other provisions required by the Federal agency or non-Federal entity, all contracts made by the non-Federal entity under the Federal award must contain provisions covering the following, as applicable.

(A) Contracts for more than the simplified acquisition threshold currently set at $150,000, which is the inflation adjusted amount determined by the Civilian Agency Acquisition Council and the Defense Acquisition Regulations Council (Councils) as authorized by 41 U.S.C. 1908, must address administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as appropriate.

(B) All contracts in excess of $10,000 must address termination for cause and for convenience by the non-Federal entity including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement.

(C) Equal Employment Opportunity. Except as otherwise provided under 41 CFR Part 60, all contracts that meet the definition of ''federally assisted construction contract'' in 41 CFR Part 60–1.3 must include the equal opportunity clause provided under 41 CFR 60–1.4(b), in accordance with Executive Order 11246, ''Equal Employment Opportunity'' (30 FR 12319, 12935, 3 CFR Part, 1964–1965 Comp., p. 339), as amended by Executive Order 11375, ''Amending Executive Order 11246 Relating to Equal Employment Opportunity,'' and implementing regulations at 41 CFR part 60, ''Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor.''

(D) Davis-Bacon Act, as amended (40 U.S.C. 3141–3148). When required by Federal program legislation, all prime construction contracts in excess of $2,000 awarded by non-Federal entities must include a provision for compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 3141–3144, and 3146–3148) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5, ''Labor Standards Provisions Applicable to Contracts Covering Federally Financed and Assisted Construction''). In accordance with the statute, contractors must be required to pay wages to laborers and mechanics at a rate not less than the prevailing wages specified in a wage determination made by the Secretary of Labor. In addition, contractors must be required to pay wages not less than once a week. The non-Federal entity must place a copy of the current prevailing wage determination issued by the Department of Labor in each solicitation. The decision to award a contract or subcontract must be conditioned upon the acceptance of the wage determination. The non-Federal entity must report all suspected or reported violations to

the Federal awarding agency. The contracts must also include a provision for compliance with the Copeland ''Anti-Kickback'' Act (40 U.S.C. 3145), as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 3, ''Contractors and Subcontractors on Public Building or Public Work Financed in Whole or in Part by Loans or Grants from the United States''). The Act provides that each contractor or subrecipient must be prohibited from inducing, by any means, any person employed in the construction, completion, or repair of public work, to give up any part of the compensation to which he or she is otherwise entitled. The non-Federal entity must report all suspected or reported violations to the Federal awarding agency.

(E) Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 3701–3708). Where applicable, all contracts awarded by the non-Federal entity in excess of $100,000 that involve the employment of mechanics or laborers must include a provision for compliance with 40 U.S.C. 3702 and 3704, as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5). Under 40 U.S.C. 3702 of the Act, each contractor must be required to compute the wages of every mechanic and laborer on the basis of a standard work week of 40 hours. Work in excess of the standard work week is permissible provided that the worker is compensated at a rate of not less than one and a half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of 40 hours in the work week. The requirements of 40 U.S.C. 3704 are applicable to construction work and provide that no laborer or mechanic must be required to work in surroundings or under working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous or dangerous. These requirements do not apply to the purchases of supplies or materials or articles ordinarily available on the open market, or contracts for transportation or transmission of intelligence.

(F) Rights to Inventions Made Under a Contract or Agreement. If the Federal award meets the definition of ''funding agreement'' under 37 CFR § 401.2 (a) and the recipient or subrecipient wishes to enter into a contract with a small business firm or nonprofit organization regarding the substitution of parties, assignment or performance of experimental, developmental, or research work under that ''funding agreement,'' the recipient or subrecipient must comply with the requirements of 37 CFR Part 401, ''Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements,'' and any implementing regulations issued by the awarding agency.

(G) Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401–7671q.) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1251–1387), as amended—Contracts and subgrants of amounts in excess of $150,000 must contain a provision that requires the non-Federal award to agree to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401–7671q) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act as amended (33 U.S.C. 1251–1387). Violations must be reported to the Federal awarding agency and the Regional Office of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

(H) Mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (42 U.S.C. 6201).

(I) Debarment and Suspension (Executive Orders 12549 and 12689)—A contract award (see 2 CFR 180.220) must not be made to parties listed on the governmentwide Excluded Parties List System in the System for Award Management (SAM), in accordance with the OMB guidelines at 2 CFR 180 that implement Executive Orders 12549 (3 CFR Part 1986 Comp., p. 189) and 12689 (3 CFR Part 1989 Comp., p. 235), ''Debarment and Suspension.'' The Excluded Parties List System in SAM contains the names of parties debarred, suspended, or otherwise excluded by agencies, as well as parties declared ineligible under statutory or regulatory authority other than Executive Order 12549.

(J) Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment (31 U.S.C. 1352)—Contractors that apply or bid for an award of $100,000 or more must file the required certification. Each tier certifies to the tier above that it will not and has not used Federal appropriated funds to pay any person or organization for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with obtaining any Federal contract, grant or any other award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Each tier must also disclose any lobbying with non-Federal funds that takes place in connection with obtaining any Federal award. Such disclosures are forwarded from tier to tier up to the non-Federal award.

(K) See § 200.322 Procurement of recovered materials.

Appendix III to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs)

A. General

This appendix provides criteria for identifying and computing indirect (or indirect (F&A)) rates at IHEs (institutions). Indirect (F&A) costs are those that are incurred for common or joint objectives and therefore cannot be identified readily and specifically with a particular sponsored project, an instructional activity, or any other institutional activity. See subsection B.1, Definition of Facilities and Administration, for a discussion of the components of indirect (F&A) costs.

1. Major Functions of an Institution

Refers to instruction, organized research, other sponsored activities and other institutional activities as defined in this section:

a. *Instruction* means the teaching and training activities of an institution. Except for research training as provided in subsection b, this term includes all teaching and training activities, whether they are offered for credits toward a degree or certificate or on a non-credit basis, and whether they are offered through regular academic departments or separate divisions, such as a summer school division or an extension division. Also considered part of this major function are departmental research, and, where agreed to, university research.

(1) *Sponsored instruction and training* means specific instructional or training activity established by grant, contract, or cooperative agreement. For purposes of the cost principles, this activity may be considered a major function even though an institution's accounting treatment may include it in the instruction function.

(2) *Departmental research* means research, development and scholarly activities that are not organized research and, consequently, are not separately budgeted and accounted for. Departmental research, for purposes of this document, is not considered as a major function, but as a part of the instruction function of the institution.

b. *Organized research* means all research and development activities of an institution that are separately budgeted and accounted for. It includes:

(1) *Sponsored research* means all research and development activities that are sponsored by Federal and non-Federal agencies and organizations. This term includes activities involving the training of individuals in research techniques (commonly called research training) where such activities utilize the same facilities as other research and development activities and where such activities are not included in the instruction function.

(2) *University research* means all research and development activities that are separately budgeted and accounted for by the institution under an internal application of institutional funds. University research, for purposes of this document, must be combined with sponsored research under the function of organized research.

c. *Other sponsored activities* means programs and projects financed by Federal and non-Federal agencies and organizations which involve the performance of work other than instruction and organized research. Examples of such programs and projects are health service projects and community service programs. However, when any of these activities are undertaken by the institution without outside support, they may be classified as other institutional activities.

d. *Other institutional activitie*s means all activities of an institution except for instruction, departmental research, organized research, and other sponsored activities, as defined in this section; indirect (F&A) cost activities identified in this Appendix paragraph B, Identification and assignment of indirect (F&A) costs; and specialized services facilities described in § 200.468 Specialized service facilities of this Part.

Examples of other institutional activities include operation of residence halls, dining halls, hospitals and clinics, student unions, intercollegiate athletics, bookstores, faculty housing, student apartments, guest houses, chapels, theaters, public museums, and other similar auxiliary enterprises. This definition also includes any other categories of activities, costs of which are ''unallowable''

to Federal awards, unless otherwise indicated in an award.

2. Criteria for Distribution

a. *Base period.* A base period for distribution of indirect (F&A) costs is the period during which the costs are incurred. The base period normally should coincide with the fiscal year established by the institution, but in any event the base period should be so selected as to avoid inequities in the distribution of costs.

b. *Need for cost groupings.* The overall objective of the indirect (F&A) cost allocation process is to distribute the indirect (F&A) costs described in Section B, Identification and assignment of indirect (F&A) costs, to the major functions of the institution in proportions reasonably consistent with the nature and extent of their use of the institution's resources. In order to achieve this objective, it may be necessary to provide for selective distribution by establishing separate groupings of cost within one or more of the indirect (F&A) cost categories referred to in subsection B.1, Definition of Facilities and Administration. In general, the cost groupings established within a category should constitute, in each case, a pool of those items of expense that are considered to be of like nature in terms of their relative contribution to (or degree of remoteness from) the particular cost objectives to which distribution is appropriate. Cost groupings should be established considering the general guides provided in subsection c of this section. Each such pool or cost grouping should then be distributed individually to the related cost objectives, using the distribution base or method most appropriate in light of the guidelines set forth in subsection d of this section.

c. *General considerations on cost groupings.* The extent to which separate cost groupings and selective distribution would be appropriate at an institution is a matter of judgment to be determined on a case-by-case basis. Typical situations which may warrant the establishment of two or more separate cost groupings (based on account classification or analysis) within an indirect (F&A) cost category include but are not limited to the following:

(1) If certain items or categories of expense relate solely to one of the major functions of the institution or to less than all functions, such expenses should be set aside as a separate cost grouping for direct assignment or selective allocation in accordance with the guides provided in subsections b and d.

(2) If any types of expense ordinarily treated as general administration or departmental administration are charged to Federal awards as direct costs, expenses applicable to other activities of the institution when incurred for the same purposes in like circumstances must, through separate cost groupings, be excluded from the indirect (F&A) costs allocable to those Federal awards and included in the direct cost of other activities for cost allocation purposes.

(3) If it is determined that certain expenses are for the support of a service unit or facility whose output is susceptible of measurement on a workload or other quantitative basis, such expenses should be set aside as a separate cost grouping for distribution on such basis to organized research, instructional, and other activities at the institution or within the department.

(4) If activities provide their own purchasing, personnel administration, building maintenance or similar service, the distribution of general administration and general expenses, or operation and maintenance expenses to such activities should be accomplished through cost groupings which include only that portion of central indirect (F&A) costs (such as for overall management) which are properly allocable to such activities.

(5) If the institution elects to treat fringe benefits as indirect (F&A) charges, such costs should be set aside as a separate cost grouping for selective distribution to related cost objectives.

(6) The number of separate cost groupings within a category should be held within practical limits, after taking into consideration the materiality of the amounts involved and the degree of precision attainable through less selective methods of distribution.

d. Selection of distribution method.

(1) Actual conditions must be taken into account in selecting the method or base to be used in distributing individual cost groupings. The essential consideration in selecting a base is that it be the one best suited for assigning the pool of costs to cost objectives in accordance with benefits derived; with a traceable cause-and-effect relationship; or with logic and reason, where neither benefit nor a cause-and-effect relationship is determinable.

(2) If a cost grouping can be identified directly with the cost objective benefitted, it should be assigned to that cost objective.

(3) If the expenses in a cost grouping are more general in nature, the distribution may be based on a cost analysis study which results in an equitable distribution of the costs. Such cost analysis studies may take into consideration weighting factors, population, or space occupied if appropriate. Cost analysis studies, however, must (a) be appropriately documented in sufficient detail for subsequent review by the cognizant agency for indirect costs, (b) distribute the costs to the related cost objectives in accordance with the relative benefits derived, (c) be statistically sound, (d) be performed specifically at the institution at which the results are to be used, and (e) be reviewed periodically, but not less frequently than rate negotiations, updated if necessary, and used consistently. Any assumptions made in the study must be stated and explained. The use of cost analysis studies and periodic changes in the method of cost distribution must be fully justified.

(4) If a cost analysis study is not performed, or if the study does not result in an equitable distribution of the costs, the distribution must be made in accordance with the appropriate base cited in Section B, Identification and assignment of indirect (F&A) costs, unless one of the following conditions is met:

(a) It can be demonstrated that the use of a different base would result in a more equitable allocation of the costs, or that a more readily available base would not increase the costs charged to Federal awards, or

(b) The institution qualifies for, and elects to use, the simplified method for computing indirect (F&A) cost rates described in Section D, Simplified method for small institutions.

(5) Notwithstanding subsection (3), effective July 1, 1998, a cost analysis or base other than that in Section B must not be used to distribute utility or student services costs. Instead, subsections B.4.c Operation and maintenance expenses, may be used in the recovery of utility costs.

e. Order of distribution.

(1) Indirect (F&A) costs are the broad categories of costs discussed in Section B.1, Definitions of Facilities and Administration

(2) Depreciation, interest expenses, operation and maintenance expenses, and general administrative and general expenses should be allocated in that order to the remaining indirect (F&A) cost categories as well as to the major functions and specialized service facilities of the institution. Other cost categories may be allocated in the order determined to be most appropriate by the institutions. When cross allocation of costs is made as provided in subsection (3), this order of allocation does not apply.

(3) Normally an indirect (F&A) cost category will be considered closed once it has been allocated to other cost objectives, and costs may not be subsequently allocated to it. However, a cross allocation of costs between two or more indirect (F&A) cost categories may be used if such allocation will result in a more equitable allocation of costs. If a cross allocation is used, an appropriate modification to the composition of the indirect (F&A) cost categories described in Section B is required.

B. Identification and Assignment of Indirect (F&A) Costs

1. Definition of Facilities and Administration

See § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs which provides the basis for this indirect cost requirements.

2. Depreciation

a. The expenses under this heading are the portion of the costs of the institution's buildings, capital improvements to land and buildings, and equipment which are computed in accordance with § 200.436 Depreciation.

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section A.2.d, Selection of distribution method, the expenses included in this category must be allocated in the following manner:

(1) Depreciation on buildings used exclusively in the conduct of a single function, and on capital improvements and equipment used in such buildings, must be assigned to that function.

(2) Depreciation on buildings used for more than one function, and on capital improvements and equipment used in such buildings, must be allocated to the individual functions performed in each building on the basis of usable square feet of space, excluding common areas such as hallways, stairwells, and rest rooms.

(3) Depreciation on buildings, capital improvements and equipment related to space (e.g., individual rooms, laboratories) used jointly by more than one function (as determined by the users of the space) must be treated as follows. The cost of each jointly used unit of space must be allocated to benefitting functions on the basis of:

(a) The employee full-time equivalents (FTEs) or salaries and wages of those individual functions benefitting from the use of that space; or

(b) Institution-wide employee FTEs or salaries and wages applicable to the benefitting major functions (see Section A.1) of the institution.

(4) Depreciation on certain capital improvements to land, such as paved parking areas, fences, sidewalks, and the like, not included in the cost of buildings, must be allocated to user categories of students and employees on a full-time equivalent basis. The amount allocated to the student category must be assigned to the instruction function of the institution. The amount allocated to the employee category must be further allocated to the major functions of the institution in proportion to the salaries and wages of all employees applicable to those functions.

3. Interest

Interest on debt associated with certain buildings, equipment and capital improvements, as defined in § 200.449 Interest, must be classified as an expenditure under the category Facilities. These costs must be allocated in the same manner as the depreciation on the buildings, equipment and capital improvements to which the interest relates.

4. Operation and Maintenance Expenses

a. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the administration, supervision, operation, maintenance, preservation, and protection of the institution's physical plant. They include expenses normally incurred for such items as janitorial and utility services; repairs and ordinary or normal alterations of buildings, furniture and equipment; care of grounds; maintenance and operation of buildings and other plant facilities; security; earthquake and disaster preparedness; environmental safety; hazardous waste disposal; property, liability and all other insurance relating to property; space and capital leasing; facility planning and management; and central receiving. The operation and maintenance expense category should also include its allocable share of fringe benefit costs, depreciation, and interest costs.

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section A.2.d, the expenses included in this category must be allocated in the same manner as described in subsection 2.b for depreciation.

c. A utility cost adjustment of up to 1.3 percentage points may be included in the negotiated indirect cost rate of the IHE for organized research, per the computation alternatives in paragraphs (c)(1) and (2) of this section:

(1) Where space is devoted to a single function and metering allows unambiguous measurement of usage related to that space, costs must be assigned to the function located in that space.

(2) Where space is allocated to different functions and metering does not allow unambiguous measurement of usage by function, costs must be allocated as follows:

(i) Utilities costs should be apportioned to functions in the same manner as depreciation, based on the calculated difference between the site or building actual square footage for monitored research laboratory space (site, building, floor, or room), and a separate calculation prepared by the IHE using the ''effective square footage'' described in subsection (c)(2)(ii) of this section.

(ii) ''Effective square footage'' allocated to research laboratory space must be calculated as the actual square footage times the relative energy utilization index (REUI) posted on the OMB Web site at the time of a rate determination.

A. This index is the ratio of a laboratory energy use index (lab EUI) to the corresponding index for overall average college or university space (college EUI).

B. In July 2012, values for these two indices (taken respectively from the Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory ''Labs for the 21st Century'' benchmarking tool *http://labs21benchmarking.lbl.gov/CompareData.php* and the US Department of Energy ''Buildings Energy Databook'' and *http://buildingsdatabook.eren.doe.gov/CBECS.aspx*) were 310 kBtu/sq ft-yr. and 155 kBtu/sq ft-yr., so that the adjustment ratio is 2.0 by this methodology. To retain currency, OMB will adjust the EUI numbers from time to time (no more often than annually nor less often than every 5 years), using reliable and publicly disclosed data. Current values of both the EUIs and the REUI will be posted on the OMB Web site.

5. General Administration and General Expenses

a. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the general executive and administrative offices of educational institutions and other expenses of a general character which do not relate solely to any major function of the institution; i.e., solely to (1) instruction, (2) organized research, (3) other sponsored activities, or (4) other institutional activities. The general administration and general expense category should also include its allocable share of fringe benefit costs, operation and maintenance expense, depreciation, and interest costs. Examples of general administration and general expenses include: those expenses incurred by administrative offices that serve the entire university system of which the institution is a part; central offices of the institution such as the President's or Chancellor's office, the offices for institution-wide financial management, business services, budget and planning, personnel management, and safety and risk management; the office of the General Counsel; and the operations of the central administrative management information systems. General administration and general expenses must not include expenses incurred within non-university-wide deans' offices, academic departments, organized research units, or similar organizational units. (See subsection 6, Departmental administration expenses.)

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section A.2.d, the expenses included in this category must be grouped first according to common major functions of the institution to which they render services or provide benefits. The aggregate expenses of each group must then be allocated to serviced or benefitted functions on the modified total cost basis. Modified total costs consist of the same elements as those in Section C.2. When an activity included in this indirect (F&A) cost category provides a service or product to another institution or organization, an appropriate adjustment must be made to either the expenses or the basis of allocation or both, to assure a proper allocation of costs.

6. Departmental Administration Expenses

a. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for administrative and supporting services that benefit common or joint departmental activities or objectives in academic deans' offices, academic departments and divisions, and organized research units. Organized research units include such units as institutes, study centers, and research centers. Departmental administration expenses are subject to the following limitations.

(1) Academic deans' offices. Salaries and operating expenses are limited to those attributable to administrative functions.

(2) Academic departments:

(a) Salaries and fringe benefits attributable to the administrative work (including bid and proposal preparation) of faculty (including department heads) and other professional personnel conducting research and/or instruction, must be allowed at a rate of 3.6 percent of modified total direct costs. This category does not include professional business or professional administrative officers. This allowance must be added to the computation of the indirect (F&A) cost rate for major functions in Section C, Determination and application of indirect (F&A) cost rate or rates; the expenses covered by the allowance must be excluded from the departmental administration cost pool. No documentation is required to support this allowance.

(b) Other administrative and supporting expenses incurred within academic departments are allowable provided they are treated consistently in like circumstances. This would include expenses such as the salaries of secretarial and clerical staffs, the salaries of administrative officers and assistants, travel, office supplies, stockrooms, and the like.

(3) Other fringe benefit costs applicable to the salaries and wages included in subsections (1) and (2) are allowable, as well as an appropriate share of general administration and general expenses, operation and maintenance expenses, and depreciation.

(4) Federal agencies may authorize reimbursement of additional costs for department heads and faculty only in

exceptional cases where an institution can demonstrate undue hardship or detriment to project performance.

b. The following guidelines apply to the determination of departmental administrative costs as direct or indirect (F&A) costs.

(1) In developing the departmental administration cost pool, special care should be exercised to ensure that costs incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances are treated consistently as either direct or indirect (F&A) costs. For example, salaries of technical staff, laboratory supplies (e.g., chemicals), telephone toll charges, animals, animal care costs, computer costs, travel costs, and specialized shop costs must be treated as direct costs wherever identifiable to a particular cost objective. Direct charging of these costs may be accomplished through specific identification of individual costs to benefitting cost objectives, or through recharge centers or specialized service facilities, as appropriate under the circumstances. See §§ 200.413 Direct costs, paragraph (c) and 200.468 Specialized service facilities.

(2) Items such as office supplies, postage, local telephone costs, and memberships must normally be treated as indirect (F&A) costs.

c. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section A.2.d, the expenses included in this category must be allocated as follows:

(1) The administrative expenses of the dean's office of each college and school must be allocated to the academic departments within that college or school on the modified total cost basis.

(2) The administrative expenses of each academic department, and the department's share of the expenses allocated in subsection (1) must be allocated to the appropriate functions of the department on the modified total cost basis.

7. Sponsored Projects Administration

a. The expenses under this heading are limited to those incurred by a separate organization(s) established primarily to administer sponsored projects, including such functions as grant and contract administration (Federal and non-Federal), special security, purchasing, personnel, administration, and editing and publishing of research and other reports. They include the salaries and expenses of the head of such organization, assistants, and immediate staff, together with the salaries and expenses of personnel engaged in supporting activities maintained by the organization, such as stock rooms, print shops, and the like. This category also includes an allocable share of fringe benefit costs, general administration and general expenses, operation and maintenance expenses, and depreciation. Appropriate adjustments will be made for services provided to other functions or organizations.

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section A.2.d, the expenses included in this category must be allocated to the major functions of the institution under which the sponsored projects are conducted on the basis of the modified total cost of sponsored projects.

c. An appropriate adjustment must be made to eliminate any duplicate charges to Federal awards when this category includes similar or identical activities as those included in the general administration and general expense category or other indirect (F&A) cost items, such as accounting, procurement, or personnel administration.

8. Library Expenses

a. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the operation of the library, including the cost of books and library materials purchased for the library, less any items of library income that qualify as applicable credits under § 200.406 Applicable credits. The library expense category should also include the fringe benefits applicable to the salaries and wages included therein, an appropriate share of general administration and general expense, operation and maintenance expense, and depreciation. Costs incurred in the purchases of rare books (museum-type books) with no value to Federal awards should not be allocated to them.

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section A.2.d, the expenses included in this category must be allocated first on the basis of primary categories of users, including students, professional employees, and other users.

(1) The student category must consist of full-time equivalent students enrolled at the institution, regardless of whether they earn credits toward a degree or certificate.

(2) The professional employee category must consist of all faculty members and other professional employees of the institution, on a full-time equivalent basis. This category may also include post-doctorate fellows and graduate students.

(3) The other users category must consist of a reasonable factor as determined by institutional records to account for all other users of library facilities.

c. Amount allocated in paragraph b of this section must be assigned further as follows:

(1) The amount in the student category must be assigned to the instruction function of the institution.

(2) The amount in the professional employee category must be assigned to the major functions of the institution in proportion to the salaries and wages of all faculty members and other professional employees applicable to those functions.

(3) The amount in the other users category must be assigned to the other institutional activities function of the institution.

9. Student Administration and Services

a. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the administration of student affairs and for services to students, including expenses of such activities as deans of students, admissions, registrar, counseling and placement services, student advisers, student health and infirmary services, catalogs, and commencements and convocations. The salaries of members of the academic staff whose responsibilities to the institution require administrative work that benefits sponsored projects may also be included to the extent that the portion charged to student administration is determined in accordance with Subpart E—Cost Principles of this Part. This expense category also includes the fringe benefit costs applicable to the salaries and wages included therein, an appropriate share of general administration and general expenses, operation and maintenance, interest expense, and depreciation.

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section A.2.d, the expenses in this category must be allocated to the instruction function, and subsequently to Federal awards in that function.

10. Offset for Indirect (F&A) Expenses Otherwise Provided for by the Federal Government

a. The items to be accumulated under this heading are the reimbursements and other payments from the Federal government which are made to the institution to support solely, specifically, and directly, in whole or in part, any of the administrative or service activities described in subsections 2 through 9.

b. The items in this group must be treated as a credit to the affected individual indirect (F&A) cost category before that category is allocated to benefitting functions.

C. Determination and Application of Indirect (F&A) Cost Rate or Rates

1. Indirect (F&A) Cost Pools

a. (1) Subject to subsection b, the separate categories of indirect (F&A) costs allocated to each major function of the institution as prescribed in paragraph B of this paragraph C.1 Identification and assignment of indirect (F&A) costs, must be aggregated and treated as a common pool for that function. The amount in each pool must be divided by the distribution base described in subsection 2 to arrive at a single indirect (F&A) cost rate for each function.

(2) The rate for each function is used to distribute indirect (F&A) costs to individual Federal awards of that function. Since a common pool is established for each major function of the institution, a separate indirect (F&A) cost rate would be established for each of the major functions described in Section A.1 under which Federal awards are carried out.

(3) Each institution's indirect (F&A) cost rate process must be appropriately designed to ensure that Federal sponsors do not in any way subsidize the indirect (F&A) costs of other sponsors, specifically activities sponsored by industry and foreign governments. Accordingly, each allocation method used to identify and allocate the indirect (F&A) cost pools, as described in Sections A.2, Criteria for distribution, and B.2 through B.9, must contain the full amount of the institution's modified total costs or other appropriate units of measurement used to make the computations. In addition, the final rate distribution base (as defined in subsection 2) for each major function (organized research, instruction, etc., as described in Section A.1, Major functions of an institution) must contain all the programs or activities which utilize the indirect (F&A) costs allocated to that major function. At the time an indirect (F&A) cost proposal is submitted to a cognizant agency for indirect costs, each institution must describe the process it uses

to ensure that Federal funds are not used to subsidize industry and foreign government funded programs.

b. In some instances a single rate basis for use across the board on all work within a major function at an institution may not be appropriate. A single rate for research, for example, might not take into account those different environmental factors and other conditions which may affect substantially the indirect (F&A) costs applicable to a particular segment of research at the institution. A particular segment of research may be that performed under a single sponsored agreement or it may consist of research under a group of Federal awards performed in a common environment. The environmental factors are not limited to the physical location of the work. Other important factors are the level of the administrative support required, the nature of the facilities or other resources employed, the scientific disciplines or technical skills involved, the organizational arrangements used, or any combination thereof. If a particular segment of a sponsored agreement is performed within an environment which appears to generate a significantly different level of indirect (F&A) costs, provisions should be made for a separate indirect (F&A) cost pool applicable to such work. The separate indirect (F&A) cost pool should be developed during the regular course of the rate determination process and the separate indirect (F&A) cost rate resulting therefrom should be utilized; provided it is determined that (1) such indirect (F&A) cost rate differs significantly from that which would have been obtained under subsection a, and (2) the volume of work to which such rate would apply is material in relation to other Federal awards at the institution.

2. The Distribution Basis

Indirect (F&A) costs must be distributed to applicable Federal awards and other benefitting activities within each major function (see section A.1, Major functions of an institution) on the basis of modified total direct costs (MTDC), consisting of all salaries and wages, fringe benefits, materials and supplies, services, travel, and subgrants and subcontracts up to the first $25,000 of each subaward (regardless of the period covered by the subaward). MTDC is defined in § 200.68 Modified Total Direct Cost (MTDC). For this purpose, an indirect (F&A) cost rate should be determined for each of the separate indirect (F&A) cost pools developed pursuant to subsection 1. The rate in each case should be stated as the percentage which the amount of the particular indirect (F&A) cost pool is of the modified total direct costs identified with such pool.

3. Negotiated Lump Sum for Indirect (F&A) Costs

A negotiated fixed amount in lieu of indirect (F&A) costs may be appropriate for self-contained, off-campus, or primarily subcontracted activities where the benefits derived from an institution's indirect (F&A) services cannot be readily determined. Such negotiated indirect (F&A) costs will be treated as an offset before allocation to instruction, organized research, other sponsored activities, and other institutional activities. The base on which such remaining expenses are allocated should be appropriately adjusted.

4. Predetermined Rates for Indirect (F&A) Costs

Public Law 87–638 (76 Stat. 437) as amended (41 U.S.C. 4708) authorizes the use of predetermined rates in determining the ''indirect costs'' (indirect (F&A) costs) applicable under research agreements with educational institutions. The stated objectives of the law are to simplify the administration of cost-type research and development contracts (including grants) with educational institutions, to facilitate the preparation of their budgets, and to permit more expeditious closeout of such contracts when the work is completed. In view of the potential advantages offered by this procedure, negotiation of predetermined rates for indirect (F&A) costs for a period of two to four years should be the norm in those situations where the cost experience and other pertinent facts available are deemed sufficient to enable the parties involved to reach an informed judgment as to the probable level of indirect (F&A) costs during the ensuing accounting periods.

5. Negotiated Fixed Rates and Carry-Forward Provisions

When a fixed rate is negotiated in advance for a fiscal year (or other time period), the over- or under-recovery for that year may be included as an adjustment to the indirect (F&A) cost for the next rate negotiation. When the rate is negotiated before the carry-forward adjustment is determined, the carry-forward amount may be applied to the next subsequent rate negotiation. When such adjustments are to be made, each fixed rate negotiated in advance for a given period will be computed by applying the expected indirect (F&A) costs allocable to Federal awards for the forecast period plus or minus the carry-forward adjustment (over- or under-recovery) from the prior period, to the forecast distribution base. Unrecovered amounts under lump-sum agreements or cost-sharing provisions of prior years must not be carried forward for consideration in the new rate negotiation. There must, however, be an advance understanding in each case between the institution and the cognizant agency for indirect costs as to whether these differences will be considered in the rate negotiation rather than making the determination after the differences are known. Further, institutions electing to use this carry-forward provision may not subsequently change without prior approval of the cognizant agency for indirect costs. In the event that an institution returns to a post-determined rate, any over- or under-recovery during the period in which negotiated fixed rates and carry-forward provisions were followed will be included in the subsequent post-determined rates. Where multiple rates are used, the same procedure will be applicable for determining each rate.

6. Provisional and Final Rates for Indirect (F&A) Costs

Where the cognizant agency for indirect costs determines that cost experience and other pertinent facts do not justify the use of predetermined rates, or a fixed rate with a carry-forward, or if the parties cannot agree on an equitable rate, a provisional rate must be established. To prevent substantial overpayment or underpayment, the provisional rate may be adjusted by the cognizant agency for indirect costs during the institution's fiscal year. Predetermined or fixed rates may replace provisional rates at any time prior to the close of the institution's fiscal year. If a provisional rate is not replaced by a predetermined or fixed rate prior to the end of the institution's fiscal year, a final rate will be established and upward or downward adjustments will be made based on the actual allowable costs incurred for the period involved.

7. Fixed Rates for the Life of the Sponsored Agreement

Federal agencies must use the negotiated rates except as provided in paragraph (e) of § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs, must paragraph (b)(1) for indirect (F&A) costs in effect at the time of the initial award throughout the life of the Federal award. Award levels for Federal awards may not be adjusted in future years as a result of changes in negotiated rates. ''Negotiated rates'' per the rate agreement include final, fixed, and predetermined rates and exclude provisional rates. ''Life'' for the purpose of this subsection means each competitive segment of a project. A competitive segment is a period of years approved by the Federal awarding agency at the time of the Federal award. If negotiated rate agreements do not extend through the life of the Federal award at the time of the initial award, then the negotiated rate for the last year of the Federal award must be extended through the end of the life of the Federal award.

b. Except as provided in § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs, when an educational institution does not have a negotiated rate with the Federal government at the time of an award (because the educational institution is a new recipient or the parties cannot reach agreement on a rate), the provisional rate used at the time of the award must be adjusted once a rate is negotiated and approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

8. Limitation on Reimbursement of Administrative Costs

a. Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection C.1.a, the administrative costs charged to Federal awards awarded or amended (including continuation and renewal awards) with effective dates beginning on or after the start of the institution's first fiscal year which begins on or after October 1, 1991, must be limited to 26% of modified total direct costs (as defined in subsection 2) for the total of General Administration and General Expenses, Departmental Administration, Sponsored Projects Administration, and Student Administration and Services (including their allocable share of depreciation, interest costs, operation and maintenance expenses, and fringe benefits costs, as provided by Section B, Identification and assignment of indirect (F&A) costs, and all other types of

expenditures not listed specifically under one of the subcategories of facilities in Section B.

b. Institutions should not change their accounting or cost allocation methods if the effect is to change the charging of a particular type of cost from F&A to direct, or to reclassify costs, or increase allocations from the administrative pools identified in paragraph B.1 of this Appendix to the other F&A cost pools or fringe benefits. Cognizant agencies for indirect cost are authorized to allow changes where an institution's charging practices are at variance with acceptable practices followed by a substantial majority of other institutions.

9. Alternative Method for Administrative Costs

a. Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection 1.a, an institution may elect to claim a fixed allowance for the ''Administration'' portion of indirect (F&A) costs. The allowance could be either 24% of modified total direct costs or a percentage equal to 95% of the most recently negotiated fixed or predetermined rate for the cost pools included under ''Administration'' as defined in Section B.1, whichever is less. Under this alternative, no cost proposal need be prepared for the ''Administration'' portion of the indirect (F&A) cost rate nor is further identification or documentation of these costs required (see subsection c). Where a negotiated indirect (F&A) cost agreement includes this alternative, an institution must make no further charges for the expenditure categories described in Section B.5, General administration and general expenses, Section B.6, Departmental administration expenses, Section B.7, Sponsored projects administration, and Section B.9, Student administration and services.

b. In negotiations of rates for subsequent periods, an institution that has elected the option of subsection a may continue to exercise it at the same rate without further identification or documentation of costs.

c. If an institution elects to accept a threshold rate as defined in subsection a of this section, it is not required to perform a detailed analysis of its administrative costs. However, in order to compute the facilities components of its indirect (F&A) cost rate, the institution must reconcile its indirect (F&A) cost proposal to its financial statements and make appropriate adjustments and reclassifications to identify the costs of each major function as defined in Section A.1, as well as to identify and allocate the facilities components. Administrative costs that are not identified as such by the institution's accounting system (such as those incurred in academic departments) will be classified as instructional costs for purposes of reconciling indirect (F&A) cost proposals to financial statements and allocating facilities costs.

10. Individual Rate Components

In order to provide mutually agreed-upon information for management purposes, each indirect (F&A) cost rate negotiation or determination shall include development of a rate for each indirect (F&A) cost pool as well as the overall indirect (F&A) cost rate.

11. Negotiation and Approval of Indirect (F&A) Rate

a. Cognizant agency for indirect costs is defined in Subpart A—Acronyms and Definitions.

(1) Cost negotiation cognizance is assigned to the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) or the Department of Defense's Office of Naval Research (DOD), normally depending on which of the two agencies (HHS or DOD) provides more funds to the educational institution for the most recent three years. Information on funding must be derived from relevant data gathered by the National Science Foundation. In cases where neither HHS nor DOD provides Federal funding to an educational institution, the cognizant agency for indirect costs assignment must default to HHS. Notwithstanding the method for cognizance determination described in this section, other arrangements for cognizance of a particular educational institution may also be based in part on the types of research performed at the educational institution and must be decided based on mutual agreement between HHS and DOD.

(2) After cognizance is established, it must continue for a five-year period.

b. Acceptance of rates. See § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs.

c. Correcting deficiencies. The cognizant agency for indirect costs must negotiate changes needed to correct systems deficiencies relating to accountability for Federal awards. Cognizant agencies for indirect costs must address the concerns of other affected agencies, as appropriate, and must negotiate special rates for Federal agencies that are required to limit recovery of indirect costs by statute.

d. Resolving questioned costs. The cognizant agency for indirect costs must conduct any necessary negotiations with an educational institution regarding amounts questioned by audit that are due the Federal government related to costs covered by a negotiated agreement.

e. Reimbursement. Reimbursement to cognizant agencies for indirect costs for work performed under this Part may be made by reimbursement billing under the Economy Act, 31 U.S.C. 1535.

f. Procedure for establishing facilities and administrative rates must be established by one of the following methods:

(1) Formal negotiation. The cognizant agency for indirect costs is responsible for negotiating and approving rates for an educational institution on behalf of all Federal agencies. Non-cognizant Federal agencies for indirect costs, which make Federal awards to an educational institution, must notify the cognizant agency for indirect costs of specific concerns (i.e., a need to establish special cost rates) which could affect the negotiation process. The cognizant agency for indirect costs must address the concerns of all interested agencies, as appropriate. A pre-negotiation conference may be scheduled among all interested agencies, if necessary. The cognizant agency for indirect costs must then arrange a negotiation conference with the educational institution.

(2) Other than formal negotiation. The cognizant agency for indirect costs and educational institution may reach an agreement on rates without a formal negotiation conference; for example, through correspondence or use of the simplified method described in this section D of this Appendix.

g. Formalizing determinations and agreements. The cognizant agency for indirect costs must formalize all determinations or agreements reached with an educational institution and provide copies to other agencies having an interest. Determinations should include a description of any adjustments, the actual amount, both dollar and percentage adjusted, and the reason for making adjustments.

h. Disputes and disagreements. Where the cognizant agency for indirect costs is unable to reach agreement with an educational institution with regard to rates or audit resolution, the appeal system of the cognizant agency for indirect costs must be followed for resolution of the disagreement.

12. Standard Format for Submission

For facilities and administrative (indirect (F&A)) rate proposals, educational institutions must use the standard format, shown in section E of this appendix, to submit their indirect (F&A) rate proposal to the cognizant agency for indirect costs. The cognizant agency for indirect costs may, on an institution-by-institution basis, grant exceptions from all or portions of Part II of the standard format requirement. This requirement does not apply to educational institutions that use the simplified method for calculating indirect (F&A) rates, as described in Section D of this Appendix.

In order to provide mutually agreed upon information for management purposes, each F&A cost rate negotiation or determination must include development of a rate for each F&A cost pool as well as the overall F&A rate.

D. Simplified Method for Small Institutions

1. General

a. Where the total direct cost of work covered by this Part at an institution does not exceed $10 million in a fiscal year, the simplified procedure described in subsections 2 or 3 may be used in determining allowable indirect (F&A) costs. Under this simplified procedure, the institution's most recent annual financial report and immediately available supporting information must be utilized as a basis for determining the indirect (F&A) cost rate applicable to all Federal awards. The institution may use either the salaries and wages (see subsection 2) or modified total direct costs (see subsection 3) as the distribution basis.

b. The simplified procedure should not be used where it produces results which appear inequitable to the Federal government or the institution. In any such case, indirect (F&A) costs should be determined through use of the regular procedure.

2. Simplified Procedure—Salaries and Wages Base

a. Establish the total amount of salaries and wages paid to all employees of the institution.

b. Establish an indirect (F&A) cost pool consisting of the expenditures (exclusive of

capital items and other costs specifically identified as unallowable) which customarily are classified under the following titles or their equivalents:

(1) General administration and general expenses (exclusive of costs of student administration and services, student activities, student aid, and scholarships).

(2) Operation and maintenance of physical plant and depreciation (after appropriate adjustment for costs applicable to other institutional activities).

(3) Library.

(4) Department administration expenses, which will be computed as 20 percent of the salaries and expenses of deans and heads of departments.

In those cases where expenditures classified under subsection (1) have previously been allocated to other institutional activities, they may be included in the indirect (F&A) cost pool. The total amount of salaries and wages included in the indirect (F&A) cost pool must be separately identified.

c. Establish a salary and wage distribution base, determined by deducting from the total of salaries and wages as established in subsection a from the amount of salaries and wages included under subsection b.

d. Establish the indirect (F&A) cost rate, determined by dividing the amount in the indirect (F&A) cost pool, subsection b, by the amount of the distribution base, subsection c.

e. Apply the indirect (F&A) cost rate to direct salaries and wages for individual agreements to determine the amount of indirect (F&A) costs allocable to such agreements.

3. Simplified Procedure—Modified Total Direct Cost Base

a. Establish the total costs incurred by the institution for the base period.

b. Establish an indirect (F&A) cost pool consisting of the expenditures (exclusive of capital items and other costs specifically identified as unallowable) which customarily are classified under the following titles or their equivalents:

(1) General administration and general expenses (exclusive of costs of student administration and services, student activities, student aid, and scholarships).

(2) Operation and maintenance of physical plant and depreciation (after appropriate adjustment for costs applicable to other institutional activities).

(3) Library.

(4) Department administration expenses, which will be computed as 20 percent of the salaries and expenses of deans and heads of departments. In those cases where expenditures classified under subsection (1) have previously been allocated to other institutional activities, they may be included in the indirect (F&A) cost pool. The modified total direct costs amount included in the indirect (F&A) cost pool must be separately identified.

c. Establish a modified total direct cost distribution base, as defined in Section C.2, The distribution basis, that consists of all institution's direct functions.

d. Establish the indirect (F&A) cost rate, determined by dividing the amount in the indirect (F&A) cost pool, subsection b, by the amount of the distribution base, subsection c.

e. Apply the indirect (F&A) cost rate to the modified total direct costs for individual agreements to determine the amount of indirect (F&A) costs allocable to such agreements.

E. Documentation Requirements

The standard format for documentation requirements for indirect (indirect (F&A)) rate proposals for claiming costs under the regular method is available on the OMB Web site here: *http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants_forms.*

F. Certification

1. Certification of Charges

To assure that expenditures for Federal awards are proper and in accordance with the agreement documents and approved project budgets, the annual and/or final fiscal reports or vouchers requesting payment under the agreements will include a certification, signed by an authorized official of the university, which reads ''By signing this report, I certify to the best of my knowledge and belief that the report is true, complete, and accurate, and the expenditures, disbursements and cash receipts are for the purposes and intent set forth in the award documents. I am aware that any false, fictitious, or fraudulent information, or the omission of any material fact, may subject me to criminal, civil or administrative penalties for fraud, false statements, false claims or otherwise. (U.S. Code, Title 18, Section 1001 and Title 31, Sections 3729–3733 and 3801–3812)''.

2. Certification of Indirect (F&A) Costs

a. *Policy.* Cognizant agencies must not accept a proposed indirect cost rate must unless such costs have been certified by the educational institution using the Certificate of indirect (F&A) Costs set forth in subsection F.2.c

b. The certificate must be signed on behalf of the institution by the chief financial officer or an individual designated by an individual at a level no lower than vice president or chief financial officer.

(1) No indirect (F&A) cost rate must be binding upon the Federal government if the most recent required proposal from the institution has not been certified. Where it is necessary to establish indirect (F&A) cost rates, and the institution has not submitted a certified proposal for establishing such rates in accordance with the requirements of this section, the Federal government must unilaterally establish such rates. Such rates may be based upon audited historical data or such other data that have been furnished to the cognizant agency for indirect costs and for which it can be demonstrated that all unallowable costs have been excluded. When indirect (F&A) cost rates are unilaterally established by the Federal government because of failure of the institution to submit a certified proposal for establishing such rates in accordance with this section, the rates established will be set at a level low enough to ensure that potentially unallowable costs will not be reimbursed.

c. *Certificate.* The certificate required by this section must be in the following form:

Certificate of Indirect (F&A) Costs

This is to certify that to the best of my knowledge and belief:

(1) I have reviewed the indirect (F&A) cost proposal submitted herewith;

(2) All costs included in this proposal [identify date] to establish billing or final indirect (F&A) costs rate for [identify period covered by rate] are allowable in accordance with the requirements of the Federal agreement(s) to which they apply and with the cost principles applicable to those agreements.

(3) This proposal does not include any costs which are unallowable under applicable cost principles such as (without limitation): public relations costs, contributions and donations, entertainment costs, fines and penalties, lobbying costs, and defense of fraud proceedings; and

(4) All costs included in this proposal are properly allocable to Federal agreements on the basis of a beneficial or causal relationship between the expenses incurred and the agreements to which they are allocated in accordance with applicable requirements.

I declare that the foregoing is true and correct.

Institution of Higher Education:
Signature: _____
Name of Official: _____
Title: _____
Date of Execution: _____

Appendix IV to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Nonprofit Organizations

A. General

1. Indirect costs are those that have been incurred for common or joint objectives and cannot be readily identified with a particular final cost objective. Direct cost of minor amounts may be treated as indirect costs under the conditions described in § 200.413 Direct costs paragraph (d) of this Part. After direct costs have been determined and assigned directly to awards or other work as appropriate, indirect costs are those remaining to be allocated to benefitting cost objectives. A cost may not be allocated to a Federal award as an indirect cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances, has been assigned to a Federal award as a direct cost.

''Major nonprofit organizations'' are defined in § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs. See indirect cost rate reporting requirements in sections B.2.e and B.3.g of this Appendix.

B. Allocation of Indirect Costs and Determination of Indirect Cost Rates

1. General

a. If a nonprofit organization has only one major function, or where all its major functions benefit from its indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs and the computation of an indirect cost rate may be accomplished through simplified allocation procedures, as described in section B.2 of this Appendix.

b. If an organization has several major functions which benefit from its indirect

costs in varying degrees, allocation of indirect costs may require the accumulation of such costs into separate cost groupings which then are allocated individually to benefitting functions by means of a base which best measures the relative degree of benefit. The indirect costs allocated to each function are then distributed to individual Federal awards and other activities included in that function by means of an indirect cost rate(s).

c. The determination of what constitutes an organization's major functions will depend on its purpose in being; the types of services it renders to the public, its clients, and its members; and the amount of effort it devotes to such activities as fundraising, public information and membership activities.

d. Specific methods for allocating indirect costs and computing indirect cost rates along with the conditions under which each method should be used are described in section B.2 through B.5 of this Appendix.

e. The base period for the allocation of indirect costs is the period in which such costs are incurred and accumulated for allocation to work performed in that period. The base period normally should coincide with the organization's fiscal year but, in any event, must be so selected as to avoid inequities in the allocation of the costs.

2. Simplified Allocation Method

a. Where an organization's major functions benefit from its indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs may be accomplished by (i) separating the organization's total costs for the base period as either direct or indirect, and (ii) dividing the total allowable indirect costs (net of applicable credits) by an equitable distribution base. The result of this process is an indirect cost rate which is used to distribute indirect costs to individual Federal awards. The rate should be expressed as the percentage which the total amount of allowable indirect costs bears to the base selected. This method should also be used where an organization has only one major function encompassing a number of individual projects or activities, and may be used where the level of Federal awards to an organization is relatively small.

b. Both the direct costs and the indirect costs must exclude capital expenditures and unallowable costs. However, unallowable costs which represent activities must be included in the direct costs under the conditions described in § 200.413 Direct costs, paragraph (e) of this Part.

c. The distribution base may be total direct costs (excluding capital expenditures and other distorting items, such contracts or subawards for $25,000 or more), direct salaries and wages, or other base which results in an equitable distribution. The distribution base must exclude participant support costs as defined in § 200.75 Participant support costs.

d. Except where a special rate(s) is required in accordance with section B.5 of this Appendix, the indirect cost rate developed under the above principles is applicable to all Federal awards of the organization. If a special rate(s) is required, appropriate modifications must be made in order to develop the special rate(s).

e. For an organization that receives more than $10 million in Federal funding of direct costs in a fiscal year, a breakout of the indirect cost component into two broad categories, Facilities and Administration as defined in section A.3 of this Appendix, is required. The rate in each case must be stated as the percentage which the amount of the particular indirect cost category (i.e., Facilities or Administration) is of the distribution base identified with that category.

3. Multiple Allocation Base Method

a. General. Where an organization's indirect costs benefit its major functions in varying degrees, indirect costs must be accumulated into separate cost groupings, as described in subparagraph b. Each grouping must then be allocated individually to benefitting functions by means of a base which best measures the relative benefits. The default allocation bases by cost pool are described in section B.3.c of this Appendix.

b. Identification of indirect costs. Cost groupings must be established so as to permit the allocation of each grouping on the basis of benefits provided to the major functions. Each grouping must constitute a pool of expenses that are of like character in terms of functions they benefit and in terms of the allocation base which best measures the relative benefits provided to each function. The groupings are classified within the two broad categories: ''Facilities'' and ''Administration,'' as described in section A.3 of this Appendix. The indirect cost pools are defined as follows:

(1) Depreciation. The expenses under this heading are the portion of the costs of the organization's buildings, capital improvements to land and buildings, and equipment which are computed in accordance with § 200.436 Depreciation.

(2) Interest. Interest on debt associated with certain buildings, equipment and capital improvements are computed in accordance with § 200.449 Interest.

(3) Operation and maintenance expenses. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the administration, operation, maintenance, preservation, and protection of the organization's physical plant. They include expenses normally incurred for such items as: janitorial and utility services; repairs and ordinary or normal alterations of buildings, furniture and equipment; care of grounds; maintenance and operation of buildings and other plant facilities; security; earthquake and disaster preparedness; environmental safety; hazardous waste disposal; property, liability and other insurance relating to property; space and capital leasing; facility planning and management; and central receiving. The operation and maintenance expenses category must also include its allocable share of fringe benefit costs, depreciation, and interest costs.

(4) General administration and general expenses. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the overall general executive and administrative offices of the organization and other expenses of a general nature which do not relate solely to any major function of the organization. This category must also include its allocable share of fringe benefit costs, operation and maintenance expense, depreciation, and interest costs. Examples of this category include central offices, such as the director's office, the office of finance, business services, budget and planning, personnel, safety and risk management, general counsel, management information systems, and library costs.

In developing this cost pool, special care should be exercised to ensure that costs incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances are treated consistently as either direct or indirect costs. For example, salaries of technical staff, project supplies, project publication, telephone toll charges, computer costs, travel costs, and specialized services costs must be treated as direct costs wherever identifiable to a particular program. The salaries and wages of administrative and pooled clerical staff should normally be treated as indirect costs. Direct charging of these costs may be appropriate where a major project or activity explicitly requires and budgets for administrative or clerical services and other individuals involved can be identified with the program or activity. Items such as office supplies, postage, local telephone costs, periodicals and memberships should normally be treated as indirect costs.

c. Allocation bases. Actual conditions must be taken into account in selecting the base to be used in allocating the expenses in each grouping to benefitting functions. The essential consideration in selecting a method or a base is that it is the one best suited for assigning the pool of costs to cost objectives in accordance with benefits derived; a traceable cause and effect relationship; or logic and reason, where neither the cause nor the effect of the relationship is determinable. When an allocation can be made by assignment of a cost grouping directly to the function benefitted, the allocation must be made in that manner. When the expenses in a cost grouping are more general in nature, the allocation must be made through the use of a selected base which produces results that are equitable to both the Federal government and the organization. The distribution must be made in accordance with the bases described herein unless it can be demonstrated that the use of a different base would result in a more equitable allocation of the costs, or that a more readily available base would not increase the costs charged to Federal awards. The results of special cost studies (such as an engineering utility study) must not be used to determine and allocate the indirect costs to Federal awards.

(1) Depreciation. Depreciation expenses must be allocated in the following manner:

(a) Depreciation on buildings used exclusively in the conduct of a single function, and on capital improvements and equipment used in such buildings, must be assigned to that function.

(b) Depreciation on buildings used for more than one function, and on capital improvements and equipment used in such buildings, must be allocated to the individual functions performed in each building on the

basis of usable square feet of space, excluding common areas, such as hallways, stairwells, and restrooms.

(c) Depreciation on buildings, capital improvements and equipment related space (e.g., individual rooms, and laboratories) used jointly by more than one function (as determined by the users of the space) must be treated as follows. The cost of each jointly used unit of space must be allocated to the benefitting functions on the basis of:

(i) the employees and other users on a full-time equivalent (FTE) basis or salaries and wages of those individual functions benefitting from the use of that space; or

(ii) organization-wide employee FTEs or salaries and wages applicable to the benefitting functions of the organization.

(d) Depreciation on certain capital improvements to land, such as paved parking areas, fences, sidewalks, and the like, not included in the cost of buildings, must be allocated to user categories on a FTE basis and distributed to major functions in proportion to the salaries and wages of all employees applicable to the functions.

(2) Interest. Interest costs must be allocated in the same manner as the depreciation on the buildings, equipment and capital equipment to which the interest relates.

(3) Operation and maintenance expenses. Operation and maintenance expenses must be allocated in the same manner as the depreciation.

(4) General administration and general expenses. General administration and general expenses must be allocated to benefitting functions based on modified total costs (MTC). The MTC is the modified total direct costs (MTDC), as described in Subpart A—Acronyms and Definitions of Part 200, plus the allocated indirect cost proportion. The expenses included in this category could be grouped first according to major functions of the organization to which they render services or provide benefits. The aggregate expenses of each group must then be allocated to benefitting functions based on MTC.

d. Order of distribution.

(1) Indirect cost categories consisting of depreciation, interest, operation and maintenance, and general administration and general expenses must be allocated in that order to the remaining indirect cost categories as well as to the major functions of the organization. Other cost categories should be allocated in the order determined to be most appropriate by the organization. This order of allocation does not apply if cross allocation of costs is made as provided in section B.3.d.2 of this Appendix.

(2) Normally, an indirect cost category will be considered closed once it has been allocated to other cost objectives, and costs must not be subsequently allocated to it. However, a cross allocation of costs between two or more indirect costs categories could be used if such allocation will result in a more equitable allocation of costs. If a cross allocation is used, an appropriate modification to the composition of the indirect cost categories is required.

e. Application of indirect cost rate or rates. Except where a special indirect cost rate(s) is required in accordance with section B.5 of this Appendix, the separate groupings of indirect costs allocated to each major function must be aggregated and treated as a common pool for that function. The costs in the common pool must then be distributed to individual Federal awards included in that function by use of a single indirect cost rate.

f. Distribution basis. Indirect costs must be distributed to applicable Federal awards and other benefitting activities within each major function on the basis of MTDC (see definition in § 200.68 Modified Total Direct Cost (MTDC) of Part 200.

g. Individual Rate Components. An indirect cost rate must be determined for each separate indirect cost pool developed. The rate in each case must be stated as the percentage which the amount of the particular indirect cost pool is of the distribution base identified with that pool. Each indirect cost rate negotiation or determination agreement must include development of the rate for each indirect cost pool as well as the overall indirect cost rate. The indirect cost pools must be classified within two broad categories: ''Facilities'' and ''Administration,'' as described in section A.3 of this Appendix.

4. Direct Allocation Method

a. Some nonprofit organizations treat all costs as direct costs except general administration and general expenses. These organizations generally separate their costs into three basic categories: (i) General administration and general expenses, (ii) fundraising, and (iii) other direct functions (including projects performed under Federal awards). Joint costs, such as depreciation, rental costs, operation and maintenance of facilities, telephone expenses, and the like are prorated individually as direct costs to each category and to each Federal award or other activity using a base most appropriate to the particular cost being prorated.

b. This method is acceptable, provided each joint cost is prorated using a base which accurately measures the benefits provided to each Federal award or other activity. The bases must be established in accordance with reasonable criteria, and be supported by current data. This method is compatible with the Standards of Accounting and Financial Reporting for Voluntary Health and Welfare Organizations issued jointly by the National Health Council, Inc., the National Assembly of Voluntary Health and Social Welfare Organizations, and the United Way of America.

c. Under this method, indirect costs consist exclusively of general administration and general expenses. In all other respects, the organization's indirect cost rates must be computed in the same manner as that described in section B.2 Simplified allocation method of this Appendix.

5. Special Indirect Cost Rates

In some instances, a single indirect cost rate for all activities of an organization or for each major function of the organization may not be appropriate, since it would not take into account those different factors which may substantially affect the indirect costs applicable to a particular segment of work. For this purpose, a particular segment of work may be that performed under a single Federal award or it may consist of work under a group of Federal awards performed in a common environment. These factors may include the physical location of the work, the level of administrative support required, the nature of the facilities or other resources employed, the scientific disciplines or technical skills involved, the organizational arrangements used, or any combination thereof. When a particular segment of work is performed in an environment which appears to generate a significantly different level of indirect costs, provisions should be made for a separate indirect cost pool applicable to such work. The separate indirect cost pool should be developed during the course of the regular allocation process, and the separate indirect cost rate resulting therefrom should be used, provided it is determined that (i) the rate differs significantly from that which would have been obtained under sections B.2, B.3, and B.4 of this Appendix, and (ii) the volume of work to which the rate would apply is material.

C. Negotiation and Approval of Indirect Cost Rates

1. Definitions

As used in this section, the following terms have the meanings set forth in this section:

a. *Cognizant agency for indirect costs* means the Federal agency responsible for negotiating and approving indirect cost rates for a nonprofit organization on behalf of all Federal agencies.

b. *Predetermined rate* means an indirect cost rate, applicable to a specified current or future period, usually the organization's fiscal year. The rate is based on an estimate of the costs to be incurred during the period. A predetermined rate is not subject to adjustment.

c. *Fixed rate* means an indirect cost rate which has the same characteristics as a predetermined rate, except that the difference between the estimated costs and the actual costs of the period covered by the rate is carried forward as an adjustment to the rate computation of a subsequent period.

d. *Final rate* means an indirect cost rate applicable to a specified past period which is based on the actual costs of the period. A final rate is not subject to adjustment.

e. *Provisional rate or billing rate* means a temporary indirect cost rate applicable to a specified period which is used for funding, interim reimbursement, and reporting indirect costs on Federal awards pending the establishment of a final rate for the period.

f. *Indirect cost proposal* means the documentation prepared by an organization to substantiate its claim for the reimbursement of indirect costs. This proposal provides the basis for the review and negotiation leading to the establishment of an organization's indirect cost rate.

g. *Cost objective* means a function, organizational subdivision, contract, Federal award, or other work unit for which cost data are desired and for which provision is made to accumulate and measure the cost of processes, projects, jobs and capitalized projects.

2. Negotiation and Approval of Rates

a. Unless different arrangements are agreed to by the Federal agencies concerned, the Federal agency with the largest dollar value of Federal awards with an organization will be designated as the cognizant agency for indirect costs for the negotiation and approval of the indirect cost rates and, where necessary, other rates such as fringe benefit and computer charge-out rates. Once an agency is assigned cognizance for a particular nonprofit organization, the assignment will not be changed unless there is a shift in the dollar volume of the Federal awards to the organization for at least three years. All concerned Federal agencies must be given the opportunity to participate in the negotiation process but, after a rate has been agreed upon, it will be accepted by all Federal agencies. When a Federal agency has reason to believe that special operating factors affecting its Federal awards necessitate special indirect cost rates in accordance with section B.5 of this Appendix, it will, prior to the time the rates are negotiated, notify the cognizant agency for indirect costs. (See also § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs of Part 200.)

b. Except as otherwise provided in § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs paragraph (e) of this Part, a nonprofit organization which has not previously established an indirect cost rate with a Federal agency must submit its initial indirect cost proposal immediately after the organization is advised that a Federal award will be made and, in no event, later than three months after the effective date of the Federal award.

c. Unless approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs in accordance with § 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs paragraph (f) of this Part, organizations that have previously established indirect cost rates must submit a new indirect cost proposal to the cognizant agency for indirect costs within six months after the close of each fiscal year.

d. A predetermined rate may be negotiated for use on Federal awards where there is reasonable assurance, based on past experience and reliable projection of the organization's costs, that the rate is not likely to exceed a rate based on the organization's actual costs.

e. Fixed rates may be negotiated where predetermined rates are not considered appropriate. A fixed rate, however, must not be negotiated if (i) all or a substantial portion of the organization's Federal awards are expected to expire before the carry-forward adjustment can be made; (ii) the mix of Federal and non-Federal work at the organization is too erratic to permit an equitable carry-forward adjustment; or (iii) the organization's operations fluctuate significantly from year to year.

f. Provisional and final rates must be negotiated where neither predetermined nor fixed rates are appropriate. Predetermined or fixed rates may replace provisional rates at any time prior to the close of the organization's fiscal year. If that event does not occur, a final rate will be established and upward or downward adjustments will be made based on the actual allowable costs incurred for the period involved.

g. The results of each negotiation must be formalized in a written agreement between the cognizant agency for indirect costs and the nonprofit organization. The cognizant agency for indirect costs must make available copies of the agreement to all concerned Federal agencies.

h. If a dispute arises in a negotiation of an indirect cost rate between the cognizant agency for indirect costs and the nonprofit organization, the dispute must be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures of the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

i. To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies in connection with the negotiation and approval process, OMB will lend assistance as required to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

D. Certification of Indirect (F&A) Costs

Required Certification. No proposal to establish indirect (F&A) cost rates must be acceptable unless such costs have been certified by the non-profit organization using the Certificate of Indirect (F&A) Costs set forth in section j. of this appendix. The certificate must be signed on behalf of the organization by an individual at a level no lower than vice president or chief financial officer for the organization.

j. Each indirect cost rate proposal must be accompanied by a certification in the following form:

Certificate of Indirect (F&A) Costs

This is to certify that to the best of my knowledge and belief:

(1) I have reviewed the indirect (F&A) cost proposal submitted herewith;

(2) All costs included in this proposal [identify date] to establish billing or final indirect (F&A) costs rate for [identify period covered by rate] are allowable in accordance with the requirements of the Federal awards to which they apply and with Subpart E—Cost Principles of Part 200.

(3) This proposal does not include any costs which are unallowable under Subpart E—Cost Principles of Part 200 such as (without limitation): public relations costs, contributions and donations, entertainment costs, fines and penalties, lobbying costs, and defense of fraud proceedings; and

(4) All costs included in this proposal are properly allocable to Federal awards on the basis of a beneficial or causal relationship between the expenses incurred and the Federal awards to which they are allocated in accordance with applicable requirements.

I declare that the foregoing is true and correct.

Nonprofit Organization: _____
Signature: _____
Name of Official: _____
Title: _____
Date of Execution: _____

Appendix V to Part 200—State/Local Government and Indian Tribe-Wide Central Service Cost Allocation Plans

A. General

1. Most governmental units provide certain services, such as motor pools, computer centers, purchasing, accounting, etc., to operating agencies on a centralized basis. Since federally-supported awards are performed within the individual operating agencies, there needs to be a process whereby these central service costs can be identified and assigned to benefitted activities on a reasonable and consistent basis. The central service cost allocation plan provides that process. All costs and other data used to distribute the costs included in the plan should be supported by formal accounting and other records that will support the propriety of the costs assigned to Federal awards.

2. Guidelines and illustrations of central service cost allocation plans are provided in a brochure published by the Department of Health and Human Services entitled ''*A Guide for State, Local and Indian Tribal Governments: Cost Principles and Procedures for Developing Cost Allocation Plans and Indirect Cost Rates for Agreements with the Federal Government.*'' A copy of this brochure may be obtained from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office.

B. Definitions

1. *Agency or operating agency* means an organizational unit or sub-division within a governmental unit that is responsible for the performance or administration of Federal awards or activities of the governmental unit.

2. *Allocated central services* means central services that benefit operating agencies but are not billed to the agencies on a fee-for-service or similar basis. These costs are allocated to benefitted agencies on some reasonable basis. Examples of such services might include general accounting, personnel administration, purchasing, etc.

3. *Billed central services* means central services that are billed to benefitted agencies or programs on an individual fee-for-service or similar basis. Typical examples of billed central services include computer services, transportation services, insurance, and fringe benefits.

4. *Cognizant agency for indirect costs* is defined in § 200.19 Cognizant agency for indirect costs of this Part. The determination of cognizant agency for indirect costs for states and local governments is described in section F.1, Negotiation and Approval of Central Service Plans.

5. *Major local government* means local government that receives more than $100 million in direct Federal awards subject to this Part.

C. Scope of the Central Service Cost Allocation Plans

The central service cost allocation plan will include all central service costs that will be claimed (either as a billed or an allocated cost) under Federal awards and will be documented as described in section E. Costs of central services omitted from the plan will not be reimbursed.

D. Submission Requirements

1. Each state will submit a plan to the Department of Health and Human Services for each year in which it claims central service costs under Federal awards. The plan should include (a) a projection of the next year's allocated central service cost (based either on actual costs for the most recently completed year or the budget projection for the coming year), and (b) a reconciliation of

actual allocated central service costs to the estimated costs used for either the most recently completed year or the year immediately preceding the most recently completed year.

2. Each major local government is also required to submit a plan to its cognizant agency for indirect costs annually.

3. All other local governments claiming central service costs must develop a plan in accordance with the requirements described in this Part and maintain the plan and related supporting documentation for audit. These local governments are not required to submit their plans for Federal approval unless they are specifically requested to do so by the cognizant agency for indirect costs. Where a local government only receives funds as a subrecipient, the pass-through entity will be responsible for monitoring the subrecipient's plan.

4. All central service cost allocation plans will be prepared and, when required, submitted within six months prior to the beginning of each of the governmental unit's fiscal years in which it proposes to claim central service costs. Extensions may be granted by the cognizant agency for indirect costs on a case-by-case basis.

E. Documentation Requirements for Submitted Plans

The documentation requirements described in this section may be modified, expanded, or reduced by the cognizant agency for indirect costs on a case-by-case basis. For example, the requirements may be reduced for those central services which have little or no impact on Federal awards. Conversely, if a review of a plan indicates that certain additional information is needed, and will likely be needed in future years, it may be routinely requested in future plan submissions. Items marked with an asterisk (*) should be submitted only once; subsequent plans should merely indicate any changes since the last plan.

1. General

All proposed plans must be accompanied by the following: an organization chart sufficiently detailed to show operations including the central service activities of the state/local government whether or not they are shown as benefitting from central service functions; a copy of the Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (or a copy of the Executive Budget if budgeted costs are being proposed) to support the allowable costs of each central service activity included in the plan; and, a certification (see subsection 4.) that the plan was prepared in accordance with this Part, contains only allowable costs, and was prepared in a manner that treated similar costs consistently among the various Federal awards and between Federal and non-Federal awards/activities.

2. Allocated Central Services

For each allocated central service, the plan must also include the following: a brief description of the service, an identification of the unit rendering the service and the operating agencies receiving the service, the items of expense included in the cost of the service, the method used to distribute the cost of the service to benefitted agencies, and a summary schedule showing the allocation of each service to the specific benefitted agencies. If any self-insurance funds or fringe benefits costs are treated as allocated (rather than billed) central services, documentation discussed in subsections 3.b. and c. must also be included.

3. Billed Services

a. *General.* The information described in this section must be provided for all billed central services, including internal service funds, self-insurance funds, and fringe benefit funds.

b. Internal service funds.

(1) For each internal service fund or similar activity with an operating budget of $5 million or more, the plan must include: a brief description of each service; a balance sheet for each fund based on individual accounts contained in the governmental unit's accounting system; a revenue/expenses statement, with revenues broken out by source, e.g., regular billings, interest earned, etc.; a listing of all non-operating transfers (as defined by Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP)) into and out of the fund; a description of the procedures (methodology) used to charge the costs of each service to users, including how billing rates are determined; a schedule of current rates; and, a schedule comparing total revenues (including imputed revenues) generated by the service to the allowable costs of the service, as determined under this Part, with an explanation of how variances will be handled.

(2) Revenues must consist of all revenues generated by the service, including unbilled and uncollected revenues. If some users were not billed for the services (or were not billed at the full rate for that class of users), a schedule showing the full imputed revenues associated with these users must be provided. Expenses must be broken out by object cost categories (e.g., salaries, supplies, etc.).

c. *Self-insurance funds.* For each self-insurance fund, the plan must include: the fund balance sheet; a statement of revenue and expenses including a summary of billings and claims paid by agency; a listing of all non-operating transfers into and out of the fund; the type(s) of risk(s) covered by the fund (e.g., automobile liability, workers' compensation, etc.); an explanation of how the level of fund contributions are determined, including a copy of the current actuarial report (with the actuarial assumptions used) if the contributions are determined on an actuarial basis; and, a description of the procedures used to charge or allocate fund contributions to benefitted activities. Reserve levels in excess of claims (1) submitted and adjudicated but not paid, (2) submitted but not adjudicated, and (3) incurred but not submitted must be identified and explained.

d. *Fringe benefits.* For fringe benefit costs, the plan must include: a listing of fringe benefits provided to covered employees, and the overall annual cost of each type of benefit; current fringe benefit policies; and procedures used to charge or allocate the costs of the benefits to benefitted activities. In addition, for pension and post-retirement health insurance plans, the following information must be provided: the governmental unit's funding policies, e.g., legislative bills, trust agreements, or state-mandated contribution rules, if different from actuarially determined rates; the pension plan's costs accrued for the year; the amount funded, and date(s) of funding; a copy of the current actuarial report (including the actuarial assumptions); the plan trustee's report; and, a schedule from the activity showing the value of the interest cost associated with late funding.

4. Required Certification

Each central service cost allocation plan will be accompanied by a certification in the following form:

CERTIFICATE OF COST ALLOCATION PLAN

This is to certify that I have reviewed the cost allocation plan submitted herewith and to the best of my knowledge and belief:

(1) All costs included in this proposal [identify date] to establish cost allocations or billings for [identify period covered by plan] are allowable in accordance with the requirements of this Part and the Federal award(s) to which they apply. Unallowable costs have been adjusted for in allocating costs as indicated in the cost allocation plan.

(2) All costs included in this proposal are properly allocable to Federal awards on the basis of a beneficial or causal relationship between the expenses incurred and the Federal awards to which they are allocated in accordance with applicable requirements. Further, the same costs that have been treated as indirect costs have not been claimed as direct costs. Similar types of costs have been accounted for consistently.

I declare that the foregoing is true and correct.

Governmental Unit: _____
Signature: _____
Name of Official: _____
Title: _____
Date of Execution: _____

F. Negotiation and Approval of Central Service Plans

1. Federal Cognizant Agency for Indirect Costs Assignments for Cost Negotiation

In general, unless different arrangements are agreed to by the concerned Federal agencies, for central service cost allocation plans, the cognizant agency responsible for review and approval is the Federal agency with the largest dollar value of total Federal awards with a governmental unit. For indirect cost rates and departmental indirect cost allocation plans, the cognizant agency is the Federal agency with the largest dollar value of direct Federal awards with a governmental unit or component, as appropriate. Once designated as the cognizant agency for indirect costs, the Federal agency must remain so for a period of five years. In addition, the following Federal agencies continue to be responsible for the indicated governmental entities:

Department of Health and Human Services—Public assistance and state-wide cost allocation plans for all states (including the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico),

state and local hospitals, libraries and health districts.

Department of the Interior—Indian tribal governments, territorial governments, and state and local park and recreational districts.

Department of Labor—State and local labor departments.

Department of Education—School districts and state and local education agencies.

Department of Agriculture—State and local agriculture departments.

Department of Transportation—State and local airport and port authorities and transit districts.

Department of Commerce—State and local economic development districts.

Department of Housing and Urban Development—State and local housing and development districts.

Environmental Protection Agency—State and local water and sewer districts.

2. Review

All proposed central service cost allocation plans that are required to be submitted will be reviewed, negotiated, and approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs on a timely basis. The cognizant agency for indirect costs will review the proposal within six months of receipt of the proposal and either negotiate/approve the proposal or advise the governmental unit of the additional documentation needed to support/evaluate the proposed plan or the changes required to make the proposal acceptable. Once an agreement with the governmental unit has been reached, the agreement will be accepted and used by all Federal agencies, unless prohibited or limited by statute. Where a Federal awarding agency has reason to believe that special operating factors affecting its Federal awards necessitate special consideration, the funding agency will, prior to the time the plans are negotiated, notify the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

3. Agreement

The results of each negotiation must be formalized in a written agreement between the cognizant agency for indirect costs and the governmental unit. This agreement will be subject to re-opening if the agreement is subsequently found to violate a statute or the information upon which the plan was negotiated is later found to be materially incomplete or inaccurate. The results of the negotiation must be made available to all Federal agencies for their use.

4. Adjustments

Negotiated cost allocation plans based on a proposal later found to have included costs that: (a) are unallowable (i) as specified by law or regulation, (ii) as identified in subpart F, General Provisions for selected Items of Cost of this Part, or (iii) by the terms and conditions of Federal awards, or (b) are unallowable because they are clearly not allocable to Federal awards, must be adjusted, or a refund must be made at the option of the cognizant agency for indirect costs, including earned or imputed interest from the date of transfer and debt interest, if applicable, chargeable in accordance with applicable Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs regulations. Adjustments or cash refunds may include, at the option of the cognizant agency for indirect costs, earned or imputed interest from the date of expenditure and delinquent debt interest, if applicable, chargeable in accordance with applicable cognizant agency claims collection regulations. These adjustments or refunds are designed to correct the plans and do not constitute a reopening of the negotiation.

G. Other Policies

1. Billed Central Service Activities

Each billed central service activity must separately account for all revenues (including imputed revenues) generated by the service, expenses incurred to furnish the service, and profit/loss.

2. Working Capital Reserves

Internal service funds are dependent upon a reasonable level of working capital reserve to operate from one billing cycle to the next. Charges by an internal service activity to provide for the establishment and maintenance of a reasonable level of working capital reserve, in addition to the full recovery of costs, are allowable. A working capital reserve as part of retained earnings of up to 60 calendar days cash expenses for normal operating purposes is considered reasonable. A working capital reserve exceeding 60 calendar days may be approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs in exceptional cases.

3. Carry-Forward Adjustments of Allocated Central Service Costs

Allocated central service costs are usually negotiated and approved for a future fiscal year on a ''fixed with carry-forward'' basis. Under this procedure, the fixed amounts for the future year covered by agreement are not subject to adjustment for that year. However, when the actual costs of the year involved become known, the differences between the fixed amounts previously approved and the actual costs will be carried forward and used as an adjustment to the fixed amounts established for a later year. This ''carry-forward'' procedure applies to all central services whose costs were fixed in the approved plan. However, a carry-forward adjustment is not permitted, for a central service activity that was not included in the approved plan, or for unallowable costs that must be reimbursed immediately.

4. Adjustments of Billed Central Services

Billing rates used to charge Federal awards must be based on the estimated costs of providing the services, including an estimate of the allocable central service costs. A comparison of the revenue generated by each billed service (including total revenues whether or not billed or collected) to the actual allowable costs of the service will be made at least annually, and an adjustment will be made for the difference between the revenue and the allowable costs. These adjustments will be made through one of the following adjustment methods: (a) a cash refund including earned or imputed interest from the date of transfer and debt interest, if applicable, chargeable in accordance with applicable Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs regulations to the Federal Government for the Federal share of the adjustment, (b) credits to the amounts charged to the individual programs, (c) adjustments to future billing rates, or (d) adjustments to allocated central service costs. Adjustments to allocated central services will not be permitted where the total amount of the adjustment for a particular service (Federal share and non-Federal) share exceeds $500,000. Adjustment methods may include, at the option of the cognizant agency, earned or imputed interest from the date of expenditure and delinquent debt interest, if applicable, chargeable in accordance with applicable cognizant agency claims collection regulations.

5. Records Retention

All central service cost allocation plans and related documentation used as a basis for claiming costs under Federal awards must be retained for audit in accordance with the records retention requirements contained in Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements, of Part 200.

6. Appeals

If a dispute arises in the negotiation of a plan between the cognizant agency for indirect costs and the governmental unit, the dispute must be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures of the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

7. OMB Assistance

To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies or governmental units in connection with the negotiation and approval process, OMB will lend assistance, as required, to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

Appendix VI to Part 200—Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans

A. General

Federally-financed programs administered by state public assistance agencies are funded predominately by the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). In support of its stewardship requirements, HHS has published requirements for the development, documentation, submission, negotiation, and approval of public assistance cost allocation plans in Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95. All administrative costs (direct and indirect) are normally charged to Federal awards by implementing the public assistance cost allocation plan. This Appendix extends these requirements to all Federal agencies whose programs are administered by a state public assistance agency. Major federally-financed programs typically administered by state public assistance agencies include: Temporary Aid to Needy Families (TANF), Medicaid, Food Stamps, Child Support Enforcement, Adoption Assistance and Foster Care, and Social Services Block Grant.

B. Definitions

1. *State public assistance agency* means a state agency administering or supervising the administration of one or more public assistance programs operated by the state as identified in Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95. For the purpose of this Appendix, these programs

include all programs administered by the state public assistance agency.

2. *State public assistance agency costs* means all costs incurred by, or allocable to, the state public assistance agency, except expenditures for financial assistance, medical contractor payments, food stamps, and payments for services and goods provided directly to program recipients.

C. Policy

State public assistance agencies will develop, document and implement, and the Federal Government will review, negotiate, and approve, public assistance cost allocation plans in accordance with Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95. The plan will include all programs administered by the state public assistance agency. Where a letter of approval or disapproval is transmitted to a state public assistance agency in accordance with Subpart E, the letter will apply to all Federal agencies and programs. The remaining sections of this Appendix (except for the requirement for certification) summarize the provisions of Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95.

D. Submission, Documentation, and Approval of Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans

1. State public assistance agencies are required to promptly submit amendments to the cost allocation plan to HHS for review and approval.

2. Under the coordination process outlined in section E, Review of Implementation of Approved Plans, affected Federal agencies will review all new plans and plan amendments and provide comments, as appropriate, to HHS. The effective date of the plan or plan amendment will be the first day of the calendar quarter following the event that required the amendment, unless another date is specifically approved by HHS. HHS, as the cognizant agency for indirect costs acting on behalf of all affected Federal agencies, will, as necessary, conduct negotiations with the state public assistance agency and will inform the state agency of the action taken on the plan or plan amendment.

E. Review of Implementation of Approved Plans

1. Since public assistance cost allocation plans are of a narrative nature, the review during the plan approval process consists of evaluating the appropriateness of the proposed groupings of costs (cost centers) and the related allocation bases. As such, the Federal government needs some assurance that the cost allocation plan has been implemented as approved. This is accomplished by reviews by the funding agencies, single audits, or audits conducted by the cognizant audit agency.

2. Where inappropriate charges affecting more than one funding agency are identified, the cognizant HHS cost negotiation office will be advised and will take the lead in resolving the issue(s) as provided for in Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95.

3. If a dispute arises in the negotiation of a plan or from a disallowance involving two or more funding agencies, the dispute must be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures set out in 45 CFR Part 16. Disputes involving only one funding agency will be resolved in accordance with the Federal awarding agency's appeal process.

4. To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies or governmental units in connection with the negotiation and approval process, the Office of Management and Budget will lend assistance, as required, to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

F. Unallowable Costs

Claims developed under approved cost allocation plans will be based on allowable costs as identified in this Part. Where unallowable costs have been claimed and reimbursed, they will be refunded to the program that reimbursed the unallowable cost using one of the following methods: (a) a cash refund, (b) offset to a subsequent claim, or (c) credits to the amounts charged to individual Federal awards. Cash refunds, offsets, and credits may include at the option of the cognizant agency for indirect cost, earned or imputed interest from the date of expenditure and delinquent debt interest, if applicable, chargeable in accordance with applicable cognizant agency for indirect cost claims collection regulations.

Appendix VII to Part 200—States and Local Government and Indian Tribe Indirect Cost Proposals

A. General

1. Indirect costs are those that have been incurred for common or joint purposes. These costs benefit more than one cost objective and cannot be readily identified with a particular final cost objective without effort disproportionate to the results achieved. After direct costs have been determined and assigned directly to Federal awards and other activities as appropriate, indirect costs are those remaining to be allocated to benefitted cost objectives. A cost may not be allocated to a Federal award as an indirect cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances, has been assigned to a Federal award as a direct cost.

2. Indirect costs include (a) the indirect costs originating in each department or agency of the governmental unit carrying out Federal awards and (b) the costs of central governmental services distributed through the central service cost allocation plan (as described in Appendix V to Part 200—State/Local Government and Indian Tribe-Wide Central Service Cost Allocation Plans) and not otherwise treated as direct costs.

3. Indirect costs are normally charged to Federal awards by the use of an indirect cost rate. A separate indirect cost rate(s) is usually necessary for each department or agency of the governmental unit claiming indirect costs under Federal awards. Guidelines and illustrations of indirect cost proposals are provided in a brochure published by the Department of Health and Human Services entitled ''*A Guide for States and Local Government Agencies: Cost Principles and Procedures for Establishing Cost Allocation Plans and Indirect Cost Rates for Grants and Contracts with the Federal Government.*'' A copy of this brochure may be obtained from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office.

4. Because of the diverse characteristics and accounting practices of governmental units, the types of costs which may be classified as indirect costs cannot be specified in all situations. However, typical examples of indirect costs may include certain state/local-wide central service costs, general administration of the non-Federal entity accounting and personnel services performed within the non-Federal entity, depreciation on buildings and equipment, the costs of operating and maintaining facilities.

5. This Appendix does not apply to state public assistance agencies. These agencies should refer instead to Appendix VII to Part 200—States and Local Government and Indian Tribe Indirect Cost Proposals.

B. Definitions

1. *Base* means the accumulated direct costs (normally either total direct salaries and wages or total direct costs exclusive of any extraordinary or distorting expenditures) used to distribute indirect costs to individual Federal awards. The direct cost base selected should result in each Federal award bearing a fair share of the indirect costs in reasonable relation to the benefits received from the costs.

2. *Base period* for the allocation of indirect costs is the period in which such costs are incurred and accumulated for allocation to activities performed in that period. The base period normally should coincide with the governmental unit's fiscal year, but in any event, must be so selected as to avoid inequities in the allocation of costs.

3. *Cognizant agency for indirect costs* means the Federal agency responsible for reviewing and approving the governmental unit's indirect cost rate(s) on the behalf of the Federal government. The cognizant agency for indirect costs assignment is described in Appendix VI, section F, Negotiation and Approval of Central Service Plans.

4. *Final rate* means an indirect cost rate applicable to a specified past period which is based on the actual allowable costs of the period. A final audited rate is not subject to adjustment.

5. *Fixed rate* means an indirect cost rate which has the same characteristics as a predetermined rate, except that the difference between the estimated costs and the actual, allowable costs of the period covered by the rate is carried forward as an adjustment to the rate computation of a subsequent period.

6. *Indirect cost pool* is the accumulated costs that jointly benefit two or more programs or other cost objectives.

7. *Indirect cost rate* is a device for determining in a reasonable manner the proportion of indirect costs each program should bear. It is the ratio (expressed as a percentage) of the indirect costs to a direct cost base.

8. *Indirect cost rate proposal* means the documentation prepared by a governmental unit or subdivision thereof to substantiate its request for the establishment of an indirect cost rate.

9. *Predetermined rate* means an indirect cost rate, applicable to a specified current or

future period, usually the governmental unit's fiscal year. This rate is based on an estimate of the costs to be incurred during the period. Except under very unusual circumstances, a predetermined rate is not subject to adjustment. (Because of legal constraints, predetermined rates are not permitted for Federal contracts; they may, however, be used for grants or cooperative agreements.) Predetermined rates may not be used by governmental units that have not submitted and negotiated the rate with the cognizant agency for indirect costs. In view of the potential advantages offered by this procedure, negotiation of predetermined rates for indirect costs for a period of two to four years should be the norm in those situations where the cost experience and other pertinent facts available are deemed sufficient to enable the parties involved to reach an informed judgment as to the probable level of indirect costs during the ensuing accounting periods.

10. *Provisional rate* means a temporary indirect cost rate applicable to a specified period which is used for funding, interim reimbursement, and reporting indirect costs on Federal awards pending the establishment of a ''final'' rate for that period.

C. Allocation of Indirect Costs and Determination of Indirect Cost Rates

1. General

a. Where a governmental unit's department or agency has only one major function, or where all its major functions benefit from the indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs and the computation of an indirect cost rate may be accomplished through simplified allocation procedures as described in subsection 2.

b. Where a governmental unit's department or agency has several major functions which benefit from its indirect costs in varying degrees, the allocation of indirect costs may require the accumulation of such costs into separate cost groupings which then are allocated individually to benefitted functions by means of a base which best measures the relative degree of benefit. The indirect costs allocated to each function are then distributed to individual Federal awards and other activities included in that function by means of an indirect cost rate(s).

c. Specific methods for allocating indirect costs and computing indirect cost rates along with the conditions under which each method should be used are described in subsections 2, 3 and 4.

2. Simplified Method

a. Where a non-Federal entity's major functions benefit from its indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs may be accomplished by (1) classifying the non-Federal entity's total costs for the base period as either direct or indirect, and (2) dividing the total allowable indirect costs (net of applicable credits) by an equitable distribution base. The result of this process is an indirect cost rate which is used to distribute indirect costs to individual Federal awards. The rate should be expressed as the percentage which the total amount of allowable indirect costs bears to the base selected. This method should also be used where a governmental unit's department or agency has only one major function encompassing a number of individual projects or activities, and may be used where the level of Federal awards to that department or agency is relatively small.

b. Both the direct costs and the indirect costs must exclude capital expenditures and unallowable costs. However, unallowable costs must be included in the direct costs if they represent activities to which indirect costs are properly allocable.

c. The distribution base may be (1) total direct costs (excluding capital expenditures and other distorting items, such as pass-through funds, subcontracts in excess of $25,000, participant support costs, etc.), (2) direct salaries and wages, or (3) another base which results in an equitable distribution.

3. Multiple Allocation Base Method

a. Where a non-Federal entity's indirect costs benefit its major functions in varying degrees, such costs must be accumulated into separate cost groupings. Each grouping must then be allocated individually to benefitted functions by means of a base which best measures the relative benefits.

b. The cost groupings should be established so as to permit the allocation of each grouping on the basis of benefits provided to the major functions. Each grouping should constitute a pool of expenses that are of like character in terms of the functions they benefit and in terms of the allocation base which best measures the relative benefits provided to each function. The number of separate groupings should be held within practical limits, taking into consideration the materiality of the amounts involved and the degree of precision needed.

c. Actual conditions must be taken into account in selecting the base to be used in allocating the expenses in each grouping to benefitted functions. When an allocation can be made by assignment of a cost grouping directly to the function benefitted, the allocation must be made in that manner. When the expenses in a grouping are more general in nature, the allocation should be made through the use of a selected base which produces results that are equitable to both the Federal government and the governmental unit. In general, any cost element or related factor associated with the governmental unit's activities is potentially adaptable for use as an allocation base provided that: (1) it can readily be expressed in terms of dollars or other quantitative measures (total direct costs, direct salaries and wages, staff hours applied, square feet used, hours of usage, number of documents processed, population served, and the like), and (2) it is common to the benefitted functions during the base period.

d. Except where a special indirect cost rate(s) is required in accordance with paragraph (C)(4) of this Appendix, the separate groupings of indirect costs allocated to each major function must be aggregated and treated as a common pool for that function. The costs in the common pool must then be distributed to individual Federal awards included in that function by use of a single indirect cost rate.

e. The distribution base used in computing the indirect cost rate for each function may be (1) total direct costs (excluding capital expenditures and other distorting items such as pass-through funds, subcontracts in excess of $25,000, participant support costs, etc.), (2) direct salaries and wages, or (3) another base which results in an equitable distribution. An indirect cost rate should be developed for each separate indirect cost pool developed. The rate in each case should be stated as the percentage relationship between the particular indirect cost pool and the distribution base identified with that pool.

4. Special Indirect Cost Rates

a. In some instances, a single indirect cost rate for all activities of a non-Federal entity or for each major function of the agency may not be appropriate. It may not take into account those different factors which may substantially affect the indirect costs applicable to a particular program or group of programs. The factors may include the physical location of the work, the level of administrative support required, the nature of the facilities or other resources employed, the organizational arrangements used, or any combination thereof. When a particular Federal award is carried out in an environment which appears to generate a significantly different level of indirect costs, provisions should be made for a separate indirect cost pool applicable to that Federal award. The separate indirect cost pool should be developed during the course of the regular allocation process, and the separate indirect cost rate resulting therefrom should be used, provided that: (1) The rate differs significantly from the rate which would have been developed under paragraphs (C)(2) and (C)(3) of this Appendix, and (2) the Federal award to which the rate would apply is material in amount.

b. Where Federal statutes restrict the reimbursement of certain indirect costs, it may be necessary to develop a special rate for the affected Federal award. Where a ''restricted rate'' is required, the same procedure for developing a non-restricted rate will be used except for the additional step of the elimination from the indirect cost pool those costs for which the law prohibits reimbursement.

D. Submission and Documentation of Proposals

1. Submission of Indirect Cost Rate Proposals

a. All departments or agencies of the governmental unit desiring to claim indirect costs under Federal awards must prepare an indirect cost rate proposal and related documentation to support those costs. The proposal and related documentation must be retained for audit in accordance with the records retention requirements contained in the Common Rule.

b. A governmental department or agency unit that receives more than $35 million in direct Federal funding must submit its indirect cost rate proposal to its cognizant agency for indirect costs. Other governmental department or agency must develop an indirect cost proposal in accordance with the requirements of this Part and maintain the

proposal and related supporting documentation for audit. These governmental departments or agencies are not required to submit their proposals unless they are specifically requested to do so by the cognizant agency for indirect costs. Where a non-Federal entity only receives funds as a subrecipient, the pass-through entity will be responsible for negotiating and/or monitoring the subrecipient's indirect costs.

c. Each Indian tribal government desiring reimbursement of indirect costs must submit its indirect cost proposal to the Department of the Interior (its cognizant agency for indirect costs).

d. Indirect cost proposals must be developed (and, when required, submitted) within six months after the close of the governmental unit's fiscal year, unless an exception is approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs. If the proposed central service cost allocation plan for the same period has not been approved by that time, the indirect cost proposal may be prepared including an amount for central services that is based on the latest federally-approved central service cost allocation plan. The difference between these central service amounts and the amounts ultimately approved will be compensated for by an adjustment in a subsequent period.

2. Documentation of Proposals

The following must be included with each indirect cost proposal:

a. The rates proposed, including subsidiary work sheets and other relevant data, cross referenced and reconciled to the financial data noted in subsection b. Allocated central service costs will be supported by the summary table included in the approved central service cost allocation plan. This summary table is not required to be submitted with the indirect cost proposal if the central service cost allocation plan for the same fiscal year has been approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs and is available to the funding agency.

b. A copy of the financial data (financial statements, comprehensive annual financial report, executive budgets, accounting reports, etc.) upon which the rate is based. Adjustments resulting from the use of unaudited data will be recognized, where appropriate, by the Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs in a subsequent proposal.

c. The approximate amount of direct base costs incurred under Federal awards. These costs should be broken out between salaries and wages and other direct costs.

d. A chart showing the organizational structure of the agency during the period for which the proposal applies, along with a functional statement(s) noting the duties and/or responsibilities of all units that comprise the agency. (Once this is submitted, only revisions need be submitted with subsequent proposals.)

3. Required certification.

Each indirect cost rate proposal must be accompanied by a certification in the following form:

CERTIFICATE OF INDIRECT COSTS

This is to certify that I have reviewed the indirect cost rate proposal submitted herewith and to the best of my knowledge and belief:

(1) All costs included in this proposal [identify date] to establish billing or final indirect costs rates for [identify period covered by rate] are allowable in accordance with the requirements of the Federal award(s) to which they apply and the provisions of this Part. Unallowable costs have been adjusted for in allocating costs as indicated in the indirect cost proposal

(2) All costs included in this proposal are properly allocable to Federal awards on the basis of a beneficial or causal relationship between the expenses incurred and the agreements to which they are allocated in accordance with applicable requirements. Further, the same costs that have been treated as indirect costs have not been claimed as direct costs. Similar types of costs have been accounted for consistently and the Federal government will be notified of any accounting changes that would affect the predetermined rate.

I declare that the foregoing is true and correct.

Governmental Unit: _____
Signature: _____
Name of Official: _____
Title: _____
Date of Execution: _____

E. Negotiation and Approval of Rates.

1. Indirect cost rates will be reviewed, negotiated, and approved by the cognizant agency on a timely basis. Once a rate has been agreed upon, it will be accepted and used by all Federal agencies unless prohibited or limited by statute. Where a Federal awarding agency has reason to believe that special operating factors affecting its Federal awards necessitate special indirect cost rates, the funding agency will, prior to the time the rates are negotiated, notify the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

2. The use of predetermined rates, if allowed, is encouraged where the cognizant agency for indirect costs has reasonable assurance based on past experience and reliable projection of the non-Federal entity's costs, that the rate is not likely to exceed a rate based on actual costs. Long-term agreements utilizing predetermined rates extending over two or more years are encouraged, where appropriate.

3. The results of each negotiation must be formalized in a written agreement between the cognizant agency for indirect costs and the governmental unit. This agreement will be subject to re-opening if the agreement is subsequently found to violate a statute, or the information upon which the plan was negotiated is later found to be materially incomplete or inaccurate. The agreed upon rates must be made available to all Federal agencies for their use.

4. Refunds must be made if proposals are later found to have included costs that (a) are unallowable (i) as specified by law or regulation, (ii) as identified in § 200.420 Considerations for selected items of cost, of this Part, or (iii) by the terms and conditions of Federal awards, or (b) are unallowable because they are clearly not allocable to Federal awards. These adjustments or refunds will be made regardless of the type of rate negotiated (predetermined, final, fixed, or provisional).

F. Other Policies

1. Fringe Benefit Rates

If overall fringe benefit rates are not approved for the governmental unit as part of the central service cost allocation plan, these rates will be reviewed, negotiated and approved for individual recipient agencies during the indirect cost negotiation process. In these cases, a proposed fringe benefit rate computation should accompany the indirect cost proposal. If fringe benefit rates are not used at the recipient agency level (i.e., the agency specifically identifies fringe benefit costs to individual employees), the governmental unit should so advise the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

2. Billed Services Provided by the Recipient Agency

In some cases, governmental departments or agencies (components of the governmental unit) provide and bill for services similar to those covered by central service cost allocation plans (e.g., computer centers). Where this occurs, the governmental departments or agencies (components of the governmental unit)should be guided by the requirements in Appendix VI relating to the development of billing rates and documentation requirements, and should advise the cognizant agency for indirect costs of any billed services. Reviews of these types of services (including reviews of costing/billing methodology, profits or losses, etc.) will be made on a case-by-case basis as warranted by the circumstances involved.

3. Indirect Cost Allocations Not Using Rates

In certain situations, governmental departments or agencies (components of the governmental unit), because of the nature of their Federal awards, may be required to develop a cost allocation plan that distributes indirect (and, in some cases, direct) costs to the specific funding sources. In these cases, a narrative cost allocation methodology should be developed, documented, maintained for audit, or submitted, as appropriate, to the cognizant agency for indirect costs for review, negotiation, and approval.

4. Appeals

If a dispute arises in a negotiation of an indirect cost rate (or other rate) between the cognizant agency for indirect costs and the governmental unit, the dispute must be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures of the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

5. Collection of Unallowable Costs and Erroneous Payments

Costs specifically identified as unallowable and charged to Federal awards either directly or indirectly will be refunded (including interest chargeable in accordance with applicable Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs regulations).

6. OMB Assistance

To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies or

governmental units in connection with the negotiation and approval process, OMB will lend assistance, as required, to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

Appendix VIII to Part 200—Nonprofit Organizations Exempted From Subpart E—Cost Principles of Part 200

1. Advance Technology Institute (ATI), Charleston, South Carolina
2. Aerospace Corporation, El Segundo, California
3. American Institutes of Research (AIR), Washington, DC
4. Argonne National Laboratory, Chicago, Illinois
5. Atomic Casualty Commission, Washington, DC
6. Battelle Memorial Institute, Headquartered in Columbus, Ohio
7. Brookhaven National Laboratory, Upton, New York
8. Charles Stark Draper Laboratory, Incorporated, Cambridge, Massachusetts
9. CNA Corporation (CNAC), Alexandria, Virginia
10. Environmental Institute of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Michigan
11. Georgia Institute of Technology/Georgia Tech Applied Research Corporation/ Georgia Tech Research Institute, Atlanta, Georgia
12. Hanford Environmental Health Foundation, Richland, Washington
13. IIT Research Institute, Chicago, Illinois
14. Institute of Gas Technology, Chicago, Illinois
15. Institute for Defense Analysis, Alexandria, Virginia
16. LMI, McLean, Virginia
17. Mitre Corporation, Bedford, Massachusetts
18. Noblis, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia
19. National Radiological Astronomy Observatory, Green Bank, West Virginia
20. National Renewable Energy Laboratory, Golden, Colorado
21. Oak Ridge Associated Universities, Oak Ridge, Tennessee
22. Rand Corporation, Santa Monica, California
23. Research Triangle Institute, Research Triangle Park, North Carolina
24. Riverside Research Institute, New York, New York
25. South Carolina Research Authority (SCRA), Charleston, South Carolina
26. Southern Research Institute, Birmingham, Alabama
27. Southwest Research Institute, San Antonio, Texas
28. SRI International, Menlo Park, California
29. Syracuse Research Corporation, Syracuse, New York
30. Universities Research Association, Incorporated (National Acceleration Lab), Argonne, Illinois
31. Urban Institute, Washington DC
32. Non-profit insurance companies, such as Blue Cross and Blue Shield Organizations
33. Other non-profit organizations as negotiated with Federal awarding agencies

Appendix IX to Part 200—Hospital Cost Principles

Based on initial feedback, OMB proposes to establish a review process to consider existing hospital cost determine how best to update and align them with this Part. Until such time as revised guidance is proposed and implemented for hospitals, the existing principles located at 45 CFR Part 74 Appendix E, entitled ''Principles for Determining Cost Applicable to Research and Development Under Grants and Contracts with Hospitals,'' remain in effect.

Appendix X to Part 200—Data Collection Form (Form SF–SAC)

The Data Collection Form SF–SAC is available on the FAC Web site.

Appendix XI to Part 200—Compliance Supplement

The compliance supplement is available on the OMB Web site: (e.g. for 2013 here *http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/circulars/)*

PARTS 215, 220, 225, and 230—[REMOVED]

■ 4. Remove parts 215, 220, 225, and 230.

[FR Doc. 2013–30465 Filed 12–19–13; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE P

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix H

Formatted: Left: 0.5", Right: 0.5", Top: 0.5", Bottom: 0.5"

STATE PIPELINE SAFETY MENTORING PROGRAM

Mission:
Provide a process by which state programs shall be able to take advantage of providing or receiving mentoring from or to other state pipeline safety programs or PHMSA.

Goals:
To provide supplemental information beyond that currently available to state safety programs for the purpose of enhancing pipeline safety and to further the knowledge base of all state pipeline inspector(s) in the use of various inspection and investigation techniques, to exchange state training programs, to assist in promoting consistent of enforcement of federal regulations consistent with our federal partners at the state level, and to assist other state inspectors in their professional growth and improved knowledge of inspection techniques.

Objectives:

- Review discuss, and utilize inspection techniques;
- Develop and nurture relationships between state programs and their staff in order to provide for more opportunities to expand mentoring programs between both state programs and with PHMSA;
- Increase state-to-state inspection and enforcement consistency as applicable to federal pipeline safety regulations;
- Enhance critical thinking processes that apply to inspections of various size operators;
- Broaden a state's knowledge of the diversity of gas pipeline facilities in other states;
- Develop/review varying processes for relevant data collection including, but not limited to, Damage Prevention, Integrity Management, and Incidents;
- Develop successful processes for conducting accident and incident investigations as well as a review of supporting reporting documentation requirements.

Program Guidelines:

- Mentoring application will be submitted to the PHMSA Director of State Programs for approval;
- Invitational Travel (based on availability) will be provided by PHMSA after application approval;
- Mentoring sessions will be no longer than five working days;
- States shall have the ability to arrange their own mentoring sessions with other states without invitational travel, but the state will still need an approved application in order for travel and personnel costs to be recovered through their State Pipeline Safety Base Grant;
- States that choose to arrange their own mentoring program without the approval of the PHMSA shall be responsible for all cost associated with the mentoring and shall not be allowed to recover those cost through their Grant;
- The state providing and the state receiving approved mentoring shall both provide to the PHMSA Director of State Programs a post-session Action Report identifying the advantages, lessons learned and other relevant information acquired as a result of the mentoring session. A copy of this report will also be provided to the NAPSR Administrative Manager for posting on the private NAPSR web page.

Contact Information:

- Zach Barrett – Director of State Programs, 1-405-834-8344 zach.barrett@dot.gov

- Robert Clarillos – NAPSR Administrative Manager, 480-263-2260 rclarillos@gmail.com

Contact your PHMSA State Program liaison for further questions.

Instructions for Inspection Mentoring Applicants

August 6, 2014

1) **Discuss inspection mentoring with Program Manager and obtain their approval.**
2) **With Program Manager identify possible inspection mentoring opportunities (State or Federal) in accordance with the "Program Guidelines" in the "Pipeline Safety Inspector Mentoring Program Outline" document.**
3) **Complete "Mentoring Application" Form and email to Don.Martin@dot.gov and copy Zach.Barrett@dot.gov**
4) **Obtain an email approval from Don Martin, PHMSA State Coordinator or Zach Barrett, PHMSA Director of State Programs.**
5) **Submit Invitational Travel Request through established Invitational Travel process**

6) Provide feedback for improving inspection mentoring process in accordance with the "Program Guidelines".

MENTORING APPLICATION

(Form to be completed by State Program Manager requesting mentoring)

Date of Request	**DD/MM/YYYY**
State Program (Requesting Mentoring)	Choose an item.
State Program (Providing Mentoring)	
Describe the Invitational Travel being requested Including dates, transportation, lodging, special needs, etc.	

Provide a brief synopsis of the goals / expectations of the mentoring to be received:

Provide a brief summary identifying the qualifications of the person who will be providing the mentoring: should Include all relevant experience:

List all courses completed in PHMSA's Training and Qualification Division if applicable to the proposed mentoring objectives:

- Has mentoring under this program been provided previously to the requesting state program? Circle One: Yes No
- Do travel restrictions exist for State Program providing the mentoring? List any blackout dates – TQ conflict dates – other dates not available within this calendar year:

Comments:

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix I

PIPELINE SAFETY NATURAL GAS STATE PROGRAM EVALUATION – CY2012	
A – PROGRESS REPORT AND PROGRAM DOCUMENTATION REVIEW	10
B – PROGRAM INSPECTION PROCEDURES	15
C – PROGRAM PERFORMANCE	46
D – COMPLIANCE ACTIVITIES	15
E – INCIDENT INVESTIGATIONS	9
F – DAMAGE PREVENTION	8
G – FIELD INSPECTIONS	12
H – INTERSTATE AGENT STATE (if applicable)	7
I - 60106 AGREEMENT STATE (if applicable)	6
	128

PIPELINE SAFETY NATURAL GAS STATE PROGRAM EVALUATION – CY2012

	A – PROGRESS REPORT (CERTIFICATION) AND PROGRAM DOCUMENTATION REVIEW THIS SECTION ANALYZES ACCURACY AND COMPLETENESS OF ANNUAL PROGRESS REPORT (CERTIFICATION)	SCORE
1	Accuracy of Jurisdictional Authority and Operator/Inspection Units Data – Progress Report Attachment 1 (A1a) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
2	Review of Inspection Days for accuracy – Progress Report Attachment 2 (A1b) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
3	Accuracy verification of Operators and Operators Inspection Units in State – Progress Report Attachment 3 (A1c) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
4	Were all federally reportable incident reports listed and information correct? – Progress Report Attachment 4 (A1d) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
5	Accuracy verification of Compliance Activities – Progress Report Attachment 5 (A1e) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
6	Were pipeline program files well-organized and accessible? - Progress Report Attachment 6 (A1f, A4) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
7	Was employee listing and completed training accurate and complete? – Progress Report Attachment 7 (A1g) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
8	Verification of Part 192,193,198,199 Rules and Amendments – Progress Report Attachment 8 (A1h) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
9	List of Planned Performance - Did state describe accomplishments on Progress Report in detail – Progress Report Attachment 10 (H1-3) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
10	**General Comments:**	10

B – PROGRAM INSPECTION PROCEDURES Does State Inspection Plan include procedures that address the following elements? (Plan should include expected time intervals between inspections, if necessary. See Guidelines Section 5.1)		
1	Standard Inspections (B1a) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
2	IMP Inspections (including DIMP) (B1b) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
3	OQ Inspections (B1c) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
4	Damage Prevention Inspections (B1d) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
5	On-Site Operator Training (B1e) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
6	Construction Inspections (B1f) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
7	Incident/Accident Investigations (B1g) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
8	Does inspection plan address inspection priorities of each operator, and if necessary each unit, based on the following elements? (B2a-d, G1,2,4) • **Length of time since last inspection** • **Operating history of operator/unit and/or location (includes leakage, incident and compliance activities)** • **Type of activity being undertaken by operators (i.e. construction)** • **Locations of operators inspection units being inspected - (HCA's, Geographic area, Population Density, etc)** • **Process to identify high-risk inspection units that includes all threats - (Excavation Damage, Corrosion, Natural Forces, Outside Forces, Material and Welds, Equipment, Operators and any Other Factors)** • **Are inspection units broken down appropriately?** (Yes= 6 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1-5 points) **Comments:**	6
9	**General Comments:**	15

C – PROGRAM PERFORMANCE		
1	Was ratio of Total Inspection person-days to total person days acceptable? (Director of State Programs may modify with just cause) Chapter 4.3 (A12) **A = Total Inspection Person Days (Attachment 2)** **B = Total Inspection Person Days Charged to the program** **(220 x Number of Inspection person years from Attachment 7)** **Ratio = A/B If Ratio >= .38 then score = 5 points. If Ratio < .38 then score = 0 points.** (Yes= 5 points, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	5
2	Has each inspector and program manager fulfilled the T Q Training Requirements? (See Guidelines for requirements) Chapter 4.4 (A8-A11, G19) **In addition -** **Completion of Required OQ Training before conducting inspection as lead?** **Completion of Required DIMP*/IMP Training before conducting inspection as lead?** **Root Cause Training by at least one inspector/program manager** **Note any outside training completed** *Effective Evaluation CY2013 (Yes= 5 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1-4) **Comments:**	5
3	Did state records and discussions with state pipeline safety program manager indicate adequate knowledge of PHMSA program and regulations? Chapter 4.1,8.1 (A5) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
4	Did state respond to Chairman's letter on previous evaluation within 60 days and correct or address any noted deficiencies? (If necessary) Chapter 8.1 (A6-7) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
5	Did State hold PHMSA TQ Seminar in Past 3 Years? Chapter 8.5 (A3) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	2
6	Did state inspect all types of operators and inspection units in accordance with time intervals established in written procedures? Chapter 5.1 (B3) (Yes= 5 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1-4 points) **Comments:**	5
7	Did inspection form(s) cover all applicable code requirements addressed on Federal Inspection form(s)? Did State complete all applicable portions of inspection forms? Chapter 5.1 (B4-5) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
8	Did the state review operator procedures for determining if exposed cast iron pipe was examined for evidence of graphitization and if necessary remedial action was taken? (NTSB) Chapter 5.1 (B7) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1
9	Did the state review operator procedures for surveillance of cast iron pipelines, including appropriate action resulting from tracking circumferential cracking failures, study of leakage history, or other unusual operating maintenance condition? (Note: See GPTC Appendix G-18 for guidance) (NTSB) Chapter 5.1 (B8)	1

	(Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	
10	Did the state review operator emergency response procedures for leaks caused by excavation damage near buildings and determine whether the procedures adequately address the possibility of multiple leaks and underground migration of gas into nearby buildings Refer to 4/12/01 letter from PHMSA in response to NTSB recommendation P-00-20 and P-00-21? (NTSB) Chapter 5.1 (B9) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1
11	Did the state review operator records of previous accidents and failures including reported third party damage and leak response to ensure appropriate operator response as required by 192.617? Chapter 5.1 (B10,E5) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1
12	Has the state reviewed Operator Annual reports, along with Incident/Accident reports, for accuracy and analyzed data for trends and operator issues? Data Initiative (G6-9,G16) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
13	Did state input all applicable OQ, IMP inspection results into federal database in a timely manner? This includes replies to Operator notifications into IMDB database. Chapter 5.1 (G10-12) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
14	Has state confirmed transmission operators have submitted information into NPMS database along with changes made after original submission? (G14) (Yes= 1 points, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
15	Is the state verifying operators are conducting drug and alcohol tests as required by regulations? This should include verifying positive tests are responded to in accordance with program. 49 CFR 199 (I1-3) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI= 1 point) **Comments:**	2
16	Is state verifying operators OQ programs are up to date? This should include verification of any plan updates and that persons performing covered tasks (including contractors) are properly qualified and requalified at intervals determined in the operators plan. 49 CFR 192 Part N (I4-7) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
17	Is state verifying operator's gas transmission integrity management programs (IMP) are up to date? This should include a previous review of IMP plan, along with monitoring progress on operator tests and remedial actions. In addition, the review should take in to account program review and updates of operators plan(s). 49 CFR 192 Subpart 0 (I8-12) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2

18	Is state verifying operator's gas distribution integrity management Programs (DIMP)? This should include a review of DIMP plans, along with monitoring progress. In addition, the review should take in to account program review and updates of operators plan(s). 49 CFR 192 Subpart P **DIMP – First round of program inspections should be complete by December 2014** (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) ~~(No Points CY2011)~~ **Comments:**	~~0~~2
19	Is state verifying operators Public Awareness programs are up to date and being followed. State should also verify operators have evaluated Public Awareness programs for effectiveness as described in RP1162. 49 CFR 192.616 (I13-16) **PAPEI Effectiveness Inspections should be complete by December 2013** (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
20	Does the state have a mechanism for communicating with stakeholders - other than state pipeline safety seminar? (This should include making enforcement cases available to public). (G20-21) (Yes= 1 points, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
21	Did state execute appropriate follow-up actions to Safety Related Condition (SRC) Reports? Chapter 6.3 (B6) (Yes= 1 points, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
22	Did the State ask Operators to identify any plastic pipe and components that has shown a record of defects/leaks and what those operators are doing to mitigate the safety concerns? (G13) (Yes= 1 points, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
23	Did the state participate in/respond to surveys or information requests from NAPSR or PHMSA? (Yes= 1 points, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) (H4) **Comments:**	1
24	**General Comments:**	46~~44~~

D – COMPLIANCE ACTIVITIES		
1	Does the state have written procedures to identify steps to be taken from the discovery to resolution of a probable violation? Chapter 5.1 (B12-14, B16, B1h) • **Procedures to notify an operator (company officer) when a noncompliance is identified** • **Procedures to routinely review progress of compliance actions to prevent delays or breakdowns** (Yes= 4 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1-3 points) **Comments:**	4
2	Did the state follow compliance procedures (from discovery to resolution) and adequately document all probable violations, including what resolution or further course of action is needed to gain compliance? Chapter 5.1 (B11,B18,B19) • Were compliance actions sent to company officer or manager/board member if municipal/government system? • Document probable violations • Resolve probable violations • Routinely review progress of probable violations (Yes= 4 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1-3 points) **Comments:**	4
3	Did the state issue compliance actions for all probable violations discovered? (B15) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
4	Did compliance actions give reasonable due process to all parties? Including "show cause" hearing if necessary. (B17, B20) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	2
5	Is the program manager familiar with state process for imposing civil penalties? Were civil penalties considered for repeat violations (with severity consideration) or violations resulting in incidents/accidents? (describe any actions taken) (B27) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
6	Can the State demonstrate it is using their enforcement fining authority for pipeline safety violations? (new question) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI= .5 point)~~(New question no points first year)~~ **Comments:**	~~0~~1
7	**General Comments:**	15~~14~~

E – INCIDENT INVESTIGATIONS		
1	Does state have adequate mechanism to receive and respond to operator reports of incidents, including after-hours reports? And did state keep adequate records of Incident/Accident notifications received? Chapter 6 (A2,D1-3) • **Acknowledgement of MOU between NTSB and PHMSA (Appendix D)** • **Acknowledgement of Federal/State Cooperation in case of incident/accident (Appendix E)** **(Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point)** **Comments:**	2
2	If onsite investigation was not made, did state obtain sufficient information from the operator and/or by other means to determine the facts to support the decision to not go on-site? Chapter 6 (D4) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI= .5 point) **Comments:**	1
3	Were all incidents investigated, thoroughly documented, and with conclusions and recommendations? (D5) • **Observations and document review** • **Contributing Factors** • **Recommendations to prevent recurrences where appropriate** (Yes= 3 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1-2 points) **Comments:**	3
4	Did the state initiate compliance action for violations found during any incident/accident investigation? (D6) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1
5	Did the state assist region office by taking appropriate follow-up actions related to the operator incident reports to ensure accuracy and final report has been received by PHMSA? (validate report data from operators concerning incidents/accidents and investigate discrepancies) Chapter 6 (D7) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI= .5 point) **Comments:**	1
6	Does state share lessons learned from incidents/accidents? (sharing information, such as: at NAPSR Region meetings, state seminars, etc) (G15) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1
7	**General Comments:**	9

F – DAMAGE PREVENTION		
1	Has the state reviewed directional drilling/boring procedures of each pipeline operator or its contractor to determine if they include actions to protect their facilities from the dangers posed by drilling and other trench less technologies? NTSB (E1) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 Point) **Comments:**	2
2	Did the state inspector check to assure the pipeline operator is following its written procedures pertaining to notification of excavation, marking, positive response and the availability and use of the one call system? (E2) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 Point) **Comments:**	2
3	Did the state encourage and promote practices for reducing damages to all underground facilities to its regulated companies? (i.e. such as promoting/adopting the CGA Best Practices encouraging adoption of the 9 Elements, etc.) (E3) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 Point) **Comments:**	2
4	Has the agency or another organization within the state collected data and evaluated trends on the number of pipeline damages per 1,000 locate requests? (This can include DIRT and other data shared and reviewed by the pipeline safety program) (E4,G5) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 Point) **Comments:**	2
5	**General Comments:**	8

G – FIELD INSPECTIONS		
1	Operator, Inspector, Location, Date and PHMSA Representative • **What type of inspection(s) did the state inspector conduct during the field portion of the state evaluation? (i.e. Standard, Construction, IMP, etc) (new)** **Comments:**	
2	Was the operator or operator's representative notified and/or given the opportunity to be present during inspection? (F2) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1
3	Did the inspector use an appropriate inspection form/checklist and was the form/checklist used as a guide for the inspection? (New regulations shall be incorporated) (F3) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 Point) **Comments:**	2
4	Did the inspector thoroughly document results of the inspection? (F4) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 Point) **Comments:**	2
5	Did the inspector check to see if the operator had necessary equipment during inspection to conduct tasks viewed? (Maps,pyrometer,soap spray,CGI,etc.) (F5) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1
6	Did the inspector adequately review the following during the field portion of the state evaluation? (check all that apply on list) (F7) • **Procedures** • **Records** • **Field Activities/Facilities** • **Other (please comment)** (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 Point) **Comments:**	2
7	Did the inspector have adequate knowledge of the pipeline safety program and regulations? (Evaluator will document reasons if unacceptable) (F8) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 Point) **Comments:**	2
8	Did the inspector conduct an exit interview? (If inspection is not totally complete the interview should be based on areas covered during time of field evaluation) (F9) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1
9	During the exit interview, did the inspector identify probable violations found during the inspections? (if applicable) (F10) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1

10	**General Comments:** • **What did the inspector observe in the field? (Narrative description of field observations and how inspector performed)** • **Best Practices to Share with Other States - (Field - could be from operator visited or state inspector practices)** • **Other**	12
	Field Observation Areas Observed (check all that apply)	

Abandonment	
Abnormal Operations	
Break-Out Tanks	
Compressor or Pump Stations	
Change in Class Location	
Casings	
Cathodic Protection	
Cast-iron Replacement	
Damage Prevention	
Deactivation	
Emergency Procedures	
Inspection of Right-of-Way	
Line Markers	
Liaison with Public Officials	
Leak Surveys	
MOP	
MAOP	
Moving Pipe	
New Construction	
Navigable Waterway Crossings	
Odorization	
Overpressure Safety Devices	
Plastic Pipe Installation	
Public Education	
Purging	
Prevention of Accidental Ignition	
Repairs	
Signs	
Tapping	
Valve Maintenance	
Vault Maintenance	
Welding	
OQ - Operator Qualification	
Compliance Follow-up	
Atmospheric Corrosion	
Other	

H – INTERSTATE AGENT STATE (if applicable)		
1	Did the state use the current federal inspection form(s)? (C1) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
2	Are results documented demonstrating inspection units were reviewed in accordance with "PHMSA directed inspection plan"? (C2) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
3	Did the state submit documentation of the inspections within 60 days as stated in its latest Interstate Agent Agreement form? (C3) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
4	Were probable violations identified by state referred to PHMSA for compliance? (NOTE: PHMSA representative has discretion to delete question or adjust points, as appropriate, based on number of probable violations; any change requires written explanation.) (C4) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
5	Did the state immediately report to PHMSA conditions which may pose an imminent safety hazard to the public or to the environment? (C5) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
6	Did the state give written notice to PHMSA within 60 days of all probable violations found? (C6) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
7	Did the state initially submit documentation to support compliance action by PHMSA on probable violations? (C7) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
8	**General Comments:**	7

I - 60106 AGREEMENT STATE (if applicable)		
1	Did the state use the current federal inspection form(s)? (B21) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
2	Are results documented demonstrating inspection units were reviewed in accordance with state inspection plan? (B22) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
3	Were any probable violations identified by state referred to PHMSA for compliance? (NOTE: PHMSA representative has discretion to delete question or adjust points, as appropriate, based on number of probable violations; any change requires written explanation.) (B23) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
4	Did the state immediately report to PHMSA conditions which may pose an imminent safety hazard to the public or to the environment? (B24) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
5	Did the state give written notice to PHMSA within 60 days of all probable violations found? (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) (B25) **Comments:**	1
6	Did the state initially submit adequate documentation to support compliance action by PHMSA on probable violations? (B26) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
7	**General Comments:**	6

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix J

PIPELINE SAFETY HAZARDOUS LIQUID STATE PROGRAM EVALUATION – CY2012	
A – PROGRESS REPORT AND PROGRAM DOCUMENTATION REVIEW	10
B – PROGRAM INSPECTION PROCEDURES	15
C – PROGRAM PERFORMANCE	43
D – COMPLIANCE ACTIVITIES	15
E – ACCIDENT INVESTIGATIONS	9
F – DAMAGE PREVENTION	8
G – FIELD INSPECTIONS	12
H – INTERSTATE AGENT STATE (if applicable)	7
I - 60106 AGREEMENT STATE (if applicable)	6
	125

PIPELINE SAFETY HAZARDOUS LIQUID STATE PROGRAM EVALUATION – CY2012		
A – PROGRESS REPORT (CERTIFICATION) AND PROGRAM DOCUMENTATION REVIEW **THIS SECTION ANALYZES ACCURACY AND COMPLETENESS OF ANNUAL PROGRESS REPORT (CERTIFICATION)**		**SCORE**
1	Accuracy of Jurisdictional Authority and Operator/Inspection Units Data – Progress Report Attachment 1 (A1a) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
2	Review of Inspection Days for accuracy – Progress Report Attachment 2 (A1b) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
3	Accuracy verification of Operators and Operators Inspection Units in State – Progress Report Attachment 3 (A1c) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
4	Were all federally reportable incident reports listed and information correct? – Progress Report Attachment 4 (A1d) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
5	Accuracy verification of Compliance Activities – Progress Report Attachment 5 (A1e) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
6	Were pipeline program files well-organized and accessible? - Progress Report Attachment 6 (A1f, A4) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
7	Was employee listing and completed training accurate and complete? – Progress Report Attachment 7 (A1g) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
8	Verification of Part 195,198,199 Rules and Amendments – Progress Report Attachment 8 (A1h) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
9	List of Planned Performance - Did state describe accomplishments on Progress Report in detail – Progress Report Attachment 10 (H1-3) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
10	**General Comments:**	10

B – PROGRAM INSPECTION PROCEDURES Does State Inspection Plan include procedures that address the following elements? (Plan should include expected time intervals between inspections, if necessary. See Guidelines Section 5.1)		
1	Standard Inspections (B1a) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
2	IMP Inspections (B1b) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
3	OQ Inspections (B1c) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
4	Damage Prevention Inspections (B1d) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
5	On-Site Operator Training (B1e) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
6	Construction Inspections (B1f) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
7	Incident/Accident Investigations (B1g) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
8	Does inspection plan address inspection priorities of each operator, and if necessary each unit, based on the following elements? (B2a-d, G1,2,4) • **Length of time since last inspection** • **Operating history of operator/unit and/or location (includes leakage, incident and compliance activities)** • **Type of activity being undertaken by operators (i.e. construction)** • **Locations of operators inspection units being inspected - (HCA's, Geographic area, Population Density, etc)** • **Process to identify high-risk inspection units that includes all threats - (Excavation Damage, Corrosion, Natural Forces, Outside Forces, Material and Welds, Equipment, Operators and any Other Factors)** • **Are inspection units broken down appropriately?** (Yes= 6 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1-5 points) **Comments:**	6
9	**General Comments:**	15

C – PROGRAM PERFORMANCE		
1	Was ratio of Total Inspection person-days to total person days acceptable? (Director of State Programs may modify with just cause) Chapter 4.3 (A12) **A = Total Inspection Person Days (Attachment 2)** **B = Total Inspection Person Days Charged to the program** **(220 x Number of Inspection person years from Attachment 7)** **Ratio = A/B If Ratio >= .38 then score = 5 points. If Ratio < .38 then score = 0 points.** (Yes= 5 points, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	5
2	Has each inspector and program fulfilled the T Q Training Requirements? (See Guidelines for requirements) Chapter 4.4 (A8-A11, G19) **In addition -** **Completion of Required OQ Training before conducting inspection as lead?** **Completion of Required IMP Training before conducting inspection as lead?** **Root Cause Training by at least one inspector/program manager** **Note any outside training completed** (Yes= 5 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1-4) **Comments:**	5
3	Did state records and discussions with state pipeline safety program manager indicate adequate knowledge of PHMSA program and regulations? Chapter 4.1,8.1 (A5) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
4	Did state respond to Chairman's letter on previous evaluation within 60 days and correct or address any noted deficiencies? (If necessary) Chapter 8.1 (A6-7) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
5	Did State hold PHMSA TQ Seminar in Past 3 Years? Chapter 8.5 (A3) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	2
6	Did state inspect all types of operators and inspection units in accordance with time intervals established in written procedures? Chapter 5.1 (B3) (Yes= 5 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1-4 points) **Comments:**	5
7	Did inspection form(s) cover all applicable code requirements addressed on Federal Inspection form(s)? Did State complete all applicable portions of inspection forms? Chapter 5.1 (B4-5) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
8	Did the state review operator procedures for determining areas of active corrosion on liquid lines in sufficient detail? (NOTE: PHMSA representative to describe state criteria for determining areas of active corrosion) (B7) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1
9	Did the state adequately review for compliance operator procedures for abandoning pipeline facilities and analyzing pipeline accidents to determine their causes? (NOTE: PHMSA representative to describe state criteria for determining compliance with abandoning pipeline facilities and analyzing pipeline accidents to determine their causes) (B8) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points)	1

	Comments:	
10	Is the state aware of environmentally sensitive areas traversed by or adjacent to hazardous liquid pipelines? (reference Part 195, review of NPMS) (B9) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1
11	Did the state review operator records of previous accidents and failures including reported third party damage and leak response to ensure appropriate operator response as required by 195.402(c)(5)? (B10,E5) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1
12	Has the state reviewed Operator Annual reports, along with Incident/Accident reports, for accuracy and analyzed data for trends and operator issues? Data Initiative (G5-8,G15) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
13	Did state input all applicable OQ, IMP inspection results into federal database in a timely manner? This includes replies to Operator notifications into IMDB database. Chapter 5.1 (G9-12) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
14	Has state confirmed operators have submitted information into NPMS database along with changes made after original submission? (G13) (Yes= 1 points, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
15	Is the state verifying operators are conducting drug and alcohol tests as required by regulations? This should include verifying positive tests are responded to in accordance with program. 49 CFR 199 (I1-3) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI= 1 point) **Comments:**	2
16	Is state verifying operators OQ programs are up to date? This should include verification of any plan updates and that persons performing covered tasks (including contractors) are properly qualified and requalified at intervals determined in the operators plan. 49 CFR 195 Part G (I4-7) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
17	Is state verifying operator's hazardous liquid integrity management (L IMP) Programs are up to date? This should include a previous review of LIMP plan, along with monitoring progress on operator tests and remedial actions. In addition, the review should take in to account program review and updates of operators plan(s). 49 CFR 195.452 Appendix C (C8-12) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
18	Is state verifying operators Public Awareness programs are up to date and being followed. State should also verify operators have evaluated Public Awareness programs for effectiveness as described in RP1162. 49 CFR 195.440 (I13-16) **PAPEI Effectiveness Inspections should be complete by December 2013** (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point)	2

	Comments:	
19	Does the state have a mechanism for communicating with stakeholders - other than state pipeline safety seminar? (This should include making enforcement cases available to public). (G19-20) (Yes= 1 points, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
20	Did state execute appropriate follow-up actions to Safety Related Condition (SRC) Reports? Chapter 6.3 (B6) (Yes= 1 points, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
21	Did the state participate in/respond to surveys or information requests from NAPSR or PHMSA? (Yes= 1 points, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) (H4) **Comments:**	1
22	**General Comments:**	43

D – COMPLIANCE ACTIVITIES		
1	Does the state have written procedures to identify steps to be taken from the discovery to resolution of a probable violation? Chapter 5.1 (B12-14, B16, B1h) • **Procedures to notify an operator (company officer) when a noncompliance is identified** • **Procedures to routinely review progress of compliance actions to prevent delays or breakdowns** (Yes= 4 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1-3 points) **Comments:**	4
2	Did the state follow compliance procedures (from discovery to resolution) and adequately document all probable violations, including what resolution or further course of action is needed to gain compliance? Chapter 5.1 (B11,B18,B19) • Were compliance actions sent to company officer or manager/board member if municipal/government system? • Document probable violations • Resolve probable violations • Routinely review progress of probable violations (Yes= 4 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1-3 points) **Comments:**	4
3	Did the state issue compliance actions for all probable violations discovered? (B15) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point) **Comments:**	2
4	Did compliance actions give reasonable due process to all parties? Including "show cause" hearing if necessary. (B17, B20) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	2
5	Is the program manager familiar with state process for imposing civil penalties? Were civil penalties considered for repeat violations (with severity consideration) or violations resulting in incidents/accidents? (describe any actions taken) (B27) (No points) **Comments:**	2
6	Can the State demonstrate it is using their enforcement fining authority for pipeline safety violations? (new question) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI= .5 point)~~(New question no points first year)~~ **Comments:**	~~0~~1
7	**General Comments:**	15~~14~~

E – INCIDENT INVESTIGATIONS		
1	Does state have adequate mechanism to receive and respond to operator reports of accidents, including after-hours reports? And did state keep adequate records of Incident/Accident notifications received? Chapter 6 (A2,D1-3) • **Acknowledgement of MOU between NTSB and PHMSA (Appendix D)** • **Acknowledgement of Federal/State Cooperation in case of incident/accident (Appendix E)** **(Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 point)** **Comments:**	2
2	If onsite investigation was not made, did state obtain sufficient information from the operator and/or by other means to determine the facts to support the decision to not go on-site? Chapter 6 (D4) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI= .5 point) **Comments:**	1
3	Were all accidents investigated, thoroughly documented, and with conclusions and recommendations? (D5) • **Observations and document review** • **Contributing Factors** • **Recommendations to prevent recurrences where appropriate** (Yes= 3 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1-2 points) **Comments:**	3
4	Did the state initiate compliance action for violations found during any incident/accident investigation? (D6) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1
5	Did the state assist region office by taking appropriate follow-up actions related to the operator accident reports to ensure accuracy and final report has been received by PHMSA? (validate report data from operators concerning incidents/accidents and investigate discrepancies) Chapter 6 (D7) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI= .5 point) **Comments:**	1
6	Does state share lessons learned from incidents/accidents? (sharing information, such as: at NAPSR Region meetings, state seminars, etc) (G15) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1
7	**General Comments:**	9

F – DAMAGE PREVENTION		
1	Has the state reviewed directional drilling/boring procedures of each pipeline operator or its contractor to determine if they include actions to protect their facilities from the dangers posed by drilling and other trench less technologies? (E1) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 Point) **Comments:**	2
2	Did the state inspector check to assure the pipeline operator is following its written procedures pertaining to notification of excavation, marking, positive response and the availability and use of the one call system? (E2) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 Point) **Comments:**	2
3	Did the state encourage and promote practices for reducing damages to all underground facilities to its regulated companies? (i.e. such as promoting/adopting the CGA Best Practices encouraging adoption of the 9 Elements, etc.) (E3) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 Point) **Comments:**	2
4	Has the agency or another organization within the state collected data and evaluated trends on the number of pipeline damages per 1,000 locate requests? (This can include DIRT and other data shared and reviewed by the pipeline safety program) (E4,G5) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 Point) **Comments:**	2
5	**General Comments:**	8

G – FIELD INSPECTIONS		
1	Operator, Inspector, Location, Date and PHMSA Representative • **What type of inspection(s) did the state inspector conduct during the field portion of the state evaluation? (i.e. Standard, Construction, IMP, etc) (new)** **Comments:**	
2	Was the operator or operator's representative notified and/or given the opportunity to be present during inspection? (F2) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1
3	Did the inspector use an appropriate inspection form/checklist and was the form/checklist used as a guide for the inspection? (New regulations shall be incorporated) (F3) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 Point) **Comments:**	2
4	Did the inspector thoroughly document results of the inspection? (F4) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 Point) **Comments:**	2
5	Did the inspector check to see if the operator had necessary equipment during inspection to conduct tasks viewed? (Maps,valve keys, half cells, etc) (F5) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1
6	Did the inspector adequately review the following during the field portion of the state evaluation? (check all that apply on list) (F7) • **Procedures** • **Records** • **Field Activities/Facilities** • **Other (please comment)** (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 Point) **Comments:**	2
7	Did the inspector have adequate knowledge of the pipeline safety program and regulations? (Evaluator will document reasons if unacceptable) (F8) (Yes= 2 points, No= 0 Points, NI=1 Point) **Comments:**	2
8	Did the inspector conduct an exit interview? (If inspection is not totally complete the interview should be based on areas covered during time of field evaluation) (F9) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1
9	During the exit interview, did the inspector identify probable violations found during the inspections? (if applicable) (F10) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points) **Comments:**	1

10	**General Comments:** • **What did the inspector observe in the field? (Narrative description of field observations and how inspector performed)** • **Best Practices to Share with Other States - (Field - could be from operator visited or state inspector practices)** • **Other**	12
	Field Observation Areas Observed (check all that apply)	

Abandonment	
Abnormal Operations	
Break-Out Tanks	
Compressor or Pump Stations	
Change in Class Location	
Casings	
Cathodic Protection	
Cast-iron Replacement	
Damage Prevention	
Deactivation	
Emergency Procedures	
Inspection of Right-of-Way	
Line Markers	
Liaison with Public Officials	
Leak Surveys	
MOP	
MAOP	
Moving Pipe	
New Construction	
Navigable Waterway Crossings	
Odorization	
Overpressure Safety Devices	
Plastic Pipe Installation	
Public Education	
Purging	
Prevention of Accidental Ignition	
Repairs	
Signs	
Tapping	
Valve Maintenance	
Vault Maintenance	
Welding	
OQ - Operator Qualification	
Compliance Follow-up	
Atmospheric Corrosion	
Other	

H – INTERSTATE AGENT STATE (if applicable)		
1	Did the state use the current federal inspection form(s)? (C1) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
2	Are results documented demonstrating inspection units were reviewed in accordance with "PHMSA directed inspection plan"? (C2) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
3	Did the state submit documentation of the inspections within 60 days as stated in its latest Interstate Agent Agreement form? (C3) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
4	Were probable violations identified by state referred to PHMSA for compliance? (NOTE: PHMSA representative has discretion to delete question or adjust points, as appropriate, based on number of probable violations; any change requires written explanation.) (C4) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
5	Did the state immediately report to PHMSA conditions which may pose an imminent safety hazard to the public or to the environment? (C5) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
6	Did the state give written notice to PHMSA within 60 days of all probable violations found? (C6) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
7	Did the state initially submit documentation to support compliance action by PHMSA on probable violations? (C7) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
8	**General Comments:**	7

I - 60106 AGREEMENT STATE (if applicable)		
1	Did the state use the current federal inspection form(s)? (B21) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
2	Are results documented demonstrating inspection units were reviewed in accordance with state inspection plan? (B22) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
3	Were any probable violations identified by state referred to PHMSA for compliance? (NOTE: PHMSA representative has discretion to delete question or adjust points, as appropriate, based on number of probable violations; any change requires written explanation.) (B23) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
4	Did the state immediately report to PHMSA conditions which may pose an imminent safety hazard to the public or to the environment? (B24) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
5	Did the state give written notice to PHMSA within 60 days of all probable violations found? (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) (B25) **Comments:**	1
6	Did the state initially submit adequate documentation to support compliance action by PHMSA on probable violations? (B26) (Yes= 1 point, No= 0 Points, NI=.5 point) **Comments:**	1
7	**General Comments:**	6

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix K

TITLE 49 - TRANSPORTATION

PART 18 - UNIFORM ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR GRANTS AND COOPERATIVE AGREEMENTS TO STATE AND LOCAL GOVERNMENTS

Subpart A -- General

Sec.

18.1 Purpose and scope of this part.
18.2 Scope of subpart.
18.3 Definitions.
18.4 Applicability.
18.5 Effect on other issuances.
18.6 Additions and exceptions.

Subpart B -- Pre-Award Requirements

18.10 Forms for applying for grants.
18.11 State plans.
18.12 Special grant or subgrant conditions for "high risk" grantees.

Subpart C -- Post-Award Requirements

Financial Administration

18.20 Standards for financial management systems.
18.21 Payment.
18.22 Allowable costs.
18.23 Period of availability of funds.
18.24 Matching or cost sharing.
18.25 Program income.
18.26 NonFederal audits.

Changes, Property, and Subawards

18.30 Changes.

18.31 Real property.
18.32 Equipment.
18.33 Supplies.
18.34 Copyrights.
18.35 Subawards to debarred and suspended parties.
18.36 Procurement.
18.37 Subgrants.

Reports, Records Retention, and Enforcement

18.40 Monitoring and reporting program performance.
18.41 Financial reporting.
18.42 Retention and access requirements for records.
18.43 Enforcement.
18.44 Termination for convenience.

Subpart D -- After-the-Grant Requirements

18.50 Closeout.
18.51 Later disallowances and adjustments.
18.52 Collection of amounts due.

Subpart E -- Entitlements

Authority: 49 U.S.C. 322(a).

Source: 53 FR 8086 and 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, unless otherwise noted.

Editorial Note: For additional information, see related documents published at 49 FR 24958, June 18, 1984, 52 FR 20198, May 29, 1987, and 53 FR 8028, March 11, 1988.

Subpart A--General

Sec. 18.1 Purpose and scope of this part.

This part establishes uniform administrative rules for Federal grants and cooperative agreements and

subawards to State, local and Indian tribal governments.

Sec. 18.2 Scope of subpart.

This subpart contains general rules pertaining to this part and procedures for control of exceptions from this part.

Sec. 18.3 Definitions.

As used in this part:

Accrued expenditures mean the charges incurred by the grantee during a given period requiring the provision of funds for: (1) Goods and other tangible property received; (2) services performed by employees, contractors, subgrantees, subcontractors, and other payees; and (3) other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance is required, such as annuities, insurance claims, and other benefit payments.

Accrued income means the sum of: (1) Earnings during a given period from services performed by the grantee and goods and other tangible property delivered to purchasers, and (2) amounts becoming owed to the grantee for which no current services or performance is required by the grantee.

Acquisition cost of an item of purchased equipment means the net invoice unit price of the property including the cost of modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make the property usable for the purpose for which it was acquired. Other charges such as the cost of installation, transportation, taxes, duty or protective in-transit insurance, shall be included or excluded from the unit acquisition cost in accordance with the grantee's regular accounting practices.

Administrative requirements mean those matters common to grants in general, such as financial management, kinds and frequency of reports, and retention of records. These are distinguished from "programmatic" requirements, which concern matters that can be treated only on a program-by-program or grant-by-grant basis, such as kinds of activities that can be supported by grants under a particular program.

Awarding agency means (1) with respect to a grant, the Federal agency, and (2) with respect to a subgrant, the party that awarded the subgrant.

Cash contributions means the grantee's cash outlay, including the outlay of money contributed to the grantee or subgrantee by other public agencies and institutions, and private organizations and individuals. When authorized by Federal legislation, Federal funds received from other assistance agreements may be considered as grantee or subgrantee cash contributions.

Contract means (except as used in the definitions for "grant" and "subgrant" in this section and except

where qualified by "Federal") a procurement contract under a grant or subgrant, and means a procurement subcontract under a contract.

Cost sharing or matching means the value of the third party in--kind contributions and the portion of the costs of a federally assisted project or program not borne by the Federal Government.

Cost-type contract means a contract or subcontract under a grant in which the contractor or subcontractor is paid on the basis of the costs it incurs, with or without a fee.

Equipment means tangible, nonexpendable, personal property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost of $5,000 or more per unit. A grantee may use its own definition of equipment provided that such definition would at least include all equipment defined above.

Expenditure report means: (1) For nonconstruction grants, the SF-269 "Financial Status Report" (or other equivalent report); (2) for construction grants, the SF271 "Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement" (or other equivalent report).

Federally recognized Indian tribal government means the governing body or a governmental agency of any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community (including any Native village as defined in section 3 of the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, 85 Stat 688) certified by the Secretary of the Interior as eligible for the special programs and services provided by him through the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

Government means a State or local government or a federally recognized Indian tribal government.

Grant means an award of financial assistance, including cooperative agreements, in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, by the Federal Government to an eligible grantee. The term does not include technical assistance which provides services instead of money, or other assistance in the form of revenue sharing, loans, loan guarantees, interest subsidies, insurance, or direct appropriations. Also, the term does not include assistance, such as a fellowship or other lump sum award, which the grantee is not required to account for.

Grantee means the government to which a grant is awarded and which is accountable for the use of the funds provided. The grantee is the entire legal entity even if only a particular component of the entity is designated in the grant award document.

Local government means a county, municipality, city, town, township, local public authority (including any public and Indian housing agency under the United States Housing Act of 1937) school district, special district, intrastate district, council of governments (whether or not incorporated as a nonprofit corporation under state law), any other regional or interstate government entity, or any agency or instrumentality of a local government.

Obligations means the amounts of orders placed, contracts and subgrants awarded, goods and services received, and similar transactions during a given period that will require payment by the grantee during the same or a future period.

OMB means the United States Office of Management and Budget.

Outlays (expenditures) mean charges made to the project or program. They may be reported on a cash or accrual basis. For reports prepared on a cash basis, outlays are the sum of actual cash disbursement for direct charges for goods and services, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of inkind contributions applied, and the amount of cash advances and payments made to contractors and subgrantees. For reports prepared on an accrued expenditure basis, outlays are the sum of actual cash disbursements, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of in-kind contributions applied, and the new increase (or decrease) in the amounts owed by the grantee for goods and other property received, for services performed by employees, contractors, subgrantees, subcontractors, and other payees, and other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance are required, such as annuities, insurance claims, and other benefit payments.

Percentage of completion method refers to a system under which payments are made for construction work according to the percentage of completion of the work, rather than to the grantee's cost incurred.

Prior approval means documentation evidencing consent prior to incurring specific cost.

Real property means land, including land improvements, structures and appurtenances thereto, excluding movable machinery and equipment.

Share, when referring to the awarding agency's portion of real property, equipment or supplies, means the same percentage as the awarding agency's portion of the acquiring party's total costs under the grant to which the acquisition costs under the grant to which the acquisition cost of the property was charged. Only costs are to be counted--not the value of third-party in-kind contributions.

State means any of the several States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, any territory or possession of the United States, or any agency or instrumentality of a State exclusive of local governments. The term does not include any public and Indian housing agency under United States Housing Act of 1937.

Subgrant means an award of financial assistance in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, made under a grant by a grantee to an eligible subgrantee. The term includes financial assistance when provided by contractual legal agreement, but does not include procurement purchases, nor does it include any form of assistance which is excluded from the definition of "grant" in this part.

Subgrantee means the government or other legal entity to which a subgrant is awarded and which is accountable to the grantee for the use of the funds provided.

Supplies means all tangible personal property other than "equipment" as defined in this part.

Suspension means depending on the context, either (1) temporary withdrawal of the authority to obligate grant funds pending corrective action by the grantee or subgrantee or a decision to terminate the grant, or (2) an action taken by a suspending official in accordance with agency regulations implementing E.O. 12549 to immediately exclude a person from participating in grant transactions for a period, pending completion of an investigation and such legal or debarment proceedings as may ensue.

Termination means permanent withdrawal of the authority to obligate previouslyawarded grant funds before that authority would otherwise expire. It also means the voluntary relinquishment of that authority by the grantee or subgrantee. "Termination" does not include: (1) Withdrawal of funds awarded on the basis of the grantee's underestimate of the unobligated balance in a prior period; (2) Withdrawal of the unobligated balance as of the expiration of a grant; (3) Refusal to extend a grant or award additional funds, to make a competing or noncompeting continuation, renewal, extension, or supplemental award; or (4) voiding of a grant upon determination that the award was obtained fraudulently, or was otherwise illegal or invalid from inception.

Terms of a grant or subgrant mean all requirements of the grant or subgrant, whether in statute, regulations, or the award document.

Third party in-kind contributions mean property or services which benefit a federally assisted project or program and which are contributed by non-Federal third parties without charge to the grantee, or a cost-type contractor under the grant agreement.

Unliquidated obligations for reports prepared on a cash basis mean the amount of obligations incurred by the grantee that has not been paid. For reports prepared on an accrued expenditure basis, they represent the amount of obligations incurred by the grantee for which an outlay has not been recorded.

Unobligated balance means the portion of the funds authorized by the Federal agency that has not been obligated by the grantee and is determined by deducting the cumulative obligations from the cumulative funds authorized.

Sec. 18.4 Applicability.

(a) General. Subparts A through D of this part apply to all grants and subgrants to governments, except where inconsistent with Federal statutes or with regulations authorized in accordance with the exception provision of Sec. 18.6, or:

> (1) Grants and subgrants to State and local institutions of higher education or State and local hospitals.

(2) The block grants authorized by the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981 (Community Services; Preventive Health and Health Services; Alcohol, Drug Abuse, and Mental Health Services; Maternal and Child Health Services; Social Services; LowIncome Home Energy Assistance; States' Program of Community Development Block Grants for Small Cities; and Elementary and Secondary Education other than programs administered by the Secretary of Education under title V, subtitle D, chapter 2, Section 583-the Secretary's discretionary grant program) and titles I-III of the Job Training Partnership Act of 1982 and under the Public Health Services Act (Section 1921), Alcohol and Drug Abuse Treatment and Rehabilitation Block Grant and part C of title V, Mental Health Service for the Homeless Block Grant).

(3) Entitlement grants to carry out the following programs of the Social Security Act:

(i) Aid to Needy Families with Dependent Children (title IV-A of the Act, not including the Work Incentive Program (WIN) authorized by section 402(a)19(G); HHS grants for WIN are subject to this part);

(ii) Child Support Enforcement and Establishment of Paternity (title IV-D of the Act);

(iii) Foster Care and Adoption Assistance (title IV-E of the Act);

(iv) Aid to the Aged, Blind, and Disabled (titles I, X, XIV, and XVI-AABD of the Act); and

(v) Medical Assistance (Medicaid) (title XIX of the Act) not including the State Medicaid Fraud Control program authorized by section 1903(a)(6)(B).

(4) Entitlement grants under the following programs of The National School Lunch Act:

(i) School Lunch (section 4 of the Act),

(2) Commodity Assistance (section 6 of the Act),

(3) Special Meal Assistance (section 11 of the Act),

(4) Summer Food Service for Children (section 13 of the Act), and

(5) Child Care Food Program (section 17 of the Act).

(5) Entitlement grants under the following programs of The Child Nutrition Act of 1966:

(i) Special Milk (section 3 of the Act), and

(ii) School Breakfast (section 4 of the Act).

(6) Entitlement grants for State Administrative expenses under The Food Stamp Act of 1977 (section 16 of the Act).

(7) A grant for an experimental, pilot, or demonstration project that is also supported by a grant listed in paragraph (a)(3) of this section;

(8) Grant funds awarded under subsection 412(e) of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S. C. 1522(e)) and subsection 501(a) of the Refugee Education Assistance Act of 1980 (Pub. L. 96422, 94 Stat. 1809), for cash assistance, medical assistance, and supplemental security income benefits to refugees and entrants and the administrative costs of providing the assistance and benefits;

(9) Grants to local education agencies under 20 U.S.C. 236 through 241-1(a), and 242 through 244 (portions of the Impact Aid program), except for 20 U.S.C. 238(d)(2)(c) and 240(f) (Entitlement Increase for Handicapped Children); and

(10) Payments under the Veterans Administration's State Home Per Diem Program (38 U.S.C. 641(a)).

(b) Entitlement programs. Entitlement programs enumerated above in Sec. 18.4(a) (3) through (8) are subject to subpart E.

Sec. 18.5 Effect on other issuances.

All other grants administration provisions of codified program regulations, program manuals, handbooks and other nonregulatory materials which are inconsistent with this part are superseded, except to the extent they are required by statute, or authorized in accordance with the exception provision in Sec. 18.6.

Sec. 18.6 Additions and exceptions.

(a) For classes of grants and grantees subject to this part, Federal agencies may not impose additional administrative requirements except in codified regulations published in the Federal Register.

(b) Exceptions for classes of grants or grantees may be authorized only by OMB.

(1) All Departmental requests for exceptions shall be processed through the Assistant Secretary of Administration.

(2) [Reserved]

(c) Exceptions on a case-by-case basis and for subgrantees may be authorized by the affected Federal agencies.

(1) All case-by-case exceptions may be authorized by the affected operating administrations or departmental offices, with the concurrence of the Assistant Secretary for Administration.

(2) [Reserved]

[53 FR 8086 and 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 60 FR 19646, Apr. 19, 1995]

Subpart B -- Pre-Award Requirements

Sec. 18.10 Forms for applying for grants.

(a) Scope.

(1) This section prescribes forms and instructions to be used by governmental organizations (except hospitals and institutions of higher education operated by a government) in applying for grants. This section is not applicable, however, to formula grant programs which do not require applicants to apply for funds on a project basis.

(2) This section applies only to applications to Federal agencies for grants, and is not required to be applied by grantees in dealing with applicants for subgrants. However, grantees are encouraged to avoid more detailed or burdensome application requirements for subgrants.

(3) Forms and procedures for Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) projects are contained in 23 CFR part 630, subpart B, 23 CFR part 420, subpart A, and 49 CFR part 450.

(b) Authorized forms and instructions for governmental organizations.

(1) In applying for grants, applicants shall only use standard application forms or those prescribed by the granting agency with the approval of OMB under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980.

(2) Applicants are not required to submit more than the original and two copies of preapplications or applications.

(3) Applicants must follow all applicable instructions that bear OMB clearance numbers. Federal

agencies may specify and describe the programs, functions, or activities that will be used to plan, budget, and evaluate the work under a grant. Other supplementary instructions may be issued only with the approval of OMB to the extent required under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980. For any standard form, except the SF-424 facesheet, Federal agencies may shade out or instruct the applicant to disregard any line item that is not needed.

(4) When a grantee applies for additional funding (such as a continuation or supplemental award) or amends a previously submitted application, only the affected pages need be submitted. Previously submitted pages with information that is still current need not be resubmitted.

[53 FR 8086 and 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 8086, Mar. 11, 1988]

Sec. 18.11 State plans.

(a) Scope. The statutes for some programs require States to submit plans before receiving grants. Under regulations implementing Executive Order 12372, "Intergovernmental Review of Federal Programs," States are allowed to simplify, consolidate and substitute plans. This section contains additional provisions for plans that are subject to regulations implementing the Executive order.

(b) Requirements. A State need meet only Federal administrative or programmatic requirements for a plan that are in statutes or codified regulations.

(c) Assurances. In each plan the State will include an assurance that the State shall comply with all applicable Federal statutes and regulations in effect with respect to the periods for which it receives grant funding. For this assurance and other assurances required in the plan, the State may:

(1) Cite by number the statutory or regulatory provisions requiring the assurances and affirm that it gives the assurances required by those provisions,

(2) Repeat the assurance language in the statutes or regulations, or

(3) Develop its own language to the extent permitted by law.

(d) Amendments. A State will amend a plan whenever necessary to reflect: (1) New or revised Federal statutes or regulations or (2) a material change in any State law, organization, policy, or State agency operation. The State will obtain approval for the amendment and its effective date but need submit for approval only the amended portions of the plan.

Sec. 18.12 Special grant or subgrant conditions for "high-risk" grantees.

(a) A grantee or subgrantee may be considered "high risk" if an awarding agency determines that a grantee or subgrantee:

(1) Has a history of unsatisfactory performance, or

(2) Is not financially stable, or

(3) Has a management system which does not meet the management standards set forth in this part, or

(4) Has not conformed to terms and conditions of previous awards, or

(5) Is otherwise not responsible; and if the awarding agency determines that an award will be made, special conditions and/or restrictions shall correspond to the high risk condition and shall be included in the award.

(b) Special conditions or restrictions may include:

(1) Payment on a reimbursement basis;

(2) Withholding authority to proceed to the next phase until receipt of evidence of acceptable performance within a given funding period;

(3) Requiring additional, more detailed financial reports;

(4) Additional project monitoring;

(5) Requiring the grantee or subgrantee to obtain technical or management assistance; or

(6) Establishing additional prior approvals.

(c) If an awarding agency decides to impose such conditions, the awarding official will notify the grantee or subgrantee as early as possible, in writing, of:

(1) The nature of the special conditions/restrictions;

(2) The reason(s) for imposing them;

(3) The corrective actions which must be taken before they will be removed and the time allowed for completing the corrective actions; and

(4) The method of requesting reconsideration of the conditions/restrictions imposed.

Subpart C -- Post-Award Requirements

Financial Administration

Sec. 18.20 Standards for financial management systems.

(a) A State must expand and account for grant funds in accordance with State laws and procedures for expending and accounting for its own funds. Fiscal control and accounting procedures of the State, as well as its subgrantees and cost-type contractors, must be sufficient to--

(1) Permit preparation of reports required by this part and the statutes authorizing the grant, and

(2) Permit the tracing of funds to a level of expenditures adequate to establish that such funds have not been used in violation of the restrictions and prohibitions of applicable statutes.

(b) The financial management systems of other grantees and subgrantees must meet the following standards:

(1) Financial reporting. Accurate, current, and complete disclosure of the financial results of financially-assisted activities must be made in accordance with the financial reporting requirements of the grant or subgrant.

(2) Accounting records. Grantees and subgrantees must maintain records which adequately identify the source and application of funds provided for financiallyassisted activities. These records must contain information pertaining to grant or subgrant awards and authorizations, obligations, unobligated balances, assets, liabilities, outlays or expenditures, and income.

(3) Internal control. Effective control and accountability must be maintained for all grant and subgrant cash, real and personal property, and other assets. Grantees and subgrantees must adequately safeguard all such property and must assure that it is used solely for authorized purposes.

(4) Budget control. Actual expenditures or outlays must be compared with budgeted amounts for each grant or subgrant. Financial information must be related to performance or productivity data, including the development of unit cost information whenever appropriate or specifically required in the grant or subgrant agreement. If unit cost data are required, estimates based on available documentation will be accepted whenever possible.

(5) Allowable cost. Applicable OMB cost principles, agency program regulations, and the terms of grant and subgrant agreements will be followed in determining the reasonableness, allowability, and allocability of costs.

(6) Source documentation. Accounting records must be supported by such source documentation as cancelled checks, paid bills, payrolls, time and attendance records, contract and subgrant award documents, etc.

(7) Cash management. Procedures for minimizing the time elapsing between the transfer of funds from the U.S. Treasury and disbursement by grantees and subgrantees must be followed whenever advance payment procedures are used. Grantees must establish reasonable procedures to ensure the receipt of reports on subgrantees' cash balances and cash disbursements in sufficient time to enable them to prepare complete and accurate cash transactions reports to the awarding agency. When advances are made by letter-of-credit or electronic transfer of funds methods, the grantee must make drawdowns as close as possible to the time of making disbursements. Grantees must monitor cash drawdowns by their subgrantees to assure that they conform substantially to the same standards of timing and amount as apply to advances to the grantees.

(c) An awarding agency may review the adequacy of the financial management system of any applicant for financial assistance as part of a preaward review or at any time subsequent to award.

(d) Certain Urban Mass Transportation Administration (UMTA) grantees shall comply with the requirements of section 15 of the Urban Mass Transportation (UMT) Act of 1964, as amended, as implemented by 49 CFR part 630, regarding a uniform system of accounts and records and a uniform reporting system for certain grantees.

[53 FR 8086 and 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 8086, Mar. 11, 1988]

Sec. 18.21 Payment.

(a) Scope. This section prescribes the basic standard and the methods under which a Federal agency will make payments to grantees, and grantees will make payments to subgrantees and contractors.

(b) Basic standard. Methods and procedures for payment shall minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds and disbursement by the grantee or subgrantee, in accordance with Treasury regulations at 31 CFR part 205.

(c) Advances. Grantees and subgrantees shall be paid in advance, provided they maintain or demonstrate the willingness and ability to maintain procedures to minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of the funds and their disbursement by the grantee or subgrantee.

(d) Reimbursement. Reimbursement shall be the preferred method when the requirements in paragraph (c) of this section are not met. Grantees and subgrantees may also be paid by reimbursement for any construction grant. Except as otherwise specified in regulation, Federal agencies shall not use the percentage of completion method to pay construction grants. The grantee or subgrantee may use that method to pay its construction contractor, and if it does, the awarding agency's payments to the grantee

or subgrantee will be based on the grantee's or subgrantee's actual rate of disbursement.

(e) Working capital advances. If a grantee cannot meet the criteria for advance payments described in paragraph (c) of this section, and the Federal agency has determined that reimbursement is not feasible because the grantee lacks sufficient working capital, the awarding agency may provide cash or a working capital advance basis. Under this procedure the awarding agency shall advance cash to the grantee to cover its estimated disbursement needs for an initial period generally geared to the grantee's disbursing cycle. Thereafter, the awarding agency shall reimburse the grantee for its actual cash disbursements. The working capital advance method of payment shall not be used by grantees or subgrantees if the reason for using such method is the unwillingness or inability of the grantee to provide timely advances to the subgrantee to meet the subgrantee's actual cash disbursements.

(f) Effect of program income, refunds, and audit recoveries on payment.

(1) Grantees and subgrantees shall disburse repayments to and interest earned on a revolving fund before requesting additional cash payments for the same activity.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (f)(1) of this section, grantees and subgrantees shall disburse program income, rebates, refunds, contract settlements, audit recoveries and interest earned on such funds before requesting additional cash payments.

(g) Withholding payments.

(1) Unless otherwise required by Federal statute, awarding agencies shall not withhold payments for proper charges incurred by grantees or subgrantees unless--

(i) The grantee or subgrantee has failed to comply with grant award conditions or

(ii) The grantee or subgrantee is indebted to the United States.

(2) Cash withheld for failure to comply with grant award condition, but without suspension of the grant, shall be released to the grantee upon subsequent compliance. When a grant is suspended, payment adjustments will be made in accordance with Sec. 18.43(c).

(3) A Federal agency shall not make payment to grantees for amounts that are withheld by grantees or subgrantees from payment to contractors to assure satisfactory completion of work. Payments shall be made by the Federal agency when the grantees or subgrantees actually disburse the withheld funds to the contractors or to escrow accounts established to assure satisfactory completion of work.

(h) Cash depositories.

(1) Consistent with the national goal of expanding the opportunities for minority business enterprises, grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use minority banks (a bank which is owned at least 50 percent by minority group members). A list of minority owned banks can be obtained from the Minority Business Development Agency, Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20230.

(2) A grantee or subgrantee shall maintain a separate bank account only when required by FederalState agreement.

(i) Interest earned on advances. Except for interest earned on advances of funds exempt under the Intergovernmental Cooperation Act (31 U.S.C. 6501 et seq.) and the Indian Self-Determination Act (23 U.S.C. 450), grantees and subgrantees shall promptly, but at least quarterly, remit interest earned on advances to the Federal agency. The grantee or subgrantee may keep interest amounts up to $100 per year for administrative expenses.

(j) 23 U.S.C. 121 limits payments to States for highway construction projects to the Federal share of the costs of construction incurred to date, plus the Federal share of the value of stockpiled materials.

(k) Section 404 of the Surface Transportation Assistance Act of 1982 directs the Secretary to reimburse States for the Federal share of costs incurred.

[53 FR 8086 and 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 8086, Mar. 11, 1988]

Sec. 18.22 Allowable costs.

(a) Limitation on use of funds. Grant funds may be used only for:

(1) The allowable costs of the grantees, subgrantees and cost-type contractors, including allowable costs in the form of payments to fixed-price contractors; and

(2) Reasonable fees or profit to cost-type contractors but not any fee or profit (or other increment above allowable costs) to the grantee or subgrantee.

(b) Applicable cost principles. For each kind of organization, there is a set of Federal principles for determining allowable costs. Allowable costs will be determined in accordance with the cost principles applicable to the organization incurring the costs. The following chart lists the kinds of organizations and the applicable cost principles.

For the costs of a	Use the principles in--
State, local or Indian tribal government.	OMB Circular A-87.

Private nonprofit organization other than an (1) institution of higher education, (2) hospital, or (3) organization named in OMB Circular A122 as not subject to that circular.	OMB Circular A-122.
Educational institutions.	OMB Circular A-21.
For-profit organization other than a hospital and an organization named in OMB Circular A122 as not subject to that circular.	48 CFR part 31. Contract Cost Principles and Procedures, or uniform cost accounting standards that comply with cost principles acceptable to the Federal agency.

(c) The overhead cost principles of OMB Circular A-87 shall not apply to State highway agencies for FHWA funded grants.

(d) Sections 3(1) and 9(p) of the UMT Act of 1964, as amended, authorize the Secretary to include in the net project cost eligible for Federal assistance, the amount of interest earned and payable on bonds issued by the State or local public body to the extent that the proceeds of such bonds have actually been expended in carrying out such project or portion thereof. Limitations are established in sections 3 and 9 of the UMT Act of 1964, as amended.

(e) Section 9 of the UMT Act of 1964, as amended, authorizes grants to finance the leasing of facilities and equipment for use in mass transportation services provided leasing is more cost effective than acquisition or construction.

[53 FR 8086 and 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 8086, Mar. 11, 1988]

Sec. 18.23 Period of availability of funds.

(a) General. Where a funding period is specified, a grantee may charge to the award only costs resulting from obligations of the funding period unless carryover of unobligated balances is permitted, in which case the carryover balances may be charged for costs resulting from obligations of the subsequent funding period.

(b) Liquidation of obligations. A grantee must liquidate all obligations incurred under the award not later than 90 days after the end of the funding period (or as specified in a program regulation) to coincide with the submission of the annual Financial Status Report (SF-269). The Federal agency may extend this deadline at the request of the grantee.

Sec. 18.24 Matching or cost sharing.

(a) Basic rule: Costs and contributions acceptable. With the qualifications and exceptions listed in paragraph (b) of this section, a matching or cost sharing requirement may be satisfied by either or both of the following:

(1) Allowable costs incurred by the grantee, subgrantee or a cost-type contractor under the assistance agreement. This includes allowable costs borne by non-Federal grants or by others cash donations from non-Federal third parties.

(2) The value of third party inkind contributions applicable to the period to which the cost sharing or matching requirements applies.

(b) Qualifications and exceptions

(1) Costs borne by other Federal grant agreements. Except as provided by Federal statute, a cost sharing or matching requirement may not be met by costs borne by another Federal grant. This prohibition does not apply to income earned by a grantee or subgrantee from a contract awarded under another Federal grant.

(2) General revenue sharing. For the purpose of this section, general revenue sharing funds distributed under 31 U.S.C. 6702 are not considered Federal grant funds.

(3) Cost or contributions counted towards other Federal costs-sharing requirements. Neither costs nor the values of third party in-kind contributions may count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement of a grant agreement if they have been or will be counted towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement of another Federal grant agreement, a Federal procurement contract, or any other award of Federal funds.

(4) Costs financed by program income. Costs financed by program income, as defined in Sec. 18.25, shall not count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement unless they are expressly permitted in the terms of the assistance agreement. (This use of general program income is described in Sec. 18.25(g).)

(5) Services or property financed by income earned by contractors. Contractors under a grant may earn income from the activities carried out under the contract in addition to the amounts earned from the party awarding the contract. No costs of services or property supported by this income may count toward satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement unless other provisions of the grant agreement expressly permit this kind of income to be used to meet the requirement.

(6) Records. Costs and third party in-kind contributions counting towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement must be verifiable from the records of grantees and subgrantee or cost-type contractors. These records must show how the value placed on third party in-kind

contributions was derived. To the extent feasible, volunteer services will be supported by the same methods that the organization uses to support the allocability of regular personnel costs.

(7) Special standards for third party in-kind contributions.

(i) Third party in-kind contributions count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement only where, if the party receiving the contributions were to pay for them, the payments would be allowable costs.

(ii) Some third party in-kind contributions are goods and services that, if the grantee, subgrantee, or contractor receiving the contribution had to pay for them, the payments would have been an indirect costs. Costs sharing or matching credit for such contributions shall be given only if the grantee, subgrantee, or contractor has established, along with its regular indirect cost rate, a special rate for allocating to individual projects or programs the value of the contributions.

(iii) A third party in-kind contribution to a fixed-price contract may count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement only if it results in:

(A) An increase in the services or property provided under the contract (without additional cost to the grantee or subgrantee) or

(B) A cost savings to the grantee or subgrantee.

(iv) The values placed on third party inkind contributions for cost sharing or matching purposes will conform to the rules in the succeeding sections of this part. If a third party in-kind contribution is a type not treated in those sections, the value placed upon it shall be fair and reasonable.

(8) 23 U.S.C. 121(a) permits reimbursement for actual construction cost incurred by States for highway construction projects. Except for private donations of right-of-way, contributions and donations shall not be considered State costs, and shall not be allowable for matching purposes for highway construction contracts. 23 U.S.C. 323 permits private donations of right-of-way to be used for a State's matching share, and establishes procedures for determining the fair market value of such donated right-of-way.

(9) Section 4(a) of the UMT Act of 1964, as amended, provides that the Federal grant for any project to be assisted under section 3 of the UMT Act of 1964, as amended, shall be in an amount equal to 75 percent of the net project costs. Net project cost is defined as that portion of the cost of the project which cannot be reasonably financed from revenues.

(10) Section 18(e) of the UMT Act of 1964, as amended, limits the Federal share to 80 percent of

the net cost of construction, as determined by the Secretary of Transportation. The Federal share for the payment of subsidies for operating expenses, as defined by the Secretary, shall not exceed 50 percent of the net cost of such operating expense projects.

(c) Valuation of donated services

(1) Volunteer services. Unpaid services provided to a grantee or subgrantee by individuals will be valued at rates consistent with those ordinarily paid for similar work in the grantee's or subgrantee's organization. If the grantee or subgrantee does not have employees performing similar work, the rates will be consistent with those ordinarily paid by other employers for similar work in the same labor market. In either case, a reasonable amount for fringe benefits may be included in the valuation.

(2) Employees of other organizations. When an employer other than a grantee, subgrantee, or cost-type contractor furnishes free of charge the services of an employee in the employee's normal line of work, the services will be valued at the employee's regular rate of pay exclusive of the employee's fringe benefits and overhead costs. If the services are in a different line of work, paragraph (c)(1) of this section applies.

(3) Section 5(g) of the Department of Transportation Act (49 U.S.C. 1654(g)) limits in-kind service contributions under the local Rail Service Assistance Program to "the cash equivalent of State salaries for State public employees working in the State rail assistance program, but not including overhead and general administrative costs.'"

(d) Valuation of third party donated supplies and loaned equipment or space.

(1) If a third party donates supplies, the contribution will be valued at the market value of the supplies at the time of donation.

(2) If a third party donates the use of equipment or space in a building but retains title, the contribution will be valued at the fair rental rate of the equipment or space.

(e) Valuation of third party donated equipment, buildings, and land. If a third party donates equipment, buildings, or land, and title passes to a grantee or subgrantee, the treatment of the donated property will depend upon the purpose of the grant or subgrant, as follows:

(1) Awards for capital expenditures. If the purpose of the grant or subgrant is to assist the grantee or subgrantee in the acquisition of property, the market value of that property at the time of donation may be counted as cost sharing or matching,

(2) Other awards. If assisting in the acquisition of property is not the purpose of the grant or subgrant, paragraphs (e)(2) (i) and (ii) of this section apply:

(i) If approval is obtained from the awarding agency, the market value at the time of donation of the donated equipment or buildings and the fair rental rate of the donated land may be counted as cost sharing or matching. In the case of a subgrant, the terms of the grant agreement may require that the approval be obtained from the Federal agency as well as the grantee. In all cases, the approval may be given only if a purchase of the equipment or rental of the land would be approved as an allowable direct cost. If any part of the donated property was acquired with Federal funds, only the non-federal share of the property may be counted as costsharing or matching.

(ii) If approval is not obtained under paragraph (e)(2)(i) of this section, no amount may be counted for donated land, and only depreciation or use allowances may be counted for donated equipment and buildings. The depreciation or use allowances for this property are not treated as third party in-kind contributions. Instead, they are treated as costs incurred by the grantee or subgrantee. They are computed and allocated (usually as indirect costs) in accordance with the cost principles specified in Sec. 18.22, in the same way as depreciation or use allowances for purchased equipment and buildings. The amount of depreciation or use allowances for donated equipment and buildings is based on the property's market value at the time it was donated.

(f) Valuation of grantee or subgrantee donated real property for construction/acquisition. If a grantee or subgrantee donates real property for a construction or facilities acquisition project, the current market value of that property may be counted as cost sharing or matching. If any part of the donated property was acquired with Federal funds, only the non-federal share of the property may be counted as cost sharing or matching.

(g) Appraisal of real property. In some cases under paragraphs (d), (e) and (f) of this section, it will be necessary to establish the market value of land or a building or the fair rental rate of land or of space in a building. In these cases, the Federal agency may require the market value or fair rental value be set by an independent appraiser, and that the value or rate be certified by the grantee. This requirement will also be imposed by the grantee on subgrantees.

[53 FR 8086 and 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 8086, Mar. 11, 1988]

Sec. 18.25 Program income.

(a) General. Grantees are encouraged to earn income to defray program costs. Program income includes income from fees for services performed, from the use or rental of real or personal property acquired with grant funds, from the sale of commodities or items fabricated under a grant agreement, and from payments of principal and interest on loans made with grant funds. Except as otherwise provided in regulations of the Federal agency, program income does not include interest on grant funds, rebates, credits, discounts, refunds, etc. and interest earned on any of them.

(b) Definition of program income. Program income means gross income received by the grantee or subgrantee directly generated by a grant supported activity, or earned only as a result of the grant agreement during the grant period. ``During the grant period'' is the time between the effective date of the award and the ending date of the award reflected in the final financial report.

(c) Cost of generating program income. If authorized by Federal regulations or the grant agreement, costs incident to the generation of program income may be deducted from gross income to determine program income.

(d) Governmental revenues. Taxes, special assessments, levies, fines, and other such revenues raised by a grantee or subgrantee are not program income unless the revenues are specifically identified in the grant agreement or Federal agency regulations as program income.

(e) Royalties. Income from royalties and license fees for copyrighted material, patents, and inventions developed by a grantee or subgrantee is program income only if the revenues are specifically identified in the grant agreement or Federal agency regulations as program income. (See Sec. 18.34.)

(f) Property. Proceeds from the sale of real property or equipment will be handled in accordance with the requirements of Secs. 18.31 and 18.32.

(g) Use of program income. Program income shall be deducted from outlays which may be both Federal and non-Federal as described below, unless the Federal agency regulations or the grant agreement specify another alternative (or a combination of the alternatives). In specifying alternatives, the Federal agency may distinguish between income earned by the grantee and income earned by subgrantees and between the sources, kinds, or amounts of income. When Federal agencies authorize the alternatives in paragraphs (g) (2) and (3) of this section, program income in excess of any limits stipulated shall also be deducted from outlays.

(1) Deduction. Ordinarily program income shall be deducted from total allowable costs to determine the net allowable costs. Program income shall be used for current costs unless the Federal agency authorizes otherwise. Program income which the grantee did not anticipate at the time of the award shall be used to reduce the Federal agency and grantee contributions rather than to increase the funds committed to the project.

(2) Addition. When authorized, program income may be added to the funds committed to the grant agreement by the Federal agency and the grantee. The program income shall be used for the purposes and under the conditions of the grant agreement.

(3) Cost sharing or matching. When authorized, program income may be used to meet the cost sharing or matching requirement of the grant agreement. The amount of the Federal grant award remains the same.

(4) Section 3(a)(1)(D) of the UMT Act of 1964, as amended, provides that the Secretary shall establish requirements for the use of income derived from appreciated land values for certain UMTA grants. Specific requirements shall be contained in grant agreements.

(5) UMTA grantees may retain program income for allowable capital or operating expenses.

(6) For grants awarded under section 9 of the UMT Act of 1964, as amended, any revenues received from the sale of advertising and concessions in excess of fiscal year 1985 levels shall be excluded from program income.

(7) 23 U.S.C. 156 requires that States shall charge fair market value for the sale, lease, or use of rightofway airspace for non-transportation purposes and that such income shall be used for projects eligible under 23 U.S.C.

(h) Income after the award period. There are no Federal requirements governing the disposition of program income earned after the end of the award period (i.e., until the ending date of the final financial report, see paragraph (a) of this section), unless the terms of the agreement or the Federal agency regulations provide otherwise.

[53 FR 8086 and 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 8087, Mar. 11, 1988]

Sec. 18.26 Non-Federal audits.

(a) Basic rule. Grantees and subgrantees are responsible for obtaining audits in accordance with the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (31 U.S.C. 7501-7507) and revised OMB Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations." The audits shall be made by an independent auditor in accordance with generally accepted government auditing standards covering financial audits.

(b) Subgrantees. State or local governments, as those terms are defined for purposes of the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, that provide Federal awards to a subgrantee, which expends $300,000 or more (or other amount as specified by OMB) in Federal awards in a fiscal year, shall:

(1) Determine whether State or local subgrantees have met the audit requirements of the Act and whether subgrantees covered by OMB Circular A-110, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals and Other Nonprofit Organizations," have met the audit requirements of the Act. Commercial contractors (private for profit and private and governmental organizations) providing goods and services to State and local governments are not required to have a single audit performed. State and local governments should use their own procedures to ensure that the contractor has complied with laws and regulations affecting the expenditure of Federal funds;

(2) Determine whether the subgrantee spent Federal assistance funds provided in accordance with applicable laws and regulations. This may be accomplished by reviewing an audit of the subgrantee made in accordance with the Act, Circular A-110, or through other means (e.g., program reviews) if the subgrantee has not had such an audit;

(3) Ensure that appropriate corrective action is taken within six months after receipt of the audit report in instance of noncompliance with Federal laws and regulations;

(4) Consider whether subgrantee audits necessitate adjustment of the grantee's own records; and

(5) Require each subgrantee to permit independent auditors to have access to the records and financial statements.

(c) Auditor selection. In arranging for audit services, Sec. 18.36 shall be followed.

[53 FR 8086 and 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 61 FR 21387, May 10, 1996, amended at 62 FR 45939 and 45947, August 29, 1997]

Changes, Property, and Subawards

Sec. 18.30 Changes.

(a) General. Grantees and subgrantees are permitted to rebudget within the approved direct cost budget to meet unanticipated requirements and may make limited program changes to the approved project. However, unless waived by the awarding agency, certain types of post-award changes in budgets and projects shall require the prior written approval of the awarding agency.

(b) Relation to cost principles. The applicable cost principles (see Sec. 18.22) contain requirements for prior approval of certain types of costs. Except where waived, those requirements apply to all grants and subgrants even if paragraphs (c) through (f) of this section do not.

(c) Budget changes

(1) Nonconstruction projects. Except as stated in other regulations or an award document, grantees or subgrantees shall obtain the prior approval of the awarding agency whenever any of the following changes is anticipated under a nonconstruction award:

(i) Any revision which would result in the need for additional funding.

(ii) Unless waived by the awarding agency, cumulative transfers among direct cost categories, or, if applicable, among separately budgeted programs, projects, functions, or

activities which exceed or are expected to exceed ten percent of the current total approved budget, whenever the awarding agency's share exceeds $100,000.

(iii) Transfer of funds allotted for training allowances (i.e., from direct payments to trainees to other expense categories).

(2) Construction projects. Grantees and subgrantees shall obtain prior written approval for any budget revision which would result in the need for additional funds.

(3) Combined construction and nonconstruction projects. When a grant or subgrant provides funding for both construction and nonconstruction activities, the grantee or subgrantee must obtain prior written approval from the awarding agency before making any fund or budget transfer from nonconstruction to construction or vice versa.

(d) Programmatic changes. Grantees or subgrantees must obtain the prior approval of the awarding agency whenever any of the following actions is anticipated:

(1) Any revision of the scope or objectives of the project (regardless of whether there is an associated budget revision requiring prior approval).

(2) Need to extend the period of availability of funds.

(3) Changes in key persons in cases where specified in an application or a grant award. In research projects, a change in the project director or principal investigator shall always require approval unless waived by the awarding agency.

(4) Under nonconstruction projects, contracting out, subgranting (if authorized by law) or otherwise obtaining the services of a third party to perform activities which are central to the purposes of the award. This approval requirement is in addition to the approval requirements of Sec. 18.36 but does not apply to the procurement of equipment, supplies, and general support services.

(e) Additional prior approval requirements. The awarding agency may not require prior approval for any budget revision which is not described in paragraph (c) of this section.

(f) Requesting prior approval.

(1) A request for prior approval of any budget revision will be in the same budget formal the grantee used in its application and shall be accompanied by a narrative justification for the proposed revision.

(2) A request for a prior approval under the applicable Federal cost principles (see Sec. 18.22)

may be made by letter.

(3) A request by a subgrantee for prior approval will be addressed in writing to the grantee. The grantee will promptly review such request and shall approve or disapprove the request in writing. A grantee will not approve any budget or project revision which is inconsistent with the purpose or terms and conditions of the Federal grant to the grantee. If the revision, requested by the subgrantee would result in a change to the grantee's approved project which requires Federal prior approval, the grantee will obtain the Federal agency's approval before approving the subgrantee's request.

Sec. 18.31 Real property.

(a) Title. Subject to the obligations and conditions set forth in this section, title to real property acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest upon acquisition in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) Use. Except as otherwise provided by Federal statutes, real property will be used for the originally authorized purposes as long as needed for that purposes, and the grantee or subgrantee shall not dispose of or encumber its title or other interests.

(c) Disposition. When real property is no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, the grantee or subgrantee will request disposition instructions from the awarding agency. The instructions will provide for one of the following alternatives:

(1) Retention of title. Retain title after compensating the awarding agency. The amount paid to the awarding agency will be computed by applying the awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase to the fair market value of the property. However, in those situations where a grantee or subgrantee is disposing of real property acquired with grant funds and acquiring replacement real property under the same program, the net proceeds from the disposition may be used as an offset to the cost of the replacement property.

(2) Sale of property. Sell the property and compensate the awarding agency. The amount due to the awarding agency will be calculated by applying the awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase to the proceeds of the sale after deduction of any actual and reasonable selling and fixing-up expenses. If the grant is still active, the net proceeds from sale may be offset against the original cost of the property. When a grantee or subgrantee is directed to sell property, sales procedures shall be followed that provide for competition to the extent practicable and result in the highest possible return.

(3) Transfer of title. Transfer title to the awarding agency or to a third-party designated/approved by the awarding agency. The grantee or subgrantee shall be paid an amount calculated by applying the grantee or subgrantee's percentage of participation in the purchase of the real property to the current fair market value of the property.

(d) If the conditions in 23 U.S.C. 103(e) (5), (6), or (7), as appropriate, are met and approval is given by the Secretary, States shall not be required to repay the Highway Trust Fund for the cost of right-of-way and other items when certain segments of the Interstate System are withdrawn.

[53 FR 8086 and 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 8087, Mar. 11, 1988]

Sec. 18.32 Equipment.

(a) Title. Subject to the obligations and conditions set forth in this section, title to equipment acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest upon acquisition in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) States. A State will use, manage, and dispose of equipment acquired under a grant by the State in accordance with State laws and procedures. Other grantees and subgrantees will follow paragraphs (c) through (e) of this section.

(c) Use.

(1) Equipment shall be used by the grantee or subgrantee in the program or project for which it was acquired as long as needed, whether or not the project or program continues to be supported by Federal funds. When no longer needed for the original program or project, the equipment may be used in other activities currently or previously supported by a Federal agency.

(2) The grantee or subgrantee shall also make equipment available for use on other projects or programs currently or previously supported by the Federal Government, providing such use will not interfere with the work on the projects or program for which it was originally acquired. First preference for other use shall be given to other programs or projects supported by the awarding agency. User fees should be considered if appropriate.

(3) Notwithstanding the encouragement in Sec. 18.25(a) to earn program income, the grantee or subgrantee must not use equipment acquired with grant funds to provide services for a fee to compete unfairly with private companies that provide equivalent services, unless specifically permitted or contemplated by Federal statute.

(4) When acquiring replacement equipment, the grantee or subgrantee may use the equipment to be replaced as a tradein or sell the property and use the proceeds to offset the cost of the replacement property, subject to the approval of the awarding agency.

(d) Management requirements. Procedures for managing equipment (including replacement equipment), whether acquired in whole or in part with grant funds, until disposition takes place will, as a minimum, meet the following requirements:

(1) Property records must be maintained that include a description of the property, a serial number or other identification number, the source of property, who holds title, the acquisition date, and cost of the property, percentage of Federal participation in the cost of the property, the location, use and condition of the property, and any ultimate disposition data including the date of disposal and sale price of the property.

(2) A physical inventory of the property must be taken and the results reconciled with the property records at least once every two years.

(3) A control system must be developed to ensure adequate safeguards to prevent loss, damage, or theft of the property. Any loss, damage, or theft shall be investigated.

(4) Adequate maintenance procedures must be developed to keep the property in good condition.

(5) If the grantee or subgrantee is authorized or required to sell the property, proper sales procedures must be established to ensure the highest possible return.

(e) Disposition. When original or replacement equipment acquired under a grant or subgrant is no longer needed for the original project or program or for other activities currently or previously supported by a Federal agency, disposition of the equipment will be made as follows:

(1) Items of equipment with a current per-unit fair market value of less than $5,000 may be retained, sold or otherwise disposed of with no further obligation to the awarding agency.

(2) Items of equipment with a current per unit fair market value in excess of $5,000 may be retained or sold and the awarding agency shall have a right to an amount calculated by multiplying the current market value or proceeds from sale by the awarding agency's share of the equipment.

(3) In cases where a grantee or subgrantee fails to take appropriate disposition actions, the awarding agency may direct the grantee or subgrantee to take excess and disposition actions.

(f) Federal equipment. In the event a grantee or subgrantee is provided federally-owned equipment:

(1) Title will remain vested in the Federal Government.

(2) Grantees or subgrantees will manage the equipment in accordance with Federal agency rules and procedures, and submit an annual inventory listing.

(3) When the equipment is no longer needed, the grantee or subgrantee will request disposition instructions from the Federal agency.

(g) Right to transfer title. The Federal awarding agency may reserve the right to transfer title to the Federal Government or a third part named by the awarding agency when such a third party is otherwise eligible under existing statutes. Such transfers shall be subject to the following standards:

(1) The property shall be identified in the grant or otherwise made known to the grantee in writing.

(2) The Federal awarding agency shall issue disposition instruction within 120 calendar days after the end of the Federal support of the project for which it was acquired. If the Federal awarding agency fails to issue disposition instructions within the 120 calendar-day period the grantee shall follow Sec. 18.32(e).

(3) When title to equipment is transferred, the grantee shall be paid an amount calculated by applying the percentage of participation in the purchase to the current fair market value of the property.

Sec. 18.33 Supplies.

(a) Title. Title to supplies acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest, upon acquisition, in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) Disposition. If there is a residual inventory of unused supplies exceeding $5,000 in total aggregate fair market value upon termination or completion of the award, and if the supplies are not needed for any other federally sponsored programs or projects, the grantee or subgrantee shall compensate the awarding agency for its share.

Sec. 18.34 Copyrights.

The Federal awarding agency reserves a royaltyfree, nonexclusive, and irrevocable license to reproduce, publish or otherwise use, and to authorize others to use, for Federal Government purposes:

(a) The copyright in any work developed under a grant, subgrant, or contract under a grant or subgrant; and

(b) Any rights of copyright to which a grantee, subgrantee or a contractor purchases ownership with grant support.

Sec. 18.35 Subawards to debarred and suspended parties.

Grantees and subgrantees must not make any award or permit any award (subgrant or contract) at any tier to any party which is debarred or suspended or is otherwise excluded from or ineligible for

participation in Federal assistance programs under Executive Order 12549, "Debarment and Suspension."

Sec. 18.36 Procurement.

(a) States. When procuring property and services under a grant, a State will follow the same policies and procedures it uses for procurements from its non-Federal funds. The State will ensure that every purchase order or other contract includes any clauses required by Federal statutes and executive orders and their implementing regulations. Other grantees and subgrantees will follow paragraphs (b) through (i) in this section.

(b) Procurement standards.

(1) Grantees and subgrantees will use their own procurement procedures which reflect applicable State and local laws and regulations, provided that the procurements conform to applicable Federal law and the standards identified in this section.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain a contract administration system which ensures that contractors perform in accordance with the terms, conditions, and specifications of their contracts or purchase orders.

(3) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain a written code of standards of conduct governing the performance of their employees engaged in the award and administration of contracts. No employee, officer or agent of the grantee or subgrantee shall participate in selection, or in the award or administration of a contract supported by Federal funds if a conflict of interest, real or apparent, would be involved. Such a conflict would arise when:

(i) The employee, officer or agent,

(ii) Any member of his immediate family,

(iii) His or her partner, or

(iv) An organization which employs, or is about to employ, any of the above, has a financial or other interest in the firm selected for award. The grantee's or subgrantee's officers, employees or agents will neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors or anything of monetary value from contractors, potential contractors, or parties to subagreements. Grantee and subgrantees may set minimum rules where the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal intrinsic value. To the extent permitted by State or local law or regulations, such standards or conduct will provide for penalties, sanctions, or other disciplinary actions for violations of such standards by the grantee's and subgrantee's officers, employees, or agents, or by contractors or their agents.

The awarding agency may in regulation provide additional prohibitions relative to real, apparent, or potential conflicts of interest.

(4) Grantee and subgrantee procedures will provide for a review of proposed procurements to avoid purchase of unnecessary or duplicative items. Consideration should be given to consolidating or breaking out procurements to obtain a more economical purchase. Where appropriate, an analysis will be made of lease versus purchase alternatives, and any other appropriate analysis to determine the most economical approach.

(5) To foster greater economy and efficiency, grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to enter into State and local intergovernmental agreements for procurement or use of common goods and services.

(6) Grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use Federal excess and surplus property in lieu of purchasing new equipment and property whenever such use is feasible and reduces project costs.

(7) Grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use value engineering clauses in contracts for construction projects of sufficient size to offer reasonable opportunities for cost reductions. Value engineering is a systematic and creative analysis of each contract item or task to ensure that its essential function is provided at the overall lower cost.

(8) Grantees and subgrantees will make awards only to responsible contractors possessing the ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of a proposed procurement. Consideration will be given to such matters as contractor integrity, compliance with public policy, record of past performance, and financial and technical resources.

(9) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain records sufficient to detail the significant history of a procurement. These records will include, but are not necessarily limited to the following: rationale for the method of procurement, selection of contract type, contractor selection or rejection, and the basis for the contract price.

(10) Grantees and subgrantees will use time and material type contracts only--

(i) After a determination that no other contract is suitable, and

(ii) If the contract includes a ceiling price that the contractor exceeds at its own risk.

(11) Grantees and subgrantees alone will be responsible, in accordance with good administrative practice and sound business judgment, for the settlement of all contractual and administrative issues arising out of procurements. These issues include, but are not limited to source evaluation, protests, disputes, and claims. These standards do not relieve the grantee or subgrantee of any contractual responsibilities under its contracts. Federal agencies will not substitute their judgment

for that of the grantee or subgrantee unless the matter is primarily a Federal concern. Violations of law will be referred to the local, State, or Federal authority having proper jurisdiction.

(12) Grantees and subgrantees will have protest procedures to handle and resolve disputes relating to their procurements and shall in all instances disclose information regarding the protest to the awarding agency. A protestor must exhaust all administrative remedies with the grantee and subgrantee before pursuing a protest with the Federal agency. Reviews of protests by the Federal agency will be limited to:

(i) Violations of Federal law or regulations and the standards of this section (violations of State or local law will be under the jurisdiction of State or local authorities) and

(ii) Violations of the grantee's or subgrantee's protest procedures for failure to review a complaint or protest. Protests received by the Federal agency other than those specified above will be referred to the grantee or subgrantee.

(c) Competition.

(1) All procurement transactions will be conducted in a manner providing full and open competition consistent with the standards of Sec. 18.36. Some of the situations considered to be restrictive of competition include but are not limited to:

(i) Placing unreasonable requirements on firms in order for them to qualify to do business,

(ii) Requiring unnecessary experience and excessive bonding,

(iii) Noncompetitive pricing practices between firms or between affiliated companies,

(iv) Noncompetitive awards to consultants that are on retainer contracts,

(v) Organizational conflicts of interest,

(vi) Specifying only a "brand name" product instead of allowing "an equal" product to be offered and describing the performance of other relevant requirements of the procurement, and

(vii) Any arbitrary action in the procurement process.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will conduct procurements in a manner that prohibits the use of statutorily or administratively imposed in-State or local geographical preferences in the evaluation of bids or proposals, except in those cases where applicable Federal statutes expressly

mandate or encourage geographic preference. Nothing in this section preempts State licensing laws. When contracting for architectural and engineering (A/E) services, geographic location may be a selection criteria provided its application leaves an appropriate number of qualified firms, given the nature and size of the project, to compete for the contract.

(3) Grantees will have written selection procedures for procurement transactions. These procedures will ensure that all solicitations:

(i) Incorporate a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements for the material, product, or service to be procured. Such description shall not, in competitive procurements, contain features which unduly restrict competition. The description may include a statement of the qualitative nature of the material, product or service to be procured, and when necessary, shall set forth those minimum essential characteristics and standards to which it must conform if it is to satisfy its intended use. Detailed product specifications should be avoided if at all possible. When it is impractical or uneconomical to make a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements, a "brand name or equal" description may be used as a means to define the performance or other salient requirements of a procurement. The specific features of the named brand which must be met by offerors shall be clearly stated; and

(2) Identify all requirements which the offerors must fulfill and all other factors to be used in evaluating bids or proposals.

(4) Grantees and subgrantees will ensure that all prequalified lists of persons, firms, or products which are used in acquiring goods and services are current and include enough qualified sources to ensure maximum open and free competition. Also, grantees and subgrantees will not preclude potential bidders from qualifying during the solicitation period.

(d) Methods of procurement to be followed

(1) Procurement by small purchase procedures. Small purchase procedures are those relatively simple and informal procurement methods for securing services, supplies, or other property that do not cost more than the simplified acquisition threshold fixed at 41 U.S.C. 403(11) (currently set at $100,000). If small purchase procedures are used, price or rate quotations shall be obtained from an adequate number of qualified sources.

(2) Procurement by sealed bids (formal advertising). Bids are publicly solicited and a firmfixedprice contract (lump sum or unit price) is awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming with all the material terms and conditions of the invitation for bids, is the lowest in price. The sealed bid method is the preferred method for procuring construction, if the conditions in Sec. 18.36(d)(2)(i) apply.

(i) In order for sealed bidding to be feasible, the following conditions should be present:

(A) complete, adequate, and realistic specification or purchase description is available;

(B) Two or more responsible bidders are willing and able to compete effectively and for the business; and

(C) The procurement lends itself to a firm fixed price contract and the selection of the successful bidder can be made principally on the basis of price.

(ii) If sealed bids are used, the following requirements apply:

(A) The invitation for bids will be publicly advertised and bids shall be solicited from an adequate number of known suppliers, providing them sufficient time prior to the date set for opening the bids;

(B) The invitation for bids, which will include any specifications and pertinent attachments, shall define the items or services in order for the bidder to properly respond;

(C) All bids will be publicly opened at the time and place prescribed in the invitation for bids;

(D) A firm fixed-price contract award will be made in writing to the lowest responsive and responsible bidder. Where specified in bidding documents, factors such as discounts, transportation cost, and life cycle costs shall be considered in determining which bid is lowest. Payment discounts will only be used to determine the low bid when prior experience indicates that such discounts are usually taken advantage of; and

(E) Any or all bids may be rejected if there is a sound documented reason.

(3) Procurement by competitive proposals. The technique of competitive proposals is normally conducted with more than one source submitting an offer, and either a fixed-price or cost-reimbursement type contract is awarded. It is generally used when conditions are not appropriate for the use of sealed bids. If this method is used, the following requirements apply:

(i) Requests for proposals will be publicized and identify all evaluation factors and their relative importance. Any response to publicized requests for proposals shall be honored to the maximum extent practical;

(ii) Proposals will be solicited from an adequate number of qualified sources;

(iii) Grantees and subgrantees will have a method for conducting technical evaluations of the proposals received and for selecting awardees;

(iv) Awards will be made to the responsible firm whose proposal is most advantageous to the program, with price and other factors considered; and

(v) Grantees and subgrantees may use competitive proposal procedures for qualifications-based procurement of architectural/engineering (A/E) professional services whereby competitors' qualifications are evaluated and the most qualified competitor is selected, subject to negotiation of fair and reasonable compensation. The method, where price is not used as a selection factor, can only be used in procurement of A/E professional services. It cannot be used to purchase other types of services though A/E firms are a potential source to perform the proposed effort.

(4) Procurement by noncompetitive proposals is procurement through solicitation of a proposal from only one source, or after solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

(i) Procurement by noncompetitive proposals may be used only when the award of a contract is infeasible under small purchase procedures, sealed bids or competitive proposals and one of the following circumstances applies:

(A) The item is available only from a single source;

(B) The public exigency or emergency for the requirement will not permit a delay resulting from competitive solicitation;

(C) The awarding agency authorizes noncompetitive proposals; or

(D) After solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

(ii) Cost analysis, i.e., verifying the proposed cost data, the projections of the data, and the evaluation of the specific elements of costs and profits, is required.

(iii) Grantees and subgrantees may be required to submit the proposed procurement to the awarding agency for pre-award review in accordance with paragraph (g) of this section.

(e) Contracting with small and minority firms, women's business enterprise and labor surplus area firms.

(1) The grantee and subgrantee will take all necessary affirmative steps to assure that minority firms, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms are used when possible.

(2) Affirmative steps shall include:

(i) Placing qualified small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises on solicitation lists;

(ii) Assuring that small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources;

(iii) Dividing total requirements, when economically feasible, into smaller tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by small and minority business, and women's business enterprises;

(iv) Establishing delivery schedules, where the requirement permits, which encourage participation by small and minority business, and women's business enterprises;

(v) Using the services and assistance of the Small Business Administration, and the Minority Business Development Agency of the Department of Commerce; and

(vi) Requiring the prime contractor, if subcontracts are to be let, to take the affirmative steps listed in paragraphs (e)(2) (i) through (v) of this section.

(f) Contract cost and price.

(1) Grantees and subgrantees must perform a cost or price analysis in connection with every procurement action including contract modifications. The method and degree of analysis is dependent on the facts surrounding the particular procurement situation, but as a starting point, grantees must make independent estimates before receiving bids or proposals. A cost analysis must be performed when the offeror is required to submit the elements of his estimated cost, e.g., under professional, consulting, and architectural engineering services contracts. A cost analysis will be necessary when adequate price competition is lacking, and for sole source procurements, including contract modifications or change orders, unless price reasonableness can be established on the basis of a catalog or market price of a commercial product sold in substantial quantities to the general public or based on prices set by law or regulation. A price analysis will be used in all other instances to determine the reasonableness of the proposed contract price.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will negotiate profit as a separate element of the price for each contract in which there is no price competition and in all cases where cost analysis is performed. To establish a fair and reasonable profit, consideration will be given to the complexity of the

work to be performed, the risk borne by the contractor, the contractor's investment, the amount of subcontracting, the quality of its record of past performance, and industry profit rates in the surrounding geographical area for similar work.

(3) Costs or prices based on estimated costs for contracts under grants will be allowable only to the extent that costs incurred or cost estimates included in negotiated prices are consistent with Federal cost principles (see Sec. 18.22). Grantees may reference their own cost principles that comply with the applicable Federal cost principles.

(4) The cost plus a percentage of cost and percentage of construction cost methods of contracting shall not be used.

(g) Awarding agency review.

(1) Grantees and subgrantees must make available, upon request of the awarding agency, technical specifications on proposed procurements where the awarding agency believes such review is needed to ensure that the item and/or service specified is the one being proposed for purchase. This review generally will take place prior to the time the specification is incorporated into a solicitation document. However, if the grantee or subgrantee desires to have the review accomplished after a solicitation has been developed, the awarding agency may still review the specifications, with such review usually limited to the technical aspects of the proposed purchase.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees must on request make available for awarding agency pre-award review procurement documents, such as requests for proposals or invitations for bids, independent cost estimates, etc. when:

(i) A grantee's or subgrantee's procurement procedures or operation fails to comply with the procurement standards in this section; or

(ii) The procurement is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded without competition or only one bid or offer is received in response to a solicitation; or

(iii) The procurement, which is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold, specifies a "brand name" product; or

(iv) The proposed award is more than the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded to other than the apparent low bidder under a sealed bid procurement; or

(v) A proposed contract modification changes the scope of a contract or increases the contract amount by more than the simplified acquisition threshold.

(3) A grantee or subgrantee will be exempt from the pre-award review in paragraph (g)(2) of this section if the awarding agency determines that its procurement systems comply with the standards of this section.

(i) A grantee or subgrantee may request that its procurement system be reviewed by the awarding agency to determine whether its system meets these standards in order for its system to be certified. Generally, these reviews shall occur where there is a continuous high-dollar funding, and third-party contracts are awarded on a regular basis.

(ii) A grantee or subgrantee may self-certify its procurement system. Such self-certification shall not limit the awarding agency's right to survey the system. Under a self-certification procedure, awarding agencies may wish to rely on written assurances from the grantee or subgrantee that it is complying with these standards. A grantee or subgrantee will cite specific procedures, regulations, standards, etc., as being in compliance with these requirements and have its system available for review.

(h) Bonding requirements. For construction or facility improvement contracts or subcontracts exceeding the simplified acquisition threshold, the awarding agency may accept the bonding policy and requirements of the grantee or subgrantee provided the awarding agency has made a determination that the awarding agency's interest is adequately protected. If such a determination has not been made, the minimum requirements shall be as follows:

(1) A bid guarantee from each bidder equivalent to five percent of the bid price. The "bid guarantee" shall consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond, certified check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder will, upon acceptance of his bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

(2) A performance bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A "performance bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to secure fulfillment of all the contractor's obligations under such contract.

(3) A payment bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A "payment bond'" is one executed in connection with a contract to assure payment as required by law of all persons supplying labor and material in the execution of the work provided for in the contract.

(i) Contract provisions. A grantee's and subgrantee's contracts must contain provisions in paragraph (i) of this section. Federal agencies are permitted to require changes, remedies, changed conditions, access and records retention, suspension of work, and other clauses approved by the Office of Federal Procurement Policy.

(1) Administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach

contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as may be appropriate. (Contracts more than the simplified acquisition threshold)

(2) Termination for cause and for convenience by the grantee or subgrantee including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement. (All contracts in excess of $10,000)

(3) Compliance with Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, entitled ``Equal Employment Opportunity," as amended by Executive Order 11375 of October 13, 1967, and as supplemented in Department of Labor regulations (41 CFR chapter 60). (All construction contracts awarded in excess of $10,000 by grantees and their contractors or subgrantees)

(4) Compliance with the Copeland "AntiKickback" Act (18 U.S.C. 874) as supplemented in Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 3). (All contracts and subgrants for construction or repair)

(5) Compliance with the DavisBacon Act (40 U.S.C. 276a to 276a-7) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 5). (Construction contracts in excess of $2000 awarded by grantees and subgrantees when required by Federal grant program legislation)

(6) Compliance with Sections 103 and 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 327-330) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 5). (Construction contracts awarded by grantees and subgrantees in excess of $2000, and in excess of $2500 for other contracts which involve the employment of mechanics or laborers)

(7) Notice of awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to reporting.

(8) Notice of awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to patent rights with respect to any discovery or invention which arises or is developed in the course of or under such contract.

(9) Awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to copyrights and rights in data.

(10) Access by the grantee, the subgrantee, the Federal grantor agency, the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives to any books, documents, papers, and records of the contractor which are directly pertinent to that specific contract for the purpose of making audit, examination, excerpts, and transcriptions.

(11) Retention of all required records for three years after grantees or subgrantees make final payments and all other pending matters are closed.

(12) Compliance with all applicable standards, orders, or requirements issued under section 306 of the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 1857(h)), section 508 of the Clean Water Act (33 U.S.C. 1368),

Executive Order 11738, and Environmental Protection Agency regulations (40 CFR part 15). (Contracts, subcontracts, and subgrants of amounts in excess of $100,000)

(13) Mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (Pub. L. 94-163, 89 Stat. 871).

(j) 23 U.S.C. 112(a) directs the Secretary to require recipients of highway construction grants to use bidding methods that are "effective in securing competition." Detailed construction contracting procedures are contained in 23 CFR part 635, subpart A.

(k) Section 3(a)(2)(C) of the UMT Act of 1964, as amended, prohibits the use of grant or loan funds to support procurements utilizing exclusionary or discriminatory specifications.

(l) 46 U.S.C. 1241(b)(1) and 46 CFR part 381 impose cargo preference requirements on the shipment of foreign made goods.

(m) Section 165 of the Surface Transportation Assistance Act of 1982, 49 U.S.C. 1601, section 337 of the Surface Transportation and Uniform Relocation Assistance Act of 1987, and 49 CFR parts 660 and 661 impose Buy America provisions on the procurement of foreign products and materials.

(n) Section 105(f) of the Surface Transportation Assistance Act of 1982, section 106(c) of the Surface Transportation and Uniform Relocation Assistance Act of 1987, and 49 CFR part 23 impose requirements for the participation of disadvantaged business enterprises.

(o) Section 308 of the Surface Transportation Assistance Act of 1982, 49 U.S.C. 1068(b)(2), authorizes the use of competitive negotiation for the purchase of rolling stock as appropriate.

(p) 23 U.S.C. 112(b) provides for an exemption to competitive bidding requirements for highway construction contracts in emergency situations.

(q) 23 U.S.C. 112 requires concurrence by the Secretary before highway construction contracts can be awarded, except for projects authorized under the provisions of 23 U.S.C. 17l.

(r) 23 U.S.C. 112(e) requires standardized contract clauses concerning site conditions, suspension or work, and material changes in the scope of the work for highway construction contracts.

(s)23 U.S.C. 140(b) authorizes the preferential employment of Indians on Indian Reservation road projects and contracts.

(t) FHWA, UMTA, and Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) grantees and subgrantees shall extend the use of qualifications-based (e.g., architectural and engineering services) contract selection

procedures to certain other related areas and shall award such contracts in the same manner as Federal contracts for architectural and engineering services are negotiated under Title IX of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949, or equivalent State (or airport sponsor for FAA) qualifications-based requirements. For FHWA and UMTA programs, this provision applies except to the extent that a State adopts or has adopted by statute a formal procedure for the procurement of such services.

[53 FR 8086 and 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 8087, Mar. 11, 1988; 60 FR 19639, 19647, Apr. 19, 1995]

Sec. 18.37 Subgrants.

(a) States. States shall follow state law and procedures when awarding and administering subgrants (whether on a cost reimbursement or fixed amount basis) of financial assistance to local and Indian tribal governments. States shall:

(1) Ensure that every subgrant includes any clauses required by Federal statute and executive orders and their implementing regulations;

(2) Ensure that subgrantees are aware of requirements imposed upon them by Federal statute and regulation;

(3) Ensure that a provision for compliance with Sec. 18.42 is placed in every cost reimbursement subgrant; and

(4) Conform any advances of grant funds to subgrantees substantially to the same standards of timing and amount that apply to cash advances by Federal agencies.

(b) All other grantees. All other grantees shall follow the provisions of this part which are applicable to awarding agencies when awarding and administering subgrants (whether on a cost reimbursement or fixed amount basis) of financial assistance to local and Indian tribal governments. Grantees shall:

(1) Ensure that every subgrant includes a provision for compliance with this part;

(2) Ensure that every subgrant includes any clauses required by Federal statute and executive orders and their implementing regulations; and

(3) Ensure that subgrantees are aware of requirements imposed upon them by Federal statutes and regulations.

(c) Exceptions. By their own terms, certain provisions of this part do not apply to the award and administration of subgrants:

(1) Section 18.10;

(2) Section 18.11;

(3) The letter-of-credit procedures specified in Treasury Regulations at 31 CFR part 205, cited in Sec. 18.21; and

(4) Section 18.50.

Reports, Records, Retention, and Enforcement

Sec. 18.40 Monitoring and reporting program performance.

(a) Monitoring by grantees. Grantees are responsible for managing the day-to-day operations of grant and subgrant supported activities. Grantees must monitor grant and subgrant supported activities to assure compliance with applicable Federal requirements and that performance goals are being achieved. Grantee monitoring must cover each program, function or activity.

(b) Nonconstruction performance reports. The Federal agency may, if it decides that performance information available from subsequent applications contains sufficient information to meet its programmatic needs, require the grantee to submit a performance report only upon expiration or termination of grant support. Unless waived by the Federal agency this report will be due on the same date as the final Financial Status Report.

(1) Grantees shall submit annual performance reports unless the awarding agency requires quarterly or semi-annual reports. However, performance reports will not be required more frequently than quarterly. Annual reports shall be due 90 days after the grant year, quarterly or semi-annual reports shall be due 30 days after the reporting period. The final performance report will be due 90 days after the expiration or termination of grant support. If a justified request is submitted by a grantee, the Federal agency may extend the due date for any performance report. Additionally, requirements for unnecessary performance reports may be waived by the Federal agency.

(2) Performance reports will contain, for each grant, brief information on the following:

(i) A comparison of actual accomplishments to the objectives established for the period. Where the output of the project can be quantified, a computation of the cost per unit of output may be required if that information will be useful.

(ii) The reasons for slippage if established objectives were not met.

(iii) Additional pertinent information including, when appropriate, analysis and explanation of cost overruns or high unit costs.

(3) Grantees will not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of performance reports.

(4) Grantees will adhere to the standards in this section in prescribing performance reporting requirements for subgrantees.

(c) Construction performance reports. For the most part, on-site technical inspections and certified percentage-of-completion data are relied on heavily by Federal agencies to monitor progress under construction grants and subgrants. The Federal agency will require additional formal performance reports only when considered necessary, and never more frequently than quarterly.

(1) Section 12(h) of the UMT Act of 1964, as amended, requires pre-award testing of new buses models.

(2) [Reserved]

(d) Significant developments. Events may occur between the scheduled performance reporting dates which have significant impact upon the grant or subgrant supported activity. In such cases, the grantee must inform the Federal agency as soon as the following types of conditions become known:

(1) Problems, delays, or adverse conditions which will materially impair the ability to meet the objective of the award. This disclosure must include a statement of the action taken, or contemplated, and any assistance needed to resolve the situation.

(2) Favorable developments which enable meeting time schedules and objectives sooner or at less cost than anticipated or producing more beneficial results than originally planned.

(e) Federal agencies may make site visits as warranted by program needs.

(f) Waivers, extensions.

(1) Federal agencies may waive any performance report required by this part if not needed.

(2) The grantee may waive any performance report from a subgrantee when not needed. The grantee may extend the due date for any performance report from a subgrantee if the grantee will still be able to meet its performance reporting obligations to the Federal agency.

[53 FR 8086 and 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 8087, Mar. 11, 1988]

Sec. 18.41 Financial Reporting.

(a) General.

(1) Except as provided in paragraphs (a) (2) and (5) of this section, grantees will use only the forms specified in paragraphs (a) through (e) of this section, and such supplementary or other forms as may from time to time be authorized by OMB, for:

(i) Submitting financial reports to Federal agencies, or

(ii) Requesting advances or reimbursements when letters of credit are not used.

(2) Grantees need not apply the forms prescribed in this section in dealing with their subgrantees. However, grantees shall not impose more burdensome requirements on subgrantees.

(3) Grantees shall follow all applicable standard and supplemental Federal agency instructions approved by OMB to the extent required under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980 for use in connection with forms specified in paragraphs (b) through (e) of this section. Federal agencies may issue substantive supplementary instructions only with the approval of OMB. Federal agencies may shade out or instruct the grantee to disregard any line item that the Federal agency finds unnecessary for its decisionmaking purposes.

(4) Grantees will not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of forms required under this part.

(5) Federal agencies may provide computer outputs to grantees to expedite or contribute to the accuracy of reporting. Federal agencies may accept the required information from grantees in machine usable format or computer printouts instead of prescribed forms.

(6) Federal agencies may waive any report required by this section if not needed.

(7) Federal agencies may extend the due date of any financial report upon receiving a justified request from a grantee.

(b) Financial Status Report

(1) Form. Grantees will use Standard Form 269 or 269A, Financial Status Report, to report the status of funds for all nonconstruction grants and for construction grants when required in accordance with Sec. 18.41(e)(2)(iii).

(2) Accounting basis. Each grantee will report program outlays and program income on a cash or

accrual basis as prescribed by the awarding agency. If the Federal agency requires accrual information and the grantee's accounting records are not normally kept on the accrual basis, the grantee shall not be required to convert its accounting system but shall develop such accrual information through and analysis of the documentation on hand.

(3) Frequency. The Federal agency may prescribe the frequency of the report for each project or program. However, the report will not be required more frequently than quarterly. If the Federal agency does not specify the frequency of the report, it will be submitted annually. A final report will be required upon expiration or termination of grant support.

(4) Due date. When reports are required on a quarterly or semiannual basis, they will be due 30 days after the reporting period. When required on an annual basis, they will be due 90 days after the grant year. Final reports will be due 90 days after the expiration or termination of grant support.

(c) Federal Cash Transactions Report

(1) Form. (i) For grants paid by letter or credit, Treasury check advances or electronic transfer of funds, the grantee will submit the Standard Form 272, Federal Cash Transactions Report, and when necessary, its continuation sheet, Standard Form 272a, unless the terms of the award exempt the grantee from this requirement.

(ii) These reports will be used by the Federal agency to monitor cash advanced to grantees and to obtain disbursement or outlay information for each grant from grantees. The format of the report may be adapted as appropriate when reporting is to be accomplished with the assistance of automatic data processing equipment provided that the information to be submitted is not changed in substance.

(2) Forecasts of Federal cash requirements. Forecasts of Federal cash requirements may be required in the "Remarks" section of the report.

(3) Cash in hands of subgrantees. When considered necessary and feasible by the Federal agency, grantees may be required to report the amount of cash advances in excess of three days needs in the hands of their subgrantees or contractors and to provide short narrative explanations of actions taken by the grantee to reduce the excess balances.

(4) Frequency and due date. Grantees must submit the report no later than 15 working days following the end of each quarter. However, where an advance either by letter of credit or electronic transfer of funds is authorized at an annualized rate of one million dollars or more, the Federal agency may require the report to be submitted within 15 working days following the end of each month.

(d) Request for advance or reimbursement

(1) Advance payments. Requests for Treasury check advance payments will be submitted on Standard Form 270, Request for Advance or Reimbursement. (This form will not be used for drawdowns under a letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or when Treasury check advance payments are made to the grantee automatically on a predetermined basis.)

(2) Reimbursements. Requests for reimbursement under nonconstruction grants will also be submitted on Standard Form 270. (For reimbursement requests under construction grants, see paragraph (e)(1) of this section.)

(3) The frequency for submitting payment requests is treated in Sec. 18.41(b)(3).

(e) Outlay report and request for reimbursement for construction programs.

(1) Grants that support construction activities paid by reimbursement method.

(i) Requests for reimbursement under construction grants will be submitted on Standard Form 271, Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs. Federal agencies may, however, prescribe the Request for Advance or Reimbursement form, specified in Sec. 18.41(d), instead of this form.

(ii) The frequency for submitting reimbursement requests is treated in Sec. 18.41(b)(3).

(2) Grants that support construction activities paid by letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or Treasury check advance.

(i) When a construction grant is paid by letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or Treasury check advances, the grantee will report its outlays to the Federal agency using Standard Form 271, Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs. The Federal agency will provide any necessary special instruction. However, frequency and due date shall be governed by Sec. 18.41(b) (3) and (4).

(ii) When a construction grant is paid by Treasury check advances based on periodic requests from the grantee, the advances will be requested on the form specified in Sec. 18.41(d).

(iii) The Federal agency may substitute the Financial Status Report specified in Sec. 18.41 (b) for the Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs.

(3) Accounting basis. The accounting basis for the Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs shall be governed by Sec. 18.41(b)(2).

(f) Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraphs (a)(1) of this section, recipients of FHWA and National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) grants shall use FHWA, NHTSA or State financial reports.

[53 FR 8086 and 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 8087, Mar. 11, 1988]

Sec. 18.42 Retention and access requirements for records.

(a) Applicability.

(1) This section applies to all financial and programmatic records, supporting documents, statistical records, and other records of grantees or subgrantees which are:

(i) Required to be maintained by the terms of this part, program regulations or the grant agreement, or

(ii) Otherwise reasonably considered as pertinent to program regulations or the grant agreement.

(2) This section does not apply to records maintained by contractors or subcontractors. For a requirement to place a provision concerning records in certain kinds of contracts, see Sec. 18.36(i)(10).

(b) Length of retention period.

(1) Except as otherwise provided, records must be retained for three years from the starting date specified in paragraph (c) of this section.

(2) If any litigation, claim, negotiation, audit or other action involving the records has been started before the expiration of the 3-year period, the records must be retained until completion of the action and resolution of all issues which arise from it, or until the end of the regular 3-year period, whichever is later.

(3) To avoid duplicate recordkeeping, awarding agencies may make special arrangements with grantees and subgrantees to retain any records which are continuously needed for joint use. The awarding agency will request transfer of records to its custody when it determines that the records possess long-term retention value. When the records are transferred to or maintained by the Federal agency, the 3-year retention requirement is not applicable to the grantee or subgrantee.

(a) Starting date of retention period

(1) General. When grant support is continued or renewed at annual or other intervals, the retention period for the records of each funding period starts on the day the grantee or subgrantee submits to the awarding agency its single or last expenditure report for that period. However, if grant support is continued or renewed quarterly, the retention period for each year's records starts on the day the grantee submits its expenditure report for the last quarter of the Federal fiscal year. In all other cases, the retention period starts on the day the grantee submits its final expenditure report. If an expenditure report has been waived, the retention period starts on the day the report would have been due.

(2) Real property and equipment records. The retention period for real property and equipment records starts from the date of the disposition or replacement or transfer at the direction of the awarding agency.

(3) Records for income transactions after grant or subgrant support. In some cases grantees must report income after the period of grant support. Where there is such a requirement, the retention period for the records pertaining to the earning of the income starts from the end of the grantee's fiscal year in which the income is earned.

(4) Indirect cost rate proposals, cost allocations plans, etc. This paragraph applies to the following types of documents, and their supporting records: indirect cost rate computations or proposals, cost allocation plans, and any similar accounting computations of the rate at which a particular group of costs is chargeable (such as computer usage chargeback rates or composite fringe benefit rates).

(i) If submitted for negotiation. If the proposal, plan, or other computation is required to be submitted to the Federal Government (or to the grantee) to form the basis for negotiation of the rate, then the 3-year retention period for its supporting records starts from the date of such submission.

(ii) If not submitted for negotiation. If the proposal, plan, or other computation is not required to be submitted to the Federal Government (or to the grantee) for negotiation purposes, then the 3-year retention period for the proposal plan, or computation and its supporting records starts from the end of the fiscal year (or other accounting period) covered by the proposal, plan, or other computation.

(d) Substitution of microfilm. Copies made by microfilming, photocopying, or similar methods may be substituted for the original records.

(e) Access to records

(1) Records of grantees and subgrantees. The awarding agency and the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their authorized representatives, shall have the right of access to any pertinent books, documents, papers, or other records of grantees and subgrantees which are pertinent to the grant, in order to make audits, examinations, excerpts, and transcripts.

(2) Expiration of right of access. The right of access in this section must not be limited to the required retention period but shall last as long as the records are retained.

(f) Restrictions on public access. The Federal Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) does not apply to records unless required by Federal, State, or local law, grantees and subgrantees are not required to permit public access to their records.

Sec. 18.43 Enforcement.

(a) Remedies for noncompliance. If a grantee or subgrantee materially fails to comply with any term of an award, whether stated in a Federal statute or regulation, an assurance, in a State plan or application, a notice of award, or elsewhere, the awarding agency may take one or more of the following actions, as appropriate in the circumstances:

(1) Temporarily withhold cash payments pending correction of the deficiency by the grantee or subgrantee or more severe enforcement action by the awarding agency,

(2) Disallow (that is, deny both use of funds and matching credit for) all or part of the cost of the activity or action not in compliance,

(3) Wholly or partly suspend or terminate the current award for the grantee's or subgrantee's program,

(4) Withhold further awards for the program, or

(5) Take other remedies that may be legally available.

(b) Hearings appeals. In taking an enforcement action, the awarding agency will provide the grantee or subgrantee an opportunity for such hearing, appeal, or other administrative proceeding to which the grantee or subgrantee is entitled under any statute or regulation applicable to the action involved.

(c) Effects of suspension and termination. Costs of grantee or subgrantee resulting from obligations incurred by the grantee or subgrantee during a suspension or after termination of an award are not allowable unless the awarding agency expressly authorizes them in the notice of suspension or termination or subsequently. Other grantee or subgrantee costs during suspension or after termination which are necessary and not reasonably avoidable are allowable if:

(1) The costs result from obligations which were properly incurred by the grantee or subgrantee before the effective date of suspension or termination, are not in anticipation of it, and, in the case of a termination, are noncancellable, and,

(2) The costs would be allowable if the award were not suspended or expired normally at the end of the funding period in which the termination takes effect.

(d) Relationship to debarment and suspension. The enforcement remedies identified in this section, including suspension and termination, do not preclude grantee or subgrantee from being subject to "Debarment and Suspension" under E.O. 12549 (see Sec. 18.35).

Sec. 18.44 Termination for convenience.

Except as provided in Sec. 18.43 awards may be terminated in whole or in part only as follows:

(a) By the awarding agency with the consent of the grantee or subgrantee in which case the two parties shall agree upon the termination conditions, including the effective date and in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated, or

(b) By the grantee or subgrantee upon written notification to the awarding agency, setting forth the reasons for such termination, the effective date, and in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated. However, if, in the case of a partial termination, the awarding agency determines that the remaining portion of the award will not accomplish the purposes for which the award was made, the awarding agency may terminate the award in its entirety under either Sec. 18.43 or paragraph (a) of this section.

Subpart D--After-The-Grant Requirements

Sec. 18.50 Closeout.

(a) General. The Federal agency will close out the award when it determines that all applicable administrative actions and all required work of the grant has been completed.

(b) Reports. Within 90 days after the expiration or termination of the grant, the grantee must submit all financial, performance, and other reports required as a condition of the grant. Upon request by the grantee, Federal agencies may extend this timeframe. These may include but are not limited to:

(1) Final performance or progress report.

(2) Financial Status Report (SF 269) or Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for

Construction Programs (SF271) (as applicable).

(3) Final request for payment (SF270) (if applicable).

(4) Invention disclosure (if applicable).

(5) Federally-owned property report. In accordance with Sec. 18.32(f), a grantee must submit an inventory of all federally owned property (as distinct from property acquired with grant funds) for which it is accountable and request disposition instructions from the Federal agency of property no longer needed.

(c) Cost adjustment. The Federal agency will, within 90 days after receipt of reports in paragraph (b) of this section, make upward or downward adjustments to the allowable costs.

(d) Cash adjustments.

(1) The Federal agency will make prompt payment to the grantee for allowable reimbursable costs.

(2) The grantee must immediately refund to the Federal agency any balance of unobligated (unencumbered) cash advanced that is not authorized to be retained for use on other grants.

Sec. 18.51 Later disallowances and adjustments.

The closeout of a grant does not affect:

(a) The Federal agency's right to disallow costs and recover funds on the basis of a later audit or other review;

(b) The grantee's obligation to return any funds due as a result of later refunds, corrections, or other transactions;

(c) Records retention as required in Sec. 18.42;

(d) Property management requirements in Secs. 18.31 and 18.32; and

(e) Audit requirements in Sec. 18.26.

Sec. 18.52 Collection of amounts due.

(a) Any funds paid to a grantee in excess of the amount to which the grantee is finally determined to be

entitled under the terms of the award constitute a debt to the Federal Government. If not paid within a reasonable period after demand, the Federal agency may reduce the debt by:

(1) Making an administrative offset against other requests for reimbursements,

(2) Withholding advance payments otherwise due to the grantee, or

(3) Other action permitted by law.

(b) Except where otherwise provided by statutes or regulations, the Federal agency will charge interest on an overdue debt in accordance with the Federal Claims Collection Standards (4 CFR Ch. II). The date from which interest is computed is not extended by litigation or the filing of any form of appeal.

Subpart E--Entitlements [Reserved]

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix L

PHMSA – Office of Pipeline Safety State Programs

Memo 2009-1

Date: 1/21/2009

To: All State Grant Programs

Cc: PHMSA PHP50, PHP State Liaisons

From: Zach Barrett - Director, PHMSA State Programs

RE: 20% Indirect Cost Limitation

Memo removed and replaced with Appendix O

PHMSA – Office of Pipeline Safety State Programs

Memo 2009-2

Date: 01/21/2009

To: All State Grant Programs

Cc: PHMSA PHP50, PHP State Liaisons

From: Zach Barrett - Director, PHMSA State Programs

RE: Treatment of Damage Prevention Costs in Pipeline Safety Base Grant

---

The purpose of this memo is to clarify the treatment of costs associated with Underground Damage Prevention (Damage Prevention) activities which are undertaken by various pipeline safety programs throughout the country. State programs participate in Damage Prevention activities in various ways through enforcement, education and development activities for establishing such programs. PHMSA also recognizes Damage Prevention activities often go beyond the bounds of underground natural gas or hazardous liquid pipelines and include various other underground utilities such as electric, water, sewer and telephone lines.

State programs are allowed to submit necessary and reasonable costs associated with Damage Prevention activities for natural gas and hazardous liquid pipelines that each respective program incurs. Activities outside the scope of jurisdiction for a pipeline safety program should not be included in any request for reimbursement under this grant program. This would include activities associated with the other underground utilities such as electric, water, sewer and telephone lines.

Each state shall have a mechanism for distinguishing costs associated with Damage Prevention activities and only apply costs relating to natural gas and hazardous liquid pipelines.

We appreciate your cooperation and please contact Glynn Blanton of my staff if you have any questions regarding this issue.

US Department of Transportation
Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration
Office of Pipeline Safety - State Programs

Memo 2009-3

Date: 5/01/2009

To: All State Grant Programs

Cc: PHMSA PHP50, PHP State Liaisons

From: Zach Barrett - Director, PHMSA State Programs

RE: Documenting Time and Effort for Pipeline Safety Grant

The purpose of this policy memo is to provide guidance and to reiterate the necessity of programs to document time and effort of personnel involved in the Pipeline Safety Base Grant Program. The following pages provide the background and information needed for programs to follow in order to comply with 2 CFR 225 (OMB A-87).

We appreciate your cooperation and please contact Rex Evans of my staff at 217-697-8222 email rex.evans@dot.gov if you have any questions regarding this issue.

DOCUMENTING EMPLOYEE TIME AND EFFORT:

What specific documentation requirements need to be met to support employee time and effort charges for state pipeline safety grant programs?

Employee Time and Effort Guidance from 2 CFR 225 (OMB Circular A-87) and *Guidelines for States Participating in Pipeline Safety Program Revised December 2008:*

1. Follow Section 9.16.1 General Policy on State Pipeline Safety Personnel Direct Cost in the *Guidelines for States Participating in Pipeline Safety Program* specific to pipeline safety grant.
2. Follow General Criteria for Allowable Costs
3. Follow your State's standards for payroll documentation, meeting legal requirements
4. Retain the required, signed time distribution certifications:
    a. Semi-annual certification if work 100% of time on single Federal award.
    b. Monthly certification if work on multiple Federal and/or non-Federal awards.

Section 9.16.1 General Policy on State Pipeline Safety Grant Personnel Direct Costs (From *Guidelines for States Participating in Pipeline Safety Program*) -

- **Compensation, including benefits, of employees for time and effort specifically devoted to the pipeline safety program (A-87 #8).**

    - Cost for Supervisory personnel shall be for individuals listed on annual certification and costs applied to program should correspond with percentage of time allocated. Any supervisory cost above that of the pipeline program manager can only be included as a direct cost if actual time and work performed is documented toward a program activity **and** approved by PHMSA OPS Director of State Programs otherwise it might be eligible to be included as an indirect cost.

    - Cost for Technical personnel shall be only for individuals listed on annual certification and costs applied to program should correspond with percentage of time allocated. This can include inspectors, damage prevention personnel, GIS personnel and others ***directly*** related to the pipeline safety program. Cost for personnel devoting time to things other than pipeline safety such as electric, water or telephone issues should not be applied to the pipeline safety program. ***(For example, cost for damage prevention personnel investigating underground facilities other than natural gas or hazardous liquid pipelines should not be included but can be applied for under State Damage Prevention (SDP) or One-Call Grant applications)***

    - Cost for Administrative (clerical) personnel shall be for individuals listed on annual certification and costs applied to program should correspond with

percentage of time allocated. If applicable, costs for personnel who might solely supervise administrative personnel should be included in this category.

- In support of salaries and wages, each program must comply with requirements listed in 2 CFR 225 (OMB A-87). Where direct time of an employee is applied to the pipeline safety base grant, this must be supported by periodic certification that the employee worked solely in the program. These certifications must be prepared at least semi-annually and will be signed by the employee or supervisory official having first hand knowledge of the work performed by the employee.

General Criteria for Allowable Costs:

Allowable costs are established for State and local governments under 2 CFR 225 (OMB Circular A-87). 2 CFR 225 establishes the principles and standards for determining costs for Federal awards carried out through grants with State and local governments. This is provided to each program as Appendix G of *Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program*

For costs to be allowed under Federal awards, costs must meet the following general criteria:

a) Be necessary and reasonable for proper and efficient performance and administration of the pipeline safety grant
b) Be allocable to Federal awards under provisions of 2 CFR 225
c) Be authorized or not prohibited under State or local laws or regulations
d) Conform to any limitations or exclusions set for in 2 CFR 225, Federal laws, terms and conditions of the Pipeline Safety Grant, or other governing regulations as to types or amounts of cost items
e) Be consistent with policies, regulations, and procedures that apply uniformly to both Federal awards and other activities of the governmental unit
f) Be accorded consistent treatment. A cost may not be assigned to the Federal award as a direct cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances has been allocated to the Federal award as an indirect cost
g) Be determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP)
h) Not be included or used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements of other Federal grants
i) Be the net of all applicable credits
j) Be adequately documented

The compensation for personnel services under 2 CFR 225 is allowable to the extent that they satisfy the specific requirements of the regulation, and that the total compensation for individual employees:

a) Is reasonable for the services rendered and conforms to the established policy of the governmental unit consistently applied to both Federal and non-Federal activities
b) Follows an appointment made in accordance with a governmental unit's laws and rules and meets merit system or other Federal law requirements , where applicable, **AND**
c) Is determined and supported based on 2 CFR 225, Attachment B, Section 8(h) "Support of salaries and wages".

Standards for Payroll Documentation

These standards regarding time distribution are in addition to the standards for payroll documentation if Federal funds are used for salaries and wages, then "time distribution records" are REQUIRED. These records must demonstrate that if an employee is paid with Federal funds, then such employee worked an appropriate amount on that specific Federal program. If not, the charges to the Federal program must be adjusted to reflect the actual time spent on that Federal program. Charges to Federal awards will be based on payrolls documented in accordance with generally accepted practice of the governmental unit and approved by a responsible official of the governmental unit.

100% of employee's time spent on a single cost objective:

Where employees are expected to work solely on a single Federal award or cost objective, charges for their salaries and wages will:

a) Be supported by periodic certifications that the employees worked solely on that program for the period covered by the certification
b) Certifications will be prepared at least semi-annually
c) Will be signed by the employee or supervisory official having first hand knowledge of the work performed by the employee.

Simple Example: *(Warning: Must meet the minimum requirements stated above for single cost objectives and must be supported by the entity's standards for payroll documentation)*

"From January 1, 2009, until June 30, 2009, Jane Doe spent 100% of her time on Pipeline Safety Inspection Activities for the State Commission."

- signed by employee or supervisory official.

Employee's time spent on multiple cost objectives:

Where employees work on multiple activities or cost objectives, a distribution of their salaries or wages will be supported by personnel activity reports (PARs) or equivalent documentation which meets the following standards:

a) Reflect an after-the fact distribution of the actual activity of each employee. Projections of how an employee is expected to work or position descriptions would not be sufficient;

b) Account for the total activity for which each employee is compensated, including part-time schedules or overtime;
c) Be prepared at least monthly and must coincide with one or more pay periods; and
d) Be signed and dated by the employee. Unlike the semi-annual certification, signature of a supervisor alone would not be sufficient, however, the supervisor could sign in addition to the employee.

Multiple activities are defined as:

a) More than one Federal award,
b) A Federal award and a non-Federal award,
c) An indirect cost activity and a direct cost activity,
d) Two or more indirect activities which are allocated using different allocation bases, or
e) An unallowable activity and a direct or indirect cost activity.

A PAR is a timesheet or log maintained by the employee which accounts for 100% of their time. The objective is to identify effort spent on multiple activities or programs. The increments of time should not be limited arbitrarily, because this may prevent employees from accurately and completely reporting effort on all programs and required activities if the minimum increment is too large.

Retain Time Distribution Certifications

The consequences of noncompliance with the employee time and effort certification process may be the disallowance of salary and wage charges to a Federal grant program.

Other Issues/Questions:

For any additional questions or assistance, contact Rex Evans at 217-697-8222 or email at rex.evans@dot.gov.

US Department of Transportation
Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration
Office of Pipeline Safety - State Programs

Memo 2009-4

Date: 05/01/2009

To: All State Grant Programs

Cc: PHMSA PHP50, PHP State Liaisons

From: Zach Barrett - Director, PHMSA State Programs

RE: Treatment of Purchased Equipment over $5000 – Reference 2 CFR 225 Appendix B – Item #15

The purpose of this memo is to reiterate that any equipment purchased with a value of $5000 or greater, and a useful life of more than one year, must be itemized and noted on your annual grant application and verified on your annual year-end request for reimbursement. *(State Guidelines 9.16.1)*

As noted in 2 CFR 225 (OMB A-87), "Equipment" means an article of nonexpendable, tangible personal property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost of $5000 or greater. In the listing, we are only looking for equipment purchased with a value of $5000 or greater and a useful like of more than one year. This should include any automobiles physically purchased or other office equipment (i.e. copier/printers) used by your program.

An example of a correct inventory list is attached. (Example 1) The year-end listing should consist of all equipment previously purchased (until disposed of) in addition to any new equipment bought during the respective calendar year. In addition, when replacing equipment purchased in whole or in part with Federal funds, the proceeds from either the trade-in or sale of the property may be used to offset the cost of the replacement property.

We appreciate your cooperation and please contact Rex Evans of my staff at 217-697-8222 email rex.evans@dot.gov if you have any questions regarding this issue.

EXAMPLE 1

PIPELINE SAFETY EQUIPMENT OWNED BY THE STATE

AS OF DECEMBER 31, 2008

List all equipment (non expendable personal property) having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost of $5,000 that is directly related to inspection and investigation activities (testing equipment, safety equipment, vehicles etc.) (See OMB cicular A-87).

Type of Equipment and Use	Number of Units	Unit Acquisition Cost	Acquisition Date
2005 Dodge Caravan	1	$18,278.00	06/24/2005
2003 Ford Crown Victoria	2	$38,842.00	05/20/2003
2007 Ford Crown Victoria	2	$37,594.00	04/12/2007
2005 Chevrolet Impala	1	$15,757.00	06/16/2005
2006 Ford Crown Victoria	1	$19,061.00	07/13/2006
2006 Ford Crown Victoria	1	$19,061.00	07/21/2006
2004 Chevrolet Impala	1	$14,809.00	06/08/2004
2008 Ford Crown Victoria	2	$39,300.00	04/09/2008

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix M

STATE PROGRAM GRANT REVIEW
Date:
Location - Program:
Representatives - Attendees:
General Notes:
Program costs shall clearly relate to and comply with the program budget submitted with the grant application. Program costs shall also be consistent with 2 CFR Part 225: Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments (OMB Circular A-87). Care shall be exercised in incurring costs to assure that all expenditures are authorized in accordance with these general standards, and meet the following criteria of eligible costs.

Compensation, including benefits, of employees for time and effort specifically devoted to the pipeline safety program

Direct Costs to Pipeline Program – All A-87 Attachment B

***Compensation for Personnel Services* (A-87 #8)**	
Personnel Costs Supervisor Technical Administrative/Clerical a. Time Sheets or other b. Cost Centers/Billing Codes Notes:	List personnel in program – Are personnel listed directly involved in program? Do any personnel do any work for any other areas of agency? Are costs for personnel appropriately categorized as personnel? Match personnel costs with personnel reported on Attachment 7 of Certification and corresponding %.
Notes:	
Fringe Benefit Costs Supervisor Technical Administrative/Clerical a. Cost Centers/Billing Codes	Percentage of fringe benefits to salary? Is this standard among all agency employees?
Notes:	

Pipeline Safety Program Activity Costs

Audit cost and related services (A-87 #4)	
Audit – Did program receive > $500,000 in grant funds NG, HL, One-Call, & Damage Prevention Review Audit – review actual A-133 audit	*a. The costs of audits required by , and performed in accordance with, the Single Audit Act, as implemented by Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations" are allowable. Also see 3 1 USC 7505(b) and section 230 ("Audit Costs") of Circular A-133.* *b. Other audit costs are allowable if included in a cost allocation plan or indirect cost proposal, or if specifically approved by the awarding agency as a direct cost to an award*
Notes:	

Communication Costs (A-87 #7)	
Communications Detail cell phone, land lines, how does state charge?	*Costs incurred for telephone services, local and long distance calls, postage, electronic and computer transmittal services.*
Notes:	

Maintenance, Operations and Repairs (A-87 #25)	
	Unless prohibited by law, the cost of utilities, insurance, security, janitorial services, elevator service, upkeep of grounds, necessary maintenance, normal repairs and alterations, and the like are allowable to the extent that they: (1) keep property (including Federal property, unless otherwise provided for) in an efficient operating condition, (2) do not add to the permanent value of property or appreciably prolong its intended life, and (3) are not otherwise included in rental or other charges for space. Costs which add to the permanent value of property or appreciably prolong its intended life shall be treated as capital expenditures (see sections 11 and 15).
Notes:	
Memberships, subscriptions and professional activity cost (A-87 #28)	
Subscriptions and Memberships	*a. Costs of the governmental unit' s memberships in business, technical, and professional organizations are allowable.* *b. Costs of the governmental unit' s subscriptions to business, professional, and technical periodicals are allowable.* *c. Costs of membership in civic and community, social organizations are allowable as a direct cost with the approval of the Federal awarding agency.* *d. Costs of membership in organizations substantially engaged in lobbying are unallowable.*
Notes:	

Professional Service Costs (A-87 #32)	
Contractual Studies etc.	*Costs of professional and consultant services rendered by persons who are members of a particular profession or possess a special skill, and who are not officers or employees of the governmental unit, are allowable, subject to subparagraphs b and c when reasonable in relation to the services rendered and when not contingent upon recovery of the costs from the Federal Government.*
Notes:	
Publication and Printing Costs (A-87 #34)	
Printing and Reproductions	*Publication costs include the costs of printing (including the processes of composition, plate-making, press work, binding, and the end products produced by such processes), distribution, promotion, mailing, and general handling. Publication costs also include page charges in professional publications.*
Notes:	

Rental costs of buildings and equipment (A-87 #37)	
Building rent Rent – detail how charged and reasonableness	*Subject to the limitations described in subsections b. through d. of this section, rental costs are allowable to the extent that the rates are reasonable in light of such factors as: rental costs of comparable property, if any; market conditions in the area; alternatives available; and, the type, life expectancy, condition, and value of the property leased. Rental arrangements should be reviewed periodically to determine if circumstances have changed and other options are available.* *See A-87 for remainder.*
Notes:	
Training costs (A-87 #42)	
Training and Education Registration fees, tuition, etc. – For Employees of pipeline program	*The cost of training provided for employee development is allowable*
Notes:	

Travel expenses incurred specifically to carry out the award **Travel Costs (A-87 #43)**	
Travel costs • Transportation • Lodging • Subsistence • Air Travel Travel for other commission activities	General. Travel costs are the expenses for transportation, lodging, subsistence, and related items incurred by employees who are in travel status on official business of the governmental unit. Such costs may be charged on an actual cost basis, on a per diem or mileage basis in lieu of actual costs incurred, or on a combination of the two, provided the method used is applied to an entire trip and not to selected days of the trip, and results in charges consistent with those normally allowed in like circumstances in the governmental unit's non-federally-sponsored activities. Notwithstanding the provisions of Attachment B, section 1 9, General government expenses, travel costs of officials covered by that section are allowable with the prior approval of an awarding agency when they are specifically related to Federal awards. *b. Lodging and subsistence. Costs incurred by employees and officers for travel, including costs of lodging, other subsistence, and incidental expenses, shall be considered reasonable and allowable only to the extent such costs do not exceed charges normally allowed by the governmental unit in its regular operations as the result of the governmental unit' s written travel policy. In the absence of an acceptable, written governmental unit policy regarding travel costs, the rates and amounts established under subchapter I of Chapter 57, Title 5, United States Code ("Travel and Subsistence Expenses; Mileage Allowances"), or by the Administrator of General Services, or by the President (or his or her designee) pursuant to any provisions of such subchapter shall apply to travel under Federal awards (48 CFR 31.205-46(a)).* *See A-87 for Air and Foreign travel limitations*
Notes:	

Cost of materials acquired, consumed or expended specifically for the purpose of the grant **Materials and Supplies Cost (A-87 #26)**	
Supplies Safety Clothing **Must be ACTUALLY Used**	*Costs incurred for materials, supplies, and fabricated parts necessary to carry out a Federal award are allowable.* *Only materials and supplies actually used for the performance of a Federal award may be charged as direct costs.*
Notes:	
Equipment (Equipment and Other Capital Expenditures *A-87 #15*) ****(will need to verify equipment listing on certification is complete, comprehensive and accurate)**	
Motor Vehicles **Verify previous equipment purchases and if still in use -**	*A-87 #15 Tangible property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost which equal or exceeds the lesser of the capitalization level established by the agency for financial purposes or $5000* *When replacing equipment purchased in whole or in part with Federal funds, the governmental unit may use the equipment to be replaced as a trade-in or sell the property and use the proceeds to offset the cost of the replacement property.*
Office Equipment **Verify previous equipment purchases and if still in use -**	*A-87 #15 "General purpose equipment" means equipment, which is not limited to research, medical, scientific or other technical activities. Examples include office equipment and furnishings, modular offices, telephone networks, information technology equipment and systems, air conditioning equipment, reproduction and printing equipment*
Test Equipment **Verify previous equipment purchases and if still in use -**	*A-87 #15 "Special purpose equipment" means equipment which is used only for research, medical, scientific, or other technical activities. Examples of special purpose equipment include microscopes, x-ray machines, surgical instruments, and spectrometers.* *Locating equipment, leak survey equipment, pipe-to-soil meters, etc.*
Notes:	

OTHER (Specify)	
OTHER	
Other Explain in Detail	All “Other” costs should tie back to some category in A-87
Notes:	

INDIRECT COSTS

Indirect Costs (A-87 Attachment A – "F", Attachment E)

INDIRECT COSTS **20% limitation (of the grant)**	***General. Indirect costs are those: (a) incurred for a common or joint purpose benefiting more than one cost objective, and (b) not readily assignable to the cost objectives specifically benefited, without effort disproportionate to the results achieved. The term "indirect costs," as used herein, applies to costs of this type originating in the grantee department, as well as those incurred by other departments in supplying goods, services, and facilities. To facilitate equitable distribution of indirect expenses to the cost objectives served, it may be necessary to establish a number of pools of indirect costs within a governmental unit department or in other agencies providing services to a governmental unit department. Indirect cost pools should be distributed to benefited cost objectives on bases that will produce an equitable result in consideration of relative benefits derived.*** *In addition to restrictions contained in this Circular, there may be laws that further limit the amount of administrative or indirect cost allowed.* See Attachment E for Guidance in A-87

Notes:

ONE CALL GRANT REVIEW

ONE-CALL GRANT REVIEW

Examine one-call grant expenditures to see if align with A-87 also.

Notes:

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix N

A GUIDE FOR

STATE, LOCAL AND INDIAN TRIBAL

GOVERNMENTS

COST PRINCIPLES AND PROCEDURES FOR

DEVELOPING COST ALLOCATION PLANS AND

INDIRECT COST RATES FOR AGREEMENTS

WITH THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT

IMPLEMENTATION GUIDE FOR

OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET

CIRCULAR A-87

ASMB C-10

Cost Principles and Procedures for

Establishing Cost Allocation Plans and Indirect Cost Rates

for Agreements with the Federal Government

A GUIDE FOR STATE, LOCAL AND INDIAN TRIBAL GOVERNMENTS

This guide is intended to assist state, local, and Indian tribal governments in applying Office of Management and Budget Circular A-87, which provides principles and standards for determining costs applicable to Federal grants and contracts performed by state, local, and Indian tribal governments.

The procedures in this guide are applicable to grants and contracts awarded by all Federal agencies and have been developed in coordination with the Office of Management and Budget.

This document replaces "A Guide for State and Local Government Agencies" (OASC-10), published December 1976

8 April 1997

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services

This document can be ordered from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Superintendent of Documents, Mail Stop: SSOP, Washington, DC 20402-9328, 202-512-1800.

April 8, 1997

TO USERS OF OMB CIRCULAR A-87 - COST PRINCIPLES FOR STATE, LOCAL AND INDIAN TRIBAL GOVERNMENTS

Dear Colleague:

The Office of Management and Budget, in Circular A-87, mandates that the Department of Health and Human Services issue implementing material for that document on behalf of the Federal Government. The accompanying *Cost Principles and Procedures for Establishing Cost Allocation Plans and Indirect Cost Rates for Agreements with the Federal Government* reflects our efforts to satisfy that mandate. This brochure, last issued in 1976 under the reference OASC-10, is being assigned the new reference number ASMB C-10.

I want to acknowledge the efforts of the Office of Audit Resolution and Cost Policy, in the Office of Grants and Acquisition Management, who had the responsibility for developing this brochure. I also wish to thank the HHS staff, those of other Federal agencies, and OMB who provided much appreciated assistance on this project. Lastly, I would like to acknowledge Management Concepts, Inc., of Vienna, Virginia, who provided advice, layout, and editorial support.

As will be noted, the C-10 is issued in loose-leaf form. Users are encouraged to maintain a subscription with the Government Printing Office in order that they can receive up-dates and changes in the future. This document can also be accessed on HHS's GrantsNet: http://www.os.dhhs.gov/progorg/GrantsNet/index.html. This document may be reproduced without permission.

We welcome your comments and inquiries. Please address them to:

Director, Office of Audit Resolution and
Cost Policy
Rm. 1067 - Cohen Building
300 Independence Ave. S.W.
Washington, D.C. 20201

Sincerely,

Terrence Tychan
Deputy Assistant Secretary for
Grants and Acquisition Management

[This page intentionally left blank.]

PREFACE

This guide contains, by reference, Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circular A-87, *Cost Principles for State, Local and Indian Tribal Governments*, and guidance for its interpretation and implementation. Circular A-87 provides both Federal agencies and Federal award recipients with a uniform approach to determining costs of Federally funded programs. This guide also presents information about the preparation, submission, review, and audit of cost allocation plans and indirect cost rate proposals by governmental units. Procedures in this guide are applicable to cost-based awards made by all Federal agencies unless specifically provided otherwise. This guide has been developed in coordination with OMB.

This guide provides clarification and procedural guidance to implement the Circular. It is intended to be consistent with the Circular and all other applicable policies. Circular A-87 is incorporated into this document as Appendix 1.

This guide consists of several parts, appendices, and a reference section. Each part of this guide focuses on a specific component of the Circular, e.g., Part 1 provides basic information about the Circular as well as details on information in the Circular, Part 2 focuses on Attachment A to the Circular, General Principles for Determining Allowable Costs, Part 3 deals with Attachment B, Selected Items of Cost, etc. The text discussion in each part is supplemented by a section on Highlights of Changes, as well as a Questions and Answers (Q&As) section intended to clarify issues relating to the respective component of the Circular. Each question is numbered and followed by a bracketed citation to the relevant section of the Circular, where applicable. On occasion, one Q&A may reference another by number.

The reference section provides a list of related publications and how to obtain them. The appendices include a copy of the May 4, 1995 revision of OMB Circular A-87 (to be provided by users), a list of cognizant agencies, and a sample indirect cost rate agreement. (At the time of this publication, OMB was in the process of revising the cognizant listing based on new criteria. When issued, it will be provided in the C-10 as Appendix 2.)

[This page intentionally left blank.]

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Preface i

Part 1: Basic Information

1.1 Background 1-1
1.1.1 The Cost Principles 1-1
1.1.2 Purpose and Significance of OMB Circular A-87 1-1
1.1.3 Brief History of Circular A-87 1-2
1.1.4 Effective Date of the Revised Circular A-87 1-2
1.2 Role of the Office of Management and Budget 1-2
1.3 Relationship of Circular A-87 to Other Cost Principles 1-3
1.4 Relationship of Circular A-87 to Agency Regulations and Federal Statutes 1-4
1.5 Governmentwide Guidance on Implementing the Cost Principles 1-4
1.6 Questions and Answers 1-5

Part 2: Attachment A — General Principles for Determining Allowable Costs

2.1 Objectives of the Circular 2-1
2.2 Governmental Unit Responsibilities 2-1
2.3 Alternative Methods of Cost Recovery 2-1
2.4 Applicability 2-2
2.4.1 What Types of Organizations Are Affected by Circular A-87? 2-2
2.4.2 What Types of Organizations Are Not Affected by Circular A-87? 2-3
2.4.3 Determining Whether Circular A-87 Applies to an Award 2-3
2.5 Terms Used in Circular A-87 2-4
2.6 The Cost Reimbursement Process 2-4
2.7 Composition of Cost 2-7
2.8 General Tests of Cost Allowability 2-7
2.8.1 Necessary and Reasonable Costs 2-7
2.8.2 Allocable Costs 2-8
2.8.3 The Other Tests of Allowability 2-9
2.9 Required Government Certification 2-10
2.10 Highlights of Changes Affecting Attachment A 2-10
2.11 Questions and Answers on Attachment A 2-13

Part 3: Attachment B — Selected Items of Cost

3.1 Handling Items of Cost Not Listed in Attachment B 3-1
3.2 Prior Approval 3-1
3.3 Highlights of Changes Affecting Attachment B 3-2
3.4 Questions and Answers on Attachment B 3-7

Part 4: Attachment C — Requirements for Cost Allocation Plans

4.1 Highlights of New Section, Attachment C 4-1
4.2 What is a Central Service Cost Allocation Plan? 4-1
4.3 Content of CSCAPs 4-1
4.4 Requirements for Submission of Cost Allocation Plans 4-2
4.4.1 Role of Cognizant Agencies 4-2
4.4.2 State Governments and "Major" Local Governments 4-2
4.4.3 Local Governments Not Considered "Major" 4-2
4.5 What Are the Documentation Requirements for a CSCAP? 4-2
4.5.1 Allocated Central Services 4-3
4.5.2 Internal Service Funds 4-4
4.5.3 Self-Insurance Funds 4-4
4.5.4 Fringe Benefits Costs 4-5
4.5.5 Pension and Postretirement Health Insurance Plans 4-5
4.5.6 Certification 4-6
4.6 How Should Allocated Costs Be Presented in a CSCAP? 4-6
4.6.1 Sample Formats for Central Service Cost Allocation Plans 4-6
4.6.2 Suggested Bases for Cost Distribution 4-15
4.7 How Should Billed Costs Be Presented in a CSCAP? 4-16
4.8 Questions and Answers on Attachment C 4-23

Part 5: Attachment D — Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans

5.1 Highlights of New Section, Attachment D 5-1
5.2 Applicability of Regulations at 45 CFR Part 95, Subpart E 5-1
5.3 Submission and Documentation Requirements 5-3
5.4 Amendments 5-5
5.5 Review and Approval of Plans 5-5
5.6 Claims Under PACAPs 5-6
5.7 Questions and Answers on Attachment D 5-6

Part 6: Attachment E — State and Local Indirect Cost Rate Proposals

6.1 Highlights of New Section, Attachment E 6-1
6.2 Acceptable Methodologies for Indirect Cost Allocation and Rate Determination 6-1
6.2.1 Types of Rates 6-1
6.2.2 Direct Cost Bases 6-2
6.2.3 Simplified Method 6-2
6.2.4 Multiple Allocation Base Method 6-8
6.3 Special Rates 6-13
6.4 Submission and Documentation of Proposals 6-13
6.4.1 Documenting Indirect Cost Proposals 6-13
6.4.2 Required Certifications 6-14
6.5 Review, Negotiation, and Approval of Rates 6-14
6.5.1 The Review Process 6-14
6.5.2 Indirect Cost Rate Negotiations 6-15
6.5.3 Features of a Typical Rate Agreement 6-15
6.6 Applying An Approved Rate to Grants and Contracts 6-16
6.6.1 Establishing the Amount of Approved Indirect Costs in the Award Budget 6-16
6.6.2 Applying the Rate to the Direct Cost Base and Calculating Claims 6-16
6.6.3 Effect of Rate Changes from One Fiscal Year to Another 6-16
6.7 Record Retention 6-17
6.8 Audit 6-17
6.9 Disputes and Appeals 6-18
6.10 Questions and Answers on Attachment E 6-19

Illustrations:

Illustration 3-1: A-87 Excess Cash-Flow Calculation - Sample Format for Annual Report 3-27
Illustration 4-1: Sample Central Service Cost Allocation Plan: Statement of Function & Benefit, Personnel Department For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, XXXX 4-8
Illustration 4-2: Sample Central Service Cost Allocation Plan: Costs to be Allocated, Personnel Department For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, XXXX 4-9
Illustration 4-3: Sample Central Service Cost Allocation Plan: Allocation of Costs, Personnel Department For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, XXXX 4-11
Illustration 4-4: Sample Central Service Cost Allocation Plan: Summary of Allocated Central Service Costs For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, XXXX 4-12

Illustration 4-5: Sample Central Service Cost Allocation Plan: Summary of Central Services Billed to User Organizations 4-13
Illustration 4-6: Summary of Actual and Imputed Revenues by Fund 4-18
Illustration 4-7: Reconciliation of Retained Earnings 4-19
Illustration 6-1: Sample Indirect Cost Rate Proposal - Simplified Method Department of Environmental Services For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, XXXX 6-4
Illustration 6-2: Department of Environmental Services Sample Indirect Cost Rate Proposal - Simplified Method For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, XXXX 6-7
Illustration 6-3: Sample Indirect Cost Rate Proposal - Multiple Rate Method Department of Environmental Services For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, XXXX 6-9
Illustration 6-4: Sample Indirect Cost Rate Proposal - Multiple Rate Method Department of Environmental Services For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, XXXX 6-12

Reference

Appendices

1 OMB Circular A-87, Cost Principles for State, Local and Indian Tribal Governments

2 Federal Agencies Responsible for Cost Negotiation and Audit of State and Local Governments

3 Sample Indirect Cost Rate Agreement

Index

PART 1

Basic Information

1.1 Background

1.1.1 The Cost Principles

Federal cost principles are policies used to determine which costs of an activity/project/program should be borne by the Federal Government. Over the years, various sets of governmentwide cost principles have been developed for reimbursing costs for different classes of recipients. These policy documents ensure the consistent treatment of costs, regardless of whether reimbursement is received directly from the Federal Government or through another recipient of Federal funds.

1.1.2 Purpose and Significance of OMB Circular A-87

Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circular A-87 is one of several circulars intended to achieve more efficient and uniform administration of Federal awards, and to foster better relationships between the Federal Government and states, local governments, and Federally recognized Indian tribal governments. It provides the foundation for greater uniformity in the costing procedures of nonfederal governments and in the reimbursement practices of Federal agencies. It should be used in conjunction with other applicable laws to provide comprehensive direction and accountability in Federal fund management.

Circular A-87 provides principles and standards for determining both direct and indirect costs applicable to Federal cost-based awards to governmental units. Parties using the A-87 cost principles include budget preparers, recipient personnel responsible for tracking costs charged against Federal awards, independent auditors, Federal awarding agency personnel reviewing budget requests and charges to the award, and cognizant agency and recipient personnel negotiating indirect cost rates and cost allocation plans.

1.1.3 Brief History of Circular A-87

1968 Circular A-87 issued by OMB

1974 Circular A-87 reissued as FMC 74-4

1981 Circular reissued as A-87, coverage extended to Indian tribal governments

1987 Interagency task force began review of Circular A-87

1988 First proposed revisions published

1993 Second proposed revisions published

1995 OMB issued significantly revised Circular A-87

1.1.4 Effective Date of the Revised Circular A-87

For indirect costs and costs covered by cost allocation plans described in Attachments C, D, and E of the Circular, the revision of Circular A-87 issued on May 4, 1995 must be applied to cost allocation plans and indirect cost rate proposals submitted or prepared for a governmental unit's fiscal year beginning on or after September 1, 1995. Therefore, for those governments with a fiscal year beginning October 1, 1995 - January 1, 1996, the revised version of Circular A-87 applies to the Central Service Plan for 1996. For all other governments, the revised Circular A-87 applies to the 1997 plan. Effectively, two plans may be required for several years, i.e., those that would close out fiscal years 1994, 1995, or 1996 (as applicable), and another plan recognizing the new principles for the year that reflects the implementation of the revised Circular A-87.

For costs other than indirect costs and costs covered by the cost allocation plans described in Attachments C, D, and E of the Circular, the revised Circular A-87 applies to all awards and amendments, including continuation and renewal awards, made on or after September 1, 1995.

1.2 Role of the Office of Management and Budget

OMB is responsible for policy direction for Circular A-87 and for providing interpretations and assistance to assure effective implementation by Federal agencies and award recipients. OMB is also responsible for assigning Federal agencies to serve as cognizant for purposes of review and approval of cost allocation plans and indirect cost rates of states and certain local and Indian tribal governments. Except as provided by statute, any exceptions to the Circular are subject to OMB approval. The Office of Federal Financial Management is the responsible unit within OMB. In the interest of uniformity, exceptions are made only where adequate justification is presented.

1.3 Relationship of Circular A-87 to Other Cost Principles

Determining which cost principles apply to a particular recipient entity is governed by the type of recipient. The chart below illustrates the cost principles and their applicability, by recipient type.

For the Costs of a —	Use the Cost Principles in —
State, local, or Indian tribal government	OMB Circular A-87
Private nonprofit organization other than (1) institution of higher education, (2) hospital, or (3) organization named in OMB Circular A-122 as not subject to that Circular	OMB Circular A-122
Educational institution	OMB Circular A-21
For-profit organization other than a hospital or an organization named in OMB Circular A-122 as not subject to that Circular	48 CFR Part 31, Contract Cost Principles and Procedures, or uniform cost accounting standards that comply with cost principles acceptable to the Federal agency
Hospital	45 CFR Part 74, Subpart E, or other cost principles acceptable to the Federal agency, e.g. HIM-15

The applicability of the cost principles flows through to the subrecipient.

EXAMPLE:

The State of Macedonia receives a Federal award: A-87 applies
Macedonia subawards funds to Meerkat County: A-87 applies
Meerkat County subawards funds to ProYouth, a nonprofit: A-122 applies

In other words, the type of recipient or subrecipient determines the applicable cost principles, regardless of whether funds are received directly from the Federal Government or through a subaward from a primary recipient. The exception to the above is where statutory or regulatory provisions applicable to the prime recipient are more restrictive than the cost or administrative principles applicable to the subrecipient. For example, many awards to nonprofits permit the nonfederal share to be met through in-kind matching rather than matching actual expenditures. Where the matching of actual expenditures is required of the prime recipient, then subrecipients must also match in this same manner.

1.4 Relationship of Circular A-87 to Agency Regulations and Federal Statutes

OMB Circular A-87 is a directive to the heads of Federal executive departments and agencies instructing them concerning the cost principles to be applied in cost-based awards to state, local, and Indian tribal governments. The Circular directs agencies to issue implementing regulations. In general, agencies have done so by adopting Circular A-87 by reference in Section __.22 of the Common Rule accompanying OMB Circular A-102, *Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments.*

Unless specifically required by statute or an exception granted by OMB, the Circular applies to awards to states, localities, and Indian tribal governments. Once implemented or otherwise adopted within Federal agency regulations, it has the force and effect of law. However, if a statute passed by Congress prescribes policies or procedures that differ from those in the Circular, the provisions of the statute govern. For example, it is not uncommon for Congress to enact legislation that restricts certain items of costs (i.e., limitations on indirect or administrative costs). When such a restriction exists, it is binding. Note: Statutes may differ as to how they define certain elements of cost and may further differ with definitions contained in Circular A-87. For example, the terms "indirect" and "administrative" are not necessarily synonymous. Accordingly, Federal agencies and recipients should exercise care in applying Circular A-87 definitions when making judgments about the effect of statutory limitations.

1.5 Governmentwide Guidance on Implementing the Cost Principles

Each type of organization performing under agreements with the Federal Government follows one of the sets of governmentwide cost principles. Various Federal agencies have developed implementation guidance for the different cost principles. These principles and guidance apply to awards received directly from the Federal Government, as well as to Federal funds passed through or awarded to the performing organization by another Federal fund recipient. The chart below summarizes the applicable cost principles and available governmentwide guidance by type of organization. The agency that developed the guidance is noted parenthetically.

Organization Type	**Federal Cost Principle**	**Governmentwide Guidance**
State, local, or Indian tribal governments	OMB Circular A-87	ASMB C-10 (HHS)
Nonprofit organizations	OMB Circular A-122	Various Funding Agency Guidelines
Colleges or universities	OMB Circular A-21	OASC-1 (HHS)
Commercial organizations and nonprofit organizations listed in Attachment C of A-122	Federal Acquisition Regulation, 48 CFR Part 31	none
Hospitals	45 CFR 74, Subpart E	OASC-3 (HHS)

1.6 Questions and Answers

1-1 What is Federal Management Circular 74-4 and does it have any relevance to current Federal cost policies?

Federal Management Circular (FMC) 74-4 was the designation for the Cost Principles for State and Local Governments during a period of the 1970s when the Circular was incorporated into the General Services Administration manual structure. There is no

substantive difference between FMC 74-4 and OMB Circular A-87. FMC 74-4 was superseded in 1981 when OMB reissued the cost principles as Circular A-87, and is no longer applicable. However, some grant agreements and policy documents that contain references to FMC 74-4 may not have been edited to reflect the applicability of Circular A-87 and its most recent revision issued in May 1995.

1-2 What is OASC-10? Is it relevant to current Federal cost policies?

In 1976, the Department of Health, Education and Welfare issued "A Guide for State and Local Government Agencies – Cost Principles and Procedures for Establishing Cost Allocation Plans and Indirect Cost Rates for Grants and Contracts with the Federal Government (OASC-10)." OASC-10 is superseded and replaced by this guide, ASMB C-10, which reflects the policies in the revised Circular A-87. The guide is mandated by OMB in Circular A-87 and is a governmentwide document.

1-3 Have any Federal awarding agencies issued agency-specific implementations of Circular A-87?

Most agencies adopted Circular A-87 by reference in their applicable agency grants administration regulation. Generally, this reference appears in Section __.22 of agency regulations implementing the Common Rule issued pursuant to OMB Circular A-102 and in Section __.27 of agency regulations implementing OMB Circular A-110. However, a few Federal agencies have issued specific *Federal Register* notices concerning their implementation of the revised Circular A-87, to clarify issues such as effective dates or to codify the entire Circular into their regulations.

1-4 Circular A-87, prior to its revision on May 17, 1995, stated that "no provision for profit or increment above allowable cost is intended." The revised Circular changed this language to read: "Provision for profit or other increment above cost is outside the scope of this Circular." Has the policy changed?

No. Profit continues to be unallowable. In the Preamble to the Circular, OMB explains that the language was changed to be consistent with the wording in other Circulars. However, no change in policy was intended. [Circular, ¶ 5]

1-5 In the case of state-supervised, county-administered programs, which fiscal period controls the effective date for adoption of the revised A-87? [Circular, ¶ 11]

It must be the fiscal period of the specific unit of government. Therefore, if a state has a different fiscal period than a local government it supervises, each governmental unit would adopt the Circular in accordance with its individual fiscal period.

1-6 If predetermined indirect cost rates have already been approved that extend beyond the effective date for adoption of the revised Circular A-87 by a specific governmental component, does this change the effective date for that component? [Circular, ¶ 11]

For a governmental component that already has established predetermined cost rates beyond September 1, 1995, the effective date of the revised A-87 is the start of the first accounting period for which an indirect cost rate has not been established.

1-7 When are interest payments on equipment allowable for an internal service fund? Would the interest be allowable after September 1, 1995 or with the first fiscal year beginning after September 1, 1995? [Circular, ¶ 11]

Internal service funds are covered by Attachment C of A-87. The transmittal letter from OMB dated May 4, 1995 states that for costs charged indirectly or otherwise covered by the guidelines for cost allocation plans contained in Attachments C, D, and E, the effective date is the first fiscal year beginning after September 1, 1995.

PART 2

Attachment A — General Principles for Determining Allowable Costs

2.1 Objectives of the Circular

Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circular A-87 establishes principles for determining the allowable costs incurred by state, local, and Federally recognized Indian tribal governments (hereinafter referred to as governmental units) under grants, cost-reimbursement contracts, and other agreements with Federal agencies (hereinafter referred to as Federal awards). The principles are for the purpose of cost determination only and are not intended to dictate the extent of Federal or governmental unit participation in the financing of a particular program or project. Accordingly, they describe what may be reimbursed or recovered under a covered Federal award. They are designed to provide that the Federal Government bear its fair share of costs recognized, except where restricted or prohibited by law. Profit or other increment above cost in any Federal award is outside the scope of the Circular.

2.2 Governmental Unit Responsibilities

The Circular recognizes the responsibility and sovereignty of governmental units that receive and administer Federal awards. It reinforces the expectation contained in the law and in award agreements that these organizations will administer Federal funds properly and in a manner consistent with the sound management practices that they apply to their own revenues. Standards provided in the Common Rule issued pursuant to OMB Circular A-102, *Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments*, reinforce this recipient responsibility for financial management, procurement, property management, and record retention.

2.3 Alternative Methods of Cost Recovery

The Circular permits Federal agencies to work with governmental units that wish to test alternative methods for cost recovery in all or a portion of a Federal award. Such methods include, where permitted, fixed-amount awards, fee-for-service arrangements, and predetermined indirect cost rates. Alternative methods must comply with the A-87 "benefits received" concept.

2.4 Applicability

2.4.1 What Types of Organizations Are Affected by Circular A-87?

Circular A-87 applies to governmental units generally, but definitions within the Circular further establish the entities that fall within that broad category. Under the Circular, the following entities are considered to be a ***state government***:

- any of the 50 states;
- District of Columbia;

- Commonwealth of Puerto Rico;
- any territory or possession of the United States; and
- any agency or instrumentality of a state, exclusive of local governments.

Circular A-87's definition of local government encompasses all general and special purpose governmental units. It defines the following entities as ***local governments***:

- county;
- municipality;
- city;
- town;
- township;
- local public authority;
- school district;
- special district;
- intrastate district;
- council of governments, regardless of incorporation status as a nonprofit corporation under state law;
- any other regional or interstate, nonfederal government entity; and
- any agency or instrumentality of a local government.

The Circular defines a ***Federally recognized Indian tribal government*** as the governing body or a governmental agency of any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group, including Alaskan native villages certified by the Secretary of the Interior as eligible for the special programs and services provided through the Bureau of Indian Affairs. Components are agencies or divisions within a governmental unit.

2.4.2 What Types of Organizations Are Not Affected by Circular A-87?

For purposes of cost determination, Circular A-87 does not apply to public institutions of higher education. Those organizations are subject to OMB Circular A-21, *Cost Principles for Educational Institutions.* Circular A-87 also does not apply to public hospitals. They are subject to the requirements developed by their Federal sponsoring agencies, such as the Health Care Financing Administration (HCFA). Generally, they follow cost principles issued by the Department of Health and Human Services at 45 CFR Part 74, Subpart E.

Note: Circular A-87 does affect public hospitals and institutions of higher education in one

respect. All central service or departmental costs of a covered governmental unit that are allocated or billed to those institutions are subject to the A-87 requirements. In addition, indirect cost rates and cost allocation plans approved by a cognizant agency for the government component are to be accepted by all awarding agencies. Agency cost principles apply only to those costs not covered by these agreements.

2.4.3 Determining Whether Circular A-87 Applies to an Award

Circular A-87 applies uniformly to all cost-based awards made directly or indirectly to governmental units. ***Cost-based*** refers to those awards where the costs charged to the award form the basis for the amount reimbursed under the award. Therefore, the types of awards subject to the principles in Circular A-87 include:

- cost-reimbursement contracts;
- grants and cooperative agreements, which are cost-reimbursement type agreements, whether or not funds are provided in advance of expenditure; and
- subgrants and cost-reimbursement subcontracts awarded to governmental units under grants awarded to any type of Federal recipient.

Circular A-87 does not apply to fixed-price arrangements, unless projected costs are used in determining the amount to be awarded.

OMB occasionally elects to specifically exclude certain programs from mandatory coverage of the Circular. For example, in 1981, OMB instructed Federal agencies administering the nine block grants enacted under the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981 that they were not required to use the Circular as a policy governing awards under those programs. Instead, the agencies were to permit states to use “equivalent procedures of their own” to administer such programs.

2.5 Terms Used in Circular A-87

Because A-87 is a policy directive affecting what costs are allowable charges to Federal programs, what costs are not allowable, and how costs must be documented, it is important that users of the Circular and this guide become familiar with definitions of key terms and how they are used. Terms may have broader, narrower, or more precise meaning than ones that are in customary or colloquial use by financial or programmatic personnel who must rely on the Circular. In addition, such terms may not be defined in other authoritative literature on which readers might normally rely.

Definitions can be found in Section B of Attachment A to the Circular. The Circular is located in Appendix 1 of this guide.

2.6 The Cost Reimbursement Process

In the context of Circular A-87, the term "cost reimbursement" describes how the claims will be reviewed, accepted, and settled. Although the term cost reimbursement implies that funding is received after-the-fact, the process of cost reimbursement under Federal awards has little to do with when cash is actually received. This is because, with few exceptions, assistance award recipients receive advance funding. Grant and cooperative agreement recipients are usually permitted to draw against their award amounts in advance, so long as they 1) limit their request for funds to the minimum amount needed, and 2) time the request as close as is administratively

feasible to the actual cash outlay for direct program costs and the proportionate share of any allowable indirect costs. (See 31 CFR §205.20; §__.21, OMB Circular A-102 Common Rule.) In contrast, Federal cost-reimbursement contracts are generally paid after cost has been incurred and as progress is being made toward performance.

Note: While, for cash-need purposes, advance funding might be provided under grants and cooperative agreements, the advanced funds must be viewed by recipient organizations as an accounts payable to the Federal Government.

The cost principles have a role to play at most stages of the assistance award or contract life cycle. These stages, and the role of Circular A-87 at each stage, are summarized in the chart on the following page:

At this stage in the cycle...	Circular A-87 plays this role:
Soliciting applications and/or proposals from governmental units	Awarding agency announces the applicability of the A-87 cost principles.
Preparing proposals or plans for use of funds	Applicant governmental unit includes only costs allocable, reasonable, and allowable under Circular A-87.
Notifying recipient of award	Applicable assistance or procurement award document cites the applicability of Circular A-87.
Expending funds	Governmental unit incurs costs for expenditures that are eligible under applicable program legislation, as well as allowable under Circular A-87, under control procedures that allow proper determination.
Developing and retaining documentation	As costs are incurred, governmental unit generates documentation consistent with that generated for expenditure of own-source revenue and with any specific requirements of Circular A-87 (e.g., personnel activity reports) — documentation is maintained in a system of records for at least the minimum period of time provided under §__.42, OMB Circular A-102 Common Rule.
Preparing claims for direct costs and attributable indirect costs	At a frequency determined by the awarding agency and on authorized forms, governmental unit submits claims asserting that allowable and eligible costs have been incurred in accordance with A-87. Governmental unit is permitted to apply its indirect cost rate to those object class categories of expenditure to which the cognizant agency has agreed it should be applied.
Auditing Awards	Through test procedures, independent auditors or auditors representing awarding agencies review claims to determine whether incurred costs are appropriate under Circular A-87. Discrepancies are reported to awarding agencies as questioned costs requiring resolution.

2.7 Composition of Cost

The total amount claimable under a cost-based award covered by Circular A-87 equals the allowable direct costs, plus the allocable portion of allowable indirect costs, minus the applicable credits.

Total Amount Claimable =	allowable direct costs *plus* allocable portion of indirect costs *minus* applicable credits

The Circular makes clear that there is no universal rule for classifying costs as direct or indirect under every governmental accounting system. The essential difference is the degree of ease with

which a cost can be readily assigned to a particular cost objective with a high degree of accuracy. Such readily assigned costs are ***direct costs***. ***Indirect costs*** are those that cannot be readily assigned to a particular cost objective without effort disproportionate to the benefits received. However, the Circular permits minor direct cost items to be treated as indirect costs for practicality, so long as consistent treatment of all such items is maintained.

Applicable credits are receipts or reductions of expenditure that offset or reduce costs allocable to Federal awards as direct or indirect costs. These are to be credited to the cost objective or the award, or refunded to the awarding agency, depending upon the circumstances and the timing of their accrual or receipt.

2.8 General Tests of Cost Allowability

Although Attachment B of Circular A-87 lists a number of selected items of cost, which frequently represent significant amounts in individual Federal awards or are costs for which there is a specific Federal policy, Attachment A establishes general tests of allowability that apply irrespective of whether a particular item of cost is specifically mentioned in Attachment B. These general tests frequently involve judgment and an assessment of the facts and circumstances in which the specific cost is incurred. The tests are not only listed in the Circular itself, but are frequently restated in compliance audit guidance that Federal and nonfederal auditors use to carry out field work and reporting.

2.8.1 Necessary and Reasonable Costs

The first general test of allowability is that the cost be necessary and reasonable for proper and efficient performance and administration of Federal awards. A cost is ***reasonable*** if, in its nature and amount, it does not exceed that which would be incurred by a prudent person under the circumstances prevailing at the time the decision was made to incur the cost. The question of reasonableness is particularly important when governmental units or components are predominately Federally funded. In determining reasonableness of a given cost, consideration should be given to:

- whether the cost is of a type generally recognized as ordinary and necessary for the operation of the governmental unit or the performance of the Federal award;
- the restraints or requirements imposed by such factors as sound business practices; arms-length bargaining; Federal, state, and other laws and regulations; and Federal award terms and conditions;
- market prices for comparable goods or services;
- whether the individuals concerned acted with prudence in the circumstances, considering their responsibilities to the governmental unit, its employees, the public at large, and the Federal Government; and
- significant deviations from the established practices of the governmental unit which may unjustifiably increase the Federal award's cost.

2.8.2 Allocable Costs

The second general test of allowability is that the cost be allocable to Federal awards under the provisions of Circular A-87. A cost is ***allocable*** to a particular cost objective if the goods or

services involved are chargeable or assignable to that cost objective according to the relative benefits received. All activities which benefit from the governmental unit's indirect costs, including unallowable activities and services donated to the governmental unit by third parties, will receive an appropriate allocation of indirect costs.

Any cost allocable to a particular Federal award or cost objective under the principles in Circular A-87 may not be charged to other Federal awards to overcome fund deficiencies, to avoid restrictions imposed by law or terms of the Federal awards, or for other reasons. Such a practice constitutes unallowable cost shifting. However, this prohibition does not preclude governmental units from charging costs that are allowable and allocable under two or more awards, pursuant to existing program agreements. Such charges are viewed as "funding allocations" rather than cost allocations.

Where an accumulation of indirect costs will ultimately result in charges to a Federal award, a cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate agreement will be required as described in Attachments C, D, and E to Circular A-87.

2.8.3 The Other Tests of Allowability

In addition to reasonableness and allocability, the other general tests of allowability are that the cost:

- be authorized or not prohibited under state or local laws or regulations — a governmental unit may not accept and expend Federal funds to undertake an activity for which it does not have the authority under its own state or local law or which would constitute an illegal purpose;

- conform to any limitations or exclusions set forth in the cost principles, Federal laws, terms and conditions of the Federal award, or other governing regulations as to types or amounts of cost items;

- be consistent with policies, regulations, and procedures that apply uniformly to both Federal awards and other activities of the governmental unit;

- be accorded consistent treatment — a cost may not be assigned to a Federal award as a direct cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances has been allocated to the Federal award as an indirect cost;

- be determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, except as otherwise provided for in Circular A-87;

- not be included as a cost or used to meet cost-sharing or matching requirements of any other Federal award in either the current or a prior period, except as specifically provided by Federal law or regulation;

- be net of all applicable credits; and

- be adequately documented.

In general, to meet the test of adequate documentation of charges under a Federal award, a governmental unit must document charges in a manner consistent with documenting

expenditures of its own source revenue. However, certain provisions of Circular A-87 and the Common Rule issued pursuant to OMB Circular A-102 provide for specific standards for certain types of costs. For example, Circular A-87 addresses documentation for employee compensation, depreciation or use allowance for assets, and various types of allocated and billed indirect costs. The A-102 Common Rule establishes documentation requirements for purchase transactions (§__.36(b)(9)).

2.9 Required Government Certification

No cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate will be approved by the Federal Government unless the plan or rate proposal has been certified by the governmental unit. Except as noted below, no indirect costs will be reimbursed unless the governmental unit has an approved rate/plan or maintains on file a certified plan/rate, as appropriate.

The Federal Government may unilaterally establish such a cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate. Such a plan or rate may be based upon audited historical data or such other data that have been furnished to the cognizant Federal agency and for which it can be demonstrated that all unallowable costs have been excluded. When a cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate is unilaterally established by the Federal Government because of failure of the governmental unit to submit a certified proposal, the plan or rate will be established to ensure that potentially unallowable costs will not be reimbursed. [See also 4.5.6, Certification of CSCAPs, and 6.4.2, Required Certifications for state and local indirect cost rate proposals.]

2.10 Highlights of Changes Affecting Attachment A

- Gives Federal agencies the authority to test alternative methods of reimbursement, such as fee-for-service. [Att. A, ¶ A.2.b]

- Clarifies that, while government hospitals and educational institutions are subject to applicable requirements governing those organizations, the measurement of costs allocated or billed to them by other government departments must be made in accordance with Circular A-87 and must be accepted by all awarding agencies. [Att. A, ¶ A.3.a]

- Clarifies that subawards are subject to the cost principles applicable to the type of organization receiving the award. [Att. A, ¶ A.3.b]

- Circular A-87 is to be used as a guide in the pricing of fixed-price agreements. [Att. A, ¶ A.3.c]

- For contracts, makes Cost Accounting Standards (CAS) applicable where required. [Att. A, ¶ A.3.d]

- Expands the definition of "approval or authorization" of costs by the "awarding or cognizant agency." Clarifies that prior approval may be assumed where costs are allocated in accordance with an approved cost allocation plan. [Att. A, ¶ B.1]

- Adds new definitions for:

— Award;

— Awarding Agency;

— Central Service Cost Allocation Plan;

— Claim;

— Cognizant Agency;

— Common Rule;

— Contract;

— Governmental Unit;

— Indirect Cost Rate Proposal;

— Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plan; and

— State.

[Att. A, ¶¶ B.1-18]

- Clarifies that the definition of "cost" does not include transfers. [Att. A, ¶ B.9]

- Deleted specific prohibition that "routine costs of government" are unallowable. [Att. A, ¶ C.1.a] However, see Highlights of Attachment B, Part 3 of this guide.

- Adds a new section defining "reasonable costs" and criteria for measuring reasonableness. [Att. A, ¶ C.2]

- Clarifies that costs must be allocated to all benefitting activities, including those that are unallowable, as well as donated services. [Att. A, ¶ C.3.b]

- Clarifies when costs of activities allowable and allocable under multiple programs may be redistributed when funding ceilings for a given program are reached. (Note: not to be misconstrued as unallowable cost shifting.) [Att. A, ¶ C.3.c]

- Clarifies that direct costs are those that can be identified specifically with a particular, final cost objective. [Att. A, ¶ E.1]

- Adds a new section permitting the treatment of minor direct expenses as indirect. [Att. A, ¶ E.3]

- Adds a new section referencing other new sections dealing with the development and submission of indirect cost rates and cost allocation plans. [Att. A, ¶F.2]

- Previous sections dealing with the allocation of interagency costs have been combined into a new section (Attachment C) which has references to additional, new sections. The previous prohibition of charging general supervision, such as department heads, has been eliminated. In lieu of developing actual indirect costs associated with the allocated service, a standard 10% of direct salaries and wages may be used. This is applicable to services that are not included as billed or allocated services included in the state/local-wide cost allocation plan (SWCAP/LOCAP). [Att. A, § G]

- Sections dealing with cost allocation plans (CAPs) have been expanded and relocated elsewhere as Attachments (C and D) in the Circular. A new section (Attachment E) is added detailing required certifications for indirect cost (IDC) agreements and cost allocation plans submitted by state/local officials. [Att. A, § H]

2.11 Questions and Answers on Attachment A

2-1 Circular A-87 now permits testing of alternative methods of reimbursement, such as fee-for-service. Under what circumstances may such alternative systems be used? [Att. A, ¶ A.2.b]

Alternative reimbursement systems for administrative costs might involve a rate system whereby a single rate is paid for outputs, such as the number of programmatic services performed. As with billed services, such alternatives are acceptable for payment purposes, provided that the payments are periodically reconciled to actual costs. Reimbursement systems not based on costs are only allowable where the Federal funding legislation permits such a practice. However, where it can be demonstrated clearly that an alternative system will result in less costs to the Federal Government, the cognizant/awarding agency may deem that such a system satisfies statutory language limiting reimbursement to "expenditures."

2-2 Some Federal programs use cost reports that apply to both proprietary and governmental organizations. These cost reports often dictate policies and/or provide for independent decisions different from what is prescribed in Circular A-87 or what has been approved by the cognizant agency with respect to cost allocation plans or indirect cost rates. Are governmental units so affected required to maintain separate reporting and accounting systems? [Att. A, ¶ A.3]

No. Governmental units and Federal awarding agencies in the above situations are to comply with the provisions of A-87 and the costing methodology approved by the cognizant agency with respect to state/local-wide central service costs, billed services from other support agencies, and the distribution of agency/departmental overhead to direct cost objectives/programs. These indirect, overhead, "home office," and general and administrative costs are to be accepted on the awarding agency's cost report without additional review or approval. For example, the governmental unit might have a capitalization threshold higher than that allowed by the HIM-15 (the reimbursement manual used by Medicare). The indirect cost rate will reflect the higher limit. The HIM-15 provisions would only apply to direct costs.

2-3 For awards to subrecipients, such as nonprofits or universities, must the governmental unit recognize an indirect cost rate established with the nonprofit

or university by the Federal cognizant agency? [Att. A, ¶ A.3]

No, although governmental units are encouraged to do so. Governmental units are required to reimburse and measure costs for these organizations in accordance with the applicable cost principles, in this case A-122 and A-21, respectively. As such, the full reimbursement of allowable direct and indirect costs is expected.

The above-referenced cost principles do provide various methods for measuring costs. For example, the cognizant agency may have used a salary and wage base for distributing cost centers, while the governmental unit might require a modified total direct cost base. If differing bases or methods are imposed upon the subrecipient, dual cost accounting systems will be required. In addition, the use of a combination of bases may result in the over/under recovery of costs. OMB is studying this issue and may promulgate policy requiring consistent application of negotiated rates.

2-4 Do the Circular A-87 principles apply to the block grant programs? [Att. A, ¶ A.3]

While the Circular does not apply to many block grants, governmental units should verify the applicability of A-87 with the Federal awarding agency. However, where a governmental unit or component operates both block grants and other Federal programs subject to the Circular, cost allocation plans and indirect cost proposals must be prepared in accordance with A-87 and include the block grants in appropriate bases/cost centers to assure a proper allocation of costs.

2-5 Does Circular A-87 apply to performance partnerships? [Att. A, ¶ A.3]

Yes, OMB Circular A-87 applies to performance partnership programs.

2-6 Attachment A, paragraph B.1 defines different methods constituting Federal "approval." Can this definition be read to mean that approval of an indirect cost rate or state-wide cost allocation plan (SWCAP) represents approval of costs contained by reference in such plans or revisions? [Att. A, ¶ B.1]

No. This definition only relates to those items that would require prior approval per Attachment B of Circular A-87. It is intended to facilitate the "prior approval" process whereby allocated costs do not require separate approval from every Federal agency affected. In addition, this prior approval concept would not override or make allowable a cost element that is specifically unallowable under another provision of A-87 or program statute. With respect to public assistance cost allocation plans, approval is for methodologies, not costs claimed under such plans.

2-7 Where prior approval is required for a selected item of cost, how is the approval to be handled where the cost is allocated or distributed to a number of programs/cost objectives? [Att. A, ¶ B.1]

Where such costs are part of an indirect cost agreement or cost allocation plan, e.g. SWCAP, for which a cognizant agency has been designated, the acceptance of the item of allowable cost by the cognizant agency shall represent prior approval for all Federal

agencies.

2-8 How can I determine which Federal agency is cognizant for a particular governmental unit? [Att. A, ¶ B.6]

Appendix 2 is reserved for a future issuance of cognizant assignments pertaining to government agencies and local governments. At the time of this publication, OMB was in the process of revising the current document. The U.S. Department of Health and Human Services is cognizant for all state-wide cost allocation plans. For those entities not listed by OMB, cognizance is generally established based on the Federal agency providing the greatest dollar support that is subject to indirect cost rates.

2-9 In the revised Circular A-87 issued May 4, 1995, under the provisions concerning "Factors affecting allowability of costs," the prohibition of costs attributable to the routine activities of government has been deleted. Are such costs now allowable? [Att. A, ¶ C.1]

No. OMB omitted this prohibition under this section because it is now treated as a separate, unallowable cost element under "Selected Items of Cost" — Attachment B, paragraph 23. Such costs continue to be unallowable.

2-10 In the following examples, would a unit or component of government be in compliance with the "consistency" provisions of Attachment A, paragraphs C.1.e and f? [Att. A, ¶¶ C.1.e, f]

(1) A state with several data processing recharge centers, each using different billing systems and charging bases.

(2) Within a state, one department computes the indirect cost rate using a salaries and wages (S&W) base while another uses modified total direct costs (MTDC).

(3) One department computes a single rate for all divisions versus another that develops multiple rates.

Depending on the types of programs operated by the various departments and agencies, different methods of allocation may be required to achieve the most appropriate and equitable allocation results. Therefore, the use of different methods for allocating and distributing costs, as described, does not necessarily violate the intent of the A-87 provisions. It is the responsibility of the cognizant agency to assure that the method used in the negotiation and approval process results in the allocation of costs to all activities based on the concept of benefitting program or activity.

2-11 Circular A-87 stipulates that costs must be consistently treated as direct or indirect under like circumstances. Would this preclude, in the course of direct charging costs, a direct charge being made to an indirect cost center for those costs that are not assignable to a benefitting program, i.e., those that are truly of an indirect nature? [Att. A, ¶ C.1.f]

No. The requirement in the Circular is to prevent a practice where some of the costs

of a given activity are directly identified to programs/functions while other costs that could have also been charged as direct are treated as indirect. The distribution of a cost grouping or objective must include all benefitting programs/activities in the base, whether they be direct or indirect.

> **EXAMPLE:** A local agency, in addition to the Director's Office, has five operating divisions. For its basic telephone service, the agency opts to allocate the bill to organizational units based on the number of telephones in each unit. It must allocate costs to each unit and the Director's Office (which is treated as indirect). It cannot allocate to just two divisions with the other three divisions' allocations being allocated back to the Director's Office.

2-12 Circular A-87 requires that costs be allocated to activities or cost objectives based on relative benefits received. Are there exceptions to this requirement? [Att. A, ¶ C.3]

Circular A-87 requires that where a cost or activity benefits multiple activities or programs, those costs must be allocated in accordance with the relative benefits received by each activity or program. This requirement is an underlying principle of cost allocation. Exceptions to this requirement are permissible only under certain circumstances. If an awarding agency determines that costs allocable to another program or cost objective are allowable under their program, then the unallocable costs may be bourne by their program. This shifting of unallocable costs is permitted only when the head of the awarding agency advises the cognizant agency that under its enabling legislation, such cost shifting is allowed and expected. In the absence of such authorization, costs must be allocated to all benefiting programs.

2-13 Some Federal and state programs collect and use identical eligibility criteria or common data such as income, family structure, resources, etc. Can the costs of eligibility determination for several Federal/state programs be assigned to only one program, based on a concept of "primary program"? [Att. A, ¶ C.3]

Circular A-87 requires that common activities be allocated to all benefitting programs. The notion of "primary program" is contrary to the allocability provisions of A-87. As noted in the answer to Q&A 2-12 above, where the head of an awarding agency determines that the agency's enabling legislation permits reimbursement of unallocable costs, such costs may be allowed by the cognizant official for cost allocation or indirect cost agreements, when notified by the awarding agency head. Absent such notification, the primary program concept may not be used.

2-14 Sometimes, it is unclear when the costs of one program or activity end and those of another begin. For example, some Federal programs are categorical in nature, requiring some form of cost or beneficiary eligibility determination. In the course of determining that an individual is ineligible for the Federal program, it may be determined that the person qualifies for a state-only program. What criteria are to be used for allocating these costs? Should the Federal program be required to pay for all joint or common costs because, in the course of determining individuals eligible for the program, it follows that some individuals will be determined ineligible as well? [Att. A, ¶ C.3]

Some states have opted to provide benefits with state funding for individuals not covered by Federal programs. Quite often, in order to achieve economies, states will structure their intake or eligibility processes so that applying and determining eligibility for one or the other program can occur concurrently. As this is an efficient method of serving both programs, for which each receives a common benefit, it is appropriate and proper that each program receive an allocable share of these costs. A typical allocation base would be the number of positive eligibility determinations made for each program. (Such a methodology results in each program receiving a proportionate share of "ineligibility determination" costs.)

Whether such costs can be viewed as being attributable to the activity of determining ineligibility or a common eligibility cost depends on how the state has structured its operations. For example, if an eligibility determination runs its course for the Federal program, and the eligibility process begins anew for the state-only program, then there are costs of determining ineligibility solely for the Federal program. However, where the failure to qualify for the Federal program only requires some incremental work to be performed to determine eligibility for the state-only program (because information and data has been collected for both), then the latter program receives benefit from the common or joint effort previously expended and must receive an allocation of those costs.

In determining whether benefit is received from these common costs, consideration should be given to the following issues: Would the activity still exist, and thereby result in the same costs being incurred, if one program were terminated? Could a reasonable conclusion of eligibility or ineligibility for either program be made if potential beneficiaries were evaluated against certain key eligibility criteria in the early stages of the determination process (i.e., level of income, whether there are children in the home, etc.), rather than at the tail-end of the process?

2-15 Circular A-87 seems to require that donated services always be allocated indirect costs. Are there any circumstances when such a distribution is not required? [Att. A, ¶ C.3.b]

As with the distribution of costs to any cost objective, no allocation is required when the component can demonstrate there is no benefit. If the level of benefit is not the same as for other benefitting activities, then additional, intermediate pools would be necessary so that only benefitting indirect costs are distributed to the donated services.

2-16 The discussion in Circular A-87 concerning allocable costs, Attachment A, paragraph C.3.c, stipulates that costs allocable to one program may not be shifted to another, yet it goes on to say that cost shifting is allowable. Is this inconsistent policy? [Att. A, ¶ C.3.c]

No inconsistency was intended. OMB made a distinction between *cost allocation* and *funding allocations*. [Editor's note: OMB added the exception language to this provision at the specific request of HHS, to address confusion that had occurred in the funding of some of its programs. The term "cost shifting" should not have been used, because cost shifting is unallowable, per se.] A function or activity within the government organization that benefits two or more programs may be set up as a single cost objective. Costs allocable to that cost objective would be allowable under any of

the involved programs which benefit from these activities/costs. The government can make a business decision regarding what combination of funds made available under these programs would be applied to this cost objective. In public assistance agencies, for example, certain services rendered to children may comprise a cost objective. If the services provided and the criteria establishing the children's eligibility to receive them are the same for two or more child welfare programs, the government could fund the services with any combination of funds made available under these programs. This results in applying eligible funding sources to the single cost objective, rather than allocating the cost objective to the programs involved.

> **EXAMPLE:** Program A allows payments for children in foster care whose parents' incomes do not exceed 180% of the poverty income level. The payments to the care givers are matched by the Federal program at 50%, with no ceiling on the total amount that can be paid by the Federal Government. Program B allows payments for children in foster care regardless of the parents' income. While Program B will match these payments at 75%, total Federal payments may not exceed $10M. The state opts to establish a single cost center for children in foster care whose parents' income is less than 180% of the poverty level. As these children qualify for either program, the state can initially fund these services with the higher matching Program B funds (75%). When the Federal ceiling of $10M is reached, the cost center can then be *funded*, from that point forward, with Program A funds, albeit at a lower matching rate of 50%. Children whose parents' income exceeds the 180% income level would be charged to a separate cost center, along with the attendant eligibility and other administrative costs. (Typically, the costs of determining eligibility for these two groups would initially be aggregated in an intermediate cost pool reflecting common costs. The pool would be further allocated to the two final cost objectives based on the number of children served in each.)

2-17 Is the list of applicable credits all inclusive? [Att. A, ¶ C.4.a]

No. There are other common examples. For instance, applicable credits result from allowable activities that generate income, such as income from sales of publications; income generated from employee morale, health, and welfare activities per Attachment B, paragraph 17; and interest earnings on internal service funds and positive cash flows.

2-18 If a government operates its entitlement programs through different component units, such as the health department and welfare department, may cost allocation plans be required from each? [Att. A, ¶ F.2]

Yes. The requirements of Attachment D apply to all public assistance programs, regardless of where they are organizationally located. Public assistance programs are not the only instances when a government component may need a cost allocation plan. Whenever the nature of the component's activities are such that direct costs cannot be adequately determined with reasonable precision, a cost allocation plan would be necessary. Typically, a plan is necessary when substantial "direct" costs of programs,

awards, contracts, projects, etc. consist of joint or common cost distributions. This would not preclude, however, the use of an indirect cost rate in conjunction with a cost allocation plan.

2-19 Are cost allocation plans only applicable to state/local-wide cost allocation plans (SWCAPs/LOCAPs) and public assistance cost allocation plans (PACAPs)? [Att. A, ¶ F.2]

No. The component or a Federal agency may request a cost allocation plan in lieu of an IDC rate under the circumstances described for public assistance plans in Q&A 2-18 above. Where a cost allocation plan is necessary for a component of the governmental unit for which the cognizant agency makes no awards, or has no knowledge of the component's programs, the awarding agency impacted the greatest may be designated to approve such plans.

2-20 Attachment A, Section G discusses the use of a standard 10% rate for services provided by one agency (except state/local-wide centralized services departments) to another within a governmental unit. Can this concept be used under any circumstances where a state makes a subaward to a local government? [Att. A, § G]

No. This provision only applies to components (agencies) within a specific governmental unit, not outside that unit.

2-21 Attachment A, Section G allows components, when billing another component for services, to include a flat 10% of salaries and wages in lieu of determining actual indirect costs. Under what circumstances would this be permissible? [Att. A, § G]

A number of agencies do not receive Federal awards and therefore have no need to obtain an indirect cost (IDC) rate from a cognizant agency. From time to time these agencies might provide a reimbursable service to another agency which does receive awards. OMB opted to allow the 10% of salaries and wages, which is viewed as nominal, rather than requiring such agencies to go through the burden of developing indirect cost rates for relatively insignificant activities. If an agency providing services has an IDC rate, that rate must be used in lieu of the flat 10% rate if its application results in less reimbursement.

PART 3

Attachment B — Selected Items of Cost

3.1 Handling Items of Cost Not Listed in Attachment B

Like other sets of Office of Management and Budget (OMB) cost principles, Circular A-87 lists selected items of cost that are common to performing and administering Federal awards to governmental units. The selection of these costs represents OMB's judgment that policy about allowability is either needed or desirable. However, OMB recognizes that it is not possible to develop comprehensive rules that address every possible type of cost that might arise in the context of awards to governmental entities. Accordingly, Attachment B of the Circular, which addresses the selected items, is introduced with a general policy that is intended to be helpful in making cost determinations. It states: "Failure to mention a particular item of cost in these sections is not intended to imply that it is either allowable or unallowable; rather, determination of allowability in each case should be based on the treatment or standards for similar or related items of cost."

Under this policy, if an item is not listed in the Circular, but a similar item is discussed, it may be that allowability can be determined by assessing the degree to which common characteristics exist between the two cost items. Alternatively, applying the general tests of allowability contained in Attachment A of the Circular could be determinative. It may be advisable to seek advance understanding with the awarding or cognizant agency concerning particular costs if allowability is more difficult to determine, although such a practice is not specifically mentioned zin Circular A-87. Other OMB cost principles suggest this approach where doubts are present, but further state that the absence of such an advance understanding does not preclude allowability.

3.2 Prior Approval

In the past, because of concerns about the allocability of certain items of cost, OMB usually required that these items be subject to the prior approval of Federal agencies. he 1995 revision to the Circular changed the frequency and precision with which these approvals must be obtained. First, through definition changes and other means, it streamlined the award administration process by reducing the number of transactions subject to prior approval. Second, it expanded the actual definition of what constitutes approval. Under the new definition, the term "approval or authorization of the awarding or cognizant Federal agency" means "documentation evidencing consent prior to incurring a specific cost." However, the definition goes on to state that if costs are specifically identified in a Federal award document, approval of the document constitutes approval of the costs. If the costs are covered by a state/local-wide cost allocation plan or an indirect cost rate proposal, approval of the plan constitutes the approval of costs requiring prior approval. The addition of these policies in the 1995 revision is intended to preclude prior approval-seeking for costs requiring prior approval when a cost has already been considered and analyzed as part of another review process.

While not specifically mentioned in the Circular, most Federal awards will also identify the official(s) of the awarding agency who are authorized to issue approvals. Approval should always be documented in writing by the authorized Federal official.

3.3 Highlights of Changes Affecting Attachment B

Numerous selected items of cost were added to the listing in the 1995 revision. Many make the Circular consistent with OMB cost principles applicable to other types of recipients. Because of their newness or the relative lack of familiarity that officials of governmental recipients may have with these other cost principles, numerous questions have been raised concerning applicability. Many of these are addressed in the Questions and Answers section which follows the changes listed below.

- Attachment B has been reformatted into an alphabetized discussion of costs, noting in the discussion for each cost whether it is allowable or unallowable. Separate sections dealing with allowability/unallowability have been deleted. Where selected items of cost appear in new sections due to the alphabetical format and there is no substantive change in policy, no mention of the change is provided in this document. Also, as the discussion of allowability for a selected item of cost is applicable regardless of whether a cost is direct or indirect, specific references to billed and like services have been deleted. Again, if no substantive change has been made, no mention is made herein. [Att. B, ¶¶ 1-42]

- Significantly qualifies and defines "advertising and public relations costs" and when they are allowable. [Att. B, ¶ 2]

- Clarifies that "advisory councils" may be allowable as either direct or indirect costs. [Att. B, ¶ 3]

- Adds a new section specifically making alcoholic beverages unallowable. [Att. B, ¶ 4]

- Adds additional language as to what audit costs are allowable and stipulates that they are to be allocated based on the ratio of Federal funds to total expenditures. [Att. B, ¶ 5]

- The specific prohibition of "budgeting costs" attributable to routine costs of government has been deleted from this section. [Att. B, ¶ 9] However, see reference to Att.B,¶ 23, below.

- The section on "Compensation for personnel services" has been greatly expanded. Significant changes are:

  — criteria for determining what is reasonable compensation;

  — an expanded fringe benefits discussion rolled into this section that explains, among other things, how costs are claimed when using accrual or cash basis of accounting;

- — considerable attention to the accounting and claiming of pension costs;

- — detailed requirements concerning salary support and time distribution systems; and

- — a new subsection on "donated services" which prohibits reimbursement of such services but nevertheless requires that they be included in the base for purposes of allocating indirect costs. [Att. B, ¶ 11]

- Contingencies continue to be unallowable but the section has been qualified to clarify that reserves for such things as pensions and other fringe benefits are permitted. [Att. B, ¶ 12]

- A new section, "Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, and claims" has replaced the former "Legal expenses" section. The new section incorporates statutorily required language applicable to contracts. Legal and related expenses incurred in the prosecution of claims against the Federal Government remain unallowable. [Att. B, ¶ 14]

- An expanded section on "Depreciation and use allowances" adds the following provisions:

  - — the assets of enterprise funds must be capitalized, as required by GAAP;

  - — governmental subdivisions may not be considered donors for purposes of establishing an asset's value at fair market value (FMV);

  - — componetization of buildings is allowable;

  - — except for enterprise and bona-fide internal service funds, classes of assets must be the same basis as used in the governmentwide financial statements; and

  - — when converting from use allowance to depreciation, the balance to be depreciated will be computed using a pro forma depreciation schedule starting with the date of acquisition.

The prohibition of excess capacity has been relocated to another section. (See reference to Att.B, ¶ 24, below). [Att. B, ¶ 15]

- The "Equipment and other capital expenditures" section has been expanded to:

  - — define what is a capital expenditure;

  - — allow governments to establish a capitalization threshold at the lessor of $5,000 or the threshold used in preparing the financial statements;

— clarify that capital expenditures may only be allowed as a direct cost with prior approval; and

— provide guidance on how unamortized portions of assets are to be handled when a governmental unit changes its capitalization policy.

Rental costs have been removed from this section and given a dedicated citation. (see 3-22 below) [Att. B, ¶ 19]

- A section on "Fund raising and investment management costs" has been added. Fund raising and general investment activities/costs are unallowable but must be allocated a pro rata share of indirect costs. Investment activities related to pension funds, self-insurance funds, etc. are allowable. [Att. B, ¶ 21]

- A new section has been added addressing gains and losses and the relocation of Federally sponsored programs. While gains and losses on the sale, retirement, or other disposition of depreciable property must be accounted for in the current period, several methods are cited for handling the adjustment. Where Federal programs are relocated from a facility in which there was Federal participation in the financing of the facility, adjustments can be required by the cognizant agency. [Att. B, ¶ 22]

- General or routine costs of government have been given a separate section. In addition to the governor's office, several other examples are listed as being unallowable. [Att. B, ¶ 23]

- A new section addressing idle capacity and facilities was created which incorporates definitions of these terms and establishes parameters for establishing allowability. [Att. B, ¶ 24]

- The section on "Insurance and indemnification" has been expanded to address self-insurance funds such as worker's compensation and unemployment compensation. This discussion is quite detailed and covers such areas as measuring risk, funding, offsets for investment income, etc. [Att. B, ¶ 25]

- Interest is now allowable on equipment acquired before or after the effective date of the revised Circular. However, for existing debt, only interest expense incurred/paid in the government's fiscal year beginning on or after September 1, 1995 is allowable. Retroactive claims for interest paid in prior periods is unallowable. The Circular also requires, for facilities, that earnings on construction borrowings be offset against income expense. Where depreciation and interest expense exceeds principal and interest payments (positive cash flow), the state is required to "negotiate" the amount of allowable interest with the cognizant agency. While no change was made concerning the allowability of interest for facilities, the section now permits interest for reconstruction or remodeling completed after October 1, 1980. [Att. B, ¶ 26]

- A new section on "Lobbying" generally makes these costs unallowable. [Att. B, ¶ 27]

- The section on "Professional services" no longer requires prior approval and has been expanded to include retainer fees. Related to this, the previous requirement that the cost of "management studies" had to have specific prior approval has been deleted. [Att. B, ¶ 33]

- The Circular no longer requires prior approval of "Proposal costs" that are treated as an indirect costs. Prior approval is still required if the cost is claimed as a direct cost. [Att. B, ¶ 34]

- Two new sections have been added addressing "alterations" and "reconversion" costs of facilities. While both are allowable, circumstances dictate whether prior approval is required. Alterations incurred to meet the specific requirements of a Federal award require prior approval. Alterations at the termination of an award that are necessary to restore facilities to their prior condition are allowable. [Att. B, ¶ 36, 37]

- "Rental costs" has been expanded to address capital and less-than-arms-length leases. Allowable costs are limited to the pro forma costs of ownership. [Att. B, ¶ 38]

- The "Taxes" section has been qualified to exclude as allowable those taxes that are self-imposed and otherwise disproportionately affect Federal programs. This qualifier becomes effective on January 1, 1998. [Att. B, ¶ 39]

- Where a governmental unit fails to have written travel reimbursement policies, the "Travel" section now requires that General Services Administration (GSA) rules be used. Where noncommercial air transportation is used, allowable costs are limited to commercial fares. [Att. B, ¶ 41]

3.4 Questions and Answers on Attachment B

3-1 How are the cost allowability requirements of Circular A-87 different from those of Circular A-21 and A-122? [Att. B]

There are currently some differences between the various sets of OMB cost principles, but they are relatively minor. All three sets of principles reflect essentially the same policies toward cost allowability and documentation. OMB has stated that it intends to eliminate remaining differences as the circulars continue to be revised.

3-2 The previous version of Circular A-87 prohibited budgeting and accounting costs allocable to general costs of government. Are these costs now 100% allowable? [Att. B, ¶ 1]

No. In its 1995 revision of Circular A-87, OMB omitted language qualifying which accounting and budgeting costs are allowable. Those costs allocable to general or routine costs of government continue to be unallowable under the general provisions of Attachment B, paragraph 23, "General Government Expenses." In its efforts to reduce verbiage in the Circular, OMB determined that it was unnecessary to qualify every item of cost. All costs are subject to the general prohibition of allowing costs attributable to the general cost of government.

3-3 Other than the capitalization of ADP equipment and related hardware, must the developmental and testing costs for such systems be amortized? [Att. B, ¶ 6]

At the time of this guide's publication, no applicable industry-wide government accounting standards exist for the treatment of these costs. Governmental units are to treat these costs in accordance with their established capitalization policies. In the future, should the Governmental Accounting Standards Board issue applicable pronouncements on this subject, governmental units will be required to follow them.

3-4 Where financing was obtained to develop an ADP system, are there any limitations with respect to claiming interest expense associated with these costs?

Interest is only allowable on capital expenditures where there is interest expense and depreciation (or use allowance) in the current period. If development costs are not amortized, i.e. written off as expenditures, then no interest is allocable or allowable under Federal programs. However, interest expense incurred in the first year of the expenditure is allowable.

3-5 Lump sum leave (Unused Leave at B.11.d(3)) payments are to be allocated as general administrative expenses to all activities of the governmental unit or component. Why are both noted here, but only "governmental unit" is cited for severance pay (B.11.g(2))? [Att. B, ¶ 11.d]

The section dealing with severance pay requires an allocation of these costs "to all activities of the governmental unit as an indirect cost." This language is interpreted as including components; no distinction is intended.

3-6 If an employee worked on the same program during their entire employment, can their unpaid leave, at the time of separation, be charged to that program? [Att. B, ¶ 11.d(3)]

Attachment B, paragraph 11.d(3) requires that unpaid leave be treated as an indirect cost. If a governmental unit wishes to direct charge such costs, the alternative that would result in the same level of equity would be if unpaid leave for all employees were charged to the source(s) where the leave was earned. The allocation would not only have to be within the last component unit worked, but to all other units worked over the employees' careers. As this approach involves burdensome accounting for the entire work force, OMB provided the indirect cost approach as being the least burdensome.

3-7 In the preamble to its notice in the May 17, 1995 *Federal Register*, page 26485, OMB stated that a proposed revision requiring separate actuarial computations for different classes of employees had been deleted. OMB did not explain why this provision had been deleted. Does this mean that classes of employees, such as police and social workers, may now be combined for computing pension liabilities and employer contributions? [Att. B, ¶ 11.d(5)]

No. OMB has stated that this provision was deleted because it was redundant of a more general provision of the final revision to Circular A-87. Attachment B, paragraph 11.d(5) stipulates that fringe benefits must be allocated "in a manner consistent with the pattern of benefits attributable to the individuals or group(s) of employees...." As

such, it is the intent of OMB that separate actuarial analyses be made for pensions and other applicable fringe benefits involving different classes of employees having different cost patterns.

Basic guidelines affecting allowability of costs provide that policies, regulations, and procedures be consistently and uniformly applied to both Federal and nonfederal activities. This consistency concept recognizes that there will probably be several actuarial groupings to reflect different employee classes (e.g., police/fire, judges, regular classified, etc.). Consistency requires that pension contributions for employees within each actuarial grouping be based on the same assumptions and computations (e.g. 7% of salaries and wages).

3-8 Circular A-87 states that pension contributions by a governmental unit in excess of the actuarially determined amount for a fiscal year may be used as the governmental unit's contribution in future periods. Does this mean that the excess amount is not allowable in the year contributed, but may be allowed or recognized in future periods? If so, how should the unallowable amount be calculated? [Att. B, ¶ 11.e]

The maximum amount allowed for pension costs in a given fiscal year would be the amount actually contributed, based on the amount determined for that fiscal year under an acceptable actuarial system that has been used by the government in its financial statements. Any amount exceeding this determination would be unallowable in the year funded but would be considered a prepaid contribution that can be used in whole or in part by the government in a future period when its contribution is less than the actuarially determined amount for that period. The amount allowed in this later period would reflect the amount prepaid, plus interest earnings on that amount, as computed based on the assumed interest rate used by the actuary in its determinations.

3-9 Circular A-87 notes only two acceptable methods for computing pension plan costs applicable to a governmental unit's fiscal year, i.e., the pay-as-you-go method or an acceptable actuarial cost method. It further notes the amounts that will be recognized as allowable for a given year, i.e., actual payments to retirees or their beneficiaries under the former method, and amounts funded within six months after the end of that year (extensions subject to approval) for the latter. If another method is used, e.g., an approved funding schedule by the state legislature, is that method acceptable if it produces contributions between what the two approved methods would allow? [Att. B, ¶ 11.e]

This would be similar to an actuarial method where a governmental unit funds less than the actuarially determined amount. As provided in Attachment B, paragraph 11.e(2), costs that are funded after the six-month period would be allowable in the year the actual funding takes place. However, only the amount that would have been funded if contributions were made on a timely basis would be allowable. Any increased costs due to the delayed funding would be unallowable in the year funded.

3-10 Circular A-87 allows recognition of actuarial pension contributions in a specific year if these contributions are made in a period not exceeding six months after year end. An extension of the six months is permitted if an imputed interest offset adjustment is made to compensate for the difference in the timing of the Federal

reimbursement versus the state/local contribution. Are such adjustments required during the course of the year, i.e. the timing between the Federal reimbursement during the twelve-month period and the actual contribution to the pension fund during that same period? [Att. B, ¶ 11.e(2)]

OMB did not believe it was necessary to establish rules concerning timely contributions, as this matter falls under the purview of cash draw downs and, as such, is subject to the provisions of the Cash Management Improvement Act (CMIA) (P.L. 101-453, implemented by the Treasury Department at 31 CFR Part 205). Where the cognizant agency determines that funds have been drawn down, retained for extended periods, and subsequently used to make untimely contributions, the cognizant agency is required to recover imputed interest through the Treasury Department under the auspices of the CMIA.

3-11 Attachment B, paragraph 11.e(5) provides for the Federal Government to receive a refund, withdrawal, or other credit if pension monies revert to state/local general revenues or other nonpension uses. How would the Federal Government refund be determined? [Att. B, ¶ 11.e(5)]

The Federal refund percentage of the amount reverted to the governmental unit should be based on the same pro rata share of the pension contribution charged to Federal programs. However, because Federal pension contributions usually occur over a long period of time, an accurate determination of the pro rata share over this period is seldom feasible. The cognizant agency may negotiate with the governmental unit a reasonable estimate of the pro rata share or elect to use the universally accepted 20 percent as the approximation. The 20 percent representing the Federal share would be applied to the total amount transferred.

3-12 Severance payments associated with normal turnover are allowable and are to be allocated to all activities of the governmental unit as an indirect cost. Are governments required to allocate to the entire governmental unit, e.g. the state, through the state-wide cost allocation plan (SWCAP) as an indirect cost or just to all activities within the affected component of the governmental unit? [Att. B, ¶ 11.g(2)]

Attachment B, paragraph 11.g(2) only refers to severance pay involved with normal turnover and not that experienced with reductions due to program cutbacks or elimination, reductions in the government workforce, buy-outs, etc. This section deals with relatively insignificant costs resulting from normal operations and are to be included in a component's indirect costs, the SWCAP/LOCAP, or a state/local-wide fringe benefit rate, depending on how the government accounts for such costs. However, they are not to be treated as direct costs.

3-13 Attachment B, paragraph 11.g(3) notes that "abnormal or mass severance pay will be considered on a case-by-case basis and is allowable only if approved by the cognizant Federal agency." What is the definition of "severance pay" in this case, and what must be submitted to the Federal Government for approval? [Att. B, ¶ 11.g(3)]

The question raises several points and the responses to each are as follows:

(1) Mass severance or termination benefits would include all expenses associated with the event. This would include: lump sum payments that may be linked to years of service, increased pension benefits such as granting additional years or eliminating penalties for early retirement, payments of unused leave, and the cost of any other incentive offered to employees as an incentive to leave government service, such as buy-outs.

(2) The costs of these special termination benefits must be determined and prior approval of such costs must be obtained from the Federal cognizant office prior to claiming these costs directly or indirectly against Federal programs. The requests for prior approval, at a minimum, must demonstrate the reasonableness and allocability of such costs to Federal programs.

(3) If a state or local government is contemplating such packages, they must obtain approval as required, based on the effective date of Circular A-87 for the specific governmental unit. In addition, even though the former Circular A-87 did not note a specific requirement for advance approval for such costs, it did require that, for claiming and reimbursement purposes, all costs be allocable to and benefit Federal programs.

(4) Cognizant agencies will generally use the following criteria in making a determination as to whether the abnormal severance costs will be allowed.

a. The governmental unit must demonstrate that such costs are allocable to Federal programs.

b. The buy-out should be government-wide. (However, see Q&A 3-14 below.)

c. The plan should address policies concerning rehiring and forfeiture of buy-out or other severance payments if rehiring policies are not followed.

d. The plan should address estimated savings, total and Federal, in both dollars and number of employees.

e. The governmental unit should analyze the effect the downsizing will have on the operation, continuity, and effectiveness of programs.

f. The governmental unit and the cognizant agency also will establish an agreement providing for compensation to the Federal Government

should the terms and conditions of the buy-out/severance plan not be met.

3-14 Is there a prohibition on allocating or charging buy-out and other severance costs directly to the function or activity in which the employee last worked? [Att. B, ¶ 11.g(3)]

As stated in Attachment B, paragraph 11.g(3), each incentive package will be

determined on a case by case basis. The direct charging of buy-out costs to functions/programs/components is appropriate under certain circumstances. For example, where the state or the Federal Government is eliminating a program, charging the buy-out costs to that program is consistent with the allocability provisions of Circular A-87. However a problem may be created in this situation because the buy-out costs would be assigned to a component or program that no longer operates. If such programs are state/local-only supported programs, then such costs would not be allocable to Federal programs either directly or indirectly. If such programs are Federally supported programs, then these programs should provide for the costs of such cut backs or terminations because a basic A-87 cost principle at Attachment A, paragraph C.3.c. provides that "[a]ny cost allocable to a particular Federal award or cost objective under the principles provided for in this Circular may not be charged to other Federal awards to overcome fund deficiencies...."

3-15 What is a personnel activity report (PAR)? [Att. B, ¶ 11.h]

A PAR is a timesheet or log maintained by the employee which contemporaneously accounts for 100% of their time. The objective is to identify effort spent on multiple activities or programs. Breaks, meals, generic training, etc. can all be coded to a single activity such as "admin" or "other," which in turn would be reallocated to the activities or programs.

In limited situations a PAR can be a time certification relying on an informal log or calendar notations. For example, an attorney working in an agency general counsel office routinely works on general management activities, which are allowable, and his time is charged 100% to an indirect cost center. However, in one month he works three weeks with the state attorney general on a lawsuit against the Federal Government. For that month, it would be acceptable for him to complete an end-of-the-month certification reflecting a 25% distribution of time to the IDC pool and 75% to a cost center representing unallowable legal costs (pursuing claims against the Federal Government).

Caution must be exercised when using time certifications. Their use is only suitable where few activities are involved and the effort involved covers long periods without diversions to other efforts. Where effort is expended on a number of activities with constant variations throughout the day as well as from day to day, a month-end certification would be unacceptable. It would be at best a rough estimate of time expended and would not meet the requirement of an after-the-fact reporting of actual effort.

3-16 Attachment B, paragraph 11.h establishes acceptable standards for a personnel activity reporting (PAR) system. One standard requires an employee signature when working on multiple activities. If a government component maintains an ADP on-line PAR system which is fully computerized and paperless, would a "digital signature" (occurring when an employee logs on to the PAR system with a logon ID and a secret password) constitute an acceptable alternative to an employee signature? [Att. B, ¶ 11.h]

As long as the governmental unit can demonstrate and document that only the employees' actions would result in the identification of the activities to be charged, and

that it complies with the other criteria in Attachment B, paragraph 11.h(5), the procedure would be acceptable.

3-17 Some central services activities are billed based on the service hours provided to user agencies. Circular A-87 requires that "personnel activity reports or equivalent documentation...must reflect an after-the-fact distribution of the actual activity of each employee." Based on the requirements at Attachment B, paragraph 11.h, are timesheets reflecting actual effort required or are monthly estimates sufficient? [Att. B, ¶ 11.h]

If an employee is assigned to and expected to work solely in one billed activity (cost objective), only periodic certifications, as required by Attachment B, paragraph 11.h(3), must be generated. However, if that employee is assigned to a billed activity in which multiple rates are developed, then personnel activity reports or equivalent documentation set forth in 11.h(4) and (5) are required. Monthly estimates can only be used for interim billing purposes. Such billings must be adjusted to actual effort based on the criteria set forth in 11.h(5)(e).

3-18 How should year-end bonuses be treated? [Att. B, ¶ 11.h]

If the amounts involved are significant, they must be allocated based on the entire year's activity. As such, time and effort reports (or equivalent systems) must be averaged for the period covered by the bonuses, in this case, an entire year. However, if it can be demonstrated that the time and effort or other statistical data for the period in which the bonus was paid is typical of the entire period for which the bonus was awarded, then no redistribution is required.

3-19 If an employee works on only one Federal award, is a certification required? [Att. B, ¶ 11.h(3)]

Yes. However, this requirement can be met through certain payroll codings and time and attendance certifications pursuant to payroll authorizations. For example, if (1) employees work in a dedicated function; (2) their potential assignment to multiple programs/activities is not within the authority, function, or purview of the supervisor responsible for certifying payroll time and attendance; and (3) the employee is coded to a dedicated function not benefitting multiple functions or programs, the payroll certification shall be accepted in lieu of the semi-annual certification of time and effort.

3-20 Will an employee working on two indirect cost activities subject to different allocation bases be required to maintain a personnel activity report? [Att. B, ¶ 11.h(4)(d)]

Attachment B, paragraph 11.h(4)(d) requires that employees in these circumstances must complete personnel activity reports, whether through time sheets or some form of statistical sampling.

3-21 Where a personnel activity reporting system is based on employee time sheets, what are the minimum increments of time in which employees may record their time? [Att. B, ¶ 11.h(5)]

The purpose of time and effort (T&E) reporting is to capture total activities expended on various Federal and state programs. Depending on the level of detail required by the enabling legislation or management, activity-specific vs. program-specific time might have to be captured. Increments of time should not be limited arbitrarily, because this may prevent employees from accurately and completely reporting effort on all programs and required activities if the minimum increment is too large.

Time sheets must be completed contemporaneously and must be detailed enough to reflect all activities performed during a specific period of time. The time increments should be sufficient to recognize the: (1) number of different activities performed, and (2) dynamics of these responsibilities. For example, very large time increments could be used for employees performing only a few functions which change very slowly over time. Conversely, very small increments would be needed for employees performing a multitude of very short-term tasks.

Reporting time frames established by a unit or component may be subject to Federal review. If the cognizant agency determines that an established time frame or increment is inadequate because it does not allow employees to report effort on all activities or programs fully and contemporaneously, the unit or component will be required to revise its system to capture all activities and programs. To avoid this condition, a statistical reporting system (e.g. random moment sampling) should be considered for employees working in dynamic situations (performing many different types of activities on a variety of programs over a short period of time).

3-22 For employees working on multiple activities where the component has opted to account for time based on time and effort reports, must the personnel activity report for the employee account for 100% of the worker's effort? [Att. B, ¶ 11.h(5)(b)]

Yes. Failure to account for 100% of an employee's or volunteer's time would result in the shifting of program/activity costs to those programs for which time is accounted.

3-23 Can the results of an acceptable statistical sampling method or time and effort reporting covering one period of time be applied to a different period, e.g., a prior quarter? [Att. B, ¶ 11.h(5)(c)]

No. The results of a specific period represents the values experienced during that period only. Attachment B, paragraph 11.h(5)(c) requires that time and effort reporting coincide with one or more pay periods. Therefore, retroactive application of such results, whether they are statistically based or effort reporting, is unacceptable. However, prior period actuals may be used as estimates for applying costs in a future period, provided that the estimates are adjusted back to actual effort for that period when claimed for reimbursement.

3-24 How often must time sheets be prepared? [Att. B, ¶ 11.h(5)(c)]

The timeliness of completing time and effort reports depends on the nature of activities being reported. The Circular requires that such reports must reflect the actual activity of each employee. If activities or programs worked on vary constantly throughout the work day, then they must be completed as each event begins and ends. However, in

accordance with Attachment B, paragraph 11.h(5)(c), they must be completed no less frequently than monthly.

3-25 Are legal costs associated with administrative appeals of disallowed costs, cost allocation and indirect cost proposal disputes, or other adverse decisions made by the Federal agency allowable? [Att. B, ¶ 14]

Circular A-87 stipulates that the costs of pursuing claims against the Federal Government are unallowable. However, OMB has deferred to agencies in interpreting this policy. Most, but not all, agencies have interpreted this policy as prohibiting costs associated with both administrative and judicial appeals occurring after a final management decision has been issued by the agency. As efforts are being made to establish a consistent interpretation throughout the Federal Government, governmental units should periodically check with their cognizant or awarding agency to determine if they are affected. Where such costs are interpreted as being unallowable, governmental units must establish methods and a cost center to aggregate such costs.

3-26 Attachment B, paragraph 14 refers only to those legal defense expenses deemed unallowable. What about accounting or other activities supporting unallowable legal defense activities? [Att. B, ¶ 14]

Although not mentioned specifically, other costs supporting unallowable legal defense activities would also be unallowable. Unallowable defense activities constitute the cost objective and any costs allocable to that activity are likewise unallowable.

3-27 How does a governmental unit identify unallowable legal defense and related costs? [Att. B, ¶ 14.b]

Unallowable activities must be identified through separate cost objectives or cost centers. With respect to salaries and wages, Attachment B, paragraph 11.h(4)(e) requires that unallowable activities be identified through the use of personnel activity reports or equivalent documentation. These costs would be fully burdened with applicable fringe benefits and related administrative costs.

3-28 Can depreciable lives of assets that are relied upon in the preparation of the financial statements differ from those used in filing claims with the Federal Government? [Att. B, ¶ 15]

In accordance with the consistency provisions of Attachment A, paragraph C.1.e, if a governmental unit elects to depreciate in its financial statements (CAFR), the depreciable lives and classes used in those statements must be used by all components of the government in their claims under Federal awards.

3-29 Most states do not have a state-wide policy on depreciation. Quite often, individual state agencies have policies that may be different from state practice, e.g., the state does not depreciate equipment in its financial statements. Are agency policies on depreciation sufficient, if applied consistently throughout the agency, or is the agency required to follow what is practiced by the state in developing its financial statements? [Att. B, ¶ 15]

OMB recognized that states are not required to depreciate assets in their financial statements. As such, OMB granted an exception to the consistency requirements of Attachment A, paragraph C.1.e. Even if the state financial statements do not provide for depreciation, a government component (e.g. Department of Transportation, public university, etc.) may claim this expense. However, the capitalization threshold used in the CAFR for the fixed asset group must be used by the agency in establishing which assets to depreciate. In addition, depreciable lives for classes of assets must be consistent throughout the component. Where componentization is elected for buildings, the practice must be consistently applied to that asset group throughout the component.

3-30 Where a governmental unit or component opts to change from use allowance to depreciation, how is this conversion to be handled? [Att. B, ¶ 15]

In accordance with Attachment B, paragraph 15.e, the asset's imputed book value at the time of conversion is to be established by assessing pro forma depreciation for those periods when use allowance was applicable, i.e. from the date of acquisition. The remaining balance is then depreciated over the remaining useful life.

3-31 May components of a governmental unit determine, establish, and account for the cost of assets on a different basis, i.e., some through the use allowance provision and others through deprecation? [Att. B, ¶ 15]

Generally, yes. Attachment B, paragraph 15.a, permits this. However, only one method — depreciation or use allowance — may be applied to a single class of assets. A combination of the two methods is not allowed.

The exception to the above is in the case of internal service funds (ISFs) and enterprise funds. OMB, at Attachment B, paragraph 15.a, recognizes the requirement in generally accepted accounting principles that assets in such funds must be depreciated. The use of a depreciation method in the ISFs is acceptable even though other central service activities (unbilled) are applying use allowance in the determination of their costs.

3-32 Under what circumstances can accelerated depreciation be claimed? [Att. B, ¶ 15.e]

Depreciation accounting is, frequently, a reflection of tax or social policy. In contrast to IRS regulations, Circular A-87 follows traditional financial precepts associated with the production of goods and services by requiring that straight line depreciation procedures be applied to recognize an asset's consumption over its useful life (based on historical information or experience). The straight line procedure is presumed to be the only acceptable method because it is extremely difficult to demonstrate that the expected consumption of an asset will be significantly greater in earlier portions of its useful life.

It is assumed that older assets will probably require more maintenance and repair costs than newer assets. However, since these "fix up" costs are recognized as current period expenses, maintenance and repair expenditures have no impact on annual depreciation costs. Depreciation expense might vary from year to year only if an organization could demonstrate that an asset contributes more (or less) each year to the production of

goods and services.

Alternative depreciation procedures may be acceptable if an asset's consumption is based on unit of production rather than estimated useful life. For example, an entity may have a policy of removing vehicles from service after 125,000 miles or replacing certain equipment after 200,000 hours of operation. In these cases, miles driven or operating hours per year could be used to compute annual depreciation (rather than estimated years of service).

3-33 Under what circumstances may a use allowance be allowed for assets which have been fully depreciated? [Att. B, ¶ 15.g]

In only the most extraordinary circumstances should a use allowance be allowed for fully depreciated assets. Increased maintenance and service costs resulting from the age of the asset generally are insufficient justifications for allowing use allowance, as such costs are reimbursable directly as current period operating expenses. Furthermore, capital improvements/repairs/renovations to maintain the original asset's viability are equally insufficient justification, as they are recoverable through depreciation. The reimbursement of use allowance may be justified when Federal programs had been charged with little or no depreciation expense in the past.

3-34 Under what circumstances may a use allowance be allowed for assets which have been subjected to use allowance and would be considered to be fully depreciated at the use allowance rate? [Att. B, ¶ 15.g]

As with situations where an asset has been fully depreciated, additional use allowance for any asset for which the past application of use allowance can be considered to have resulted in the full acquisition cost of the asset having been recovered, use allowance should only be allowed in exceptional cases. The concept of reasonableness assumes that claims submitted to the Federal Government (and other external organizations) for cost reimbursement should be limited to an asset's acquisition cost. In sum, any claim for cost reimbursement in excess of cost would be unreasonable and unallowable. The criteria for allowing use allowance for fully depreciated assets (see Q&A 3-33) should also be applied for assets that have been subjected to use allowance in the past.

3-35 Attachment B, paragraph 19.a(2) defines equipment as the lessor of the governmental unit's capitalization policy or $5,000. However, Attachment B, paragraph 19.d stipulates that items of equipment less than $5,000 can be charged directly to grants without prior approval of the grantor agency. Do these rules contradict each other? [Att. B, ¶ 19]

No. Attachment B, paragraph 19.c establishes the requirement for prior approval of capital expenditures. The purpose of Attachment B, paragraph 19.d is to establish the prior approval dollar threshold for capital expenditures charged direct to grants. Attachment B, paragraph 19.a(2) permits governmental units to write-off assets up to $5,000, pursuant to an established government-wide capitalization policy. Based on these definitions, noncapital expenditures become classified as supplies or some other object of expenditure other than "equipment." However, even if a governmental unit has a capitalization policy of less than $5,000, they may still claim direct capital expenditures as "equipment" without prior approval, up to $5,000.

This distinction is necessary to avoid over-reimbursement of indirect costs where a modified total direct cost (MTDC) base is used to distribute indirect costs. When using an MTDC base, the cognizant agency excludes capital expenditures based on the organization's capitalization policy (not to exceed $5,000). If amounts exceeding the organization's capitalization policy, up to $5,000, were to be treated as supplies, then indirect costs would be applied to those supplies, resulting in over-reimbursement.

3-36 When a governmental unit does not account for depreciation in its financial statements, it theoretically does not have a capitalization policy. On what basis should the governmental unit charge use allowance if it does not have a capitalization policy? [Att. B, ¶ 19]

Governments that do not report depreciation in their financial statements typically disclose a "fixed asset group." In determining which assets will be reported in this group, the government has established a dollar threshold, i.e., assets costing over a certain amount are included. For purposes of defining equipment and for purposes of charges to Federal programs, the threshold established for the "fixed asset group" would constitute the government's capitalization policy.

3-37 Circular A-87 permits governmental units to define equipment up to $5,000. Assuming a government adopts the $5,000 limit and purchases a computer system for $1M, if no single component costs more than $5,000, can the $1M be expensed? [Att. B, ¶ 19.a]

No. The components of the computer system make it useable for the purpose for which it was acquired and therefore establishes the "system" as the capital expenditure. (Att. B, ¶ 19a(1)) In accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and the definition of "acquisition cost" in section __.3 of the Common Rule accompanying OMB Circular A-102, the entire system of $1M is to be capitalized. Subsequent additions to the system, such as additional personal computers for new staff, may be treated as maintenance costs expensed to the current period.

3-38 A governmental unit does not depreciate capital expenditures but rather expenses everything. For CAFR reporting purposes, however, the unit maintains a fixed asset group category in which all assets over $250 are tracked as capitalized assets. Which capitalization policy should it use for its central service allocation plan, i.e. $250 or $5,000? [Att. B, ¶ 19.d]

In accordance with Attachment B, paragraph 19.d, the unit is required to use the lesser of $5,000 or the same capitalization policy used in the development of its financial statements. The capturing of assets over $250 in the fixed asset group category effectively establishes the unit's capitalization policy at that level. As such, capital expenditures over $250 may not be expensed in the cost allocation plan. A use allowance may be claimed on those items.

3-39 Settlements and damages resulting from noncompliance with Federal, state, or local laws are unallowable. Would settlements with employees arising out of bargaining-unit negotiations and agreements also be unallowable? [Att. B, ¶ 20]

Provided that no laws have been violated by the governmental unit, such settlements

and awards are allowable as a general management cost.

3-40 The Circular stipulates that when there is substantial relocation of Federal projects from a facility in which the Federal Government participated in the financing, space charges may be renegotiated. What criteria are to be used in determining "substantial relocation," and, if there is an adjustment, how should it be handled? [Att. B, ¶ 22]

The criteria for determining whether a substantial relocation has occurred is if over 50% of Federally sponsored programs are transferred in the first 20 years of occupancy or where a pattern of "churning" Federally financed debt can be established. Cognizant agencies are to exercise caution in exercising the 50% rule, taking into consideration program changes, cutbacks, and the governmental unit's resource needs. Where churning has occurred, i.e. relocations are occurring to maintain Federal programs in debt-financed space, the cognizant agency may limit future space reimbursement to historical costs, i.e. the cost of the vacated space.

3-41 Under Attachment B, paragraph 23.a, five examples are presented as unallowable general government expenses. The previous version of A-87 identified others, e.g., accounting and budgeting. Are these latter items now allowable? [Att. B, ¶ 23]

No, these items are still unallowable when attributable to general government functions. For example, budgeting functions in support of the state legislature, taxing functions of the state treasurer, and criminal prosecutions by the attorney general, are all routine costs of general government and are not allocable to Federal programs.

3-42 Attachment B, paragraph 25.e states that severance pay is allowable in the year paid with two conditions, one of which is that the cost is allocated as a general administrative expense to all activities of the government unit. Attachment B, paragraph 11.g also addresses the treatment of severance pay, but makes a distinction between normal turnover and mass severance. Is there a difference between these policies? [Att. B, ¶ 25.e]

Attachment B, paragraph 25.e only covers normal severance. If severance payments are determined to be abnormal or mass severance, then the provisions at Attachment B, paragraph 11.g(3) must be applied.

3-43 Is interest allowed on the acquisition of land that is debt-financed? [Att. B, ¶ 26]

Yes. However, principal payments for the acquisition of land remain unallowable. The pro rata share of debt payments attributable to land must be deducted from outflows when a cash flow adjustment is required under the provisions of Circular A-87 Attachment B, Paragraph 26. (See Illustration 3-1.)

3-44 How is interest expense on assets that have a shorter life than the debt instrument treated? [Att. B, ¶ 26]

Interest on fully depreciated, scrapped, or nonexistent assets is unallowable. The interest is neither allocable to the asset nor is there an allocable benefit to Federal

programs. In addition, single debt-financing for assets having variable lives must be allocated to those assets. Governments are encouraged to structure their debt in such a way so as not to incur additional financing costs for periods beyond the useful lives of the financed assets.

> **EXAMPLE:** A 25-year bond is issued for $10M. $7.5M is to be used to construct a facility with a 40-year life and $2.5M is to be used to acquire equipment with a life of 15 years. Allocable interest would be calculated as follows:
>
> Building: $7.5M/$10M = 75%
> Equipment: $2.5M/$10M = 25%
>
> As a result, 75% of annual interest would be allocable to the building, which would be fully allowable in years 1-25. With respect to the equipment, 25% of total annual interest would be allocable and allowable in years 1-15. In years 16-25, when the equipment has been fully depreciated or otherwise out-lived its useful life, 25% of annual interest would be unallowable.

3-45 Some governments issue blanket bond issuances to meet their capital needs. Is interest allowable where, in accordance with their capitalization policy, such expenditures are expensed or otherwise not recognized in the comprehensive annual financial report (CAFR) as "fixed assets"? [Att. B, ¶ 26.a]

No. Expenditures for items expensed or otherwise written-off constitute operating expenditures, unless they are identified as fixed assets. Attachment B, paragraph 26.a only permits interest for capital expenditures. Interest for operating or working capital is unallowable.

3-46 Attachment B, paragraph 26.b allows interest on equipment paid or incurred on or after the applicable effective date of the revised Circular (May 4, 1995). However, in the preamble to the May 17, 1995 *Federal Register* notice of the Circular's issuance, page 26486, in response to a comment, OMB seems to exclude computer equipment. Is interest paid or incurred after the applicable effective date allowable? [Att. B, ¶ 26.b]

In the preamble, OMB was responding to comments that sought allowability of interest on both equipment and facilities, regardless of when the assets were acquired. In justifying allowing interest on pre-effective date equipment, but not facilities, OMB reasoned that, except for computer equipment, such acquisitions typically were nominal in cost and had short lives. The intent was not to exclude computer equipment, but merely to state a fact. As such, interest on all equipment, including ADP, incurred or paid after September 1, 1995 is allowable regardless of when the debt was incurred. For those governmental units or components subject to Circular A-87 Attachments C, D and E, interest on equipment is allowable in the government's fiscal year starting after September 1, 1995. For facilities, interest is only allowable for those acquired or constructed after October 1, 1980.

3-47 Attachment B, paragraph 26.b(1) makes interest unallowable when a government

borrows from itself or nonbona fide third parties. If the government has established quasi-public agencies or "authorities" to issue bonds for the acquisition of equipment and facilities, are these viewed as less than third-party transactions? [Att. B, ¶ 26.b(1)]

No. Bond issuing authorities are viewed as enterprises of the governmental unit. The authority typically is not operating at a profit and, as a result, reduces bond issuance costs. While the government is issuing the bonds, it is not borrowing from itself but rather from the general public, to which interest is paid. The intent of this A-87 provision is to prohibit reimbursement of costs such as a state agency borrowing funds from general revenues and the state treasurer charging the agency interest on the borrowings.

3-48 The Circular requires governmental units to negotiate with the cognizant agency the amount of interest expense to be allowed when depreciation and interest expense (inflows) exceeds principal and interest payments (outflows). Recovering positive cash flows in the early years will result in negative cash flows in the latter years. Doesn't this penalize the governmental unit in later years? [Att. B, ¶ 26.b(4)]

It is not OMB's intent to require the recovery of positive cash flows. During periods of positive cash flow, earnings, either actual or imputed, can be made on those funds. It is the intent of OMB that during such periods, those earnings on the positive cash flow should be used to offset interest expense. The net amount would be the allowable interest expense allocable to Federal awards. Components would retain the positive cash flow, but not the earnings, to meet shortages during periods of negative cash flow. The interest assessed should be based on actual interest earned or the state treasurer's average return on investment. A suggested format for computing and tracking cash flow is provided in Illustration 3-1.

Illustration 3-1
A-87 Excess Cash-Flow Calculation - Sample Format for Annual Report

Applicable for debt arrangements over $1 million,
unless initial equity contribution equals 25 percent or more

		Month 1	2	3	4 ***	12	Annual Total
Year_____	of___Years						
Line 1	Prior Period's cumulative cash flow balance (Prior Month's or Year's Line 9)						
	Add this period's inflows:						
Line 2	Depreciation expense (Note 1)						
Line 3	Interest expense (Note 2)						
Line 4	Amortization of debt issuance costs (Note 2)						
	Subtract this period's outflows:						
Line 5	Principal payments (Note 3)						
Line 6	Interest payments (Note 3)						
Line 7	Subtotal of cumulative cash flows (Line 1+2+3+4 - 5 - 6)						
Line 8	In initial period only, subtract initial equity contribution (Note 4) (Will be zero after initial period)						
Line 9	Total of cumulative cash flows (In initial period, Line 7 - Line 8) (In subsequent periods, equals Line 7)						
Line 10	If Line 9 is positive, state month's closing interest rate based on actual or state treasurer's ROI If Line 9 is negative, put “0” (zero)						
Line 11	Imputed interest income on cumulative positive cash flow Monthly columns = (Line 10 x Line 9)/12						
Line 12	Allowable interest for period (Line 6 - Line 11)						

Note 1: May include amortization of capitalized construction interest in accordance with GAAP. Depreciation expenses should be reported on a monthly basis (Annual expense/12) if the agency has an IDC rate.

Note 2: Interest expense and amortization of debt issuance costs that are not included in loan amount should be reported on a monthly basis (Annual expense/12) if the agency has an IDC rate.

Note 3: If land is included in the financing arrangement, Line 5 would be calculated as: principal payment - (Debt proceeds used to purchase land/total debt proceeds x principal payment). Principal and interest payments should be reported in the month that payments were made.

Note 4: This line may only include amounts of initial equity contribution made prior to occupancy of the facility. The amount is to be entered only in the initial period covered by the cash flow submission, and should be left blank in future periods.

3-49 The Circular requires an adjustment to interest expense for earnings on positive cash flows. Since the Circular does not specify, how should this be accomplished? Does it apply to all debt? [Att. B, ¶ 26.b(4)]

While OMB did not provide guidance in Circular A-87, they have been more precise in other circulars on this subject. Circular A-122 and A-21 require that "[t]he rate of interest to be used to compute earnings on excess cash flows shall be the three month Treasury Bill closing rate as of the last business day of that month." Many organizations covered by Circulars A-21 and A-122 typically do not have adequate data to compute return on investments. Consistent with the other Circulars, under A-87, an offset is only required for debt over $1,000,000.

As noted in Illustration 3-1, the cash flow schedule provides for: (1) a cumulative monthly reporting of cash flows; (2) offset of equity contributions on a "first-in-first-out" (FIFO) basis; (3) waiver of the offset requirement if equity contribution is 25% or more; (4) interest on land but not for principal payments on land; and (5) inflows to be averaged over a twelve-month period, regardless of when actual payments (outflows) are made. While components are not required to use the schedule in Illustration 3-1, cash flow computations and adjustments should be made in accordance with these policies.

3-50 What type of assets are subject to interest offset for earnings on positive cash flows? [Att. B, ¶ 26.b(4)]

OMB advised HHS that it intended that all capital expenditures be subject to the offset provision, where applicable. This is consistent with the other OMB cost circulars.

3-51 What are the submittal requirements for the cash flow analysis? [Att. B, ¶ 26.b(4)]

When required by the cognizant agency, the cash flow analysis is to be submitted with each submission of a component's indirect or cost allocation proposal. The analysis is to be prepared for each twelve-month period contained in the proposal. For those governments and components not required to submit a proposal to a cognizant agency, the analysis is to be prepared annually with a corresponding adjustment to allowable interest for the period.

3-52 Is it acceptable to treat proposal costs for Federal awards as indirect costs? [Att. B, ¶ 34]

Attachment B, paragraph 34 encourages such treatment. In accordance with Attachment A, paragraph C.1.e, the practice must be consistently applied throughout the governmental unit. The Circular allows the direct charging of these costs with the prior approval of the awarding agency. This practice is discouraged as it may create inconsistent treatment issues.

3-53 What are the allowable costs for capital leases? [Att. B, ¶ 38.d]

The Circular provides that capital leases are allowable to the extent that costs would have been allowed had the asset been purchased outright. As such, interest, depreciation or use allowances, maintenance fees/expenses, related administrative costs, taxes, and insurance are allowable. Interest costs are allowable to the extent they meet the requirements of Attachment B, paragraph 26. Unallowable costs include amounts paid for profit, management fees, and taxes that would not have been incurred had the government/component purchased the asset outright.

3-54 Are "payments in lieu of taxes" (PILOT) allowable? [Att. B, ¶ 39]

Generally, PILOT payments are allowable if they are consistently assessed against all activities, regardless of the source of funding.

3-55 If a governmental unit has its own plane(s), what documentation is needed to satisfy the Circular A-87 requirements for noncommercial travel? Can the cognizant agency approve rates for the aircraft that would meet these requirements? [Att. B, ¶ 41.d]

Attachment B, paragraph 41.d. limits reimbursement for use of entity-owned or private aircraft to the commercial air fare determined in accordance with Attachment B, paragraph 41.c, which discusses limitations on allowable commercial air fares. In essence, reimbursement for use of private aircraft is based on cost but cannot exceed what would have been reimbursed had commercial air transportation been used. There could be circumstances where the use of commercial air would result in greater costs than the use of private aircraft. In those situations, allowable costs would be based on actual costs.

PART 4

Attachment C — Requirements for Cost Allocation Plans

4.1 Highlights of New Section, Attachment C

A new attachment C has been added addressing Central Service Cost Allocation Plans (commonly referred to as the state-wide cost allocation plan or SWCAP and for local governments, LOCAP). The new Attachment generally has incorporated longstanding practices and procedures contained in internal HHS implementing material as well as historical convention.

4.2 What is a Central Service Cost Allocation Plan?

Most governmental units provide certain services, such as motor pools, computer centers, purchasing, accounting, etc., to operating agencies on a centralized basis. Because Federally supported awards are performed within the individual operating agencies, there needs to be a process through which these central service costs can be identified and assigned to benefitted activities on a reasonable and consistent basis. The central service cost allocation plan (CSCAP) provides that process.

4.3 Content of CSCAPs

CSCAPs must include all central service costs that will be claimed, whether as a billed or an allocated cost, under Federal awards. Costs of central services omitted from the plan **will not** be reimbursed. Documentation requirements are discussed in section 4.5 below.

Plans must include a projection of the next year's allocated central services cost. This projection should be based on either actual costs for the most recently completed year or the budget projection for the coming year. Plans must also include a reconciliation of actual allocated central services costs to the estimated costs used for either the most recently completed year or the year preceding the most recently completed year.

4.4 Requirements for Submission of Cost Allocation Plans

4.4.1 Role of Cognizant Agencies

Circular A-87 provides that, for certain larger governmental units and their subdivisions, Federal cognizant agencies will be appointed to review and approve cost allocation plans on behalf of other Federal agencies. The Circular further explains these assignments and the approval process that these agencies will use.

4.4.2 State Governments and "Major" Local Governments

All state governments must submit statewide cost allocation plans to the Department of Health and Human Services. All local governments that OMB designates as "major" are also required to submit their plans to a designated cognizant agency unless the

cognizant agency determines otherwise. Note: Indian tribal governments should use guidelines applicable to local governments and local education agencies (LEAs) should follow the procedures established by the U.S. Department of Education.

OMB periodically publishes a listing of major local governments in the *Federal Register*. The most recently published listing is contained in Appendix 2 of this guide. In general, cognizant agencies for local governments are assigned according to the predominance of Federal funding, although other factors such as availability of resources and past history may also be considered.

4.4.3 Local Governments Not Considered "Major"

Local governments that are not designated as "major" are not required to submit their cost allocation plans for Federal review and approval unless specifically instructed to do so by a Federal agency. Local governments that only receive funds as a subrecipient of another government should follow instructions from their pass-through grantors concerning submission and review. However, they are expected to prepare and retain their plans for audit by independent auditors and Federal auditors. Pass-through grantors (primary recipients) are expected to review and monitor subrecipient plans to provide reasonable assurance that provisions of Circular A-87 are being followed.

4.5 What Are the Documentation Requirements for a CSCAP?

All costs and other data used to distribute the costs included in the plan should be supported by formal accounting and other records that will support the appropriateness of the costs assigned to Federal awards.

4.5.1 Allocated Central Services

The allocated costs of the CSCAP are commonly referred to as "Section I" costs and are categorized as such in both the plan submission and the negotiated agreement. For each allocated central service, the proposed cost allocation plan must:

- briefly describe the service;
- identify the unit rendering the service and the operating agencies receiving the service;
- list the items of expense included in the cost of the service;
- identify the method used to distribute the cost of the service to benefitted agencies; and
- provide a summary schedule showing the allocation of each service to benefitted agencies.

In addition, all proposed cost allocation plans must be accompanied by:

- an organization chart which is sufficiently detailed to show operations, including the central service activities of the governmental unit, regardless of whether they are shown as benefitting from central service functions;

- a copy of the comprehensive annual financial report (CAFR) (or executive budget, if budgeted costs are being proposed) to support the allowable costs of each central service activity included in the plan; and

- a certification that the plan:

  — was prepared in accordance with A-87;

  — contains only allowable costs; and

  — was prepared in a manner that treated similar costs consistently among the various Federal awards and between Federal and nonfederal awards/activities.

4.5.2 Internal Service Funds

The internal service funds (ISFs) and other billed services in the CSCAP are commonly referred to as "Section II" costs in both the plan submission and the negotiated agreement. For each internal service fund or similar activity with an operating budget of $5 million or more, the proposed cost allocation plan must include:

- a brief description of each service;

- a balance sheet for each fund based on individual accounts contained in the governmental unit's accounting system;

- a revenue/expenses statement with revenues broken out by source;

- a list of nonoperating transfers (as defined by generally accepted accounting principles) into and out of the fund;

- a description of the methodology used to charge the costs of each service to users, including how billing rates are determined;

- a schedule of current rates; and

- a schedule comparing total revenues (including imputed revenues) generated by the service to the allowable costs of the service under Circular A-87, with an explanation of how variances will be handled.

4.5.3 Self-Insurance Funds

For each self-insurance fund, the proposed cost allocation plan must include:

- the fund balance sheet;

- a statement of revenue and expenses, including a summary of billings and claims paid by the agency;

- a listing of all nonoperating transfers into and out of the fund;

- the type(s) of risk(s) covered by the fund;
- an explanation of how the level of fund contributions are determined;
- a description of the procedures used to charge or allocate fund contributions to benefitted activities;
- an identification and explanation of reserve levels in excess of claims:
  - submitted and adjudicated, but not paid;
  - submitted but not adjudicated; or
  - incurred but not submitted; and
- an insurance report.

4.5.4 Fringe Benefits Costs

For fringe benefit costs, the proposed cost allocation plan must:

- list fringe benefits provided to covered employees and the overall annual cost of each type of benefit;
- identify current fringe benefit policies; and
- describe procedures used to charge or allocate the costs of the benefits to benefitted activities.

4.5.5 Pension and Postretirement Health Insurance Plans

For pension and postretirement health insurance plans, the proposed cost allocation plan must provide:

- the governmental unit's funding policies, if different from actuarially determined rates;
- the pension plan's costs accrued for the year;
- the amount funded and date(s) of funding;
- a copy of the current actuarial report, including the actuarial assumptions;
- the plan trustee's report; and
- a schedule from the activity showing the value of the interest cost associated with late funding.

4.5.6 Certification

CSCAPs must be accompanied by a certification, shown in Attachment C, ¶ D.4. (See also 2.9, Government Certification)

4.6 How Should Allocated Costs Be Presented in a CSCAP?

4.6.1 Sample Formats for Central Service Cost Allocation Plans

The following pages illustrate a central service cost allocation plan. They consist of:

Illustration 4-1 - Statement of Function and Benefit, Personnel Department. The personnel department has been selected as an example of a central service. This schedule is a narrative description of the activities conducted by the personnel department, their necessity (benefits) to the successful performance of Federally supported programs, a description of the base(s) selected to distribute the costs of those activities to the organizations to which services are rendered, and the rationale for the base(s) selected.

Illustration 4-2 - Costs to be Allocated, Personnel Department. This illustration shows the composition of the costs of the personnel department as contained in official financial or budget statements and a reconciliation of those costs with the amount allocated in Illustration 4-1.

Illustration 4-3 - Allocation of Costs, Personnel Department. This illustration shows those state organizations to which the personnel department provides services and the allocation of its costs to those organizations. This illustration is supported by Illustrations 4-1 and 4-2.

Illustration 4-4 - Summary of Allocated Central Service Costs. This illustration shows each central service, and the attendant costs, which benefit Federal grants and contracts and for which a state or local government wishes to make a claim. This summary must be supported by detailed schedules comparable to Illustrations 4-1 — 4-3 for each included central service. (For purposes of preparing Attachment A of the Negotiation Agreement, only those state agencies receiving Federal funds are to be individually listed. The remaining agencies are to be grouped under "other.")

Illustration 4-5 - Summary of Central Services Billed. It is common practice for central service departments to bill those organizations to which they render services for the cost of those services. This summary illustrates the services billed to organizations conducting Federal grants and contracts, the costs included in the billing, the methodology for computing the billing rate, etc.

Amounts allocated to the operating departments from the central service cost allocation plan in Illustrations 4-4 and 4-5 are carried forward to Illustrations 6-1 — 6-4, which provide various sample formats for an indirect cost rate proposal.

Only a few of the many possible central services have been shown in Illustration 4-4 and only one central service department is shown in the accompanying Illustrations 4-1 through 4-3. A central service cost allocation plan may include any other services and their attendant costs which are allowable under OMB Circular A-87 and for which documentation can be provided. Each type of cost claimed should be supported by appropriate schedules and other documentation sufficient to provide a reasonable basis for evaluation and acceptance.

Illustration 4-1

Sample Central Service Cost Allocation Plan
Statement of Function & Benefit, Personnel Department
For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, XXXX

The personnel department is responsible for overall administration of the Civil Service program. This includes recruiting, interviewing, testing, and referring potential candidates for the more than 2,000 municipal positions.

The personnel department administers the classifications and salary programs and is responsible for recommending personnel policies and procedures to the Civil Service Commission for approval.

The department is involved in the design of the various employee benefit programs. After installation, the department reviews and maintains the records of these programs.

Active and inactive personnel records are maintained on all municipal employees.

The personnel department is responsible for maintaining the safety program (including workmen's compensation and injury level) and the city training programs.

All functions and services performed by the personnel department benefit all departments of the city. Federal programs are benefitted because city employees are hired to work in these programs. Therefore, the costs of the personnel department have been distributed to all departments of the city.

The basis for allocation is the number of employees per department. The base data is readily available and verifiable. All employees receive essentially the same type and level of services. Therefore, this base reflects that condition by distributing the total cost of providing these services to each department in proportion to its relative number of employees.

This is a sample. In practice, this schedule should be sufficiently detailed to provide narrative explanations of the functions and benefits associated with the costs being allocated.

Illustration 4-2

Sample Central Service Cost Allocation Plan
Costs to be Allocated, Personnel Department
For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, XXXX

Salaries and Wages			$1,088,380	
Fringe Benefits (19.8%)			215,499	
Supplies			113,600	
Travel			26,200	
Equipment/Capital Outlay			41,560	
Maintenance and Janitorial Services			26,040	
Miscellaneous			35,880	
Total Cost			$1,547,159	
Adjustments				
Less:	Unallowable Costs	<40,979>		
	Capital Outlay	<41,560>		
	Costs Chargeable to Federal Grant ***(a)***	<24,000>		
Add:	Use Allowance	15,236		
Subtotal Adjustments		<91,303>		
Total Allowable, Allocable Costs			$1,455,856	***(b)***

Notes:

(a) Represents charges to a Federal grant awarded to assist the state or local government in improving its efforts to hire and train disabled workers. If a supporting agency received an award from the Federal Government, all costs incurred in connection with the award (including any costs that are required for matching or cost sharing) must be eliminated prior to distributing the supporting agency's costs to the user departments or agencies.

(b) The costs allocated must be reconciled to appropriate financial documents, either financial statements, budgets, or a combination of both. In this example, the government's base data was cost incurred for its most recent fiscal year.

This is a sample. In practice, this schedule should be sufficiently detailed to show the costs of major activities, branches, etc. of the personnel departments in a manner permitting a reasonable assessment of the costs claimed against Federal programs.

Illustration 4-3

Sample Central Service Cost Allocation Plan
Allocation of Costs, Personnel Department
For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, XXXX

Department/Unit	Number of Employees ***(b)***	Percent	Allocation ***(c)***
Health	188	6.61	96,232
Environmental Services	170	5.98	87,060
Social Services	61	2.14	31,155
Highway and Public Transportation	289	10.16	147,915
Police	570	20.04	291,754
Corrections	475	16.70	243,128
Other Departments ***(a)***	1,091	38.37	558,612
Total	2,844	100.00	$1,455,856

Notes:

(a) Those departments that do not perform Federal programs may be grouped together. However, a one-time schedule is required, listing all agencies or functions listed under "other."

(b) Allocation base must include all full- and part-time employees of all operating departments that are serviced by the personnel department.

(c) Allocated amounts are carried forward to the summary schedule in Illustration 4-4. The total of $1,455,856 comes from Illustration 4-2.

This is a sample. In practice, the type and level of service provided by the personnel department to the various organizations served may require a separate allocation for each service or to different organizations served.

Illustration 4-4

Sample Central Service Cost Allocation Plan
Summary of Allocated Central Service Costs
For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, XXXX

Department/Operating Unit	Central Service Organizations *(c)* Personnel *(a)*	Accounting/ Cmptr Svcs.	Purchasing	Audit	Total Allocated Costs *(b)*
Health	96,232	201,450	34,123	16,753	348,558
Environmental Services	87,060	216,220	22,211	12,210	337,701
Social Services	31,155	79,841	8,960	6,452	126,408
Highway and Public Transportation	147,915	428,550	67,512	62,271	706,248
Police	291,754	519,605	94,751	114,211	1,020,321
Corrections	243,128	497,431	99,970	145,260	985,789
Other Departments	558,612	1,876,082	214,311	186,542	2,835,547
TOTALS	$1,455,856	$3,819,179	$541,838	$543,699	$6,360,572

Notes:

(a) Allocated amounts shown are from Illustration 4-3. In an actual plan, the remaining service departments would also need to be supported by separate schedules showing the computation of the allocated amounts.

(b) These amounts are includable in the indirect cost proposals of the individual operating departments/units. See Illustrations 6-1 — 6-4.

(c) Suggested allocation bases can be found in Section 4.6.2.

This is a sample. In practice, a state or local government may wish to claim more or fewer activities as charges to Federally supported programs. If so, this Illustration and its supporting schedules (Illustrations 4-1 — 4-3) would need to be modified accordingly.

Illustration 4-5

Sample Central Service Cost Allocation Plan
Summary of Central Services Billed to User Organizations

Motor Pool	The state (or local government) operates a central motor pool which makes cars, trucks, and buses available to the user departments. User departments are billed for each mile driven: cars - 40 cents per mile; trucks - 55 cents per mile; and buses - 75 cents per mile. The basis for the charge is the most recent study of cost per mile driven, performed by the internal audit staff. Any over- or under recovery is applied to the next year's expected expenditures and is included in that year's billing rate. The costs included are salaries and wages and fringe benefits of motor pool personnel; their travel; supplies and parts; and use charges for equipment, buildings, and vehicles determined in accordance with OMB Circular A-87.
Data Processing	The state (or local government) operates a central data service center (DSC) consisting of a mainframe computer and an area network. The center provides both regular, continuing, and special job computer support to most operating and staff departments. Billings for services are made to user organizations based on a standard price schedule. The price schedule is related to, and designed to recover, the costs of various types of jobs on each system. It is revised quarterly and audited annually by the internal audit department. Profits or losses are carried forward and used to adjust price schedules of ensuing quarterly billing rates. Costs consist of salaries and wages and fringe benefits of center personnel, supplies, maintenance and utilities, and straight-line depreciation of equipment based on a fifteen-year life.
	This is a sample. In actual practice, a complete listing of all billed components of the DSC would be required: e.g., CPU, programming, microfiche, etc.
Long Distance Telephone	All long distance telephone calls are placed through a central switchboard and are billed to the organizations making the call.

Notes:

If a direct billing mechanism is used by the government, then all users must be billed, either through actual, memo, or imputed billings. Billing of selected departments and allocation of residual amounts through the cost allocation plan to remaining departments results in inequitable costing and is not acceptable. However, if all users are billed, residual amounts may be allocated through the allocation plan, provided they are not material and the allocation base is equitable.

A detailed breakdown of costs is not normally required as a part of this summary. However, the submitting state or local government must have and make available to the Federal cognizant agency such cost and revenue breakdowns, utilization records, and other information necessary to permit a reasonable assessment of the costs incurred and changes made.

This is a sample. In practice, the number and types of services billed may be greater than shown here and may require more extensive description and explanation.

4.6.2 Suggested Bases for Cost Distribution

Listed below are suggested bases for distributing joint costs of central-type services to local government departments or agencies and to projects and programs utilizing these services. The bases are suggestions only, and should not be used if they are not suitable for the particular services involved. Any method of distribution can be used which will produce an equitable distribution of cost. In selecting one method over another, consideration should be given to the additional effort required to achieve a greater degree of accuracy.

Type of Service	*Suggested Bases for Allocation*
Accounting	Number of transactions processed
Auditing	Direct audit hours
Budgeting	Direct hours of identifiable services of employees of central budget
Buildings lease management	Number of leases
Data processing	System usage
Disbursing service	Number of checks or warrants issued
Employees retirement system administration	Number of employees contributing
Insurance management service	Dollar value of insurance premiums
Legal services	Direct hours
Mail and messenger service	Number of documents handled or employees served
Motor pool costs, including automotive management	Miles driven and/or days used
Office machines and equipment maintenance repairs	Direct hours
Office space use and related costs (heat, light, janitorial services, etc.)	Square feet of space occupied
Organization and management services	Direct hours; Square feet
Payroll services	Number of employees
Personnel administration	Number of employees
Printing and reproduction	Direct hours, job basis, pages printed, etc.
Procurement service	Number of transactions processed
Local telephone	Number of telephone instruments
Health services	Number of employees
Fidelity bonding program	Employees subject to bond or penalty amounts

4.7 How Should Billed Costs Be Presented in a CSCAP?

"Billed costs" include internal service funds (ISFs), self-insurance funds (SIFs), and fringe benefits funds (FBFs). Illustrations 4-6 and 4-7 show suggested formats for presenting these costs in the CSCAP proposal. While these formats are not mandated, the information they contain is required, unless the cognizant agency waives the requirement.

Specifically, for all funds, including those under $5 million, a schedule of retained earnings (see e.g., Illustration 4-7) must be submitted which shows:

- the beginning balance for the fiscal year;
- actual and imputed revenues;
- A-87 allowable costs, adjusted for:
  - capital expenditures,
  - depreciation or use allowance,
  - nonrecognized transfers,
  - bad debts,
  - CSCAP allocations,
  - actual or imputed earnings on monthly cash balances and replacement reserves;
- working capital reserve; and
- contributed capital.

Contributed capital consists of unallowable A-87 costs, such as reserves for future asset replacement and capital expenditures, and are funded by nonfederal funds.

For those funds which have operating budgets over $5 million, a schedule of billed services must be submitted. Illustration 4-6 is a suggested format for presenting billings. Again, this format is only for illustration purposes, and is not required. However, the schedule must provide, for each fund:

- billings by user;
- revenues, both actual and imputed; and
- adjustments for the pro rata share of the rate representing bad debts, reserves for replacement costs, capital expenditures, etc.

STATE OF _____

_____ FUND

SUMMARY OF ACTUAL AND IMPUTED REVENUES

FOR THE YEAR ENDING JUNE 30, 19__

Illustration 4-6

Summary of Actual and Imputed Revenues by Fund

ATTACHMENT

		TOTAL BILLING									
		COLLECTED BILLINGS#			IMPUTED REVENUES						
USER AGENCY/DEPARTMENT	RATIO OF FEDERAL ACTIVITY*	BILLED AT FULL RATE(S)	BILLED AT LESS THAN FULL RATE(S)	UNCOLLECTED BILLINGS**	DIFF. BETWEEN (FULL-BILLED RATES)	MEMO BILLING	UNBILLED	SUBTOTAL (A-87 REVENUES)	SURCHARGE*** (COLLECTED)#	SURCHARGE*** (IMPUTED)	TOTAL REVENUES
	0.0%	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
	0.0%										
TOTALS		$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	**** $0	$0	$0	***** $0

* FOR EXAMPLE, BASED ON EXPENDITURES EXCLUDING FLOW-THROUGH FUNDS.

** ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE/BAD DEBT EXPENSE.

*** FOR EXAMPLE, INCREMENT FOR UNALLOWABLE COSTS SUCH AS INTEREST, RESERVES FOR REPLACEMENT, PROJECTED COST INCREASES, ETC. BILLED TO STATE FUNDS

**** SHOW THIS FIGURE AS "ACTUAL & IMPUTED REVENUES" ON RECONCILIATION OF FUND TO FEDERAL GUIDELINES (ATTACHMENT B).

***** MUST RECONCILE TO TOTAL ACTUAL COSTS PER STATE FINANCIAL REPORT.

MUST RECONCILE TO BILLED REVENUE PER STATE FINANCIAL REPORT.

Illustration 4-7
Reconciliation of Retained Earnings

STATE OF _____ ATTACHMENT B

_____ FUND

RECONCILIATION OF RETAINED EARNINGS BALANCE TO FEDERAL GUIDELINES
FOR YEAR ENDING JUNE 30, 19 __

PART I	A-87 R.E. BALANCE				(000s)
	A-87 R.E. BALANCE JULY 1, 19__				
	Balance Per Prior Year's Reconciliation of Fund to A-87			$0	
	(Initial Year, Use CAFR RE Balance at Beginning of Year Less Adjustments - e.g., Contrib, Capital)				
	FY 19 __ RETAINED EARNINGS INCREASE (DECREASE) Per CAFR				
	A-87 Revenue (Actual and Imputed)				
	From Attachment A		$0		
	Other-		0		
	Total Revenues			$0	
	Expenditures (Actual Costs):				
	Per State's Financial Report		$0		
	Less A-87 Unallowable Costs (e.g.)-				
	Capital Outlay		(0)		
	Projected Cost Increases/Replacement Reserve		(0)		
	Bad Debt		(0)		
	Other - (e.g., Gain on Disposal of Assets)		(0)		
	Plus A-87 Allowable Costs (e.g.)-				
	Indirect Costs from SWCAP		0		
	(If Not Allocated in Section I Of SWCAP To User Depts/Programs)				
	Depreciation or Use Allowance		0		
	(If Not Included in Actual Costs Above)				
	Other-		0		
	OMB A-87 Allowable Expenditures			$0	
	Adjustments:				
	Imputed Interest Earnings on Monthly Average Cash Balance at State Treasury Avg. Rate of Return		0		
	Other-		0		
	Total Adjustments			$0	
	A-87 R.E. BALANCE June 30, 19__	(A)			$0
	Allowable Reserve	(B)		$0	
	Excess Balance (A)-(B)			$0	
	(If less than zero, the amount on (A) is the beginning A-87 R.E. balance for the next year's reconciliation. If there is an excess balance, than the federal share should be returned to the federal gov't and the amount on (B) will be the beginning A-87 R.E. balance for the next year.)				
PART II	A-87 CONTRIBUTED CAPITAL BALANCE				
	A-87 CONTRIBUTED CAPITAL BALANCE JULY 1, 19__			$0	
	TRANSFERS Per CAFR (Supported By Official Accounting Records)				
	Plus: Transfers in (e.g., Contrib. Capital)		$0		
	Less: Transfers Out (e.g., Payback of Contrib. Capital, Other Users of Fund R.E.)		(0)		
	Net Transfers			$0	
	A-87 CONTRIBUTED CAPITAL BALANCE JUNE 30, 19__	(C)			$0
PART III	A-87 ADJUSTMENTS BALANCE				
	A-87 ADJUSTMENTS BALANCE JULY 1, 19__				
	ADJUSTMENTS:				
	Less: A-87 Unallowable Costs		($0)		
	Plus: A-87 Allowable Costs		0		
	Other-		0		
	Total Adjustments			$0	
	A-87 ADJUSTMENTS BALANCE JUNE 30, 19__	(D)			$0
PART IV	RECONCILIATION OF A-87 R.E., CONTRIBUTED CAPITAL AND ADJUSTMENTS BALANCES TO CAFR BALANCE				
	RECONCILIATION OF A-87 R.E., CONTR. CAPITAL & ADJUST. BALANCES TO CAFR (A) + (C) + (D)				$0
	(Should Tie to the Fund Balance in the CAFR)				

Instructions for Preparing the Reconciliation of Retained Earnings (R.E.) Balance to Federal Guidelines (Illustration 4-7)

General. A reconciliation schedule must be completed for all billed central services, including internal service funds (ISFs), self-insurance funds (SIFs), and fringe benefit funds (FBFs).

For those funds which utilize multiple billing rates (e.g., ADP funds), a reconciliation schedule may be required for **each** billing rate. An overall/average fund balance may not be appropriate, because excess charges may occur in one billed service but undercharges may occur in other billed services. In addition, various users do not utilize each/all billed services to the same extent.

Part I A-87 R.E. Balance

1. **Beginning A-87 R.E. Balance.** If this is the first time the reconciliation schedule is being prepared, the beginning A-87 R.E. balance should be the R.E. balance on the state's CAFR, including allowable adjustments (e.g., transfers in/transfers out, A-87 unallowable/allowable costs, imputed interest). If the fund has been reviewed in prior years, the beginning balance will be the ending balance from the previous year's reconciliation schedule. However, if adjustments for excess reserve balances have been made, then a zero balance may be the appropriate starting balance.

2. **A-87 Revenues.** Revenues shall consist of all revenues generated by the service, including unbilled and uncollected revenues. If some users were not billed for services (or were not billed at a full rate), a schedule showing the full imputed revenues associated with these users shall be provided (see Summary of Actual and Imputed Revenues - Illustration 4-6). Revenues should also include (i) all other revenues the fund earned from its operation, and (ii) interest earned on reserves. If imputed interest/investment earnings are shown at the bottom of the schedule, these amounts should not be included in this section.

3. **A-87 Expenditures.** The initial expenditure balance should reconcile to the CAFR (or other financial records). Adjustments in accordance with A-87 are made, for example, the exclusion of bad debts and the inclusion of allocated central service costs (SWCAP Section I costs).

4. **Imputed Interest**. There are different methods to compute imputed interest earnings. Currently, one acceptable method is the application of the state's Treasury Average Rate of Return to the monthly average cash balance for the year. If actual interest earned is computed incorrectly, then additional interest may be imputed.

5. **Allowable Reserves.**

   A. **Internal Service Funds.** The allowable reserve for ISFs, which are identified in the CAFR, is equal to the ISF's billing cycle up to 60 days allowable operating expenditures. The reserve is determined by applying a percentage to the allowable operating expenditures (excludes depreciation/use allowance, start-up capital, and any reserves to fund

long-term assets). The percentage is the number of days in the billing cycle days divided by 360.

Reserves for other billed central services that are not identified as ISFs in the CAFR are unallowable.

B. **Self-Insurance Funds.** The allowable reserve for self-insurance funds is defined in Circular A-87, Attachment B, paragraph 25. d. It is normally limited to the discounted present value of claims (i) submitted and adjudicated but not paid; (ii) submitted but not adjudicated; and (iii) incurred but not submitted.

C. **Fringe Benefit Funds.**

(i) *Medical, Unemployment, and Workers' Compensation Insurance.* See self-insurance funds above.

(ii) *Pension Plan.* Actuarial determined, but limited to the amount funded in accordance with Circular A-87, Attachment B, Paragraph 11.e.

(iii) *Post-retirement Health Benefits.* Actuarial determined, but limited to the amount funded in accordance with Circular A-87, Attachment B, paragraph 11.f.

(iv) *Accrued Leave.* Accrued leave is the amount required to pay leave earned but not taken. The reserve must be a valid liability as defined by GAAP and is limited to the amount funded. It must be supported by the state's payroll records.

Note: To be considered funded, a reserve must be paid to a trustee (or insurer) who maintains a trust fund or reserve for the sole purpose of paying the specific fringe benefit for which the reserve is established. If there is no funding, costs are recognized when paid.

6. **Excess Balance.** The Federal share of the excess must be returned to the Federal Government. Exceptions are based on negotiator judgment. For example, the state could credit the appropriate Federal and state programs/agencies for the overcharged amount, or the future billing rates could be reduced.

Interest may be assessed, taking into consideration the time period required to affect the payback.

Part II A-87 Contributed Capital Balance

1. **Transfers In/Transfers Out.** Contributed capital represents contributions by the state to the fund to cover expenditures not allowable under A-87, capital expenditures, reserves for the acquisition of future assets, etc. Transfers in/transfers out are identified in the CAFR and are in compliance with GAAP. Examples include contributed capital to the fund by the state or the transfer out of earned capital/cash to a fund that is having cash flow problems.

Part III A-87 Adjustments Balance

1. **A-87 Adjustments.** Adjustments specific to A-87 must be identified and recorded. The figures should be the same as those identified in Part I above.

Part IV Reconciliation of R.E., Contr. Capital & Adjustments Balances to CAFR Balance

1. The ending balances for Parts I, II, and III are totaled. The total figure should reconcile to the CAFR fund balance.

   Note: If this schedule is for a billed central service that is general funded (and not identified as an ISF in the CAFR), there will be no reconciliation.

4.8 Questions and Answers on Attachment C

4-1 Under what, if any, circumstances can an approved cost allocation plan be reopened by either party? [Att. C]

With respect to the governmental unit or component, the only circumstance whereby a negotiated plan can be re-opened is noted in Question 4-2 below. The basis for the cognizant agency to reopen the approved plan is stated in Attachment C, paragraph F.2, e.g., if there is a violation of a statute or if submitted information was materially incomplete or inaccurate. Inclusion of unallowable or unallocable costs under Circular A-87 will not be grounds for reopening. In such cases, a roll-forward adjustment or refund will be made at the cognizant agency's option.

4-2 If a central service activity, either allocated (Section I) or billed (Section II), is omitted when the state/local-wide cost allocation plan (SWCAP/LOCAP) is approved, can the carry forward procedure be used to recover the cost of the omitted activity in a future plan? [Att. C, § C]

Attachment C, Section C specifically states that costs of central services omitted from the plan will not be reimbursed. However, OMB clarifies in the preamble to the May 17, 1995 *Federal Register* notice of the Circular's issuance that if a service **did not exist** (as opposed to being overlooked) when the plan was prepared, the approved plan can be reopened to include the new activity. In such cases, the plan will be amended to include the nonexistent activity. The definition of "nonexistent" does not include central services that existed when the plan was finally approved, nor those that the state should have known would exist in the future, based on budgets approved by the state legislature.

4-3 Does Circular A-87 require primary recipients to prospectively review cost allocation plans and negotiate indirect cost rates with all organizations to which it makes cost reimbursement subawards? OMB does not impose a similar requirement on Federal agencies. [Att. C, ¶ D.3]

Circular A-87 does not specifically prescribe procedures to be used by primary recipients in accepting claims for indirect costs made by organizations to which they make subawards. The Circular states: "Where a local government only

receives funds as a sub-recipient, the primary recipient will be responsible for negotiating indirect cost rates and/or monitoring the sub-recipient's plan. " (Att. C, ¶ D.3.) This would permit a primary recipient to actually engage in prospective review and negotiation. Alternatively, the primary recipient could require subrecipients to develop the necessary documentation concerning indirect charges and retain the documentation for audit and could then review audit reports to determine whether proper cost charging occurred. It would also be acceptable for primary recipients to use a combination of these methods, depending upon the relative size of the subrecipient. As accountability for the Federal funds ultimately rests with the primary recipient, the level of risk and exposure should be the determining factors in what oversight will be required.

4-4 Attachment C, Section E provides the cognizant agency with flexibility in the types of information and documentation it can require when approving central service cost allocation plans (SWCAPs/LOCAPs). Are there limits on this authority? [Att. C, § E]

The data and information that a cognizant agency can require is subject to reasonableness. Factors to be considered when assessing documentation needs are: (1) the overall size of the government unit; (2) the timing of previous reviews and the results of such reviews; (3) the appearance of systemic problems; (4) the reoccurrence of problems/issues; (5) the veracity of information provided in the past; and (6) the level of "good faith" exercised in the past by the government or its consultants, if applicable.

4-5 Attachment C, paragraph E.2 requires that a summary schedule be provided showing the allocation of each service to the specific benefitted agencies. Can the allocations to small or inconsequential agencies be included in a grouping, such as "other"? [Att. C, ¶ E.2]

Such a practice is permissible where, in fact, the agencies/activities are inconsequential and they receive no Federal awards. However, a narrative description must be provided listing all agencies/activities that have been included in the grouping, so that it can be verified that all operations of the government have been included in the base.

4-6 Attachment C, paragraph E.3.b. identifies the requirements for the submission of information to the cognizant agency concerning internal service funds (ISFs). What is the definition of an ISF? [Att. C, ¶ E.3.b(1)]

The definition is provided in generally accepted accounting principles, i.e., a fund used "to account for the financing of goods or services provided by one department or agency to other departments or agencies of a government or to other governments, on a cost-reimbursement basis." *(Codification of Standards of Governmental Accounting*, 1300.104. Governmental Accounting Standards Board.) Internal Service Funds (ISFs) would be separately recognized in the financial statements using the accrual basis of accounting. However, this section of A-87 covers more than ISFs for central service activities of a state or local government. It covers the submission requirements of all central service activities for which the state or local government uses a billing mechanism (formal or memo billing) to assign or allocate costs to other components of the respective government. This requirement applies whether or not the "billed" activity is established in the unit’s financial statements as a true ISF under

generally accepted accounting principles.

4-7 Under a central service cost allocation plan (SWCAP/LOCAP), is the government required to submit documentation for internal service funds (ISFs) with operating budgets under $5 million? [Att. C, ¶ E.3.b(1)]

Attachment C, paragraph E.3.b(1) specifies documentation requirements for internal services funds (ISFs) with operating budgets of $5 million or more. It also states that the requirements may be modified, expanded, or reduced by the cognizant agency on a case-by-case basis. At a minimum, the government or component must submit a schedule for ISFs under $5 million that reconciles the ISF Retained Earnings. Illustration 4-7 provides a sample schedule format for making such presentations. This schedule provides information that is essential for Federal review and approval of the ISFs and which is not included in the comprehensive annual financial report (CAFR) or other financial statements. In addition, the reconciliation determines an A-87 allowable balance on an on-going basis. Additional documentation may be requested on a case-by-case basis, depending, in part, on the dollar impact on Federal awards and when a detailed review of the ISF was last performed by the cognizant Federal agency.

4-8 Attachment C, paragraph E.3.b(1) requires the governmental unit to provide a description of the procedures (methodology) used to charge the costs of each service to the user, including how the billing rates are determined. How much detail is required on how billing rates are determined? [Att. C, ¶ E.3.b(1)]

Like any other aspect of the submission requirements, the governmental unit is required to submit sufficient documentation for the reviewer to make an informed judgement as to the acceptability of the basis used by the unit of government. Such documentation would include: (1) the items of expense making up the billed activity; (2) the specific data used to develop the billing rate(s) and how often they are updated; (3) justification as to why the method used is the most appropriate for the activity; (4) an identification of any users that are not billed, with assurance that their share of services are reflected in the base; (5) how often billings are compared to actual costs and usage; (6) how variances will be adjusted; and (7) any other information the cognizant agency requires to evaluate the reasonableness of the billing system.

4-9 Attachment C, paragraph E.3.b(2) of the May 4, 1995 revision to Circular A-87 requires that the expenses of the billed function be broken out by object cost categories. In the past, submissions were permitted where a break-out of salaries and wages was made, but a roll-up of all other costs was presented as one amount. Can this practice continue, supported with detailed, on-site accounting records, or must the plans be modified to include the detail? [Att. C, ¶ E.3.b(2)]

A listing of the items of expenses is required for each central service activity whether it is a billed or unbilled activity. In addition, as noted in the beginning of Attachment C, Section E, the documentation requirements can be reduced by the cognizant agency. For example, reduced documentation might be appropriate for a central service function which has little or no impact on Federal awards. Therefore, the initial plan should address the A-87 documentation requirement, unless the cognizant agency approves otherwise based on the

Federal effort, significance of "roll-up amount," and other factors.

4-10 Under what circumstances are working capital reserves permitted for internal service funds (ISFs) and how are they to be determined? [Att. C, ¶ G.2]

Attachment C, paragraph G.2 permits working capital reserves to allow ISFs sufficient cash to sustain operations between billing cycles. While the Circular authorizes reserves of up to 60-day cash needs, their allowability is not automatic. The following factors are to be considered when establishing reserves and determining whether they will be allowable.

(1) Reserves are only allowable for enterprise funds and bona fide ISFs recognized in the government's comprehensive annual financial report (CAFR). Reserves are not allowable for activities funded through general revenue appropriations.

(2) For each fund for which a reserve is determined necessary, the number of days of cash needs, up to 60 days, must be fully supported by a cash flow analysis reflecting billing cycles, revenue receipts, and allowable disbursements.

(3) Semi-annual or annual payments are to be amortized in billing rates.

(4) Reserves, for purposes of Federal recognition, may only include allowable cash disbursements. Depreciation, principal payments, and capital expenditures are not allowable. However, interest payments are allowable.

(5) Self-insurance funds, including fringe benefits operating as such, are further subject to the provisions of Circular A-87, Attachment B, paragraph 25.

(6) Pension funds are subject to Circular A-87, Attachment B, paragraph 11.

(7) Allowability of reserves covering longer periods can be granted by the cognizant agency in extraordinary circumstances where such needs are fully documented and justified.

4-11 Earnings on ISF cash balances are to be treated as applicable credits. If a state co-mingles its funds, how is the amount of earnings for a single fund to be determined? [Att. C, G]

When known, actual earnings should be used. In the circumstances described above, earnings may be imputed by applying the government's, e.g., State Treasurer, Average Rate of Return on the average monthly balance for a given fund.

4-12 Attachment C, paragraph G.4 establishes four methods for adjusting internal service funds (billed central services) for profits or losses realized from operations. Alternative (b) allows credits to amounts charged to the individual programs. This method would only cover profits. If losses occur, why can't individual programs be debited? [Att. C, ¶ G.4]

Effectively, alternative (b) is correcting billed costs in the current year, whereas alternative (c) is carrying forward the profit/loss into the next open fiscal period. The failure of the Circular to note how losses are to be treated in alternative (b) is an editing error. For consistency purposes, both alternative (b) and (c) cover profit and loss situations. However, only one method can be used in a given fiscal year.

4-13 Attachment C, paragraph G.4 allows adjustments to allocated, unbilled central service costs ("Section I costs") as an option for adjusting a particular billed service ("Section II costs") if the amount of the adjustment does not exceed $500,000. May this adjustment be made in the normal course of plan preparation or is prior Federal approval required? [Att. C, ¶ G.4]

Prior Federal approval is not required by Circular A-87. It should be noted, however, that the $500,000 threshold applies to the entire billing function and not to components of that function.

> **EXAMPLE:** A data service facility typically has numerous cost centers for which it develops individual billing rates. The allocation method for adjusting over/under billings can only be used if the net, total adjustment for the data facility is less than $500,000.

4-14 For adjustments exceeding $500,000, Attachment C, paragraph G.4 presents three options. What criteria will be used to select the method of recovery? [Att. C, ¶ G.4]

The primary concern would be the assurance that the Federal programs charged in a given year receive an equitable and appropriate adjustment for the over/under billings. Consideration must also be given to the makeup of the user community in future periods as well as the level of support they will require.

PART 5

Attachment D — Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans

5.1 Highlights of New Section, Attachment D

The new Attachment D deals with Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans (PACAPs) and incorporates longstanding HHS policies and procedures. The Attachment makes HHS's 45 CFR Part 95, Subpart E applicable to all Federal programs administered by a public assistance agency, e.g. the U.S. Department of Agriculture's (USDA) Food Stamp program.

5.2 Applicability of Regulations at 45 CFR Part 95, Subpart E

Federal programs that provide public assistance to individual citizens are often administered at the state level by large, complex, multi-functional agencies. The programs administered by these governmental organizations are predominately financed by the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). HHS has long required cost allocation plans for those programs and codified rules for development, submission, approval, and use of these plans in 45 CFR Part 95, Subpart E. However, these rules only applied to HHS programs, although there are other Federal agencies whose assistance awards may be handled by the same state units. Accordingly, revised OMB Circular A-87 provides a means for coordinating and assuring consistency among the various Federal agencies. Attachment D of the revised Circular:

- describes the basic policy concerning public assistance cost allocation plans (PACAPs);
- reflects the salient features of 45 CFR Part 95; and
- extends requirements of 45 CFR Part 95 to all Federal agencies whose programs are administered by a state public assistance agency.

A public assistance cost allocation plan must be prepared, documented, and implemented by all state public assistance agencies. The plan and any amendments to it must be submitted to the appropriate field office of HHS' Division of Cost Allocation. HHS, as well as other affected Federal agencies, will review new plans or plan amendments. The other agencies will provide comments to HHS, which will in turn act as the cognizant agency on behalf of the others. HHS conducts any negotiations with the state agency and is responsible for notifying the agency about action taken on the plan or plan amendment.

Due to the nature of state public assistance agency operations, a public assistance cost allocation plan is required in lieu of an indirect cost rate proposal. A large percentage of agency operations consist of common or indirect costs: program-specific, first-tier cost centers are minimal. Typically, a considerable amount of the work performed involves determining and continuing to verify the eligibility of program beneficiaries. The persons who handle these tasks do so for multiple Federal and state programs. For

example, in determining the eligibility of a person for one program, the case worker may concurrently perform tasks related to another program. Or, the determination established for one program simultaneously determines eligibility for additional programs without any additional incremental effort.

The nature of the work performed at state public assistance agencies can result in complex costing issues that are unique to those agencies. However, the concepts and principles contained in Attachment D of the Circular can have applications for other state and local agencies that operate in a Federally funded environment where an indirect cost rate inadequately identifies cost of operations and greater precision is needed. An example might be a state health department which has county and municipal facilities that offer a variety of services that are partially or completely Federally funded. For example, local public health clinics typically operate clinics where they provide general health assessments, medical care, immunizations, health counseling, nutrition guidance, etc. Their funding, for a single, one-day clinic, could come from a variety of sources, including direct Federal grants from several agencies, e.g., well baby clinics (MCH/HHS), nutrition assistance (WIC/USDA), immunizations (PHS/HHS), primary or secondary cost reimbursement funding for health assessments (EPSDT/HCFA/HHS), and provider fees for services provided (Medicaid/HHS). Obviously, the potential for duplicate claims is great. The cost allocation procedures described in 45 CFR Part 95, Subpart E can assist in clarifying the appropriate burden to be borne by each Federal program.

Another example of the importance of these procedures involves the somewhat atypical organizational structures that have arisen in recent years at the state level. Through the formation of cabinet or "umbrella" type structures, public assistance programs may be operated by the same entity type that handles unemployment programs, job training, juvenile detention, and even the state prison system. Some of the programs may include those, such as certain block grants, that have been exempted from mandatory application of Circular A-87. All of these programs and activities must be included in the PACAP to ensure that they receive an equitable share of administrative and other indirect costs. While the level of detail to be included in the cost allocation plan for these other nonpublic assistance programs is less than that required for the public assistance programs, HHS will, in reviewing and approving the plans, be responsive to the expressed needs of those Federal agencies whose programs are included and who need to identify allowable and unallowable program activities and costs for their programs. Where an operating component within the umbrella agency is funded primarily from a single Federal agency, that Federal agency may be designated by the cognizant agency responsible for reviewing and approving that component of the plan.

Under Attachment D of Circular A-87, when a letter of approval or disapproval of a PACAP is transmitted to a state public assistance agency in accordance with 45 CFR Part 95, Subpart E, the letter ***will*** apply to all Federal agencies and programs. This policy is effective for plans and amendments submitted or prepared for a state's fiscal years beginning on or after September 1, 1995.

5.3 Submission and Documentation Requirements

State public assistance agencies are required to submit a cost allocation plan that describes the procedures used to identify, measure, and allocate all costs to each of the programs they operate. The plan must contain sufficient detailed information for Federal officials to reach an informed judgment about the correctness and fairness of the methods employed by the state. The submission must be sent to the appropriate field office of the Division of Cost Allocation, HHS, and should include the following

features:

- an organizational chart showing the placement of each unit whose costs are charged to the programs operated by the state agency;

- a listing of all Federal and all nonfederal programs performed, administered, or serviced by these organizational units;

- a description of the activities performed by each organizational unit and, when not self-explanatory, an explanation of the benefits provided to Federal programs;

- the procedures used to identify, measure, and allocate all costs to each benefiting program and activity (including those that may be subject to different rates of Federal financial participation;

- the estimated cost impact resulting from proposed changes to a previously approved plan (however, subsequent approval of the cost allocation plan does not constitute approval of the estimated costs for use in calculating claims for Federal financial participation);

- unless the costs are addressed in a state or local-wide cost allocation plan or an umbrella department cost allocation plan, a statement stipulating that wherever costs are claimed for services provided by a governmental agency outside the state agency, they will be supported by a written agreement that includes certain minimum features, including (1) the specific services being purchased, (2) the basis on which billing will be made by the provider agency, and (3) a stipulation that the billing will be based on the actual cost incurred;

- a cost allocation plan for local agencies, if public assistance programs are administered by local governments under a state- supervised system;

- a certification by a duly authorized official of the state that (1) information contained in the plan was prepared in accordance with Circular A-87, (2) the costs have been accorded consistent treatment in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, (3) an adequate accounting and statistical system exists to support claims that will be made under the plan, and (4) the information provided in support of the cost allocation plan is accurate; and

- other information that may be necessary for HHS to establish the validity of the procedures used to identify, measure, and allocate costs to all programs being operated by the state agency.

(45 CFR § 95.507).

5.4 Amendments

A state must promptly amend the public assistance cost allocation plan and submit the amended plan to the appropriate field office of the Division of Cost Allocation, HHS, whenever any of the following events occur:

- the procedures shown in the existing plan have become outdated because

of organizational changes, changes in Federal law or regulation, or significant changes in program levels affecting the validity of approved cost allocation procedures;

- a material defect is discovered in the cost allocation plan by the Division of Cost Allocation field office or by the state;
- the state programmatic plan for public assistance programs is amended in a manner that affects the allocation of costs; or
- other changes occur which make the allocation basis or procedures in the plan invalid.

(45 CFR § 95.509).

Even if none of these types of changes has occurred, an annual statement, indicating that the existing plan is not outdated, must be submitted by the state to the HHS Division of Cost Allocation field office.

If an amendment is submitted and approved, its effective date will generally be the first day of the calendar quarter following the date of the event that made the amendment necessary. However, under certain conditions involving inequity, error, or impracticality, the date could be established either earlier or later.

5.5 Review and Approval of Plans

Within sixty (60) days of receipt of a proposed cost allocation plan or amendment, the Director of the HHS Division of Cost Allocation field office will notify the state that the submission is either specifically approved or disapproved, that modifications are needed in order for approval to be granted, or that additional information is needed to evaluate the submission. Also, if a determination cannot be made within the 60 day period, the field office will notify the state. If a plan submission is disapproved, the state will be notified accordingly, along with the reasons for the disapproval. Under 45 CFR Part 16, a state may appeal a disapproval of a plan submission so long as the appeal is postmarked no later than 30 days after receipt of the determination letter. (45 CFR § 16.7(a)).

5.6 Claims Under PACAPs

Any claims developed under approved cost allocation plans must be for allowable costs under OMB Circular A-87. Where unallowable costs have been claimed, they must be refunded to the Federal program that originally accepted them either by a cash refund, an offset against a subsequent claim (if authorized), or credits to the amounts charged to individual awards.

5.7 Questions and Answers on Attachment D

5-1 In the early 1960s the former Department of Health, Education, and Welfare (HEW) issued a document entitled "Handbook of Public Assistance Administration." Is this issuance still in effect, and if so, which Federal issuance takes precedence when sections of that handbook contradict the cost principles of Circular A-87, e.g., treatment of the cost of land? [Att. D, § A]

Under an Action Transmittal Notice of August 11, 1975, the former Social and

Rehabilitation Service of (then) HEW advised State agencies that, as published in the *Federal Register* on August 11, 1975, Parts I, II, and VI, and Supplements A, B, and C of the Handbook were revoked. Parts III, IV, and V were still in effect to the extent that they were not superseded by subsequent regulation or policy issuances. OMB Circular A-87 was issued to bring consistency to the manner in which Federal awarding agencies measured and recognized allowable administrative costs. Federal agencies are required by OMB to implement the Circular and abide by those rules unless OMB has granted a specific waiver to the agency for a rule(s) or the Circular is in conflict with a given statute. Therefore, if the Handbook conflicts with any section of A-87, Circular A-87 policy would apply unless the exceptions noted above exist.

5-2 45 CFR Part 95.507(b)(6) requires that a statement be submitted describing services provided by a governmental agency outside the state agency other than those provided through the state-wide cost allocation plan (SWCAP) or umbrella department cost allocation plan (CAP) costs. If this other agency is only a subrecipient of Federal monies from the state (or local) agency and the subrecipient proposes a cost allocation procedure, who is responsible for the review and approval of this plan? [Att. D, ¶ D]

Review and approval of the plan used by the subrecipient governmental agency is the responsibility of the state agency. The Part 95 provision referenced above does not require Federal approval. It has been long-standing policy that the prime grantee is responsible for assuring that subawardees properly spend and account for flow-through Federal funds. Where the subrecipient has an indirect cost agreement or cost allocation plan approved by a Federal cognizant agency, costing and claims to the primary recipient agency should be made in accordance with that agreement (plan). The amounts claimed under these procedures are still subject to audit and to Federal awarding agency review of quarterly claims.

5-3 Attachment D, paragraph D.2 states that the effective date of the plan is "the first day of the quarter following the submission of the plan or amendment, unless another date is specifically approved by HHS." 45 CFR 95.515 states "[a]s a general rule, the effective date of a cost allocation amendment shall be the first day of the calendar quarter following the date of the event that required the amendment." The date may be earlier or later based on specific conditions. Is there an inconsistency between the two effective dates as currently stated? [Att. D, ¶ D.2]

No. The state agency is required to promptly amend its cost allocation plan when one of several conditions occurs. Therefore, these dates should effectively be the same.

5-4 Attachment D, paragraph E.3 states "[i]f a dispute arises in negotiation of a plan or from a disallowance involving two or more funding agencies, the dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures set out in 45 CFR Part 75. Disputes involving only one funding agency will be resolved in accordance with the funding agency's appeal process." The wording implies that single funding issue disputes, whether it involves the negotiation of a plan or disallowance, will be resolved through the funding agency appeal process. 45 CFR Part 95, Subpart E requires use of the Part 75 appeal process for plan disapprovals, and splits responsibility for cross-cutting and single agency disallowance actions. Is this inconsistent with the

revision to Circular A-87? [Att. D, ¶ E.3]

No. Disputes involving plan disapprovals are subject to 45 CFR Part 16 governing the Departmental Appeals Board Procedures. (Due to reorganization within HHS, Part 75 has been rescinded.) Single-funding agency disallowance actions are appealed through the applicable funding agency, unless the issue(s) involve cost accounting practices or policies. In such cases, the cognizant agency may determine that the appeal will be handled through its process.

5-5 Attachment D, paragraph E.1 provides for after-the-fact reviews to assure compliance with approved plans. The circular states that these reviews can be accomplished by the funding agency, single audits, or the cognizant audit agency. Does the A-87 language preclude the cognizant agency responsible for approval of the plan from performing compliance reviews? [Att. D, ¶ E.1]

No. The term "funding agency," in this context, includes the cognizant agency responsible for negotiating the plan approval. Compliance reviews are part of the oversight function in the approval of the cost allocation plan (CAP).

PART 6

Attachment E — State and Local Indirect Cost Rate Proposals

6.1 Highlights of New Section, Attachment E

Attachment E has been added for state and local indirect (IDC) rate proposals. This Attachment is also a compendium of conventions, internal HHS policies and procedures, and portions of the former OASC-10. The Attachment provides definitions, submission requirements, how to develop a rate(s), documentation requirements, etc. for IDC rates issued to state and local agencies.

6.2 Acceptable Methodologies for Indirect Cost Allocation and Rate Determination

6.2.1 Types of Rates

Circular A-87 defines four possible types of indirect cost rates. However, two of these types, the provisional and the final, are actually two stages of one approach. The types of rates are listed below:

1. A ***provisional*** rate is a temporary rate, agreed to in advance, based on anticipated future costs. It is subject to retroactive adjustment at a future date after costs are known.

2. A ***final*** rate is established after the costs are known. It adjusts the provisional rate but is administratively burdensome. Underpayments resulting from application of the provisional rate are subject to availability of funds, while overpayments must be credited or returned.

3. A ***fixed*** rate is also agreed to in advance, based on an estimate of future costs, but it is not retroactively adjusted. Instead, the difference between estimated and actual costs is carried forward to future years.

4. A ***predetermined*** rate is agreed to in advance, based on an estimate of future costs, but is not subject to adjustment except under very unique circumstances. It is intended to be permanent and thereby reduce the administrative burden associated with indirect cost recovery. A predetermined rate may not be used for any governmental unit that does not submit its indirect cost rate proposals to a cognizant agency for negotiation, nor may it be used on Federal contracts. The 1995 revision of Circular A-87 encourages long-term use of predetermined rates over a period of two to four years where there is a high degree of assurance that the agreed-upon rate will not exceed one that would result if actual costs were determined.

6.2.2 Direct Cost Bases

The direct cost base is used to distribute indirect costs to individual Federal awards, i.e., an indirect cost rate must be applied to a direct cost base in order to determine the

amount of indirect costs. There are two basic types of direct cost bases: total direct salaries and wages (S&W), or modified total direct costs (MTDC). MTDC exclude "any extraordinary or distorting expenditures," usually capital expenditures, subawards, contracts, assistance payments (e.g., to beneficiaries), and provider payments. The direct cost base selected should result in each award bearing a fair share of indirect costs in reasonable relation to the benefits received from those indirect costs.

6.2.3 Simplified Method

There are two basic methods for calculating indirect cost rates—the simplified method and the multiple rate method. Where each of a recipient agency's major functions benefit from its indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs may be accomplished under the simplified method. The steps involved in calculating a rate under the simplified method are shown below:

Steps Involved in Calculating a Rate Under the Simplified Method

1. Adjust indirect costs for the period by eliminating any costs directly reimbursed through a Federal award awarded specifically for that purpose. For example, if a construction grant was received, then no depreciation or use allowance should be included in the indirect cost pool. Likewise, remove any administrative salaries included in the pool that were funded as direct in a grant. The pool also must be adjusted for any A-87 unallowables and capital expenditures. Use allowances should be computed and added to the pool along with any CSCAP allocations.

2. Adjust direct costs by eliminating flow-through funds and capital expenditures. Compute and add use allowances.

3. Divide the total allowable indirect costs (net of applicable credits) by an equitable direct cost base, e.g. salaries and wages or modified total direct costs.

Illustration 6-1 illustrates the distribution of indirect costs of a state or local government department, the division/bureaus of the department, and the cost of central services provided to it. Under the simplified method shown in this illustration, indirect costs are identified at the division or bureau level, and are so indicated. This method may be used if the ratio of the indirect costs to direct salaries and wages (or other selected base) of each division or bureau reasonably approximates the ratio of the other divisions or is otherwise not inequitable to the Federal Government. If the indirect/direct ratio varies significantly between divisions or bureaus, the multiple rate method (Illustration 6-3) should be used.

Illustration 6-1

Sample Indirect Cost Rate Proposal - Simplified Method
Department of Environmental Services
For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, XXXX

	Total *(e)*	Exclusions *(a)*	Expenditures Not Allowable *(b)*	Indirect Costs *(d)*	Direct Costs *(c)* Direct Salaries & Wages	Direct Costs *(c)* Expenditures For All Other Purposes
Division/Bureau						
Air Quality and Noise	$ 438,338		$ 36,820	$ 47,480	$ 206,320	$147,718
Community Environmental Control	691,931		22,161	61,210	481,182	127,378
Water Quality Management	2,390,738	$1,800,000	9,945	52,641	410,771	117,381
Solid Waste Disposal	1,153,057		106,210	96,847	643,782	306,218
Parks and Forests	844,617		115,000	91,119	450,788	187,710
Subtotal	$5,518,681	$1,800,000	$290,136	$349,297	$2,192,843	$886,405
Departmental Indirect Costs						
Office of the Director	$ 122,610			$122,610		
Financial Management	155,275			155,275		
Administrative Services	86,930			86,930		
Equipment Use	16,800			16,800		
Running Subtotal	$5,900,296	$1,800,000	$290,136	$730,912	$2,192,843	$886,405
Services Furnished (But Not Billed)						
By Other Government Agencies ***(f)***						
Personnel	$ 87,060			$ 87,060		
Accounting	216,220			216,220		
Purchasing	22,211			22,211		
Audit	12,210			12,210		
Total	$6,237,997	$1,800,000	$290,136	$1,068,613	$2,192,843	$886,405

This is a sample. It is not intended to prescribe methods of charging costs.

Notes to Illustration 6-1

(a) Under some Federal programs, funds (called "flow-through funds") are provided to a primary recipient and subsequently passed through to another organization which actually performs the program for which the funds are provided. There is no measurable involvement by the primary recipient in the expenditure of the funds. The primary recipient's involvement is generally limited to monitoring and oversight. This example illustrates such a situation. Because these funds, which are recorded as a cost in the records of the department, do not reflect the expenditure of resources, they are excluded from the computation. However, if the primary recipient does in fact incur significant costs administering the grant, then it should be assessed for its equitable share of indirect costs. This column is normally used by states only and not local governments.

(b) Expenditures not allowable. This amount represents costs or capital expenditures and costs, whether direct or indirect, which are unallowable in accordance with the cost principles. Although a cost may be unallowable, if it either generated or benefitted from the indirect costs, it should be moved to the base (provided that it is salaries and wages in this example) and allocated its share of indirect costs.

(c) Under the simplified method, a determination is made as to which activities are direct, illustrated under the heading Direct Costs, and which are indirect, illustrated under the heading Indirect Costs.

(d) Once the determination of direct/indirect has been made, a ratio should be determined for each division/bureau as shown in the following calculation:

Division/Bureau	Indirect Costs	Direct and Wages	Salaries Ratio
Air Quality & Noise	$47,480	$206,320	23.01%
Community Environmental Control	$61,210	$481,182	12.72%
Water Quality Management	$52,641	$410,771	12.82%
Solid Waste Disposal	$96,847	$643,782	15.04%
Parks & Forests	$91,119	$450,788	20.21%

In this illustration, the dollar amounts of indirect costs differ significantly between division or bureau; however, when individually expressed as a percentage of direct salaries and wages, the differences are minor. Therefore, a single overall rate for the department may be computed by adding the departmental indirect costs and the costs incurred by other government agencies and allocating the indirect cost pool over a single base.

(e) Total departmental costs. This amount should be reconciled to the financial statements or other supporting documentation included in the proposal.

(f) Costs incurred by other government agencies. This amount must agree with the amounts shown on the central service cost allocation plan (see Illustration 4-4). In Illustration 6-1, costs of $337,701 represent costs of central services allocated to the entire department. Governmentwide services that are billed directly to departments or to programs must also be documented in the cost allocation plan (See Illustration 4-5).

Illustration 6-2

Department of Environmental Services
Sample Indirect Cost Rate Proposal - Simplified Method
For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, XXXX

Total	Exclusions & Expenditures Not Allowable	Indirect Costs	Direct Salaries & Wages	Other Direct Expenditures
$6,237,997	$290,136	$1,068,613 (A)	$2,192,843 (B)	$886,405

(A) divided by (B) = $\frac{\$1,068,613}{\$2,192,843}$ = Indirect cost rate of 48.73% of direct salaries and wages, excluding fringe benefits.

Notes:

The totals from Illustration 6-1 are brought forward to this illustration. The indirect cost rate is expressed as a percentage resulting from the ratio of the allowable indirect costs ($1,068,613) to the direct salaries and wages ($2,192,843).

In this illustration, fringe benefits applicable to direct salaries and wages are treated as direct costs.

This is a sample. It is not intended to prescribe methods of charging costs.

6.2.4 Multiple Allocation Base Method

Where a recipient agency's indirect costs benefit its major functions in varying degrees, the multiple rate method is more appropriate.

Steps Involved in Calculating Rates Under the Multiple Rate Method

1. Classify departmental indirect costs into functional cost groupings (cost pools) which benefit divisions of the agency in significantly different proportions.

2. Select appropriate bases for distribution of each classified pool of indirect costs.

3. Distribute each classified pool to the benefitting division.

4. Calculate an indirect cost rate for each division of the agency by relating the total indirect costs allocated to that division to that unit's direct cost base.

Illustration 6-3 shows the distribution of indirect costs on a multiple allocation basis to each division or bureau within a department. This method results in more definitive costing and should be used when operating differences between divisions or bureaus result in material differences in the use of resources and in costs.

The computation recognizes the indirect costs of each division or bureau, department level administration, and the cost of services furnished by other government agencies and approved through the central service cost allocation plan. These costs are allocated to the divisions or bureaus on bases which most fairly reflect the extent to which they benefit from or generate the costs. For example, the costs of purchasing services is allocated on the number of purchase orders issued, while the costs of personnel administration is allocated on the number of employees serviced.

Indirect costs allocated from the department level and from the central service plan are added to the indirect costs incurred by each division or bureau to arrive at total indirect costs for each of the divisions or bureaus. A rate is developed for each division or bureau by relating its indirect costs to its salaries and wages or other selected base.

Illustration 6-3

Sample Indirect Cost Rate Proposal - Multiple Rate Method
Department of Environmental Services
For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, XXXX

	Allocation Base *(a)*	Total Indirect Costs *(b)*	Services Furnished by Other Gov't Agencies: Personnel	Accounting	Purchasing	Audit	Departmental Costs *(d)*: Director	Financial Mgmt.	Admin. Services	Equipment	Total *(f)*
Services Furnished (But Not Billed) By Other Government Agencies ***(c)***											
Personnel	No. of Employees	$ 87,060	($87,060)								
Accounting	No. of Employees ***(e)***	216,220		($216,220)							
Purchasing	No. of Purchase Orders	22,211			($22,211)						
Audit	No. of Audit Hours	12,210				($12,210)					
Subtotal		$ 337,701									
Departmental Indirect Costs											
Director's Ofc.	Direct Salaries & Wages	$ 122,610					($122,610)				
Financial Mgmt.	Transactions Processed	155,275						($155,275)			
Admin. Services	Direct Salaries & Wages	86,930							($86,930)		
Equipment Use	Uses of Equipment	16,800								($16,800)	
Subtotal		$ 381,615									
Division/Bureau											
Air Quality and Noise	$	47,480 $	17,545 $	41,495 $	3,434 $	1,089 $	24,522 $	23,776 $	15,543 $	1,000 $	175,884
Community Environmental Control		61,210	12,920	30,575	3,434	1,089	24,522	29,885	10,659	1,000	175,294
Water Quality Management		52,641	11,997	28,394	2,289	1,089	24,522	37,273	10,659	6,000	174,864
Solid Waste Disposal		96,847	36,935	87,362	11,456	6,777	24,522	46,423	29,488	6,000	345,810
Parks and Forests		91,119	7,663	28,394	1,598	2,166	24,522	17,918	20,551	2,800	196,761
Subtotal		$ 349,297									
	Totals	$1,068,613	- 0 -	- 0 -	- 0 -	- 0 -	- 0 -	- 0 -	- 0 -	- 0 -	$ 1,068,613

This is a sample. It is not intended to prescribe methods of charging costs.

Notes to Illustration 6-3

(a) The allocation bases used were selected as reasonable and applicable under the circumstances. Other bases could be just as acceptable if they represented a fair measure of cost generation or cost benefit.

(b) The costs in this column must be reconciled to official financial statements. In this illustration, it is assumed that all costs incurred are allowable and relevant in accordance with OMB Circular A-87. To the extent that unallowable or excludable costs are included therein, a separate column should be added to the schedule to show the amounts and adjustments made.

(c) These are carried forward from the central service cost allocation plan shown in Illustration 4-4. The costs of services furnished (but not billed) by other government agencies, which are derived through the central service cost allocation plan, are allocated to each functional division or bureau. This allocation could be made more precise by allocating the costs to each departmental administrative function, e.g., to financial management, administrative services, etc., and to the divisions or bureaus. The indirect costs of each departmental administrative service, plus its allocated amount of central service costs, would then be allocated to the divisions or bureaus. If the result of such allocations would have a material effect on the rates computed, the more precise method should be used. In the example presented, the dollar effect is not sufficiently material to warrant this level of precision. In addition to the listed unbilled services, the department also received services from other organizations for which it is billed at rates approved through the central service cost allocation plan (See Illustration 4-5). Illustration 6-3 assumes that these billed costs are already recorded in the accounting records of the department and included in the column Total Indirect Costs, or are treated as a direct cost.

(d) Departmental indirect costs are allocated to each division or bureau. As with services furnished by other government agencies, explained in Note (c) above, the allocation of certain departmental indirect costs, such as equipment use charges, could have been allocated to other departmental administrative functions, if the results of such allocation would have had a material effect on the rates to be computed. In the example presented, the dollar effect is not sufficiently material to warrant the additional allocations.

(e) Accounting services rendered by other agencies are allocated to the divisions or bureaus on the basis of number of employees. In Illustration 6-3, the accounting services provided by the central service agency were

predominantly payroll services.

(f) The total indirect expenses developed for each division or bureau is carried forward to Illustration 6-4, where the relationship between the indirect expenses and direct salaries and wages of each division or bureau is used to develop indirect cost rates.

Illustration 6-4

Sample Indirect Cost Rate Proposal - Multiple Rate Method
Department of Environmental Services
For the Fiscal Year Ended June 30, XXXX

Divisions/Bureaus	Indirect Costs *(a)*	Direct Salaries and Wages *(b)*	Indirect Cost Rates *(c)*
Air Quality and Noise	$ 169,560	$ 206,320	82.18%
Community Environmental Control	169,200	481,182	35.16%
Water Quality Management	168,666	410,771	41.06%
Solid Waste Disposal	336,612	643,782	52.29%
Parks and Forests	190,904	450,788	42.35%
Total	$1,068,613	$2,192,843	

Notes:

(a) The amounts in this column are from Illustration 6-3.

(b) The amounts in this column are derived from, and must be reconciled to, the books and records of the department. Salaries and wages is the preferred base. However, other bases may be used where it results in a more equitable allocation of costs. Generally, the same base should be used for all divisions; however, if approved by the cognizant Federal agency, different bases may be used for one or more of the divisions.

(c) The indirect cost rate for each division/bureau is computed by dividing the indirect costs for each division/bureau by the direct salaries and wages of that division/bureau.

$$\frac{\text{division/bureau indirect costs}}{\text{division/bureau direct S\&W}} = \text{indirect cost rates for division/bureau}$$

This is a sample. It is not intended to prescribe methods of charging costs.

6.3 Special Rates

Circular A-87 notes that there may be instances where a single indirect rate for all activities of a recipient department or agency may not be appropriate. Factors such as different physical locations for work, level of administrative support needed, organizational arrangements, and subaward practices, or a combination of these factors, may create the need for separate rates. It is not uncommon for these types of situations to result in a headquarters rate and multiple off-site rates.

In addition, some Federal programs, such as those funded by the Department of Education, place limitations on allowable indirect costs. In those instances, restricted rates are issued.

6.4 Submission and Documentation of Proposals

6.4.1 Documenting Indirect Cost Proposals

A cognizant agency may require additional data, depending on the circumstances, but each indirect cost proposal must include, at a minimum:

1. The rates proposed, including subsidiary work sheets and other relevant data, cross-referenced and reconciled to the financial data.

2. For allocated central service costs, the summary table included in the approved central service cost allocation plan, unless otherwise available to the funding agency. The summary schedule from the approved central service cost allocation plan is frequently needed because the Federal agency that is cognizant for a departmental indirect cost rate proposal may be different from the one that is cognizant for the central service plan for the overall governmental unit.

3. A copy of the financial data upon which the rate is based.

4. The approximate amount of direct base costs incurred under Federal awards, broken out between salaries and wages and other direct costs. The cognizant agency will use the breakdown between salaries and wages and other direct costs within the direct base costs to determine whether to establish the resulting indirect cost rate on the basis of salaries and wages or modified total direct costs.

5. A chart showing the organizational structure of the agency during the period for which the proposal applies, along with a functional statement(s) noting the duties and/or responsibilities of all units that comprise the agency. The organizational chart that is submitted with

the indirect cost rate proposal should be accompanied by a narrative statement. This statement should provide sufficient detail about the functions that are performed by component units to permit the proposal reviewer (cost negotiator) from the cognizant agency to differentiate levels of benefit provided and received within the organization.

6.4.2 Required Certifications

Indirect cost rates, whether submitted to a Federal cognizant agency or maintained on file by the governmental unit, must be certified by the governmental unit using the Certificate of Indirect Costs as set forth in Attachment E. The certificate must be signed on behalf of the governmental unit by an individual at a level no lower than chief financial officer of the governmental unit that submits the proposal or component covered by the proposal. (See also 2.9, Government Certification.)

6.5 Review, Negotiation, and Approval of Rates

OMB Circular A-87 places considerable discretion with the cognizant Federal agency assigned to particular recipients. It permits the cognizant agency to determine, within reasonable bounds, the level of detail that is appropriate to support a cost allocation plan and/or an indirect cost rate proposal. This discretion carries over to the review and approval process as well.

6.5.1 The Review Process

In general, the cognizant agency will follow certain basic steps for most submissions. Note: there is no hard and fast rule about the approach or tools used. Typical steps in the review process are shown below:

Steps in the Review Process

1. Review the submission for materiality, completeness, and reliability of supporting data, including audited financial statements.

2. Acknowledge receipt and request any needed additional information.

3. Review prior negotiation and audit experience; assess prior agreements and applicable conditions.

4. Assess the submission's general reliability and the governmental unit's financial condition.

5. Determine the extent to which coordination with other awarding agencies may be necessary.

6. Review the proposal for accuracy and determine whether it includes all activities and costs of the governmental entity.

7. Determine whether unallowable costs have been excluded and whether allocation methods and billing mechanisms are appropriate and properly designed.

8. Assess what the appropriate rate base (salaries and wages, modified total direct cost, etc.) should be for the resulting indirect cost rate and the extent to which any rate established should be subsequently adjusted.

6.5.2 Indirect Cost Rate Negotiations

Negotiations about submissions may be limited or extensive, based largely on the results of the review steps described above. In the case where, for any number of reasons, a rate cannot be negotiated, the Circular does permit unilateral action by a cognizant agency to establish a rate.

6.5.3 Features of a Typical Rate Agreement

Appendix 3 is an example of a contemporary rate agreement containing the salient features that are likely to appear in those issued by most cognizant agencies. Note: there is no standard governmentwide Federal form employed for the purpose of rate determination.

6.6 Applying an Approved Rate to Grants and Contracts

6.6.1 Establishing the Amount of Approved Indirect Costs in the Award Budget

Because Circular A-87 establishes a policy that Federal programs bear their fair share of costs recognized under the Circular, Federal awarding agencies are expected to recognize and use indirect cost rates approved by the cognizant agency for a particular recipient. This recognition and use usually

occurs at the time that an award is made. Awarding agency officials review direct cost proposals and applications to determine that anticipated costs included are necessary, reasonable, and allocable. Any proposed indirect costs are assessed according to whether or not an agreement exists with a cognizant agency. If one does, the awarding agency officials determine whether it will be fully recognized and to which object class categories of expenditure it will be properly applied. (Some Federal programs impose regulatory limits on the indirect percentage that will be allowed, e.g., HHS training grants that limit reimbursement to 8% of MTDC.)

If no agreement exists, awarding agencies should encourage recipients to obtain one. In the interim, agencies may only award funds for direct and allocated costs. The awarding agency should conduct a review of these costs to determine the propriety of any allocations. Agencies may not establish indirect cost rates unless they are the cognizant agency for the recipient.

6.6.2 Applying the Rate to the Direct Cost Base and Calculating Claims

Once the indirect cost rate is recognized within an award document, the governmental unit is permitted to apply that rate to the applicable base of the allowable direct costs incurred during award performance. Periodically the governmental unit is expected to submit a Financial Status Report (usually either Standard Form 269 or 269A) which summarizes total expenditures incurred under the award. It may claim indirect costs by multiplying its indirect cost rate by the direct cost elements to which the rate may be applied under the terms of the award. Thus, its total cost recovery for the applicable period is comprised of the allowable direct costs incurred plus the allowable, allocable indirect costs.

6.6.3 Effect of Rate Changes from One Fiscal Year to Another

Occasionally, a governmental unit will receive an award which it performs over a period that extends beyond the applicability of a single, approved indirect cost rate. This is likely when the award period does not correspond to the fiscal year of the governmental unit. In such a case, the recipient is expected to apply its rate(s) to expenditures incurred during the applicable fiscal year and to maintain consistent accounting treatment according to its normal procedures of expenditure recognition.

6.7 Record Retention

The Common Rule issued pursuant to OMB Circular A-102 covers most policies associated with records to be retained and/or disclosed by a governmental unit receiving Federal assistance funds. Section __.42 of that rule requires that all financial and programmatic records, supporting documents, statistical records, and other records of recipients and

subrecipients be retained. Section __.36 (i)(10) of the rule covers the record retention requirement for contractors under grants and their subcontractors.

Generally, records must be retained for three years from the submission date of the final financial report for that funding period. However, if any litigation, claim, negotiation, audit, or other action involving the records has been initiated before the three-year retention period has expired, the records must be retained until the action is completed and all issues which arise from it have been resolved, or until the end of the regular three-year period, whichever is later. (A-102 Common Rule, §__.42(b)(2)).

Section __.42(c)(4) of the Common Rule states that records associated with indirect cost rate proposals and cost allocation plans are included within the scope of the broader record retention requirement. Under that provision, "indirect cost rate computations or proposals, cost allocation plans, and any similar accounting computations of the rate at which a particular group of costs is chargeable (such as computer usage chargeback rates or composite fringe benefit rates)" are covered.

6.8 Audit

Audit of Federal awards is an aid to determining whether financial information is accurate and whether an award recipient has complied with terms and conditions that could have an effect on claims for costs incurred under the award. Under the Inspector General Act of 1978, as amended, the Inspector General of a Federal agency may audit or investigate any program, function, or activity administered by that agency. This potential for review extends to those organizations (including state, local, and Indian tribal governments) that are performing under awards made by the Federal agency. However, as a way to assure the best use of audit resources, the Act requires the Inspectors General to determine the extent to which they can rely on audit work performed by nonfederal auditors. This policy, combined with the fact that the Single Audit Act of 1984, as amended**,** requires recipients to arrange to have independent audits performed on Federal financial assistance awards that they receive, means that these nonfederal examinations are the principal means by which a governmental unit's compliance with Circular A-87 is determined. OMB is responsible for issuing implementing policies, procedures, and guidelines under the Act.

Applicable OMB guidance for auditors performing audits under the Single Audit Act identifies general and specific requirements against which the auditor is expected to test governmental unit compliance. Several of these requirements relate to policies contained in Circular A-87. Included within the general requirements are:

- allowable costs/cost principles;

- Federal financial reports; and
- administrative requirements.

Included in the specific requirements section of each listed Federal program are use and use restrictions and limitations, including matching and cost sharing, maintenance of effort, and earmarking requirements.

6.9 Disputes and Appeals

If a dispute arises concerning the application of provisions of Circular A-87, the method of resolving the issues raised and the party responsible for adjudicating them depend on the nature of the dispute. For example, if a dispute arises concerning the submission, negotiation, or establishment of a cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate, the procedures of the cognizant agency govern. On the other hand, if a dispute arises about questioned or disallowed costs associated with a particular Federal award, the procedures of the awarding agency govern.

Costs incurred by a governmental unit may be questioned during conduct of an audit or through some other form of monitoring or awarding agency oversight. They may be questioned because of an alleged violation of applicable policy, because they are not supported by adequate documentation at the time of the audit, or because they are deemed to be unreasonable or unnecessary by the responsible auditor or other party examining them. The determination as to whether costs will be disallowed is made by an awarding agency official authorized to issue decisions on behalf of the agency. Depending upon awarding agency procedures, there may be several layers of review within the agency before such a decision is considered final.

Each Federal agency has its own regulations and policies governing administrative appeals of agency determinations, and many agencies either do not allow appeals, or limit them to very specific areas. The costs of prosecuting these claims may not be allowable under agency interpretations of the A-87 prohibition on pursuing claims against the Federal Government.

6.10 Questions and Answers on Attachment E

6-1 The definition of an "Indirect Cost Rate Proposal" in Attachment E, paragraph B.1 is "the documentation prepared by a government unit...to substantiate its request for the establishment of an indirect cost rate." Based on the definition of "Government Unit" in Attachment A, paragraph B.13, can a state submit a state-wide indirect cost rate proposal in lieu of a state-wide cost allocation plan (SWCAP)? [Att. E, ¶ B.1]

No. A state, if it wishes to identify and claim all administrative and support costs provided to its components (operating agencies) which receive Federal awards, must prepare and submit a state-wide central service plan (SWCAP) in accordance with Attachment C of A-87. That Attachment, at paragraph D.1, stipulates that "[e]ach State will submit a plan...." The use of the term "governmental unit" in the above referenced Attachment E is viewed as an editing error where "government component" was intended. The only government units that have been permitted to develop indirect cost rates in lieu of cost allocation plans for centralized government support activities are local units of government. This is permitted under Attachment C, paragraph D.3.

6-2 A review of Attachment E, paragraph D.1.b raises several questions:

(a) When reference is made to "governmental unit," is it actually referring to a "government component" for which an indirect cost (IDC) rate is required?

(b) It notes that OMB will publish lists of governmental units and their Federal cognizant agencies. Governmental units not listed on OMB's published lists of governmental units and their cognizant agencies must prepare an IDC rate proposal, and keep it on record unless the cognizant Federal agency requires that it be submitted for review and negotiation. In the past, a state component was required to negotiate an IDC rate if it wanted to recover IDCs. Has this policy changed?

(c) Based on the comments in (b) above, is a local government that is assigned a cognizant Federal agency required to submit its IDC proposal for review and negotiation? [Att. E, ¶ D.1.b]

The responses to each of the above are as follows:

(a) This is an editing error and "component" was intended.

(b) There has been no change. If a state component wishes to recover its IDC, it must develop, submit, and negotiate an IDC rate or cost allocation plan with the cognizant Federal agency.

(c) Appendix 2 identifies "major" local governments that have been assigned a cognizant Federal agency. At the present time local governments are not required to submit proposals for approval unless the cognizant Federal agency requires submission.

6-3 Attachment E, paragraph F.3 discusses IDC CAPs for a governmental unit not by the use of a rate but through a narrative plan similar to public assistance plans. By definition a "governmental unit" is the entire state or local government, not a component thereof. Is this the intent of this section? [Att. E, ¶ F.3]

No. This was an editorial error. In some cases, because of the nature of its operations, a component or agency may find it necessary to develop a cost allocation plan rather than an indirect cost rate. See Q&A 2-18, Part 2 of this guide, for the criteria to be used when determining when a cost allocation plan should be used in lieu of an indirect cost rate.

[This page intentionally left blank.]

REFERENCE

OMB Circular A-87 references many documents. In addition, various bodies have issued documents which should be used in conjunction with Circular A-87 to ensure compliance with standards of accountability in Federal funds management. Pertinent documents are listed below, along with their issue date[1] and source.

This document:	**as issued:**	**may be obtained from:**
OMB Circular A-87, *Cost Principles for State, Local and Indian Tribal Governments*	May 17, 1995	Executive Office of the President (EOP) Publications Office, 202-395-7332 or via the Internet, http://www.whitehouse.gov/WH/EOP/omb **OR** the *Federal Register*[2] at 60 FR 26484
OMB Circular A-102, *Grants and Cooperative Agreements with State and Local Governments,* and the accompanying Common Rule, *Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreement to State and Local Governments*	October 14, 1994 (Circular); March 11, 1988 (Common Rule), as revised April 19, 1995	Executive Office of the President (EOP) Publications Office, 202-395-7332 or via the Internet, http://www.whitehouse.gov/WH/EOP/omb **OR** the *Federal Register*, at 59 FR 52224, 53 FR 8087, 60 FR 19638
OMB Circular A-110, *Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations,* and the attached Common Rule	November 29, 1993	Executive Office of the President (EOP) Publications Office, 202-395-7332 or via the Internet, http://www.whitehouse.gov/WH/EOP/omb **OR** the *Federal Register*, at 58 FR 62992
The Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994 (FASA) (PL 103-355)	October 13, 1994	*Statutes at large*[3]

1 All issue dates listed in the Reference section of this guide are issue dates as of publication, 4/8/97.

2 Back issues of the *Federal Register* are generally available in paper or on microfiche at law libraries and larger public libraries. The 1995 and later issues (volumes 60 and up) are available via GPO Access on the Internet, http://www.access.gpo.gov.

3 Available at law libraries and some larger public libraries. Statutes are filed by public law number.

This document:	as issued:	may be obtained from:
OMB Circular A-128, *Audits of State and Local Governments*[4]	April 12, 1985	Executive Office of the President (EOP) Publications Office, 202-395-7332, also via fax-on-demand, 202-395-9068[5], or via the Internet, http://www.whitehouse.gov/WH/EOP/omb
OMB Circular A-133, *Audits of Institutions of Higher Education and Other Non-Profit Institutions*	April 30, 1996	Executive Office of the President (EOP) Publications Office, 202-395-7332, also via fax-on-demand, 202-395-9068, or via the Internet, http://www.whitehouse.gov/WH/EOP/omb **OR** the *Federal Register*, at 61 FR 19134, via the Internet, http://www.access.gpo.gov
Compliance Supplement for Single Audits of State and Local Governments	September 1990	US Government Printing Office, Superintendent of Documents, Mail Stop: SSOP, Washington, DC 20402-9328, 202-512-1800
Questions and Answers on the Single Audit Process of OMB Circular A-128, "Single Audits of State and Local Governments"	November 13, 1987	The *Federal Register*, at 52 FR 43712
Common Rule on New Restrictions on Lobbying	February 6, 1990	The *Federal Register*, at 55 FR 6736
Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995 (PL 104-65)	December 1995	*Statutes at Large* **OR** via the Internet through GPO Access, http://www.access.gpo.gov
OMB Circular A-21, *Cost Principles for Educational Institutions*	May 8, 1996	Executive Office of the President (EOP) Publications Office, 202-395-7332, or via the Internet, http://www.whitehouse.gov/WH/EOP/omb **OR** the *Federal Register*, at 61 FR 20880, via the Internet, http://www.access.gpo.gov
OMB Circular A-122, *Cost Principles for Nonprofit Organizations*	July 8, 1980, and revised April 27, 1984, May 19, 1987, and October 6, 1995	Executive Office of the President (EOP) Publications Office, 202-395-7332 **OR** the *Federal Register*, at 45 FR 46022, 49 FR 18260, 52 FR 19788, 60 FR 52516

4 This Circular is scheduled to be rescinded; state and local government audits will be covered by a revised OMB Circular A-133.

5 Only circulars of less than 50 pages are available from OMB's fax-on-demand service.

This document:	as issued:	may be obtained from:
45 CFR Part 95, General Administration – Grant Programs (Public Assistance and Medical Assistance)	October 1, 1996	US Government Printing Office, Superintendent of Documents, Mail Stop: SSOP, Washington, DC 20402-9328, 202-512-1800

[This page intentionally left blank.]

APPENDIX 1

OMB CIRCULAR A-87

Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments

APPENDIX 2

Cognizant Agency Assignments

APPENDIX 3

Sample Indirect Cost Rate Agreement

STATE AND LOCAL RATE AGREEMENT

DATE: July 3, 1996

DEPARTMENT/AGENCY:
State of X Family & Social
Services Administration

FILING REF.: The preceding
Agreement was dated
May 10, 1994

The rates approved in this agreement are for use on grants, contracts and other agreements with the Federal Government, subject to the conditions in Section III.

SECTION I: INDIRECT COST RATES*

RATE TYPES: FIXED FINAL PROV. (PROVISIONAL) PRED.(PREDETERMINED)

TYPE	EFFECTIVE PERIOD FROM	TO	RATE(%)	LOCATIONS	APPLICABLE TO
FINAL	07/01/93	06/30/94	14.4	* All	Division of DARS
PROV.	07/01/94	UNTIL AMENDED	14.4	* All	Division of DARS
FINAL	07/01/93	06/30/94	4.4	** All	Div of Mental Health
PROV.	07/01/94	UNTIL AMENDED	4.4	** All	Div of Mental Health

**BASE:
Total direct costs of the Division of Mental Health, exclusive of items of equipment, alterations and renovations, State Hospital expenses, and subawards and flow-through funds.

*BASE:
Direct salaries and wages, including all fringe benefits for the Division of Disabilities, Aging, and Rehabilitative Services (DARS), exclusive of the Developmental Disabilities Centers.

NOTE: The State claims use allowance on capital expenditures over $1,000.

DEPARTMENT/AGENCY:
State of X Family & Social Services Administration

AGREEMENT DATE: July 3, 1996

SECTION II: SPECIAL REMARKS

TREATMENT OF FRINGE BENEFITS:
Fringe benefits are specifically identified to each employee and are charged individually as direct costs. The directly claimed fringe benefits are listed in the Special Remarks Section of this Agreement.

TREATMENT OF PAID ABSENCES:
Vacation, holiday, sick leave pay, and other paid absences are included in salaries and wages and are claimed on grants, contracts, and other agreements as part of the normal cost for salaries and wages. Separate claims for the costs of these paid absences are not made.

FRINGE BENEFITS:

FICA
Retirement
Group Insurance
Worker's Compensation
Unemployment Insurance

ORGANIZATION:
State of X Family & Social Services Administration

AGREEMENT DATE: July 3, 1996

SECTION III: GENERAL

A. LIMITATIONS:
The rates in this Agreement are subject to any statutory or administrative limitations and apply to a given grant, contract, or other agreement only to the extent that funds are available. Acceptance of the rates is subject to the following conditions: (1) Only costs incurred by the organization were included in its indirect cost pool as finally accepted: such costs are legal obligations of the organization and are allowable under the governing cost principles; (2) The same costs that have been treated as indirect costs are not claimed as direct costs; (3) Similar types of costs have been accorded consistent accounting treatment; and (4) The information provided by the organization which was used to establish the rates is not later found to be materially incomplete or inaccurate by the Federal Government. In such situations the rate(s) would be subject to renegotiation at the discretion of the Federal Government.

B. ACCOUNTING CHANGES:
This Agreement is based on the accounting system purported by the organization to be in effect during the Agreement period. Changes to the method of accounting for costs which affect the amount of reimbursement resulting from the use of this Agreement require prior approval of the authorized representative of the cognizant agency. Such changes include, but are not limited to, changes in the charging of a particular type of cost form indirect to direct. Failure to obtain approval may result in cost disallowances.

C. FIXED RATES:
If a fixed rate is in this Agreement, it is based on an estimate of the costs for the period covered by the rate. When the actual costs for this period are determined, an adjustment will be made to a rate of a future year(s) to compensate for the difference between the costs used to establish the fixed rate and actual costs.

D. USE BY OTHER FEDERAL AGENCIES:
The rates in this Agreement were approved in accordance with the authority in Office of Management and Budget Circular A-87, and should be applied to grants, contracts, and other agreements covered by this Circular, subject to any limitations in A above. The organization may provide copies of the Agreement to other Federal Agencies to give them early notification of the Agreement.

E. OTHER:
If any Federal contract, grant, or other agreement is reimbursing indirect costs by a means other than the approved rate(s) in this Agreement, the organization should (1) credit such costs to the affected programs, and (2) apply the approved rate(s) to the appropriate base to identify the proper amount of indirect costs allocable to these programs.

BY THE DEPARTMENT/AGENCY:

State of X Family & Social Services Administration
(DEPARTMENT/AGENCY)

_____
(SIGNATURE)

_____
(NAME)

_____
(TITLE)

_____
(DATE)

BY THE COGNIZANT AGENCY
ON BEHALF OF THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT:

DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
(AGENCY)

_____
(SIGNATURE)

_____
(NAME)

DIRECTOR, DIVISION OF COST ALLOCATION
(TITLE)

July 3, 1996
(DATE) 5629

HHS REPRESENTATIVE: _____

Telephone: _____ _____

[This page intentionally left blank]

INDEX

PAGE

Aircraft, Private . . . . . p. 3-29, Q&A 3-55
Allocability . . . . p.2-8, §2.8.2
Allocation Bases . . . . . .p. 4-15, §4.6.2
Allowability . . . . . p. 2-7, §2.8; p. 2-9, §2.8.3
Alternative Methods . . . . . p. 2-1, §2.3; p. 2-13, Q&A 2-1
Applicability, General . . . . p. 2-2—2-4, §§2.4.1—2.4.3
    Block Grants . . . . . p. 2-14, Q&A 2-4
    Performance Partnerships . . . . . p. 2-14, Q&A 2-5
    Subrecipients . . . . . p. 1-3, §1.3
Applicable Credits . . . . . p. 2-7, §2.7, p. 2-20, Q&A 2-17; p. 4-27, Q&A 4-11
Approval of Costs under CAPs . . . . . p. 2-14, Q&A 2-6; p. 2-15, Q&A 2-7
Benefitting Programs . . . p. 2-17, Q&A 2-12; p. 2-17—2-18, Q&As 2-13—2-14
Billed Costs (See also Retained Earnings) . . . . . .p. 4-16, §4.7; p. 4-18—4-22, Illustrations 4-6 and 4-7; p. 4-25—4-26, Q&As 4-8—4-9
Capital Expenditures . . . . . p. 3-21, Q&A 3-35
Capital Leases . . . . . p. 3-29, Q&A 3-53
Certification . . . . . .p. 2-10, §2.9; p. 4-6, §4.5.6; p. 6-14, §6.4.2
Consistency . . . . . p. 2-9, §2.8.3; p. 2-15, Q&A 2-10; p. 2-16, Q&A 2-11
Cost Allocation Plans . . . . . p. 2-20, Q&As 2-18—2-19; p. 4-23—4-25, Q&A 4-1—4-7
Depreciation/Use Allowances . . . . . p. 3-18—3-22, Q&As 3-28—3-38
    Accelerated . . . . p. 3-19, Q&A 3-32
    ADP . . . . p. 3-7, Q&A 3-3
Donated Services . . . . . p. 2-18, Q&A 2-15
Effort Documentation . . . . . p. 3-13—3-17, Q&As 3-15—3-17, 3-19—3-24
FMC 74-4 . . . . . p. 1-5, Q&A 1-1
General Cost of Government . . . . . p. 2-15, Q&A 2-9; p. 3-7, Q&A 3-2; p. 3-23, Q&A 3-41
Handbook of Public Assistance Administration . . . . . p. 5-6, Q&A 5-1
Indirect Costs, General
    Subrecipients . . . . . p. 2-14, Q&A 2-3; p. 5-6, Q&A 5-2
Interest, General . . . . . p. 3-6 (Highlights), p. 3-25, Q&A 3-47
    ADP . . . . . p. 3-8, Q&A 3-4; p. 3-25, Q&A 3-46
    Equipment, Allowability . . . . . p. 1-7, Q&A 1-7
    Land . . . . . p. 3-24, Q&A 3-43
    Nonexistent Assets . . . . . p. 3-24, Q&A 3-44, p. 3-25, Q&A 3-45
    Positive Cashflow Offset . . . . . p. 3-26, Q&A 3-48; p. 3-27, Illustration 3-1; p. 3-28, Q&As 3-49—3-50
    Relocation of Programs . . . . . p. 3-23, Q&A 3-40

Legal Costs . . . . . p. 3-17—3-18, Q&As 3-25—3-27; p. 3-23, Q&A 3-39
Pensions . . . . . p. 3-8—3-11, Q&As 3-7—3-11
Primary Program . . . . . p. 2-17, Q&A 2-13
Program Cost Principles . . . . . p. 1-4, §1.4; p. 2-13, Q&A 2-2
Proposal Costs . . . . . p. 3-29, Q&A 3-52
Reasonableness . . . . . p. 2-7, §2.8.1
Reserves, Internal Service Funds (ISFs) . . . . p. 4-21—4-22; p. 4-26, Q&A 4-10
Retained Earnings . . . . p. 4-18—4-22, Illustrations 4-6 and 4-7; p. 4-27—4-28, Q&As 4-11—4-14
Severance Pay . . . . . p. 3-11—3-13, Q&As 3-12—3-14; p. 3-23, Q&A 3-42
Taxes, PILOT . . . . . p. 3-29, Q&A 3-54
Unpaid Leave . . . . . p. 3-8, Q&As 3-5—3-6

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix O

APPENDIX O
PHMSA State Pipeline Safety Grants
Guidance for Indirect Cost Recovery
Revised November 2014

Summary

The purpose of this appendix is to provide guidance to all pipeline safety grant programs as to the establishment of a negotiated indirect cost rate or other options in order to collect indirect costs. This replaces any previously issued guidance. See guidance below.

Summary of Topics

- ***Overview of 2 CFR 200 – Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards***
- ***What are an Indirect Cost Rate and Indirect Cost Proposal?***
- ***What do State Programs need to do?***
- ***Where should programs go for guidance?***

Overview of 2 CFR 200 – Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards

2 CFR 200 is the Federal Government Guidance on Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal awards. This guidance provides a government wide framework for grants management. 2 CFR 200 supersedes and streamlines the requirements from previously applicable OMB Circulars A-87 (2 CFR 225) and OMB Circular A-133, which were applicable to pipeline safety grants.

In determining whether costs are allowable or not follow these basic guidelines:

- Necessary and reasonable
- Allocable
- Authorized under state or local laws
- Not restricted by PHMSA policy
- Not otherwise restricted by statute
- All activities are charged uniformly
- Consistent treatment
- In accordance with GAAP
- Not included as a cost of another federal award
- Net of all applicable credits
- Adequately document

What is an Indirect Cost Rate and Indirect Cost Rate Proposal?

Indirect Cost Rate

An indirect cost rate is a device for determining in an equitable manner the proportion of indirect costs for each program. An indirect cost rate assists a grantee to obtain the full cost of operating a grant or a program, not just the more easily identifiable "direct cost".

An indirect cost rate is the ratio (expressed as a percentage) of the indirect cost to a direct cost base. Indirect costs may be recovered only to the extent that direct costs were incurred. In order to determine the reimbursable amount for indirect costs, the indirect cost rate is applied to the amount of direct costs expended, NOT to the total grant award. The direct cost base can vary from state to state but each is determined in accordance with 2 CFR 200.

Per 2 CFR 200 – Appendix VII, "indirect costs include (a) the indirect costs originating in each department or agency of the governmental unit carrying out Federal awards and (b) the costs of central governmental services distributed through the central service cost allocation plan (as described in Attachment V to Part 200) and not otherwise treated as direct costs".

Indirect costs are normally charged to federal awards by the use of an indirect cost rate. A separate indirect cost rate(s) is usually developed for each department or agency of the governmental unit claiming indirect costs under federal awards. In addition to Appendix VII of 2 CFR 200, guidelines and illustrations of indirect cost proposals are provided in a brochure published by the Department of Health and Human Services entitled "A Guide for State and Local Government Agencies: Cost Principles and Procedures for Establishing Cost Allocation Plans and Indirect Cost Rates for Grants and Contracts with the Federal Government". This is also known as ASMB C-10 and is located in the State Guidelines as Appendix N.

2 CFR 200 (Guidelines Appendix H), and ASMB C-10 (Guidelines Appendix N), comprise the majority of the federal guidance for indirect costs rates and cost allocation plans. A link to ASMB C-10 is provided below:

http://rates.psc.gov/fms/dca/**asmb**%20**c-10**.pdf

Indirect Cost Rate Proposal

An indirect cost rate proposal is the documentation prepared by a governmental unit or subdivision thereof to substantiate its request for the establishment of an indirect cost rate. All pipeline safety programs desiring to claim indirect costs in their grant reimbursement must submit an indirect cost rate proposal, and have approved an indirect cost rate agreement. The proposal and related documentation must be retained for audit in accordance to record retention requirements.

Proposal submission requirements include the following:

- Identification of costs considered to be indirect
- Identification of costs used as the direct costs to assist in setting the rate
- Rate(s) Development Schedules
- Copies of Financial Data
- Organizational Charts
- Certification of the rate by an authorized official

Indirect Cost Rates Types

The indirect cost rate type is determined between the cognizant agency and the grantee. Descriptions of the differing rates are as follows:

- "Predetermined rate" means an indirect cost rate, applicable to a specified current or future period, usually the governmental unit's fiscal year. This rate is based on an estimate of the costs to be incurred during the period. Except under very unusual circumstances, a predetermined rate is not subject to adjustment. (Because of legal constraints, predetermined rates are not permitted for Federal contracts; they may, however, be used for grants or cooperative agreements.) Predetermined rates may not be used by governmental units that have not submitted and negotiated the rate with the cognizant agency. In view of the potential advantages offered by this procedure, negotiation of predetermined rates for indirect costs for a period of two to four years should be the norm in those situations where the cost experience and other pertinent facts available are deemed sufficient to enable the parties involved to reach an informed judgment as to the probable level of indirect costs during the ensuing accounting periods.
- "Fixed rate" means an indirect cost rate which has the same characteristics as a predetermined rate, except that the difference between the estimated costs and

the actual, allowable costs of the period covered by the rate is carried forward as an adjustment to the rate computation of a subsequent period.

- "Provisional rate" means a temporary indirect cost rate applicable to a specified period which is used for funding, interim reimbursement, and reporting indirect costs on Federal awards pending the establishment of a "final" rate for that period.
- "Final rate" means an indirect cost rate applicable to a specified past period which is based on the actual allowable costs of the period. A final audited rate is not subject to adjustment.
- "De Minimis rate" means a rate of 10% of modified total direct costs (MTDC) and may be used indefinitely without having a negotiated indirect rate. This rate is only available to those non-Federal entities who have never received a negotiated indirect cost rate. Any exceptions to this are found in Appendix VII to Part 200, paragraph (d)(1)(b).

What do State Programs need to do?

What will each program need and when?

All state programs will need to have either an approved indirect cost rate agreement in order to be reimbursed for indirect costs or they may collect the de minimis rate of 10% of MTDC as noted above. Approved indirect cost agreements should be sent to Rex Evans at rex.evans@dot.gov.

- A grantee must have obtained a current indirect cost rate agreement from its cognizant agency, to charge indirect costs to a grant. To obtain an indirect cost rate, a grantee must submit an indirect cost proposal to its cognizant agency within 90 days after the date the Department issues the Grant Award Notification (GAN). This would be after our notice of Grant Award, or "Grant Allocation".
- If a grantee does not have a federally recognized indirect cost rate agreement, the grantee may continue to charge its grant for indirect costs at a rate of up to 10 percent of MTDC while a rate is being negotiated.

Who will approve the indirect cost proposal?

The "Cognizant" federal agency is responsible for reviewing, negotiating, and approving the indirect cost proposals developed under 2 CFR 200 for each state. This agency is typically the federal agency from which the state agency receives the majority of their federal funding. In some cases this agency may be PHMSA and Indirect costs plans shall be submitted to Rex Evans @ rex.evans@dot.gov. We will work with those states on a case by case basis for indirect cost rate proposal approval as necessary. PHMSA/DOT will likely be the cognizant agent for most programs who have not previously secured an indirect cost rate, but it is recommended that each program consult their state grant office for initial assistance.

When is an indirect cost plan developed?

Indirect cost proposals are typically developed within six months after the close of the governmental unit's fiscal year, unless an exception is approved by the cognizant federal agency. (See 2 CFR 200 for guidance)

Does the program have to have an "Indirect Cost Rate Agreement"?

No. If a state chooses, no plan or agreement is necessary and may collect up to a maximum of 10% of MTDC.

How often does a program need to have their agreement updated?

The rate period is typically outlined on the negotiated rate document, but any non-Federal entity that has a federally negotiated indirect cost rate may apply for a one-time extension of a current negotiated indirect cost rates for a period of up to four years. This extension will be subject to the review and approval of the cognizant agency for indirect costs. If an extension is granted the non-Federal entity may not request a rate review until the extension period ends. At the end of the 4-year extension, the non-Federal entity must re-apply to negotiate a rate.

Is their still a cap on the amount of indirect costs a program can recover?

Yes, the cap rate remains at 20%. This is 20% of your total direct cost submitted for reimbursement.

Where should programs go for guidance?

1. Your agency financial personnel and state grant office should be the first place you seek guidance
2. See 2 CFR 200 and ASMB C-10
3. PHMSA State Programs Contact:

   Rex Evans – rex.evans@dot.gov
   217-697-8222

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix P

U. S. Department
of Transportation

Pipeline and
Hazardous Materials
Safety Administration

PHMSA Office of Pipeline Safety Procedure to Monitor, Evaluate, and Reject a State Program's Certification

Effective Date: April 2012

I. Purpose

The following procedure outlines the process by which the Secretary of Transportation (Secretary), and PHMSA as the designee, may monitor, evaluate, and reject a state program's certification and therefore assume *intrastate* regulatory, inspection, and enforcement responsibilities, from a state under an annual certification. The Secretary may enter into a certification agreement with a state such that the state assumes regulatory oversight responsibility for intrastate facilities within that state. The certification requires that the state successfully meet several requirements, further discussed in this document.

II. Secretary's Authority to Monitor State Programs

After a state becomes certified to regulate its intrastate facilities, the Secretary may monitor a safety program to ensure that the program complies with the certification. PHMSA's Office of Pipeline Safety (OPS) monitors the performance of the state agencies participating in the pipeline safety program through PHMSA's State Programs Division.

PHMSA has broad statutory authority to regulate pipeline safety. If PHMSA determines that the state is not satisfactorily complying with the certification requirements, then PHMSA may reject the certification, assert United States Government jurisdiction, or take other appropriate action to achieve adequate oversight. PHMSA may adopt policies and rules implementing its statutory authority to reject a state's certification

III. Establishment of Administrative Process and Procedures for Unsatisfactory Compliance with Certification Requirements

The following includes the administrative process and procedures PHMSA will follow if a state is found to have such deficiencies in its pipeline safety program that it is not satisfactorily complying with the certification requirements and the statute. Such a finding is a prerequisite before PHMSA may initiate a proceeding to reject a state's certification. In determining a state program's inadequacies, PHMSA may also evaluate a state's overall pipeline safety program, as well as evaluate past specific state oversight activities and enforcement actions. This document also includes the established administrative process and procedures and other remedies available to a state for contesting a notice alleging it failed to satisfactorily comply with the certification, should the state elect to do so.

IV. Considerations and alternatives before PHMSA rejects a state's certification

Before rejecting a state certification, PHMSA's Associate Administrator, OPS, may take other appropriate action to achieve adequate compliance with the certification, which may include:

A. The Director of State Programs may issue a letter to the State Senior Official responsible for the pipeline safety program identifying the state's deficiencies and warning the state to make certain improvements or take other actions necessary to maintain the state's certification with PHMSA.

B. PHMSA may notify the state in writing of the proposed action(s) to reject, suspend, or modify a state's certificate and provide that the matter may be resolved once PHMSA verifies that the evidence submitted by the state demonstrates completion of the following:

   1. corrected the deficiencies,

   2. complied with the required corrective action(s), or

   3. a written agreement to correct the deficiencies within the time specified by PHMSA; or on or before the end of the suspension period.

C. After giving the state an opportunity to respond, PHMSA may:

   1. temporarily suspend the state's certificate, if PHMSA determined that the deficiency can be corrected within a reasonable amount of time;

   2. allow states, deemed to have failed to satisfactorily comply with the certification requirements, the opportunity to enhance their programs and to demonstrate their adequacy through periodic reviews; or

   3. convert a state certification to a 49 U.S.C. § 60106 agreement, which reduces the state's pipeline safety responsibility.

D. A state may give up its certificate prior to a final action by PHMSA to reject the state's certificate. The state may do this by sending a certified letter of intent to relinquish all pipeline safety responsibilities to the Associate Administrator, OPS. The letter should include a brief explanation with a description of any outstanding or active inspections and enforcement activities, and include a statement that the state understands and agrees that by relinquishing the certification PHMSA will assume responsibility for intrastate pipeline safety.

E. PHMSA may take steps to reject a state's certification if the state failed to demonstrate that it made improvements or took other actions required by PHMSA to maintain the state's certification.

V. PHMSA's rejection of a state's certification

When PHMSA finds that a state has such deficiencies in its pipeline safety program that it is not satisfactorily complying with the certification requirements, then PHMSA may initiate

action to reject a state's certification. PHMSA must document the basis for an allegation that a state failed to satisfactorily comply with the certification requirements.

VI. Unsatisfactory Compliance Elements

Below are illustrative examples of nonconformance. A state program may be considered unsatisfactory if the state engages in one or more of these (as circumstances warrant):

A. Substantially failed to conform to the requirements detailed in its certification or the statute when the state:

- Failed to have regulatory jurisdiction over the standards and practices prescribed by the certification and statute,
- Failed consistently to take enforcement or corrective action after finding significant violations of pipeline safety laws and regulation,
- Failed to adopt regulations at least as stringent as the minimum Federal regulations,
- Failed to provide adequate oversight through ways that include inspections conducted by State employees that meet the qualifications prescribed by the statute,
- Failed to encourage and promote the establishment of a damage prevention program to prevent excavation damage to pipelines, to which the certification applies, subjecting persons who violate the program requirements to civil penalties and other enforcement actions substantially the same as prescribed by the statute,
- Failed to provide for the enforcement of record maintenance, reporting, and inspection substantially the same as provided in the statute, or

B. Failed to provide for the enforcement of safety standards under a state law by injunctive relief and civil penalties substantially the same as provided in the statute.

C. Has been unable to have the majority of inspectors successfully complete requisite pipeline safety training conducted by PHMSA.

D. Engaged in any behavior that gives PHMSA reason to believe the state has not satisfactorily complied with the certification requirements or statute.

E. Performance indicators, such as incident rates in combination with corrective actions, indicate the state is not satisfactorily meeting the intent of the safety oversight program.

VII. Adjudication Process and Procedures: Notice of Intent to Reject a State's Certification/Show Cause Order

When PHMSA determines that a state has such deficiencies in its pipeline safety program that it is not satisfactorily complying with the certification requirements, PHMSA must notify the state of its intent to reject the state's certification and provide an opportunity for a hearing before taking final action. PHMSA's Associate Administrator, OPS, may initiate the proceedings by serving Notice on the State with an order to show cause why the state's certificate should not be rejected. The Notice must include the basis for each allegation that a state failed to satisfactorily comply with the certification requirements. When Notice is given, the state bears the burden of proof that it is enforcing satisfactorily compliance with the prescribed standards. The Notice shall provide an opportunity for the state to appear at a hearing to show cause why PHMSA should not reject its certificate or to show cause why it has not completed any required action(s) identified in written correspondence from PHMSA.

The show cause order shall provide:

- a time and place for the hearing and shall be served upon the state to give evidence upon the matter specified therein
- contain a statement(s) of the matters or allegations with respect to which PHMSA is inquiring;
- notify the state they bear the burden of proof for enforcing satisfactorily compliance with the prescribed standards
- notice and opportunity for the state to respond to any allegation(s) that it has not satisfactorily enforced compliance with safety standards in accordance with 49 U.S.C. Chapter 60101 *et seq*.
- PHMSA may dismiss a Notice to show cause before issuing a final order based on evidence that the state has taken action to address the alleged deficiencies
- the state appear no less than twenty business days after the receipt of such order, except where the safety of life, environment or property is involved, PHMSA may provide in the order for a shorter period of time to appear
- an extension of time may be granted upon a written request timely submitted by the state demonstrating good cause for an extension
- notice and opportunity to be represented by counsel at the hearing.
- notice and opportunity for the state to present witnesses, and submit any relevant explanations, information and material during a hearing.
- an opportunity to present evidence on any allegation(s)
- PHMSA to make publicly available all notices, findings and determinations.
- an opportunity for the state to petition for reconsideration of the final determination[process to be further defined]

PHMSA shall make a final written determination, including the reasons for the decision. PHMSA will notify the state of its final determination, including a brief statement of the reason(s) why the state's certificate should or should not be rejected, or whether other appropriate action may be taken.

VIII. Adverse Action

Any adverse action taken by PHMSA against a state may impact the state's grant funding.

IX. Reinstatement of State Certification

A decertified State may apply for certification to PHMSA and must provide supporting documentation that the state meets certification requirements.

A. A state applying for reinstatement must provide evidence of compliance with all certification requirements, at least 30 days prior to the next grant application/certification opportunity.

B. PHMSA will respond to such requests and perform an adequacy review in a timely manner.

C. PHMSA may not consider an untimely application for reinstatement or an application that failed to include all evidence of compliance at least 30 days prior to the next grant application/certification opportunity.

D. PHMSA may grant a request to reinstate a state's certification upon such showing by the state that it has improved its pipeline safety program to an adequate level.

Relevant Contacts

Office of Pipeline Safety - Zach Barrett, Director of State Programs

Linda Daugherty, Deputy AA Policy & Programs

Office of Chief Counsel – Deputy Chief Counsel

Chief Counsel

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix Q

STATE PERFORMANCE CRITERIA (Natural Gas)

I. RATING FROM STATE EVALUATION (50 PERCENT OF SCORE)

II. SELECTED INFORMATION FROM STATE PROGRESS REPORT/AGREEMENT (50 PERCENT OF SCORE)

A. Extent of Intrastate Safety Jurisdiction (12 Points)

(Progress Report Attachment 1)

N = Number of operator types over which state has jurisdiction
M = Number of operator types located in state

60105 State: N/M x 12 60106 State: N/M x 12 x .5

Distribution
1. Private
2. Municipal
3. Master Meter
4. LP Gas
5. LNG Plants

Transmission
6. Intrastate

Other
7. Gathering Lines (jurisdictional)
8. Offshore Facilities (state waters)

B. Inspector Qualifications (8 POINTS)

(Progress Report Attachment 7, 7a)

8 - Highest percentage of inspectors in categories I and II
4 - Highest percentage of inspectors in categories I, II and III
0 - Highest percentage of inspectors in categories III, IV and V

C. Number of Inspection Person-Days (9 POINTS)

(Progress Report Attachment 2)

9 - Meets or exceeds the recommended number of inspection person-days.
5 - Comes within 25 percent of meeting the recommended number of inspection person-days (achieved 75 percent or above of recommended number).
3 - Meets less than 75 percent but at least 50 percent of the recommended number of inspection person-days (achieved 50 to 75 percent of recommended number).
0 - Meets less than 50 percent of recommended number of inspection person-days (achieved under 50 percent of recommended number).

D. <u>State Adoption of Maximum Civil Penalty Requirement</u> (2 POINTS)
(Progress Report Attachment 8, Section I, Item 1)

2 -Adopted $100,000/day; up to $1,000,000
1 -Taking steps to adopts (has filed draft legislation)
0 -Not Adopted

E. <u>State Adoption of Applicable Federal Regulations</u>[1] (8 POINTS)
(Progress Report Attachment 8, Section I, Items 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6)

8 - Adopted within 24 months of effective date (or two general sessions of the state legislature, whichever is longer).
5 - Taking steps to adopt (has filed draft legislation).
3 - Adopted all regulations within required time frame except one -- where continuing opposition has blocked adoption and state is not presently attempting to adopt.
0 - Not Adopted within 36 months of effective date.

F. <u>One Call System Minimum Requirements under Part 198</u>[2] (8 POINTS)
(Progress Report Attachment 8 Section III)

1.5 - Mandatory coverage of areas having pipeline facilities
0.5 - Qualification for operation of one-call system
1.5 - Mandatory excavator notification of one-call center
0.5 - State determination whether calls to center are toll free
1.5 - Mandatory intrastate pipeline operator participation
1.0 - Mandatory operator response to notification
1.0 - Mandatory notification of excavators/public
0.5 - Civil penalties/injunctive relief substantially same as DOT

G. <u>State Attendance at NAPSR Regional Meeting</u> (3 POINTS)
(Progress Report Attachment 8, Section III)

3 - Attended full time (lead rep or alternate pipeline program staff)
1 - Attended less than full time
0 - No one attended

H. <u>Penalty Points</u>

-2 - State CY Progress Report not received at PHMSA HQ by due date
-4 - points assigned if over 1 month late

1 Applicable Federal regulation for five year period will be listed in Progress Report attachments
2 Established under state law by statute, regulation, license, Progress Report, order, or any combination of these legal means

STATE PERFORMANCE CRITERIA (Hazardous Liquid)

I. RATING FROM STATE EVALUATION (50 PERCENT OF SCORE)

II. SELECTED INFORMATION FROM STATE PROGRESS REPORT/AGREEMENT (50 PERCENT OF SCORE)

A. Extent of Intrastate Safety Jurisdiction (12 Points)

(Progress Report Attachment 1)

N = Number of operator types over which state has jurisdiction
M = Number of operator types located in state

60105 State: N/M x 12 60106 State: N/M x 12 x .5

1. Petroleum and Petroleum Products
2. Anhydrous Ammonia
3. Carbon Dioxide

B. Inspector Qualifications (8 POINTS)

(Progress Report Attachment 7, 7a)

8 - Highest percentage of inspectors in categories I and II
4 - Highest percentage of inspectors in categories I, II and III
0 - Highest percentage of inspectors in categories III, IV and V

C. Number of Inspection Person-Days (9 POINTS)

(Progress Report Attachment 2)

9 - Meets or exceeds the recommended number of inspection person-days.
5 - Comes within 25 percent of meeting the recommended number of inspection person-days (achieved 75 percent or above of recommended number).
3 - Meets less than 75 percent but at least 50 percent of the recommended number of inspection person-days (achieved 50 to 75 percent of recommended number).
0 - Meets less than 50 percent of recommended number of inspection person-days (achieved under 50 percent of recommended number).

D. State Adoption of Maximum Civil Penalty Requirement (2 POINTS)

(Progress Report Attachment 8, Section I, Item 1)

2 -Adopted $100,000/day; up to $1,000,000
1 -Taking steps to adopts (has filed draft legislation)
0 -Not Adopted

E. State Adoption of Applicable Federal Regulations[1] (8 POINTS)
(Progress Report Attachment 8, Section I, Items 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6)

8 - Adopted within 24 months of effective date (or two general sessions of the state legislature, whichever is longer).
5 - Taking steps to adopt (has filed draft legislation).
3 - Adopted all regulations within required time frame except one -- where continuing opposition has blocked adoption and state is not presently attempting to adopt.
0 - Not Adopted within 36 months of effective date.

F. One Call System Minimum Requirements under Part 198[2] (8 POINTS)
(Progress Report Attachment 8 Section III)

1.5 - Mandatory coverage of areas having pipeline facilities
0.5 - Qualification for operation of one-call system
1.5 - Mandatory excavator notification of one-call center
0.5 - State determination whether calls to center are toll free
1.5 - Mandatory intrastate pipeline operator participation
1.0 - Mandatory operator response to notification
1.0 - Mandatory notification of excavators/public
0.5 - Civil penalties/injunctive relief substantially same as DOT

G. State Attendance at NAPSR Regional Meeting (3 POINTS)
(Progress Report Attachment 8, Section III)

3 - Attended full time (lead rep or alternate pipeline program staff)
1 - Attended less than full time
0 - No one attended

H. Penalty Points

-2 - State CY Progress Report not received at PHMSA HQ by due date
-4 - points assigned if over 1 month late

1 Applicable Federal regulation for five year period will be listed in Progress Report attachments
2 Established under state law by statute, regulation, license, Progress Report, order, or any combination of these legal means

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix R

National Transportation Safety Board
Washington, D.C. 20594

Pipeline Accident Brief

Accident No.:	DCA-99-MP-004
Type of System:	Natural gas service line
Type of Accident:	Rupture, explosion, and fire
Location:	Bridgeport, Alabama
Date and Time:	January 22, 1999, 10:02 a.m. CST
Owner/Operator:	Utilities Board of the City of Bridgeport
Property Damage and Losses:	$1.4 million
Fatalities:	3
Injuries:	6
Material Released:	Natural gas
Pressure:	35 psig
Type of Failure:	Excavation damage
Component Affected:	¾-inch steel gas service line

The Accident

On January 22, 1999, while digging a trench behind a building at 406 Alabama Avenue, a backhoe operator damaged a ¾-inch steel natural gas service line and a 1-inch water service line. This resulted in two leaks in the natural gas service line, which was operated at 35 psig. One leak occurred where the backhoe bucket had contacted and pulled the natural gas service line. (See figure 1.) The other was a physical separation of the gas service line at an underground joint near the meter, which was close to the building. Gas migrated into the building at 406 Alabama Avenue, where it ignited about 10:02 a.m. An explosion followed, destroying three buildings: 404, 406, and 408 Alabama Avenue (see figure 2). Other buildings within a two-block area of the explosion sustained significant damage. Three fatalities, five serious injuries,[1] and one minor injury resulted from this accident.

[1] According to the Jackson County Coroner, on March 23, 2000, 14 months and 1 day after the accident, one of the seriously injured persons died as a result of injuries sustained in the explosion. In accordance with 49 *Code of Federal Regulations* (CFR) 830.2, his injuries continue to be classified as "serious" for reporting purposes. Title 49 CFR 830.2 defines fatal injury as "any injury which results in death *within 30 days* of the accident."

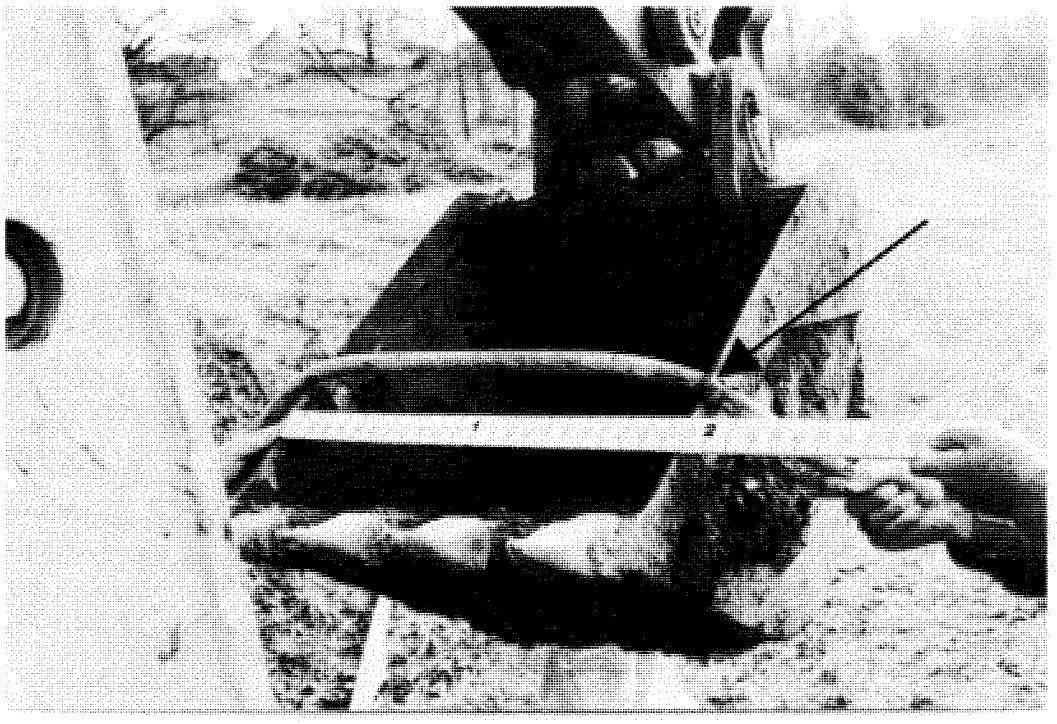

Figure 1. Damaged section of the gas service line to 406 Alabama Avenue. *(Arrow shows leak location. Note how the bowed area corresponds with the width of a backhoe bucket.)*

Figure 2. Damage to 404, 406, and 408 Alabama Avenue

Preaccident Events

The owner of R&B Construction (R&B) told investigators that the owner of 408 Alabama Avenue had hired R&B to dig a trench from an electric pole behind 404 Alabama Avenue to his building for an underground electric service cable. (See figure 3.) The owner of R&B told investigators that he had not planned beforehand to dig the trench to 408 Alabama Avenue on the morning of the accident and that he did not call the Alabama Line Location Center, Inc.[2] However, when a part-time employee, who had operated a backhoe for R&B in the past, arrived at the R&B office the morning of January 22 looking for work, the owner of R&B decided to have the employee dig the trench that day.

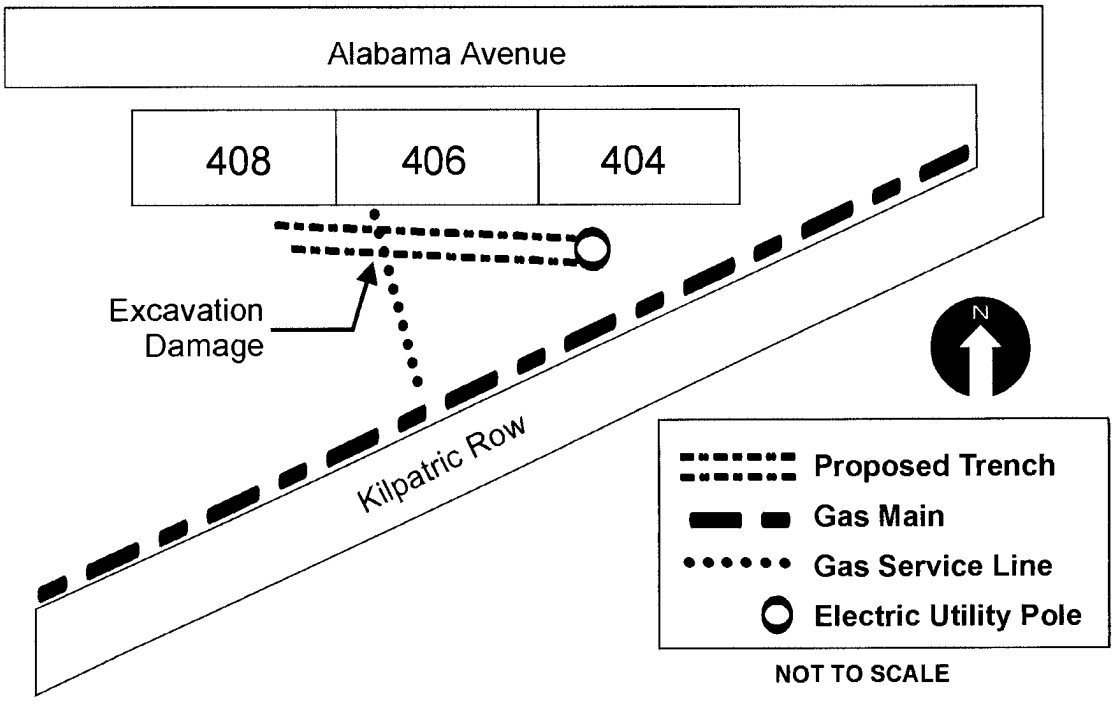

Figure 3. Schematic of accident area

The owner of R&B was a full-time employee of the Utilities Board of the City of Bridgeport (Utilities Board) at the time of the accident.[3] He and a Utilities Board coworker, who was the acting supervisor of the Utilities Board field personnel on the morning of the accident, told Safety Board investigators that on the way to work that morning, they located and marked the gas and water service lines for the trenching

[2] Since the accident, the Alabama Line Location Center has been redesignated Alabama One Call.

[3] The Utilities Board owns and operates Bridgeport's water and natural gas distribution systems.

activity. The owner of R&B told investigators that blue paint was used to mark both service lines because that was the only paint that they had.[4] Upon their arrival the day after the explosion, Safety Board investigators could not find any blue or other line markings on the ground at the accident scene. Representatives from the Alabama Public Service Commission and the Alabama State Fire Marshals Office also did not observe any markings on the ground when they arrived at the accident scene within hours of the explosion.

The owner of R&B and the acting supervisor left the excavation site about 8:15 a.m. to go to the Utilities Board shop. They told investigators that, before they left, they had asked the owner of 408 Alabama Avenue to watch the backhoe operator. The R&B backhoe operator arrived at the excavation site some time after 8:15 a.m. While digging the trench, the backhoe operator damaged the underground gas and water service lines to 406 Alabama Avenue, resulting in leaks in the water and gas service lines. About 9:15 a.m., the owner of 408 Alabama Avenue went to the Utilities Board office at 513 Alabama Avenue and reported the excavation damage. He then returned to the excavation site. The General Manager of the Utilities Board said the owner of 408 Alabama Avenue reported that the water line and possibly the gas line were damaged.

The Utilities Board paged its field personnel between 9:18 and 9:22 a.m. Shortly afterward, five Utilities Board employees responded to the excavation site from three locations to locate and repair the leaks. One of the Utilities Board employees told Safety Board investigators that upon his arrival at the accident scene, the R&B backhoe operator showed him where he had wrapped black tape over the leak in the gas service line. In addition, he and other Utilities Board employees noticed that water was running on the ground. They could hear the hissing of leaking gas and smell a strong natural gas odor in the general area.

The Utilities Board employee who was the acting supervisor turned the water off so that field personnel could excavate and locate the leak. The acting supervisor could see a portion of the pulled gas service line above ground and said that he suspected that the gas service line was severed at some point. Though the acting supervisor could hear the gas blowing and see the gas bubbling from the water in the excavated ditch, he did not know the direction in which the gas was blowing. He told investigators that he "was hoping" that the line was pulled off at the main and that the gas was blowing up into the air. He added that he believed the leak was routine and the situation was safe. The Utilities Board employees did not check for gas migrating underground or accumulating in buildings and did not stop the flow of gas. After the acting supervisor turned off the water, a Utilities Board employee started digging to remove water and soil from the trench with a backhoe. By this time, the owner of R&B, because he was a Utilities Board employee and was paged, had arrived at the excavation site.

[4] The Superintendent of the Utilities Board told Safety Board investigators that the Utilities Board uses yellow paint to mark gas lines and blue paint to mark water lines.

Shortly after the Utilities Board backhoe operator started digging, the building at 406 Alabama Avenue exploded. The owner of 408 Alabama Avenue, the R&B backhoe operator, and a Utilities Board employee received fatal injuries. Five other people, including a bystander, received serious injuries, and one person received a minor injury.

The Alabama State Fire Marshals Office determined that the likely source of ignition for the accumulated natural gas was a gas-fired heater at 406 Alabama Avenue, which had an active pilot light at the time of explosion.[5] The Superintendent of the Utilities Board estimated that within 5 to 10 minutes after the explosion he had closed two valves on the 4-inch natural gas main feeding the natural gas to the broken service line.

R&B Construction

R&B is a small construction company that employs part-time employees. At the time of the accident, it did not have employee qualification and training records or written procedures for excavating near underground utility lines.

Recognizing that damages to underground facilities are usually preventable, and most frequently occur due to a breakdown in the damage prevention process, Government and industry have been working to identify and validate existing best practices for preventing damage to underground facilities. The resulting *Common Ground* study of one-call systems and damage prevention best practices[6] discusses, among other best practices, the need to "call before you dig." The study recommends, "Unless otherwise specified in state law, the excavator calls the one-call center at least two working days and no more than ten working days prior to beginning excavation."[7] It also recommends that an excavator observe a "tolerance zone" that includes the width of the facility plus 18 inches on either side and asks that excavators exercise reasonable care when excavating within the tolerance zone to protect the underground facilities.

---

[5] Although the gas line had separated underground, the compacted earth surrounding the line would have provided a path that allowed continued gas flow sufficient to have fueled the pilot light.

[6] *Common Ground: Study of One-Call Systems and Damage Prevention Best Practices*, U.S. Department of Transportation, Research and Special Programs Administration, Office of Pipeline Safety, Washington, D.C., August 1999. The *Common Ground* study, as authorized by the *Transportation Equity Act for the 21st Century* (TEA 21), was prepared by more than 160 individuals representing a wide range of interests, organizations, and viewpoints on preventing damage to underground utilities. A nonprofit organization, the Common Ground Alliance, has been formed to implement the best practices discussed in the *Common Ground* study.

[7] Alabama State law is similar to this recommendation.

Bridgeport Utilities Board Procedures for Responding to Pipeline Emergencies

The Utilities Board's written emergency procedures in effect at the time of the January 22, 1999, accident instruct service personnel to "...evaluate the extent of the emergency, request assistance as needed, and inform the manager if necessary." The procedures further direct service personnel to:

> Evacuate and secure the area if necessary. Actions should be directed towards protecting people *first* and then property.
>
> ...If, in the opinion of the person in charge, the emergency is so severe that immediate shutdown is imperative, he may do so without clearance from the Manager.

However, the procedures do not instruct employees responding to a reported leak to consider the possibility of multiple leaks, check for gas accumulation in nearby buildings, and, if necessary, to take steps to promptly stop the flow of gas.

During its annual inspections of the Utilities Board, the Alabama Public Service Commission did not identify any deficiencies in the Utility Board's emergency procedures. Since the accident, the emergency procedures have been changed only to update the names, addresses, and phone numbers of contact persons and employees.

Probable Cause

The National Transportation Safety Board determines that the probable cause of the accident was the failure of R&B Construction to establish and follow safe procedures for excavation activities, resulting in damage to a ¾-inch natural gas service line, and the failure of the Utilities Board of the City of Bridgeport to provide appropriate emergency response to the resulting natural gas leak.

Adopted: November 28, 2000

National Transportation Safety Board

Washington, D.C. 20594

Safety Recommendation

Date: December 15, 2000

In reply refer to: P-00-20 and -21

Honorable Kelley S. Coyner
Administrator
Research and Special Programs Administration
400 Seventh Street, S.W.
Washington, D.C. 20590

On January 22, 1999, while digging a trench behind a building at 406 Alabama Avenue, a backhoe operator damaged a 3/4-inch steel natural gas service line and 1-inch water service line, both of which were underground. This resulted in two leaks in the natural gas service line, which was operated at 35 psig. One leak occurred where the backhoe bucket had contacted and pulled the natural gas service line. The other was a physical separation of the gas service line at an underground joint near the meter, which was close to the building. Gas migrated into the building at 406 Alabama Avenue, where it ignited about 10:02 a.m. An explosion[1] followed, destroying three buildings: 404, 406, and 408 Alabama Avenue. Other buildings within a two-block area of the explosion were significantly damaged. Three fatalities, five serious injuries,[2] and one minor injury resulted from this accident.

The National Transportation Safety Board determined that the probable cause of the accident was the failure of R&B Construction (R&B) to establish and follow safe procedures for excavation activities, resulting in damage to a 3/4-inch gas service line, and the failure of the Utilities Board of the City of Bridgeport (Utilities Board) to provide appropriate emergency response to the subsequent natural gas leak.

The Utilities Board paged its field personnel shortly after the leak was reported, between 9:18 and 9:22 a.m. Shortly afterward, five Utilities Board employees responded to the excavation site from three locations to locate and repair the leaks. One of the Utilities Board employees told Safety Board investigators that upon his arrival at the accident scene, the R&B backhoe operator showed him where he had wrapped black tape over the leak in the gas service line. In addition, he and other Utilities Board employees noticed that water was running on the

[1] For additional information, read Pipeline Accident Brief—*Natural Gas Pipeline Rupture, Explosion, and Fire, Bridgeport, Alabama, January 22, 1999* (NTSB/PAB-00/01).

[2] According to the Jackson County Coroner, on March 23, 2000, 14 months and 1 day after the accident, one of the seriously injured persons died as a result of injuries sustained in the explosion. In accordance with 49 *Code of Federal Regulations* (CFR) 830.2, his injuries continue to be classified as "serious" for reporting purposes. 49 CFR 830.2 defines fatal injury as "any injury which results in death *within 30 days* of the accident."

ground. They could hear the hissing of leaking gas and smell a strong natural gas odor in the general area.

The Utilities Board employee who was the acting supervisor turned the water off so that field personnel could excavate and locate the leak. The acting supervisor could see a portion of the pulled gas service line above ground and said that he suspected that the gas service line was severed at some point. Though the acting supervisor could hear the gas blowing and see the gas bubbling from the water in the excavated ditch, he did not know the direction in which the gas was blowing. He told investigators that he "was hoping" that the line was pulled off at the main and that the gas was blowing up into the air. He added that he believed the leak was routine and the situation was safe. The Utilities Board employees did not check for gas migrating underground or accumulating in buildings and did not stop the flow of gas. After the acting supervisor turned off the water, a Utilities Board employee started digging to remove water and soil from the trench with a backhoe.

Shortly after the Utilities Board backhoe operator started digging, the building at 406 Alabama Avenue exploded. The Alabama State Fire Marshals Office determined that the likely source of ignition for the accumulated natural gas was a gas-fired heater at 406 Alabama Avenue, which had an active pilot light at the time of the explosion.[3] The Superintendent of the Utilities Board estimated that within 5 to 10 minutes after the explosion he had closed two valves on the 4-inch natural gas main feeding the natural gas to the broken service line.

The Utilities Board's written emergency procedures in effect at the time of the January 22, 1999, accident instruct service personnel to "...evaluate the extent of the emergency, request assistance as needed, and inform the manager if necessary." The procedures further direct service personnel to:

> Evacuate and secure the area if necessary. Actions should be directed towards protecting people *first* and then property.
>
> ...If, in the opinion of the person in charge, the emergency is so severe that immediate shutdown is imperative, he may do so without clearance from the Manager.

However, the procedures do not instruct employees responding to a reported leak to consider the possibility of multiple leaks, check for gas accumulation in nearby buildings, and, if necessary, to take steps to promptly stop the flow of gas.

During its annual inspections of the Utilities Board, the Alabama Public Service Commission did not identify any deficiencies in the Utility Board's emergency procedures. Since the accident, the emergency procedures have been changed only to update the names, addresses, and phone numbers of contact persons and employees.

---

[3] Although the gas line had separated underground, the compacted earth surrounding the line would have provided a path that allowed continued gas flow sufficient to have fueled the pilot light.

The Safety Board made recommendations on July 18, 2000,[4] to RSPA, the Occupational Safety and Health Administration, and five utility trade organizations about raising the awareness of utility workers to call 911 or other local emergency number immediately if damage results in a gas leak. The Safety Board concludes the Bridgeport accident illustrates that pipeline operators may also need improved procedures to inform utility workers about the dangers of multiple leaks and of the underground migration of gas from excavation sites into nearby buildings. The Safety Board understands that RSPA is now revising the audit forms used to evaluate the State utility commissions to include such procedures. To ensure that procedures for responding to gas leaks are appropriately reviewed, the Safety Board recommends that the Research and Special Programs Administration:

> Inform natural gas pipeline operators of the circumstances of the January 22, 1999, accident in Bridgeport, Alabama. Further, advise operators to review their emergency plans and procedures for responding to gas pipeline emergencies and modify them as necessary. The review should determine whether the procedures prompt the appropriate actions for gas leaks caused by excavation damage near buildings and whether the procedures adequately address the possibility of multiple leaks and the underground migration of gas into nearby buildings. (P-00-20)

> Evaluate, during annual inspections of utilities, the adequacy of operator emergency plans and written procedures for responding to gas pipeline emergencies, paying particular attention to procedures that address the possible migration of gas from excavation sites into nearby buildings. If warranted, require that operators modify the procedures. (P-00-21)

The Safety Board also issued safety recommendations to the Alabama Public Service Commission, Alabama One Call, the Utilities Board of the City of Bridgeport, and R&B Construction. Please refer to Safety Recommendations P-00-20 and -21 in your reply. If you need additional information, you may call (202) 314-6170.

Acting Chairman HALL and Members HAMMERSCHMIDT, GOGLIA, BLACK, and CARMODY concurred in these recommendations.

Original Signed

By: Jim Hall
Acting Chairman

---

[4] For additional information, read Pipeline Accident Report—*Natural Gas Pipeline Rupture and Subsequent Explosion in St. Cloud, Minnesota, December 11, 1998* (NTSB/PAR-00/01).

Advisory Bulletin ADB-01-02

May 16, 2001

[Notices][Page 28027]

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

Research and Special Programs Administration

Pipeline Safety: Emergency Plans and Procedures for Responding to Multiple Gas Leaks and Migration of Gas Into Buildings

AGENCY: Research and Special Programs Administration (RSPA), DOT.

ACTION: Notice; issuance of an advisory bulletin.

SUMMARY: The Office of Pipeline Safety (OPS) is issuing this advisory to owners and operators of gas pipeline distribution systems. Owners and operators should review their emergency plans and procedures to determine whether the procedures prompt the appropriate actions for gas leaks caused by excavation damage near buildings, and whether the procedures adequately address the possibility of multiple leaks and the underground migration of gas into nearby buildings.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Marvin Fell, (202) 366-6205, or by e-mail, marvin.fell@rspa.dot.gov. This document can be viewed at the OPS home page at http://ops.dot.gov.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

I. Background

On January 22, 1999, while excavating a trench behind a building in the downtown area of Bridgeport, Alabama, a backhoe operator damaged a natural gas service line. This resulted in two leaks on the natural gas service line, which was operating at a pressure of 35 pounds per square inch (psig). One leak occurred where the backhoe bucket contacted the gas service line and pulled it aboveground. Although the second leak was not visible, the ensuing investigation revealed that the natural gas service line was separated at an underground joint near the gas meter, and close to a building. As a result, natural gas migrated into the building. The gas ignited, destroying three downtown buildings in a two square block area. The incident resulted in four fatalities and five injuries.

The National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB) investigated this incident and determined that the probable cause of the accident was (1) the failure of the construction contractor to establish and follow safe procedures for excavation activities, resulting in damage to the \3/4\-inch steel natural gas service line and (2) the failure of the operator to provide appropriate emergency response to the subsequent natural gas leak.

The operator's written emergency procedures in effect at the time of the accident instructed service

personnel to ``* * * evaluate the extent of the emergency, request assistance as needed, and to inform the manager if necessary." However, the procedures did not instruct employees responding to a reported leak to consider the possibility of multiple leaks, check for gas accumulation in nearby buildings, and, if necessary, take steps to promptly stop the flow of gas.

II. Advisory Bulletin (ADB-01-02)

To: Owners and Operators of Gas Distribution Systems.

Subject: Emergency Plans and Procedures for Responding to Multiple Gas Leaks and Migration of Gas into Buildings

Purpose: To advise owners and operators of gas distribution pipeline systems to review their emergency plans and procedures to determine whether the procedures prompt the appropriate actions for gas leaks caused by excavation damage near buildings, and whether the procedures adequately address the possibility of multiple leaks and the underground migration of gas into nearby buildings.

Advisory: Owners and operators of gas distribution systems should ensure that their emergency plans and procedures require employees who respond to gas leaks to consider the possibility of multiple leaks, to check for gas accumulation in nearby buildings, and, if necessary, to take steps to promptly stop the flow of gas. These procedures should be communicated to both employee and contractor personnel who are responsible for emergency response to pipeline incidents.

Issued in Washington, DC on May 16, 2001.

Jeffrey D. Wiese,

Manager, Program Development, Office of Pipeline Safety.

[FR Doc. 01-12717 Filed 5-18-01; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 4910-60-P

NATIONAL TRANSPORTATION SAFETY BOARD
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20594

Pipeline Accident Brief No. DCA90FP001

6 AUG 1991

System Type:	Distribution
Accident Type:	Explosion and Fire
Location:	421-423 North Fifth Street Allentown, Pennsylvania
Date:	August 29, 1990
Time:	0513 local daylight time
Owner/Operator:	UGI Corporation (UGI)
Property Damage:	$300,000
Injuries:	1 Fatal 9 Nonfatal
Material Released:	Natural Gas
Pressure:	0.32 psig. (9 inches water column)
Type Failure:	Overstress
Component Affected:	Cast-Iron Main

Description of the Accident

A natural gas explosion and fire destroyed two row houses at 421-423 North Fifth Street and damaged two adjacent houses and three parked cars in Allentown, Pennsylvania. Two of the injured were fire fighters.

Three hours before the accident, a police officer advised the Allentown after-hours dispatcher that water was leaking through pavement cracks in front of 421 North Fifth Street. The officer said that he believed that repairs could be deferred until the next day. Minutes after 5 a.m., a North Fifth Street resident notified the city of a gas odor in the area of 421 North Fifth Street and at 5:09 p.m., police and fire personnel arrived at the location. Four minutes later, the explosion occurred. Fire fighters and police evacuated residents from houses in the danger zone, and to eliminate potential gas leaks from piping in adjacent residences, they entered houses to close the gas valves at inside meter sets. When UGI employees arrived at 5:30 a.m., they began searching for leaking gas and discovered that several gas valves had not been turned off. They then shut off gas to the residences at the key-operated curb valves and then at meters where valves had not previously been closed. The UGI employees then continued their search for the source of the gas leak and discovered a broken cast-iron main beneath the street.

Investigation disclosed that water leaking from a cracked 6-inch cast-iron municipal water main had eroded the soil foundation beneath a 4-inch cast-iron UGI gas main. The gas main subsequently cracked due soil loads from above, releasing natural gas beneath the pavement. The gas migrated

through the soil and into the basement of 423 North Fifth Street, where it was ignited, exploded, and burned.

Excavation after the accident revealed that both the 6-inch cast-iron municipal water main and the 4-inch cast-iron UGI gas pipeline had cracked circumferentially. Sections of each of the pipelines were sent to the Safety Board's laboratory for metallurgical analysis. Analysis revealed that both mains contained areas of significant graphitic corrosion that weakened them. The failure of the gas pipe was inevitable even had the water not eroded its soil foundation because one area of the gas pipe wall was fully graphitized.

Numerous factors, individually and/or synergistically, have contributed to the integrity reduction and failure of Allentown, Pennsylvania's cast-iron gas and water mains, most of which were installed in the late 1800s and early 1900s. These include: leaks from storm and sewer lines, water migrating or percolating through the soil, karst development, sinkholes, graphitization, shifting and cracking pavement, increased traffic load, and overburden stress.

Probable Cause

The National Transportation Safety Board determines that the probable cause of the natural gas explosion and subsequent fire, involving the overstress fracture of an undermined and weakened segment of cast-iron gas main, was the failure of the UGI Corporation to adequately monitor the condition of its gas system and to timely replace cast-iron segments weakened by graphitic corrosion.

Recommendations

As a result of its investigation, the National Transportation Safety Board made the following recommendations:

--to the Research and Special Programs Administration:

> Require each gas operator to implement a program, based on factors such as age, pipe diameter, operating pressure, soil corrosiveness, existing graphitic damage, leak history, burial depth, and external loading, to identify and replace in a planned, timely manner cast-iron piping systems that may threaten public safety. (Class II, Priority Action)(P-91-12)

--to the UGI Corporation:

> Provide initial and recurrent training to local government emergency response personnel on how to control natural gas in emergency situations, including how to locate, identify, and operate outside key-operated shutoff valves. (Class II, Priority Action) (P-91-13)

Implement a comprehensive gas system surveillance program that: (1) identifies the type of data to be collected on gas system failures, gas leakage surveys, changes in corrosion protection levels, and abnormal operating and maintenance conditions; (2) establishes the type and frequency of analyses to be performed for identifying potentially unsafe conditions; and (3) specifies the corrective action to be taken. (Class II, Priority Action) (P-91-14)

Implement a cast-iron pipe replacement program, based on factors such as age, pipe diameter, operating pressure, soil corrosiveness, existing graphitic damage, leak history, burial depth, and external loading, to identify and replace in a planned, timely manner cast- iron piping systems that may threaten public safety. (Class II, Priority Action) (P-91-15)

Document the location of underground voids discovered during excavations and coordinate with the City of Allentown to develop systematic procedures for centrally reporting, documenting, and exchanging information on the location of underground voids. Class II, Priority Action)(P-91-16)

--to the National Association of Regulatory Utility Commissioners:

Encourage its member states to require that each gas operator implement a program, based on factors such as age, pipe diameter, operating pressure, soil corrosiveness, existing graphitic damage, leak history, burial depth, and external loading, to identify and replace in a planned, timely manner cast-iron piping systems that may threaten public safety. (Class II, Priority Action)(P-91-17)

--to the City of Allentown:

Coordinate with the UGI Corporation to obtain initial and recurrent training for emergency response personnel on controlling natural gas in emergency situations, including how to locate, identify, and operate outside key-operated shutoff valves. (Class II, Priority Action) (P-91-18)

Coordinate with known underground facility operators in the immediate Allentown vicinity to develop systematic procedures for centrally reporting, documenting, and exchanging information on the location of underground voids discovered through excavations or other means. (Class II, Priority Action)(P-91-19)

National Transportation Safety Board
Washington, D.C. 20594

Pipeline Accident Brief

Accident No.:	DCA-97-FP-005
Type of System:	Transmission pipeline
Type of Accident:	Rupture and fire
Location:	Indianapolis, Indiana
Date and Time:	July 21, 1997; 2:33 p.m. CST
Owner/Operator:	Citizens Gas & Coke Utility
Property Damage and Losses:	In excess of $2 million
Fatalities:	1
Injuries:	1
Evacuated:	75
Material Released:	Natural gas
Pressure:	310 psig
Type of Failure:	Excavation damage
Component Affected:	20-inch-diameter buried steel transmission pipeline

The Accident

About 2:33 p.m. on July 21, 1997, a 20-inch-diameter steel natural gas transmission pipeline owned and operated by Citizens Gas & Coke Utility Company (Citizens Gas) ruptured and released natural gas near an intersection adjoining the Charter Pointe subdivision in Indianapolis, Indiana. The gas ignited and burned, killing one resident and injuring another. About 75 residents required temporary shelter. Six homes were destroyed, and about 65 others sustained damage significant enough to be documented by the local investigation team.

The pipeline had not been under full internal pressure since March 31, 1997, when the pressure was reduced to approximately 30 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) in anticipation of road construction work in the area.[1] On May 19, 1997, a directional drilling operation had been performed to install an 8-inch-diameter steel natural gas distribution main parallel to the transmission pipeline. About 1 hour and 40 minutes before the rupture, Citizens Gas had begun to return the 20-inch transmission pipeline to full service.

[1] The road construction work required that Citizens Gas relocate an adjacent section of its 20-inch transmission pipeline. In view of the reduced seasonal demand for natural gas, the company decided to reduce the pressure on the pipeline and discontinue using it to transport gas during the period of construction.

Postaccident Inspections

On-site inspection of the ruptured pipe revealed a near-longitudinal gaping fracture about 5.8 feet long. Along the entire length of the longitudinal fracture, the newly installed 8-inch distribution main was within approximately 4 inches of the 20-inch transmission pipeline. (See figure 1.)

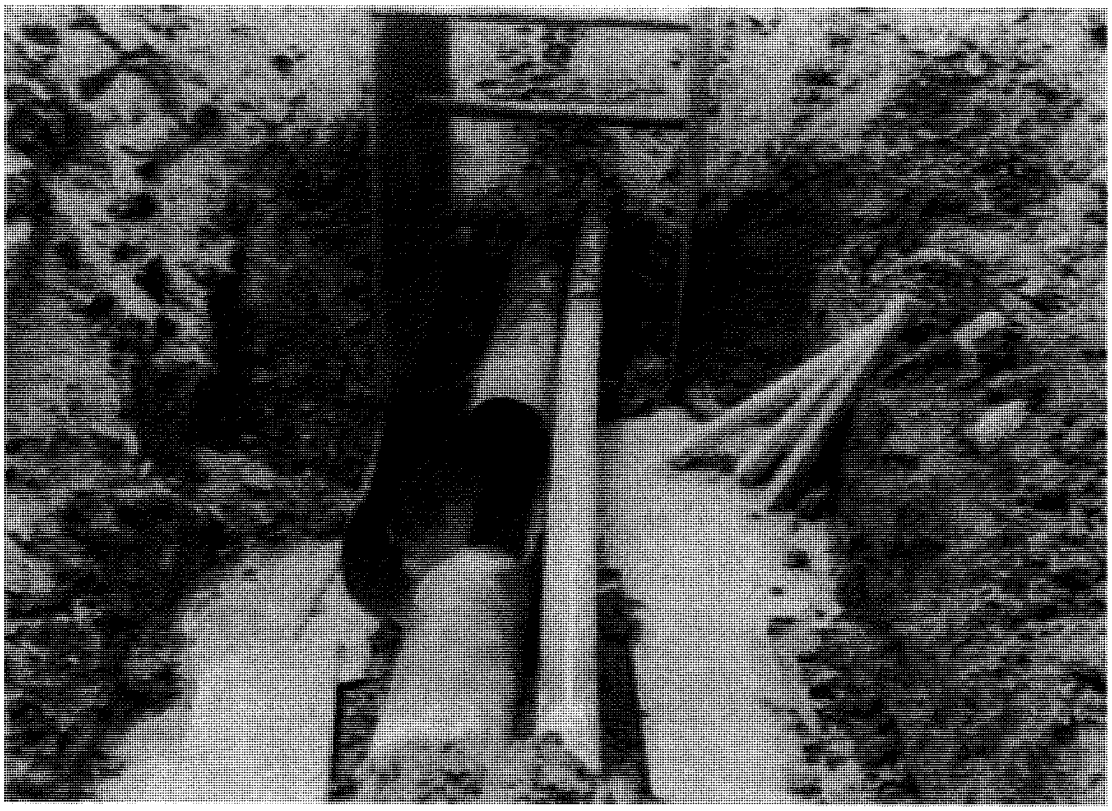

Figure 1. Postaccident excavation revealing relative positions of 8-inch distribution main and 20-inch transmission pipeline at site of rupture

The ruptured segment of the 20-inch pipe was removed and sent to the National Transportation Safety Board's Materials Laboratory for examination. Safety Board examination revealed that the pipeline fractures contained features typical of overstress separation. The fractures contained no arrest marks, which is consistent with a crack in the pipe that, once initiated, propagated continuously. The exterior pipeline surface along the entire length of the longitudinal fracture contained circumferential gouge marks that intersected both halves of the fracture. The gouge marks typically measured approximately 4 inches long in the circumferential direction. Wall thicknesses in the deepest area of two gouge marks adjacent to the longitudinal fracture were 0.168 inch and 0.175 inch, which were 60 and 62 percent, respectively, of the original 0.281-inch wall thickness.

Safety Board investigators obtained a tooth from the reaming tool that was used in the drilling operation to install the 8-inch distribution main. Direct comparisons of the tooth with the gouge marks revealed that the size and shape of the tooth tip were

consistent with the size and shape of the gouge marks in the vicinity of the rupture. (See figure 2.)

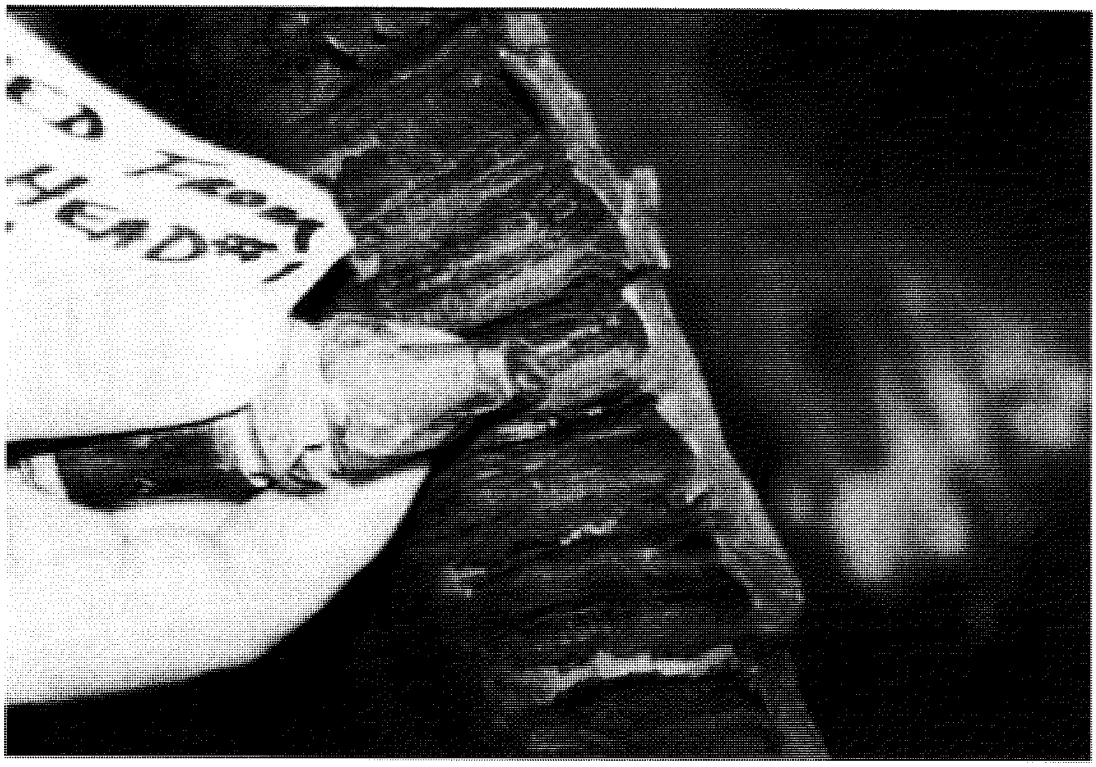

Figure 2. Comparison of cutting tool tooth with gouges found at rupture site

Preaccident Pipeline Installation Project

To minimize damage to the roadway and to some adjoining landscaping features, Citizens Gas decided to use directional drilling[2] to install an approximately 200-foot-long section of new 8-inch distribution main parallel to the 20-inch transmission pipeline. Citizens Gas contracted with Miller Pipeline Corporation (Miller), which carried out the directional drilling operation on May 19, 1997.

Citizens Gas construction plans called for the 8-inch distribution main to be installed parallel to the 20-inch pipeline with a horizontal centerline-to-centerline separation of approximately 5 feet along most of its length. Before drilling began, Citizens Gas personnel used paint to mark the approximate location of the 20-inch pipeline at intervals of 15 to 20 feet.[3] Two excavations, one to verify the location of some utility

[2] *Directional drilling*, also referred to as *boring*, is a pipeline construction technique in which a roughly horizontal hole is drilled at the intended pipeline location and the pipeline is then pulled through it. Normally, a relatively small pilot hole is drilled first. When the pilot drill reaches the exit location, the pilot head is removed, and a larger reaming tool is attached. In this case, the pipeline was pulled back through the hole during this back-reaming process.

[3] Indiana State Code (IC 8-1-26-2) defines *approximate location* as "a strip of land at least four (4) feet wide but not wider than the width of the facility plus two (2) feet on either side of the outer limits of the physical plant." See Safety Study—*Protecting Public Safety Through Excavation Damage Prevention*

cable crossings and another to serve as an exit pit for the directional drilling operation, exposed the 20-inch transmission pipeline and thus verified its location.

Miller drilling personnel stated that field measurements indicated that they could maintain an approximate 5- to 7-foot horizontal separation between the new installation and the paint marks used to indicate the location of the existing 20-inch transmission pipeline. The drilling crew intended to maintain this separation throughout the bore except for one location near the termination of the bore where, in order to avoid an underground telephone duct, the pipeline separation would need to be reduced to an edge-to-edge horizontal distance of about 1 foot.[4]

The Miller crew consisted of two persons, a foreman and a machine operator, utilizing a Vermeer directional drilling rig with a 5-inch-diameter drill head and a 14-inch-diameter reaming tool. The foreman said that throughout the directional drilling operation, he monitored the location and alignment of the pilot drill head every 5 to 10 feet with a "walkover" detector. He said he marked the drill head's location at these intervals as the boring operation progressed to the east. If course corrections were needed, the foreman said, he relayed instructions to the machine operator via a headset radio. The Miller personnel reported that, because of the terrain at the entry point, the initial entry of the drill head was angled slightly toward the 20-inch natural gas transmission pipeline and that minor steering corrections were performed in the beginning portion of the drilling operation. Miller personnel did not report any difficulty in performing the drilling operation, nor did they note any other unplanned deviations from a straight line path.

During the back-reaming process, the location of the reaming tool was not tracked as it was during drilling. The presence of rocks, the characteristics of the soil, the alignment of the pilot hole, and the stiffness of the pipe material being pulled back through the hole are some factors that can affect the accuracy with which the back-reaming process follows the path of the pilot hole.

Actual Pipeline Locations

After the accident, the two pipelines were excavated at points along the bore path to determine the exact horizontal centerline-to-centerline separation between the pipelines and the depth of cover over each one. These excavations revealed that the 8-inch distribution main was located at a horizontal centerline-to-centerline distance of 5.5 feet north of the 20-inch transmission pipeline at the entrance point of the bore (west end). Progressing eastward, the 8-inch distribution main veered sharply toward the 20-inch transmission pipeline. Approximately 40 feet east of the entrance point of the bore, the 8-inch distribution main was within a few inches of the existing 20-inch transmission pipeline. At the rupture site, approximately 68 feet east of the entrance point of the bore, the two pipelines were about 4 inches apart. As the 8-inch pipeline continued toward the

---

(NTSB/SS-97/01) for further discussion.

[4] The actual separation would be greater than 1 foot, since the pipelines were to be at different depths at this particular location.

east, it veered away from the 20-inch pipeline to a horizontal centerline-to-centerline separation of 3.3 feet about 113 feet east of the entrance point of the bore. From this point eastward, the horizontal centerline-to-centerline separation ranged from 4 to 6 feet until the 8-inch distribution main angled toward the 20-inch transmission pipeline at the east end of the bore, as originally planned. (See figure 3.)

During the postaccident excavations conducted to determine the locations of the pipelines, rocks were discovered east of the rupture site. One rock, located directly beneath the 8-inch distribution main, had been scored in a manner consistent with having been struck by the reaming tool.

Regulatory Requirements

Title 49 *Code of Federal Regulations* (CFR) Part 192.614[5] requires gas pipeline operators to develop and follow a written program to prevent damage to their pipelines from excavation activities. Excavation activities includes boring operations. Paragraph (c)(6) specifically requires operators, whenever they have reason to believe their pipelines could be damaged by excavation activities, to provide for inspections of those pipelines as frequently as necessary during and after the excavation to verify the integrity of the pipelines.

The Gas Piping Technology Committee (GPTC) publishes the *GPTC Guide for Gas Transmission and Distribution Piping Systems* to provide guidance for natural gas operators to follow to help ensure regulatory compliance.[6] The GPTC has informed the Safety Board that it is in the process of adding material to the guide to address safety issues specific to directional drilling and other trenchless technologies.

Actions Taken Since the Accident

Citizens Gas had procedures in place at the time of the accident that were applicable to general construction activities in proximity to its pipelines, but it did not have procedures specific to directional drilling operations. Citizens Gas has provided to the Safety Board copies of procedures that it has now adopted that are specific to directional drilling in proximity to existing pipelines. These procedures include a requirement that, whenever directional drilling operations are carried out parallel to and within 10 feet of an existing transmission pipeline, spot holes will be excavated at 25-foot intervals so that the exact location of the drill head can be visually determined. These spot holes will also allow personnel to verify pipe alignment as the pipe is installed during the back-reaming process.

---

[5] Title 49 CFR Part 195.442 contains similar provisions for operators of pipelines transporting hazardous liquids.

[6] The GPTC is an American National Standards Institute technical committee made up of technical specialists from both industry and government.

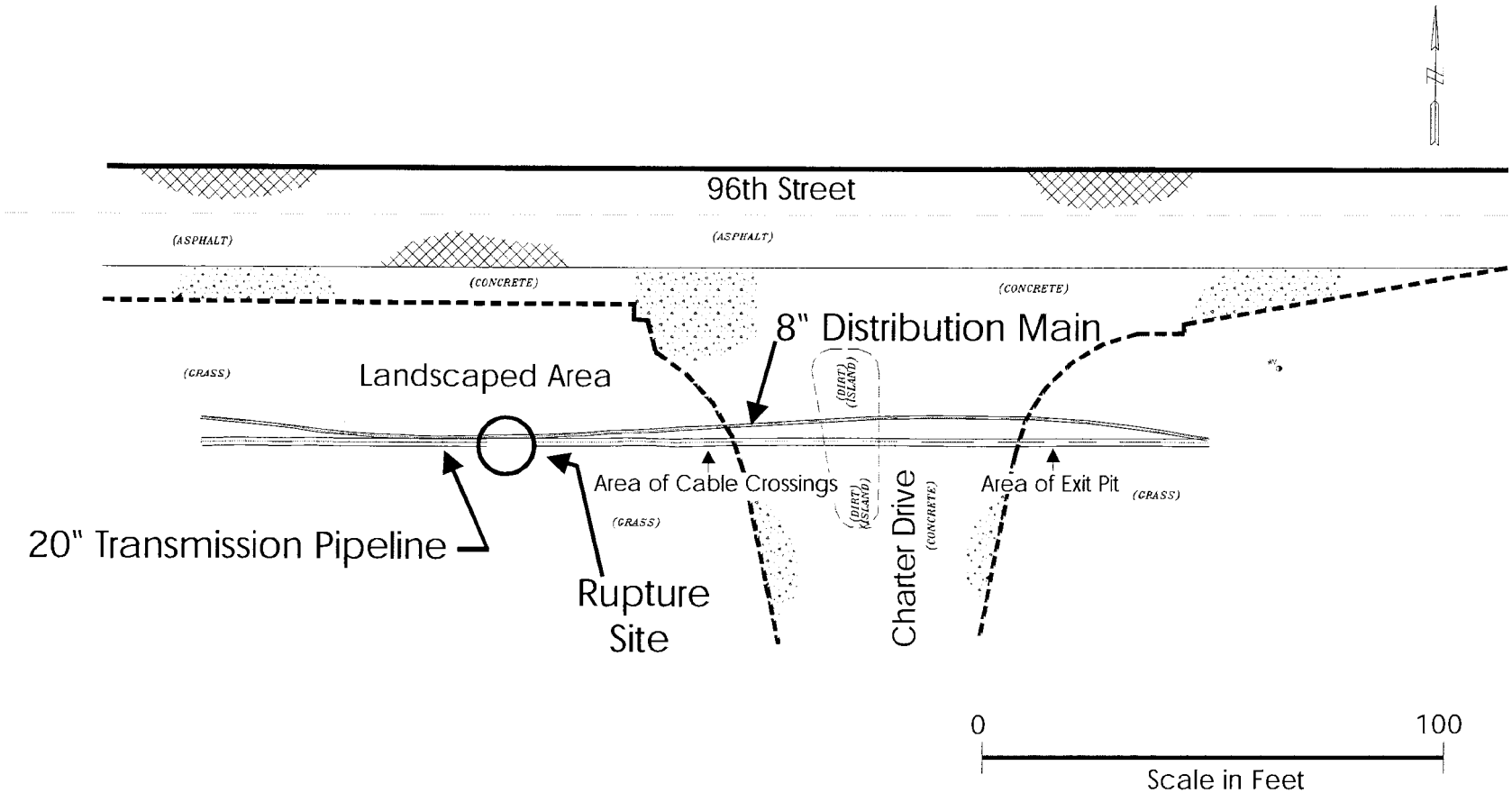

Figure 3. Relative locations of new 8-inch and existing 20-inch pipelines

Miller has also provided the Safety Board with procedures it has adopted to provide additional protection for existing facilities during the company's directional drilling operations.

Probable Cause

The National Transportation Safety Board determines that the probable cause of this accident was the failure of Citizens Gas & Coke Utility and Miller Pipeline Corporation to have adequate controls in place to ensure that directional drilling operations carried out in the proximity of existing underground facilities would not cause damage to those facilities.

Adopted: April 20, 1999

National Transportation Safety Board

Washington, D.C. 20594

Safety Recommendation

Date: APR 28 1999

In reply refer to: P-99-1

Honorable Kelley S. Coyner
Administrator
Research and Special Programs Administration
400 Seventh Street, S.W.
Washington, D.C. 20590

About 2:33 p.m. on July 21, 1997, a 20-inch-diameter steel natural gas transmission pipeline owned and operated by Citizens Gas & Coke Utility Company (Citizens Gas) ruptured and released natural gas near an intersection adjoining the Charter Pointe subdivision in Indianapolis, Indiana. The gas ignited and burned, killing one resident and injuring another. About 75 residents required temporary shelter. Six homes were destroyed, and about 65 others sustained damage significant enough to be documented by the local investigation team.

The pipeline had not been under full internal pressure since March 31, 1997, when the pressure was reduced to approximately 30 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) in anticipation of road construction work in the area.[1] On May 19, 1997, Miller Pipeline Corporation (Miller), under contract to Citizens Gas, had performed a directional drilling operation to install an 8-inch-diameter natural gas distribution main parallel to the transmission pipeline. About 1 hour and 40 minutes before the rupture, Citizens Gas had begun to return the 20-inch transmission pipeline to full service.

The National Transportation Safety Board determined that the probable cause of this accident was the failure of Citizens Gas and Miller to have adequate controls in place to ensure that directional drilling operations carried out in the proximity of existing underground facilities would not cause damage to those facilities.

On-site inspection of the ruptured pipe revealed a near-longitudinal gaping fracture about 5.8 feet long. Along the entire length of the longitudinal fracture, the newly installed 8-inch steel distribution main was located within approximately 4 inches of the 20-inch transmission pipeline.

Safety Board examination of the ruptured segment of the 20-inch pipe revealed that the pipeline fractures contained features typical of overstress separation. The exterior pipeline surface along the entire length of the longitudinal fracture contained circumferential gouge marks that

[1] The road construction work required that Citizens Gas relocate an adjacent section of its 20-inch transmission pipeline. In view of the reduced seasonal demand for natural gas, the company decided to reduce the pressure on the pipeline and discontinue using it to transport gas during the period of construction.

intersected both halves of the fracture. The gouge marks typically measured approximately 4 inches long in the circumferential direction. Wall thicknesses in the deepest area of two gouge marks adjacent to the longitudinal fracture were 0.168 inch and 0.175 inch, which were 60 and 62 percent, respectively, of the original 0.281-inch wall thickness.

Safety Board investigators obtained a tooth from the reaming tool that was used in the drilling operation to install the 8-inch distribution main in the vicinity of the rupture. Direct comparisons of the tooth with the gouge marks revealed that the size and shape of the tooth tip were consistent with the size and shape of the gouge marks in the vicinity of the rupture.

Citizens Gas construction plans called for an approximately 200-foot-long section of new 8-inch distribution main to be installed parallel to the 20-inch pipeline with a horizontal centerline-to-centerline separation of approximately 5 feet along most of its length. Before drilling began, Citizens Gas personnel used paint to mark the approximate location of the 20-inch pipeline at intervals of 15 to 20 feet.[2] Two excavations, one to verify the location of some utility cable crossings and another to serve as an exit pit for the directional drilling operation, exposed the 20-inch transmission pipeline and thus verified its location.

Miller drilling personnel stated that field measurements indicated that they could maintain an approximate 5- to 7-foot horizontal separation between the new installation and the paint marks used to indicate the location of the existing 20-inch transmission pipeline. The drilling crew intended to maintain this separation throughout the bore except for one location near the termination of the bore where, in order to avoid an underground telephone duct, the pipeline separation would need to be reduced to an edge-to-edge horizontal distance of about 1 foot.[3]

The Miller crew consisted of two persons, a foreman and a machine operator, utilizing a Vermeer directional drilling rig with a 5-inch-diameter drill head and a 14-inch-diameter reaming tool. The foreman said that throughout the directional drilling operation, he monitored the location and alignment of the pilot drill head every 5 to 10 feet with a "walkover" detector. He said he marked the drill head's location at these intervals as the boring operation progressed to the east. If course corrections were needed, the foreman said, he relayed instructions back to the machine operator via a headset radio. Miller personnel did not report any difficulty in performing the drilling operation, nor did they note any other unplanned deviations from a straight line path. During the back-reaming process, the location of the reaming tool was not tracked as it was during drilling.

After the accident, the two pipelines were excavated at points along the bore path to determine the exact horizontal centerline-to-centerline separation between the pipelines and the depth of cover over each one. These excavations revealed that the 8-inch distribution main was located at a horizontal centerline-to-centerline distance of 5.5 feet north of the 20-inch

---

[2] Indiana State Code (IC 8-1-26-2) defines *approximate location* as "a strip of land at least four (4) feet wide but not wider than the width of the facility plus two (2) feet on either side of the outer limits of the physical plant." See Safety Study—*Protecting Public Safety Through Excavation Damage Prevention* (NTSB/SS-97/01) for further discussion.

[3] The actual separation would be greater than 1 foot, since the pipelines were to be at different depths at this particular location.

transmission pipeline at the entrance point of the bore (west end). Progressing eastward, the location of the 8-inch distribution main veered sharply toward the 20-inch transmission pipeline. Approximately 40 feet east of the entrance point of the bore, the 8-inch distribution main was within a few inches of the existing 20-inch transmission pipeline. At the rupture site, approximately 68 feet east of the entrance point of the bore, the two pipelines were about 4 inches apart. As the 8-inch pipeline continued toward the east, it veered away from the 20-inch pipeline to a horizontal centerline-to-centerline separation of 3.3 feet about 113 feet east of the entrance point of the bore. From this point eastward, the horizontal centerline-to-centerline separation ranged from 4 to 6 feet until the 8-inch distribution main angled toward the 20-inch transmission pipeline at the east end of the bore, as originally planned.

Citizens Gas had procedures in place at the time of the accident that were applicable to general construction activities in proximity to its pipelines, but it did not have procedures specific to directional drilling operations. Citizens Gas has provided to the Safety Board copies of procedures that it has now adopted that are specific to directional drilling in proximity to existing pipelines. These procedures include a requirement that, whenever directional drilling operations are carried out parallel to and within 10 feet of an existing transmission pipeline, spot holes will be excavated at 25-foot intervals so that the exact location of the drill head can be visually determined. These spot holes will also allow personnel to verify pipe alignment as the pipe is installed during the back-reaming process.

Miller has also provided the Safety Board with procedures it has adopted to provide additional protection for existing facilities during the company's directional drilling operations.

Title 49 *Code of Federal Regulations* (CFR) Part 192.614[4] requires gas pipeline operators to develop and follow a written program to prevent damage to their pipelines from excavation activities. Excavation activities include boring operations. In light of the ever-increasing use of horizontal directional drilling, the Safety Board is concerned that accidents similar to the one in Indianapolis may occur in the future unless operators take precautions to protect their facilities. To address this concern, the National Transportation Safety Board makes the following safety recommendation to the Research and Special Programs Administration:

> When reviewing pipeline operator safety programs, ensure that the operators' damage prevention programs include actions to protect their facilities when directional drilling operations are conducted in proximity to those facilities. (P-99-1)

Also, the Safety Board issued Safety Recommendations P-99-2 to the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, P-99-3 to the American Gas Association, P-99-4 to the American Public Gas Association, P-99-5 to the Interstate Natural Gas Association of America, P-99-6 to the American Petroleum Institute, P-99-7 to the Association of Oil Pipe Lines, P-99-8 to the Distribution Contractors Association, P-99-9 to the Directional Crossing Contractors Association,

[4] Title 49 CFR Part 195.442 contains similar provisions for operators of pipelines transporting hazardous liquids.

P-99-10 to the North American Society for Trenchless Technology, and P-99-11 to the National Utility Contractors Association.

Please refer to Safety Recommendation P-99-1 in your reply. If you need additional information, you may call (202) 314-6201.

Chairman HALL, Vice Chairman FRANCIS, and Members HAMMERSCHMIDT, GOGLIA, and BLACK concurred in this recommendation.

Original Signed
By: Jim Hall
Chairman

national security goal seeks the improvement of the capacity and operation of the highway system to support defense mobilization.

The assistance program envisioned would be an annual program under which awards would be made on a competitive basis, predicated on merit review, typically for a period of three years. Funding beyond the first year would be based on an annual evaluation of documented progress, availability of funds, and the amount of funds reported as unexpended by the awardee at the end of each year's period of performance. A preliminary estimate of total award amounts would be approximately $100,000 on an annual basis.

The HBCUs and the MIHE that are interested in participating in such an assistance program are invited to submit an "Expression of Interest." Your submission should include:

1. Full name and address of school/university, point of contact, phone number, fax number and E-Mail address,
2. Specific FHWA goal(s) that your institution would be interested in participating under and your actual recent (past three years) experience in the area,
3. A list of your institution's current curriculum/majors as they relate to the FHWA strategic goals,
4. Any laboratories/research facilities that you currently have access to, and
5. Any specific future plans you have for expanding your curriculum and or research facilities.

Provided that a sufficient number of relevant "Expressions of Interest" are received in response to this notice, the FHWA would issue a program-based solicitation calling for submission of applications. The application process would be open to all HBCUs and MIHE and is not dependent upon submitting an initial "Expression of Interest." Applications would be assessed according to specific criteria that relate to the goals of the FHWA's National Strategic Plan and would be awarded to a limited number of applicants according to the merit of the application and the availability of funds in each fiscal year. The target date for initial awards would be FY 2000.

Authority: 23 U.S.C. 307 and 403; E.O. No. 12876, 58 FR 58735, 3 CFR, 1994 Comp., p. 671; E.O. No. 13021, 61 FR 54929, 3 CFR, 1997 Comp., p. 221; 49 CFR 1.48.

Issued on August 18, 1999.

Gloria J. Jeff,

Federal Highway Deputy Administrator.

[FR Doc. 99-22289 Filed 8-26-99; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 4910-22-P

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

Research and Special Programs Administration

Directional Drilling and Other Trenchless Technology Operations Conducted in Proximity to Underground Pipeline Facilities

AGENCY: Research and Special Programs Administration (RSPA), DOT.

ACTION: Notice; issuance of advisory bulletin.

SUMMARY: RSPA is issuing this advisory bulletin to owners and operators operators of natural gas and hazardous liquid pipeline systems to advise them to review, and amend if necessary, their written damage prevention program to minimize the risks associated with directional drilling and other trenchless technology operations near buried pipelines. This action follows several pipeline incidents involving trenchless technology operations which resulted in loss of life, injuries, and significant property damage. It also corresponds to National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB) Safety Recommendation P-99-1, which suggests that RSPA

> * * * ensure that the operators' damage prevention programs include actions to protect their facilities when directional drilling operations are conducted in proximity to those facilities.

This advisory bulletin emphasizes the importance of having procedures to mitigate the risks of directional drilling and other trenchless technology.

ADDRESSES: This document can be viewed at the Office of Pipeline Safety (OPS) home page at: http://ops.dot.gov.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Eben M. Wyman, (202) 366-0918, or by email at eben.wyman@rspa.dot.gov.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

I. Background

RSPA revised its inspection form for hazardous liquid pipelines to examine how operators monitor directional drilling and other trenchless technology operations in the vicinity of underground pipelines. The pipeline safety regulations require pipeline operators to carry out a written damage prevention program for buried pipelines. The revised inspection form considers whether a pipeline operator's damage prevention program includes actions to protect their facilities when directional drilling operations are conducted in proximity to the pipeline. RSPA will make similar changes to the natural gas pipeline inspection form in its next revision. In light of recent accidents involving trenchless technology operations, RSPA is encouraging operators to carefully review their damage prevention program and make modifications as appropriate. RSPA also notes the importance of accurately locating underground piping and ensuring the qualifications of personnel performing this work.

Additionally, NTSB Safety Recommendation P-99-1 (April 28, 1999) directs that RSPA

> [w]hen reviewing pipeline operator safety programs, ensure that the operators' damage prevention programs include actions to protect their facilities when directional drilling operations are conducted in proximity to those facilities.

This recommendation reflects NTSB's investigation into the rupture of a natural gas pipeline near Indianapolis, Indiana. The ignition of the escaping gas caused a fatality and an injury. NTSB determined that the probable cause was the failure of the pipeline operator to ensure that safe directional drilling operations were conducted in proximity to underground facilities.

RSPA believes that this Advisory Bulletin will encourage operators to recognize the dangers associated with directional drilling and other trenchless technology operations and to take appropriate action to ensure that underground facilities are adequately located and protected when these activities take place near pipelinethese facilities.

II. Advisory Bulletin (ADB-99-04)

To: Owners and Operators of Hazardous Liquid and Natural Gas Pipelines

Subject: Directional Drilling and Other Trenchless Technology Operations Conducted in Proximity to Underground Pipeline Facilities.

Purpose: To ensure that pipeline operators take actions to recognize the dangers associated with directional drilling and other trenchless technology operations, and to ensure that underground pipeline facilities are adequately located and protected from inadvertent damage.

Advisory: RSPA urges all owners and operators of gas and hazardous liquid pipelines to review their operations, maintenance, and damage prevention programs to include effective actions to protect their underground facilities from the dangers posed by directional drilling and other trenchless technology operations. Operators should take actions to ensure that both company and contractor personnel are following safe practices.

Trenchless technologies, including directional drilling, are effective

excavating practices that can reduce the threat of third-party damage to gas and hazardous liquid pipelines. They can also mitigate environmental and other concerns associated with traditional trenching methods of pipe and cable installation.

However, the potential exists for trenchless technology operations to damage underground facilities, sometimes with catastrophic results. Directional drilling and other trenchless technology operations employ a variety of cutting, jetting, boring, reaming, and jacking techniques. These techniques can result in rupture or damage to existing underground facilities, including oil and gas pipelines, electric cables and ducts, water and sewer pipes, telecommunications ducts, fiber optic cables, and cable television facilities.

Usually, the exact depth of existing underground facilities is not known, even if the facilities are accurately located before directional drilling commences. In addition, many facilities are buried deeper than the minimums required by law and regulation. This can be caused by changes in the surface contours due to agricultural activities, landscaping, and road building.

Damage to underground facilities can occur without any immediate indication to the operator. Sometimes a damaged underground facility will not fail for years after the completion of trenchless technology operations. Drilling equipment does not need to fully rupture a facility to create a hazardous situation. Damage to coatings and other corrosion prevention systems can increase the risk of a delayed corrosion failure. Escaping and migrating gas can create a safety issue for people living and working near these facilities long after the completion of directional drilling and other trenchless technology operations. Leakage from a damaged or ruptured hazardous liquid pipeline can create environmental and safety issues.

The primary safety concern is ensuring that trenchless technology operations do not accidentally contact existing underground facilities. This can be averted by knowing the precise locations of all underground facilities in proximity to trenchless technology operations. In addition to full compliance with the one-call notification process, the operator should also consider thorough site surveys of the area of a proposed directional drilling or trenchless technology project to locate potential conflicts with underground facilities.

Information on the safe conduct of trenchless technology operations is available from various trade associations and technical publications. In addition, the Gas Piping Technology Committee, a standards committee composed of experts on gas piping issues, publishes guidelines for planning and designing trenchless technology pipe installations in its Guide for Gas Transmission and Distribution Piping Systems, which is available from the American Gas Association.

Issued in Washington, D.C. on August 23, 1999.

Richard B. Felder,

Associate Administrator for Pipeline Safety.

[FR Doc. 99–22331 Filed 8–26–99; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 4910–60–P

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

Surface Transportation Board

[STB Finance Docket Nos. 33788 and 33789]

Norfolk Southern Railway Company—Trackage Rights Exemption—Over North Carolina Railroad Company; Atlantic and East Carolina Railway Company—Trackage Rights Exemption—Line of North Carolina Railroad Company Operated Under Trackage Rights by Norfolk Southern Railway Company

In STB Finance Docket No. 33788, North Carolina Railroad Company (NCRR) has agreed to grant to Norfolk Southern Railway Company (NSR) exclusive local and overhead freight trackage rights over its entire line of railroad between Charlotte and Morehead City, NC.[1] The line extends between mileposts EC–0.0± and EC–94.7±; mileposts H–0.0± and H–129.5±; and mileposts 284.0± and 376.5±, a distance of approximately 317.2 miles in Alamance, Cabarrus, Carteret, Craven, Davidson, Durham, Guilford, Johnston, Jones, Lenoir, Mecklenburg, Orange, Randolph, Rowan, Wake, and Wayne Counties, NC.

Under the agreement, NSR is permitted to grant trackage rights to its subsidiaries. Accordingly, in STB Finance Docket No. 33789, NSR has agreed to grant to its wholly owned subsidiary, Atlantic and East Carolina Railway Company (AECR), local and overhead trackage rights over a portion of NCRR's line between Goldsboro, NC, and Morehead City. That portion extends between mileposts EC–0.0± and EC–94.7±, a distance of approximately 94.7 miles in Carteret, Craven, Jones, Lenoir, and Wayne Counties.

The exemption was effective on August 19, 1999, and the trackage rights operations are scheduled to begin on September 1, 1999.

The purpose of the trackage rights is to allow NSR and AECR to continue as the providers of local and overhead freight service on the NCRR lines, as they have previously done under now-expired leases.[2]

As a condition to these exemptions, any employees affected by the trackage rights will be protected by the conditions imposed in *Norfolk and Western Ry. Co.—Trackage Rights—BN*, 354 I.C.C. 605 (1978), as modified in *Mendocino Coast Ry., Inc.—Lease and Operate*, 360 I.C.C. 653 (1980).

These notices are filed under 49 CFR 1180.2(d)(7). If either contains false or misleading information, both exemptions are void *ab initio*. Petitions to revoke the exemptions under 49 U.S.C. 10502(d) may be filed at any time. The filing of a petition to revoke will not automatically stay the transaction.[3]

An original and 10 copies of all pleadings, referring to STB Finance Docket No. 33788, STB Finance Docket No. 33789, or both (as applicable) must be filed with the Surface Transportation Board, Office of the Secretary, Case Control Unit, 1925 K Street, N.W., Washington, DC 20423–0001. In addition, a copy of each pleading must be served on G. Paul Moates, Esq., Sidley & Austin, 1722 Eye Street, N.W., Washington, DC 20006.

Board decisions and notices are available on our website at "WWW.STB.DOT.GOV."

Decided: August 23, 1999.

By the Board, David M. Konschnik, Director, Office of Proceedings.

Vernon A. Williams,

Secretary.

[FR Doc. 99–22340 Filed 8–26–99; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 4915–00–P

---

[1] NSR is permitted to continue in effect existing and certain future agreements pertaining to passenger operations by the National Railroad Passenger Corporation (Amtrak) over the line. The Board's jurisdiction is not implicated as to this provision of the agreement.

[2] *See North Carolina Railroad Company—Petition to Set Trackage Compensation and Other Terms and Conditions—Norfolk Southern Railway Company, Norfolk & Western Railway Company, and Atlantic and East Carolina Railway Company*, STB Finance Docket No. 33134 (STB served May 29, 1997) (*NCRR Compensation*).

[3] In a pending motion in *NCRR Compensation*, intervener Walker F. Rucker seeks an order that he and the State of North Carolina be allowed and directed to participate in the negotiations for the trackage rights agreements that are the subject of this notice of exemption. The parties hereto replied, and Mr. Rucker responded to their replies. That collateral dispute provides no basis for rejection of the notice of exemption in this proceeding.

About Us
Calendar
Contact Us
Data & Statistics
Drug & Alcohol Testing
Enforcement
Federal and State Partners
Initiatives
Inspection
Integrity Management Program (IMP)
Library
NTSB Safety Recommendations
Online Data Entry
Stakeholder Communications
Standards & Rulemakings
Research & Development
Security
State Programs
Technical Advisory Committees
Inspector Training & Qualifications Division

Home

About PHMSA
Mission and Goals
About the Agency
Key Officials
Organization
Calendar

Promoting Safety & Security
Regulations
Special Permits & Approvals
International Standards
Security
Initiatives

ADB-99-01

Sep 1, 1999

Billing Code: 4910-60-P
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration

Potential Failure Due to Brittle-Like Cracking Certain Polyethylene Plastic Pipe Manufactured by Century Utility Products Inc.

AGENCY: Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration (PHMSA), DOT.

ACTION: Notice; issuance of advisory bulletin on Century polyethylene gas pipe to owners and operators of natural gas distribution systems.

SUMMARY: This advisory bulletin is directed at owners and operators of natural gas distribution systems that have installed plastic pipe extruded by Century Utility Products Inc. from Union Carbide Corporation's DHDA 2077 Tan medium density polyethylene resin (Century pipe). Pipe manufactured between 1970 and 1973 may fail in service due to its poor resistance to brittle-like cracking. Operators with Century pipe in their systems should closely monitor this pipe for leaks with increased leak survey frequency. Century pipe that may be improperly installed, repaired, or operating in an environment that impairs pipe strength should be replaced.

ADDRESS: This document can be viewed on the Office of Pipeline Safety (OPS) home page at: http://ops.dot.gov.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Gopala (Krishna) Vinjamuri at (202) 366- 4503, or by E-mail at vinjamuri@PHMSA.dot.gov.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

I. Background

The National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB) recently published the results of a special investigation into accidents that involved plastic pipe currently in use to deliver natural gas to residential and business use. The report, Brittle-Like Cracking in Plastic Pipe for Gas Service (NTSB/SIR-98/01; April 23, 1998) suggested that "[d]espite the general acceptance of plastic piping as a safe and economical alternative to piping made of steel and other materials, [a] number of pipeline accidents investigated have involved plastic piping that cracked in a brittle-like manner." Copies of this report may be obtained from NTSB Public Inquiry Office by calling 202-314-6551.

The phenomenon of brittle-like cracking in plastic pipe as described in the NTSB report and generally understood within the plastic pipeline industry relates to a part-through crack initiation in the pipe wall followed by stable crack growth at stress levels much lower than the stress required for yielding, resulting in a very tight slit-like opening and gas leak. This failure mode is difficult to detect until significant amount of gas leaks out of the pipe, and potentially migrates into closed space such as basements of dwellings. Premature brittle-like cracking requires relatively high localized stress intensification that may be a result from geometrical discontinuities, excessive bending, improper fitting assemblies, and/or dents and gouges. Because this failure mode exhibits no evidence of gross yielding at the failure location, the term brittle-like cracking is used. This phenomenon is different from brittle fracture, in which the failure results in

Encouraging Compliance
Training Resources
Outreach
Inspections & Enforcement
Drug & Alcohol Testing
Supporting Community Response
Preparedness & Response
State Programs & Grants
Incident Reporting
PHMSA Resources
Data & Statistics
eForms
ePayments
Glossary
Library

fragmentation of the pipe.

NTSB also alleged that the guidance provided by manufacturers and industry standards for the installation of plastic pipe is inadequate for limiting stress intensification, particularly at plastic service connections to steel mains, many of these connections may have been installed without adequate protection from shear and bending forces that may result in brittle-like cracking.

Century pipe

Between 1970 and 1973, Century Utility Products Inc. (a/k/a AMDEVCO), now defunct, marketed medium density polyethylene plastic pipe and fittings (Century pipe) in sizes ranging from ½ inch to 4 inches for use in natural gas distribution. These plastic pipes and fittings were manufactured by extrusion from Union Carbide Corporation's DHDA 2077 Tan resin, and was marked PE 2306 in accordance with American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) standards. Following investigation of a series of incidents, including the December 2, 1979, explosion in a residence in Tuscola, Illinois, and the October 17, 1994, accident in Waterloo, Iowa, that resulted in several fatalities, it was established that the Union Carbide's DHDA 2077 Tan resin lacks adequate resistance to brittle-like cracking and is prone to relatively short life when subjected to high local stress concentration. The pipe in the Tuscola, Illinois, accident failed in less than 8 years, and the pipe in the Waterloo, Iowa, accident failed within 23 years in service. It has been established that Century pipe exhibited significantly higher leak rate in comparison with other polyethylene, steel, and cast iron pipe used in natural gas distribution systems.

Following the Waterloo, Iowa, accident, PHMSA has taken number of actions, including gathering Century pipe installation data. Also, remedial action has been taken by various operators in mid-western states where much of the Century pipe produced was known to have been installed. It is PHMSA's understanding that the operators having Century pipe in their systems have initiated close monitoring and some have replacement program in progress.

NTSB recommended that PHMSA notify owners and operators of natural gas systems who continue to use Century pipe of the potential for premature failures by brittle-like cracking and the need to "[d]evelop a plan to closely monitor the performance of and to identify and replace, in a timely manner, any piping that indicates poor performance based on such evaluation factors as installation, operating and environmental conditions, piping failure characteristics and leak history."

II. Advisory Bulletin (ADB-99-01)

To: Owners and Operators of Natural Gas Distribution Pipeline Systems

Subject: Susceptibility of certain polyethylene pipe manufactured by Century Utility Products Inc. to premature failure due to brittle-like cracking.

Purpose: To advise natural gas distribution pipeline owners and operators of the need to closely monitor and replace as necessary polyethylene natural gas pipe manufactured by Century Utility Products Inc. between 1970 and 1973 that is susceptible to brittle-like cracking.

Advisory: All owners and operators of natural gas distribution systems who have installed and continue to use polyethylene pipe extruded by Century Utility Products Inc, (now defunct) from the resin DHDA 2077 Tan resin manufactured by Union Carbide Corporation during the period 1970 to 1973 (Century pipe) are advised that this pipe may be susceptible to premature failure due to brittle-like cracking. Premature failures by brittle-like cracking of Century pipe is known to occur due to poor resin characteristics, excessive local stress intensification caused by improper joints, improper installation, and environments detrimental to pipe long-term strength. All distribution systems containing Century pipe should be monitored to identify pipe subject to brittle-like cracking. Remedial action, including replacement, should be taken to protect system integrity and public safety.

In addition, in light of the potential susceptibility of Century pipe to brittle-like cracking, PHMSA recommends that each natural gas distribution system operator with Century pipe revise their plastic pipe repair procedure(s) to exclude pipe pinching for isolating sections of Century pipe. Additionally, PHMSA recommends replacement of any Century pipe segment that has a significant leak history or which for any reason is of suspect integrity.

(49 U.S.C. Chapter 601; 49 CFR 1.53)

Issued in Washington, D.C. on _____.

Richard B. Felder

Associate Administrator for Pipeline Safety

Careers | Contact Us | No Fear | Privacy Policy | FOIA | Accessibility | FAQs | Web Policies | Site Map | Download Acrobat

Guidelines for States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program

Appendix S

EXAMPLE STATE PIPELINE SAFETY PROGRAM PLAN

INSPECTION, ENFORCEMENT AND INCIDENT INVESTIGATION PROCEDURES

EXAMPLE RISK BASED INSPECTION PRIORITIZATION MODEL

January 2014

TABLE OF CONTENTS

I. PURPOSE 4

II. MISSION STATEMENT 5

III. [STATE] PIPELINE SAFETY PROGRAM 6

A. BACKGROUND 6
B. CONGRESSIONAL INTENT 6
C. FEDERAL ROLE AND ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURE 6
D. STATE PROGRAM OVERSIGHT 7
E. PHMSA MONITORED GOALS 7
F. TRAINING 7

IV. INSPECTION PLANNING 9

A. LISTING OF OPERATORS 9
B. INSPECTION PRIORITIES 9
C. TIME INTERVALS FOR INSPECTIONS (INCLUDING LNG FACILITIES) 10

V. CONDUCTING INSPECTIONS 11

A. OBJECTIVE 11
B. PREPARATION FOR INSPECTION 11
C. GENERAL INSPECTION GUIDELINES 11
D. RECORDS AND REPORTS 12
E. RECORD INSPECTION 12
F. FIELD INSPECTIONS 14
G. COMPREHENSIVE INSPECTIONS 15
H. DESIGN, TESTING AND CONSTRUCTION INSPECTION 16
I. TRAINING AND OPERATOR QUALIFICATION (OQ) INSPECTIONS 18
J. CHECKLISTS 18
K. MISCELLANEOUS 18
L. OPERATOR TRAINING 19
M. DAMAGE PREVENTION ACTIVITIES 19
N. INTEGRITY MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS 19
O. LIQUEFIED NATURAL GAS 19
P. DISTRIBUTION INTEGRITY MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS (DIMP) 19
Q. NOTICES OF PROBABLE VIOLATIONS (NOPV) 20
R. NOTICE OF PROBABLE VIOLATION ACTIONS 21
S. NOTICE OF PROBABLE VIOLATION TRACKING 21
T. REMOVAL OR CORRECTION OF A PROBABLE VIOLATION 22
U. ISSUES IDENTIFIED 22

VI. INVESTIGATION OF INCIDENTS 24

A. BACKGROUND 24
B. GENERAL PROCEDURES 24
C. INITIAL ISSUES TO NOTE IN RESPONSE TO AN INCIDENT REPORT 26
D. INCIDENT INVESTIGATION PROCESS AND SCOPE 26
E. TELEPHONE NOTIFICATION 27
F. SPECIFIC INVESTIGATION ISSUES - ALL INCIDENTS/ACCIDENTS 27
G. ADDITIONAL ISSUES, IF REQUIRED 27

APPENDIX A – OPERATOR LIST 29

[INSERT OPERATOR LIST]APPENDIX B – EXAMPLE RISK BASED INSPECTION PRIORITIZATION MODEL FOR GAS TRANSMISSION 29

APPENDIX C – FORMS 36

APPENDIX D – OPERATOR CONTACT LIST 36

APPENDIX E – FEDERAL STATUTE 36

APPENDIX F – FEDERAL REGULATIONS 36
APPENDIX G – STATE STATUTE 36
APPENDIX H – STATE REGULATIONS 36

I. PURPOSE

The Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration (PHMSA) guidelines for state programs, Section 5.0, requires that State Programs have a current, written plan for conducting its pipeline safety inspection and enforcement program.

The purpose of this example document is to provide State agencies with additional specificity regarding PHMSA's expectations for the content of such plans.

Specific example statements and requirements are shown for illustration only and are not to be construed or interpreted as mandatory PHMSA requirements for State Programs. Refer to the official PHMSA Guidelines for State Programs for a complete description of program requirements.

Caution: This example document is not comprehensive. Absence of specific topics in this example should not be construed as an indication that missing topics need not be addressed in the state program manual. Activities or requirements described in the official PHMSA State Guidelines should be addressed in the requisite level-of-detail similar to the topics illustrated in this document.

II. MISSION STATEMENT

Each state pipeline safety agency should include a mission statement or policy statement similar to the example below.

The mission of the [*State Pipeline Safety Program Agency*] is to ensure the safe construction, operation and maintenance of intrastate natural gas pipelines and/or intrastate hazardous liquid pipelines in [*insert State name*]. This is accomplished through education, inspection, enforcement and investigation of incidents/accidents. Our ultimate responsibility is protecting the public and the environment from the dangers of natural gas and/or hazardous liquids in transportation.

III. [STATE] PIPELINE SAFETY PROGRAM

Each state pipeline safety agency should include a brief overview of its pipeline safety program and its role in oversight of pipeline safety, similar to the example below.

Background

The [*State Pipeline Safety Program*] is a Federal Program under the direct responsibility of the U.S. Department of Transportation ("DOT"). The Pipeline Safety Act ("Federal Act") gave jurisdiction over all gas [*or hazardous liquid*] pipeline safety in the U.S. to the Secretary of Transportation ("Secretary"). However, the Federal Act also provides that any state with a law comparable to the Federal Act in scope and intent could enter into an agreement ("Certification") with the Secretary to carry out safety enforcement in that state. The [*State*] legislature passed the [*insert State statute*] and gave the [*insert State Pipeline Safety agency*] jurisdiction over all intrastate gas [*and/or hazardous liquid*] pipeline safety in [*insert State*]. [*Insert State*] operators own over

[xxxx] miles of gas transmission lines,
[xxxx] miles of gas distribution mains
[xxxx] million individual service lines
[xx] LNG facilities
[xxxx] miles of hazardous liquid transmission lines

Congressional Intent

Chapter 601 of the Federal Act provides the statutory basis for the State's Pipeline Safety Program. Chapter 601 establishes a framework for promoting pipeline safety through exclusive Federal authority for regulation of *interstate* pipeline facilities and Federal delegation to the states of all or part of the responsibility for *intrastate* pipeline facilities under annual certification or agreement. Chapter 601 authorizes Federal grants-in-aid of up to 80 percent of a state agency's personnel, equipment, and activity costs for its pipeline safety program. The resulting federal/state partnership is the cornerstone for ensuring uniform implementation of the pipeline safety program nationwide.

Federal Role and Organizational Structure

DOT's Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration (PHMSA) is responsible for protecting the people and the environment in the United States through a comprehensive pipeline safety program. PHMSA directly administers the program, develops issues, and enforces minimum safety regulations for interstate and intrastate pipelines. These regulations are written to ensure safety in (1) the design, construction, testing, operation, and maintenance of pipeline facilities and in (2) the siting, construction, operation, and maintenance of liquefied natural gas facilities. PHMSA ensures compliance with regulations through operator inspections, enforcement actions, and incident investigations. PHMSA also administers grant-in-aid funding to states, conducts research, and collects and analyzes safety data.

PHMSA Headquarters is located in Washington, D.C. Headquarters administers the grant-in-aid program to support state agencies conducting gas and hazardous liquid pipeline safety programs. In

addition to collecting, compiling, and analyzing pipeline safety and operating data, PHMSA manages the risk-based pipeline inspection plan. PHMSA Headquarters also supports the work of five Regional Offices.

PHMSA Regional Offices serve as the focal point for compliance activities. Staff at each regional office provides technical assistance and support to state agency programs and conducts the annual evaluation of those programs.

State Program Oversight

Goals are set for all state programs by PHMSA and enforcement of those goals is attained by reductions in Federal grant-in-aid funding and the potential loss of our Federal Certification if those goals are not met. If state certification is lost, responsibility for pipeline safety within the state falls back to DOT PHMSA. Each state is required to have standards at least as stringent as the Federal Standards. [*insert State name*'s] response to that requirement is to adopt the Federal Standard itself [*or other …please describe if other*]. In order to stay current, [*insert State*] readopts the Federal Standard every [*x*] years [*or other description as applicable*].

[I*nclude citation to federal and state statute and regulations*]
Federal and state statutes and regulations are attached in Appendices E, F, G, and H.

PHMSA Monitored Goals

A formula was developed by PHMSA to determine the proper level of performance for each state. The formula considers the number of gas [*or hazardous liquid*] system operators, the miles of transmission pipeline, gas main distribution pipelines, and the number of gas service lines in a state. For [*insert State name*], this formula finds that we need [*xx*] full-time inspectors and that we should be spending a minimum of [*xxx*] person-days per year in the field inspecting facilities. Our current allocated staff is at [*xx*] and the minimum inspection-day requirements are being met with that number of inspectors.

Training

DOT provides training for our Pipeline Safety Program staff primarily at its PHMSA Training and Qualification ("T&Q") facilities in Oklahoma City, OK. Currently, a total of 7 courses must be attended within 3 years of employment for a pipeline inspector to be qualified by T&Q. The courses are approximately 40 hours long and the subjects for those courses are listed below. Some of the courses listed also require additional computer-based training prior to course attendance. Refer to the most current edition of Appendix C in the Guidelines For States Participating in the Pipeline Safety Program to obtain the most up to date training requirements.

	Course Code	Course Title
1	PHMSA-PL1250	*Safety Evaluation of Gas Pipeline Systems Course*
2	PHMSA-PL1255	*Gas Pressure Regulation & Overpressure Protection Course*
3	PHMSA-PL1310	*Plastic and Composite Materials Course*
4	PHMSA-PL3242	*Welding and Welding Inspection of Pipeline Materials Course*
5	PHMSA-PL3256	*Failure Investigation Pipeline Failure Investigation Techniques Course*
6	PHMSA-PL3293	*Corrosion Control of Pipeline Systems Course*
7	PHMSA-PL3257	*Pipeline Safety Regulation Application and Compliance Procedures Course*

Additionally, the following courses are required for Pipeline Integrity Management Inspections as a result of newly adopted Federal rules.

8	PHMSA-PL3267	*Fundamentals of Integrity Management Course*
9	PHMSA-PL1297	*Gas Integrity Management (IM) Protocol Course*
10	PHMSA-PL3291	*Fundamentals of (SCADA) System Technology and Operation Course*
11	PHMSA-PL3292	*Safety Evaluation of Inline Inspection (ILI)/Pigging Programs Course*
12	PHMSA-PL3306	*External Corrosion Direct Assessment (ECDA) Field Course*
13	PHMSA-PL3IC	*Investigating and Managing Internal Corrosion of Pipelines WBT*
14	PHMSA-PL 1245	*Inspections of Distribution Integrity Management Programs*

[Note: *Example course listing is specific to gas pipeline inspector qualifications. Additional courses apply for hazardous liquid pipeline inspector qualification*.]

IV. INSPECTION PLANNING

The PHMSA State Guidelines, section 5.1.1 through 5.1.2, require that state agencies have written procedures that provide for maintaining a current list of operators under its jurisdiction and prioritizing inspection activities based on operator-specific information. This section contains examples of administrative procedures which provide State agencies with additional specificity regarding PHMSA's expectations for the level-of-detail appropriate for such procedures.

Listing of Operators

In accordance with the PHMSA State Guidelines, section 5.1.1, each State agency must maintain a list of the name and mailing address of each jurisdictional operator. The official address for each operator should be the one to which all pipeline-safety-related correspondence is sent and considered the official notice to the operator.

In addition, information about the pipeline location and/or service areas should be maintained. The list should also document the type of operator (e.g., LDC, master meter, etc.).

Each State agency should have a written process and procedure it uses to assure that it becomes aware of new operators, mergers, acquisitions, system expansions, new construction, etc., such that the list is maintained current.

See Appendix A for an example listing of operators.

Inspection Priorities

In accordance with the PHMSA State Guidelines, section 5.1.2, each State agency must establish Inspection priorities. Inspection priorities are determined in accordance with the following process and procedure. The resulting list will address both the priority of operators (i.e., which operators should be inspected sooner or more frequently), and the focus areas to concentrate the inspection for all operators (i.e., identify riskier or problematic aspects for each operator to focus inspections on the units or topics where needed most).

The State's process for prioritizing inspections or inspection activities addresses the following:

1. Inspector Input/knowledge obtained from prior inspections.
2. Prior compliance performance of operators (both the number and severity of prior non-compliances)
   a) Number, nature, and age of outstanding compliance issues that remain open

Data from annual reports[1] or other sources indicative of inherent pipeline system risk such as:

   b) Prior incident history
   c) Prior leak history
   d) Mileage and HCA mileage
   e) Pipe diameter

[1] See Appendix B for an example procedure that documents the system information from annual reports and incidents reports and how the information can be used to develop a relative risk index listing of operators as an aid to development of an Inspection Priority Listing.

f) Age of pipe
g) Coating and Cathodic Protection
h) Type of pipe (especially vintage pipe of problematic design such as LF-ERW pipe, cast iron pipe, etc.)

Time since previous inspection
Number, nature, and age of outstanding compliance issues that remain open
Pipeline system expansion (e.g., new construction, acquisitions, etc.)

[*Insert State agency name*] will develop an Inspection Priority List each year. Although not the sole factor in determining specific inspection plans and priorities, the factors above must be considered when establishing the ultimate Inspection Priority List. The Inspection Priority List should also account for large operators with multiple operational units to insure an adequate rotation is performed. The Inspection Priority List should be periodically updated to reflect new significant information (such as incidents) that results in changing inspection priorities.

This Inspection Priority List documents the input listed above to record the basis for the Inspection Priority List, along with any other special needs that influence the final inspection priority decisions.

Time Intervals for Inspections (including LNG facilities)

[*Insert State agency name*] has established the following maximum allowed time interval between inspections for each type of inspection.

1. Standard inspections..... (X years)
2. Operation and Maintenance Plan..... (X years)
3. Public Awareness Plan ..... (X years)
4. Anti-Drug and Alcohol Plan..... (X years)

Emergency Plan..... (X years)
Operator Training Plan..... (X years)
Operator Qualification Plan ..... (X years)
Distribution Integrity Management Program Plan ..... (X years)
Integrity Management Program Plan ..... (X years)
Control Room Management Plan ..... (X years)

Inspections of programmatic plans such as integrity management are performed on less frequent intervals because [*insert additional rationale/justification for intervals selected*].

[*Insert State agency name*] will conduct additional inspections or adjust the Inspection Priority List as needed in response to unplanned events such as such as leaks, incidents, compliance issues, and/or poor operator performance.

V. CONDUCTING INSPECTIONS

The PHMSA State Guidelines, section 5.1.3 through 5.1.6 requires that state agencies have written procedures that provide for methodical, systematic, comprehensive, and consistent inspections and enforcement actions. To properly conduct an inspection of an operator's facilities, an inspector shall utilize an inspection form or checklist referenced to the applicable Federal and/or State regulations. This section contains examples of administrative procedures which provide State agencies with additional specificity regarding PHMSA's expectations for the level-of-detail appropriate for such procedures.

Objective

Evaluate all natural gas pipeline system operators and/or hazardous liquid pipeline system operators under *[insert State name]* jurisdiction to verify compliance with the requirements of the [*insert State statute*] and the Federal Minimum Safety Standards under 49 CFR Parts 191, 192, 193, and 195, as applicable. If an operator fails to meet the minimum requirements, the necessary action will be taken to obtain compliance.

Preparation for Inspection

To properly evaluate a pipeline operator, the inspector must be familiar with the operator's plans, procedures, and processes associated with the area to be inspected.

Prior to conducting an inspection the Inspector shall become familiar with the history of the operator by reviewing office records and available databases. The Inspector should also check for any outstanding notices of probably violation and become familiar with the circumstances surrounding any outstanding issues previously identified. The inspector should also identify any special permits/waivers and any NTSB recommendations that apply to the system/segments being inspected.

General Inspection Guidelines

Make arrangements by telephone or electronic mail with company personnel to assist in conducting safety inspections.

Municipal and Master Meter operators will be devoted a minimum of [*X*] days each for standard inspection activities and additional days will be dedicated as needed.

There will be joint or multiple inspectors conducting inspections when warranted. This is an effort to promote consistency and efficiency among the entire staff. An appropriate rotation of inspectors between operators will also occur. All operators will be assigned one inspector to be the contact for questions or concerns they might have. There will also be an adequate rotation of locations inspected within each operating unit.

Each on-site inspection should be closed with an exit critique with the operator or representative of the operator, at which time the operator is advised of the inspector's findings and recommendations.

Records and Reports

All on-site activity will require a report to document the inspection and the results. A brief review of activities performed will need to be noted on the report with a more detailed report recorded on a designated checklist. When applicable, all inspections should be documented using the designated checklist pertaining to the activity being viewed. These checklists can be viewed in Appendix C [*or in electronic format*]. If there is not a checklist that is applicable to the activity being reviewed a detailed account of the items viewed should be noted. Checklists should be reviewed annually to insure they are up to date with the most current requirements from 49 CFR.

Records detailing the types of inspections conducted and the respective person-days devoted to each inspection will also be attached to each report using the Inspection Priority Sheet.

Record Inspection

Each Record Inspection should include a review of the operator's records concerning the construction, inspection, operation, and maintenance of the operator's pipeline, including pipeline facilities. If problems are found during the review, additional review will be necessary to accurately determine the scope of any deficiency found. Checklists should be used to aid the Inspector during each inspection. If the operator's records are so extensive that checking every document in a certain file is not practical, the inspector may spot check certain records from the file. If a spot check reveals something that is questionable, a more in depth study of that particular record should be conducted.

The Field Inspection (see section II.F) should include an on-site inspection of the operator's facilities to confirm that system maintenance is being performed as indicated by those items covered in the record inspection. A Record Inspection, Field Inspection, or Plan review will be considered a Standard Inspection.

On-site record inspections should be conducted at the beginning of a calendar year. System records will generally indicate the condition of the system. Any questionable records should be verified with a corresponding field inspection of any facilities in question. The records reviewed for compliance should include, but are not limited to the following:

Leak Survey (Part 192 only)- Determine Residential (5 year) and Business District (each calendar year, but at intervals not exceeding 15 months) survey dates, number of leaks found and classified, and if proper repairs were made (leak repair work orders). Refer to Sections 192.706 and 192.723. NOTE: State may have additional requirements per specific state regulations or there may be additional inspection requirements per operator compliance issue.

- Ask operator if any sections were missed or if any known compliance issues
- Appropriate documentation (maps) should be reviewed to determine compliance
- Are leak survey locations documented appropriately – highlighted routes
- Comprehensive review should be conducted every 3-5 years where ALL leak survey maps are reviewed to determine no geographic areas are missed

- Are locations of leaks found noted on maps
- Review leak repair records of any leaks noted on survey
- Are all leaks reported on annual report

Corrosion Control - Determine if system is cathodically protected and type of protection, anodes, rectifiers, isolation, interference bonds, etc. Determine if proper monitoring is maintained. Refer to subpart I-Requirements for Corrosion Control, of Part 192 and/or subpart H – Corrosion Control, of Part 195. Take pipe-to-soil readings, when possible, to determine compliance.

- Ask operator if any sections were missed or if any known compliance issues
- Has operator provided you with all records
- Try and get count of test points used in various systems (to be used for your next inspection also)
- Ask if any test points were added or removed during last inspection cycle
- Compare readings and looks for signs of suspicion
    - Are readings same as last reading
    - Do readings coincidentally read minimum (.85?)
    - Does main segment have more than one test point and is reading similar
- Count of isolated service test points – count variance

Odorization - Determine type of equipment, if annual maintenance is performed and test to determine if proper odorant level is maintained. Refer to Section 192.625.

- Have odor injection levels been reviewed
- Odorant Purchase records
-

Patrolling - Determine if proper patrolling is done on transmission and gas distribution facilities.

- Patrolling maps – what are source documents
- Signatures of person conducting patrol
-

Valves - Determine if annual maintenance is performed on designated key valves on transmission and gas distribution mains. Also, refer to the O & M Plan for designated emergency valves.

- It is vital to get counts where you can compare from year to year
- How many valve inspections were done in one day
- Dates of records – Weekends? Holidays? April 31st?
-

Maximum Allowable Operating Pressure (MAOP) or **Maximum Operating Pressure (MOP)** -

The MAOP or MOP of the facilities must be determined.

Regulator Stations (Part 192 only) - Annual inspection for regulator stations is required to determine mechanical condition, correct pressure, adequate capacity and operation. If more than one regulator station is used to supply gas to any single system, telemeter or recording pressure gauges are required. Refer to Sections 192.739, 192.741 and MAOP under 192.619.

Relief Devices - Determine if relief devices are tested and if capacities are adequate and set to function at the proper pressures.

Vaults (Part 192 only) - Vaults having volumetric internal content of 200 cubic feet or more require ventilation ducts and other features and are required to be inspected annually.

Customer Leak Complaints (Part 192 only)- Determine if the operator has the recorded all necessary leak information, (e.g. time received, time dispatched, time arrived, time completed and disposition).

Farm Taps (Part 192 only)- Determine if proper odorization, regulation, and adequate overpressure protection is provided.

Special Considerations for Master Meters (Part 192 only) - Master meter system O & M Plans should consist of a brief description of the gas facilities, and procedures for leak surveys and repairs, cathodic protection monitor, system pressure, customer leak complaints, system valve maintenance, new construction procedures when applicable and procedures for personnel training.

Review of operator records should not be limited to the above list, but should include all of their specific required operation and maintenance activities. The inspection checklist selected should provide a comprehensive list of those items necessary to complete the inspection. Based on records reviewed the Inspector should select future locations for physical on-site facility inspection of Pump/Compressor stations, Regulator Stations, System Valves, C-P Test Stations, Rectifiers, Odorizers (gas only), Line Markers, Leak Repairs, and Customer Meters and Regulators (gas only), etc.

It is not necessary to obtain copies of records during routine inspections, unless a noncompliance is found and records may be needed to support an enforcement action. If any request for a copy of any record is refused, immediately telephone the Pipeline Safety Program Manager for guidance. Include a reference to the refusal in your report.

Field Inspections

Physically conduct an on-site inspection of existing system facilities, such as regulating stations, odorizers, commercial and industrial meters and regulators, relief devices and vents, exposed mains, peak shaving plants, system valves, C-P test stations, rectifiers, compressor stations, storage fields and gas wells, etc. Check for proper installations, over-pressure protection, security, etc. Photographs are recommended to support any noncompliance found.

Comprehensive Inspections

A comprehensive or focused inspection should be conducted of each inspection unit at least every [X] years. The intent of the inspection is to take a snapshot of a specific area within the inspection unit. The current year Comprehensive Field Inspection checklist shall be used during the inspection. The inspection may be done independently of operator personnel but the preferred method is to perform the inspection with the assistance of operator personnel.

The area chosen for the inspection should be of a manageable size and take into consideration the criteria listed in section [X] of the checklist which includes: population density, age of system, type of piping, operating characteristics, performance history of system (i.e. incident history).

The MAOP/MOP of the system should be verified. Pressure regulation should be included and the criteria under section [X] of the checklist should be verified.

System valves should be included in the inspection. The criteria for valve inspection are included under section [X] of the checklist.

The type of cathodic protection being applied to the system piping should be verified. Pipe-to-soil potentials should be taken a predetermined test points. Pipe-to-soil potentials should be taken at randomly selected service risers to determine if unrecorded electrically isolated services exist. If applicable, rectifiers and bonds should be inspected during the inspection. Atmospheric corrosion inspections should be conducted of all above ground facilities encountered during the inspection. Pay close attention to condition of risers at the surface-to-atmosphere interface.

Odor intensity checks (gas only) should be taken in the area of the inspection. Operator owned odor intensity verification equipment should be used during the inspection. Verify odor intensity and calibration dates of equipment.

A gas leakage survey of the system piping should be conducted, if applicable. Operator owned leakage survey equipment should be used along with qualified personnel. Compare results of inspection with existing leak documentation. Verify the classifications of any known existing leaks on the system.

Customer meter sets should be inspected during the inspection. This can be done in conjunction with the leakage survey. The location of the meter set as well as the condition should be observed. Check for the presence of vent screen and vent position. Verify valve requirements are being met.

If marked pipeline facilities are encountered during the inspection verify the accuracy of the location markings. The presence of pipeline marker should be verified at all above ground mains, road and railroad crossings where applicable. The information on the marker should be checked for accuracy and code compliance.

Throughout the inspection the accuracy of the system mapping supplied by the operator should be verified when possible.

The qualifications of all operator/contractor personnel observed performing covered tasks during the

inspection shall be verified and documented on the appropriate forms.

Design, Testing and Construction Inspection

Construction Inspection: Observing the installation of **new piping** (transmission, main or service) or an installation resulting in an **increase in capacity or size** of an existing facility accomplished through replacement.

In January of each year the inspector shall contact all pipeline system operators and request a listing of, and approximate start date for planned pipeline construction projects. The inspector shall include construction inspections when scheduling field inspection activities based on the projected dates of the projects. Follow-up contact with the operator may be required to verify actual construction project start dates.

To conduct a construction inspection, the inspector shall contact the company representative in a reasonable time period prior to the inspection. The inspector shall take the time to become familiar with the company procedures by either reviewing the procedure in advance of the inspection or by requesting a copy of the procedure from company representatives to be reviewed while observing the construction procedure.

The appropriate inspection checklist shall be used as guidance and documentation during the inspection. The checklist will also allow the inspector to document adherence to proper procedure.

If the Inspector observes that a task is not completed as required, the appropriate company official shall be notified. A review should be conducted to determine if the issue identified relates to the procedure or a training/qualification problem.

The checklist references specific code sections. If during the inspection the Inspector determines that the checklist is not correct or in need of updating, the Pipeline Safety Program Manager shall be notified. The most current copy of the checklists is maintained [*specify where checklists can be obtained*].

The Inspector shall as part of the inspection determine if the company is following their damage prevention program by verifying a ticket has been issued and the excavation is completed within the time interval allowed. The Inspector should determine if the operator approved excavation procedures are being adhered to.

The crew members qualifications (if construction tasks are included as covered tasks by the operator) should also be reviewed as part of the inspection and documented on **the Operator Qualification Field Inspection** checklist. When possible an **Element 9 Inspection Protocol** form shall be used to evaluate the effectiveness and comprehensiveness of the operators' qualification plan during the inspection.

The Inspector shall review the bulleted items below when applicable to the work being performed. The Inspector shall determine if tasks were conducted satisfactorily and document their findings on the appropriate construction checklist.

- Establish the Class Location for the area where the work is being performed (gas only).
- Establish the system MAOP/MOP and operating pressure.
- Determine if the piping and components being used are properly marked and qualified for gas piping and the pressure rating is adequate for the system MAOP/MOP.
- Establish the piping grade, specification, and wall thickness are adequate for the installation being observed.
- Determine if cathodic protection is required, the type of protection being applied (anode, rectifier or bond). Determine the level of protection by performing a pipe to soil potential measurement.
- Determine if adequate depth is being achieved for the type of installation being observed.
- Shoring or other acceptable trench protection should be used in excavations as defined by Company procedures where unstable soil is encountered and or the opening is 5 feet or more in depth.
- Ensure that the backfill being used is clean of debris that may damage coating or piping.
- If the possibility of a release of natural gas or hazardous liquid is present, ensure that a fire extinguisher is readily accessible. In the event of a planned release confirm that the area has been secured and no ignition sources are present prior to release. Verify that appropriate personal protection equipment is being used.
- Verify that individuals performing fusion or steel welding are qualified by the appropriate procedure and that qualifications are current.
- Observe fusions or welding being performed to determine if the company procedures are being followed.
- If tapping and stopping are being performed ensure that company procedures are being followed and that the employees performing the work have current qualifications.
- When new or existing pipe is being handled, transported or excavated near, ensure that the piping and coating is in good physical condition. Make certain that the crew is inspecting the piping prior to installation or backfill for gouges, dents or abrasions. If damage is observed ensure that the damaged segment is removed or repaired as defined by company procedure.
- Prior to pressure test determine if the Class Location has a bearing on the minimum test pressure (gas only).
- Adherence to pressure test duration required by company procedure and regulations should also be verified.
- Ensure that the pressure gauge or recording chart used to monitor pressure tests are in good physical condition and if required by company procedure, the calibration date is current.
- When purging is performed verify the operator has determined the area is cleared and the release is controlled and vented safely. This should include, as applicable, vent stack grounding and maintaining static control. If required by company procedure, ensure that the appropriate emergency officials have been notified of purges that may vent large quantities of material.
- If a meter set assembly is part of the installation being observed verify that the service regulator vent is located in an area where it can vent safely to atmosphere and is readily accessible. The riser valve or outside shutoff must also be accessible.
- Verify the meter set assembly has adequate support.
- If an emergency situation occurs while performing the inspection determine if the emergency procedures are followed and the tasks performed are conducted as defined by company procedure.

- Determine if line markers are required and are posted with the appropriate warning, company name, and a 24 hour contact number.
- After completing the inspection the inspector shall perform an exit interview/critique with the appropriate company official indicating any areas of probable violation or issues identified. If follow-up is necessary to confirm corrective action, attach applicable correspondence to the report identifying the steps taken to resolve the issue.

Upon completion of the inspection the Inspector shall complete the necessary documentation and checklist including a Post Inspection Memorandum and Priority Sheet. All documentation shall be submitted to the Pipeline Safety Administator printing. Once printed the entire report package shall be reviewed by the author to ensure that the report is correct and the appropriate attachments are included. Once the Inspector has finalized the inspection, the report and associated attachments shall be presented to the Pipeline Safety Program Manager for review. Under normal circumstances the report should be submitted to the Manager within 2 weeks of the completion date of the inspection. If circumstances are encountered requiring additional time to finalize the report, notify the Manager of the reason for the delay.

Training and Operator Qualification (OQ) Inspections

The first round of written Operator Qualification plan inspections was completed by December 17, 2005. Element 9 Inspections are to be used during field inspections and construction inspections where applicable in order to ensure field knowledge of Operator Qualification issues. The Operator Form 15 OQ Field Inspection Protocol should be used to document the individuals and tasks observed during field inspections. The status of qualification should be noted for each task observed.

Determine if training requirements of [*insert applicable State statute or regulation*] are being met and appropriate documentation is being maintained by the operator.

Checklists

Checklists are to be used for all inspections. Whenever a checklist is not used, provide a detailed explanation of inspection activities in the Report or Post Inspection Memorandum. See Appendix C for checklist information.

Miscellaneous

During field work an Inspector may discover other systems. When these systems are identified which may be jurisdictional, a visit to the system should be scheduled to determine whether or not it is jurisdictional. If so, advise the operator of his obligations. Briefly inspect the system to assure that it is jurisdictional and that no obvious hazardous conditions exist. Leave copies of "Small Operator Guidance Manual" and the Minimum Safety Standards with the operator. A written report of findings should be submitted to the Program Manager for review.

Operator Training

Participation in organized training programs intended to enhance the operators knowledge of code requirements and methods used to achieve compliance is permitted. Individual operator training may be warranted in some situations. The days spent on these activities shall be recorded as On-site Operator Training.

Damage Prevention Activities

A damage prevention inspection can consist of review of damages the operator sustained due to third party damages per 1000 locates during the previous year. The numbers should be compared to prior years to determine if the rate is decreasing. Inspection time spent solely on verification of one-call response is also allowed.

Integrity Management Programs

Staff meeting the PHMSA training requirements relating to integrity management inspection will perform or lead all IMP inspections. When conducting the initial review of an operators plan, current IM Protocol Form(s) [*or the PHMSA protocol form*] will be used to complete the IMP plan reviews. Follow-up reviews of Integrity Management Programs will be conducted at intervals not exceeding [*X*} calendar years. Form [*insert form number*] Integrity Management Follow-up Inspection will be used for periodic inspection to verify that the operators are meeting the requirements of CFR 192 Subpart O and/or 49 CFR 195.452.

Qualified Staff will be assigned to conduct field inspections of the work being performed on pipeline facilities to meet the Subpart O and/or 49 CFR 195.452 requirements. Staff will request schedules for field activities from the operators to which they are assigned. The inspections will be adapted to the type of work being performed. Staff will verify that all work being conducted is performed in accordance with the operators operation and maintenance plan and integrity management plan.

Liquefied Natural Gas

Standard inspection of the LNG facility will be conducted at intervals not exceeding 2 calendar years. The LNG Facility Record Inspection & Field Checklist will be used for the inspection.

Distribution Integrity Management Programs (DIMP)

Staff meeting the PHMSA training requirements relating to distribution integrity management inspection will perform or lead all IMP inspections. When conducting the initial review of an operators plan, current DIMP Protocol Form(s) [*or the PHMSA DIMP protocol form*] will be used.

Qualified Staff will be assigned to conduct field inspections of the work being performed on pipeline facilities to meet the 49 CFR Part 192, Subpart P, requirements. Staff will request schedules for field activities from the operators to which they are assigned. The inspections will be adapted to the type of work being performed. Staff will verify that all work being conducted is performed in accordance with the operators operation and maintenance plan and integrity management plan.

Notices of Probable Violations (NOPV)

If a probable violation is observed during an inspection, a Notice of Probable Violation (NOPV) will be issued to the operator in question. A verbal notice must be given to the operator personnel assigned as a contact during the inspection. The notice must describe the regulation section or administrative code not being complied with as well as the specific details of the violation. A copy of the completed written notice must be provided to the system operator along with a copy attached to the inspector's Report. The written report and attachments should be submitted to the State Pipeline Safety Program Manager within 2 weeks of the completion of the inspection.

A letter addressed to the appropriate operator contact (which should be a company officer, system owner, mayor or other culpable party) shall be drafted by the Inspector issuing the NOPV. The letter should include the appropriate code section and a description of the violation issue. The letter shall be submitted to the Program Manager within one week of identification that the NOPV exists. A copy of each NOPV form shall be supplied to the Program Manager along with the NOPV letter. It is also acceptable to notify an operator of any NOPV via letter if required action is determined after leaving operator premise. The NOPV letter drafted by the Inspector shall be submitted to the Program Manager as described above. A final copy of each NOPV notice and letter is to be submitted to the State Pipeline Safety Program Administrator. It may be the decision of the program manager that further investigation of a questionable violation is needed, or a more in-depth study is needed to determine the extent of the deficiency. This should be completed before any formal notifications are made. *[Pipeline Administrator and program manager could be same person – or designated administrator assistant or other designee]*

The reason or reasons for the noncompliance action taken shall be recorded on the copy of the notice form kept on file at the State agency. This will be accomplished by the use of an enforcement code. The code will be one of the three steps discussed below, followed by one or more of the reasons identified by the corresponding letter of the alphabet (1A, 2B, 3C, etc.).

Example Enforcement Codes

1. Follow-up inspection to ensure correction of the deficiency.
2. More in-depth study to determine the extent of deficiency.

A noncompliance or warning letter will be drafted and forwarded to the operator requesting corrective action.

Request officials from operating unit to appear in person for conference relative to the violation.

Initiate a citation order for the operator to appear before the State agency based on seriousness of violation cited.

a) Violation not of a critical nature and/or not an immediate hazard to public safety.
b) Violation is of a critical nature and/or is an immediate hazard to public safety.
c) Operator is currently taking corrective action.
d) Long-term corrective action is required.
e) Prior performance indicates no repetitive violation.
f) Records indicate history of repetitive violations.
g) Numerous violations cited and require close attention.

h) Violation found and corrected prior to inspection.
i) Operator requires further guidance or training.
j) Additional information needed before pursuing violation.
k) Change in ownership in progress.
l) Pending response from operator.
m) Pending clarification of rule or law.
n) Insufficient corrective action.

Notice of Probable Violation Actions

After taking into consideration the nature of the violation and the past performance of the system operation, one or more of the following steps shall be taken to achieve compliance:

a) A NOPV or warning letter will be drafted within 1 week and submitted to the Pipeline Safety Program Manager for forwarding to the operator. The letter must identify the specific violation(s) and request corrective action to be taken.
b) System operator officials will be asked to appear for a conference prior to filing a formal citation order.
c) If the operator fails to correct the violation or respond to steps a) and/or b), a citation order may be issued by the State agency, directing that the system operator appear before the State agency to show cause why it should not be found in noncompliance and subject to a penalty assessment.

Notice of Probable Violation Tracking

Once a Notice of Probable Violation letter has been sent, the operator will be allowed thirty days (30) from the date of the letter to respond and detail intended corrective actions. The Pipeline Safety Administrator *[or designated party]* will keep a calendar tracking the due date of each response. If a response is not received within 5 business days past the due date, the Administrator will notify the Inspector assigned to the operator involved as well as the Program Manager. The Inspector will contact the operator in an effort to ascertain why the response has not been submitted. The reason provided will be conveyed to the Administrator and the Program Manager via email to determine if further actions are warranted. Upon receipt of the response the Administrator will provide copies of the response to the Inspector assigned and the Program Manager. The original copy of the response will be filed with the NOPV form and warning letter.

Upon completion of the associated report, the NOPV form, and NOPV letter, the violation will be logged onto an Excel spreadsheet maintained on the *[designated file location]*. The spread sheet contains multiple sheets including outstanding violations and corrected violations. Once updated the outstanding NOPV sheet is printed and posted on the Pipeline Safety bulletin board. Follow-up inquiries will be made to the violation issues. Each violation will receive follow-up on a quarterly basis. The update should be conducted on the first Monday of the new quarter. If the Inspector is absent on the first Monday of the new quarter, the follow-up shall be conducted the day the Inspector returns to the office.

The actions to be conducted during the follow-up activities shall include: a review of the NOPV form,

NOPV letters and associated documents; updating the NOPV Status form stored on the *[designated file location]*; printing the updated NOPV Status form; attaching the printed copy of the NOPV Status form to the NOPV file packet, and returning the updated packet to the Pipeline Safety Administrator for logging on the Excel spread stored on the *[designated file location]*. The extent of the follow-up will be determined by the nature and severity of the violation.

Examples of follow-up actions:

- Periodic contact with the operator to determine corrective actions,
- Confirmation of corrective actions at specific time intervals determined by the Inspector or Program Manager, possibly including field verification,
- Review and confirmation during next regularly scheduled inspection,
- Citation Order/Civil Penalty.

Removal or Correction of a Probable Violation

Under normal circumstances removal or correction of a notice of probable violation may be accomplished by one of the follow:

- The operators response to the NOPV letter includes documentation of correction of the deficiency;
- A follow-up inspection has been conducted to verify correction of the deficiency;
- A regularly schedule inspection of the operator has verified the violation issue no longer exists.

The process of correcting a NOPV will require the Inspector to document the corrective actions taken by the operator to correct the deficiency and actions taken by the Inspector to verify corrective actions. This can be in the form of a Report, O&M Plan review report, or updating the NOPV Status form. The Inspector will also obtain the original NOPV form from the [*state pipeline safety agency*] files and note on the form that the NOPV issue has been corrected as well as the date of verification. The entire package containing the NOPV notification form, NOPV letter, NOPV status form if applicable, and corrective action report shall be submitted to the Program Manager. The Program Manager will review all documentation to determine if acceptable actions have been taken and the violation can be removed or corrected. If the corrective actions are acceptable to the Program Manager the entire package will be provided to the Pipeline Safety Program Administrator for appropriate documentation and filing.

Issues Identified

Occasionally, an Inspector may observe conditions or operating practices that are not violations at the time, but could, if not corrected, result in a future violation or an unsafe situation. On those occasions, the inspector should verbally inform the operator of the potential problem, and also include the issue in the Report or Post Inspection Memorandum. A copy of the report will be provided to the operator after review by the Pipeline Safety Program Manager.

If the Inspector uses the Issues Identified in lieu of a noncompliance form for minor violations, it should only be used after considering all potential public safety concerns (risk) and the action being taken by the operator to correct the problem.

Minor Violation Examples:

- A record keeping error when an item of maintenance was not properly recorded, but which presents no immediate safety problem unless a set series of events would occur to the gas system operation.
- An operational or maintenance deficiency, which may involve equipment or facilities, not used as the primary safety protection for the pipeline.
- A deficiency that is not considered unsafe, but has never been formally addressed before with operator.
- An issue brought to the attention of the Inspector by the operator prior to the inspection.

The Issue Identified option should only be used after the inspector has considered all safety concerns and the operator's past performance for correcting apparent violations.

VI. Investigation of Incidents

The PHMSA State Guidelines, section 5.1.3 requires that state agencies have written procedures that provide for methodical, systematic, comprehensive, and consistent investigation of incidents and accidents. This section contains examples of administrative procedures which provide State agencies with additional specificity regarding PHMSA's expectations for the level-of-detail appropriate in such procedures.

Background

The [insert State agency name] enforces safety standards for the transportation in *[insert State name]* of hazardous liquid and/or natural and other gas by pipeline pursuant to the [insert State statute]. The State agency has adopted and maintained rules establishing minimum safety standards that are at least as inclusive, as stringent, and compatible with the minimum safety standards adopted by the Secretary of Transportation under the Federal Act.

The State agency's Pipeline Safety Program conducts on-site inspections of the approximately *[xxx]* gas operators to determine compliance with all applicable federal and/or state regulations. Inspectors monitor operator records concerning inspection, operation, maintenance, emergency procedures, and construction. Inspectors also conduct field inspections of operator facilities to verify compliance with regulations covering design, construction, operation and maintenance of the pipeline facilities.

Under the State agency's certification agreement with the U.S. DOT, the State agency must investigate all incidents involving operator procedures or facilities resulting in (1) death, (2) injury requiring hospitalization, or (3) property damage in excess of $50,000. Additionally, incidents which do not satisfy one of these three thresholds may be investigated if the circumstances are unclear or if staff believes operator procedures or facilities may have contributed to or caused of the incident. Where uncertainty exists, inspections are done.

General Procedures

Pipeline owners and operators are required to report all incidents which are the result of gas leaking from their facilities and which resulted in death, personal injury requiring in-patient hospitalization, or property damage of $50,000 or more. Additionally, gas system owners and operators must inform the Pipeline Safety Program of incidents which do not meet these criteria, but may be important to communicate for other reasons (media attention, explosions not involving natural gas, location, etc.).

When the Pipeline Safety Program is notified of such incidents, we must decide if (1) an investigation is required (three criteria above, except property damage limit for an investigation is $50,000), (2) not required but prudent, or (3) unnecessary. The Pipeline Safety Program's role in accident investigations is to determine the cause of the incident, or probable cause, and make recommendations, which will prevent a recurrence. When it appears that a safety violation contributed to the incident, the Pipeline Safety Program may make recommendations to the State agency for enforcement actions in the form of show cause hearings and probable penalty assessment. The scope of the investigation, therefore, is important to provide assurance that the findings, recommendations and follow-up activities contribute to public safety.

The initial response involves deciding whether to make an immediate inspection, a delayed inspection

or no inspection at all, who should make the inspection, and who should be informed. The scope of an investigation involves deciding which staff will participate, the initial activities, and then, with preliminary results in hand, developing a plan and schedule for completing the investigation and report.

(Reference Codified State Requirement if applicable), the pipeline operator is required to give telephonic notice of all incidents caused from gas escaping from pipeline facilities resulting in property damages exceeding $50,000, injury requiring overnight hospitalization, or a fatality. The State agency has established a Pipeline Safety Emergency Line for the reporting of incidents, the number is *(xxx) 555-5555*. The line is monitored 24 hours a day, 365 days a year, by Pipeline Safety Program staff during working hours and a contracted answering service on nights, weekends and holidays.

The answering service takes the message and then calls the Pipeline Safety Program Manager, or, in his absence, the assigned Inspector. This is usually done within an hour of the incident. The operator is immediately contacted for more detailed information.

An hour is usually not enough time for a pipeline operator to complete all the inspections and testing of gas system facilities to confirm whether their facilities are or are not involved in a reported incident. Although additional information may not be available at the time, a communications link is established to keep Pipeline Safety Staff informed as information becomes available. Each incident is different, but the information surrounding each incident must be analyzed to determine whether an on-site inspection is necessary. This analysis is based on Federal reporting criteria, operational knowledge of the facilities and experience in these matters.

If it is immediately evident that the probable cause of the incident was not on gas company facilities or there is indication that arson is involved, we would only investigate if the operator requests assistance. Incidents involving customer inside piping go beyond our jurisdictional responsibility and therefore do not require us to investigate.

Generally, operators notify Pipeline Safety Staff of all incidents, whether or not they meet one of the aforementioned three criteria, which require reporting (the threshold for property damage is $50,000 for reporting purposes). This is done as a courtesy to give us prompt notice, to inform us of media coverage and is a safe approach to reporting. Ultimately, we decide, based on the information received, whether it is necessary to visit the site.

The Pipeline Safety Program is not designed to be a front line responder. The Pipeline Safety Program serves a monitoring function. Our accident investigations are designed to ensure that the gas system operator has conducted a thorough investigation into the circumstances surrounding any incident and, based on that information, the gathering of evidence from on-site inspections and from other sources, including fire and arson investigators, to determine the probable cause of an incident. To make better use of time and resource, and allow the operator time to gather the needed documentation, Pipeline Safety Staff's response may be delayed for a few days. An example of this would be an incident caused by excavator damage to a pipeline resulting in property damage.

When Pipeline Safety does decide to investigate an incident, the purpose is to determine the cause, or

probable cause, as required by the Federal Pipeline Safety Act for certification, and to make recommendations for improvements and corrections. If an investigation reveals evidence of wrongdoing, or violation of the [insert State statute], Pipeline Safety Staff may proceed with informal hearings, or recommend formal show-cause actions including civil penalties, whichever is deemed appropriate. Pipeline Safety Staff then monitors the operator's corrective actions in response to the recommendations, and any noncompliance issued resulting from the incident, through follow-up inspections.

The Pipeline Safety Program Manager will assign an Inspector to investigate any incident deemed to qualify as a requirement as reportable under State or Federal law. If it is a major incident involving several injuries or fatalities, more than one Inspector may be assigned to investigate. Depending on the magnitude of the incident the Pipeline Safety Program Manager may coordinate the on-site investigation.

The operator may be required to perform a root cause analysis of the incident in certain situations. Examples of such situations are:

- Staff determines that the operator has done a poor evaluation of the incident cause.
- Staff does not agree with the incident cause stated by the operator.
- Staff does not agree with NTSB conclusions (if applicable).

In some instances, incidents may be reported but no on-site investigation may be warranted upon receipt of additional information. In those instances, a memo to the Incident File will be created documenting the reason(s) that an on-site investigation was not conducted.

Initial Issues to Note in Response to an Incident Report

1. Operator responsibility for reporting.
2. Death, or injury requiring hospitalization, damage level.
3. Scope of Incident
4. Decision to send staff to Incident site.
5. Communicating with appropriate State agency, PHMSA, and NTSB individuals if necessary.
6. Internal (agency) communication of incidents/staff response.
7. Other.

Incident Investigation Process and Scope

1. On-site inspection of company facilities.
2. Review of company records (odorant levels, leak calls, etc.).
3. Interviews.
4. Coordination with others (OSFM, NTSB, fire, police et al.).
5. Determination of cause/probable cause.
6. Review preliminary findings.
7. Schedule.

8. Report preparation.
9. Staff's Standard Operating and Enforcement Procedures, specifically Accident Investigations.
10. Awareness of the possibility of litigation.
11. Other.

Telephone Notification

Pipeline owners or operators are required to report to the State agency all accidents which result from gas leaking from gas distribution and transmission facilities and which caused death, personal injury requiring hospitalization, or property damage of $50,000 or more. Under our certification agreement with U.S. Department of Transportation, the State agency is required to investigate and report on all accidents resulting in death, personal injury requiring hospitalization, or property damage of $50,000 or more. *[List any other applicable state issues here]* The gas distribution system does not include fuel line or appliance piping inside the building.

Specific Investigation Issues - All Incidents/Accidents

All incident investigations should be completed using Incident Investigation Checklist – See Appendix C. The information collected should include, but not necessarily limited to the following items. The checklist should encourage a more thorough investigation.

1. Record the location, city, street and number, date and time, occupant name(s), name(s) of injured and/or fatalities and estimated amount of property damage.
2. Nature of accident - explosion, fire, rupture, etc.
3. Indicate cause - third party, human error, etc.
4. Date and time of notification to the company, how received, who received and who reported.
5. Time company personnel arrived at the location.
6. Conditions found at time of arrival.
7. Action taken by company personnel.
8. If gas was escaping, time and method of securing.
9. Take photographs, including close ups of any exposed gas facilities and buildings involved. It is recommended that you record the sequence of photos taken as you proceed, identifying the pictures and what you wish to depict.
10. Statements of company personnel, public and private witnesses and/or investigating or responding parties who may have information relative to the accident.
11. Determine apparent cause if determination probable cause cannot be made. (A statement that a certain piece of equipment failed is not the cause; determine what caused the failure of the particular piece of equipment). Utilize the accident investigation guide (checklist) as applicable.
12. Statement of investigation activities and recommendations for prevention of future occurrence.

Additional Issues, If Required

1. Make a drawing of the area showing the boundaries of gas in the ground and the degree of the leaking gas from the point of the leak. Show bar-hole pattern description, location of pipes, buildings and streets.

Copies of pressure charts of the portion of the system involved.

Age, size and type of facilities involved, location and condition of isolation valves.

Corrosion control records and odorant test records.

Leakage survey data of area involved - dates, number and class of leaks and disposition.

Leak and repair history of facilities in the surrounding area.

If third party damage, location and marking data, time of request for location, time and method of marking.

Inspection and maintenance program relative to facilities involved and degree of compliance.

Metallurgical analysis.

Pressure test records.

Pipe and material specifications, welding and welder qualification data.

New construction specifications, contractor or company installation.

Description of metal break with respect to:

a) Displacement and what may be the cause - measure angle and state plane of maximum deflection.

b) Degree of parting.

c) Evidence of corrosion, pitting, wall thickness uniformity, pipe coating.

d) Shear or tensile break or combination.

There is the possibility of litigation in all accidents, and you may be called as a witness. With this in mind, your report should contain the facts as you find them and your conclusions should be supported by accurate documentation. Our role in accident investigations is to determine the probable cause of the accident, if possible, and make recommendations, which will prevent recurrence. Accurate documentation should support any determination made. It is recommended that the inspector use the PHMSA incident investigation form.

Appendix A – Operator List

[insert operator list]

Appendix B – Example Risk Based Inspection Prioritization Model

To prioritize gas transmission operators using a risk-based approach, a set of risk factors have been developed based on existing data readily obtained from gas operator annual reports, incident reports, leak history data, and semi-annual performance metrics. The methodology is based on the following factors:

- Actual events that have occurred on an operators system.
- Pipeline characteristics that could indicate a potential to impact HCAs.
- Historical operator performance in areas related to pipeline integrity.

Some of the indices are indicators of the likelihood of accidents and some relate to the potential consequences of accidents. The algorithm used to calculate each index is designated accordingly.

Index #1: Releases That Resulted in Major Impacts

Data on actual events that have occurred on an operator's pipelines can be found in both the Incident Report and the Annual Report. The Annual Report requires the operator to report leaks. An incident report is required to be submitted to PHMSA if there is a release of gas from a pipeline and:

- There have been fatalities, or
- There have been injuries requiring in-patient hospitalization, or
- There has been property damage exceeding $50,000, or
- The event is significant, in the judgment of the operator, even if it did not meet any of the other criteria.

The inputs to the model from Incident Reports submitted by an operator are:

- The number of incidents in the past three years that have resulted in fatalities.
- The number of incidents in the past three years that have resulted in injuries that required inpatient hospitalization.
- The number of incidents in the past three years that have resulted in property damage reported to OPS.

The number of incidents in each of these three categories is then multiplied by a weighting factor assigned to fatalities, injuries, and property damage. The weighting factors used are:

- Fatalities - 10
- Injuries but no fatalities - 7
- Property damage only (no injuries or fatalities) – 2

Total pipeline mileage is used to normalize the incident data, since large systems will likely have more incidents than smaller systems. A comparison of the relative integrity performance among operators is therefore normalized based on total system mileage (unitized to 1000).

Index #2: Releases That Resulted in Minor Impacts

Releases that result in minor impacts are leaks that are below the threshold that would trigger an incident report. Leaks do not result in fatalities or injuries or in significant property damage. The Gas Annual Report requires that leaks be reported by cause.

The data from available annual reports is used in the risk-based prioritization methodology. The parameters to be input into the model from the Gas Annual Report are:

- The number of leaks caused by corrosion.
- The number of leaks caused by natural forces.
- The number of leaks caused by excavation.
- The number of leaks caused by other outside forces.
- The number of leaks caused by material and welds.
- The number of leaks caused by equipment and operations.
- The number of leaks caused by "other" causes.

The weighting factor for all leaks is 1. This maintains the relative importance of leaks compared to incidents which have higher weighting factor multipliers. Total pipeline mileage is again used to normalize the leak data. This index is related to the likelihood of leaks occurring in the future based on past performance.

Index Group #3: Pipeline Characteristics Indicative of Relative Risk

The Gas IM Semi-Annual Performance Metrics Report and the Annual Report require each gas operator to report on pipeline characteristics that are directly related to the potential for a pipeline to impact an HCA.

The Gas IM Semi-Annual Performance Metrics Report requires the operator to report total pipeline miles, total HCA miles, miles assessed, number of immediate repairs performed, and number of scheduled repairs performed.

The Annual Report requires the operator to report the number of miles for a range of pipe diameters; the number of miles by age of the pipeline; the number of miles of steel pipe that are cathodically protected versus unprotected; and the number of miles in each category that are bare versus coated.

All of these parameters can be correlated to the potential for an operator's pipelines to impact an HCA. The higher the number of HCA miles, the greater the potential for an HCA to be impacted. A high number of immediate repairs could reflect a deteriorated pipeline condition and a correspondingly higher likelihood for HCA impact. Bare, unprotected steel pipe is at a higher risk of corrosion than is coated, cathodically protected pipe. Large diameter pipe results in a greater Potential Impact Radius (PIR) than does smaller diameter pipe at the same MAOP, reflecting a larger area of potential impact. The period in which a pipeline was constructed and the pipe manufactured is indicative of the type of seam weld and reliability of the manufacturing process, as well as the likelihood of injurious defects existing in the pipe.

Index #3.1: Total Covered Segment Mileage

The input into the risk model from the Gas IM Semi-Annual Performance Metrics Report is total HCA miles. Covered segment mileage in a pipeline system is directly proportional to the likelihood of (exposure to) high consequence incidents.

Index #3.2: Immediate and One-Year Repairs Made

An immediate repair is expected to be the exception rather than the rule. Immediate repairs may be indicative of deteriorating pipeline integrity. The input into the risk model from the Gas IM Report is:

- Number of Immediate Repair Conditions (NIRC)
- Number of Scheduled Repair Conditions (NOYRC)

In addition, covered segment mileage with completed assessments is used to normalize the repair data, since operators with many completed assessments will likely have reported more repairs than operators with fewer

completed assessments. A comparison of the relative integrity performance among operators is thus based on total covered segment mileage that has been assessed (unitized to 1000 total pipeline miles). Scheduled repairs are weighted 1/10 the value of immediate repairs.

Index #3.3: Diameter of Pipe

The pipeline in an operator's system is usually of various diameters. The Potential Impact Radius (PIR) is directly proportional to the diameter of the pipe. Large diameter pipe is therefore assumed to pose a higher potential risk than is smaller diameter pipe. Pipeline diameter, by miles, is reported by the operator in the annual report. The ranges reported are >28 inch, >20 to 28 inch, >10 to 20 inch, >4 to 10 inch, 4 inch or less, and unknown. The inputs into the risk model from the Annual Report and the associated assigned weighting factors are:

- The number of miles of pipe >28 inch 10
- The number of miles of pipe >20 inch to 28 inch 8
- The number of miles of pipe > 10 inch to 20 inch 4
- The number of miles of pipe >4 inch to 10 inch 2
- The number of miles of pipe 4 inch or less..... 1
- The number of miles of pipe of unknown size 10

The index score assigned is based on the ratio of miles of pipe in a given diameter range to the total miles of pipe in an operator's system. The index is then the sum of the index score for each populated range. Pipe of unknown diameter is conservatively assumed in the model to be in the > 28-inch range.

Index #3.4: Age of Pipe

Pipe materials and manufacturing techniques have improved steadily over time. Older pipe was generally manufactured with lower quality materials and under less strict quality control methods than those used in later years. Pipelines constructed before 1970 could have flash welded, lap welded, or Low Frequency ERW seams that are known to be less reliable. Pipelines constructed from 1970 to the present day were primarily constructed using High Frequency ERW, Single and Double Submerged Arc Welds, Spiral Welds, or are seamless.

In addition, older pipe has had more time to develop defects such as corrosion, coating deterioration, CP interruptions, undetected instances of third party damage, outside forces due to soil instability or ground movement, etc. The inputs into the risk model from the Annual Report and the associated assigned weighting factors are:

- The number of miles constructed in the period 2000-2009 2
- The number of miles constructed in the period 1990 – 1999..... 5
- The number of miles constructed in the period 1980 – 1989..... 5
- The number of miles constructed in the period 1970 – 1979..... 5
- The number of miles constructed in the period 1960 – 1969..... 8
- The number of miles constructed in the period 1950 – 1959..... 8
- The number of miles constructed in the period 1940 – 1949..... 8
- The number of miles constructed in the period pre 1940 10
- The number of miles of unknown construction period..... 10

Pipe of unknown construction period is conservatively included in the highest risk category. The index scores are calculated from the ratio of the number of miles constructed in a given time period to the total system

miles.

Index #3.5: Coating and Cathodic Protection

Cathodic protection of steel pipe is critical in preventing metal loss and the potential for pipeline leaks or failures due to corrosion. The Annual Report contains data on the external corrosion protection of steel pipe and the amount of cast iron pipe. The inputs into the risk model from the Annual Report and the associated assigned weighting factors are:

- The number of miles of cast iron pipe 10
- The number of miles of bare, unprotected steel pipe..... 10
- The number of miles of coated, unprotected steel pipe..... 5
- The number of miles of bare, cathodically protected steel pipe 4
- The number of miles of coated, cathodically protected steel pipe..... 2

The index scores are calculated based on the ratio of the number of miles in each category to the total number of miles of pipe.

Index #3.6: Excavation Activity

The amount of excavation activity along the right-of-way is an indicator of third-party risk. An index has been included for excavation activity that is the normalized ratio of location-requests per 1000 services. The operator's ratio of excavation damages to excavation "one-call" notifications can be to national or regional averages to evaluate the effectiveness of their damage prevention activities.

Risk Index #4: Historical Performance

An index has been included that allows the State program manager to input a "Letter Grade" that represents an estimate of the performance of an operator. Several parameters should be considered that might reflect an operator's historical performance in areas that are related to overall safety and integrity management. These include enforcement actions taken, and the State's experience with an operator's integrity and compliance performance. The possible grades range from 1 to 10, with 1 being assigned to the best performing operators and 1 assigned to the worst performing (riskiest) operators.

Final Relative Risk Score

There are 5 statistical indices that are indicative of the relative likelihood of incidents. They are indices 1, 2, 3.2, 3.4 and 3.5. Each index is weighted equally.

There are 2 statistical indices indicative of the relative consequences of incidents. They are indices 3.1 and 3.3. The principal factor is HCA mileage (item 3.1) which is weighted by the score for pipe diameter (item 3.3).

Using the classical definition of Risk = Likelihood x Consequences, the resulting risk score using operator statistics is based on the following equation:

Risk Index = [Index 1 + Index 2 + Index 3.2 + Index 3.4 + Index 3.5] * [(Index 3.1)(Index 3.3)]

The total risk score based on operator statistics is further refined based on the State's experience using the historical integrity and compliance performance factor (overall risk index 4), as follows:

Adjusted Relative Risk = Risk Index * Index 4

This adjusted relative risk score can be compared among operators as an aid to prioritizing inspections. This

relative risk model is summarized in Table 1, below.

Summary

The example risk methodology presented above utilizes easily retrievable data from existing reports that are required to be submitted to PHMSA by pipeline operators. Excel spreadsheets have been created into which the data from these reports is input and which then calculate an operator-specific relative risk factor that can be used to aid in developing an Inspections Priority List.

The risk algorithm and related weighting factors can be fine tuned based on experience. Adjustments could include expansion of the types of data analyzed, adjustments to the normalization scale, adjustments to the weighting factors, etc.

TABLE 1

Risk Index – Data Used – Source of Data	Risk Index Calculation
(TTM) - Total Transmission Miles	TTM
(THM) - Total HCA Miles	THM
(BAM) - Total HCA miles with completed Baseline Assessments	BAM
(TMM) – Total Miles Distribution Main	TMM
(TNS) – Total Number of Services	TNS
(TSM) – Total System Miles	TTM + TMM
Index #1: Incident History (use latest PHMSA Incident Report Data)	Weighted Incident totals
(F) - Fatalities (previous 3 years)	10(F)
(I) Injuries (previous 3 years)	7(I)
(P) Number of Incidents w property damage (previous 3 years)	2(P)
Index #1 (Incident History) =	10(F) + 7(I) + 2(P)
Index #2: Cause of Leaks (use latest annual report)	Normalized per 1000 miles
(Lc) - Number of leaks caused by corrosion	(Lc)/(TSM/1000)
(Ln) - Number of leaks caused by natural forces	(Ln)/(TSM/1000)
(Le) - Number of leaks caused by excavation	(Le)/(TSM/1000)
(Lo) - Number of leaks caused by other outside forces	(Lo)/(TSM/1000)
(Lm) - Number of leaks caused by material and welds	(Lm)/(TSM/1000)
(Lop) - Number of leaks caused by equipment and operations	(Lop)/(TSM/1000)
(Lother) - Number of leaks caused by "other"	(Lother)/(TSM/1000)
Index #2 (Cause of Leaks) =	(Lc+Ln+Le+Lo+Lm+Lop+Lother)(TSM)
Index #3.1: HCA mileage (use IMP performance metrics report) =	THM
Index #3.2: Repairs	Weighted and Normalized per 1000 miles of completed assessments
(Ri) - Number of Immediate Repairs (all baseline assessments)	(Ri)/(BAM/1000)
(Rs) - Number of Scheduled Repairs (all baseline assessments)	0.1(Rs)/(BAM/1000)
Index #3.2 (Repairs) =	(Ri+ 0.1Rs)/(BAM/1000)
Index #3.3: Diameter of Pipelines (use most recent annual report)	Scored as a weighted % of total system miles
(M0) - Number of miles of pipe with diameter 4 inch or less	1(M0)/TSM
(M4) - Number of miles of pipe with diamter >4 inch to 10 inch	2(M4)/TSM
(M10) - Number of miles of pipe with diameter >10 inch to 20 inch	4(M10)/TSM
(M20) - Number of miles of pipe with diameter >20 inch to 28 inch	8(M20)/TSM
(M28) - Number of miles of pipe with diameter >28 inch	10(M28)/TSM
(Mu) - Number of miles of pipe with unknown diameter	10(Mu)/TSM
Index #3.3 (Size) =	(1(M0) + 2(M4) = 4(M10) + 8(M20) + 10(M28) + 10(Mu))/TSM
Index #3.4: Age of Pipelines (use most recent annual report)	Scored as a weighted % of total system miles
(Au) - Number of miles of pipe constructed in an unknown time period	10(Au)/TSM
(A39) - Number of miles of pipe constructed pre 1940	10(A39)/TSM
(A49) - Number of miles of pipe constructed in period 1940-1949	8(A49)/TSM
(A59) - Number of miles of pipe constructed in period 1950-1950	8(A59)/TSM
(A69) - Number of miles of pipe constructed in period 1960-1969	8(A69)/TSM
(A79) - Number of miles of pipe constructed in period 1970-1979	5(A79)/TSM
(A89) - Number of miles of pipe constructed in period 1980-1989	5(A89)/TSM
(A99) - Number of miles of pipe constructed in period 1990-1999	5(A99)/TSM
(A09) - Number of miles of pipe constructed in period 2000-2009	2(A09)/TSM
Index #3.4 (Age) =	(10(Au+A39) + 8(A49+A59+A69) + 5(A79+A89+A99) + 2(A09))/TSM
Index #3.5: Coating & CP (use most recent annual report)	Scored as a weighted % of total system miles
(Ic) - Number of miles of cast iron pipe	10(Ic)/TSM
(Bu) - Number of miles of bare unprotected steel pipe	10(Bu)/TSM
(Cu) - Number of miles of coated, unprotected steel pipe	5(Cu)/TSM
(Bp) - Number of miles of bare, cathodically protected steel pipe	4(Bp)/TSM
(Cp) - Number of miles of coated, cathodically protected steel pipe	2(Cp)/TSM
Index #3.4 (Age) =	(10(Ic)+10(Bu) + 5(Cu) + 4(Bp) + 2(Cp))/TSM
Index #3.6: Excavation activity (use most recent annual report) =	Normalized per 1000 services
(LOC) – Number of locate requests	LOC/(TNS/1000)
Index #4: Historical Operator Performance	State inspector subjective input
Subjective input of inspectors	1 (best) to 10 (worst)
Likelihood Index Total =	Index #1 + Index #2 + Index #3.2 + Index #3.4 + Index #3.5 + Index #3.6
Consequence Index Total =	Index #3.1 * Index #3.3
Overall Risk Index Total =	(Likelihood Index) (Consequence Index)
Adjusted Risk Index Total =	(Overall Risk Index) (Index #4)

Appendix C – Forms

[insert forms, checklists, inspection aides, etc.]

Appendix D – Operator Contact List

[insert operator contact list]

Appendix E – Federal Statute

[insert copy of federal statute]

Appendix F – Federal Regulations

[insert copy of federal regulations]

Appendix G – State Statute

[insert copy of state statute]

Appendix H – State Regulations

[insert copy of state regulations]

Formatted: Left

STATE PIPELINE SAFETY MENTORING PROGRAM

Mission:
Provide a process by which state programs shall be able to take advantage of providing or receiving mentoring from or to other state pipeline safety programs or PHMSA.

Goals:
To provide supplemental information beyond that currently available to state safety programs for the purpose of enhancing pipeline safety and to further the knowledge base of all state pipeline inspector(s) in the use of various inspection and investigation techniques, to exchange state training programs, to assist in promoting consistent of enforcement of federal regulations consistent with our federal partners at the state level, and to assist other state inspectors in their professional growth and improved knowledge of inspection techniques.

Objectives:
- Review discuss, and utilize inspection techniques;
- Develop and nurture relationships between state programs and their staff in order to provide for more opportunities to expand mentoring programs between both state programs and with PHMSA;
- Increase state-to-state inspection and enforcement consistency as applicable to federal pipeline safety regulations;
- Enhance critical thinking processes that apply to inspections of various size operators;
- Broaden a state's knowledge of the diversity of gas pipeline facilities in other states;
- Develop/review varying processes for relevant data collection including, but not limited to, Damage Prevention, Integrity Management, and Incidents;
- Develop successful processes for conducting accident and incident investigations as well as a review of supporting reporting documentation requirements.

Program Guidelines:
- Mentoring application will be submitted to the PHMSA Director of State Programs for approval;
- Invitational Travel (based on availability) will be provided by PHMSA after application approval;
- Mentoring sessions will be no longer than five working days;

- States shall have the ability to arrange their own mentoring sessions with other states without invitational travel, but the state will still need an approved application in order for travel and personnel costs to be recovered through their State Pipeline Safety Base Grant;
- States that choose to arrange their own mentoring program without the approval of the PHMSA shall be responsible for all cost associated with the mentoring and shall not be allowed to recover those cost through their Grant;
- The state providing and the state receiving approved mentoring shall both provide to the PHMSA Director of State Programs a post-session Action Report identifying the advantages, lessons learned and other relevant information acquired as a result of the mentoring session. A copy of this report will also be provided to the NAPSR Administrative Manager for posting on the private NAPSR web page.

Contact Information:

- Zach Barrett – Director of State Programs, 1-405-834-8344 zach.barrett@dot.gov
- Robert Clarillos – NAPSR Administrative Manager, 480-263-2260 rclarillos@gmail.com

Contact your PHMSA State Program liaison for further questions.

Instructions for Inspection Mentoring Applicants

August 6, 2014

1) **Discuss inspection mentoring with Program Manager and obtain their approval.**
2) **With Program Manager identify possible inspection mentoring opportunities (State or Federal) in accordance with the "Program Guidelines" in the "Pipeline Safety Inspector Mentoring Program Outline" document.**
3) **Complete "Mentoring Application" Form and email to Don.Martin@dot.gov and copy Zach.Barrett@dot.gov**
4) **Obtain an email approval from Don Martin, PHMSA State Coordinator or Zach Barrett, PHMSA Director of State Programs.**
5) **Submit Invitational Travel Request through established Invitational Travel process**
6) **Provide feedback for improving inspection mentoring process in accordance with the "Program Guidelines".**

MENTORING APPLICATION

(Form to be completed by State Program Manager requesting mentoring)

Date of Request	**DD/MM/YYYY**
State Program (Requesting Mentoring)	Choose an item.
State Program (Providing Mentoring)	
Describe the Invitational Travel being requested Including dates, transportation, lodging, special needs, etc.	

Provide a brief synopsis of the goals / expectations of the mentoring to be received:

Provide a brief summary identifying the qualifications of the person who will be providing the mentoring: should Include all relevant experience:

List all courses completed in PHMSA's Training and Qualification Division if applicable to the proposed mentoring objectives:

- Has mentoring under this program been provided previously to the requesting state program? Circle One: Yes No
- Do travel restrictions exist for State Program providing the mentoring? List any blackout dates – TQ conflict dates – other dates not available within this calendar year:

Comments: